

My Father in Law is Lu Bu (我的岳父大人叫吕布)

Author : Bro Got a Gun (大哥有枪)

Synopsis:

Cosplayer Liu Mang accidentally cross through time and arrived at the Eastern Han Dynasty wearing Aries Gold Cloth. (Saint Seiya!) He arrived on top of the walls of XiaPi right when it was about to fall to Cao Cao. “Don’t kill me bro; I’m not working for boss Cao!” “Hey! You're slashing the wrong person! Boss Lu’s underlings are there! Not me!” He accidentally saved Lu Bu who was tied up by Song Xian. He accidentally became the son in law of Lu Bu. He accidentally changed the history of the Three Kingdoms period. When aluminum casted Gold Cloths are worn by generals like Zhang Liao and Gao Shun during the Eastern Han Dynasty, glistering on their bodies… When the soldiers in the camps are sporting mechanical crossbows… When crossbreeding of rice plants appeared on Lu Bu’s territory… Liu Mang knows that a world belonging to Lu is coming.

Info :

http://www.novelupdates.com/series/my-father-in-law-is-lu-bu/

Raws:

http://shushu.com.cn/b_30i.htm

Translator:

http://www.pegasusfarts.com/

and

https://wuxiaheroes.wordpress.com/my-father-in-law-is-lu-bu/



Table of Chapters:

Chapter 1 - Disaster Brought Forth by a Name Chapter 2 - Guys, We Are on the Same Side!

Chapter 3 - The Escape of Lu Bu

Chapter 4 - Death to Those Who are Discontent Chapter 5 - Shooting of Palm in Xiapi

Chapter 6 - Formation Breaker

Chapter 7 - Breakthrough

Chapter 8 - Wrongly Kill Three Thousand Chapter 9 - Home?

Chapter 10 - Death

Chapter 11 - Man From Heaven

Chapter 12 - Fifteen Thousand Dollars Worth of Buns Chapter 13 - Boss Cao's Scheme

Chapter 14 - The Great Coax

Chapter 15 - The Flashy and Enticing Boss Lu Chapter 16 - Look Your Sister

Chapter 17 - Got Sold

Chapter 18 - I, Lu Bu, Never Regret

Chapter 19 - Father

Chapter 20 - Wise Lord

Chapter 21 - Trapped in Kaiyang

Chapter 22 - Long Distance Surprise Attack Chapter 23 - Too Big of a Joke

Chapter 24 - If We’re Going To Do It, Then We’re Going Big Chapter 25 - Selling Gold

Chapter 26 - Big Transaction

Chapter 27 - Camaraderie Under the Setting Sun

Chapter 28 - Battle of Kaiyang (1)

Chapter 29 - Battle of Kaiyang (2)

Chapter 30 - Battle of Kaiyang (3)

Chapter 31 - Battle of Kaiyang (4)

Chapter 32 - Battle of Kaiyang (5)

Chapter 33 - A Turn for the Better (1)

Chapter 34 - A Turn for the Better (2)

Chapter 35 - Cavalry Cavalry

Chapter 36 - Casualties of the Cao Army (1) Chapter 37 - Casualties of the Cao Army (2) Chapter 38 - Fengxiao vs. Fengxian

Chapter 39 - Fengxiao vs. Fengxian (End) Chapter 40 - The Wisdom of Crying

Chapter 41 - The Anticipated Meeting

Chapter 42 - Prince of Shu

Chapter 43 - To Or Not To Runan

Chapter 44 - Building An Army (1)

Chapter 45 - Building An Army (2)

Chapter 46 - Army March

Chapter 47 - Father-in-Law?

Chapter 48 - Father-in-Law? (2)

Chapter 49 - I Am ME

Chapter 50 - Renegade Traitor

Chapter 51 - Lu Bu Starts To Change

Chapter 52 - Assaulting The Mountain

Chapter 53 - Liu Mang Become Bait

Chapter 54 - Mountain Fortress Infiltration

Chapter 55 - Bandit Brigade Retaliation

Chapter 56 - Urban Army First Battle (1) Chapter 57 - Urban Army First Battle (2) Chapter 58 - Fight to the Death

Chapter 59 - Deadly Battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (1) Chapter 60 - Deadly Battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (2) Chapter 61 - Deadly Battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (3) Chapter 62 - Deadly Battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (End)

Chapter 63 - Xu Province Ownership Change Chapter 64 - Teach Me Martial Arts

Chapter 65 - Selecting Weapons

Chapter 66 - Intermission before crossing over to Xinye

Chapter 67 - Luckless Boss Liu

Chapter 68 – Plot concocting in Wan Castle, Lujiang Chapter 69 - Hunted by tiger (1)

Chapter 70 - Hunted by tiger (2)

Chapter 71 - Another Tiger???

Chapter 72 – The one who reign over tiger Chapter 73 - Into Tiger's Den

Chapter 74 - Did we did the wrong thing?

Chapter 75 - Mother's Flesh

Chapter 76 - First Aid in Three Kingdoms's Era (1) Chapter 77 - First Aid in Three Kingdoms's Era (2) Chapter 78 - First Aid in Three Kingdoms's Era (End)

Chapter 80 - War of Words

Chapter 81 - Qualifications for A Hero

Chapter 82 - Heroes in Your Heart

Chapter 83 - Yuan Shu's Testament and Legacy Chapter 84 - Miss Yuan’s Imperial Seal as a Dowry; The Path of Princes or The Path of the Emperor Chapter 85 - A Worthy Drinking Adversary, Even One Thousand Cups is Not Enough Chapter 86 – Binge Drinking in Ancient Wedding Banquet Chapter 87 – Fornicating with a Goddess

Chapter 88 - Wedding's End

Chapter 89 – There Is No Such Thing as Free Lunch Chapter 90 – Inevitable Battle With Huang Zu of Jiangxia Chapter 91 – The Precipice of Battle; Enter Huang Zhong Chapter 92 - Huang Zhong vs. Lu Bu

Chapter 93 – Duel Conclusion; Who defeated who?

Chapter 94 – Planning for Jiangxia's Downfall, Liu Mang Go Back to Present to Find Medicine Chapter 95 – Major Event in Jiangxia

Chapter 96 – Huang Zhong is forced to Submit under Huang She's leg Chapter 97 – Command Transfer in Jiangxia's Army Chapter 98 – Lu Bu uses one of the 36 Stratagems Chapter 99 - Jiangxia's Destruction is Coming Chapter 100 - Jiangxia's Downfall (1)

Chapter 101 - Jiangxia's Downfall (2)

Chapter 102 - Sit Back and Wait for Result Chapter 103 – Liu Mang, A Hostage???

Chapter 104 - Reusing of Surrendered Generals Chapter 105 – The Beginning of an Event Chapter 106 – Plundering of Jiangxia by Sun Ce

Chapter 107 - Breaking Wancheng City

Chapter 108 - Da Qiao Declared as Dead

Chapter 109 – Held Banquet for Lujiang Nobles Chapter 110 – Lu Bu is Regarded as a Beggar; All of Patriarch Eat Beggar’s Food Chapter 111 – Disastrous Event for Lujiang Nobles Chapter 112 – The Extermination of Three Generations Chapter 113 – So What Is Wrong With Killing Them?

Chapter 114 – Sun Ce Retreat Alone To Avenge His Losses Chapter 115 – Liu Clan of Lujiang Takes Refuge with Lu Bu Chapter 116 – Inventing Weapons and Gadgets for Battle to Come Chapter 117 – Each Sides Reaction to the Big Event in Lujiang (1) Chapter 118 – Each Sides Reaction to the Big Event in Lujiang (2) Chapter 119 – Sun Ce Begins His Counterattack (1) Chapter 120 – Sun Ce Begins His Counterattack (2) Chapter 121 – Sun Ce Begins His Counterattack (3) Chapter 122 – Sun Ce Begins His Counterattack (4) Chapter 123 – Extinguishing Fire in Wancheng City Chapter 124 – All Must Be Eliminated' The Extermination of Private Soldiers Chapter 125 – Zhou Cheng's Heavy Infantry Troops; The "Black Flag" Moves Chapter 126 – The Urban Army V.S. The Black Flag Chapter 127 – The Urban Army Retreats

Chapter 128 – The Last Stand

Chapter 129 – The Black Flag is Defeated Chapter 130 – Drastic Changes; Wancheng City's Administration Office is in Danger Chapter 131 – The Bloody Administration Office Chapter 132 – Liu Mang and Co. V.S. Superclass General Chapter 132 – Liu Mang and Co. V.S. Superclass General Chapter 133 – Beast-like Man

Chapter 134 – Together We Live or Die

Chapter 135 – Huang Xu Unleashes the Rapid Point-Shot Chapter 136 – Damned People Should Just Die! Huang Zhong Enters the Fray Chapter 137 – Wounded Cheetah VS Lion King Chapter 138 – Massacre of the Rebellious Nobles Chapter 139 – Reactions to the Massacre in Wancheng City (1) Chapter 140 – Reactions to the Massacre in Wancheng City (2)

Chapter 141 – Sun Ce Makes His Move: The Manifesto Chapter 142 – Sun Ce Makes His Move (2) Chapter 143 – Sun Ce makes His Move (3) Chapter 144 – General VS General

Chapter 145 – The Execution

Chapter 146 – Su Fei's Burial

Chapter 147 – An Eye for an Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth (1) Chapter 148 – An Eye for an Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth (2) Chapter 149 – Three Heroes VS Huang Zhong (1) Chapter 150 – Three Heroes VS Huang Zhong (2) Chapter 151 – Oxybeles Prototype Launched!

Chapter 152 – The Siege Begins

Chapter 153 – The Danyang Soldiers Unleashed! (1) Chapter 154 – The Danyang Soldiers Unleashed! (2) Chapter 155 - The Third Master of the Danyang Soldiers Appears!

Chapter 156 - Sun Ce Joins the Fray

Chapter 157 – Battle Between Superclass Generals (1)

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 1 - Disaster Brought Forth by a Name

Original by Bro got a Gun, Translated by James, Proofread by Jade

---

Jinling Convention Center. Sunny with blue skies.

It was supposed to be delightful weather. But for Liu Mang, the weather was a source of great torment.

Liu Mang was wearing tight armor. It was one of the well known zodiac armor, the Aries Gold Cloth.

[TL: Saint Seiya is very famous throughout Asia and the South Americas; however, it never hit big in the U.S.)

Today was the Jinling Cosplay Contest. Liu Mang, who had never been interested in overpriced convention items, was dragged there because of his body. His height was to blame; standing at 1.8 meters, his frame was perfect for the Gold Cloth.

[TL: 1.8meters is about 5 ft 9 inches.)

“Which fucker brought this damn prop,” Liu Mang complained powerlessly. If you said you cosplay, then just cosplay. Why must you purchase a full metal build cosplay? Although it’s an aluminum armor, it’s still freaking heavy.

A set of armor was twenty to thirty pounds. Not only must you wear it

everywhere, but you're unable to rest. Although this stuff was just cosplay armor, it still satisfied the principles of being real armor. You could forget about sitting down when you're wearing it. The metal plates on the hips and thighs would most certainly allow you to experience what is known as the explosive chrysanthemum.

[TL: I am using pounds instead of jin for ease. A jin is about 1.1 pounds. 20jin is 22lbs and 30jin is 33lbs.]

[TL: I had to google what explosive chrysanthemum meant…. well… chrysanthemum is a flower that somewhat resemble what part of the butt? You guessed right - the anus. So… there you have it.]

"This was custom-made by me. What, you have something to say?!" A very pleasant looking female was standing in front of Liu Mang. However, he knew that she was two faced.

[TL: outwardly kind but inwardly evil]

"I dare not. Big sister is the most formidable!" Once he heard this voice, Liu Mang immediately changed his sour expression to a fawning smile. This two faced woman was Chen Yi, the president of the school's anime and manga club. Not only was she a tyrant in the club, but she was also a tyrant at school. Liu Mang dare not offend her. He wanted her help meeting girls in order to rid himself of twenty-something years of chastity. Nothing good would come out of offending her. However, today, he had been caught by her.

"That's more like it," Chen Yi laughed. "Be good. After we finish with today, big sister will introduce you to girls. Do you want pure girls or mature girls? As long as they're in our anime and manga club, I can

introduce you to them.”

When Chen Yi laughed, she looked really nice. She had a delicate face. Today she was cosplaying Hatsune Miku, and her tight fitting clothes perfectly outlined her curves.“I would be fine with you,” Liu Mang blurted out.

“Ah?” Chen Yi was shocked. She didn’t expect Liu Mang to say that. Even her face got a little red. However, because she was indeed a funu (腐女, fujoshi), so it took her but a moment to recover. “Liu Mang, you really are a hooligan to even dare assail me!”

[TL: Liu Mang’s name (刘莽) is sounded very similar to 流氓 (liu mang) which means hooligan, molester, etc.]

“Oh shit!” Liu Mang knew he fucked up royally to have said that sentence. While Chen Yi was still in a state of shock, he immediately grabbed his helmet and started running. The last thing on his mind was his heavy and uncomfortable armor.

“Liu Mang, you better stop running,” Chen Yi shouted.

“Stop? Only idiots stop for you!” Liu Mang was not without pride and if he was to be caught by Chen Yi, his life was over. As the ancient thirty six stratagems said, if all else fails, escape.

[TL: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thirty-Six_Stratagems]

“Molester?! (liu mang)” An uncle class [TL: old looking dude] cosplay

fan watched Liu Mang as he was being chased by Chen Yi.

A beautiful woman was calling a man “molester (liu mang)”. There could only be one explanation.

The uncle’s justice senses began to tingle. He pointed at Liu Mang and shouted, “Molester! Molester! Don’t let him escape! Quickly, catch the molester!”

“Catch the molester?!” Otaku and fujoshi have many taboos, one of which being molesters. Cosplay outfits can be very revealing, making it easy for cosplayers to be taken advantage of. Thus, they all detested molesters.

“A molester! That guy wearing the Aries Gold Cloth is the molester! Guys, don’t let him escape!” One, two, three… soon there were over a hundred justice warriors chasing Liu Mang.

“What the fuck is this?!” Liu Mang was terrified. “I assail you with words and you send all these people after me!”

“It’s a misunderstanding! A misunderstanding!” Chen Yi became aware that the situation was getting out of hand. The ‘Liu Mang’ she spoke of and the ‘liu mang’ (molester) that they heard were two completely different things.

Being chased by hundreds of people… how would he survive if he was actually caught? Chen Yi was starting to regret this. “Liu Mang, run faster! Run away!”

“Molester, run faster? Run away? Wasn’t that girl the victim? Why would she tell the molester to run?!”

Some people were starting to realize it might be a misunderstanding. However, before they had time to think about it, the incoming crowd forced them to continue chasing after Liu Mang.

The 'uncle' from earlier started shouting again. “Catch that molester! Catch that molester! He’s caused the girl to become disoriented! Once we catch him, we absolutely cannot spare him!”

“That’s right. Maybe the girl said the wrong thing in anger!” The justice warriors started chasing him even more frantically.

“Fucking hell! A dead end!” Liu Mang wanted to weep. What sin did he commit in order for there to be a white wall in front of him, crushing all hopes of escape?

“Keep running! Try running again! No where to run? You dare try to escape after molesting somebody,” the uncle yelled.

“Uncle, this is a misunderstanding. All of this is a misunderstanding,” Liu Mang stammered. His face was covered in sweat. Anybody standing in his place would be afraid - there were hundreds of people surrounding a single person.

“Uncle?!” The leading man completely ignored the whole 'misunderstanding' bit. “You dare call me an uncle?!” The heavy-set man

rolled up his sleeves, deciding to engage Liu Mang. However, he was stopped by some of the crowd.

"Perhaps this really is a misunderstanding," someone called from the crowd.

"Possibly." Another nodded.

"Right, right, this is a misunderstanding," Liu Mang said, overjoyed. As long as he had a moment to explain, he wouldn't be killed. He then saw Chen Yi approaching. "Look behind you! Chen Yi, Boss Chen, please help me explain this!"

Chen Yi saw that Liu Mang almost managed to get out of trouble. "Liu-Liu Mang, stop-stop running...," she cried while darting over.

"Didn't I say that he's the molester? How would that possibly be mistaken," the uncle asked as he continued to lead the group.

"So it wasn't a misunderstanding! To dare molest somebody here! Boy,you must really want die," another shouted.

"Why waste time talking to him!? Beat him up!"

"Well, I'm fucked," Liu Mang sighed. With despair in his eyes, he held his head low and squatted on the floor. The hundreds of people immediately jumped him.

“... running... so.. fast! I’ll explain everything,” Chen Yi finally managed to finish her whole sentence. Her whole sentence was 'Liu Mang, stop running so fast! I'll explain everything.'

Unfortunately, neither Liu Mang nor the people currently beating him up, heard her.

“Ah-oh- ah-oh-!” Liu Mang’s miserable cries would bring a chilling sensation to anybody that heard him.

“That fucking hurts,” Liu Mang hissed in pain. Not a single area of his body didn’t sting. “Those bastards were really fucking ruthless!” He had made up his mind. He would get revenge on the 'uncle'. He had been the worst of all, having aimed at his face the whole entire time. He worried that his handsome face might have been disfigured.

It wasn’t until the pain subsided slightly that Liu Mang decided to stand. He looked up to see several armored soldiers surrounding him.

“What the fuck are you looking at? Haven’t you seen a handsome guy before,” Liu Mang shouted. He was still bitter about being beaten up, and now that he was surrounded and being watched like a monkey, his anger was only increasing. “Fucking bumpkins! Cosplaying with such shitty armor! Look at my shiny armor and look at what you guys are wearing!“ Liu Mang wanted to vent all his frustrations on the country bumpkins.

“And look at your blade! It’s already rusted red. Aren’t you embarrassed to bring those things out?!”

“Who art thou?” A person who appeared to be the leader amongst the soldiers began questioning Liu Mang.

“O-ho! Speaking archaic, are you? Why weren’t you fuckers so polite when you were beating me up?! “ Liu Mang wasn’t sure if the people surrounding him were the ones who beat him. All he knew was that he was very, very pissed.

After listening to Liu Mang, the leader frowned and said, “Er Gozi, go and inform the city lord. Tell him we caught a Cao army spy on the walls.”

“Cao army spy? Squad leader meant…” A soldier by the name of Er Gozi spoke hesitantly. While he didn’t know who the person in front of him wearing golden armor was, he knew for certain that the person wasn’t a Cao army spy.

This was because the golden armored person came from the sky.

[TL: I translated 什长 to squad leader. This is because 什长 basically means that he is a leader who controls 10 troops. While searching for it, I believe squad leader is the best term. A squad is consist of 7-12 troops.]

From the sky. He might even be a god from heaven.

“When I say go, you go! Why so much nonsense,” the squad leader roared angrily.

“Yes, right away!” Er Gozi stepped back, preparing to leave.

“Cao army. Squad leader. City lord. Pretty good acting! Why not just say I’m Cao Cao,” Liu Mang said with disdain.

“Ah, so you’re Prime Minister Cao. No wonder Prime Minister Cao won against my lord! Turns out Prime Minister Cao is a deity from heaven,” Er Gozi chimed.

“So you’re traitor Cao. Traitor Cao, prepare to die!” The squad leader’s face changed the moment Liu Mang said he was Cao Cao. Furious, he grabbed his blade and approached Liu Mang.

“You-What are you trying to do?!” Liu Mang was now nervous. He realized something was wrong. The people standing before him were extremely pale and yellow-typically a sign of malnutrition. If it had been one or two individuals, he might assume they were suffering from anorexia. However, this was a whole group of people.

Liu Mang watched as the man approached him. His eyes were bloodshot, and his stare was like the stare of a beast.

“What am I trying to do? I’m going to kill you and avenge my mother!” The more he spoke, the more demented he appeared. Even his blade was trembling. He was called Cheng Yu, a man from Xu Province. In the first year of Xing Ping, Cao Cao’s father Cao Song was killed in Xu Province. Cao Cao, in an effort to avenge his father’s death, sent troops to invade Xu Province. The Xu Province was then owned by Old Tao. Not only did Cao Cao scare Old Tao to death, he even killed all the civilians of Qulu,

Suiling, and Xiaqiu.

[TL: First year of Xing Ping = first year of Emperor Xian of Han's rule = 192 CE]

[TL: Old Tao = Tao Qian]

[TL: Qulu, Suiling and Xiaqiu are counties located in the Xu Province.]

Cheng Yu's mother was a victim of the invasion.

"Murderer of my mother, we cannot live under the same sky! Today, I, Cheng Yu, shall avenge my mother," Cheng Yu cried.

What kind of situation was this? Liu Mang was confused. When did he kill this man's mother?! Forget killing. He couldn't even afford to touch or bump into her!

"Squad leader-squad leader!" The soldiers pulled Cheng Yu back. It was clear that they didn't have virtuous intentions. Liu Mang's confusing appearance simply frightened them.

"All of you, let me go! Today, either I die, or he dies!" Cheng Yu began breathing loudly. His murderous aura was getting stronger.

Liu Mang saw that the soldiers would soon be unable to stop him.

A loud drum noise was suddenly heard.

“Shaaaaa!!!!”

[TL: Sha = kill, it’s a warcry in this aspect. I kept the original because Killllll!!!! sounds…. kinda lame..]

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 2 - Guys, We Are on the Same Side!

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James, Proofread by Jade

---

"Cao army! It's the Cao army," a voice shrilled from the front of the city.

"Prepare to engage the enemy!" A man wearing a helmet stepped out. On the walls, there was suddenly the sound of drums.

"Squad leader! Squad leader! It's the sound of the drums! The Cao army is attacking us," a soldier shouted from the side.

"Hey!" Cheng Yu yanked himself from the soldiers' restraint. He stared at Liu Mang, saying "Consider yourself lucky. I'll take care of you after taking care of the Cao army!" He then directed a group of his soldiers toward the front of the city.

"What the fuck is wrong with this world!?" Liu Mang raged. First he was beaten, then he almost lost his life. Having experienced so much in a single day, how could he not be angry?

Liu Mang walked toward the direction the soldiers left. He wanted to find his school mates; to find Chen Yi. He wanted to find her and make her introduce him to at least seventeen or eighteen girls as a compensation.

Liu Mang cursed as he walked. However, the more he walked, the harder it was for him to curse.

Ancient walls, dark red with spots of rust! The rows of triangular shaped houses and the wastelands…

Without noticing, Liu Mang arrived on top of a crenelated parapet wall. The scene in front of him caused him to freeze on the spot.

“Sha!” After arriving on top of the walls, a soldier in white grabbed his blade and started slashing at a soldier in black. As the slash hit, red liquid flew.

The soldier in black was not to be outdone. Although he was wounded, the spear he held still managed to pierce the soldier in white’s body. As he pulled his spear out, a series of things also followed.

“Blech!” Liu Mang immediately started puking. He most certainly could not have mistaken the red liquid as tomato sauce. It was blood. It really was blood! And those series of things… were guts.

Liu Mang’s vomiting wasn’t his main concern. Another soldier in white had climbed the wall. When he saw Liu Mang dressed in golden armor, he first appeared surprised and then overjoyed. He suspected that Liu Mang was a high ranking general. Thinking that he had caught a huge fish, he shouted toward his comrades nearby. “Our lord had given the order; a reward of ten gold for every LuBu soldier to be killed and fifty gold plus three promotions for every company commander and above. Shaaa ah!”

[TL: once again, keeping sha ah as the war cry instead of ‘Kiiilll! ah!’]

[TL: 都伯, after much consideration, I figured it should be a commander of 100 soldiers. Hence company commander.]

All of the sudden, Liu Mang became fifty gold and promotions to these soldiers in white.

“Lu Bu army?!” Liu Mang’s mouth started twitching. Earlier, when he was surrounded by those soldiers in black… the Cao army they spoke of… is this for real?!

Liu Mang was still in doubt, but a thundering sound caused him to be completely convinced.

“Lu Bu Lu Fengxian is here! Who dare intrude here!? Soldiers, follow my lead!” A towering man with his hair pulled back in a golden headdress, donning a flowery-patterned battle robe, encased in body armour decorated with images of the ni and wearing a precious belt adorned with the image of a lion came out. He gazed at the fight. The soldiers in black, who were originally facing immediate danger, suddenly gained a boost in morale and rushed out following him.

[TL: ni is a mythological lion]

“Lu Bu, Boss Lu?!” The man in front of him, despite not welding the Sky Piercer, was described exactly as written in history. Could it be that he really was Lu Bu?!

[TL: Sky Piercer is the english translation of Lu Bu’s halberd.]

While Liu Mang was distracted, he suddenly felt pain in his chest. A long sword had stabbed his chest. A fierce looking soldier in white was bleeding and staring at him with beastly eyes.

He wants to kill me? Having been born in a peaceful era, Liu Mang had never experienced such eyes. War was a distant thing, not to mention a war conducted by cold steel.

“Die traitor Lu!” The soldier in white forcefully stabbed Liu Mang’s chest with his long sword.

“Clang!” There was a crisp sound of metal colliding. Liu Mang could only feel the pain in his chest. The long sword created sparks as it collided with the Aries Gold Cloth.

Liu Mang could no longer have any complaints about his armor being constructed from metal. Had it been cardboard, he would’ve been dead. Liu Mang believed that the sword, although rusty and cracked all over, would have been able to penetrate his body easily.

“Fuck!” Liu Mang wasn’t weak minded, so he didn’t wet himself. However, he still panicked and started shouting. “Bro! Bro! I’m not part of this! You slashed the wrong person! Wrong person! Boss Lu’s subordinates are there!”

Although the Aries Gold Cloth covered him for the most part, Liu Mang was holding the helmet in his hand. At this point, it was too late for him to put it on.

“Bullshit! DIE!” He couldn’t pierce his chest but the head was free to be cut. The soldier in white licked his lips; Liu Mang had already become gold, land and promotions - the soldier’s credentials for wealth and status.

“Splash!” A gush of blood took off with it a head.

“Ahhhhhhhhhhh!!!!” Warm blood sprayed across Liu Mang’s face. He screamed.

“Stop the scream!” A soldier in black stepped out from behind the headless corpse. He was the squad leader that sought to kill Liu Mang.

“Br-brother! I’m really-really not boss Cao’s subordinate!” Liu Mang stuttered.

The squad leader looked at Liu Mang but remained silent; he knew the golden armored man wasn’t Cao Cao, nor could he be Cao Cao’s subordinate. If he was, then that Cao army soldier would not attack him. Who was he? He was obviously not a part of the Lu Bu army.

The squad leader thought about it before wiping the blood off his face. “You follow me!” He figured he could continue to think about it after repelling the enemies. He then rushed toward the opposing army.

Follow you?! Liu Mang wasn’t stupid. Although the squad leader saved him, he had wanted to kill him earlier. Only an idiot would follow you! He ran in a different direction.

“What!” The squad leader killed yet another Cao soldier that came up the walls. He saw Liu Mang escaping so he threw away his broken blade. He then picked up a fresh weapon from a nearby corpse and started pursuing Liu Mang.

“The heck?! He’s chasing me?!” Liu Mang had already put on his helmet. While he was running, his Aries Gold Cloth had been glittering in the light, causing him to be a target for both Cao army and the Lu Bu army. Even if killing Liu Mang didn’t give gold or promotion, that armor he was wearing was still a priceless item.

Just as Liu Mang was stuck between a rock and a hard place, a thundering voice came from the palace on the wall. “Daring traitors!”

[TL: what a palace on the wall might look like http://file.chinatraveldesigner.com/2/kb/4f1869d5-2e0a-47bd-8485-3dbb6aed5e6b.jpg]

Wasn’t this the voice of Lu Bu, Boss Lu?

Cao Cao’s siege on XiaPi. Although watermarks were all over the walls, one could still see parts of the wall’s original construction.

[TL: Cao Cao ordered his soldiers to flood XiaPi, hence the watermarks.]

“On top of the White Gate Tower, Lu Bu was captured,” Liu Mang slowly muttered. Following the capture, Lu Bu was to be decapitated on White Gate Tower.

“Save Boss Lu! Rescue Boss Lu! I’ll live if I rescue Boss Lu!!!” Liu Mang was surrounded with enemies, isolated and without help. The Cao army wanted to kill him for riches and promotion. The Lu Bu army wanted to kill him for his armor. At this point, his only option was to save Boss Lu.

Right after rushing into the White Gate Tower, Liu Mang started feeling regret.

“Who art thou that darest break through the White Gate Tower!” A seven foot tall, bearded burly man glared at Liu Man. Behind him stood another robust man of similar size tying up Boss Lu.

[TL: original text uses chi, a chinese foot. 1 chi = 1.094 ft]

It was clearly written on the Romance of the Three Kingdoms that Song Xian first stole the Sky Piercer then, along with Wei Xu, captured and tied up Lu Bu.

“Damn it!” Liu Mang cursed in his heart. How could he possibly have forgotten about Wei Xu and Song Xian. If one compared the soldiers outside of the White Gate Tower to minions… then these two are most certainly bosses. Although these two are only second rated when compared to the rest of the generals in the Three Kingdoms, they were still generals. They were most certainly a lot stronger compared to Liu Mang who doesn’t know how to fight.

“Wrong direction, I went the wrong direction!” Liu Mang slowly retreated out of the White Gate Tower. He would rather face the horde of minions outside than the two bosses.

[If anyone could think of a less awkward way of saying wrong direction, please do tell.]

Song Xian glared at Liu Mang. The person in front of him, who wore such elegant golden armor, was most certainly a high ranking officer. Song Xian knew all the high ranking officers in the Lu Bu army. Thus, this person was most certainly not part of the Lu Bu army.

Could he have been prime minister Cao's man?

"Perhaps sire works for prime minister Cao?!" Song Xian asked cautiously. To wear such golden armor, his position was most certainly not low.

"Prime minister Cao?!" Liu Mang understood right away. Song Xian and Wei Xu was likely tying Lu Bu up as a gift to Cao Cao. If he said no, then Song Xian would most likely chop off his head right then and there. Liu Mang decisively started nodding "Yes, yes, yes."

"Oh, so it was prime minister Cao's man." Song Xian relaxed and laughed. "Myself is Song Xian and this is Wei Xu. I wonder how to address you, sire. For we are both working under prime minister Cao, regardless of positions, we should help each other." Song Xian had already started making connections.

"Myself is Liu Mang. I work under general XiaHou as a company commander." Liu Mang lied.

"Company commander?!" Unlike Song Xian, Wei Xu started doubting. A

company commander wearing a golden armor. Are you fucking with me?

Song Xian gave Liu Mang a pat on the back and began trying to get friendly with him. “Brother Liu Mang, as you can see, we have captured traitor Lu. We are only waiting for prime minister Cao to arrive at the tower. As for the credits…” What Song Xian meant was that he should gain merits for capturing Lu Bu. Although he didn’t know what position the golden armored commander had in the Cao army, he knew that he was of a better standing than a surrendered enemy general like himself.

“Renegade! Renegade!” Lu Bu who was tied up stared at Song Xian and Wei Xu with glearing eyes. “Song Xian, Wei Xu, I have always treated you good. Why are you doing this!?” he yelled angrily.

“Noisy!” Song Xian refused to give Lu Bu a chance to speak. He found a piece of cloth and stuffed it in Lu Bu’s mouth. Lu Bu’s fury could only be heard as an “mmmmm mmmm” sound. It wasn’t that Song Xian refused to answer, but rather that he felt guilty. Afterall, Lu Bu had treated both Wei Xu and him well. But even mole crickets and ants try to live, and if they had followed Lu Bu, they would’ve certainly died. As a talented bird chooses a tree to nest in, they too decided to choose a different patron to work under.

Right as Liu Mang was trying to find an opportunity to escape, Wei Xu who had not spoken a single word so far asked as if natural “I wonder how the injury to general Xiahou Dun’s right eye is.”

“What right eye, it’s the left eye!” Back when he was reading the Romance of the Three Kingdoms, Liu Mang had previously debated over whether it was Xiahou Dun’s right or left eye that had been injured. Right after saying this, Liu Mang knew that this Wei Xu was testing him.

[TL: Raw says right eye instead of left eye… based on what I knew, Xiahou Dun lost his left eye…. unless all the dynasty warrior games were a lie!"

Seeing that Wei Xu's hands were already on his blade, Liu Mang couldn't help but get nervous. "Could I have mistakenly said the wrong thing!?" If he was killed because of this, he really couldn't even cry over it. However, after noticing that Wei Xu's hands left his blade, he felt a wave of relief.

"Brother Liu, do you know when prime minister Cao's troops will arrive? We have already thrown Lu Bu's Sky Piercer outside the gates." Wei Xu lowered his guard against Liu Mang.

"Right away, right away!" Liu Mang remembered that these two good for nothings tied up Lu Bu, threw his weapon away, and in less than an hour the Cao army occupied White Gate Tower and execute Boss Lu.

"Lu Bu Lu Fengxian! Word of mouth had it that within men, Lu Bu, within horses, Red Hare! Former has it general Hou Cheng who presented the Red Hare. Latter has it generals Song Xian and Wei Xu tying Lu Bu. The three generals' accomplishments are most certainly big! Boundless prospect!" complimented Liu Mang.

"You're too kind," said Song Xian. However, he was very much delighted in his mind.

[TL: nali nali is translated as where where, which is what Chinese people use to humbly denying a compliment. Currently using you're too kind. If

there's a better translation, please do tell.]

To even know about general Hou taking the horse, Wei Xu finally believed Liu Mang.

"This Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen, looked very formidable!" Liu Mang pretended that he had never seen Lu Bu before and slowly walked toward him.

"I have always heard father and brothers say that Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen, is invincible on the battlefield, able to take on multiple foes at once. Having seen him today, he is merely so so."

"Humph!" Lu Bu's mouth was stuffed and he could not speak. All he could do was snort.

Father and brothers?! Having fought Lu Bu?! In the Cao army, those who are able to have fought Lu Bu and survive are only people like the Xiahou brothers, LiuGuanZhang, and Xu Chu. Every one of them are dauntless generals of the Cao army.

[TL: Xiahou brothers refer to Xiahou Dun and Xiahou Yuan. LiuGuanZhang refers to Liu Bei, Guan Yu and Zhang Fei.]

No wonder the small time company commander is wearing golden armor! This armor really is beautiful, with it's huge horns, exquisite patterns, and it's connecting plate armor.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 3 - The Escape of Lu Bu

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James, Proofread by Jade

---

“Brother Liu, this fellow is Lu Bu.”

Song Xian was very proud. Lu Bu, the god of war, was tied up besides Wei Xu and him. Their service was most definitely meritorious.

[TL: for the term fellow, Song Xian used a derogatory term]

“Chi chi” As Liu Mang looked from the side, he gave out a sound resembling a sigh of pity. The person of the Three Kingdoms Liu Mang admired the most was Gongsun Zan. This was because Gongsun Zan was never tolerant against using his troops against the non Han Chinese people. It was because of him that the non Han people revered the Han.

Lu Bu was another person he admired. Although many of Lu Bu’s actions are denounced by others, actions such as massacring all of his adopted father’s retainers and relatives, the blame couldn't be completely placed on him.

Ding Yuan, Lu Bu’s adapted father, was a regional governor and a minor warlord at the beginning. As one of his sons, Lu Bu was given the position of Chief Secretary, an administration position. Lu Bu was a warrior possessing great martial prowess, but was given a civilian post for years. This was even after Ding Yuan was promoted for his assistance in the Luoyang, Lu Bu never received any promotion. Waiting to kill Ding Yuan until Dong Zhou brought him over was already pretty good.

Later, Wang Yun’s honey pot worked wonderfully. Lu Bu’s lover was taken by Dong Zhou, and being a man, he couldn't help but kill Dong Zhou. After escaping Luoyang, the Lu Bu army faced countless life and death situations. Lu Bu, unlike big eared Liu, never once abandoned his wives and children.

[TL: big eared Liu is Liu Bei.]

Lu Bu was a family man.

Lu Bu was an ungrateful fellow without friends? When Cao Cao was on his ass, no one dared to assist him. Only the city of He Nei dared to send troops to help him.

Before his death, Lu Bu, like Gongsun Zan, was a mighty figure who caused many to cry in fear. His position would've most certainly been higher had he not been born to troubled times.

With his idol in front of him, Liu Mang couldn't help but feel excited.

He wanted to untie Lu Bu and ask for an autograph. Unfortunately, now was not the time.

In less than an hour, the Cao troops would break through the gates and enter. Once they broke through the city, they would bring him to Cao Cao and he'd be fucked. Pretending to be a general would certainly be a death sentence. Liu Mang’s only chance at survival lied in the man in front of him.

Xiapi wouldn't be able to withstand the siege much longer. He could only survive if he escaped the city under leadership of Lu Bu.

After thinking for a moment, Liu Mang stood up. “Generals, my army is to arrive in a moment. However, even without this tiger defending the city, there will be many causalities in order to break the gates. Generals, why not open the gates to greet the arriving army? Your merits would most certainly increase if you do so.”

“Ah?” Song Xian and Wei Xu’s eyes flashed with glimmers of delight. Originally, their merits lied in capturing Lu Bu… but if they now also offered the city to Cao Cao…

“Brother Liu, you are the brother of I, Song Xian, after this! I will most certainly add brother Liu to the list of credits for opening the gates.” Song Xian had given an empty promise.

Brothers with you? It would be a miracle if you didn’t sell me out! Liu Mang was scornful, but he pretended to be grateful,“After the army arrives, I will most certainly introduce the two generals to my father and brothers.”

“Ha ha! Then we must thank brother Liu!” As surrendered generals, if they wanted to join the Cao army, they'd have to associate themselves with the old generals. Having Liu Mang as their wingman would definitely be a lot better.

The two laughed as they walked down the city walls.

“Whew!” Liu Mang gave a sigh of relief. The two snitches were finally coaxed by him. Liu Mang quickly ran to Lu Bu and snatched the cloth out of his mouth.

Lu Bu immediately swore once the cotton in his mouth was removed. “Rebellious traitors! If you’re a man, release me! Using underhanded method to capture me!”

“Hey-hey, boss Lu, please lower your voice,” Liu Mang hissed quietly. Lu Bu had a violent temper. If Song Xian and Wei Xu heard him, they'd be screwed.

“Boss? You’re the boss! How dare you insult me!”

[TL: Lu Bu took insult to Liu Mang calling him boss because while boss is a term signifying a hint of respect and position in modern chinese slang, it is a derogatory term for warriors in ancient chinese because they see boss as merchants, a class lower than theirs, who is interested only in money.]

“Calling you boss is an insult?!” Damnit. Liu Mang really couldn't communicate with the great God of War. How I wish people called me boss.

“I’m the boss. I’m the boss, okay?!” Liu Mang rolled his eyes. “I'm going to help you escape! Are you coming or not?!”

“Do with me as you please!” Lu Bu continued to curse, then suddenly

caught what Liu Mang had said.“What did you say about freeing me?!”

“Argh.” Liu Mang clutched his ears. What was with these generals being big horns? Lu Bu, Wei Xu, Song Xian, and even the bullshit squad leader were like this. Did they not feel comfortable unless they were yelling?!

“To put it simply, I'm not apart of the Cao army, nor am I part of your Lu Bu army! But if I want to live, I have follow you, boss Lu!” Liu Mang summarized.

Lu Bu frowned. Liu Mang was going to free him? He wasn't working for the Cao A’man or him.

[TL: Cao A’man is another name of Cao Cao. I believe it’s his childhood name.]

“Didn’t you mention earlier that your father and brothers encountered me on the battlefield before?!” Lu Bu was puzzled.

“Fuck! You have too many questions!” Liu Mang was angry now. “I am surnamed Liu, called Liu Mang. Have you ever met any senior generals in the Cao army with the surname Liu?! The father and brothers I speak of- does the Han emperor count?!”

“His Majesty?!” Lu Bu was shocked. “You are related to His Majesty?!”

Liu Mang brushed Lu Bu off. “Stop bothering me! The Han emperor is my brother, okay?!” He quickly untied Lu Bu. Wei Xu must've been truly ruthless to tie his former master so tightly. He noticed that Lu Bu’s body

was covered in blood from lacerations.

“His Majesty’s younger brother!”

During the Latter Han Dynasty, very few were patriotic or loyal. Lu Bu was the exception.

After Dong Zhou’s death, Lu Bu took control of Luoyang. It stood to reason that Lu Bu would behave like Dong Zhou, doing whatever he wanted in Chang’an. Surprisingly, he didn't. He was completely respectful to the little emperor. Even when he was forced to leave Chang’an, he never threatened him to leave with him.

Afterward, he attacked Yan Province and occupied Puyang before finally running away to Xu Province. This caused the big eared thief to flee. During those times, Lu Bu had always been respectful toward the Han Dynasty.

[TL: Big eared thief is Liu Bei.]

Lu Bu clearly remembered that in Chang’an, His Majesty did not have a younger brother. He had a single elder brother. This was the Prince of Hongnong, Liu Bian, and he had died at the hands of Dong Zhou.

“Stop asking questions, Lu Bu! Back when there was plenty of corruption, the late emperor frequently spoke lividly in regards to money. How would one know of all his sons?"

That's it, he’s a bastard child! Lu Bu nodded understandingly. He held his fist. “I, governor of Xu Province, General Who Pacifies the East, Lu Bu

Lu Fengxian, thank sire for the saving me!" Lu Bu really believed that Liu Mang was of royal blood. After all, the golden armor he was wearing couldn't even be worn by regular imperial clansman. It was reserved for those bestowed by the emperor.

[TL: Lu Bu is listing all the titles and his courtesy name when he introduced himself.]

[TL: Lu Bu essentially did a salute of respect to Liu Mang. I suspect you've seen this type of salute before. https://encrypted-tbn0.gstatic.com/images?q=tbn:ANd9GcTuxfcQQtXcovU_3XLGpKXxpQyjSRwJK2-x55tIkWO2GDEUQZW1]

"Just forget about it." Liu Mang knew Lu Bu misunderstood. However, regardless of the misunderstanding, his top priority was saving his life.

"Marquis of Wen need say no more. We should gather the remaining soldiers and rush out of Xiapi immediately. Xiapi cannot be guarded anymore."

[TL: Marquis of Wen is another one of Lu Bu's titles.]

"Yes!" Although Lu Bu was a very obstinate and opinionated individual, he also had a deep respect for the Han Dynasty. After getting up, he looked for a weapon to gather remnants of soldiers in the city with Liu Mang.

"Alas, pity that my Sky Piercer was thrown out the city walls by those two renegades. Otherwise I needn't do such!" The weapons nearby were all from Lu Bu's soldiers that had been killed by Song Xian and Wei Xu.

None of the weapons were really comfortable to Lu Bu.

Without the Sky Piercer, Lu Bu was certainly a grade lower in martial abilities. Lu Bu was normally considered the pinnacle of super first class, and now he was only super first class.

Despite all this, his battle prowess would still be strong enough.

“So you were here!” Suddenly, somebody came from the White Gate Tower. It was the squad leader that had been chasing after Liu Mang. He was not as lucky as Liu Mang. Liu Mang’s body was covered entirely in armor, and the squad leader had only leather. Liu Mang could close his eyes and charge through the crowd, while he could not. This was why it had been so difficult for the squad leader to find them. Even the weapons in his hands were close breaking again. Evidently, he had killed a lot of people.

“Don’t be rude!” Lu Bu berated the squad leader after noticing he was wearing the black uniforms his soldiers wore.

“Eh? General?!” The squad leader realized it was Lu Bu and immediately got down on his knees. For the Lu Bu army, Lu Bu was seen as a God.

“This is--” Lu Bu started to introduce Liu Mang, but he was interrupted. “Think about the situation first! Introductions can wait until after we get out of the city!”

“You dare speak to general like that!” The squad leader was about to draw his blade. However, contrary to his expectations, Lu Bu wasn't angry.

He even held out his fist and screamed, “Okay!”

What’s with this?!

The squad leader was stunned.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 4 - Death to Those Who are Discontent

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

“Sha!” Although Wei Xu and Song Xian are only second rated generals, they are much stronger than ordinary soldiers. The two of them each killed a Cao army soldier. It wasn’t because they wanted to make amends but rather because the ordinary soldiers did not know that they surrendered to Cao Cao.

Having rushed to the city gate. One of the company commander defending the gate ran over to Wei Xu and Song Xian. He asked “General Wei, general Song! How is the situation underneath the city walls? Is the lord alright? Do you need our assistance?!”

The fighting on the walls was so fierce that every now and then there will be people falling down towards the gate. This was why this company commander is acting like this.

“No need!” Wei Xu thrown a glance at Song Xian.

Song Xian acted as if he understood and then placed his hand on the commander’s shoulder. “The lord is on the city walls, the Cao army can’t possibly break through!”

“Now that you mention it!” The commander nodded. Lu Bu was known as the god of war. This company commander who was in charge of defending the gate was originally from the Bing Province army. He have

followed Lu Bu for many years and held him in the highest esteem.

The company commander who just relaxed himself suddenly opened his eyes wide in shock with a face full of pain. “General Song. You, why?!” Appearing on his neck was a line of blood. Blood was rushing out. Clearly, a major artery was cut.

“Brother, do not blame me. Blame yourself for blocking the path of us brothers!” The company commander collapsed. The soldiers defending the city walls was shocked. All they saw was Song Xian and Wei Xu suddenly taking out their blades and shouting their personal soldiers “Prime Minister Cao’s army is right outside. Xiapi is soon to be break through. If you want to survive, open the gate for Prime Minister Cao with me! Sha!”

“Song Xian and Wei Xu, our lord had been good to you guys yet you dare commit such a criminal act! Sha! Avenge the company commander!” This Bing Province company commander was held in high esteem in the soldiers’ hearts. A group of defending soldiers started rushing toward Song Xian and Wei Xu.

Outside of XiaPi, Cao army camp.

A middle aged man was standing in the front of a tent watching soldiers killing each others. He asked a general near him “general Hou Cheng, are you certain that general Wei Xu and general Song Xian will be able to capture Lu Bu?” This tanned middle aged man was the most ambitious person in the whole world, the future Emperor Wu of Wei, Cao Cao . It wasn’t that he had doubts about Wei Xu and Song Xian’s betrayal but rather in their abilities to capture Lu Bu.

Who is Lu Bu? He is a mighty tiger! Cao Cao still remembers the heroics of Lu Bu in the Battle of Hulao Pass. He caused the eighteen warlords to be stuck outside the Hulao Pass, unable to do anything. Could a person capable of such accomplishment be easily captured?!

"Reporting to the Prime Minister, I have already taken the Red Hare away from Lu Bu. This Lu Bu's combat prowess was reduced by eighty percent. Although my brothers Song Xian and Wei Xu aren't some powerful generals, against traitor Lu with twenty percent combat prowess, they are more than enough!" Hou Cheng said proudly.

All the people around, whether they be generals or scholars, frowned at Hou Cheng's words. Selling out his previous master is one thing. However, to even call his previous master traitor Lu. Such a person is indeed of vile character.

Although the scholars are only displeased in their hearts, the generals are much more direct. They collectively step back from Hou Cheng, refusing to associate themselves with him, causing Hou Cheng to be very awkward.

However, the awkwardness disappeared soon.

"Reporting!" A messenger rushed in. "Reporting to Prime Minister, a godly weapon was thrown down atop the walls of Xiapi, crushing to death multiple soldiers."

"Oh? What sort of godly weapon was it?" A weapon being thrown on siege soldiers' heads could certainly crush to death a couple people.

Afterall, siege soldiers are like ants, proceeding slowly and crowded.

"General Xiahou said it was Lu Bu's Sky Piercer!" The messenger replied.

The only person who was currently besieging the city was Xiahou Dun. The general Xiahou that the messenger spoke of is him.

"Oh?!" Cao Cao's eyes flashed with happiness. "Bring it over for me to see."

Soon, two soldiers came carrying a long Ji giving off a cold glow. The two crescents on top of the Ji was sparkling. On the side was a red rippling tassel. The Ji itself was also engraved with a couple characters, Bing Province Lu.

[TL: Ji is a chinese halberd, Lu Bu's Sky Piercer is a Ji.]



[TL: Bing Province Lu means that the Ji belonged to surnamed Lu of the Bing Province... hence Lu Bu.]

This was most certainly Lu Bu's Sky Piercer. A Lu Bu without a Sky Piercer. Haha!

“Congratulations Prime Minister. Xiapi is soon to be break through. Perhaps at nightfall we would be able to open up for celebration in the heart of the city!” Hou Cheng immediately started kissing ass.

“Ha ha!” Cao Cao complacently laughed aloud.

Right at this moment, another messenger rushed in. “Reporting! Reporting to the Prime Minister, Xiapi has been broken through!”

“Xiapi has been broken through?!” Cao Cao was slightly surprised. Although it was Yuanrang sieging the city, he did not give Yuanrang a lot of troops because of the deflections of Hou Cheng, Song Xian and Wei Xu. He only told him to feign attack and wait for Song Xian and Wei Xu to capture Lu Bu; how did the Xiapi actually got broken through?!

[TL: Yuanrang is the courtsey name for Xiahou Dun.]

“The gate was opened from within!” The messenger said.

“From within?!” Did someone else betrayed Lu Bu?!

“It’s most likely my two brothers!” Hou Cheng said happily. “Prime Minister, Xiapi was broken through and Lu Bu was arrested, the Xu Province is yours to collect!”

“Transmit my military orders! All troops, besiege Xiapi!” Currently only one of the gates got broken through, there’s still three more.

“Sha!” Lu Bu took the lead. Although he no longer have the Sky Piercer, his explosive prowess isn’t hindered in a bit. These Cao soldiers cannot even withstand a single bouts. Even officers die upon encountering him.

Song Xian and Wei Xu was lucky. They did not encounter Lu Bu.

On the way down the White Gate Tower, Lu Bu slaughtered no less than a hundred people and gathered around him three hundred soldiers. Under his command, they were like an unstoppable spear.

“Where are we headed to now?!” Liu Mang currently held a bloodied long sword. Within the chaos, no one could protect him. Thus, he must defend himself. On his armor appeared multiple white stains from the countless slashes and stabs of blades and swords. Had he not had the Gold Cloth, he would've been dead multiple times by now.

Enroute, Liu Mang also killed a couple people. Actual living people! Not animals, but people! When blood was splashed onto his face, Liu Mang even tasted the saltiness and metallic taste.

“Province Governor's Mansion in the inner city!” Lu Bu’s eyes was bloodshot from all the killing. Had Liu Mang’s armor not been extra shiny, he might’ve mistakenly killed him.

“Inner city?!” Liu Mang was thinking about how to get the hell out and

not getting into the inner city, a place where they would likely be surrounded and killed.

Liu Mang wanted to say something but was stopped by the squad leader alongside him. The squad leader was called Cheng Yu. He said “All the madames are in the inner city!”

“Madames?” Liu Mang finally remembered. How did he forgot that Lu Bu was a family man. To have him leave his family behind, you must kill him first.

A family man as a companion of a deceptive one…

If I followed him into the inner city, these three hundred soldiers might all die!

On the other hand, if I went my own separate way then chances are I’ll be dead too. Either way I’m dead. Can’t there be a fucking survival path?!

“Sha! Sha!” Sounds of killing on the outside of the city steadily increased. With tens of thousands of people battling, their noises certainly won’t be small.

“General, the gate has been broken!” A bloodied Lu Bu army soldier covered in wounds shouted toward Lu Bu in a weeping manner.

“Gate has been broken?!” Lu Bu eyes shocked open and gave off a murderous aura strong enough to cause suffocation. “Which gate?! West Gate?! South Gate?! Or the North Gate?!”

“East Gate, sire!” The injured soldier said weepingly.

East Gate! Wasn’t this the gate that I just came from?! White Gate Tower was located in the east gate! Didn’t I encourage them to open the gates?!

“Song Xian and Wei Xu! Oh how I wish to eat your flesh!” Lu Bu’s eyes were glaring with anger. Although he knew that it was because of Liu Mang’s suggestions that they went to open the gates. However, knowing is different from it actually happening.

[TL: No, he’s not saying he want to be cannibal. Just a phrase saying he’s super angry and wants to kill them.]

A gate has been broken, leaving behind only three gates. It is impossible for the Cao army to not take action. Once the three other gates was to be broken, they would surrounded and certainly die.

Now there was a very serious problem - whether or not to go toward the inner city.

If they don’t go, then Lu Bu’s wives and children will be left to Cao Cao. In that case, god of war Lu’s head will be verdant green. On the other hand, if they do go, all these three hundred people will likely not survive. Chances are, they will be surrounded by the Cao army and be unable to save his wives and children.

[TL: What Liu Mang meant by Lu Bu’s head will be verdant green is that he will be wearing a green hat - get cuckolded by Cao Cao. NTR yo.]

“Abominable!” Lu Bu raged. The god of war was stuck between a rock and a hard place.

“General!” The squad leader cried.

Lu Bu’s eyebrows raised. “Attention soldiers, you all protect brother Liu Mang’s break out of Xiapi! Failure is not an option!”

Help me escape? That’s not bad. My life will be saved. But boss Lu’s giving up on his family? That’s not his style…

“What about you, general?” Cheng Yu said the main point.

“This general will go toward the inner city to save his family!” Lu Bu held his pu blade against the wind.

[TL: Pu blade, aka. simple blade… http://www2.nacta.edu.cn/site/jjdj/files/u1/dao.jpg second blade from the left.]

“Just general yourself, how could you rival the Cao army?! General’s safety is hard to guarantee. General, please reconsider!” So what if a person is a god of war? Against human wave tactics, he too will turn into a pool of blood.

“General, please reconsider!” The Lu Bu army on the side shouted in unison.

“Rest assured! Those who can hurt me have yet to be born!” Lu Bu Lu Fengxian - dragon amongst men, a god in war. He never retreat, even if the place is a dragon’s pound or a tiger’s den.

“We will follow general till death!” Cheng Yu was the first one to get on his knees.

“We will follow general till death!” Who is Lu Bu? He is the soul of the army! He is the god of war! Perhaps for other armies, their morale will collapse after suffering heavy casualties and the collapse of the army banner. However, for the Lu Bu army, their morale will not collapse for they have their own god - Lu Bu. As long as Lu Bu is alive, the Lu Bu army too will preserve.

“I have decided. Stop making a clamor!” Lu Bu certainly knew that he might not be able to come back. Tens of thousands of Cao army are outside the city; and the city itself was chaotic with fightings. No matter how strong a person is, he is no match for a group of people. However, Lu Bu does not resign. Even if what he was about to do is already doomed to begin with he will still continue on for it was the responsibility of a man for his home and his family.

These three hundred soldiers, perhaps Lu Bu did not know any of them. However, he knew that they were good men, warriors under him. With subordinates like this, he was without regrets. Thus, how would possibly bring these men to the death with him?!

“General!” Cheng Yu did not give up.

“Whoever continues to speak will be like this blade!” After saying that, he snapped his pu blade in two. Pieces of fragments pierced through Lu Bu’s fingers. However, he did not mind it one bit. The soldiers are silenced with eyes still filled with reluctance and helplessness.

At this moment, the god of war Lu Bu suddenly got softhearted.

“Go now! Safeguard brother Liu Mang! Perhaps we will meet again!” Lu Bu took a spear and proceeded to leave.

“Sigh, why did you...” A long sigh came from Liu Mang. Liu Mang got fucking moved by Lu Bu. Lu Bu, why did you have to say such a speech. So moving, causing me to almost cry.

Liu Mang also knew that although these soldiers will follow Lu Bu’s orders and help him break out of Xiapi; but once the breakout succeed, these three hundred soldiers will be like a bunch of soulless walking corpses.

To save his own life by taking three hundred lives with him; Liu Mang wasn’t able to do it.

“Attention soldiers!” Liu Mang shouted. However, not a single soldier paid attention to him. Rather, they set their sights on that lonely silhouette.

Seeing the attitudes of these three hundred soldiers, Liu Mang got angry. “Were you not soldiers of the Lu Bu army?! Are you refusing to obey Marquis of Wen’s orders?! Are you going to betray the Marquis like

Song Xian and Wei Xu?! Now the Marquis have put you all under my arm, you have to obey my orders! Understood?!" Liu Mang had never once roared so loud before.

"Fuck, I quit!" A soldier took off his helmet and shouted "I will follow the general till death!"

"What is your name?!" Liu Mang pointed the longsword in his hand on the soldier. His murderous intent was in his speech.

"I am called Li ErNiu. What you want to kill me? Go ahead!" The soldier stuck out his neck and glared at Liu Mang.

"Someone detain him!" Although these three hundred soldiers was bleak, they still followed the Marquis's order and detained the soldier called ErNiu.

"Good. Someone tell me what is the punishment for desertion!"

"According to law, death by beheading." Cheng Yu did not know what Liu Mang is trying to do but still replied.

"Good. Li ErNiu, do you know your crime?!" Liu Mang shouted.

"Kill me. I don't want to live anyways. I will follow the general in death." Li ErNiu got increasingly emotional.

"Good. Since you wish to die, I will give you your wish!" Liu Mang also

got angry. Although he knew that this Li ErNiu was a man but because this was the army and in a war one cannot just do as one pleases.

"Behead!" Liu Mang shouted. However, none of the soldiers moved, not even those who detained Li ErNiu.

"Good. So you guys won't do it? I'll do it myself!" Liu Mang pierced his longsword into the chest of Li ErNiu. Cheng Yu wasn't fast enough to prevent it. Hot blood spilled out.

"You!" Li ErNiu was grimacing in pain.

"Woosh!" Liu Mang waved his sword and a head fell off. The expression on the head seemed to not believe Liu Mang was actually going to do it.

"Hey!" Cheng Yu knew that it was bad. Originally, the orders from the Marquis had caused the soldiers to be instable. Now Li ErNiu was killed. Amongst these soldiers were his fellow soldiers whom have been through ups and down with him. There might be a mutiny.

Cheng Yu quickly rushed to guard Liu Mang because a few soldiers' expressions was already starting to shift.

"Why did you kill Li ErNiu?!" Sure enough, there was mutiny. A soldier originating from the same place as Li ErNiu angrily shouted at Liu Mang. If Liu Mang explanation isn't good enough then he will be met with swords and blades.

"Precisely for which reason?!" Another stood out.

“Why, you ask me why?!” Liu Mang laughed. He laughed very happily. “Come over, I’ll tell you why.”

The two soldiers, after hearing Liu Mang’s words, walked toward him.

“This is why!” A sinister expression flashed through Liu Mang’s face. Again, there was two pillars of blood. Two soldiers with eyes in shock fell down.

Liu Mang was holding the longsword like a demon. He looked toward the soldiers and shouted. “You have been soldiers longer than me. You have more time in the battlefield than me. Military laws, you understand it better than me. Let me tell you, Li ErNiu and those two dead soldiers, I admire them. They were willing to go against the military laws to follow the Marquis. I admire them but I must still kill them! Military law is military law. I don’t care what reason you have to go against it, unless I am dead, you are to die!” Liu Mang’s current facial expression was sinister and unsightly. Coupled with the fact that he just killed three people unwavering, he struck terror in the hearts of the soldiers.

“From today on, you will be my soldiers. You will be faced with an unemotional and unwavering general who follows only the military laws. Anyone who is discontent, stand out. Kill me or I’ll kill you. Understood?!”

“Understood” said sparse and fragmentary and powerlessly.

“What, are you terrified?! Do you not have valor?! Are you a coward?! Speak louder, I cannot hear you!” Liu Mang roared.

“Understood!” This time, not only was the voice in unison, it was also louder.

Cheng Yu could not believe it. He initially thought that this golden armored man was just a idiotic nobility. Who knew that he was this savvy. His killing methods returned order to chaos.

“Good. Now I command the battalion of three hundred twelve people. You, you and you!” Liu Mang pointed three people, one of which is Cheng Yu. “I appoint you as the company commander, in charge of a hundred people including yourself! The remaining twelve people are to be my guard.”

Liu Mang does not understand the army system of the Eastern Han Dynasty. Hence, he could only handle things like his time at the university military training. Thirty three people a platoon, three platoons a company and three companies a battalion.

Like this, maybe we really could break out! Cheng Yi also started to be convinced by Liu Mang.

“You are now my soldiers! Thus you must follow my commands! Now I command, all troops march toward the inner city!” Liu Mang issued his second order.

“What?!” Cheng Yu startled. “Sire, march toward the city?!” What is he trying to do?!

“Did you guys not hear me correctly? Or must I kill two more people?!” Liu Mang said “I want you guys to march toward the city. I am going to save Lu Bu, save your general. Did you not understand? Ah?”

So the reason why he killed those three soldiers was to suppress the untamed soldiers. If the killing before terrorized the soldiers, then the orders given now will obtain the hearts of the soldiers.

“Understood~!” Having heard that Liu Mang’s orders was for them to save Lu Bu, save their general, all of the soldiers who were full of morale, their discontent and hatred toward Liu Mang completely disappeared.

“Onward!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 5 - Shooting of Palm in Xiapi

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

“Fucking hell! Seems like I will be dying here!” Liu Mang smiled wryly. He wiped the blood from his body. These blood were mostly from his enemies while some were from his new subordinates. Earlier, a guard that he did not even know the name of took a slash for him and was chopped in half through the waist.

The East Gate was broken through, the South Gate was also broken through. Only the West Gate and the North Gate are left standing.

With the two Gates being broken through, the Cao army troops started pouring into Xiapi. In the two hours, Liu Mang and his troops had only advanced a couple hundred meters. In this period of time, nearly a hundred of his troops was killed. Amongst them was one who he just recently appointed company commander. One of his leg was chopped off. Although he wasn't dead, but on the battlefield, he is not far from death.

This was only a couple hundred meters! If he managed to advance toward the inner city, how many of his three hundred troops would be left? Liu Mang’s felt that his body was already without strength. He does not know how many people he had killed so far.

Human lives in a troubled time is like grass. Liu Mang’s movement had already became mechanical - kill, kill again, change blade and kill, kill again.

“Sire, we cannot advance anymore!” Cheng Yu arrived next to Liu Mang after killing some enemies. He gasped and shouted. He also knew that the route they’re on was very difficult. However, he did not expect it to be like this. If they delay any longer, the incoming Cao troops will increase exponentially. In that time, before meeting Lu Bu, their whole battalion might be wiped out.

Liu Mang deflected an incoming spear with his blade and then killed a Cao soldier. He said “we must continue advancing regardless!” Liu Mang did not regret his stupid decision. He rarely gets moved by others. Lu Bu count did and these three hundred soldiers also did.

“It’s only death. What, Cheng Yu are you afraid?!” Liu Mang satirized. “If you’re afraid of death then get lost!”

“Who says I’m afraid! The only thing I fear is my mother!” Cheng Yu also got angry. For him to be seen as being afraid of death, it was no less than an extraordinary humiliation!

This route was like a huge mountain, blocking Liu Mang and his troop’s advance. They had been delayed for another hour.

Now, Liu Mang really cannot even lift a blade. His arms was numbed and difficult to move. After finally repulsing an attack from the Cao troops, Liu Mang directly sat onto the ground.

The sky gradually darkened. The smell of blood was everywhere. Corpses filled the city. There’s Cao army corpses, Lu Bu army corpses and also regular civilians.

“Halt, Lu Bu army!” Another wave of Cao soldiers showed up. This time, however, the highest officer was a general instead of the squad leaders or company commanders that they have encountered thus far.

With a red tasseled helmet, body covered in armor, and on a white horse. This enemy general was very imposing.

“Ha ha ha ha! Perhaps today is I, Xiahou De’s lucky day! To encounter so many Lu Bu remnant soldiers! Ho, there’s also a big fish!” The Cao general on the horse laughed loudly. He obviously thought Liu Mang to be a top figure in the Lu Bu army. After all, he was wearing golden armor that isn't reserved for ordinary people. “Remnant soldiers of Lu Bu, listen up! Quickly get on your knees and surrender! You will be spared! Else, you will be immediately executed!”

Xiahou De?! Liu Mang did not have any recollection of such a person. The people besieging Xiapi should be Xiahou Yuan and Xiahou Dun. Is this Xiahou De also of the Xiahou clan?

With no time to think, Liu Mang used all his strength and roared “All troops prepare for engagement!” Actually, without Liu Mang’s words, all these soldiers already stood up. They stood up in spite of all the sword wounds, blade wounds, fatigue and pain. While they could die in battle, they absolutely cannot surrender to live for they are the Lu Bu army!

“Good backbone, to dare resist!” The praisingly expression of Xiahou De soon changed to one of bloodthirst. He too did not want them to surrender because if they did, they he won’t have anyone to kill. Having not taken part in the siege, he wanted to at least have some small fries for his blade.

“Haha. While having backbone is good. You must also have the abilities to back it up!” Xiahou De thumped his horse and it started lunging toward Liu Mang. In his point of view, Liu Mang, the person in a golden armor, was the highest officer in the whole battalion.

“Trying to kill me?! No fucking way!” After having experienced so many life and death encounters, Liu Mang too displayed a fierce expression.

Liu Mang was not an idiot. The opponent was riding a horse. To take the horse head on, he’ll just get run over and die.

Liu Mang picked up a long spear the ground and thrown it ferociously. Back when he was at the university he had won awards for the sport of javelin throw. Although the long spear that he picked up was much coarser than a regular javelin, the sport of javelin throw originated from the battlefield!

“What!” Seeing the spear flying toward him at high speed, Xiahou De was surprised. He wanted to strike the horse to dodge but because they were in the alley, there is nowhere for his horse to dodge to.

“Poof!” The spear pierced through the neck of the horse, nailing the horse on the ground. Xiahou De stumbled and fell from the horse. At this moment, there left a dying and howling horse.

“Opportunity!” Liu Mang delighted. This Cao army general fell from his horse. Also, he was leading the troops in the front. Thus, he was tens of steps away from the following Cao soldiers - a distance sufficient enough to kill him!

Liu Mang rushed toward Xiahou De and slashed his blade at him.

Although Xiahou De was just felled from his horse, being a person from the Xiahou clan, he immediately turned over and escaped the incoming slash.

“You dare!” Xiahou De got angry. For a descendant of the dignified Xiahou clan to be put in a situation like this. If he was to be beaten by some famous generals like Lu Bu, then so be it. But to get thrown onto the ground by some nameless golden armored individual and almost losing his life in the process, he cannot accept it.

The strength of an expert can be known once they start attacking! After standing up, Xiahou De immediately attacked Liu Mang like a storm.

“Bang bang bang!” A series of sparks appeared in the front, back, chest and neck of Liu Mang. Anywhere that could kill with a single strike was attacked by Xiahou De.

“What’s with this damn armor!” Xiahou De shouted. Countless times he could've killed this Lu Bu soldier in front of him but was unable to. That armor is very smooth. If you try to cut it then you will simply slip past it. Even a slash will end up with the blade slipping. With a stab that armor is rigid enough to defend it. The most critical thing is that this armor actually almost wrapped the whole body. Is it not heavy?!

“Hehe!” Liu Mang sneered. Fuck! So my martial arts isn’t up to par with you; I have less experience in the battlefield than you; but I have armor yo. I’m wearing a saint cloth yo. I’m like a fucking turtle shell. Try biting

me!

Fucker attacked me so many times, time for me to fight back!

“Xiahou De, prepare to die!” Having came to the battlefield of this world, without screaming he really cannot gather up his energy because of how tired he was.

“Someone like you think you can kill me?!” Xiahou De could tell that this golden armored individual is certainly not a general. His skills with the blade was much too weak. Although seasoned, they were the basic movements of the battlefield - lifting blade, waving the blade and slashing the blade.

There is nowhere open on the body… the face! This Aries Gold Cloth’s helmet did not have face protection. Xiahou De threw his blade away and picked up a sword. He immediately started piercing toward Liu Mang’s face.

“Fast!” Xiahou De’s speed is too fast. Before Liu Mang could react, the sword is already en route toward his face. This was actually the regular speed of generals. Xiahou De was also a second rated general, if he had met the generals under Lu Bu like Zhang Liao or Gao Shun, they could easily dodge the attack. Alas, Liu Mang wasn't a general!

He never practiced martial arts before. Not to mention generals, if he took off his armor he cannot even win against an ordinary soldier.

“Shit!” If this sword managed to stab his, then he is certainly finished.

“Am I going to die like this?!” Liu Mang closed his eyes. It shouldn't hurt too much to be stabbed in the head right?! I should die immediately right?!

However, he did not feel any pain even after a long time. Instead, there was a miserable shriek.

“Am I dead?! Why is the shriek not mine?!” Liu Mang opened his eyes in confusion.

In front of his eyes was Xiahou De with blood flowing out of his hand. His sword was dropped onto the floor. An arrow pierced through his hand.

It was shot from behind him! Liu Mang turned around and saw a lofty individual who is currently pulling a bow.

White armor? Head full of black hair and a height of eight foot. Wasn’t this exactly the person Liu Mang and the troops were trying to find - Lu Bu, boss Lu!

From there to here was over a hundred and fifty steps. Xiahou De’s hand in a distance of over a hundred and fifty steps was no bigger than a coin. To be capable of hitting the target with an arrow from that distance, this boss Lu’s archery certainly reached the pinnacle.

Former was it the shooting of a ji in Yuanmen and today was it the shooting of a palm in Xiapi.

[TL: Lu Bu once shot a ji, a chinese halberd, at Yuanmen to prevent a battle between Liu Bei and Yuan Shu's general Ji Ling. http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/0/0b/Long_Corridor-%E8%BE%95%E9%97%A8%E5%B0%84%E6%88%9F.jpg]

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 6 - Formation Breaker

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

Just as Lu Bu put away his bow, the general who stood next to him raised his hand and immediately a group of soldiers wearing armor and shields rushed forward shouting “Burst the formations, death to all enemies!”

“Formation Breaker?!” Liu Mang finally got to meet this so called most elite soldiers of the Three Kingdoms Period.

[TL: Gao Shun and his troops are collectively known as the Formation Breaker. They would break into enemy formations, get surrounded by enemies and destroy the formations.]

There exists many elite troops in the battlefields of the Eastern Han Dynasty.

Amongst the cavalries are the Heavy Cavalry of the Bing Province, Jiang Cavalry of the Liang Province, Penetrating White Horsemen of You Province and Ferocious Riders of Yan Province.

[TL: Wolf Cavalry of the Bing Province: 并州狼骑, I do not know if they actually ride wolves, highly doubt that. Chapter 6 mentioned 并州铁骑, which means Armored Cavalry of Bing Province, I think this is the correct one instead of the Wolf Cavalry. So I'm changing it to Heavy Cavalry.

Jiang Cavalry of the Liang Province: 凉州姜骑兵

Penetrating White Horsemen of You Province: 幽州白马义从

Ferocious Riders of Yan Province :兖州虎豹骑, lit. Tiger and Panther Riders of Yan Province]

Amongst the infantries are the Soldiers from Xu Province's Danyang County, Great Halberd Soldiers of the Ji Province, Skirmishers of the Ji Province, Qing Province Soldiers, and last but not least, Gao Shun's Formation Breaker.

[TL: not certain if the other troops have special names.. but I tried...

soldiers from Xu Province's Danyang county: 徐州丹阳兵,

Great Halberd (ji) Soldiers of the Ji Province: 冀州大戟士,

Skirmishers of the Ji Province: 冀州先登营,

Qing Province Soldiers: 青州兵,

Gao Shun's Formation Breaker: 高顺的陷阵营]

Although the Formation Breaker numbered only eight hundred, they rival army of thousands.

One of the reasons why Lu Bu was able to become a warlord in this era of heroes was precisely because of Heavy Cavalry of the Bing Province and the Formation Breakers.

Xiahou De getting dismounted and shot in the hand caused his troops to suddenly panic. Coupled with the reinforcements Lu Bu brought with him, Xiahou De's troops became lost.

"Sha!" Another general walked out leading the remaining Lu Bu army to

attack the Cao troops.

The Cao troops' morale collapsed on the first encounter.

Having dispersed the Cao troops, Liu Mang was helped up. Lu Bu walked toward him. He saw the bloodied Liu Mang and frowned. "Brother Liu Mang, why are you still here?! Didn't I tell you to break out of Xiapi?!"

Before Liu Mang could answer, Cheng Yu who was on the side already helped him answer. "Reporting to General, Sire brought us to find General. We wish to assist General in protecting General's family!"

"Nonsense!" Although Lu Bu said this, he was moved.

"Sire?!" The general leading the Formation Breaker puzzled.

"Right, I forgot introductions. Brother Liu Mang, this is general Gao Shun. He leads the Formation Breaker - eight hundred strong but could rival an army." Lu Bu certainly did not held his praise back. An army in ancient times numbered at least in the ten thousand. For eight hundred men to rival ten thousand, the Formation Breaker was certainly the elite of the elite.

"This is Liu Mang of the Han Dynasty royal family." Lu Bu did not mention that Liu Mang was the younger brother of Emperor Xian. He feared that he might hurt Liu Mang by mentioning that he was a bastard child. "For I to escape ascension to heaven,it was all because of brother Liu Mang" Lu Bu had a face full of gratitude. Had not been Liu Mang, perhaps he would've already been tied up before Cao Cao, enduring

shame and insults.

"I, Gao Shun, thank sire for saving my Lord!" Gao Shun was indeed a person of few words. Without saying much, he immediately held his fist toward Liu Mang.

[TL: In case you forgot, held fist is a sign of respect toward another individual.]

"You're too kind. General Gao Shun, your Formation Breaker is very admirable!" Honest men of few words are the most worthy people to associate with.

Gao Shun did not speak. However, his facial expression was full of pride. He had accepted the compliment.

Lu Bu went toward the Province Governor's Mansion in the inner city. However, even if he was the God of War, trying to save his wives and daughter alone was near impossible. Luckily for him, Gao Shun and Zhang Liao brought with them the eight hundred strong Formation Breaker toward the inner city. They knew that once that Xiapi was lost when the White Gate Tower got broken through. After discussing, they gave up on West Gate and rushed directly toward the inner city and rescued Lu Bu's family and met up with Lu Bu enroute.

"Milord, the Cao troops had been repulsed!" Another general returned.

"You must be Zhang Liao, Zhang Wenyuan. I am, humbly, Liu Mang." Without Lu Bu's introduction, Liu Mang already knew who he was. In the

battle of Xiapi, the only generals that didn't betray Lu Bu was these two.

[TL: Wenyuan is Zhan Liao's courtsey name.]

"This is?" Zhang Liao was confused. He did not know Liu Mang.

"He saved our lord!" Gao Shun said in a matter of fact manner.

"Thank you for saving my lord!" Like Gao Shun, Zhang Liao immediately showed his gratitude.

Only after the exchange of introductions did Liu Mang noticed that not only did Zhang Liao repulsed the Cao troops, he also brought back a captive. Wasn't this the man that almost killed Liu Mang earlier?

His hand disabled, hair loose and a desolate expression. Compared to the man charging on the horse, there was not a single hint of the heroic appearance he had earlier.

"Zhang Liao, why bother bringing back this Cao general? Just kill him as an offering to our banner!" Lu Bu frowned. He held no goodwill toward Cao generals. Had Cao Cao not attacked him, he would've still be the General Who Pacifies the East, still be the Province Governor.

[TL: By Province Governor, author likely meant the Governor of the Xu Province. Lu Bu declared himself that. He was earlier the Governor of the Yan Province.]

“Yes!” Zhang Liao, following the orders, was about to execute Xiahou De. However, he was stopped by Liu Mang.

“Xiahou De? Xiahou De!” Liu Mang remembered. In the Romance of Three Kingdoms, there really was a person named Xiahou De. He appeared chapter 70 of the novel. Elder brother of Xiahou Shang. He dismissed Huang Zhong for seeking battle. Slain by Yan Yan at Tiandang mountain.

Although Liu Mang doesn’t know much about Xiahou De, he knew who Xiahou Shang was. He’s Xiahou Yuan’s nephew. Being Xiahou Shang’s brother, he should also be Xiahou Yuan’s nephew. And now amongst the troops sieging the city was Xiahou Yuan. Perhaps something could come of this.

“What we need to do right now is to break out of the city. However, the surrounding Cao troops numbered tens of thousands. It is utterly impossible for us to break out with force! Thus, we could only use this trump card in front of us!” In the issue of breaking out of the city, Liu Mang was very concerned. After all, it was a matter of life and death to him.

“General Zhang Liao, is this Xiahou De’s army banner here?” Liu Mang asked Zhang Liao.

“Yes!” Due to Xiahou De being demounted, his banner was dropped by his troops. Luckily, the banner was not damaged in the strife.

“Brother Liu Mang plans to…” Zhang Liao seemed to have thought of something.

“Correct, I am going to do this…” Liu Mang said laughing. “Boss Lu, may I borrow your troops again?”

“Brother Liu Mang needn’t ask. Go ahead.” Lu Bu was neither a good person nor a bad person. He was just a genuine vile person. Whoever was good to him, he too will be good to that person.

[TL: I am translating Xiaoren (small person) as vile person. Xiaoren basically refer to individuals who aren’t necessarily bad per say but only seek immediate gains. As opposed to Junzi, which means lord’s son, a gentleman.]

“Good!” Liu Mang walked toward the front. “Is Gao Shun and Zhang Liao present?!”

“Present!” Zhang Liao and Gao Shun half kneeled on the ground.

“General Zhang Liao, lead your soldiers to remove our army’s black gowns and change into Cao army’s white gowns!”

“Yes!” Zhang Liao left following the orders.

“General Gao Shun, lead the Formation Breaker and conceal within General Zhan Liao’s troops! Be on standby at all time!”

“Yes!” Gao Shun started preparing with the Formation Breaker.

“Cheng Yu!” Liu Mang called out to Cheng Yu. “You are to remove general Xiahou’s armor and wear it onto yourself!”

“Ahhhh?!” Cheng Yu did not understand.

“Execute the orders!”

“Yes!” Cheng Yu also left following the orders.

“Boss Lu, as for you and I, we are to take off our armor and wait for the time of opportunity!” Yep, this was exactly what Liu Mang had in mind.

Xiapi had already been broken through. A steady stream of Cao troops was influxing the East Gate, West Gate, North Gate and the South Gate. To break out of the city was literally impossible. Even if the breakout was to be successful, high number of casualties would be needed.

Thus, a different method must be used - waving Xiahou De’s banner. Cheng Yu had a similar physique to Xiahou De. After wearing his armor, no one should be able to tell who he was without being up close. Additionally, the sky was getting darker.

Coupled with the troops Zhang Liao brought over changing to Cao army’s uniforms. As long as they do not encounter familiar people, they will not be found out.

While Gao Shun’s eight hundred Formation Breaker hiding within the disguised Lu Bu troops, ready to respond to any situations.

Having Lu Bu and himself change their armor was because the armors they were wearing was too obvious. Liu Mang was wearing a Golden Cloth. Even if the sky was dark, the armor will still reflect light. Lu Bu's white armor, on the other hand, was already well known to the Cao army.

With Lu Bu, Gao Shun, Zhang Liao and the eight hundred elite soldiers of the Formation Breaker... they are like a spear going straight for the enemy's chest.

Soon Zhang Liao and Gao Shun returned. They had finished setting up.

"Brother Liu Mang, let's go!" Lu Bu had already brought over his family. The current him did not want to waste any more time staying here.

"Boss Lu, worry not!" Liu Mang shook his head. He took off his Golden Cloth and placed it inside one of Lu Bu family's cart and changed into an ordinary soldier's armor.

Only now did Liu Mang knew the benefits of that Gold Cloth. Not only offering great protection, it was also lightweight from being constructed from aluminum alloy. The whole armor added up to only twenty some pounds. Opposing that, his current armor, which includes only the chest plate and the back plate, offering no protection elsewhere, was over fifty pounds with a helmet.

"Let the soldiers rest first. We will wait till night. Night is the time of our breakout!" Liu Mang found a place and laid down. He no longer minded the blood on the ground. It's fine as long as it's dry.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 7 - Breakthrough

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

Gradually the night deepened. With a bright moon in the sky, the scenery was like a picturesque charm - one that was meant for moon watching with beauties and poetries.

But Xiapi, the once flourishing city of Xu Province, was still in bloody strife.

The city was engulfed in countless flames. Sounds of fighting could be heard everywhere.

Lu Bu was sitting next to Liu Mang. While Liu Mang could rest, he was not able to. The burning city, every sound of fighting, every scream, every newly lit fire meant that his subordinates, those determined men, are being buried in this ancient city.

“What time is it?” Liu Mang suddenly woke up. He was was tired. Having prepared the whole morning for the Cosplay Contest and then killing all afternoon after being sent to this time. He was dead tired. So tired that he wanted to just lay down and not move at all. However, he still had to move. He did not want to die! He wanted to survive!

“It’s already the hour of Xu now.” Lu Bu said calmly.

“Hour of Xu?!” The ancients used the the ten heavenly stems and the

twelve earthly branches for their time into twelve two-hour periods. This hour of Xu is 7pm to 9pm. Liu Mang remembered that when he went to rest, the sun haven't set. Thus, it should be around 5pm. Now it's seven something, he had rested for about two hours.

"It's time for us to move into action!" The sky had darkened. Even with the huge fire in Xiapi, it was still hard to distinguish in the dark.

"Let's break out via the West Gate!" Lu Bu stood up to inform Gao Shun and Zhang Liao. However, he was stopped by Liu Mang.

"We cannot go through the West Gate!" Liu Mang said.

"Why?" Lu Bu was confused. The East Gate, which was the White Gate Tower, had been lost. The North Gate was guarded by Gao Shun. With Gao Shun currently being here, it meant that the North Gate was also lost. Following, the South Gate too was lost. There's only the East Gate being guarded by Chen Gong, it should still be standing.

"To go through the West Gate is seeking death itself!" Although Liu Mang does not understand the art of war, he knew of psychology. With three out of four gates of Xiapi being broken through, the last gate too is inevitably going to be lost. Thus, the last gate was no longer crucial to the siege of the city. Rather, it was a place for one to gain credits - the credit of breaking through the gate!

In this siege of Xiapi, Cao Cao brought with him generals Cao Ren, Xiahou Yuan and Xiahou Dun. Below them was the generals Xu Huang, Lu Qian and Li Dian. Not to mention the three peach brothers! A gathering of all star generals. Alas, this Xiapi had but four gates - not at all

dividable between all these generals. Thus, this last gate would be a scramble for credits.

"We will go toward the East Gate. We will break out through the East Gate!" Liu Mang made up his mind.

"East Gate? Are you out of your mind?!" Lu Bu shouted. "The East Gate was the White Gate Tower - the place we just lost. Because I was there, the East Gate was also the gate Cao Cao sent the most troops toward. How could we break through via the East Gate?! The East Gate is out of question. We are to break through via the West Gate!"

It was written that Lu Bu was a very stubborn person. Originally, Liu Mang did not believe that but now he does. Lu Bu rejected him without even giving him a chance to explain himself. No wonder Lu Bu still lose so thoroughly even with a first class military advisor Chen Gong, the first class troops Formation Breaker and the Heavy Cavalry of Bing Province, and himself, the pinnacle of super first class general.

But, Liu Mang had a way to deal with people like Lu Bu.

People like Lu Bu are like hedgehogs. If you stroke him following the spines, nothing would happen. If you stroke him against the spines, your hand will be pricked full of blood.

"Boss Lu, do you not want revenge?!" With just one sentence, Lu Bu's stubbornness was lifted.

"Revenge?!" Lu Bu's eyes shined. In this darkness, Lu Bu's eyes were

terrifying.

"Yes. Revenge. Bullied so badly by taitor Cao and betrayed by Wei Xu, Song Xian and Hou Cheng. Are you just going to leave without doing anything? Did you not want to kill those three traitors and give traitor Cao a payback?!"

"What must I do?!" Lu Bu was very direct. Although he was known as a hero, he was also a vile person. One of the main characteristics of a vile person was their vindictiveness.

Cao Cao brought forth to him so much pain, how could he possibly not give Cao Cao a payback? There's the three traitors Wei Xu, Hou Cheng and Song Xian too. Everyone have such an characteristic - one's hatred for traitors are much stronger than one's hatred for enemies. *E.g.* the Chinese traitors in the Sino Japanese War. Cursing them so much, enough for at least three generations of ancestors and descendants.

[TL: No idea who author decided to add it. Guess it resonates with the chinese people. Many still aren't over what the Japanese did in WWII.]

"Breakthrough via the East Gate!" Liu Mang spoke his mind. "It is true that the Cao troops was most heavily stationed in the East Gate. However, that is to guard against the Lu Bu army!"

"What do you mean?!" Lu Bu inquired.

"Hehe. We are now Cao troops under General Xiahou Yuan's nephew. Say, would the Cao troops be stopping us now?!"

“That’s right!” Lu Bu only now remembered that Liu Mang had Zhang Liao get all the soldiers to change into Cao army uniform. Under the dark sky, it would be hard to differentiate them from regular Cao soldiers.

“Cao army had broken through Xiapi. With the whole Xu Province in his fingertips, based on Cao Cao’s personality, how would he possibly not express his heroics and enjoy the feeling of a victor? Thus, he would certainly be holding a celebratory banquet for his acquisition of Xu Province in the building that indicates Xiapi - the White Gate Tower!” In the Romance of Three Kingdoms, boss Lu was killed on the same White Gate Tower.

“The moment when one is most proud is also the moment when one is most neglectful. Say, how strong would his guard be at that moment?! The reason why I had general Zhang Liao lead the front and the eight hundred Formation Breaker following behind was to see if there was a chance to directly assault Cao Cao’s tent. The three traitors are certainly going to be with Cao Cao. Perhaps, if we were lucky, we could get rid of Cao Cao, deciding Heaven and Earth in a single inning. Once Cao Cao is dead, both the Yan Province and the Xu Province will be set into chaos. Boss Lu could take advantage of the situation and replace Cao Cao. Even if we can’t kill him, we would still leave the city in quick succession, making a comeback at another date!”

[TL: 一局定乾坤: deciding Heaven and Earth in a single inning. Basically, one moved settled the game. Kill Cao Cao, win game.]

After hearing Liu Mang’s explanation, two words was evoked into Lu Bu’s mind - do it!

What the Lu Bu army was best at was their speed. Formation Piercer was the elite amongst elite and the rest of the Lu Bu army was those that had survived despite all odds; soldiers that had experienced hundreds of battles, their speed certainly not slow.

Holding the banners of Xiahou De, an army of “Cao soldiers” strut toward the White Gate Tower.

On the White Gate Tower

Cao Cao was holding a banquet. He cannot withheld himself from showing off his strength and vigour! That Lu Bu, the same Lu Bu who once held the twelve warlords to naught was defeated by him. Not only had he defeated Lu Bu, he also obtained Lu Bu's estates. Perhaps later he will obtain his harem too - he had yearned for Diaochan for quite some time now.

"Congratulations Prime Minister! Xiapi had been conquered; as for Xu Province, it is within the grasps of sire's palms. With Xu Province in hand, sire could feed a hundred thousand troops!" A scholar kneeled to congratulate Cao Cao.

"Haha. Rise, rise!" Cao Cao was in a very good mood. As for the person kneeling on the ground, he's Chen Qun who had previously been serving Lu Bu. This Chen Qun was a very talented individual, Lu Bu didn't use him? Well, I, Cao Mende will certainly use him. Haha.

"Being able to conquer Xiapi and defeat Lu Bu today is all because of everyone present! I, Cao Mende, thank you all here!" Xiapi ah, Xu Province ah, oh this was a fertile region. Although being the battlefield of four battles, it could still feed an army of a hundred thousand.

[TL: Literal translation of fertile region: land of fish and rice.]

Cao Cao didn't set his sight on the Xu Province just once or twice. The first time he attacked Xu Province, he did it under the guise of his father Cao Song's death. The then owner of Xu Province was Tao Qian, the old and corrupt. Although Tao Qian was no master of the arts of war, he

fought Cao Cao back just by using the wealth of Xu Province.

And now was the second time he attacked Xu Province. After much cultivation, Cao Cao finally fought all the way to Xiapi using his Qing Province soldiers. Hell, this was also because Lu Bu dug his own grave by refusing to listen to his advisor.

[TL: Lu Bu did not listen to his advisor Chen Gong's advice to attack Cao Cao when their troops were tired from a long march. Instead, he decided to stay in Xiapi and wait for Cao Cao to arrive.]

"Dare not, dare not!" Cao Cao's subordinates all lowered their heads, humbly refusing to accept Cao's thanks.

[TL: The reason why Cao Cao's subordinates are refusing to accept his thanks is because he is essentially their master, thus, he needn't thank them. It's a social thing, yo. They're trying to be humble.]

"Humph!" A cold humph was heard.

Cao Cao shifted his focus toward the originator of the humph - a tied up middle aged scholar. ...to even forget about him due to being too rejoiceful. Cao Cao, in a complacent manner, asked the scholar "perhaps Gongtai have some enlightenment?!"

This man, who was currently being tied up, was Lu Bu's number one military advisor, Chen Gong, Chen Gongtai.

[TL: Gongtai is the courtesy name of Chen Gong.]

“Despicable vile man, if not for the fact that Fengxian did not took my advise, how could you possibly conquered Xiapi! Humph!” Cheng Gong’s prejudice against Cao Cao had never once subsided. Instead, it only deepened over the years.

“Gongtai oh Gongtai, why must you be so. Had you joined me back then, then a seat would be reserved for you in this grand celebration. You could even exhibit your aspirations and grand prospect. To not choose I, Cao Mende, I initially thought it was because Gongtai’s sight was far reaching and had a better candidate. Alas, it appears that Gongtai’s sight was only so!” What Cao Cao meant was: Chen Gongtai, you’re so short sighted. Huge future prospects was presented in front of you and you refused it. Instead, you insist on relying on Lu Bu.

“Hehe, with you? You want me to join you to in your killing of innocents? What had Lu Boshe done to you? Not only did you kill his whole family, you wanted to kill him to? Cao Mende, you are a cruel and unscrupulous person!” The more Chen Gong said, the more excited his tone became.

[TL: Lu Boshe was an old acquaintance of Cao Cao, pretty much his uncle. Cao Cao killed his family when Cao stayed at Lu’s place while on the flee after Cao’s failed attempt at killing Dong Zhou. Cao heard the sharpening of knives and suspected that Lu’s family were plotting to harm him so he killed them for preemptive purposes. Cao remarked “I’d rather do wrong to others than allow them to do wrong to me!”]

[TL: lit. translation for cruel and unscrupulous: heart of wolf and lungs of dog. To call an individual as possessing a heart of wolf and lungs of dog meant that he is an immoral and evil person!”]

All the scholars and generals present were silent. It was their first time hearing the incident regarding Lu Boshe. Although Cao Cao compromised morality, he was still their lord.

"Silence!" Cao Cao's facial expression changed.

"What, you, Cao Mende, too is afraid? You, Cao Mende, too seek reputation?! If you want my silence then I will continue speaking! I dare you to try killing me!" Chen Gong sneered.

"You really believe that I dared not kill thou?!" Cao Cao pulled out his sword. The sword was called Heaven, forged with highly refined iron and rated as a superior weapon.

"Kill me! For every day that you, Cao Mende, does not kill me, I will continue speaking that day!"

The atmosphere was frozen.

Cao Cao, after looking at Chen Gong for a long time, suddenly had a smile on his face. "Speak, continue speaking! Curse, continue cursing!" The sword came down and chopped off the ropes that was tying Chen Gong.

"Gongtai must be thirsty!" Cao Cao ordered servants to bring wine cup and filled them with fine liquor. Doing this, he was telling Chen Gongtai to continue his curses and when he gets thirsty from all of curses, he could drink the wine to quench his thirst before continue cursing.

Chen Gong picked up the wine cup in front of him, drank the wine in a single gulp, and said while shaking his head “Cao Mende oh Cao Mende, I really did not expect for you to be this thick skinned!”

“Ha ha!” Cao Cao laughed boldly and stood up. “Oh Gongtai, it is not I, Cao Cao, who is thick skinned. Instead, I had already thrown away my regards for all the utterly filthy and debased guiding principles and ethics of the world. Everyone calls me a villain but none could do anything to this villain. All you self proclaimed men of noble characteristics, alas, still lose to this villain. If the price of being a noble man is to be insulted, trampled, perish and even killed, then I would rather be a villain who could realize his ambitions. Since ancient times the most treacherous person appears the most guileless, the most disloyal person appears the most loyal, loyalty and righteous, craftiness and evil, neither one of them could be read from just the surface. You had previously viewed me wrongly and now you are viewing me wrongly again; but I am still me, I had never once been afraid of people viewing me wrongly. Brother Gongtai, objectively speaking, do you not agree?”

Chen Gong have nothing to say. As the saying goes, persons who walk different paths cannot make plans together. Perhaps Cao Cao was right and perhaps he was right. Only heaven knew! Regardless, Xiapi had been conquered and Chen Gong was prepared to die.

Seeing the speechless Chen Gong, Cao Cao smiled. Afterall, he was Cao Cao’s first advisor. Back then, when Chen Gong discarded his official for him was something that really moved Cao Cao.

Just as Cao Cao was thinking away in his mind, a messenger ran in. “Reporting to the Prime Minister, General Hou Chen is requesting a

meeting!”

“Oh?” said Cao Cao. Hou Cheng had already surrendered himself. This time, he left to find Wei Xu and Song Xian and the Lu Bu that they captured. For Hou Cheng to come back, the captured Lu Bu must have also been brought back.

Cao Cao laughed in his mind, he said to Chen Gong that’s drinking sorrow drowning wine “Gongtai oh Gongtai, your former master is soon to arrive!”

“Allow him to come in!”

“Yes!” The messenger left.

“Ai!" Chen Gong sighed with a desolate face.

Hou Cheng strode in rapidly. He came toward Cao Cao and kneeled down. “Surrendered general Hou Cheng, Prime Minister!”

“General Hou Cheng need not be over courteous. Please rise. To defeat Lu Bu today, the Lu Bu army will thus be removed from this world. Thus, General, you need not call yourself a surrendered general, instead, it should ‘this general’! ” Cao Cao was stroking his beard. He appeared to be considering of Hou Cheng.

[TL: 末將: this general; honorific used for generals to address themselves to their superiors.]

“Yes, this general will execute the order!” This traitor Hou Cheng really eats this shit, he got deeply touched.

“How come generals Wei Xu and Song Xian are not with you? This Prime Minister was going to reward the two generals for capturing Lu Bu and opening the gates!” Cao Cao always rewards his soldiers based on merits, causing his soldiers to willingly give their lives for him.

“Eh!” It was fine before Cao Cao asked. However once Cao Cao asked, Hou Cheng started sweating bullets. ‘This general, this general!” stammering, Hou Cheng cannot speak.

“What happened?!” Cao Cao frowned.

“This general admits his mistake, please Prime Minister Cao forgive me! Lu Bu, Lu Bu broke free from his ropes and escaped!” Song Xian and Wei Xu had not told Hou Cheng about the of Liu Mang because if they did, then it would mean that they are idiots! To believe a man they met without good cause and in the end, to be betrayed by the same man, if this was not stupidity then what is?!

“Escaped?!” Before Cao Cao could speak, a black skinned general standing next to him had already spoke. “Did you not said that Song Xian and Wei Xu had already tied up that slave with three surnames?! To allow him to escape after throwing away his Sky Piercer, you really are a bunch of useless imbeciles!” His voice was extremely loud, his spittle had almost reached Hou Cheng’s face. Although Hou Cheng was behaving with utmost respect in front of Cao Cao, but in front of this general, he didn't have to - his face already started getting pale.

“Third brother, don’t be rude!” A large eared scholar walked out and pulled the black faced general away. That’s right, these are the three peach brothers. You don’t say Liu Bei really have a decent appearance - kind brows, pleasant eyes - from head to toes, if he cries then he really does look like he’s concerned for the whole world.

“Hahahaha, great escape, great escape!” The happiest person present was Chen Gong. If the wine from earlier was like water then it has now became bejeweled nectar.

“For the Water Dragon to return to the sea, to release the tiger back into the mountains! Mende, this Xu Province of yours is certainly not going to be stable!”

“En?!” With a gloomy face, Cao Cao did not speak. He too knew that Lu Bu was like a fierce tiger, once escaped, much less Xu Province, even Yan Province might no longer be calm and peaceful. Lu Bu originally had been one without foundation, at most he just returned to his roots.

But Cao Cao he cannot afford to play that game. To be attacked by Lu Bu every now and then, he could give up on a smooth and steady route toward world domination. By then, much less world domination, just being able to secure his own territories would already be pretty good.

Cao Cao took a deep breath. Without any anger, instead he showed a smile and said “General Hou Cheng is of no guilt. This Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, was a fierce tiger. To be able to open the gates, offer the Red Hare and the Sky Piercer is already great merit. General need not remorse!”

“Prime Minister!” Hou Cheng was moved to complete shambles. “Prime Minister, please rest assured. This manservant Lu Bu is known to be most concerned of his harem; generals Wei Xu and Song Xian is already en route toward the Province Governor's Mansion to bring them here. As long as we have them, Lu Bu would certainly surrender without a fight!”

“Oh?!” Cao Cao really did forgot that Lu Bu was a family man. You don’t say, Hou Cheng’s scheme was certainly useful. Had Lu Bu been like a certain someone, regarding wives and children as clothes, more willing to change clothes than to eat a meal, then Cao Mende was certainly at a loss.

Cao Cao glanced at Liu Bei.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 8 - Wrongly Kill Three Thousand

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

Cao Cao was indeed a formidable person, even when Lu Bu's escape reached his ears, he still kept a straight face and said laughing "Everyone drink, drink. Let's calmly wait for the good news from generals Song Xian and Wei Xu!"

When the boss was acting like this, then the subordinates could only be beaming with happiness. They thus began to indulge in the drinking and eating.

"Reporting!" Another messenger ran in. "Reporting to Prime Minister, General Xiahou Yuan is requesting for attendance!"

"Miaocai?" Cao Cao did not expect that. Wasn't Xiahou Yuan was responsible for the cleanup of the remnants of the Lu Bu soldiers in the city? Why would he come at this time?

[TL: Miaocai is Xiahou Yuan's courtesy name.]

Before Cao Cao could declare Xiahou Yuan's entrance, he already rushed in.

"Mende, Mende!" A worrisome Xiahou Yuan walked in hastily. In a panic, he called out to Cao Cao using his courtesy name.

[TL: as opposed to his title, the Prime Minister.]

"Miaocai, what happened?!" Rarely have Cao Cao seen Xiahou Yuan in such a panic. His composure was definite even when he helped Cao Cao shoulder the blame of his serious offence.

"Mende! Miaoren is gone!" Anxiety came rushing out of Xiahou Yuan's mouth.

"Miaoren?!" Cao Cao remembered. This Miaoren was the courtesy name of Xiahou Yuan's nephew, Xiahou De.

"What happened?!" Cao Cao inquired.

"Noon after Xiapi's East Gate got broken, my nephew Miaoren entered the city in hopes of exterminating the remnants of the Lu Bu soldiers before returning to the barracks at dusk. However, he is no where to be seen!"

"Eh!" Cao Cao understood. Xiahou Yuan was currently an over concerned elder. There exists neither day nor night in times of war. Once in the battlefield, one's thought will be on how to survive and kill more enemies, how would one possibly consider about time?!

Xiapi has been broken through, all those that remains are the remnant soldiers of Lu Bu's army - simply unable to counterattack. Xiahou De was, afterall, a thousand men general and being able to enter the city meant that his contribution toward the siege wasn't simple.

[TL: I am translating 牙将 (lit. tooth/ivory general) as thousand men general because it mentioned that Xiahou De is a thousand men general; 牙将 is a position during the ancient time that basically denotes the person to be a lesser, lower rank, general/officer.]

"Miaocai, you're overthinking. Even Xiapi's largest tiger Lu Bu fled, say, do you still think we'll have a situation on our hand?! The Lu Bu army numbered seventy thousand. Situated on the four walls were no less than fifty thousand. Our months long siege have already forced these fifty thousand troops to desert the city. There are but some ten thousand remnant soldiers left in the city. With the Qing Province Soldiers that Miaoren have, nothing could possibly happen! Maybe he's trying to attain more accomplishments to impress you, Miaocai!" Cao Cao consoled Xiahou Yuan. This Miaocai, really, to be this overly concerned, he was treating his nephew even better than his children!

During the year of the great drought, in order to help his dead younger brother's daughter survive, he cutted off his son's rations. And even now, his two sons are already adults! Xiahou Heng and Xiahou Ba are already of age to join the military. However, this Miaocai was just unwilling to bring his two sons with him. Instead, he brought his nephew under his wings.

"But Mende..!" Xiahou Yuan still wanted to say something. He felt that something is wrong. At this moment, a messenger came.

"Reporting to Prime Minister, thousand men general Xiahou De is requesting return to camp!"

"Ha ha. Miaocai, look at you worrying. Didn't he just arrive?!" Cao Cao patted Xiahou Yuan's shoulder. If not for these old brothers of his, Cao

Cao wouldn't be where he is now.

"Well, I guess I was over worried!" Hearing the notification from the messenger, Xiahou Yuan should have relaxed. However, he was still uncomfortable.

"Allow thousand men general Xiahou De to return to camp!"

"Come, Miaocai, let's go together to see how much accomplishment our Xiahou clan's tiger cub managed to attain!" The Xiahou clan and the Cao clan are of one family. Cao Cao's original name was Xiahou Cao. He was adopted to the Cao clan, thus declaring himself to be of the Xiahou clan was correct too.

[TL: Cao Cao's father was the adopted son of Cao Teng, one of the favorite eunuch of Emperor Huan. His original clan was the Xiahou clan. Xiahou Dun and Xiahou Yuan was Cao Cao's cousins.]

"Come gentlemen, let's go together!" He grabbed Xiahou Miaocai as he said that and walked out of the White Gate Tower down toward the barracks.

"Come come come, let's have a look at Prime Minister's family's tiger club!" These Cao subordinates cannot not give Cao Cao face, they also wanted to get to know of this Xiahou clan's little general. Even Chen Gong who did not want to go was pulled toward by the crowd.

[TL: giving face in chinese meant respecting the person]

Underneath Xiapi, a group of soldiers waving the banners of Xiahou De was solemnly looking at this ancient city.

“Brother Liu Mang, are you certain that this is going to work?!” A soldier wearing ordinary Cao army outfit and holding a spear whispered to another soldier.

Surrounding them from all sides was Cao army. If they mess up, they likely will be annihilated.

“Don’t worry! Even if we can’t get our revenge, can’t kill the two traitors Wei Xu and Song Xian, but to break out from here is still feasible!” That’s right, these two soldiers are Liu Mang and Lu Bu who have taken off their armor. In actuality, Liu Mang’s palms was already covered in sweat.

With a height of ten meters and a thickness of seven meters, this was the city defense of Xiapi!

Back during the day it still belonged to Boss Lu, but now Boss Cao had taken over it.

If it wasn’t for Guo Jia’s tactics of redirecting the waters of Yi and Si rivers to flood Xiapi, perhaps Boss Lu really could defend against Boss Cao’s siege.

Alas, there exists no such thing as ‘if’ in this world.

Currently what they are about to do is to break out of this thousand year old ancient city.

“Revenge!” Lu Bu held his head high looking at the tall building in front of him. It was the White Gate Tower, the building that indicates Xiapi, the place that almost cost him his life.

“By the order of the Prime Minister, general Xiahou De is permitted to return to camp!” A messenger with a loud voice shouted on the city gate.

“By the order of the Prime Minister, general Xiahou De is permitted to return to camp!” One by one, the orders quickly transmitted through the banners.

“kakakakaka!” The gates of Xiapi slowly opened.

The expressions of Liu Mang and Lu Bu gradually got more cheerful.

Right at this moment, bold laughters was heard from the walls. Immediately this voice cause Liu Mang and Lu Bu to tighten their hearts.

“Miaocai oh Miaocai, didn’t I say you’re overly concerned? Look at how valiant and formidable looking our Xiahou clan’s tiger cub is!”

“Cao Cao, this is Cao Cao’s voice!” Lu Bu had dealt with Cao Cao before - in Dongzhou’s mansion back in Luoyang, in the Hulao Pass, and a couple months ago when Cao Cao asked him to surrender! Thus, Lu Bu was

familiar with Cao Cao's voice.

"Prime Minister need not praise him too much. This kid is like an ox, refusing to move unless he was to be met with a couple more whips!" Seeing his nephew's banner and the standing army, Xiahou Yuan gradually calmed down. He even called Cao Cao by his title.

"An unpolished jade is precisely one that requires guidance, ha ha! Come come come, let's go look at Miaoren! Having cleaned up the Lu Bu army remnants, Miaoren certainly tried very hard!" The laughing Cao Cao brought with him Xiahou Yuan and the other scholars and generals and proceed to walk down the city gate tower and toward the camp.

"Boss Lu remain calm, calm!" Liu Mang placed his hand on Lu Bu's. Lu Bu was currently trembling. He was trembling with rage. In particular, he was in rage because of a general behind Cao Cao! Liu Mang had already met Wei Xu and Song Xian, thus the only other person who could make Lu Bu anger like so was Hou Cheng!

Liu Mang was very scared that Boss Lu would just rush out screaming 'Hou Cheng, prepare to die!' and then they all end up being doomed. Fortunately, boss Lu managed to restrain himself.

Lu Bu already had his hand on his spear. Once Boss Cao walked down the city gate tower, he'll immediately launch a surprise attack. This way, not only Cao Cao will be out of luck, many of his retainers could be killed too.

Cao Cao was soon to walk down the tower... the most ambitious man of the generation was soon to meet his end in the hands of the turtledove

tiger.

[TL: turtledove is a bird that is noted for the apparent affection shown for its mate.]

Suddenly, a sound of notification was heard and a messenger ran over.

“Reporting! Reporting to Prime Minister, general Wei Xu and Song Xian rushed toward Lu Bu’s mansion to capture his family. When they arrived, Lu Bu’s mansion have already been deserted!”

“What?!” Cao Cao really got angry this time. Lu Bu escaping is one thing, but if his family was captured then there still existed a way to suppress that tiger; but now, that method too is lost. Not to mention that there was a beauty that Old Cao wanted for a long time amongst the escapees.

“What a bunch of useless imbeciles!” was something Old Cao did not say. He did want to hurt Hou Cheng and the other surrendered generals’ feelings because of this.

“Where are Wei Xu and Song Xian?!” Cao Cao said dully. His hands was stroking the hilt of his sword attached to his waist. Those familiar with Cao Cao knows that it’s signs of Cao Cao’s suspicion problem. Might Song Xian and Wei Xu are feigning their surrender? Are they giving up Xiapi in exchange for Lu Bu’s escape?! Afteral, because of Guo Jia’s tactics, Xiapi was already a dead city. To capture it was only a matter of time.

“Generals Wei Xu and Song Xian are currently still on the road rushing

here!"

Old Cao's facial expression became increasingly volatile. He even forgot that he should be receiving Xiahou De and came to a complete stop on the tower stairs. In this moment of delay, another messenger ran over.

"Reporting! Reporting to Prime Minister, General Xiahou Dun reports intelligence from the sheltered defeated soldiers of thousand men general Xiahou De in the western part of the city that general Xiahou De is currently being held captive by the Lu Bu army. General Xiahou Dun wishes that Prime Minister would immediately send troops to rescue general Xiahou De!"

"What? Miaoren was captured?!" Xiahou Yuan was the first to rushed toward the front. He grabbed the messenger and shouted loudly. His voice so loud that even Liu Mang and Lu Bu heard it clearly.

If Xiahou De was to be captured, then who exactly are these Xiahou De soldiers down there?

"Not good!" Cao Cao was alarmed.

"Not good!" Liu Mang was also alarmed. There existed a major loophole in his strategy - the dispersed soldiers of Xiahou De. Although Xiapi was large, there still exists a chance of the soldiers running back to camp when they numbered a thousand.

Once they ran back, then Liu Mang's plan to use the banners of Xiahou De was certainly seeking death.

Fortunately Xiahou Yuan lost it and roared out, allowing Lu Bu and Liu Mang to hear it. If it wasn't for Xiahou Yuan's 'help' then boss Cao, having received the news at the perfect moment, could give praise on the outside while secretly cover the location with archers. If that was the case, then they could only get gang up and killed by Cao's men!

"Do it!" With the roar from Liu Mang, the Lu Bu army rushed out directly toward the Cao army. The soldiers under Zhang Liao quickly dispersed toward the sides, revealing in the middle the soldiers of Formation Breaker wearing armor and wielding blades and shields.

"Burst the formations, death to all enemies, kill!" Cao Cao's army was caught unprepared. The guards protecting Cao Cao was immediately clashed away.

"Hurry!" Old Cao was prompt to decide, right away he started crawling up toward the city walls. The stairs of the city walls were narrow without railing, this one move from Old Cao caused multiple people aside to be forced aside. Fortunately for the generals, they could still stand steady using their well trained bodies. But for those civilian court officials, oh did they suffer.

The first unlucky person was Chen Gui, Chen Hanyu. This old man who calculated so hard for the death of Lu Bu, before he was able to witness Lu Bu's demise, was instead pushed aside by Cao Cao. This old and feeble man, how could he withstand Cao Cao's strength? Without much resistance, he was pushed down the city gate tower. When he finally noticed that it was Cao Cao who pushed him down, he's already en route toward the ground. This old man glared so hard. He sold out Liu Bei and then he sold out Lu Bu all so that his Chen clan could embrace Xu

Province and become hegemons in Xu Province. Alas, he was no longer able to wait until the day when that happens.

"Curses you Cao Mende!"

[TL: the old guy actually said: 'Cao Mende, your death will not be well.' Basically saying that he is to suffer before he dies. It's a common chinese curse thing.]

The old man uttered a curse and fell onto the ground, flattened into a meat patty.

Seeing the panicking Cao Cao, Lu Bu grabbed his spear and rushed upward. "Lu Bu is here, traitor Cao, prepare to die!" Although he's not in possession of the Sky Piercer nor that flowery-patterned battle robe, he was still Lu Bu, he was still that super general. No matter where he goes, no one could stand up to him.

"Miaocai, save me!" Xiahou Yuan came forward. He drew his belt sword and immediately thrust at Lu Bu. Xiahou Yuan was not someone of the same level as Lu Bu. Not to mention he's currently holding a sword. As the saying goes, the longer the stronger, the shorter the more dangerous. Soon many blood grooves appeared on Xiahou Miaocai's body. If it wasn't for his battle armor, he would've already been killed by Lu Bu. With a spear strike, Lu Bu swept Xiahou Yuan aside. Although Xiahou Yuan can't stand up against Lu Bu, it would still require some thirty bouts for Lu Bu to kill him. If he killed Xiahou Yuan then he could forget about Cao Cao. That dude's running fast as hell!

"Scram!" Lu Bu was blocked by Xiahou Yuan for only a moment but Cao

Cao had advanced tens of meters. Soon, one of Cao Cao's guard was standing in front of him, blocking his path. Cao Cao immediately drew his Sword of Heaven without saying anything and killed that guard on the spot, opening his escape path.

"Slave of three surnames, don't you dare act so insolent with I, Zhang Yide of Yan, here!" shouted a black faced burly man. He was about to jump out to engage Lu Bu but was instead held back by the Big Eared person.

[TL: Yide is Zhang Fei's courtesy name. Yan (燕) was a state in ancient China.]

"Zhang Fei?!" Lu Bu frowned. The reason why his reputation was so bad was half Zhang Fei's fault. That phrase 'slave of three surnames' had deprived him for years.

If it was before, then Lu Bu would've already engaged Zhang Fei to a battle till the death. But now, his focus is on killing Cao Cao.

The Big Eared Liu who has been protected by his brothers the whole time maneuvering around, sometimes engaging and sometimes withdrawing. He was calmly watching this battle. This Xu Province and this Xiapi originally belonged to him. Alas, it was taken by two bandits. Now that these bandits are killing each other, he'll be happy regardless of who died.

He stopped Zhang Fei right when he was about to jump out to engage Lu Bu. Oh how he wishes that Cao Cao will die in the hands of Lu Bu!

Once Cao Cao's dead, it would've been the best opportunity for Liu Bei. Relying on the title of 'royal uncle,' he could've assimilate over half of Cao Cao's territory.

"Big brother, why are you stopping me?!" Zhang Fei was discontent. The person he hated the most was Lu Bu. Lu Bu was more handsome than him. Lu Bu's martial abilities was stronger than his. His wife was even the world's number one beauty! This kind of 'Mr. Perfect' was the natural enemy of an loser like Zhang Fei! jk, jk!

[TL: yep, author says jk jk. Author refers to Lu Bu as GaoFuShuai and Zhang Fei as DiaoSi. They are both internet slangs. GaoFuShuai meant that the person is tall, rich and handsome. Basically Mr. Perfect. Diaosi meant that the guy is of mediocre appearance, humble family, no car, no house and no connection. Basically a loser.]

Zhang Fei was a butcher before swore brotherhood with Liu Bei and Guan Yu. What butchers hated the most wasl people who kick their benefactors in the teeth. It was pretty obvious that Lu Bu was such a person in the eyes of Zhang Fei.

[TL: Lu Bu because he betrayed his adopted father twice. But then again, Liu Bei betrays everyone.]

"Third brother, traitor Cao and traitor Lu are killing each other. There is no need for you to join the fray. Just wait and observe for changes!" Liu Bei eyes was flashing. In his heart, he was shouting 'kill, kill! Lu Bu, kill Cao Cao and then get killed by Cao Cao's army! Then this Xu Province; no, this Xu and Yan Provinces will be mine!'

Guan Yu did not speak. Instead, he only looked at his older brother. He found himself to increasingly not understand his older brother.

Being delayed by Zhang Fei's roar, Xiahou Yuan came rushing up again. Although bloodied, he still remains strong.

"Why must you?!" Lu Bu regretted a bit. A general like this would rather die to protect Cao Cao. Met with kind of camaraderie, Lu Bu heart saddened a bit. However, once again he thought of the trio of Hou Cheng, Wei Xu and Song Xian!

An obscure flame soon began to rage in his heart. Cao Cao, for which reasons are you able to attain such loyal men?! For which reasons!

The way he looked at Xiahou Yuan changed. He changed his mind. He will kill Xiahou Yuan to let Cao Cao understand the feelings of heart break!

Cao Cao too saw that Xiahou Yuan's heavily injured. Another general rushed toward him from behind, Cao Cao shouted "Hou Cheng-Hou Cheng, go help Miaocai kill Lu Bu!"

"Kill Lu Bu?!" Hou Cheng was about to cry! He was already scared as hell when he betrayed Lu Bu, fearing that Lu Bu would just come next to him and kill him. The longer he was under the commands of Lu Bu, the more aware he was of how frightening Lu Bu was - Lu Bu was simply inhuman, he's like a God.

Originally he could escape. But now, he was exposed by Cao Cao. And

to kill Lu Bu?! Prime Minister Cao, was it your literature teacher that taught you math?!

A pinnacle of super first class general against a first class general and a second class general…

…and to kill this pinnacle of super first class general?! He would've already be fortunate if he didn't get chopped into meat paste.

Can Hou Cheng escape? He too wanted to escape but cannot. Even if Lu Bu focus still did not land on him yet, he still cannot run away. He had betrayed Lu Bu, he couldn't possibly get back into the Lu Bu army. If he refuse to listen to his new boss Cao Cao now, then in this wide world, perhaps there really isn't a place for Hou Cheng to go to.

"Fuck it!" Hou Cheng gritted his teeth, picked up his blade and rushed toward Lu Bu.

Although Hou Cheng's appearance surged the rage within Lu Bu, he still did not forget his original intention of killing Xiahou Yuan to have Cao Cao experience the pain of heart break.

As more bouts goes on, Hou Cheng, contrary to expectations, was fine. Xiahou Yuan, on the other hand, received more wounds.

"Swoosh!" Lu Bu's spear suddenly came crushing down on Xiahou Yuan's helmet. The helmet was knocked flying out. Xiahou Yuan too was knocked unconscious by this strike.

“Oh no!” Hou Cheng’s chest tightened. Unable to win even when they’re two on one, and now one was done for, was this still even possible?! With ever changing expression, Hou Cheng wondered if he should get on his knee and beg for mercy and see if Lu Bu could forgive him.

Right at this moment, another sudden change happened. Four armies came rushing toward the White Gate Tower. Holding torches, their banners: Song, Wei, Yu, Xiahou!

“Reinforcement!” Hou Cheng had an expression of happiness. Currently there no longer exist many Lu Bu troops in Xiapi with a functioning organization. Most certainly these armies rushing here are the Cao troops.

Song was Song Xian, Wei was Wei Xu, Yu was Yu Jin and Xiahou was Xiahou Dun!

‘Brother Song Xian and Wei Xu are there too!’ Hou Cheng was grinning from ears to ears. His plans of getting on his knees and beg for mercy turned to standing in front of Xiahou Yuan, protecting him.

“Vile!” Lu Bu really wanted to kill Xiahou Yuan and Hou Cheng but he knew that even though Hou Cheng sucks, he was still a second rated general. Killing these two people was easy but he likely won’t be able to escape one he killed them!

Regardless of which army, either one of these four have more troops than his own!

“Where is Prime Minister Cao! Yu Jin is here! Sha!”

“Mende, don’t panic! Yuanrang have arrived! Men, follow me!” Xiahou Dun and Yu Jin rushed over after hearing noises of fighting atop the White Gate Tower. Wei Xu and Song Xian rushed over to report their failed mission of capturing Lu Bu’s family. These four armies conincidentially happened to arrive at exactly the same time!

[TL: Xiahou Dun’s courtesy name is Yuanrang.]

“Humph!” Lu Bu abandoned Hou Cheng and Xiahou Yuan and walked down the city walls.

“Fuck!” Liu Mang hacked a Cao soldier to death. Right when they were about to kill boss Cao, right when boss Lu was able to escape, who would’ve expected that four armies would show up!

Four armies! Each one of them having more soldiers than them! Even with the Formation Piercers, they cannot take on these armies! And there was even Wei Xu and Song Xian amongst these armies, if he was to be captured by these two, how would he possibly survive?! Perhaps even death would be a luxury ~!

“Fucking hell, if they could kill each other than it would’ve been perfect!” Lu Mang burst out in curses. Suddenly, he had an idea! Kill each other! Liu Mang laughed!

He put down his sword, held his fist up and shouted toward the sky “Generals Song Xian and Wei Xu, now is the best time to revolt!”

“What?!” Zhang Liao and Gao Shun was the first to be shocked. Wei Xu and Song Xian were pretending their surrender?! Impossible! If that was the case, they would not need to tie up the lord!

“What?!” Yu Jin and Xiahou Yuanrang too was shocked. Song Xian and Wei Xu are going to revolt?! They shouldn’t be? The Lu Bu army was already defeated, what good is it for them to revolt?

“This is the enemies tactic to drive a wedge between allies!” Yu Jin composed himself.

“What?!” The one who was most shocked was Cao Cao. He was already skeptical of others. And now, the level of skepticism increased by one. Adding on to that Xiahou Yuan’s injury and his own previous speculation, Cao Cao immediately ‘realize.’

“Good. Good. What profound stratagem these two traitors Wei Xu and Song Xian had! What profound stratagem! To deceive I, Cao Mende! To deceive the whole world!” Cao Cao’s murderous aura got increasingly heavier. Totally, he was almost killed by Lu Bu. “To abandon few for larger gain! He he, using Xiapi to exchange for my life! What profound stratagem, What profound stratagem!”

“Prime Minister, that’s wrong, that’s wrong!” Hou Cheng panicked. What kind of end was this?! Who exactly is the rebel and who is a good man?!

“Hou Cheng?!” Cao Cao’s eyes was flashing red, signifying that he was about to kill someone. “You, come over!’ He waved Hou Cheng to come near him.

“Prime Minister, this general is willing to use his life as a guarantee that Generals Wei Xu and Song Xian would never betray the prime minister!” Hou Cheng kneeled. His face full of fear.

“Will not betray?” Cao Cao muttered. Suddenly he thrusted the Sword of Heaven in his hand into Hou Cheng’s chest.

“Poof!” A ray of blood sprayed all over like flowers. The whole Sword of Heaven was thrusted into Hou Cheng’s chest.

“Prime Minister...Prime Minister…You...You...!” Under the heavy pain, even his speech was no longer agile. “...why...why?!” His eyes full of doubt.

“Will not betray! Then why did you all betrayed Lu Bu? Since you said you’re going to guarantee it with your life, then I shall give you what you want and take your life!” After kicking away Hou Cheng who died with remaining grievance, Cao Cao shouted. “Ordering the whole army! Annihilate Wei Xu, Song Xian and the Lu Bu army remnants right away!” At that moment, the temperament of the an ruthless villain was once again present!

Rather wrongly kill three thousand than to let one go, this was Cao Cao’s life motto!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 9 - Home?

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

“Prime Minister, Prime Minister! We have been accused wrongly!” Song Xian and Wei Xu turned pale with fright. The raging man on the city walls was indeed Cao Cao. They risked their life on capturing Lu Bu in hopes of attaining wealth and prosperity. And now? Their wealth and prosperity was gone and their new boss even ordered for their death!

Although Song Xian and Wei Xu cried of being wrongly accused, no one stood up for them because there were already Cao troops that have started executing the orders from Cao Cao. Maybe the sensible Yu Jin would try to constrain his men but Xiahou Yuanrang wasn’t one who would do that! Like brothers, he grew up together with Cao Cao. For Cao Cao to be surrounded, he was already burning with anxiety. Adding onto that, he had received news of the injuries that his elder brother Xiahou Yuan suffered - causing Xiahou Dun to be burning with rage!

“Kill, Kill, Kill!” He could care less about some Song Xian or Wei Xu. All he cared was Mende’s orders, to kill them!

“Yuanrang, Yuanrang!” Yu Jin tried to stop the berserk Xiahou Dun. But alas, he was too late. Xiahou Dun’s army had already began killing Wei Xu and Song Xian’s men. Although Wei Xu and Song Xian’s men were all surrendered Lu Bu soldiers, they are not people who would just stand there and be attacked without fighting back.

You dare slash at me with your blade, then I shall return you a thrust of

my sword - the four armies was immediately thrown into chaos! Before they could reach the Lu Bu remnants, they themselves was thrown into chaos - confronting, attacking and killing each other!

"Vile!" With his sword, Yu Jin killed a soldier from the Song Xian army that was about to bring him harm. There was nothing he could do. While he could kept his head cool and control his own army, he cannot control the other three armies!

"Attention Men! Kill them all!" Yu Jin cannot help but give out such an order. Afterall, as a general, he cannot just stay there and not fight back. If he did, then how would he be able to lead an army in the future?!

"Sha!" Under the White Gate Tower was a field of chaos. Xiahou Yuanrang's army was attacking Song Xian and Wei Xu's. Song Xian and Wei Xu fought back but also included Yu Jin's army in their retaliation, forcing him to join the fray. With the sky already being dark, now with this chaos, soldiers ended up not being able to tell allies from enemies apart and sometimes ended up fighting their own people.

"Men, onward! Generals Song Xian and Wei Xu are trying right themselves. Our purpose here is to kill Cao Cao!" shouted Liu Mang as he saw the increasingly chaotic battle that he created.

"This, this!" Gao Shun led the Formation Breaker and began charging straight ahead. He was already prepared to fight till the death escape when he saw the four Cao armies' arrival. Even if the Formation Breaker was to be completely annihilated, he planned to protect his lord's escape. But with what had happened now, his Formation Breaker was instead able to take things leisurely. It was all because of that scholar (from Gao Shun's point of view, Liu Mang was a scholar because have neither facial

hair not strength). With a single speech, he actually managed cause the self destruction of the four armies.

What is the stratagem of sowing dissension? This was the stratagem of sowing dissension!

[TL: 反间计 is one of the Desperate Stratagems within the 36 Stratagems.

Undermine your enemy's ability to fight by secretly causing discord between him and his friends, allies, advisors, family, commanders, soldiers, and population. While he is preoccupied settling internal disputes, his ability to attack or defend is compromised.]

A few words came out of the the rarely spoken mouth of Gao Shun. “Teacher, what profound talent!” Teacher is what the ancients called the learned people. Gao Shun had recognized Liu Mang. Before Gao Shun could finish his praise, his eyes suddenly widened and he immediately shout “Teacher, careful!”

[TL: The word Gao Shun is calling Liu Mang is 先生, which means mister. It could also mean teacher. This is especially true for certain chinese dialects. Thus, I am putting it as teacher because mister makes no sense.]

“Fuck!” Liu Mang heard Gao Shun’s shout, a spear was being thrusted toward his face.

“Brat, prepare to die!” The man thrusting the spear at his was Song Xian. Song Xian was enraged at how he believed this man called Liu Mang. And now, not only did the Lu Bu army wanted to kill him, his new boss wanted to kill him too. In this extreme hatred, his luck seemed to

have increased and actually found Liu Mang in this chaos. Even if Liu Mang took off his golden armor, Song Xian still recognize him. Hell, even if Liu Mang turned to ashes Song Xian would still recognize him. Afterall, his voice was already familiar to Song Xian.

"Bastard not allowing me to live, then you might as well die for me!" Song Xian went crazy. Current Xiapi was filled with Cao troops. Song Xian and Wei Xu was currently stuck between a Xiahou Dun and Yu Jin on one side and Lu Bu and the Formation Breaker on the other side. Thus, his death was pretty much guaranteed. Therefore, he went crazy.

All because of this brat! All of this happened because of this brat in front of him! Kill him! KILL HIM! Under such intense hatred, Song Xian actually managed to break through his limit, his abilities increased from that of a second rated general to that of a first rated general.

"Oh shit, I'm totally fucked this time!" Liu Mang felt very bitter. To be the target of two generals in a single day... while he had Lu Bu's rescue during his encounter with Xiahou De and also his Aries Gold CLoth helping him defend... but now? Boss Lu have yet to come back and he's wearing only an ordinary soldier's armor! His death was pretty much guaranteed!

"Teacher!" Gao Shun eye sockets was about to burst. He wanted to rush forward and rescue Liu Mang but he cannot get there in time - he was tens of steps away from Liu Mang and there are soldiers in blocking the path.

"Having Cao Cao fall for my scheme, I think my name should've be going down in history!" Watching the approaching spear tip, Liu Mang no longer had any fear. Instead, he had a relaxing feeling.

From saving Lu Bu till the breakout of now, Liu Mang's concentration had been at the highest degree, never once slacking. In order to survive, he had risked his life and given his all. Now that the inescapable death was coming toward him, his tauted nerves could now ease up.

"Ding ding dang!" A series of sparks flashed. Song Xian's rapidly approaching spear was knocked flying away. It flew by the corner Liu Mang's mouth, cutting it.

Under the stinging pain of the wound, Liu Mang finally came to. He was saved by someone!

Better alive than dead. Liu Mang, without regard for appearance, immediately drop and rolled to the side. Survival was of utmost importance!

Only after having escaped the range of Song Xian's spears did Liu Mang had a chance to see who exactly it was that saved him.

Golden armor, huge horns, gorgeous patterns all over and some decorative gemstones - a great armor!

Wrong, wrong! Liu Mang shook his head strongly. Isn't this my fucking Aries Gold Cloth?!

Did the Cloth moved on its own to save the owner? Bullshit! This ain't some fantasy novel!

"Song Xian, my father have treated you well and you dared to betray him! Today, on behalf of my father, I shall clean house! Prepare to die!" A

sharp and clear voice of a female resounded.

"A woman?!" The person wearing his armor was a woman?!

"Miss!" Song Xian put away his spear and nervously watched the female Saint standing in front of him. "It really wasn't that I, Song Xian, wanted to betray your father. Instead, it was because Marquis of Wen treated us like damnable livestocks! What did Hou Cheng did wrong? He recovered the warhorses of the Armored Cavalry of Bing Province and should be rewarded for his accomplishments. But Marquis of Wen not only did not reward him, he almost executed him all because Hou Cheng drank a little wine! How exactly do you expect us to fight for him when he treat us so?!"

[TL: translating 大小姐 as Miss. 大小姐 literally means eldest ojou-sama. Yep, used japanese because I cannot think of a better way to describe it. Miss is the closest english counterpart.]

[TL: Saint… from Saint Seiya… because… well… she's wearing a Saint's Cloth so she's a Saint… 圣斗士 literally means Saint Warrior]

"Miss?!" Liu Mang remembered. Lu Bu did had a daughter borne to his wife Lady Yan. Originally planned to be married to Yuan Shu's son for an alliance but was utterly canceled due to Chen Gui's prevention.

Is that her? Liu Mang cannot see her face. However, based on her back view and that sweet voice, he knew that she was a beauty that could damage the country and cause suffering to people.

[TL: Basically he said based on her back view and her voice, he knew she would be super beautiful and enough to cause wars and suffering cause

people will be fighting over her due to her beauty.]

Afterall, with the handsome genes from Boss Lu, his daughter can't possibly be ugly.

A girl! A beauty! Unable to help himself, Liu Mang's facial appearance became like that of a pig. One cannot blame Liu Mang, anyone else would also be like this if they were a virgin of twenty some years!

"And thus you decided to betray, right?!" An tranquil and calm voice appeared.

"Eh? Boss Lu?!" Liu Mang wiped away the saliva on the corner of his mouth. He did not know when Lu Bu appeared behind him. Being in a battlefield, if it was an enemy instead of Lu Bu, he would've been killed.

Lu Bu set his sight on Liu Mang. Seeing the corner of his mouth, Lu Bu had an expression like a smile yet not like a smile. Seeing Lu Bu's expression, Liu Mang had a guilty conscience. He hoped that Lu Bu did not see through him checking out his daughter.

"Father!" The female Saint stood to the side for Lu Bu.

"Lo-lord!" Seeing the sudden appearance of Lu Bu, Song Xian's heart jumped. His speech started to tremble and he unknowingly called out 'Lord.'

“I am not your lord nor am I worthy of a subordinate like you!” Lu Bu’s speech gradually got colder that even Liu Mang felt it.

Hearing Lu Bu’s speech, Song Xian got even more scared. He looked behind and saw that his guards were still far away. If Lu Bu wanted to kill him, he really can’t escape.

Seeing that he was going to die either way, Song Xian gritted his teeth and said “Lu Bu, didn’t you want to know why we betrayed you? I’ll tell you why! You’re obstinate and self opinionated! Advisor Chen had planned for the setup of a garrison outside the Xiapi to take the shape of a horn with the city! If you had listened, how would Xiapi possibly be flooded by the Cao army?!

But you didn’t! You were doting on your beautiful concubine the whole time, engrossed in gentle and soft pleasures the whole time! With a single word from her, you were like an entranced drunk! Xiapi was flooded? So let it flood! It’s not like we have never fought against enemies on all sides! However, you should never ever ever have be suspicious of us, thinking that we are secretly planning to surrender to Cao Cao, just because the Cao army shot a letter demanding for surrender into the city! Do you know why Hou Cheng was drinking? It’s because the Cao army outside was approaching, causing us anxiety. We drink to strength up our morale so that we can fight to the death with you, Marquis of Wen! You really thought we would be celebrating just for some horses?!”

“Song Xian! You are being presumptuous!” Gao Shun have rushed here. Seeing Song Xian’s dissing Lu Bu with every speech from his mouth, Gao Shun was displeased.

“Let him speak!” From Lu Bu’s eyes, there was signs of self blame, regret

and various unclear emotions.

"You caught Hou Cheng and even wanted to execute him! It's Hou Cheng! We have followed you Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, ever since Bing Province! And you wanted to kill us just like that! Hehe, if we really wanted to betray you just for wealth and position, would we be doing it now?! When you killed Ding Yuan and your reputation dropped to the lowest, we followed you. When you killed Dong Zhou and was forced to fled Chang'an by Guo Si, we still followed you! When you defect to Yuan Shu and Yuan Shao, living by relying on their charity, we still followed you! Even when you were driven out of Yan Province like a dog by Cao Cao, we still followed you! When Xiapi was surrounded, if we really wanted to surrender then we would've done that before he flooded Xiapi. However, we didn't! We didn't! We were still hoping. Hoping that you, Lu Bu, our eldest brother, our lord, will bring able to lead us to either glory or death!" The more Song Xian says, the louder his voice gets.

Liu Mang noticed that the spear that Lu Bu was holding had been dented by Lu Bu's grip, leaving behind marks of his fingerprints. This was a freaking metal spear!

"It is not us who betrayed you but rather you who betrayed us!" Song Xian almost shouted.

"Enough!" Lu Bu shut his eyes, his murderous aura was leaking all over like a wild beast that could attack you at any moment.

"What, you was hurt by my speech? Ha ha Ha ha, Kill me! Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian! To die in your hands is something that, I, Song Xian would be proud of!" Song Xian laughed. He was not this happy even when he betrayed Lu Bu and obtained the rewards from Cao Cao. Instead, he was

very happy now, having said all that's in his mind.

"Leave!" said Lu Bu while choking back his murderous intent.

"What?!" Song Xian was stunned. He was already ready to receive his death but was instead brought to confusion by Lu Bu's word.

"Leave!" repeated Lu Bu. He turned his body around. "Before I regret it!"

"Lu Bu, this time you didn't kill me. You will certainly regret it!" Song Xian was not afraid that Lu Bu will be cruel to him nor was he afraid that Lu Bu will kill him. What he was afraid of was that Lu Bu will ignore him.

"Hehe, regret? I, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, have never been afraid of any threats!" Lu Bu was very confident.

"Humph!" Song Xian picked up the spear near his foot and humphed before leaving.

"Wait!" Lu Bu's voice came again.

"Hehe, did the Marquis of Wen regretted? Well then, make haste and kill me!" Song Xian sneered.

Lu Bu shook his head, sighed and said. "Boli, good luck to you. Big brother was unable to give you riches and honor. If you are ever tried, the Bing Province Army will always be your home!" Boli was Song Xian's courtesy name. For years, Lu Bu have not referred Song Xian by that

name. Ever since he started out his career, he have been calling himself as the lord. Bing Province Army was where the place these Lu Bu and his brothers started out from.

"Brother!" Song Xian heart softened and was about to kneel to the ground. He choked back his tears. "Marquis of Wen, I shall take my leave now!" After holding his fist to Lu Bu, Song Xian rode his horse away, leaving behind a trail of dust. That rear view of his was very lonely.

"Let's go!" Lu Bu said with a low voice. Liu Mang saw that above Lu Bu's temples, there was a little gray hair. Lu Bu have gotten old!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 10 - Death

“Is Zhang Liao present?!” shouted Lu Bu. He began to give orders.

“This general is here!” Zhang Liao half kneeled on the ground.

“Zhang Liao, you are to be the vanguard. Your task is open up a path for our main army!”

“Yes!” Zhang Liao accepted the order.

“Is Gao Shun present?!”

“This general is here!” Gao Shun was also half kneeling on the ground. Being their lord, Lu Bu was like their master.

“Gao Shun, your Formation Breaker will be our rear guard. Your task is to provide cover and protection for our main army!”

“Yes!” Gao Shun knew that being the rear guard, his troops would most certainly be attacked by the Cao army when they try to withdraw from Xiapi. The casualty would certainly not be small. Nevertheless, he accepted the order without any hesitation.

“Brother Liu Mang!” Lu Bu gave the last order. “You are to lead your troops and follow in the middle of the army. Your task is to protect my family!” If it wasn’t for Liu Mang, Lu Bu likely would’ve already died in Xiapi.

“Yes!” Liu Mang tried to do as the two generals did earlier and also half kneeled down. This surprised Lu Bu because for regular generals their method of accepting an order is only holding one’s fist and only familial generals would half kneel down to accept an order.

“Congratulations Fengxian on receiving another great general!” A middle aged scholar said with a laugh while rubbing his beard. This person was the person that was captured by the Cao army earlier, Chen Gong, Chen Gongtai. Although Lu Bu was unable to kill Cao Cao, he managed to save Chen Gong - an unexpected delight.

Chen Gong too admired this young man called Liu Mang. Although he was young, he was able to rescue Lu Bu and even came up with such a stratagem. This raid of the Cao army barracks, if it wasn’t for that messenger, Lu Bu might really be able to kill Cao Cao. If he did, then both the Yan Province and the Xu Province will be set to chaos, free for Lu Bu to take over!

“Hehe!” Lu Bu smiled bitterly and shook his head. He already felt that sometime was wrong with this kid named Liu Mang from the first time he met him. From his actions to his speech, everything was inharmonious with this world. Say, was he a country boy that know of nothing? To be able to analyze people to well and also put forward plans and ideas, how could he possibly be a country boy that knows nothing? But, for him to not know even the basic manners… it really was a miracle.

“Maybe!” Lu Bu also didn’t know what Liu Mang was thinking. Even if he wanted to have Liu Mang be one of his familial generals, he still require Liu Mang to be willing to serve him.

“All army! We are to breakthrough!” Lu Bu climbed onto a maroon colored horse. With his order, the army soon began to break out of the enclosure.

Xiapi’s East Gate was burst open. Leading in the front was Zhang Liao’s troops of less than a thousand men. Following Zhang Liao’s troops was Lu Bu and Liu Mang, they led a couple hundred troops protecting a couple horse carriages and Lu Bu’s family. Finally, following behind and still on the other side of the East Gate was the Formation Breaker. They once numbered eight hundred but there was only seven hundred left. Majority of them are also wounded. Their task is to protect the frontal and middle army’s escape. They may have to face enemies numbering tens or hundreds times more than themselves. They may even face complete annihilation. But even then, they did not have the slightest fear. For they are the Formation Breaker!

Seeing that the last of the middle army soldier have passed through the gate, Gao Shun was ready to shut the East Gate and block it with sandbags. While doing such could delay the enemies, it also meant that the Formation Breaker would be stuck inside too. These seven hundred men was ready to fight till the death!

“Brothers! Are you afraid?!” Gao Shun, who usually never speaks, spoke.

“We are not afraid! We are not afraid!” The soldiers of the Formation Breaker replied to Gao Shun with voices full of morale.

Contrary to expectations, Gao Shun was unhappy and he even scold at them. “Bullshit! You are afraid, I am afraid, there’s nothing to be ashamed of! Within two hours, this gate will be completely blocked. Death? We’re all afraid of death! You don’t have to be ashamed of it! I, Gao Shun, am

not an unreasonable man so If there is anyone who is afraid and regrets his decision, feel free to leave! I will not blame you for leaving!”

Not a single man uttered a sound. They were all looking at each other. On their face was expressions of struggle, reluctance and composure. They were not afraid of dying.

“Zhang Kui, step forward!” Gao Shun suddenly shouted a man’s name.

“General, I am not afraid of death! Not afraid of death!” shouted the man who Gao Shun called for.

“Did I say you are? No need to get excited!” Gao Shun laughed.

“Zhang Kui, you have followed me and been a part of the Formation Breaker ever since Bing Province!” said Gao Shun.

Zhang Kui nodded as if remembering something.

“Zhang Kui. From Jinyang County of Bing Province, the only son in the family!” Gao Shun said while looking at Zhang Kui.

“Is your mother still of good health?!” Gao Shun dragged on.

“Mother, my mother have passed away!” Sadness filled Zhang Kui’s eyes.

“Oh!” Gao Shun saw Zhang Kui’s expression and decided to not continue asking.

“Zhang Kui, this general orders you to cross the gate, discard your supplies and catch up to our lord!” said Gao Shun.

With this speech, Zhang Kui was made anxious. “General! Zhang Kui is not afraid of death! Not afraid of death! General, please allow me to stay! Please don’t abandon me!”

“You are the sole child of your family. If you died, then what will happen to your Zhang family?!” Suddenly, Gao Shun’s voice got louder. “Your mother has deceased, ever since you joined my army, you have not done anything filial. If you then die, how would I possibly face your mother in the next world?! Must I tell her that it’s because of I, Gao Shun, that your family will be without a hier? That it is I, Gao Shun, that caused the extinction of your Zhang family?! Are you trying to make me into an immoral man?!”

“General! This was not the intent of Zhang Kui, this was not the intent!” This man who kills people without even batting an eye on the battlefield was almost brought to tears.

“Scram!” Gao Shun said. “Telling you to leave is not me abandoning you, it is to let you catch up to the lord’s army. This is to leave a seed for our Formation Piercer! Gao Shun may die. Zhang Kui may also die. But the Formation Piercer, our lord’s Formation Piercer, cannot be extinguished!”

“General!” Zhang Kui knew that he cannot convince Gao Shun. He

kneeled down onto the floor and started kowtowing at Gao Shun. Every kowtow of his hit the ground clearly and resounded. Soon, his head was bleeding.

Gao Shun did not pay attention to him and instead shouted loudly. “Lu Yi, Zhang Yao, Lu Jie, Cheng Yun, Hao Hao…….. Zhao Kai, step forward!” He pointed out some twenty people. “You all are to go with Zhang Kui, discard your supplies and catch up to our lord!”

“General, what is your intent by this? Even if all of them are the sole child within their family, I, Cheng Yun isn’t! I still have an older brother!” argued Cheng Yun.

Gao Shun looked at Cheng Yun and slowly muttered. “Right, right. You still have an older brother. You are not the sole child in your family. But where is your brother now?! He is in our hearts! He will always live in our hearts!” Cheng Yun’s older brother was named Cheng Fun. He was once a part of the Formation Piercer but he have since passed away on the battlefield.

“Scram! Scram! For your brother, you are to live! Understand?!” Gao Shun was almost shouting.

“Yes!” Cheng Yun held back his tears and accepted the orders. These twenty some men stood in a row. “Brothers, discard your supplies! Let’s go!” After saying that, a group of men left without even looking back. It wasn’t that they were heartless but rather that they feared that if they were to turn around, they would not be able to get themselves to leave!

“Hehe. I, Gao Shun, may die! My brothers too may die. But our Lord’s

Formation Piercer cannot perish!" Gao Shun looked at these twenty some people that was leaving. He was gratified. With these men, certainly they will be able to set up a new Formation Breaker!

"A Formation Breaker without Gao Shun, would it still be the Formation Breaker?!"

"Who is it?!" The soldiers of the Formation Breaker found unknown individuals.

"General Wei?! General Song?!" Some of the soldiers recognized the two.

"Wei Xu, Song Xian, why did you come? Perhaps did you think that just because the lord refuse to kill you that I, Gao Shun, will also not kill you?!" Gao Shun did not held a hint of goodwill toward Song Xian and Wei Xu. Although they were brothers for years, his murderous intent was not a bit lacking.

"Yes yes yes! Both Song Xian and I deserve to die, we came here to apologize!" Song Xian said laughing.

"Apologize?!" Gao Shun frowned. He was ready to kill these two traitors.

"Old Gao, you can leave! Tell the lord that although the Bing Province army was our home, we are too ashamed to return!" Wei Xu said lightly. There was something strange in his eyes. This strange thing was something that Gao Shun knew of - a heart of certain death!

“What are you planning to do?!”

“Die for the lord in place of you!” All of a sudden, Wei Xu and Song Xian’s troops surrounded the gate. Both sides began to aim at each other with their bows and arrows.

“Why should I believe you?!” If Song Xian and Wei Xu start a mutiny again, allowing the Cao army to catch up to the the Lu Bu army on this flat land. With his family, Lu Bu cannot possible be able to escape fast enough!

“Don’t worry! Cao Cao had killed Hou Cheng and we had killed quite a lot of Cao troops. We can’t possibly revolt again!”

After a long pause, Gao Shun said. “Have you really set up your minds?! Once this gate closes, you will no longer be able to get out!”

“Rest assured, Old Gao. In the Bing Province Army, it’s not just you that isn’t afraid of death!”

“Good!” Gao Shun took inhaled a deep breath. “Attention Formation Piercer! We are to withdraw from Xiapi and catch up to our Lord!”

“Yes!” The seven hundred Formation Piercer soldiers accepted the orders. In every one of their mind was a hint of joy from not having to die.

“Old Song, Old Wei, we shall meet again!” Gao Shun’s speech was against his hearts. Once the gates closed, it’s simply impassable. It’ll become a place of certain death.

“Old Gao, don’t forget to burn more paper money for Old Wei and I every year at this date. To not be able to attain riches and glory during this lifetime, in death, you should certainly compensate us!”

[TL: Chinese people burn paper money for the dead so that they have money to spend on the next lifetime. They also burn paper houses, clothes, cars and other goods for the dead. http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joss_paper]

“Take care!” Gao Shun nodded. With a wave of his hand, the Formation Breakers pulled away from the city.

“Go away, go away!” Wei Xu looked at the faraway army, shook his head and said. “Old Song, do you think we are stupid?!”

“You’re not stupid! Why would you be stupid?! We are good brothers forever! Old Hou is already downstairs waiting for us. If we don’t keep him accompany, he’ll be lonely!”

“That’s right! Old Hou, don’t worry. We’ll come find you soon!” Suddenly, Wei Xu’s facial expression changed. He shouted. “Pass my orders! Seal the gate! For this battle, we cannot withdraw! As long as a single one of us live, we will not let a single Cao troop out of here!”

Lord oh Lord! Let’s be brothers again in the next life! This time, I’ll be the elder brother!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 11 - Man From Heaven

“Well well, what we have here? Mende was correct, you two really are feigning surrender!” said Xiahou Dun while pointing his blade at Song Xian and Wei Xu.

“Hehe, feigned surrender or not, Prime Minister Cao knew well enough. Right or wrong, crooked or straight, us brothers are no longer interested in quarreling!” said Song Xian with a smile. Within his smile was a sense of being free and at ease.

“Yuanrang, let me handle this!” Yu Jin too have arrived. His brows furrowed as heard Song Xian’s speech. Was it really a feigned surrender?! He walked forward and said “General Song, General Wei. Perhaps we have all fallen to the Lu Bu army’s stratagem - the stratagem of sowing dissension! Their purpose is to escape while we kill each other! Generals, please step aside! The Lu Bu army is with women and children; they cannot have escaped far! If we pursue them now, we will most certainly be able to catch up to them!”

[TL: so tempted to say, bruh, we have fallen for Lube’s trap card!”]

“Wenze? Perhaps it really was the stratagem of sowing dissension?!” Although Xiahou Dun was a honest and thick fellow, he was not stupid. Even he could tell that Song Xian and Wei Xu shouldn’t be betraying them. If they really are feigning surrender, then back in the chaos, they could’ve send their armies over to block his and Yu Jin’s armies and allow Lu Bu enough time to kill Mende. However, when the Song Xian and Wei Xu’s armies arrived, Lu Bu chose to escape instead.

[TL: Wenze is Yu Jin's courtesy name.]

"Sigh! It doesn't matter now! Song Xian, Wei Xu, if it really was the stratagem of sowing dissension, then this Xiahou Dun will apologize to you and justify for you in front of the Prime Minister! Move aside, we still have to pursue Lu Bu!" said Xiahou Dun while brandishing his blade.

[TL: http://media.tiltingatpixels.com/tilting/Do_Not_Pursue_Lu_Bu.jpg]

"You no longer have to pursue!" said Wei Xu indifferently.

"What do you mean by that?!" raged Xiahou Yuan. His elder brother was deeply injured by Lu Bu, he wanted to avenge his elder brother!

"Generals, perhaps you have grievances?! " Yu Jin thought that these two men are acting this way because they were attacked by their own people.

"Hehe. What we meant by 'you no longer have to pursue was that we are the Lu Bu army remnants that you guys are pursuing!" said Song Xian and Wei Xu together.

Yu Jin frowned even more deeply. "Generals, it would be wise not to inflict self harm! The influence of the Lu Bu army is already gone. Currently, he is no different from a stray dog, difficult to ever accomplish greatness! Generals, you must not give up your lives over momentary anger!"

"Wenze, why bother talking bullshit with them?! Break through them!"

raged Xiahou Dun.

Yu Jin stopped him. Had it been the usual, Yu Jin might've break through them exactly like what Xiahou Dun said. Afterall, Wei Xu and Song Xian's troops are already badly damaged whereas they have an unlimited supply of troops.

But now, they cannot do that! Once Wei Xu and Song Xian are willing to die to prevent them from passing through the gates, they certainly could stop them for a couple hours. The area in front of the gates are simply too narrow, even if they have the advantage in numbers, they are unable to set up formations nor could they engage them all at once! Once delayed for a couple hours, Lu Bu would've already escaped!

"General Yu Jin, you could save your persuasions. That's right, we admit that we did not feign surrender. We originally planned to capture our elder brother for Prime Minister Cao in exchange for a life of riches, but Prime Minister Cao really was too overly suspicious of us, not only did he killed Old Hou, he even wanted to kill us! Since ancient times, no son would ever detest one's mother for being ugly and no dog would ever detest his residency for being poor! Us brothers have done enough wrongs, we can no longer redeem ourselves. Just allow us to give our lives back to our elder brother!"

Song Xian said it so lightly, as if the men who was about to die was not themselves.

It was like this afterall! Yu Jin sighed. This was exactly the stratagem of sowing dissention!

“Sigh!” Another sound of sighing was heard. Out of nowhere, a black faced fatty was standing next to Yu Jin.

[TL: a bit confused as to why black faced fatty. Maybe it’s related to black bellied, a chinese term meaning smiling with evil intentions. Sorry, don’t know enough Chinese slangs. I don’t think it have anything to do with skin color though. I mean, the only black faced chinese historical dude I know of is Bao Qingtian]

“Yu Jin pay respect to the lord!” Yu Jin was about to dismount to pay his respect but was instead prevented by the black fatty. This black fatty was Cao Cao, Cao Mende. Although Cao Cao was a man who suspects everything, he was also a wise man, after his safety was guaranteed, he calmed himself and was able to figure things out!

“I did not expect that in the Lu Bu army, in addition to Chen Gong, there was another individual of such profound talent!” From using Xiahou De’s banner to the stratagem of sowing dissention, he was able to grasp the timing accurate to perfection! Had it not been Xiahou Dun’s messenger’s arrival at the perfect time, perhaps Cao Cao would have died in Xiapi!

“Wei Xu, Song Xian, this Prime Minister have wronged you. I should not have suspect you all nor should I have killed Hou Cheng! You can step aside! I declare you all to be innocent, step down and replenish your lost troops with strong men of your choosing from the Qing Province soldiers. As for Hou Cheng, I have already ordered his burial; one reserved for honorable officials!” Cao Cao have a particular charisma! When one reached the level of charisma like Cao Cao, they would be standing above millions of men, their orders will be the will of heaven, no one will dare disobey!

However, such a person lowered his head and apologized. He even forgave Song Xian and Wei Xu of guilt and allowed them to replenish their troops!

Had Song Xian and Wei Xu not met Lu Bu, they really might've fall for it.

"Lord Cao! In this world, there exists but two heroes whom I, Wei Xu, was willing to serve. The first was my elder brother and the next was you, Lord Cao. Had we not met our elder brother, then perhaps Lord Cao would've been our master! However, I am sorry, we are unable to do as you requested!" said Wei Xu as he held his fist.

"Is there really no way?!" Cao Cao did not give up.

"Attention soldiers! Today, us brothers cannot apologize enough for you all for we ask you all to die with us here! Apology I will say no more, once we reached the netherworld, us brothers will make up for you all even if we have to be horses or oxen!" using their actions, Wei Xu and Song Xian told Cao Cao their decision.

"We are willing follow the generals to death!" Song Xian and Wei Xu, although a bit useless, are still generals who have led troops for years. In the army, they still have the will of their soldiers.

"I understand!" Cao Cao closed his eyes, raised his hand and swept it down. When he opened his eyes, he was filled with murderous intent. "Do not let a single one live! Sha!" The tyrant Cao Cao mercilessly declared for the massacre.

Due to having women and children, the Lu Bu army was advancing quite slow. Soon, Gao Shun and his Formation Breaker have caught up to Lu Bu.

"Gao Shun?!" Lu Bu frowned. "Why are you here?! Weren't you supposed to be hinder the enemies?!" For this breakthrough, the end army composed of Gao Shun's Formation Breaker was supposed to block the enemies from proceeding with their lives. For them to be here, perhaps Gao Shun was scared of death?!

No, that's impossible! Lu Bu shook his head. Gao Shun had been working for him for a long time, thus he knew what kind of character Gao Shun was. As the saying goes, how he who serves depends on how he who commands! If it was someone like Liu Mang who places his life as the utmost importance then his soldiers would certainly excel at fleeing!

As for Gao Shun, just look at his Formation Breaker! One could tell Gao Shun's disposition from the motto of his Formation Breaker - 'Burst the formations, death to all enemies!'

"General Gao Shun, why are you back?!" Although Lu Bu didn't want to directly inquire Gao Shun as it would show that he was distrustful of his subordinate but Chen Gong, who was next to Lu Bu, did not cared for it.

"The military advisor is here too?!" Gao Shun held his first toward Chen Gong. "Reporting to the lord, Old Song and Old Wei… they…"

“What about them?!” Although Song Xian and Wei Xu have hurt Lu Bu’s heart, Lu Bu was still concerned about them. As an older brother, one must always forgive one’s younger brother.

“They...they...!” Gao Shun was already a man who didn’t know how to communicate well, and now, he was having an even more difficult time.

“Did they replace General Gao as the end army to block the Cao army?!” Chen Gong helped Gao Shun finish what he wanted to say.

Lu Bu looked at Gao Shun, Gao Shun nodded.

“Boren, Zigao?!” These were the courtesy name of Song Xian and Wei Xu. Lu Bu turned around and looked toward Xiapi. Sounds of fighting resounded from the city gate.

Two wounded armies blocking the gate, they are stalling time with their lives! Perhaps in a minute or perhaps in a second, there would be a soldier who would forever close his eyes!

Lu Bu paused for a bit. He took a deep breath and said. “Relay my orders, all three armies was to mourn for passing of Generals Wei Xu, Song Xian and Hou Cheng!”

[TL: in case you forgot, Lu Bu split his troops into 3 armies. First is lead by Zhang Liao, the Vanguard (aka. Front army). Lu Bu led his own remnant troops with Liu Mang and was protecting his family in the middle army and Gao Shun was leading the Rearguard (end army) consist of the Formation Breaker.]

“Lord?!” Chen Gong was shocked. What Lu Bu wanted to do would mean that Wei Xu, Song Xian and Hou Cheng did not conduct any betrayal! What Lu Bu wanted to do also meant that there would be people spreading rumors of him afterward!

After all, the reason why Xiapi was lost was all because of these three men!

“Was my words empty?!” Lu Bu looked at Chen Gong and Gao Shun sternly.

“Eh!” Gao Shun lowered his head, a tiger’s gaze wasn’t something that anyone could withstand.

“Sigh!” Chen Gong sighed, this was exactly Lu Bu’s disposition. Regardless of your position, as long as he deemed you to be right, then you are right even if you are outrageously wrong! And he deemed you to be wrong, even if you are a saint, he would refuse to give you any respect!

A personality like this would certainly be of no issue should it occurred in a regular person, a general or an official. Had this personality appeared in peaceful times, it might even become an anecdote about steadfastness passed on with approbation! Alas, Lu Bu was born into troubled times and he also became a warlord!

Unable to distinguish between rewards and punishment, merits and demerits are all dependent on his feelings! If he’s of good mood then you have conducted a meritorious deed and when he’s in a bad mood then

you are to have made a mistake! A lord like this was certainly not one who would accomplish much!

But didn't he, Chen Gong, decided to become Lu Bu's retainer precisely because of that?!

Had Lu Bu been a schemer, had Lu Bu been like Cao Mende, lacking moral, then would this Lu Bu still be Lu Bu?!

"The lord orders, all troops are to wear mourning clothes to send generals Song Xian, Wei Xu and Hou Cheng off!" Soon, a small voice was transmitted front of the front of the mid army.

"Send off Wei Xu, Song Xian and Hou Cheng?! Were they not traitors?!"

"Send off traitors?! What's wrong with the Lord?!" All the soldiers were muttering.

"That's right! They were the whole reason why Xiapi was lost!" The soldiers were all raging. "I'm not going to wear mourning clothes! You guys can wear it if you want to mourn for them!"

"What happened?!" Liu Mang who was resting in the carriage came out. Just when he was in an ecstasy about being able to return back home, back to the 21st century, back to being that worthless person. But hey, at least that's still home! Right when he was about to fire Boss Lu and say farewell, he heard the raging of the soldiers around him.

"Cheng Yu, what happened?!" Liu Mang asked Cheng Yu.

“Sire! This… this… was because the Lord ordered us to wear mourning clothes to send generals Song Xian, Wei Xu and Hou Cheng off!” It appears that things were difficult for Cheng Yu.

“To send these three off?!” Liu Mang too was confused. Wasn’t these three traitors?! Although he have never met Hou Cheng, he have met Wei Xu and Song Xian. It was from these two men that he rescued boss Lu.

“That’s right! They are traitors! Sire, please persuade the lord! The soldiers really don’t want to send them off!” Of course they won’t want to send them off. For they caused the break through of Xiapi and the death of countless soldiers in it! Oh how they wished to step and scatter filthy objects on their corpses to cause these three to be unable to reincarnated for eternity!

“This!” This task was a bit difficult for Liu Mang because he knew what Lu Bu said to Song Xian about the Bing Province Army always being their home. Go persuade him yourself!

Forget it! I am going to say farewell and stop associating myself with boss Lu anyways, might as well go!

Having made up his mind, Liu Mang nodded and walked toward Lu Bu.

“Lord, our food supply is running low!” For this break out, they did not bothered to bring good supply. What they have was Gao Shun’s Formation Breaker’s dry rations that they carry around with them, enough to only last a few days!

“Food supply?! It became difficult for Lu Bu too. They are marching toward Langya. In Langya was Zang Ba, Zang Xuanggao. Although Zang Ba was one of the eight superior generals under Lu Bu, he was not Lu Bu’s retainer. However, Zang Ba had a spirit of loyalty and was subdued by Lu Bu. Thus, the plan Chen Gong gave Lu Bu was to incorporate the thieves Mount Tai of Zang Ba into his troops. Although this was somewhat disregarding camaraderie but Lu Bu was without other choices. He could only repay Zang Ba when he makes a comeback!

[TL: Lu Bu’s eight superior generals: Zhang Liao, Zang Ba, Hao Meng, Cao Xing, Cheng Lian, Wei Xu, Song Xian, Hou Cheng.]

The problem they encounter now was that it requires three days worth of travel to reach Langye! Certainly they cannot starve! Even if the soldiers could endure it, what about the women and children?! They certainly can’t!

“Is there any villages nearby?!” Lu Bu began to move his mind! Like Cao Cao, he too was a selfish individual. The only difference between them was that Cao Cao was willing to sacrifice the world for himself whereas Lu Bu was willing to sacrifice the world for his brothers!

Lu Bu wanted to pillage villages for food.

“There is a Zhouzhuang with a population of three hundred!” Being a general, Gao Shun was very knowledgeful of the terrains of the whole Xu Province.

“Fengxian, are you really going to do this?!” Chen Gong frowned. It is

impossible for there to be any survivors once they pillage the village. A village of over three hundred! That's three hundred lives! Although they live in troubled times where human lives were no more worthy than those of dogs, Chen Gong was still unable to harden his heart.

"Then do you have any other suggestion?!" Lu Bu asked instead.

"I… Sigh!" Chen Gong sighed. He does not know of a different method. Afterall, they cannot starve to death here and thus, their only solution was to sacrifice the village.

"You could leave the problems regarding food supply to me!" A person came forward. Wasn't this Liu Mang who wanted to say farewell to Lu Bu?!

"Zhang Liao's soldiers numbered a thousand, the Formation Breaker numbered seven hundred, your soldiers numbered two hundred and adding on the children and women, we have two thousand and a hundred some people needing food for three days! You're but a frail scholar, where would you find food?!" Lu Bu was not convinced.

"Isn't it only three days worth of food for some two thousand people?! I'll find it for you!" Liu Mang looked at with furious eyes. Pillage Zhouzhuang?! Although Liu Mang did not know where Zhouzhuang is, he knew that there was some three hundred lives there! Human lives in troubled times are no more worthy than those of dogs but Liu Mang was not a person from troubled times! Although he was fine with killing on the battlefield, he was unable to accept this kind of massacre!

"Ah, little brother really have a way?!" Chen Gong too did not want to

see civilians die tragically! “This is something that cannot be joked around!”

“I am willing to set up a military order!” Liu Mang knew that unless he does something dramatic, they will not believe him.

“Did you think the military order is child’s play thing?! If you cannot find the food, you’d be killed!” roared Lu Bu.

“My Lord, perhaps little teacher really have a way!” Gao Shun really admired this little teacher.

Hey hey! If it’s teacher than just teacher, why add little?! Where am I little?! Where?!

“That’s right. Fengxian, just give it a try! Even if it doesn’t work out, Zhouzhuang is enroute ahead anyways, it won’t be too late to capture it then!”

“Good! I’ll give you a chance. Two days. In two days time, if you cannot find food, then I could only kill you as a punishment!” Two days was the maximum they can go with the amount of food they have.

“No need for two days, a single day is enough!” Originally Liu Mang planned for half a day but he figured that he’d need a day to cool off.

“Without further ado, I will go find food! Bye Bye, Boss Lu! ” In front of Lu Bu, Liu Mang confirmed the return button.

A golden ray shined down on Liu Mang. Soon, Liu Mang disappeared.

“This! This!” Not only Lu Bu, even Chen Gong, the kind of tactician who could stay calm and composed amongst armies of tens of thousands, was unable to stay calm and collected.

“Celestial being?!” After a long lag did Gao Shun finally managed to say these words.

“A man from Heaven?!” said Lu Bu, unable to believe it.

“Fengxian, Fengxian! Is little brother Liu surnamed Liu?!” Cheng Gong asked abruptly with excitement.

Nonsense! How would little brother Liu not be surnamed Liu?!

Lu Bu nodded his head and said. “He once said that his elder brother was His Majesty!”

“His Majesty?!” Chen Gong immediately stirred himself up. “Surnamed Liu! A man from Heaven?! Sibling of His Majesty! Heaven assist the great Han dynasty! Oh Heaven assist the great Han dynasty!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 12 - Fifteen Thousand Dollars Worth of Buns

Original by Bro Got a Gun, Translated by James

Liu Mang's did not know that his leave have caused Lu Bu and Chen Gong to be unable to sleep at night!

Liu Mang is currently at a loss as to how to get three days worth of food for some two thousand people. He was not afraid of the military order. If worst comes to worst, he could just not go back. It's not like Lu Bu could chase over! However, he was scared of the massacre! It's over three hundred lives! If he was unable to accomplish his task, then based on the ways warlords acted during the Eastern Han Dynasty, Lu Bu really would massacre the whole Zhouzhuang!

Liu Mang was not some saint but neither was he a villain, he could not just sit there and watch as three hundred lives are lost before his eyes, even if these lives are from over a thousand years in the past!

When all is said and done, Liu Mang only have a thousand or so dollars total! And that was this month's living expenses! After spending all of that thousand dollars, he'll could drink the northwest wind! Even so, could this thousand dollars really be enough to feed over two thousand people for three days?!

[TL: drinking northwest wind = a chinese phrase basically mean that you ain't got jack to eat, since eating wind will only cause you to get cold and not be full.]

Even if his brain was in his ass, he'd still knew that it was impossible!

"Must I go and borrow money?!" With this kind of situation, it was the only solution! Liu Mang began to take his cell phone out when he noticed a major issue.

The clothes he was wearing was not his own! He already changed his clothes before they even began the break through due to there being too much blood on it. He was currently wearing was a clean ancient outfit!

"My wallet! My ID! My cellphone! My bank card!" Now, not to mention a thousand dollars, he didn't even have a single cent!

Only now did Liu mang noticed that he was currently at the same location where he was beaten up at. Fortunately, the cosplay contest last for three days. Thus, even though Liu Mang came back wearing ancient outfit, no one was really concerned.

"That's it! Find Chen Yi!" Their school's booth was to be there for several days and Chen Yi, as the person in charge, will certainly be there!

Liu Mang grabbed his long gown and started running toward the school's booth. As expected, Chen Yi was there commanding the underclassmen, teaching them how to hold props all the while fixing a wig.

"Chen Yi!" Liu Mang ran up to Chen Yi.

"Don't bother me! I'm busy!" Chen Yi did not even bothered to pay

attention to who was calling her. She was teaching how to put on makeup.

The hell! You accounted for more than half of why I crossed through time and almost died! And now I called you and you just ignore me?!

“Chen Yi, it’s me, Liu Mang!” Liu Mang reluctantly pulled Chen Yi a couple times. Only then did she noticed him.

“Liu Mang?!” Having seen Liu Mang, her voice suddenly got louder.

“My great aunt!” Liu Mang rushed to cover Chen Yi’s mouth. He didn’t want to get beat up again. Last time he was mistaken as a molester and was almost unable to get back. He didn’t want to be mistaken as a molester again!

“It’s you. So you finally decided to appear!” Chen Yi removed Liu Mang’s hand. She too knew why he was being so cautious. “Where did you die off to yesterday?! Can’t reach you on the phone, can’t find you and you’re not even in your dorms. I thought you died yesterday! I was even planning to report you as a missing individual later today!”

“Great Aunt Chen Yi, it’s a long story!” Liu Mang did not know how to explain. He can’t just go off and tell Chen Yi that he cross through time, went to Xiapi, saved Lu Bu and then killed some people!

“Where did you get the clothes you’re wearing?! Where is my Aries Gold Cloth?!” Only now did Chen Yi noticed Liu Mang’s outfit. Mainly black with dark but majestic patterns. “Ohho, it’s even made out of silk!”

Just by touching the clothes, Chen Yi was able to tell the material it was made out of. “Hmmm, this is…?” There was a faint line on the patterns. Chen Yi placed her hand on it and pulled. “Golden Thread?!” stunned Chen Yi.

Liu Mang was still thinking about how to explain himself. First he left her precious Aries Gold Cloth with Lu Bu and now he wanted to borrow money from her! Really, all his misfortunes just piled up!

“What?!” Liu Mang was distracted. “Golden Thread?!” He immediately turned his sight to his clothes.

“That’s right, it’s golden thread!” Chen Yi looked at that Han gown with admiring eyes! She wondered who had such an elegant taste, that gown should be a general’s garment! General’s garment should have golden thread embroideries! But that was during the ancient times! How could modern cosplayers use golden thread!?

Chen Yi thought that she was already someone who could be considered as one who seek for perfection, having used aluminum alloy to construct her Aries Gold Cloth just to show the beauty of real metal armor!

Now, having seen the clothes, she cannot help but pale into insignificance by comparison.

Money! Money! The Liu Mang who was still worried about how to get money suddenly came to a revelation - isn’t this money?! Miserly, Liu Mang asked “If we take apart the golden thread, how much could they sell for?!”

“Take apart and sell?” Chen Yi was confused. Selling such a great golden embroidered general garment? Did Liu Mang go crazy?! “Taking into consideration of the designs, you should be able to get fifty grams of gold! With the current cost of gold being around three hundred, you’re able to sell it for fifteen thousand!”

“Fifteen thousand?!” Liu Mang smiled. Fifteen thousand divided by two thousand people will give each one of them seven fifty. For three days, this should be enough!

“Are you really planning to sell it?!” Chen Yi think that Liu Mang went crazy. With such a beautiful gold embroidered general gown, it’s a work of art! To take apart the golden threads to sell, it’s a major waste!

“That’s right, I need money!” said Liu Mang

“Need money?! How much do you need?!” Chen Yi asked. “A thousand? Two thousand?” Chen Yi’s family was rich. This was shown by the fact that they allowed her to be in the anime and manga club - the school did not sponsor the club, thus all the props and costumes had to be made by themselves, not a small expense!

Liu Mang shook his head. “Fifteen thousand!”

Chen Yi could tell that Liu Mang was set to sell this golden embroidered gown! “Well, Liu Mang, seeing as you’re so set on selling it, then let’s keep the goodies within the family, you could save horrific behavior of taking apart the garment for the thread and sell me the gown instead! I’ll pay you twenty thousand!” Apart from the golden

embroideries, there were also other unique characteristic on the gown enough to make Chen Yi like it!

"Twenty thousand?!" Happiness came like the wind! For a DiaoSi like Liu Mang, he have never once seen money that numbered more than ten thousand!

[TL: In case you forgot, DiaoSi is a chinese slang meaning that the guy is of mediocre appearance, humble family, no car, no house and no connection. Basically a loser.]

"Yep!" said Chen Yi.

"Okay okay okay! I will go back to the dorms and take it off for you right away!"

"Return quickly!" Chen Yi shook her head. What a waste for such a nice gown to be in the hands of a brat like this! Due to her being so concerned for the gown, she actually forgot about her Aries Gold Cloth!

"Twenty thousand! Hehe!" When one have money, one's worries flies away! With twenty thousand dollars in his pocket, Liu Mang's confidence was flying off the shelf!

Three days worth of food for two thousand people?! Maybe not luxury food but certainly he could get food enough to fill the stomach of these people!

And where would one find food that's filling but not good? Obviously

that would be the school cafeteria!

In this wide cafeteria, there was a magical food, the big meat bun! The bun was as big as one's palm! Although it barely have any meat, it had a lot of bread! Although it tastes bad, it's very filling!

When fifteen thousand dollars was placed in front of the cafeteria lady, the cafeteria lady was dumbfounded!

"Child, do you have a fever?!" That cafeteria lady placed her hand on top of Liu Mang's forehead.

"Aunty, I don't have any fever! This fifteen thousand dollars was for buying buns! As for the buns, I want that big meat bun that cost a dollar each!" In fact, Liu Mang too was at a loss. Had he had more money, he'd be buying better food already instead of coming to the cafeteria!

"Did that dude went nuts?! Fifteen thousand dollars! Buying buns?!"

Liu Mang came at the wrong time, right at the lunch period. The cafeteria was filled with people. Seeing Liu Mang place his bills on the ordering table, everyone began to murmor.

"A vulgarian! That's a vulgarian for sure!" A man nodded his head, certain that Liu Mang was a vulgarian.

"Even if he's a vulgarian, to spend his money buying buns?! With this many buns, how could he possibly finish it! What a bumpkin!"

“Did that man went crazy?! To spend all that money buying buns!”

“I know right?! Did he received some kind of trauma?! Did his girlfriend left him for ‘Mr. Perfect?! Even if you are to vent, you can’t do it like this! This is a waste of your family’s money!” Great! Currently student Liu Mang was seen as a bumpkin by the guys and a pitiful child who was just dumped by his girlfriend by the girls.

“So what if you’re dumped, if they don’t want you, I want you! Lil handsome guy, if you use the money you’re buying the buns to buy me bags, I’d be yours tonight!”

“That’s enough, stop being so lecherous!” said two girls, teasingly.

Red with embarrassment, Liu Mang packed the bucketloads of buns onto the car! The school cafeteria was nice enough to provide Liu Mang a minivan to help him transport the buns.

This damn cafeteria really had over a ten thousand buns! Might these all be expired leftovers?! Forget it, at least I got food now!

Some ten thousand buns filled the whole minivan. With nowhere to put these buns, Liu Mang moved them to the anime and manga club’s clubroom.

Having obtained food, it was about time for him to go back.

Liu Mang composed himself. The time crossing CD still had a couple minutes left on it. With nothing to do, Liu Mang started checking the props in the clubroom.

In the innermost section was all trophies! This Red Univeristy's anime and manga club was famous in the anime and manga community! Whether the quality of the girls, the props or even the amount of money they have, they're all top rated!

"That is?!" Liu Mang's sight was attracted by a golden armor.

Covered densely with scales, with a crown on top of it, and patterns like the ocean's waves! On the side, there was a matching weapon - a golden trident!

[TL: that's the Poseidon Scale from Saint Seiya. http://www.nerdgasmo.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/07/poseidon1.jpg]

Liu Mang walked over, he wanted to play around with that trident.

Suddenly, he found an embarrassing problem - he cannot lift the trident with a single hand and had to use both hands!

Although Liu Mang wasn't very strong, he had the physique! Thus, lifting fifty or sixty pounds with a single hand was no problem for him. However, right now, he was having difficulties holding this weapon with two hands!

“Is this thing made of steel?!” Liu Mang guessed correctly, it was a steel halberd! The weapon was constructed with alloy steel and Its exterior was covered with a gold coating! This was without a doubt another one of Boss Chen’s masterpiece.

This weapon?! This armor?! Liu Mang remembered that Boss Lu lost his Sky Piercer! Maybe he’d be even even more stunning with this one!

Finished cooling down!

Liu Mang pressed confirm, golden light once again lit up. It wrapped all the buns in the clubroom. Liu Mang smoothly pulled the armor and trident into the golden light.

“Woosh!” The anime and manga club room suddenly got quiet, there was not a single person! Buns, armor and the trident have all disappeared!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 13 - Boss Cao’s Scheme

“Liu Mang?!” In Xiapi’s Province Governor's Mansion, Cao Cao was muttering a name. From Lu Bu’s escape to Xiahou De’s banner and finally the stratagem of sowing dissension, it appear that this man’s shadow was everywhere!

“Han imperial clansman?!” Cao Cao was dumbfounded, another Han imperial clansman?!

[TL: direct translation, relative to the Han Dynasty’s clan. Using imperial clansman as opposed to royal clansman because china is an empire during this period, not king or queens.]

This man really got old Cao good! Cao Cao almost even lost his life! He only knew of such a person from the mouth of captured Lu Bu soldiers.

“A capable individual! A great talent!” Cao Cao sighed deeply. “Alas, this talent does not work for me! Fengxiao, say, do you think that I could recruit this Liu Mang?!” Cao Cao’s success wasn’t accidental, it was significantly because of his approach toward people of great talent!

[TL: Fengxiao is Guo Jia’s courtesy name. Guo Jia is one of Cao Cao’s main advisors, he’s the dude who told him to flood Xiapi.]

“My lord, you’re overthinking!” Seated below Cao Cao was a prodigal looking scholar. This man had not once stopped when he started drinking. Even when Cao Cao inquires him about things, he did not stand up. Yes, this man have a haughty attitude, but it was precisely because of

this haughty attitude that that gave birth to the reputation of this sly genius, Guo Jia, Guo Fengxiao.

"Not mentioning that this man's scheme almost cost you your life, let's just think about general Xiahou Yuan who was heavily injured by Lu Bu, do you think general Xiahou Dun would allow such a man to join us?!" Xiahou Yuan almost died in the hands of Lu Bu. Even though he survived, his injuries requires at least half a year to heal! The animosity was certainly going to be there!

"Regarding Yuanran and Miaocai, I could get things flowing!" Cao Cao still did not give up. For his talented individuals, for his great ambitions, what harm is there for him to lower himself?!

"Hehe, my lord oh lord, I know of your talent loving heart but you still need to consider who the talent is!" Guo Jia smiled wryly at his lord and shook his head. "It was reported that this man is called Liu Mang and is a Han imperial clansman. Say, do you think that those Han imperial clansmen would be interested in Prime Minister Cao? Would they really be willing to work for you?!"

"That's impossible! Isn't Liu Bei also a Han imperial clansman?! He's even the emperor's imperial uncle! There's also Liu Ye, Liu Ziyang! Are they not subordinates of I, Cao Cao?!" said Cao Cao, fully pleased with his accomplishments.

[TL: Ziyang is Liu Ye's courtesy name. He's an advisor to Cao Cao.]

"Liu Bei?!" Guo Jia sneered. "He is not a man who is contented with his roots. Lord, it is better to remove this man as soon as possible!" Guo Jia,

Xun Yu and the other advisors regarded Liu Bei as the biggest thorn in the current Cao army!

Guo Jia understand that Liu Bei grew up in a poor family, having lost his father when he was still a child. To support themselves, Liu Bei and his mother sold shoes and straw-woven mats - a very difficult livelihood. On the southeast corner of Liu Bei's house, there was a mulberry tree of fifty foot tall. From afar, the tree looked like a canopy of a chariot. All the passersby felt that this tree was not something from the earthly world and believed that there will certainly be a nobleman originating from this house. In his childhood, Liu Bei played underneath the tree with other kids and pointed at the mulberry tree and said "In the future, I will certainly ride a feathered canopy chariot like this one!"

Imperial canopy! This was something only the emperor was qualified to sit underneath. But, a straw mat weaver dared to speak of his wishes to sit underneath such a canopy - one could tell that this person's ambition was certainly not small!

Sure enough, although this big eared Liu did not show any ambitions from the Yellow Turban Rebellion, he have been constantly calling himself a Han royal clansman and was even finally recognized as one by Emperor Xian of Han!

This caused Guo Jia to be on extra alert against Liu Bei! Having ambitions was not scary, what's scary was having great ambitions! Had Liu Bei been alone, Guo Jia would still not be so alert, but that was not the case. The big eared Liu had three brothers! Neither Guan Yu nor Zhang Fei are regular men. Instead, they exuded the qualities of great generals!

Guo Jia have always told Cao Cao to separate the three brothers, to divide and conquer. However, every single time, he was blocked by this big eared Liu. Say, being a subordinate, if you really are loyal, then why must you hide your generals? Perhaps you are trying to rely on them on a rebellion?!

"Fengxiao ah, although Xuande is unbearable, it is not not the time to get rid of him!" Cao Cao wasn't reluctant on killing Liu Bei. Afterall he was an overly suspecting man who was willing to wrongly kill three thousand than to let one escape!

But Cao Cao wanted Liu Bei's Zhang Fei and Guan Yu! Especially Guan Yu! Outstand martial abilities, familiar with the arts of war and with the spirit of loyalty and self sacrifice, he was certainly a valiant general!

Should he kill Liu Bei right away, then in this lifetime he could forget about trying to rein such a valiant general!

"Sigh!" Guo Jia too knew what his lord was thinking about! The desire for a good general and the difficulty of removing a major enemy!

"As for Liu Ye, Liu Ziyang? Hehe, if it wasn't for me, my lord, would you really dare use him?!" Although Liu Ye was very talented, as talented as Guo Jia, Cao Cao never really trusted him!

Xu Shao of Runan have once said 'Liu Ye, Liu Ziyang, have a talent in assisting the building of an era.' According to Cao Cao's love for talent, he should've had Liu Ye as a confidant. However, he never had. Instead, he gave Liu Ye an official position as the Assistant to the Excellency of Works. What does the Assistant of Excellency of Works do? He was in charge of

provisions! Had he been in charge of the army provisions, then the position was pretty good, enough to not bring shame as a descendant of Liu Bang! Alas, he wasn't in charge of the army provisions. Instead, he was in charge of the provisions in the Excellency of Work's Mansion. In other words, he was the chief housekeeper!

[TL: 司空倉曹掾 : Assistant to the Excellency of Works. Cao Cao was the Excellency of Works(司空). 倉曹 according to the novel was in charge of the provisions. So basically dude's position is the aide to Cao Cao but instead Cao Cao sent him to his home and turned him into a butler because he wasn't willing to use someone he didn't trust.]

To turn such a talented man into a housekeeper, one could tell how much Cao Cao values Liu Ye!

"Fengxiao oh Fengxiao, I cannot hide anything from you!" Cao Cao smiled wryly.

"How's the army preparations going? For Lu Bu to escape this time is certainly troublesome!" Regarding soliciting Liu Mang, Cao Cao had already given up. He now set his focus on the Lu Bu army!

"There is no need for panic, my lord! The tiger who just lost his home is currently grieving! Should we chase after him now, certainly we would experience great casualties!" said Guo Jia after drinking some wine.

"Then could it be that we are not to chase and allow Lu Bu to leave?!" Cao Cao did not want to let Lu Bu go for that man left too deep of an impression on him! In Dong Zhou's residence and then again underneath the White Gate Tower, a single man's might was like that of gods and

devils!

"Having lost half of Xiapi, Lu Bu have lost half of Xu Province! Of his seventy thousand troops, only a few thousand managed to break out! Thus, the only thing he could do right now is to find an opportunity to make a comeback, finding a way to replenish his troops!" Guo Jia spoke frankly with assurance. "Lu Bu was widely known for his despotic rule.The Xu Province borders Qing, Yang, Yu and Yan Provinces. As for our Yan Province, he certainly would not dare come toward it! Although Lu Bu came from the Yuan Shao's region to our Yan Province and then the Xu Province, the Yuan clan held no goodwill toward Lu Bu! Thus, Yuan Tan of Qing Province will certainly not take him in! Yang Province? Yuan Shu himself is in trouble, even more impossible! As for Yu Province, say, do you think he could go there?!"

[TL: Lu Bu cannot go toward Yu Province either because Liu Bei is in charge of it.]

"Then where would Lu Bu go?!" Cao Cao asked.

"He's going nowhere! He's still in Xu Province!" As expected from the genius Guo Jia, he guessed the whereabouts of Lu Bu right away. "Langye! In Langye was one of Lu Bu's eight superior general Zang Ba and his Mount Tai bandits!"

"Mere Mount Tai bandits, how could they possibly accomplish anything?!" Cao Cao laughed. Having fought the Yellow Turban Bandits, how could he possibly be afraid of some Mount Tai bandits?!

"My lord, you shouldn't underestimate this man named Zang Ba!" said

Guo Jia. “As for the subordinates of Lu Bu, if you seek a scholars, then it’s Chen Gong, if you seek a general, then it’s this Zang Ba!”

“Oh?!” said Cao Cao, puzzled. “How is he compared to Zhang Liao or Gao Shun?!”

“Not inferior in any aspect!” said Guo Jia. Although this Zang Ba’s wasn’t as famous as Gao Shun or Zhang Liao, he was someone who was a boss! The Mount Tai bandits numbered numerous, crooks mixed with honest folk, but was completely obedient under Zang Ba’s administration! One could tell how talented this Zang Ba was just from that!

Training an army? Unifying the soldiers? Maybe Zang Ba wasn’t at the level of Gao Shun or Zhang Liao. However, unifying the generals, this Zang Ba was a lot better than Gao Shun and Zhang Liao!

“Are you saying that if Lu Bu obtains the Mount Tai bandits, then it’s like giving wings to a tiger?! We have only just obtained this Xu Province… could it be that we are to battle again?!” Cao Cao grew anxious. Lu Bu was a fierce tiger and it would appear that this Zang Ba wasn’t someone to be taken lightly!

Once these two get together, then old Cao’s Xu Province will be in trouble.

“Worry not, my lord!” Guo Jia drank another cup. His face was already bright red. Although Cao Cao was anxious like a fiery flame, Guo Jia was calm like a silk thread!

“From Xiapi to Lanye, the distance is at least three hundred li! Even under forced march, the soldiers under Xiahou Yuan would still require three days to get there! Currently, Lu Bu is with kids and women. Taking into consideration of their health, Lu Bu is certainly going to delay his speed. Thus, it will take them at least three to five days to get there! And although Lu Bu’s breakthrough was a success, he had a fatal flaw!” having said to this point, Guo Jia stopped because the wine bottle ran out of wine.

[TL: remember li is a chinese mile that’s 500meters and ⅓ of an american mile.]

“Men! Supply Guo Jia with more wine!” Guo Jia caused Cao Cao to lose his appetite. He even think that the soldier bringing up the wine was too slow and decided to pour Guo Jia more wine himself.

“In Lu Bu’s break through, apart from the family and soldiers, he have overlooked his army provisions!” Guo Jia came to the main point.

“Preceding the advance of the army, the advance of provisions!” said Guo Jia with a smile. “Although three to five days is not a long period of time, it is also not a short period of time! Although one could not stave to death in that period of time, surely it will starve one enough to lose consciousness! My lord, you only have to dispatch the Ferocious Riders and have them follow behind the Lu Bu army slowly, after three to five days, when the Lu Bu army is about to faint with blurred vision from hunger is the time to capture Lu Bu!”

After hearing Guo Jia’s words, Cao Cao was full of delight. However, he thought of something being wrong and hesitated! “If Lu Bu harden his heart and conduct a forced march? Then won’t he be able to reach

Langye and Zang Ba?!”

“Rest assured, my lord! The first disposition of troops was already sent by someone else for me!” Guo Jia drank a cup of wine that was poured by Cao Cao. He didn’t feel that he couldn’t bear the weight at all.

“Who?!”

“Chen Deng of Guangling!” From Guo Jia’s mouth was the name of a man! Chen Deng of Guangling was even more anxious than Cao Cao! Losing Xu Province, half of it was because of their Chen family selling out Lu Bu! Thus, the first thing Lu Bu does after getting away might not be bothering Cao Cao, but this Chen family was already on Lu Bu’s blacklist!

Cao Cao’s family was big and widespread. There’s also the protection of guards and generals! But the Chen family did not have that! Should Lu Bu decide to launch a surprise attack, ending the Chen family and their Guangling. Then the Chen family really might be extinguished from history in the Latter Han Dynasty!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 14 - The Great Coax

Liu Mang did not know that he had been the subject of a heated discussion of Boss Cao and CEO Guo - he had already been classified as the sort that are unable to be recruited.

“Swoosh!” Within the golden light, Liu Mang was curiously experiencing everything. Last time, he was beaten up and did not feel anything at all whereas this time, he could have a good feel of what crossing over felt like.

From the flash of the golden ray till its disappearance was less than two seconds. When Liu Mang’s eyes finally adjusted, he found himself in a big tent. Within the tent was a delicate looking woman with fine black hair. She was currently binding the pair on her chest.

“So big?!” Liu Mang’s subconscious mind cannot help but utter those words.

“Ahhhhhhhhhhh!!!!” The woman looked up and screamed aloud.

“It’s a misunderstanding! A misunderstanding!” Liu Mang remembered. Wasn’t this delicate looking woman with fine black hair Boss Lu’s daughter - that golden armored female warrior that saved him?

Oh shit! Liu Mang had set the spatial coordinates to his Aries Gold Cloth. Alas, he didn’t know that the Aries Gold Cloth would be in Boss Lu’s daughter’s tent.

Now he's fucked! Not only did he rudely intruded upon someone else's tent, he even saw that her naked! But that pair was really big! Wrong, wrong! Liu Mang came back from his delusions, he can't let her continue screaming. If she keep screaming and Boss Lu found out about what he did, then he'll really be fucked!

With Boss Lu's three digit fighting prowess, to kill him is as easy as swatting a fly!

Liu Mang rushed forward. He held the woman and covered her mouth.

"So soft!" Because Lu Lingqi had took off the cloth that's binding her chest, it's currently entirely devoid of clothing! As Liu Mang was holding her to keep her quiet, he happened to held those pair!

[TL: I guess the author decided to flip Lu Lingqi, name of Lu Bu's daughter given by Koei, to Lu Qiling. Sounds the same, different characters. Well, do you guys want me to change it to Lu Lingqi or keep it as Lu Qiling? They're both fictional names anyways.

edit: 4-22-15 Under popular demand, I am changing the name to Lu Lingqi.]

Unable to help himself, Liu Mang grasped them a couple times.

"Ahhhhhhhhhhhhhh!!!!!" Another scream. But this time, it wasn't Miss Lu. Instead, it was Liu Mang.

He remembered that Miss Lu saved him. However, he would never have

thought that although Miss Lu's fighting prowess could not compared to her father's, it's still over eighty!

Thus, Liu Mang encountered a tragedy.

"It's going to break! Ahhh ahhh ahh!" In the moonlight sky, the Lu Bu army stationed outside the camp all trembled with fear. This scream was enough to cause one to be absolutely horrified.

"It's really broken?!" With a sullen face, Liu Mang was looking at his dangling arms. That bitch was very cruel, I only grasped them and she broke my two arms!

In the main tent of the Lu Bu army, Lu Bu was looking at the two in front of him with a bitter smile.

One was his daughter. The other was the Heavenly Man. For Lu Bu, both of them were very important - he could not afford to lose either. And now? This so called Man from Heaven went into his daughter's tent and even assaulted her! Lu Bu was at a loss.

On the side was Chen Gong, Zhang Liao and Gao Shun. These three men were watching the scene in front of them. They wanted to laugh but dared not laugh. They held their laugher back so hard that even their faces got red.

“Qiling, you can leave first!” First steady his daughter, Lu Bu waved his hands to tell his daughter to leave first.

“Yes father! Humph!” Lu Lingqi glared at Liu Mang. Her glare scared Liu Mang so much that he started trembling.

Seeing his daughter have departed, Lu Bu led Chen Gong, Zhang Liao and Gao Shun and fall onto their knees. “General Who Pacifies the East, Governor of Xu Province, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian leading my subordinates and military advisors, Chen Gong, Gao Shun and Zhang Liao, pay our respects to the Heavenly Man!”

Liu Mang thought that Lu Bu was going to kill him for touching his daughter! Who would’ve expected that these four men actually kneeled to him. “Heavenly Man? What? Me? Tall?”

“Boss Lu, what are you doing!?” Liu Mang wanted to get Lu Bu up, the people from modern times aren’t used to being kneeled and worshipped. However, he abruptly noticed that he can’t move his arms. He thus gave up.

“Get up first, we can speak after!” With a movement, Liu Mang’s two arms were like rattle drums, swaying all over.

Only after Lu Bu helped Liu Mang relocate his dislocated arms did he understand what they meant by Man from Heaven.

That golden light when he left, they regarded it as something of gods and immortals! Added to the fact that he is surnamed Liu, it became

even harder for him to explain himself. They thought that he was sent to earth by the Emperor Liu in Heaven to correct things for the declining Han Dynasty. They called him the Man from Heaven or the Heavenly Man!

Isn't this situation going to make me into the boss?!

Had Liu Mang not been able to go back, perhaps then he would accept it. Having Lu Bu as his subordinate, his survival rate will certainly increase by a lot!

But now that he knows that he can get back, he had to be stupid to stay in this era, the Latter Han Dynasty, where birds don't shit and chickens don't lay eggs and be a shitty boss! No no, not a shitty boss, a warlord.

Liu Mang knew that in the Three Kingdoms period, big eared Liu, black faced Cao and that little authority Sun are all people they he would rather not know! Contend for hegemony in the Three Kingdoms period requires not only wisdom, one must also have a heritage!

Compare wisdom? Even if ten of me together can't compare to those three. Compare heritage? Big eared Liu have the reputation of the imperial uncle, his benevolence and righteousness was known to the whole world. What do I have? Han imperial clansman? This was something that I self bestowed! Although big eared Liu also self bestowed his status as an imperial clansmen, he was able to gain acknowledgement from the emperor!

Black faced Cao already have two provinces under his control! His strategists, the genius Guo Jia, the Xun family's uncle and nephew, Liu Ye, Cheng Yu and a whole bunch of other people. His generals, the Cao

brothers, the Xiahou brothers, Yu Jin, Xu Huang, Xu Chu, Dian Wei (dude's already dead), Li Dian and more.

And I!? If I really became the boss, then I will only have three generals! Even though all three of them are all experts, two fists cannot withstand four legs! As for strategists, there's only the old man Chen Gong. And our territory? None! We're wandering on the streets!

That little authority Sun? Although it's his brother who's currently in power, it's soon to be his turn. Hell, their Sun clan has been passing on their traditions for three generations! Three generations of heritage! Their strategists and generals are all decent and they even have fifty or sixty thousand armored troops!

And I? Taking everything into account, there's only two thousand people! No matter how strong the Formation Piercer are, they cannot win hundred to one!

Nope, Ain't gunna do it! I am determined to not do it! If I become the boss, then if I lose then I'm pretty much going to die for sure.

Look at Lu Bu, Yuan Shao, Yuan Shu and Gongsun Zan. All these lost bosses, didn't they all receive a tragic death?!

If you're not the boss, then when your boss loses, you can still find a new boss and have a go again!

Liu Mang have experienced the inflexibilities of people in ancient times. For example, Chen Gong doesn't like Cao Cao, even if Cao Cao showed

good intentions, he will still be met with cold rebuke from Chen Gong!

Thus, Liu Mang knew that if he says he didn't want to be the boss right now, then perhaps Boss Lu would tie him up and force him to be the boss!

Liu Mang turned his eyes and half kneeled toward Lu Bu and said. "The Great Han Dynasty's days are already numbered. The world shall belong to Lu. The Great Emperor have sent me down the the earthly realm precisely to help Boss Lu accomplish this great cause!"

[TL: Great emperor refers to the first emperor of Han, Liu Bang.]

"What?!" Lu Bu's eyes were wide open. Unaware, he was emitting murderous aura.

Liu Mang felt as if he was currently being stared by a beast, unable to move. Cold sweat was almost dripping from his forehead. However, Liu Mang was still preserving. He knew that should be back down, the situation would be even harder to deal with.

""The Great Han Dynasty's days are already numbered! The Great Han Dynasty's days are already numbered?!" Chen Gong had perplexed eyes. He was completely dazzled.

"The Great Han Dynasty? Lu clan's great cause?!" Zhang Liao and Gao Shun, although having affections for the Han Dynasty, it wasn't as deep as their affection for Lu Bu. Thus, they are only looking at Lu Bu.

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, this world belongs to the people of the world. He who have the virtues shall possess it! Your expedition against the foreigners have helped protect our Han people from outside invasions - a quality achievement! You killed Dong Zhou and saved our Liu clan’s little emperor - a grace to our Liu clan! Thus, the Great Emperor, after much consideration, have sent me down to earthly realm to hand this world to your hands!” Under the powerful pressures of the fierce tiger known as Lu Bu, Liu Mang managed to speak these words out one by one.

“Boss Lu, the provisions bestowed by the Great Emperor is located outside of your precious daughter’s tent.” Seeing that Lu bu did not respond, Liu Mang shifted his attention.

“Provisions? Heaven? Great Emperor’s bestowment?!” Lu Bu was mutting to himself as he looked at Liu Mang. He was thinking of something. If Liu Mang was telling the truth about the expedition against foreigners, then Gongsun Zan was also a great general in the expedition against foreigners! He too would have helped the Han people. Why not choose him? If it’s about having grace to the Liu clan then Cao Cao have even welcomed the Emperor Xian of Han to Xudu, allowing him to be spared from the pursuit of the likes of Guo Si and Li Que.

[TL: After finding the old capital Luoyang ravaged by war, Cao moved the imperial court and Emperor Xian to Xudu in 196.]

Why would he, Lu Bu, be the selection?!

If what Liu Mang was saying is to be false, then what of his golden armor? Just by looking one would know that it’s not something that’s made possible to be made currently. Lightweight and with amazing defense. There’s also that golden light that caused Liu Mang to disappear

right in front of their eyes!

And now, he even brought provisions out of thin air! Is this not something only gods and devils could do?!

Lu Bu did not get carried away, instead he was calm and composed and kneeled down toward Liu Mang. “This subject Lu Bu shall follow the Great Emperor’s will!”

“Whew!” Liu Mang took a deep breath, he finally settled it. “Boss Lu, shall we go to have a look at the provisions and armor?!”

“Armor?!” Lu Bu was confused. Didn’t Liu Mang only brought with him food?!

“Yep, armor! The Great Emperor knew that you have lost your Sky Piercer, thus he specially ordered the Heavenly craftsmen to make an armor and weapon for you!” Liu Mang was looking forward to seeing Lu Bu wear that Saint Cloth and Trident.

[TL: was thinking of putting scale there because I’m quite certain this is the poseidon's scale.]

“Let’s go!” Lu Bu, having lost his Sky Piercer, had his fighting prowess greatly decreased. Now that he have heard that the Great Emperor had the Heavenly craftsmen craft him a weapon, Lu Bu can’t help but get excited.

For a general, the most important things are the weapons and armor! A

good weapon and armor is a general's second life!

"Let's go!" Liu Mang lead the front, followed by Lu Bu. Gao Shun and Zhang Liao was in the rear. The muddleheaded Chen Gong also followed.

“This is the provisions?!” Baskets of meat buns piled on top of baskets of meat buns. Lu Bu puzzledly picked up a bun. “What is this? So white and so soft!” Lu Bu squeezed the meat bun. One must know that back during the times of the Three Kingdom and even during the whole ancient era, what was known as provisions are either unhusked rice or grain husks.

Food made out of unhusked rice or grain husks are either extremely hard or extremely ugly. However, the people back in those days only cared to be able to be full and not starve to death, thus these became the main components of army provisions.

And now, present in front of them was these meat buns. Not only do they look pleasant, they are also extremely soft!

“This is flour essence!?” Chen Gong too saw the meat buns, he picked one up and was greatly surprised. What was flour essence? It’s this kind of white and exquisite flour. The people back then, unlike modern society, would not just throw away any old dirty flour. Hell, they’ll even keep the grain shells. Also, the modern people use machines to grind their grains, achieving very finely grounded flour. The ancients did not have such machines, using grinding stones, their flour was very coarse.

On the market, a jin or fine flour could be exchanged for more than a hundred jin of coarse flour! This kind of thing was not something ordinary people could eat. Even the so called flour essence those bigwigs eat are not as white as these.

[TL: jin = 1.1 pounds = 500grams.]

“Flour essence?!” Liu Mang was a bit embarrassed at saying that he’s going to treat their to a meal but instead brought back a whole bunch of meat buns. Seeing Chen Gong getting so dumbfounded, he was instead baffled.

“Dissatisfied?!” said Liu Mang. “If you’re dissatisfied, then I’ll bring something different next time!”

“Satisfied! Satisfied!” said Gao Shun right away. Before Gao Shun was a soldier, he was a full fledged farmer. He too knew of the quality of fine flour essence and as a man who loved his soldiers like his children, how could he possibly be dissatisfied when he knew that his soldiers are going to eat what only the wealthy could afford!

“That’s good!” Liu Mang had a sigh of relief.

“There’s meat inside?!” Lu Bu picked one up first and ate it. The bun entered the mouth without any coarseness, biting down was met with incomparable elasticity, so very tasty and refreshing, and the most critical part was that Lu Bu actually got to eat meat inside! Large chunks of meat!

Whether during the warring era or in peaceful times, having meat was a very extravagant thing. Only during the New Years would regular people have a liang of meat. However, this one liang of meat was not for a single person to eat, it’s to be shared amongst the whole family. Thus, for a single person be able to get some minced meat was already considered pretty good!

[TL: liang = 50 grams]

And now, in the army provisions was meat! Large chunks of meat!

“Tastes good!” As a warlord, Lu Bu had eaten all kinds of culinary delicacy. However, he currently think that the meat bun was very tasty!

“There is a total of fifteen thousand meat buns!” said Liu Mang.

“This is called meat bun?!” Lu Bu ate another one. He only stopped after finishing his third bun. “Transmit my orders! Pass these meat buns to the soldiers! Each of them shall have six, two a day for three days! That should be sufficient! The rest is to be saved for the unexpected!”

Two a day! That’s about enough! This kind of large cafeteria meat bun was really eaten to make one full! Each of them weighed as much as half a jin!

The large cafeteria meat bun that was seen as dark cuisine by Liu Mang have became a exceptional culinary delicacy to these soldiers. There were even soldiers who were reluctant to eat them, refusing to take a bite even after the buns grew moldy!

Having passed down the provisions, Lu Bu was about to see his long awaited armor and weapon.

“The weapon and armor are not here!” Liu Mang said.

“Not here?!” Lu Bu frowned. He was really uncomfortable without a comfortable weapon.

“It’s in that… that…!” When Liu Mang arrived, he appeared in Miss Lu’s tent. Thus, both the weapon and armor was there! Having been beaten till his arms were dislocated, he dared not try again.

“Let’s go!” After listening to Liu Mang’s words, Lu Bu didn’t know whether to laugh or to cry! This so called Heavenly Man, this Man from Heaven, was actually afraid of his daughter!

Upon entering the tent, the first thing that came into view was a elegant figure that’s practicing martial arts - it was like she was dancing! Yep, she’s practicing martial arts, not dancing! The steel trident that Liu Mang had a hard time lifting even with bold hands was currently being swayed around, giving forth after images of a golden halberd, by that frail looking thing as if it weighed nothing.

“Father?!” Lu Lingqi stopped when she said that people have came into the tent. Holding the trident, she looked like a goddess.

“The weapon that you were talking about, is it this?” said Lu Bu after receiving the trident from his daughter. He was attracted by the trident at first sight!

“Yep! Forged of extremely hard steel, its sharpness enough to make iron be clay, weighing eighty jin, it’s a weapon reserved for an emperor!” Liu Mang was boasting his ass off.

“Extremely hard steel?!” Zhang Liao could not believe it! It requires numerous iron to create steel, this extremely hard steel, how much iron is

required to make that?!

"A weapon reserved for an emperor?!" If Lu Bu was to still doubt Liu Mang's words earlier, then he completely believed him now because what's in his hands was really a divine artifact!

With the trident in his hand, Lu Bu looked even more imposing!

"You all, move aside!" Lu Bu was itchy to try this divine weapon.

"Yes!" Zhang Liao and Gao Shun right away opened up room for Lu Bu.

After they moved away, Lu Bu closed his eyes. He was perceiving and apprehending the weapon in his left hand. Suddenly, he opened his eyes. Liu Mang felt as if this pair of eyes was void of emotions, so desolate and so proud.

"Star Shattering Moon Slicing Slash!" From Lu Bu's mouth came these words. With a kick of his leg, Lu Bu flew to the air. The halberd in his hand was like an extension of his arm. With the halberd pointing toward the heaven, it appears that he really was about to slice the moon.

"Azure Ocean of the Dragon!" Another move! This time, the trident gave off an ang sound, like a ocean dragon's roar!

"Mad Rush of the Bone Blossom!" The trident have already became a golden light. One could only see numerous after images of the halberd with Lu Bu in the center, giving off extreme murderous aura.

Seeing the Lu Bu who was extremely happy while testing the halberd, Zhang Liao and Gao Shun looked at each other and nodded. “Careful my lord, here comes Gao Shun and Zhang Liao!”

The two all of a sudden jumped came into the range of the halberd and jumped into its after image.

“Sha!” With Gao Shun was blocking Lu Bu’s attacks. His Formation Piercer was a group of elite soldiers who use defend before returning attacks. Every one of halberd’s shadow was blocked by Gao Shun.

“Zhan zhan zhan!” Although Zhang Liao was a balanced fighter, his attack was still decent. The blade, in the hands of Zhang Liao, was flashing and tinkling.

“Close ranged weapons could actually be this formidable?!” Liu Mang was dumbstruck. He believed that closed ranged weapons could not compare to bullets! A single bullet could kill you! However, it now appears that he was wrong!

With Lu Bu’s speed as he wield his weapon, a bullet might really not be able to get in!

On the battlefield, there are tens of thousands of arrows flying toward oneself, comparable to machine gun fire. And these men, they could chop off their enemy general’s head within the rain of arrows, their martial prowess was over the skies!

Liu Mang finally understood the profoundness of the Chinese martial arts. Should people like Lu Bu or Gao Shun appear in modern times, they are certain to become world class masters!

"Bang!" A light flashed by. A fragment flew across Liu Mang's face, rubbing his cheeks, a little bit away from taking Liu Mang's life.

This was a fragment of Zhang Liao's blade. "Kaka" Zhang Liao's steel blade have now broken apart, leaving only a handle. The handle too was densely covered with cracks!

Gao Shun's weapon, on the other hand, was fine. However, his shield was all split up and in pieces.

"Formidable, my lord!" Gao Shun and Zhang Liao looked at each other. They could see from each other's eyes the fear, the astonishment and a deep sense of powerlessness!

"Hahahahahaha!" Lu Bu too recovered. Holding the trident, he laughed loudly. "A Divine weapon! Divine Weapon! With such a halberd in my hands, who in the world could possibly stop this Lu Fengxian?!"

Afterward, Lu Bu, whether sleep or eat, would always bring this halberd with him so that he would not have what happened to the Sky Piercer happen to it.

"And the armor?!" Having felt the power of the divine weapon, Lu Bu grew interested in the armor.

“It’s there!” Lu Bu looked toward the direction Liu Mang pointed.

A crown like helmet, covered densely with scales, a golden shine that made it appeared to be sacred and a large cloak that made the armor ascend to an even higher level!

“Divine clothing, armor of the Ocean Emperor! Bestowed to Boss Lu by the Great Emperor! The armor weighs twenty five jin and with whole body protection, there’s no need for the fear of incoming swords and blades!”

Works of modern technology, manufactured with aluminum alloy, extremely lightweight. Although it could not block bullets or bombs, it could easily block swords, blades, staff and clubs.

Scaled armor coupled with the triangular construction of the interior, this could be said as the pinnacle of armors in the the era of closed ranged weapons!

“Armor of the Ocean Emperor?!” Lu Bu was emotionally moved. This was another golden armor! He have seen Liu Mang’s golden armor, he even tried to test out it’s defense himself and found that even if he had the Sky Piercer, he likely couldn’t do anything to that armor unless he go after the face opening!

Now this armor in front of him, compared to Liu Mang’s armor, appeared even more magnificent, even more luxurious and with even stronger defense!

Armor of the Ocean Emperor! Bestowed by the Great Emperor! Lu Bu was even more moved!

This was an armor reserved for the emperor!

“Quick, call forth the three ladies!” Wearing armor was not an easy task. In wartimes, one could hastily wear it. However, now he must do it step by step!

Lu Bu had his men call forth Lady Yan, Lady Ren and Lady Cao. These three women helped him wear the armor.

Soon, Lu Bu came out.

“This!” Liu Mang felt as if this Poseidon's Scale was made for Lu Bu! From shape to size and then to the magnificence, Lu Bu completely wore this Poseidon's Scale like a real Divine Cloth!

Hell, even some cosplay gurus wasn’t close to Lu Bu’s level!

“Hell, he’s already middle aged! To still be this alluring!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 16 - Look Your Sister

“Haha, Haha!” Lu Bu was very pleased. This was the first time ever since Xiapi’s defeat did he laugh so happily.

It’s good as long as Boss Lu’s happy! Liu Mang was also relieved. He touched his pockets, there’s still those five thousand bucks from selling that gown. Liu Mang was tempted! A single gown was worth twenty thousand, what about the rest?! For example, some paintings?! Some historical antiques?!

Although Liu Mang was not an economics major, he still knows that antiques are some valuable stuff! There’s another valuable thing in the Three Kingdoms - gold! If he followed Boss Lu, conquered some land and obtained a position, he could get all the gold he wanted!

Just as Liu Mang was still in his delusions, Lu Bu’s face changed, he all of all sudden got serious again.

“Brother Liu Mang!” shouted Lu Bu as he looked at Liu Mang seriously.

“Yes!” hearing Lu Bu’s shout, Liu Mang quickly wipe away his saliva and responded.

“You have brought the provisions back in a timely manner and have even brought me the weapon and armor bestowed by the Great Emperor. According to principle, I ought to greatly reciprocate you!” Lu Bu placed the trident aside and sat in the center of the tent. On his sides were his wives, each more stunning than the last.

“No need to greatly reciprocate me, just give me some hundred eighty gold!” Liu Mang was totally blunt.

“Hundred eighty gold?!” Chen Gong, with a wry smile, shook his head. Had it been in the ordinary times, back when Lu Bu still had the Xu Province, then Liu Mang’s request was certainly reasonable. Perhaps, Lu Bu would even award him more than that. Alas, they are currently fleeing! Who would bring gold when they flee?! Only Lu Bu’s three wives would even have things like jewelry or so!

“However!” Lu Bu added an however to his words, causing Liu Mang’s heart to suddenly jump. He had a bad premonition.

“Brother Liu Mang, it’s fine for you to return back from the Heaven. However, instead of my tent, Chen Gong’s tent, or even Gao Shun or Zhang Liao’s tent, you appeared in my daughter’s tent. Say, how shall we deal with this?!” said Lu Bu with a golden flash in his eyes.

“Father, you!” Originally, Liu Mang’s appearance in her tent was only known to Lu Bu, Chen Gong and a few others. However, with what Lu Bu just said, everyone now knows! This caused Miss Lu’s face to immediately redden.

“Misunderstanding! This is definitely a misunderstanding!” Liu Mang was at a loss. How many fucking days have he been here? For he to be misunderstood so many times!

[TL: He’s been here for 2 days now! Hmm…. he was mistaken for a Cao spy, then a Lu Bu general, then Cao general, then…. way too fucking

many!]

"Misunderstanding?!" With a pondering expression, Lu Bu looked at Liu Mang. Seeing Lu Bu's expression, Chen Gong mind had a sudden turn and stepped forward to speak.

"How could it be a misunderstanding?!" said Chen Gong righteously. "A woman ought to be pure, ought to remain chaste, your one misunderstanding have seen all of our Miss's body! Say, how would our Lu Bu army's Miss be able to go out in the future?! How would she be able to get married off in the future?! "

"It really was a misunderstanding! That transfer... no... the Great Emperor set the location for me to appear in the heavenly realm to be that Aries Gold Cloth! For the Gold Cloth to be taken by Miss Lu, I really didn't know that!" Liu Mang have tried his best to explain. However, it was obvious that Boss Lu wasn't pleased with his explanation, he even saw that Boss Lu once again grabbed the trident.

Is he going to kill me?! Liu Mang subconsciously swallowed his saliva and said "If she can't be married off, then just marry her to me!" Once these words came out of his mouth, Liu Mang knew he fucked up. Not mentioning that Miss Lu, being Boss Lu's daughter, is of high status; her appearance was devastating beautiful, capable of causing the downfall of a city or state! In today's society, she's certainly an authentic BaiFuMei how would she possibly fancy a DiaoSi like himself?!

[TL: Bai Fu Mei, literally means white, rich, pretty. Standards for a top quality beauty in china.

Diaosi, mentioned before a couple times. DiaoSi is a chinese slang

meaning that the guy is of mediocre appearance, humble family, no car, no house and no connection. Basically a loser. Oh yeah, didn't mention before but DiaoSi literally means penis thread/hair]

"Who would marry a lecher like you!" Lu Lingqi was enraged. What a evening she had. After practicing martial arts, she planned to take off her armor and rest. However, who would've expected that there appeared out of thin air this lecher in front of her. Not only did he saw her naked body, he also held her to stop her screaming and even touched… touched! Lu Lingqi's face was completely red! It was unclear rather it's because of her anger of her embarrassment.

And now, he even dared to openly demand for I to be married to him! Did he really think that no one would want me?! Father will certainly not agree to that!

Like Liu Mang, Lu Lingqi too believed that Lu Bu would never agree to that. Liu Mang even wanted to run away. However, in this wilderness, where would he run to?! The transfer CD is still there!

"Good! Once said, even four horses cannot unsay it! " Ferociously slapping his chair, Lu Bu stood up. "Your marriage is thus set! When we meet up with Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao, you two shall be married!"

"What?! Father!" Lu Lingqi called.

"Nani?!" Liu Mang too did not expect that. He was looking at Boss Lu with eyes of bewilderment.

[TL: yep, he went and said nani, japanese for what.]

"Father, I do not want to marry this lecher!" Lu Lingqi shouted hurriedly.

Liu Mang originally also wanted to turn down the marriage. However, hearing Lu Lingqi's words, he was instead incited. "Who is going to marry a violent woman like you!" The marks of getting beaten up by Lu Lingqi was still there!

"Who did you call violent woman?!" With her canines showing and eyes shining, Lu Lingqi shouted back at Liu Mang.

"You you you you it's you!" said Liu Mang hiding behind Gao Shun.

"Lecher, you want to die?!" This little tigress Lu Lingqi was enraged. She rolled up her sleeves exposing her spotlessly white and jade-like arm and was about to engage Liu Mang.

"Help! A tigress is trying to kill someone!" Liu Mang and Lu Lingqi started a game of chase around Gao Shun, exposing him to an awkward situation. If he don't stand there, then little Teacher Liu Mang would be caught and beaten up by the Miss. With his frail body, who knows if he could even shoulder the beating. And if Gao Shun doesn't move and continue to be a wooden stalk standing there for the two, it's an unpleasant feeling.

"Nonsense! Are you two done?!" A furious Lu Bu shouted at the two abruptly.

The two immediately stopped. There's still a big tiger on the stage!

"Congratulations my lord on obtaining such an ideal son in law!" Chen Gong was the first to respond. He had the same idea as Lu Bu. Regarding that Heavenly Man Liu Mang's means of doing things, he was completely awestruck; and if what he says was the truth, then whoever shall obtain him shall receive the world! Divine weapon! Outstanding able individual! And to be able to obtain provisions for thousands out of thin air! Although Liu Mang said that he was under the orders of the Great Emperor to pass the world to the Lu clan, no one knew what he was thinking!

Thus, the main importance right now is to tie Liu Mang to this Lu Bu army's war chariot! Currently Lu Bu have neither city nor treasure, the only thing he could give was his precious daughter.

To obtain Lu Bu's daughter was the equivalent of obtaining half of the Lu Bu army.

"Boss Lu, please don't!" It wasn't that Liu Mang didn't want to obtain a beautiful wife. After all, according to the twenty some year old bachelor Liu Mang 'having a woman be his girlfriend was already godsend!'

But being pretty was one thing, can't your martial prowess not be so strong?! Having already beaten up once, Liu Mang does not want to be beaten his whole life!

"Are you trying not to be responsible?!" Regarding other issues, Lu Bu was willing to concede. However, this was something he would not concede. A pair of tiger eyes glaring at Liu Mang caused him to swallow

the words he wanted to say.

"Father, I do not want to marry him!" Lu Lingqi's words brought immense joy to Liu Mang. It's good to not marry me, please! I beg you dear great aunt, don't marry me please!

"The order of your parents, the words of your matchmaker, where comes your say in this matter?!" To reprimand Liu Mang, perhaps Lu Bu might still take consideration but to reprimand his own daughter, it was completely normal for him to do.

"Mother?! Second and Third Mothers?!" Being unable to persuade her father, Lu Lingqi moved onto Lu Bu's three wives.

"Husband, this…?" said Lady Ren. She was Diao Chan, history's number one beauty. She was the most loved by Lu Bu. Toward Lu Lingqi, she loved her no less than Lu Bu.

"This matter is non negotiable!" Lu Bu loved Diao Chan deeply. He would even discard everything for her. However, currently, he refuse to listen to her.

Lady Yan was the first wife, she's also Lu Lingqi's mother. She too could not bear her daughter being married off. Once married, her daughter will become someone else's wife, someone else's daughter in law. How would she possibly be willing to do that?! However, seeing that her husband was so firm, Lady Yan knew that her persuasions would account to nothing.

“Lingqi, your father was also thinking of your good! Don’t act willfully and make a scene!”

“Humph!” Watching both her father and mother act like this, Lu Lingqi knew that she cannot escape from marrying this lecher. In a fury, she disregarded everyone present and ran toward her tent.

Liu Mang have made up his mind. After all, he have already rescued Lu Bu, have already been extremely benevolent to Boss Lu. For the sake of the future, for the sake of his life, Liu Mang decided to leave after the transfer CD finishes cooling down.

He could go find little authority Sun or big old Yuan Shao. If he sells some modern armor or so to them, certainly they will treat him like a honored guest!

“Reporting!” A messenger ran in. “Reporting to the lord, we have discovered enemy troops twenty li ahead!”

“Discovered enemy troops?!” Lu Bu frowned. “Cao Cao was certainly fast to arrive!”

“Not Cao Cao!” Chen Gong shook his head. The Cao army was blocked at the gates of Xiapi. Wei Xu and Song Xian should have blocked them in for at least half a day. With half a day’s time, it was enough for the Lu Bu army to gain enough distance from the Cao army.

“These troops should have been sent from Guangling!” Chen Gong guessed correctly.

“Guangling?!” Lu Bu’s eyes became filled with murderous intent. “Chen Deng of Guangling!!” The Chen Deng father and son have harmed Lu Bu greatly! For the interests of their Chen family, they sold out Lu Bu just like that! Although Wei Xu and Song Xian also betrayed him, he could still forgive them since they were his brothers. But that Chen family falls in a completely different category!

“Obey my orders, Gao Shun and Zhang Liao! Come with me, we shall meet Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong!”

“Yes!” Gao Shun and Zhang Liao both went back to the barracks to pick the troops to meet the enemy with Lu Bu with.

Liu Mang originally planned to slip away in times of chaos but was instead caught by Boss Lu. “Come worthy son in law Liu Mang, let’s go have a look at this divine weapon being used for the first time in my hands!”

“Fuck, look your sister!”

[TL: Look your sister is the same as the English equivalent of 'look my ass'. Hope that solves the mystery.]

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 17 - Got Sold

In front of Liu Mang and over the vast plains was the countless Cao troops with their spears sticking out, their bright armor dazzling in the wind and their war horses neighing, ready to engage!

Although Liu Mang have came to this era, he yet to experience the actual assembly of a large army. And now, with the view in front of him, Liu Mang was totally frightened. Back in Xiapi, the majority of the Cao troops was besieging the gates and only few managed to get in the city and fight against Liu Mang and his troops. Later, although Yu Jin and Xiahou Dun's armies arrived, Liu Mang managed to convert their targets to Wei Xu and Song Xian! Thus, he have never once seen the assembly of a large army!

Liu Bu and the rest of them, on the other hand, was acting much more normal. Covered in the golden Poseidon Scale, Lu Bu was glittering under the sun's ray. Holding the trident in his hand, he appeared even more impressive. Although he wasn't riding the Red Hare, his mount was still impressive looking horse.

"I suspect there must be at least ten thousand enemies in front of us!" Liu Mang was speechless. In his school, five thousand people could cover the whole sports field. With this many people, they certainly covered more than a single sports field!

"Fifteen thousand or so!" Lu Bu briefly stated the amount of men Chen Deng have.

"Fifteen thousand?!" Liu Mang began to think that this Lu Bu was crazy.

He had only some two thousand troops! And now, he was planning to use these two thousand troops to fight against fifteen thousand! Was that not a sign of an idiot?!

Even if all of your subordinates were elites, you can't fight one against ten! Hell, did you think that they were all Chen Zhen's and Ip Man's?!

[TL; google them if you don't know who they are.]

"Hehe!" Lu Bu did not respond to Liu Mang. He chuckled and rode his horse forward.

"All army! In formation!" Gao Shun raised his hands and waved it down.

"Arrange formation! Arrange formation!" The seven hundred some Formation Breakers quickly arranged themselves into formations. Although Liu Mang knew neither of the arts of war or the arts of formations, he could tell that the Formation Breakers have arranged themselves like a huge turtle! Countless shields have arranged into a strong defensive line. Within this defensive line, gleaming in the sunlight was blades.

If the fifteen thousand people on the opposite side instill fear into one's mind, then the current Formation Breaker, the seven hundred people in perfect formation like a single person, was like a giant!

On the other side, the enemies in red too stopped moving. They began to separate into different groups.

From that large army comes a group of men riding horses.

Leading was a scholarly man, on his sides was a couple armored generals.

“Master, in the front is the Lu Bu army!” A general spoke to the scholar in white.

“Oh?!” said the scholar indifferently. He began to run his eyes over the Lu Bu army, Zhang Liao’s Bing Province Soldiers, Gao Shun’s Formation Breaker and that person in the golden armor.

Isn’t that person in the golden armor Lu Bu?!

“Word of mouth had it that within horses, Red Hare, with men, Lu Bu. Now that I saw, he’s nothing extraordinary!” A general on the side spoke up. “The Lu Bu army currently have but a few thousand people! Seeing our large army, instead of taking shelter, he dated to engage us head on. What arrogance! Master, this general asks to be the vanguard! I shall fetch that insignificant Lu Bu’s head!”

Chen Deng too was confused. What exactly was this Lu Bu thinking?! Having once worked for Lu Bu, he knew of the prowess of the Formation Breaker and the Bing Province Soldiers.

The Formation Breaker was said to be the king of infantries! Although the Formation Breaker numbered but eight hundred, they could rival five thousand!

The Bing Province Soldiers were the Bing Province Armored Calvary. Although they no longer have their horses, they were still soldiers who have been through hundreds of battles!

However, even with these, they cannot possibly win against fifteen thousand! Not to mention, from Prime Minister Cao, it was learned that Lu Bu's army lacked provisions. According to calculations, he should have ran out of food for a day now!

Perhaps there is a trap?! Chen Deng's overly suspicious personality caused him to be unable to see through the Lu Bu on the other side.

"Let's go! We shall try the Marquis of Wen!" Being unable to see through Lu Bu's mindset, Chen Deng could only try him out!

"Heeyah!" Chen Deng and his men began riding toward Lu Bu.

"Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen, show yourself! Chen Deng of Guangling have came to see you!" Shouted Chen Deng personally.

"Haha haha! What sort of thing is this Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong? He is but a man who turns his back on his master and abandons his loyalty!" With a bold laugher, Lu Bu came forth riding his horse.

"You dared insult my master!" A general was about to rush forward to engage Lu Bu but was stopped by Chen Deng. To fight against Lu Bu alone is a death wish! Although Lu Bu have neither the Red Hare nor his Sky Piercer, he was still someone that a second rated general could not compare to!

“The Marquis of Wen seemed to be in good health!” Said Chen Deng, holding his fist.

“Thanks to your Chen family’s blessing, I’m still alive!” The trident in Lu Bu’s hands started to buzz, showing its master’s killing intent.

“Hehe, it’s good to be alive, good to be alive!” Chen Deng laughed. “Oh Marquis of Wen, a few days back, Xu Province was still yours and you had seventy thousand men. How come are only left with this few men now?!” laughed Chen Deng.

“Humph! Why I’m left with this few men, how would you, Chen Deng, not know?! If you didn’t, then you won’t have appeared in front of me now!” said Lu Bu with a snort.

“Marquis of Wen oh Marquis, my father and I did it for your sake too!” Chen Deng had an expression like he was thinking for your sake. “Prime Minister Cao was sent on imperial orders to rule over the world. Marquis of Wen, as an official of Han, you ought to lay down your military power and enter the imperial court as an official. When the moment comes, your position would thus ascend a couple ranks and bring splendor shines on your family’s door! To give the Xu Province to Prime Minister Cao is to give the Xu Province to the Emperor!”

“For my sake? Haha. What a great way to do things for my sake! No wonder your Chen family of Guangling could take root in Xu Province for all these years! Fifteen thousand troops! What a large number!” Lu Bu began to held a bit of admiration for the Chen family. They were already here when Tao Qian was still in power. Tao Qian have forgotten about them. Then when Liu Bei and finally he controlled Xu Province, they were still there as the lord of Guangling! Not only were they not harmed at all,

they even grew larger!

Fifteen thousand troops was even comparable to a warlord's!

"What a pity!" Lu Bu continued. "What a pity that your old father, Chen Gui, cannot live till this date!"

Hearing that Lu Bu mentioned his father, Chen Deng frowned. "Marquis of Wen, as the saying goes, one shall not strike the face when beating someone up, one shall not bring forth one's relative in an argument! Marquis of Wen, wasn't your speech just now lacking etiquette?!"

"Hahahaha! I understand, I understand!" Lu Bu looked at Chen Deng with a mocking smile. It was exactly as Gongtai said, this Chen Deng still didn't know of that incident. "I suspect you still didn't know! No wonder, no wonder!"

"Didn't know?!" Chen Deng already suspected that Lu Bu had a trap set up. Now, hearing Lu Bu's words, he grew even more suspicious.

"When did the Marquis of Wen started talking in riddles and rhymes. This isn't like the Marquis of Wen's style!" said Chen Deng.

"Sigh! Oh Chen Deng, why bother?! For your Prime Minister Cao to not tell you, he must certainly have his reasons! Say, as an outsider, how could I intrude upon your business?!"

Cao Cao was hiding something from me? Chen Deng glanced at the Formation Breaker and the Bing Province Army. Didn't Cao Cao said the Lu Bu army ran out of provisions and have staved for a day?! However, no matter how you look at them, they looked to be completely healthy, without any signs of starvation! "Marquis of Wen, if you have something to say then say it!"

If there was something that Chen Deng was unable to let go of then it would be his Chen family's growth and his father Chen Gui.

"Oh righteous emperor! I, Lu Bu, is inferior! Oh how inferior!" Who says Lu Bu doesn't know how to scheme? He just never bothered to!

"Stray dog, it goes without saying that you are inferior to my master! What is there to lament about?!" One of Chen Deng's general already didn't like Lu Bu for he disdained Lu Bu for being called the number one general under heaven.

"Yuanlong, make sure to close your family's cage properly so that your dogs won't randomly bite people!" Had it not been for the fact that Lu Bu wanted to see the Chen Deng's expression after finding out what happened to his father, he would've already killed that man instead of saying this!

"Step down!" Chen Deng was eager to know the information regarding his father. "Sorry to show such a disgraceful scene to the Marquis of Wen! Perhaps the Marquis could inform this Chen Deng of the news of his father?!" Chen Yuanlong wasn't dumb, the only thing that Cao Cao could try to hide from him would be information regarding his father!

“Well then, seeing Yuanlong’s sincerity, I guess I shall tackle the difficult job of informing you the news! Chen Gui, your father, have already passed away!” Seeing Chen Deng’s marvelous expression, Lu Bu wanted to laugh but had to held his laughter back!

“Impossible! Impossible!” Chen Deng eyes were wide open, his expression showing a refusal to accept the news. “Lu Bu, Deng have treated you with courtesy. Why must you deceive Deng?!” asked Chen Deng.

“What, did you, Chen Yuanlong, see this Lu Bu as the kind of person who speaks of false words?!” Lu Bu’s expression also grew colder.

“Not only did your father passed away, he died at the hands of your devoted Prime Minister Cao!” declared Lu Bu word by word.

“You’re lying! Lies!” Chen Deng was no longer calm and collected. Although Chen Gui might have died, he can’t possibly die at the hands of Cao Cao! Chen Gui dying will not benefit Cao Cao one bit! Cao Cao cannot be that stupid!

“Believe what you want!” Lu Bu didn’t want to bother explaining. “All you have to do is go ask Cao Aman what your father said before he died and everything will make sense!”

“Humph! Regarding this, I will certainly ask the Prime Minister. However, Marquis of Wen is best to return with me to meet the Prime Minister too!” Chen Deng have made up his mind. He was determined to make Lu Bu stay. Lu Bu was too big of a threat. Just by himself, he have caused Chen Deng to have be unable to sleep properly at night. On top

of that, there's his army! Thus Chen Deng was not going to let Lu Bu walk away alive!

"What, you wanted to make me stay?! Then come!" Lu Bu sneered.

"If that's the case, then I shall meet you on the battlefield!" CHen Deng also didn't expect Lu Bu to surrender just like that. He was about to return to his army after saying those words.

"To stand in front of I, Lu Bu, did you think that you can come and go as you please?!" Said Lu Bu coldly. "It's better for you to remain here!" With a clap of his legs, the large horse Lu Bu was on rushed out like the wind.

"You dare!" The generals by Chen Gong's side cannot bear it any longer. In their view, they considered Lu Bu to be simply a handsome exterior with a hollow inside. To dare rush forward alone!

"Lu Bu, prepare to leave your head! Remember that the person who killed you is Guangling..." One of Chen Deng's general, before he was even able to say his name, already had his head launched into the sky.

"I don't need your name! There's too many people that died under my hands, I cannot remember all these names!" Blood flowed down along the trident's tip. The trident have finally tasted blood.

"Sha!" Two more generals rushed forward. Within a bout, both of them was dismounted by Lu Bu.

Chen Deng brought with him a total of five generals. Now, there's only two left. The two generals looked at each other and yelled. "Master, quickly, run away! We shall stop him!"

Right after saying those words, two mode headless corpses dropped to the ground. All of Chen Deng's five generals were killed.

"Humph!" However, in just this little amount of delay, Chen Deng managed to run back into his army.

"Lu Bu, no matter how strong you are, you are but a single man! Against a whole army, your are but a speck of dust! I advise you to surrender, otherwise you will just throw away your subordinate's lives!" Chen Deng have entered into the army, safe from Lu Bu.

"Is that so? Then come and try it out!" Lu Bu slashed his halberd across. Under the sunshine, he looked as like a god on earth!

"Good! Since you wanted to die, I shall help you accomplish it! Transmit my orders to have the whole army attack!" Although Chen Deng was a scholar, the scholars during the Three Kingdoms Periods are not one bit bad on the battlefield!

"Master's orders! Whole army, attack!"

"Master's orders! Whole army, attack!" The orders was transmitted from one messenger to another. Soon, the large Chen army began to move.

With fifteen thousand people, even if they each spit on you, it's enough

to drown you. Not to mention this uniform motion, the whole earth began to shake and dust began flying all over.

You don't say, Chen Deng actually really does know his military affair! Pikemen to the front, shielded blade soldiers protecting the flanks, and two thousand archers shooting from the middle of the army.

A sky full of arrows came flying toward the Lu Bu army.

"Attention Bing Province soldiers, all troops pull back!" Zhang Liao wasn't stupid. His current Bing Province Armored Cavalry current lacked war horses. Thus, they could only be used as infantries. Without large shields like those of the Formation Breaker's, it was absolutely impossible for infantries to survive a rain of arrow.

As expected of the elites, the Bing Province soldiers moved out of range of the Chen army's bows.

"Change formation!" Gao Shun did not retreat in the face of all these arrows. Instead, he gave an order and the seven hundred Formation Breaker immediately held their shields up creating a wall of shield blocking the arrows.

"High shoot!" Seeing that the wall of shields have blocked his arrows, Chen Deng decisively ordered for the high shoot.

One must not estimate the Chen army. Being able to occupy Guangling for so long, they naturally have the ability.

The two thousand lifted their bows and started shooting toward the sky. The arrows flew to their peak height and then started falling down. With the help of gravity, the arrows became even more powerful.

"Black Tortoise Formation!" With a order from Gao Shun, the seven hundred Formation Breaker tilted their shields one by one. Like a turtle, they withdrew into the formation of shields.

"Doing dong dong!" With the addition of gravity, the arrows grew a lot stronger. Even though the Formation Breaker had the protection of their large shields, there were still some arrows that managed to shoot through the chinks of the shield and into the formation.

"Pop!" The arrowheads shot through the shields and directly into one's arms and body. Soon, blood was flowing. Although suffering from intolerable pain, these Formation Breaker soldiers were still dead silent and had their eyes focused on the enemies outside!

"Pikemen, attack!" Chen Deng saw that archers had no effect and decided for a direct attack.

"Sha!" There was a total of eight thousand pikemen. For eight thousand to fight against seven hundred, as long as they're not all idiots they are certain to win! When one is up against something that is about as powerful as oneself, he would give his all. However, when one is up against something that is weaker than oneself, something that is extremely weak, he will start to loosen up.

For seven hundred men, even if you're the elite amongst the elite, the king of soldiers, it amounts to nothing. For ten against one, even if you

can block them, they are able to pile up and crush you to death!

The enemy was getting closer. The distant way cries sounded as if just next to one's ears. However, the Formation Breaker was nonmoving and terribly quiet. Without Gao Shun's commands, none of these Formation Breaker soldier was going to move. Even if a blade was coming at them!

Hundred steps, ninety steps, eighty steps, seventy steps, fifty steps, thirty steps, twenty steps, ten steps.

The soldiers of the Formation Breaker could even see the enemy's expressions and demeanors. Those with good eyes were even able see the facial hair on the enemy soldiers.

"Did those guys got scared stupid?!" The leading general of the Chen army watched the Formation Breaker and laughed. He laughed very happily. It is of no wonder, against nearly twenty times the troops, being scared was normal!

However, worry not! It's just a single slash, a single slash and everything will be over!

Soon, this general will be unable to laugh.

As Gao Shun watched the ever approaching enemies, he actually closed his eyes.

"Gao Shun went crazy?!" Liu Mang was dumbfounded. He was standing next to Gao Shun! If these eight thousand pikemen charge over, how

would he still be able to live?!

Did you got paralyzed?! Liu mang wanted to run away only to find out that he cannot run away as he is currently within the formation of shields.

“Boss Gao, Handsome Gao! Gao Gao! Fuck! Gao my ass! Send some orders!” Could it be that they are to stand there motionless for people to attack them?!

“Sha!” The first Chen soldier who came over had eyes full of smiles. These enemies were really scared silly. His blade was already enroute to someone’s body. In a couple seconds, there’ll be some blood spraying out and then outstanding military service!

With outstanding military service, he could enjoy the splendors of the rewards!

“Die! Die!” Every single Chen soldier’s face exposed a sinister expression.

Suddenly, Gao Shun opened his eyes. “Open formation!”

The Formation Breaker that was originally like a tortoise shell suddenly opened a gap. Like a giant black tortoise opening its mouth, the vanguard pikemen were swallowed into the formation.

A hundred, two hundred, three hundred, five hundred, a thousand, two thousand!

The giant black tortoise have swallowed a total of two thousand people!

"Close formation!" Gao Shun gave orders again. The gap that was open was once again closed.

"Kill them!" said Gao Shun without a hint of emotion.

"What?!" The general who was swallowed by the black tortoise was dumbfounded. The gap have closed. Their two thousand men was enclosed within the circular formation. Blocked by shields on all sides, their escape route was completely blocked.

"Seven hundred men swallowing two thousand?! Boss Gao, what appetite you have. Careful not to choke yourself!" Liu Mang was roasting from the side.

Gao Shun gave Liu Mang a white eye, without absolute confidence, he wouldn't do such a thing!

The general who led the two thousand men inside the formation tried to force his way out to no avail. He bit his teeth and said "Brothers! The Lu Bu army wanted to swallow us! A mere seven hundred men wanted to swallow two thousand of us! What great appetite! He is seeking for self destruction! Brothers, follow me and kill the enemies!" They were going to risk their all because if they don't then they really might die here.

"Ah?" Chen Deng too found out what the Formation Breaker have done. "What appetite. Since you want to swallow my soldiers, I'll send you more

to swallow! Transmit my orders, have the right flank shielded blade troops engage the enemy!”

Eight thousand pikemen, Gao Shun could still resist them. After all, the shielded soldiers are the nemesis of pikemen. However, when encountered with similar type shielded soldiers, it’ll be difficult then. For the opposing side too have shields and could also form formations to directly clash upon Gao Shun’s Formation Breaker. Once the Formation Breaker have been broken up, then they’re as good as dead!

“Turn!” Gao Shun gave orders again.

The whole Formation started moving. Like a top, the rotate around. Each rotation faster than the last and with each rotation came foul wind and bloody rain.

Ever since Chen Deng’s shielded blade soldiers appeared, the Formation Breaker began to suffer casualties. With every clash there would be soldiers of Formation Breaker vomiting blood. This was caused from the impact injuring the internal organs. Whenever someone left the formation, someone else will replace him, maintaining the rotation of the formation.

With pikemen on the inside and shielded blade soldiers on the outside, the Formation Breaker was about to reach their limits!

One by one, the soldiers of the Formation Breaker fall. One by one, the fallen soldiers were replaced by new soldiers only to fall again.

Soon, over two hundred men was lost within the formation.

"Humph! And here I thought you had such wondrous appetite! Seems like you can't swallow all of them after all! If you can't swallow them, then spit up what you have swallowed!" Chen Deng sneered. "The left flank shielded blade soldiers, join the fray and send them to hell!"

The right wind shielded blade soldiers also moved. The Formation Breaker, in the end, cannot take on all the enemies. Liu Mang cried. Fuck! In the end, I still cannot escape from death! Boss Lu, you fraud! I sent you food, weapon and armor and in the end you just have to fuck with me like so!

"Sha!" Gao Shun also joined the fray. There wasn't enough people to rotate!

Seven hundred against eight thousand plus the shielded blade soldiers. That's thirteen thousand! Brother, did you think you're some kind of god?!

"Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, just wait for me to kill you!" Chen Deng's eyes were glittering. He saw the golden armored man within the Formation Breaker and suddenly got frightened. "That's right! Lu Bu! Lu Bu! Fighting up till now was only the Formation Breaker's Gao Shun. Where's Lu Bu and Zhang Liao?! That golden armored man inside the Formation Breaker did not move at all. This isn't Lu Bu's style!

"Haha, Chen Deng, were you looking for this Lu Bu? Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is here! Chen Deng, prepare to die!" From Chen Deng's flanks suddenly appeared a group of troops. Wasn't this Lu Bu leading them?!

So, actually, as it turns out that the Formation Breaker swallowing two thousand pikemen wasn't because they were arrogant and conceited. Rather, it was a performance for Chen Deng. Their goal was for Chen Deng to believe that victory was within his grasp, for him to continue sending out troops! First it was the right flank shielded blade soldiers. Then it was the left flank shielded blade soldiers. Now, both of his flanks were unprotected. All he have left was the archers in the middle of the army. Although they numbered two thousand, they cannot stand up to Lu Bu and the Bing Province Soldiers that he's leading. Not to mention there's Zhang Liao there too!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 18 - I, Lu Bu, Never Regret

“Sha!” With a slash, Liu Mang killed the enemy in front of him. Blood sprayed all over his face. Had it been before, he would’ve been afraid of the blood. But now, he didn't have the time to think about the blood!

“Gao Shun, I hate you!” Had it not been that Gao Shun was too greedy and decided to swallow two thousand pikemen, how could the formation possibly be destroyed so easily?!

Now without killing the two thousand pikemen, they were instead getting killed first! Fortunately, he was wearing the Aries Gold Cloth. Else, he’d already be dead!

Gao Shun did not speak. Instead, he pointed toward the distant slope.

“What do you mean?!” Before Liu Mang could understand what Gao Shun meant, he suddenly heard a voice. “Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is here! Chen Deng, prepare to die!”

“Fuck!” Liu Mang finally understood everything. He understood why Boss Lu wanted him to wear the Aries Gold Cloth and stay with the Formation Breaker. All of this was to make him into a bait to attract Chen Deng’s attention!

What a fucking boss! A fucking father in law! Liu Mang was fuming with rage between gritted teeth.

“Break through the archers! Kill Chen Deng!” Zhang Liao rushed forward after giving off a command.

“Sha!” Although the Bing Province Soldiers no longer have their mounts, they are not at all inferior to other troops. Not to mention, there’s also Lu Bu leading the attack.

“Ahhhhhhhhhhhh!” Chen Deng’s army was left with only archers. Although bows and arrows are strong in long range, they’re nothing in close range!

Blood splattered everywhere. Flesh and Bones were scattered all over. Everywhere Lu Bu’s army went, everyone was killed, not a single survivor! Some archers, having been scared witless, decided to desert and flee.

“Hold out against them! Don’t withdraw!” Chen Deng withdrew his side sword and killed a retreating archer. “All army, fight to the death and wait for our troops to return! Anyone who dared retreat will be like this man!” Chen Deng’s malevolent expression managed to scared a lot of his soldiers. These men, biting their teeth, took out their sidearm, their short swords, and began to engage the enemies.

Archers was already weak against infantries to begin with. And now across from them wasn’t just some regular infantries but rather the dismounted Bing Province Heavy Cavalries. Thus, wherever they go, it was a massacre!

“Mother!” Someone collapsed. This sort of massacre wasn’t something that an average person could stand up against!

Although Chen Deng's troops have followed the Chen family for a long time, they have never came across this kind of massacring God that is Lu Bu!

"Sha!" Chen Deng once again killed another deserting archer. He wanted them to stop Lu Bu for a moment, just a single moment! The commander of the shielded blade soldiers and the pikemen have already noticed the problem and was already rushing back to aid them!

However, these archers was really scared witless! Lu Bu was like a massacring God from hell! Chen Deng's killing of deserters not only did not made the soldiers stand up to Lu Bu, it instead evoked their rebellious hearts!

Rushing forward is death! Not going is also death! Fuck it, let's revolt!

"Sha!" One by one, archers with bloodshot eyes rose in rebellion.

"What are you people trying to do?!" Chen Deng roared "Is this a mutiny?! Have you forgotten your families?! Have your forgotten who you are?!" Majority of these soldiers were the Chen family's private soldiers, many of whom are settled in Guangling with their families.

Thus, there was still some who have calmed down, not daring to attack Chen Deng.

However, Chen Deng was still fucked! Like the bloody wind, Lu Bu arrived in front of Chen Deng. With a single Ji strike he knocked away Chen Deng's side sword. "Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong, has been captured

by me. Surrender immediately!”

Like a thunderclap, Lu Bu’s voice resounded through the battlefield.

“Master, master have been captured?” There are soldiers who could not believe that their master have been captured. However, as they looked toward their main army, they noticed that their banner has fallen.

“Defeated! We have been defeated!” With their master captured, how could these private soldiers possibly have the will to continue fighting on?!

“We, we surrender!” Shouted the commander of the shielded blade soldiers. With an agonized expression, he dropped his blade and shield. Just when they were about to annihilate the Formation Breaker, who would’ve expected it to end like this.

“To seize the traitors, first seize the the king!” This was the strategy that Chen Gong gave Lu Bu. First use Chen Deng’s father’s death to set chaos in his mind. Then use the Formation Breaker to defend against the enemies. Due to Lu Bu wearing a golden armor, from afar, he looked not much different from Liu Mang’s golden armor. Thus, he was to become the bait and be placed within the Formation Breaker!

Hence, all of Chen Deng’s attention will be focused toward the Formation Breaker!

Gao Shun deliberately showed flaws to let Chen Deng think that he was close to destroying the Formation Breaker, to let Chen Deng develop a misconception. With this misconception, Chen Deng’s troops brought to annihilation by the Lu Bu soldiers from the two flanks!

From the outset he was already sold? Now, Liu Mang was really afraid of these strategists! No wonder these individuals were able to grasp the whole world! No wonder that Cao Cao was willing to kill Chen Gong even if he was to become infamy because of that!

An strategist that have you in their mind will certainly cause you to be unable to rest or eat in peace!

Liu Mang did not knew that in Xiapi, there's already an strategist that had him in his mind. This person was not to be inferior to the Old Man Chen in any aspect! This man was the sly genius Guo Jia!

Cleaning the battlefield, counting the casualties!

The Formation Breaker was pretty much crippled from the engagement! From the seven hundred that it once had, the survivor amounted less than two hundred. Gao Shun did not say anything. However, from from bleak expression, Liu Mang saw pain, sorrow and even dried up tears in the corner of his eyes. This was from a man who even if he was to be killed, he will not frown!

Liu Mang's heart tightened. He also knew that these fallen Formation Breaker soldiers, many of them died protecting him, blocking the incoming blades and spears with their bodies! However, he knows neither their names nor does he remember their appearance!

Liu Mang took a deep breath. He decided that the next time he comes over, he'll make sure to equip the Formation Breaker with the best armor! This was the only thing he could do!

From the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, there was also some fifty casualties! They were, after all, not infantry.

Lu Bu's two thousand strong army was left in a wretched state. All that was left was some thousand three hundred people! Majority of them wounded!

Fortunately, after capturing Chen Deng, the Chen army surrendered, allowing them to recuperate.

There was still over five thousand pikemen, over four thousand shielded blade soldiers and a thousand or so archers! The Formation Breaker stood against fifteen thousand enemies. Casualties numbered over five hundred. However, for the opponent, their casualties was five thousand! One against ten, worthy to be called the king of the infantries!

"Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong! Do you have any words to say?!" said Lu Bu as he looked at the Chen Deng who was tied up and kneeling on the ground.

"Humph, slave with three surnames, do with me as you wishes!" Chen Deng did not have the awareness of a captive at all. He remained unyielding.

"Slave of three surnames?!" Lu Bu hated two things the most! One is

betrayal and the other is this title! Ever since being called he was called such by Zhang Fei in Hulao Pass, Lu Bu have forever been stuck with this title!

"Chen Deng, did you think that I dared not kill you?!" Lu Bu's expression was full of murderous intent.

"Haha, so what if you I am to be killed! Even if you killed this Chen Yuanlong, you, Lu Bu, will still not be able to escape! Prime Minister Cao's army was just behind me. Cao Hong of the Fierce Cavalry was already sternly waiting! Did you think that you have won just because you have defeated I, Chen Deng?! These hours that you were stopped by me was more than enough for the Fierce Cavalry to arrive!" Chen Deng sneered.

"Hahahaha!" Lu Bu really hated being threatened. In his anger, he was about to kill Chen Deng. However, Chen Gong who was on the side opened his mouth and said "Although slaves of three surnames was indeed unpleasant to hear, it's still better than being loyal to one's father's killer!"

"Who is loyal to one's father's killer? Chen Gong! Neither you or Lu Bu are good men! Lu Bu have said that my father was killed by Prime Minister Cao and now you go on to say that I am loyal to my father's killer! What a joke! Did you think that I, Chen Deng, was a three year old kid?! Did you expect that I will fall for your stratagem of sowing dissention?!" Chen Deng knew that being captured by Lu Bu was the same as death, thus he decided to curse away.

"Facts speak louder than words!" Chen Gong shook his head, turned around to face Lu Bu and held his fist toward him. "My lord, Gong request that my lord set Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong free!"

“What?!” Liu Mang was shocked greatly.

“Military advisor, you cannot!” Gao Shun was the first to not agree for a lot of the soldiers of the Formation Breaker died in the hands of Chen Deng’s troops.

“Chen Gong, stop pretending to be kind! Did you think that by doing such I will be grateful towards you?!” Chen Deng ridiculed. “Kill me! Kill me quickly!”

Lu Bu closed his eyes. He thought for a moment before opening his eyes again. He said. “Release Chen Yuanlong!”

“My lord?!” Gao Shun was anxious! If he does not take revenge for his brothers, he will forever be restless and be unable to face those who survived!

“Not only will I release you, I’ll return to you three thousand soldiers including your two generals!” Lu Bu was very generous. Those three thousand soldiers were all people who have families in Guangling. Should he forcely take them away, they will certainly not be willing to fight for him. Thus, he decided to just throw them back to Chen Yuanlong!

“What is it that you want?!” Chen Deng knew that there was no such thing as a free lunch in this world.

“I do not want anything!” Lu Bu said toward Chen Deng. “I just want you

to go and see for yourself Cao Cao's nature. In the event that you can see through him, then I hope that you will come back and swear loyalty and devotion to me!"

"Swear loyalty to you? Impossible!" Chen Deng refused without any hint of hesitation.

"Don't reject so fast! I know you will!" Lu Bu refused Chen Deng to refute and untied his ropes. "Your three thousand troops are located at where my garrisons are originally set up at! You can go! Hopefully next time we meet you would've come around!" From losing Xiapi, Lu Bu understood a truth. He understood that to fight for hegemony in this world, one requires talent. He currently have only a single Chen Gong, if a Chen Deng joins his ranks, he will be like a tiger that has grown wings!

"You will certainly regret this!" said Chen Deng.

"A lot of people have once told me that before and it was never I, Lu Bu, who ended up regretting!" Lu Bu gave an order and his troops began to march toward Langye.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 19 - Father

“Heeyah! Heeyah!” On Xu Province, a giant black dragon was zigzagging around. With extreme speed, the dragon was rapidly passing through mountain ridges.

The whole earth trembled!

At the head of the dragon, a general wearing commander armor suddenly waved his hand and the whole dragon suddenly came to a stop.

This huge dragon was the Ferocious Cavalry, the most elite of the Cao army calvaries. The Ferocious Cavalry numbered only three thousand, each of them an elite before joining the Ferocious Cavalry! Even when attacking Lu Bu, old Cao have brought only fifteen hundred Ferocious Cavalry riders with him.

The remaining fifteen hundred was left in Yan Province. Only with them there could Cao Cao have a peace of mind!

“There’s something ahead!” Cao Chun, as the commander of the Ferocious Cavalry, had set his awareness to the maximum allowing him to sense when to engage the enemies, where they have ambush and what are the weakness of the enemies!

Thus, although he cannot see what has happened in the front of him, Cao Chun still stopped the Ferocious Cavalry!

Xu Province was known as the granary of the world due to its suitability for growing food. Also due to its suitability was an abundance of weeds and woods.

For cavalries, their biggest nemesis are the weeds and woods! Once cavalries enter a location full of weeds and woods, the ambushers only need to set fire to both their front and back and, hehe, those cavalries would be met with a tragic end!

There's people in the forest ahead. The birds are suspending in the sky, refusing to set. With the wind blowing by, this whole forest seemed eerie.

"Send in a group of men to scout the area!" Cao Chun was Cao Cao's younger cousin, thus, it could be said that he too inherited the heart of suspicion like Cao Cao!

However, to be careful in the battlefield is a good thing!

A group of soldiers quickly separated themselves from the main cavalries and started advancing toward the forest.

Soon, someone came back.

"What's the situation inside?!" Seeing this subordinate of his coming back so soon, Cao Chun frowned. Did they not carefully explore the forest?!

"Reporting to the general, there is indeed something inside!" The soldier as he rode his horse back.

“Oh?!” He found people so fast.

“However?!” The soldier said awkwardly “they’re not enemies! Instead, instead, they’re our army!”

“Our army?!” Cao Chun was confused. The lord have only sent my fifteen hundred Ferocious Cavalry soldiers to chase after Lu Bu, how could there possibly be friendly forces here?!

“It’s the Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong, of Guangling!” a young military officer came over to Cao Chun and said.

“Chen Yuanlong?!” Having conquered Xiapi, Cao Cao still did not have enough time to award his subordinates for their merits. Thus, Chen Deng is currently without an official position.

“Chen Deng, Chen Yuanlong?” From Guangling to Langye was certainly closer than chasing from Xiapi! And ahead was Lu Bu’s route to Langye! Perhaps Chen Yuanlong have captured Lu Bu?!

As Cao Chun was pondering, Chen Deng have brought his subordinates, the three thousand wounded remnants, and appeared in front of Cao Chun.

“General Cao Chun!” Chen Deng held his fist for a greeting.

“For Mister Chen Deng to appear here, perhaps you have already met

the Lu Bu army?!" Seeing the wounded soldiers without any hint of morale, Cao Chun knew that they must've met Lu Bu!

Hearing Cao Chun's inquiry, Chen Deng's face reddened. An army fifteen thousand strong against two thousand remnants. The result? Complete annihilation! Had Lu Bu not set him free, then he likely could not have escaped death!

"Deng, Deng knew only of the papers and was useless in actual battle, Lu Bu, that man servant, have escaped from our enclosure!"

"Ah?!" The Chen family of Guangling was both prestigious and powerful with over ten thousand personal soldiers! For Chen Deng to come out this time, he couldn't have brought with him fewer than ten thousand men!

For an army of over ten thousand to lose, perhaps there was more Lu Bu remnants than expected?!

"Mister Chen, may I ask how many soldiers the Lu Bu remnants have?!" Cao Chun never fight a battle without preparation. He would never engage his enemies before he could figure them out!

"This!" Chen Deng doesn't know what to say. He couldn't possibly tell Cao Chun that Lu Bu originally only had two thousand soldiers but he later gave Lu Bu another seven thousand soldiers making the total amount to be nearly ten thousand!

Should he say that, then Chen Deng would be forever known to be incompetent!

Although Chen Deng wasn't skilled in the arts of lying, he still erased the part of him giving Lu Bu seven thousand soldiers. "In the battle against Lu Bu, Deng have lost! Lu Bu was also left with less than ten thousand soldiers, all infantry!" Chen Deng lied like a master. Lu Bu was 'also' left with...

One cannot find a hint of fault in Chen Deng's speech. It was true that Lu Bu currently have less than ten thousand soldiers! Chen Deng losing was also the truth! Although more than half of Lu Bu's ten thousand was given by Chen Deng but if you don't ask, why would he tell you that?! Like this, Chen Deng showed that he fought a fierce battle against someone much better than himself!

"With less than ten thousand? And all infantry?!" A flash crossed Cao Chun's eyes. In the era of melee weapons, the cavalry is the nemesis of the infantry!

A thousand cavalries could fight against ten thousand infantries! Hell, they could even wipe out the ten thousand infantries!

Although it was rumored that the best infantry, the Formation Breaker, was amongst the Lu Bu remnants, one must not forget that the Ferocious Cavalry are not originary cavalry either. They're heavy cavalry! With their impact, any infantry, Formation Breaker or not, would be crushed to powder! Their armor was also not something that's cheap! Three thousand Ferocious Cavalry soldiers was as expensive as fifty thousand

regular Cao soldiers!

It was precisely because of how expensive those armor are that the whole Cao army only had three thousand cavalry!

“Mister Chen Deng, how long has it been since the Lu Bu army left?!” asked Cao Chun.

“It have already been half a day!” replied Chen Deng. From the battlefield to the forest was a few hour long travel.

“Good. In that case, we shall proceed! Mister Chen Deng, we shall meet again in Xiapi!” Cao Chun kick his horse and was about leave. An army that have just been in a battle, an army that is full of hungry infantries, in the eyes of Cao Chun, it’s free merits!

In the plains of Xu Province, with a single charge from the cavalries, the infantries will be meeting their end!

“Please wait!” Chen Deng suddenly stopped Cao Chun and asked. “Did general Cao came from Xiapi?!”

“That’s right!” Cao Chun was sent from Xiapi by Cao Cao.

“In that case, Deng wanted to ask if general Cao knowst of news of my old father!” With a face full of expectancy, Chen Deng was looking at Cao Chun hoping to attain news of his father from him.

“Eh?!” Cao Chun was suddenly brought to a standstill by Chen Deng. How must be respond?! Lu Bu in his breakthrough decided to attack the White Gate Tower. He almost killed Cao Cao and many generals and scholars died in the scene and Chen Deng’s father was one of the casualties!

“Mister Chen, Chun came in a hurry. I have been chasing after Lu Bu right after my lord gave the command. Thus, I do not know of news regarding the elder Mister Chen! Please forgive me!” Cao Chun could only beat around the bush, Chen Deng could see it for himself after he arrive in Xiapi!

“Is that so?!” Chen Deng’s heart sank deeper. His Chen family of Guangling could be regarded as displaying the most accomplishment in helping Cao Cao obtain the Xu Province. Thus, Cao Cao will certainly not neglect them and his father will certainly be on the sides of Cao Cao.

In such a prominent position, for Cao Chun to say that he didn’t know!

Remembering Lu Bu’s words, Chen Deng had a bad feeling! Repressing his anger, Chen Deng forced a smile. “Then Deng will wait for General Cao’s triumphant return!”

“In that case, farewell!” Under the leadership of Cao Chun, the Ferocious Cavalry gradually disappeared.

Chen Deng had a sullen face. His heart completely gloomy.

“Master, where are we to go now? Are we to return to Guangling?!”

Chen Deng's remaining generals asked.

"Guangling?!" Chen Deng sneered. "No, we are not going to Guangling. We will be going to Xiapi!"

"Going to Xiapi?!" The generals were confused. They are currently remnants, wounded and without morale. For what reasons would they be going to Xiapi now?! Shouldn't they go back home and recover first?!

"Right, Xiapi will be our destination! Do you men not want to see the old master?!" replied Chen Deng.

"We do! We do!" The generals knew that Chen Deng was in a bad mood and decided not to ask. The three thousand strong troops started marching toward Xiapi.

"Father oh father, please be safe and sound!" Biting his lips and clenching his fist. Chen Deng's nails pierced through his hands. However, he does not notice it.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 20 - Wise Lord?

The Langye region. Although located in the Xu Province, it has never obeyed it. When Tao Qian was still the governor of the Xu Province he ignored Langye completely. When Liu Bei became the governor of Xu Province, he acted like requested for allegiance of Langye but was unable to actually do anything to it.

When it became Lu Bu's turn, the situation changed a bit. Boss Lu was extremely stubborn and mighty confident of his own prowess. The chieftain of the Langye bandits, Zang Ba, too was a individual like that! Thus, when two extremely stubborn and proud people met, conflict naturally broke out and Boss Lu beat Zang Ba to subordination!

For majority of the people, they would rather reasons with their mouth than fight with their fists. However, Boss Lu was different! He would rather use his fists than bother arguing with you!

Thus, under Lu Bu's rule, Zang Ba sworn his allegiance to him and served as one of Lu Bu's familial generals, guarding Langye for Lu Bu and becoming one of the eight superior generals of Lu Bu!

Lu Bu's army was marching on the main roads. Right ahead was the Langye region. As they marched forward, more and more ordinary people of Langye started fleeing toward the Mount Tai.

The results of war was shown clearly here. Cao Cao's massacre of Xu Province have really scared these ordinary people witless!

“Mother! Mother!” A little child seemed to have been separated from his mother by the crowd of fleeing people. He looked all over searching for his mother!

Tears were about to fall from his eyes!

“Good, good. Let this uncle help you find your mother!” Liu Mang had received a warhorse from Lu Bu. Although he did not know how to use it in battle, he was still able to ride a horse. Seeing the child, he quickly dismounted from the horse, passed it to Cheng Yu and picked up the child.

“War! Sigh! Those who are harmed the most is always the ordinary people!” Liu Mang sighed deeply.

“Sire! We still have to arrive at Langye as soon as possible! We can’t possibly be able to help this child find his mother!” The whole Xu Province was in turmoil. Refugees come and go. Trying to find the child’s mother from all this was even harder than trying to find a needle in the haystack!

The scouts have already noticed the approaching Cao army. All cavalries. On top of that, they’re the heavily armored Ferocious Cavalries! Currently, what the Lu Bu army had to do is to enter the city and avoid the approaching cavalries. Otherwise, they will certainly be annihilated should they encounter the cavalries on the plains!

The Formation Breaker was already crippled! The Bing Province Cavalries without their mounts was simply unable to do anything! Finally, there’s the newly surrendered Chen family soldiers. As they have just

surrendered, they cannot possibly help at all when the enemy attacks, instead, it is likely that they will be the first to create chaos!

"But this child!" In the turmoil and chaos of war with refugees everywhere, a child who could not even find his mother would either starve to death or be eaten by others! This was an era of cannibalism!

[TL: Cannot tell if Liu Mang meant cannibalism figuratively or actual cannibalism. Well, chances are it's both.]

"There's nothing to but about! If we do not speed up our march, we cannot possible escape from the cavalries!" Cheng Yu was a veteran of hundred wars, he was totally aware how powerful the cavalries are on the plains!

"No! We can't do this! This is a life! If we abandon him, I'll be forever disturbed!" Liu Mang shook his head. He came from the modern era, an era of peace. He wasn't someone who lived in troubled times who no longer held feelings for human lives! Right when Liu Mang rejected Cheng Yu's suggestion, a voice of disdain came from his side.

"Soft hearted like a woman! Humph!" A female replica of Lu Bu came by on her horse. Wasn't this Liu Mang's fiancee Miss Lu, Lu Lingqi?! After Boss Lu received the Poseidon Scale, he gave his flowery patterned battle robe to his precious daughter. Lu Bu was about was about six foot tall. Miss Lu wasn't short either, she's about five foot nine inches!

"Soft hearted like a woman!?" Having called that by Miss Lu, Liu Mang immediately got angry. He pointed at her and shouted "Heck do you know! This is life! Life! They are all the children of Han! Just because of a

small group of people for their own interests decided to set the world to chaos! They had it their ways, but what about the regular folks?! Families separated and unable to obtain food! What are the casualties from the actual battles?! Compare them with the casualties caused by all these destruction of homes!"

"Miss Lu you were born with a silver spoon in your mouth! You had both good food, warm clothes and a roof over your head! What about them?! If it wasn't for the war! If it wasn't for all those conspirators! If it wasn't for those warlords! Then let me tell you, all of them, all these refugees, they should all be in their home instead of fleeing right now! They would be in their warm homes enjoying a happy life! Alas, how many people have neither homes nor families?! How many people know where they are to go?!" Liu Mang almost roared.

Surrounding him were either people fleeing for their lives or the soldiers who came from poor families!

They heard Liu Mang's speech and all lowered their heads with bleak expressions. Liu Mang's speech have caused them to think of themselves! The atmosphere got heavier! Their eyesights directed at Miss Lu also began to have ill intent!

Cheng Yu too was silent! He thought of his old mother. Had the world not be in chaos, had Cao Cao not attacked Xu Province then he would've been by his mother's side and cultivating the fields. Then he would've saved up some money and get a wife and had a happy life together with his family!

But now?! Gone! Everything was gone! His mother was dead! His house was ruined! In order to not starve to death, in order to avenge his mother

he joined the Lu Bu army! Now, it had already been several years!

"You, you!" Miss Lu only wanted to ridicule Liu Mang. Who would've expect that Liu Mang would have such a huge response to her words?! Now, the eyes of the surrounding people looking at her changed too! In actuality, her personality wasn't bad! However, with Liu Mang's speech, she had now turned into a rich spoiled princess that knows neither the pain nor sufferings of common folks!

"Humph!" In her anger, Miss Lu pulled her horse, gave a humph and left with an ugly expression on her face!

"Sire… Miss Lu she…?!" whispered Cheng Yu.

"Leave her! She can do whatever she wishes to do!" Liu Mang held the child. He wanted to find the child's mother but with the ocean of people, where would he find the child's mother?!

"Sigh!" Liu Mang looked at the coming and going refugees, his heart extremely bitter "say, Cheng Yu, why is it so difficult to have peaceful times?!"

"This lowly Cheng Yu doesn't know!" Cheng Yu too did not understand. All he knew was that as long as he follows Lu Bu, as long as he follows the Liu Mang, then he could obtain his revenge!

Liu Mang shook his head. He can't help but deeply sigh with sorrow. "Flourish, people suffer! Perish, people suffer!" After saying that, he took the child and left. It was true that he had no time and cannot waste any

time here. Thus, he decided to take the little guy with him and figure things out after settling down!

[TL: Liu Mang is quoting the poem 'Meditation on the Past at Tong Pass' by Zhang Yanghao 1270-1329 http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zhang_Yanghao]

Liu Mang's silhouette gradually disappeared with the army. Suddenly on where he previous stood appeared a youth. Although this youth's clothes were very dirty from fleeing, it did not stop the radiance in the youth's eyes.

He muttered to himself. "Flourish, people suffer? Perish, people suffer?!" With a deep and profound gaze he looked at the leaving Lu Bu army. "Who is this man? Besides Chen Gong, there's such an individual in the Lu Bu army?!"

"Teacher, teacher!" The youth's train of thought was interrupted by a book servant boy looking person. "Teacher, teacher, where are we headed to this time?!"

"Let's go back!" said the youth shaking his head.

"Go back?!" The book servant boy was puzzled. For the teacher to come out this time, other than visiting the former residence, was to find the so called Wise Lord!

"Is teacher really going to return to Xiangyang?! Is the teacher not going to look for the Wise Lord?!" The book servant boy knew that his

teacher was a man of great talent!

"Not going to look anymore!" said the youth, laughing.

"Oh!" The book servant boy nodded as if he understood but not understand. In this chaos, the servant boy really didn't want to come out. Now that they're going back, he was actually pretty happy!

Is he the Wise Lord?! The youth's thoughts was once again ignited.

He then started laughing. "Stop stop stop! Better return and discuss with Shiyuan and them first!"

[TL: Shiyuan is Pang Tong's Courtesy name.]

A book servant boy and a young teacher started traveling toward the direction of Jing Province!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 21 - Trapped in Kaiyang

Kaiyang was a big city in the Langye region. However, it was currently empty, like a deserted city!

The whole city was intact without a single sign of battle. However, the city's banner and its troops were all gone! The gate was also without guards! The whole city was like a naked young woman waving its hands at the incoming army!

Effortlessly, the Lu Bu army entered the city. Once entered, they immediately closed the gates!

"What's with this?! Where's Zang Ba?! How come there isn't a single soldier in Kaiyang?!" Lu Bu frowned. Had Cao Cao attacked Langye, then it would be impossible for there to be no sign of battle in Kaiyang! If Cao Cao didn't attack, then how come Kaiyang was completely without any defense or fortifications?!

Perhaps Zang Ba surrendered to Cao Cao? Impossible! If he did surrender, then they would not be able to enter the city!

"My lord, we have asked around and obtained information! Zang Ba, he, he dismissed the troops!" Zhang Liao had taken some people with him and inquired some remnant soldiers that had not yet left the city.

"Dismissed the troops?!" Lu Bu was stunned. In this chaotic era, how could one survive without troops?! Lu Bu thus burst into rage. "Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao, I originally thought you were a person of standing, never

would I have expected that you are such a spineless coward!”

“My lord, please quell your anger! Please quell your anger!” Chen Gong came forward “Dear Lord of mine, did you know that when Xiapi was under siege by Cao Cao, the only general who was sending troops to help you break the siege was general Zang Ba?!”

“Is that so?!” Lu Bu’s anger ceased but a bit. Immediately he returned to his irritable state! The only reason for him to come to Langye was to obtain troops from Zang Ba and steady himself for a chance to make a comeback! Now that Zang Ba had dismissed his troops, where are the troops for him to obtain?! How could he possibly make a comeback now?!”

“Zang Ba, where is he now?!” Lu Bu rubbed his head and asked.

“General Zang is currently rushing over!” When Zhang Liao found Zang Ba, Zang Ba was already packed up and ready to flee. This was certainly not something that Zhang Liao could say. Thus, he could only say that Zang Ba was on his way here!

Soon Zang Ba entered the city donning a war armor!

“My lord, Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao, is here to pay his respects!” Zang Ba was extremely formal! Unlike Lu Bu’s other generals, he wasn’t someone who have fought life and death battles with Lu Bu! Instead, he was someone who had his ass handed to him by Lu Bu!

Toward Lu Bu, Zang Ba admired him wholly! He originally thought that

Lu Bu cannot escape being trapped in Xiapi! After all, being flooded from all sides was not something anyone could resolve! Zang Be had also once sent force to help. However, his forces was driven back by the Cao army!

Lu Bu's gone. Zang Ba's heart too grew cold. For Lu Bu to not be able to stand up against Cao Cao, how could he, Zang Ba, possibly be able take on Cao Cao?! Thus Zang Ba dismissed his troops and was set to flee to the countryside to and become a wealthy man there!

Now that he had seen Lu Bu was alive in front of him, Zang Ba's heart began to liven once again.

"Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao! You still know how to call me as your lord? Oh how silly you are! Silly to the extreme!" Seeing that Zang Ba came all donned in armor, Lu Bu's anger subsided a bit. How could he possibly not know what Zang Ba was thinking. "You thought that I, Lu Bu, lost and that when the Cao army comes, you would simply be no match against them. You'll be caught by the Cao army and nothing good would come out of that, isn't that right?! So you decided to dismiss your troops, flee to the countryside, change your name and become a wealthy man there?!"

"My lord?!" Having his whole thought laid out in front of him by Lu Bu, Zang Ba's face was red full of shame!

"Zang Ba, Zang Ba, oh how silly you are!" As they said, heros think alike! Lu Bu was genuinely fond of people like Zang Ba who had the same arrogance as himself!

"Although I, Lu Bu, am known as being unparalleled in the world, I still dared not to take on the world alone. Why do you think that is?!" Lu Bu

said pointing at Zang Ba. “Two fists cannot rival four hands! Had you not dismissed your troops, then Cao Cao may still fear you and will persuade you to surrender to him! However, once you dismissed your troops, you’ve became a fish on the chopping block! Cao Cao could dispatch any ordinary battalion of troops and you, Zang Ba, would be captured and executed by him just like that!”

“I…?!” Zang Ba was totally ashamed.

“Reporting!” A scout ran forward and kneeled to the ground. “Reporting to the lord, outside the city… the Cao cavalry was found outside the city!”

“Oh?!” Lu Bu finally let Zang Ba go, he brought all his generals and ran toward the front of the city.

Underneath the city walls was a bunch of black armored cavalries arranged neatly in numerous rows. Under the leadership of a leading general, the army of cavalries surrounded the city in absolute silence and without any movement. This army of cavalries was certainly the elite amongst elites!

“Ferocious Cavalry!” Lu Bu narrowed his eyes as he watched the heavily armored cavalry that surrounded the city.

Once upon a time Lu Bu also had cavalries that rivals the Ferocious Cavalry that currently surrounded him - Bing Province Cavalry! With them, Lu Bu was able to go wherever he wishes, rushing into armies of tens of thousand like taking a stroll! No one could stop him in his tracks!

Alas, now! Although the Bing Province Cavalry still remained, their horses are gone! From the breakthrough of Xiapi, the Bing Province Cavalry that once numbered in the tens of thousands now only had a thousand remaining.

All of them were brothers who had followed Lu Bu all the way from Bing Province!

“Had we had our mounts then I, Zhang Liao, would rush out to have a match against the Ferocious Cavalry!” Zhang Liao regrets not being able to go out. Although the Ferocious Cavalry are elites, in the eyes of Zhang Liao, they are nothing! The Bing Province Cavalry never fear challenges!

“Enough!” Lu Bu stopped Zhang Liao’s discontent and turned to Chen Gong. “Gongtai, what should we do now?!” Their original plan was to replenish their troops from Langye and then distant themselves from Xu Province.

However, currently in the whole city of Kaiyang, there was only the less than ten thousand troops that he brought with him! And outside the city there’s the Cao army’s Ferocious Cavalry!

The Ferocious Cavalry belonged to the Heavy Cavalry class troops. Although they aren’t capable of besieging a city, their movement was fast. Should they decide to coil around the city, the Lu Bu army would really be trapped inside the city!

For infantries to try to break through cavalries was more difficult than hard! Having just escaped Xiapi, are they to be trapped in Kaiyang now?!

Lu Bu closed his eyes. He was full of rage! He fears that should he not close his eyes, he might not be able to resist his urge to kill Zang Ba!

"Sigh!" Chen Gong too did not expect that this Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao, would do things so thoroughly! To dismiss his troops, this was a task that must take a certain amount of resolve!

"General Zang, are you aware of how much provisions, armors, weapons and war horses are currently left in Kaiyang?!" Chen Gong held his fist toward Zang Ba.

"This!" Zang Ba was brought to an awkward situation. Having dismissed the troops, naturally he would've distributed the provisions. Currently in the city there remains less than five thousand stones worth of provisions!

[TL: 1 stone = one hundred liters.]

Zang Ba braced himself and said "There remains five thousand stones worth of provisions. The amount of weapons and armors was also lacking. At most, it's only enough for a battalion! As for war horses…!" Xu Province belonged to the central region where there wasn't a lot of horses to begin with! "...there's less than a hundred war horses!"

"Five thousand stones! One hundred horses! A battalion worth of weapons?!" Although Kaiyang was a big city, it could not compare to Xiapi. Although ten thousand troops was a lot, it could not compare to the seventy thousand that Lu Bu once had!

An army numbering ten thousand would eat over a hundred stones worth of provisions in a single day! Five thousand stones, it would only be enough for a bit over a month!

“Zang Xuangao, good, very good!” Lu Bu was determined enough to kill Zang Ba now!

“My lord, quell your anger! The only thing we can do now is to wait for the opportunity! We shall see if we can break through at night!” Chen Gong too was at a loss Once they are trapped here by the Ferocious Cavalry the Cao main army will come and then they will be unable to escape for sure!

Now, this was all that they could do!

Zhang Liao, Gao Shun and them soon arranged the tasks for the city defenses to the troops. They were extra careful because of the newly surrendered soldiers that they took in. Once the situations turns bad, these soldiers are likely to revolt!

“Lu Bu? Kaiyang?!” Cao Chun who was outside the city laughed! Had the Lu Bu army decided to take the side roads to Mount Tai, then perhaps he, Cao Chun, could not do anything to Lu Bu! However, Lu Bu was silly, he decided to enter Kaiyang to obtain reinforcement from Zang Ba!

Cao Chun had obtained information from the refugees enroute here. He knew that in Kaiyang, Zang Ba had dismissed his troops. The whole population of Kaiyang had already left to take refuge! Thus, in the whole Kaiyang, there was only ten thousand troops who could stand up against the Cao army!

“Since Xiapi did not take your life! Let this Kaiyang be your grave!” Cao Chun said with a smile. “Pass my orders, send my message to the Prime

Minister. Tell him that the tiger was trapped waiting for the tiger killer!”

“Yes!” The messenger took the order and left!

“Ferocious Cavalry soldiers, listen up! Divide into groups of two hundreds and alternate to patrol Kaiyang day and night! You are not to allow a single Lu Bu soldier to escape!”

“Yes!” Two hundred heavy cavalries was something that cannot be beaten without at least a thousand infantries! In this amount of time needed to beat them, the rest of the Ferocious Cavalry would have quickly came to their assistance!

Although the Ferocious Riders cannot besiege a city, but to fight on the fields! Heng heng, even if it’s the Lu Bu army’s strongest Formation Breaker, Cao Chun dared to take them on!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 22 - Long Distance Surprise Attack

"Fucking hell! Why can't I go back?!" Liu Mang watched as the button to return darkened. Boss Lu had been trapped in Kaiyang! Outside, Boss Cao's people had surrounded the whole Kaiyang!

Back in Xiapi, they were able to break through because it was a whole chaotic mess and the sky was dark! With such a mighty general like Boss Lu, of course they'll be able to escape!

However, it's different now! The people outside was the Ferocious Cavalry! Boss Lu and them had fought against the Ferocious Cavalry before and thus knew of their might!

Liu Mang, on the other hand, knew of their strength from the history books. This Ferocious Cavalry was a trump card!

Not mentioning the battles the Ferocious Cavalry had against other warlords, their most famous accomplishment was the battle against the Wuhuan - five thousand against a hundred thousand! That battle crippled the Wuhuan people! The Wuhuan were nomadic people! They knew of the horse much better than the Han! Even so, they were defeated by the Ferocious Cavalry!

Seeing that Boss Lu no longer had a future, Liu Mang was ready to escape! However, the CD was still dark even though it had been over a day since he came here!

"What the fuck?!" Liu mang didn't want to break through with Boss Lu

under the threat of the Ferocious Cavalry! Not only could two legged people not run faster than four legged beasts but these heavy cavalries, once on the field, how could they possibly stop them?!

Had the Formation Breaker been okay, then perhaps it would've been a different story. However, the Formation Breaker was already crippled! You can't possibly had the few hundred remnant soldiers of the Formation Breaker go out and try to stop thousands of heavy cavalries!

"Big brother! When are you going to help me find my mother?!" A clever looking jade like child pulled on Liu Mang's trousers.

"Lil Stone be good. In a couple day, just a couple days, big brother will take you to find your mother!" Liu Mang picked up Lil Stone. This was the lost child he encountered earlier outside of Kaiyang. Lil Stone was taken away by Miss Lu to have a clean up, his original dirty appearance disappeared and came back looking like he had on powdered makeups!

As Liu Mag held Lil Stone, his will to leave began to waver. True that he could leave but what about the child?! Like what Liu Mang had said, should he abandon the child, he would be forever disturbed!

As he thought of that, he began to put on the Aries Gold Cloth. "Lil Stone be good. Big brother will be right back! You must be good! Stay here and sleep. If you're afraid then go find big sister Lu!" Having left Lil Stone, Liu Mang started walking toward the front of the city. Lu Bu and the others were currently there thinking about when to break through.

"Sire!" The first person that saw Liu Mang was Cheng Yu. He was currently leading some soldiers patrolling.

“Where is Boss Lu and them?” As Liu Mang had called Lu Bu by Boss Lu the whole time, the Lu Bu soldiers had already gotten used to it.

“General and them are all on the city tower. Sire, do you want me to bring you there?!” Asked Cheng Yu.

“No need. You can continue your patrol!” Liu Mang shook his head. The tension is currently very high in Kaiyang. Who knows when a mutiny might occur amongst these soldiers defending the city. Thus, patrolling the city was something that must be done!

“Okay! Then sire, I shall take my leave!” Cheng Yu nodded and left with his soldiers.

Liu Mang arrived on the city tower. Chen Gong and Lu Bu was there. Zhang Liao had also left to do patrolling. Gao Shun had returned back to rest. The battle earlier in the day had crippled his Formation Breaker and left him both physically and mentally exhausted.

“So my worthy son in law had came!” Lu Bu was also very tired. However, he cannot rest for he is the soul of the whole Lu Bu army. With him standing, the whole Lu Bu army could burst forward a greater strength!

Chen Gong looked at Liu Mang and nodded.

“Worthy son in law?!” Liu Mang’s forehead twitched. He really didn’t enjoy being called that. “Boss Lu, please call me by my courtesy name

Hanyang instead!”

“Boss Lu? Still calling me Boss Lu?!” Lu Bu’s face dropped cold.

The fuck! I’ve heard of those who force others into prostitution and drug trafficking but never have I ever heard of those who forces others to marry their daughter!

Liu Mang helplessly yelled. “Father in law!”

“Hanyang?!” Chen Gong took another look at Liu Mang.

“That’s better! Now that’s like family! Better treat my precious Ling-er well!” Lu Bu stood up and patted Liu Mang’s shoulder almost patting him all the way to the ground!

What intense strength!

“Father in law, about the situation outside…?!”Liu Mang asked out what he was most concern for.

“Outside?!” Lu Bu frowned. To be trapped by the Ferocious Cavalry was a great shame for Lu Bu! What is the origin of Lu Bu?! He started from a the heavy cavalry! Starting from the Bing Province, he had driven back the foreigners! Then he went to Luoyang to intimate Dong Zhou. Although Dong Zhou had the Xiliang Heavy Cavalry, he dared not to do anything to Lu Bu!

Finally when eighteen warlords fought against Dong Zhou, Lu Bu was still able to come and go as he pleases with his Bing Province Cavalry!

Never had Lu Bu ever been trapped by cavalries!

And now his retribution came! Back then, the Bing Province Cavalry had almost took Old Cao's life. Thus Cao Cao decided firmly to create a cavalry unit himself - the Ferocious Cavalry. And now, this Ferocious Cavalry have trapped Boss Lu.

Lu Bu did not speak, however, just from Lu Bu's demeanor, Liu Mang knew that the situation was bad.

Chen Gong spoke. "Let me call you Hanyang too!" Chen Gong is already middle aged now. For him to call Liu Mang by his courtesy name was something that is acceptable. "The commander of the cavalries outside should be Cao Chun. This Cao Chun is familiar with the art of war, he knew both the strength and weakness of cavalries. His cavalry unit numbered fifteen hundred. They surrounded Kaiyang with two hundred cavalries per gate!"

"Two hundred cavalries per gate?!" Liu Mang was completely ignorant of the arts of war, thus he stupidly asked "two hundred people, we have thousands! Can't we just send a thousand troops to destroy those two hundred cavalries?!"

"Hehe!" Chen Gong did not blame Liu Mang for being ignorant. Instead he had a wry smile and said. "If it was that easy then we would've already done it instead of debating about what to do! Although two hundred heavy cavalries cannot possibly break through the gates we also cannot

go out! Cao Chun still have with him seven hundred Ferocious Cavalry soldiers! Upon trying to destroy their two hundred cavalries outside the gate, he will immediately send his seven hundred cavalries over as reinforcement!"

"Even if we are to fight them with more people, we cannot win. And if we are to fight them with less people, then we might be the one being destroyed!" Chen Gong explained to Liu Mang.

"Is there really nothing we can do?!" unable to accept it, Liu Mang asked.

"Yes, there's a way! We can attack with our whole army and break through with all our force!" said Chen Gong. "However, in that case, our causality will certainly be very high! But there's nothing we can do about that!"

"Break through with all our force? When?!" Liu Mang knew that there's no way for him to escape. It would appear that this will be another battle.

"Tonight when the moon is high up in the sky!" said Chen Gong. The Xu Province have no shortage of forests. As long as they can break through and enter the forest, they will be able to escape! Not to mention there's also Zang Ba, a local of Langye. Once they enter Mount Tai, they'll be able to escape!

"Okay!" Liu Mang nodded his head. He decided to go rest himself up before the break through.

“Reporting! Reporting to the lord! The situation has turned bad!” Cheng Yu who had just left suddenly rushed in. “Reporting to the lord, outside, outside the city there’s suddenly a couple thousands more troops! They have surrounded Kaiyang!”

“Couple thousands more troops?!” Lu Bu was shocked. The original fifteen hundred Ferocious Cavalry had already left Lu Bu with a headache. And now, there’s an addition of a couple thousands more troops?! Had it been before then perhaps Lu Bu wouldn’t care much of it. However, he had only now decided that they are going to break through when the moon is high up in the sky and such a thing happened.

“Xiahou Yuan’s troops!” said Liu Mang and Chen Gong at the same time.

Chen Gong knew that this was Xiahou Yuan’s troops because he had already looked into all of Cao Cao’s advisors and generals when he was setting up plans for Lu Bu. Liu Mang knew that this was Xiahou Yuan’s troops thanks to the help of the Baidu Encyclopedia of the modern times.

Xiahou Yuan’s troops. not as elite as the Formation Breaker, not as strong as the Dangyang soldiers and not as strong against cavalries compared to the Vanguard Battalion. However, his troops one distinguishing features that others don’t have - they specialize in long distance surprise attacks!

[TL: translating 先登营 as a Vanguard Battalion.]

From the Xiapi to Kaiyang was distance worth four days and he arrived in just two days!

Time is of essence in the battlefield!

This time, Xiahou Yuan's arrival in a timely manner was like a strike to Boss Lu's balls!

"The commander shouldn't be Xiahou Miaocai. Cao Cao really have an unending supply of great generals!" Chen Gong sighed with lament. Xiahou Miaocai was already deeply injured by Lu Bu, something that he couldn't recover in short period of time.

For the Xiahou Yuan's troops to obey, this commander must also be another great Cao general.

"What to do now?!" asked Liu Mang. Lu Bu too looked toward Chen Gong.

What to do now? How would I possibly know what to do? Chen Gong with a helpless expression said "let's observe the situation!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 23 - Too Big of a Joke

After taking a rest, Liu Mang noticed that the ground was beginning to tremble. He knew that it was the arrival of Boss Cao's troops.

Dawn. Liu Mang walked up to the city tower. The scene he saw there left him completely stunned.

Rows upon rows of units arranged in square formations. Spears like the rains. Bows and arrows like the clouds.

"How many people is this?!" Liu Mang swallowed his saliva. The whole city was densely surrounded by people.

"An army of a hundred thousand!" Lu Bu had appeared next to Liu Mang without him knowing.

"A hundred thousand?!" Lu Mang was about to faint. Although population have grew a lot in modern times, to see so many soldiers gathered together wasn't something that happen often. Even if it's to review troops they would have at most some tens of thousands of soldiers gathered, nowhere near the hundred thousand that's here now.

"Cao Cao really think highly of this Lu Bu!" Lu Bu's eyes radiate all around. He was correct. Cao Cao has been disturbed ever since Lu Bu escaped from Xiapi. One must know that Lu Bu wasn't some kind of peaceful house cat, he's a tiger, a fierce tiger, a tiger that eats people! Even if you don't mess with the tiger, you must still be careful of its claws! Old Cao, on the other hand, actually decided to steal this tiger's base!

“Can we even win?!” There’s only ten thousand people inside the city. For them to fight a hundred thousand, even if one thinks with his ass, he’ll know that they can’t possibly win! Liu Mang’s question had no other effect other than lowering the morale.

“Are we not to fight just because we can’t win?!” Had it been before then Lu Bu might’ve been like Liu Mang, unable to have the idea of resisting such an army. However, now it’s different. Having experienced Xiapi, Lu Bu had already given up on the idea of surrendering to Old Cao. He even almost managed to take Old Cao’s life and seriously injured Xiahou Yuan.

The Xiahou clan was the root of Old Cao. It was impossible for Old Cao to give up his entire clan for a single Lu Bu.

“Sigh!” Liu Mang wanted to sigh but was stopped by Lu Bu.

Lu Bu whispered. “You can be afraid. You can panic. However, you cannot show those emotions in front of the army! If the commander was to become uneasy, to become nervous, then how would the subordinates be able to risk their lives for you?!”

Lu Bu’s eyes showed both strictness and concern. This gave Liu Mang a weird feeling. Liu Mang had only experienced this kind of eyes from his father before. However, unlike Boss Lu who praised Liu Mang constantly, his father held a lot of disdain toward him for being ignorant, incompetent and neglecting his studies!

“Dong dong dong!” The Cao army that surrounded the city began

drumming. Was this drum signaling the attack?!

"These are drums signaling truce!" Lu Bu explained. Lu Bu had only a single daughter. To marry his daughter is the same as being his son.

"Truce?!" How could there be a truce before a battle starts? What kind of logic is this? Perhaps Boss Cao is scared of Boss Lu? Wasn't that precisely the reason why Boss Cao wanted to kill Boss Lu?!

A group of people separated themselves from the Cao army. Amongst them was a black fatty wearing an official gown. Although he was both short and ugly, when donned in the official gown, it appears that he was someone powerful.

"Is he Boss Cao?!" Liu Mang dared not underestimate Boss Cao. Although he looked unprepossessing, he was an remarkable individual. From being an official in Luoyang in his early days, he placed rows of multicolored stakes outside his office and ordered his deputies to flog those who violated the law, regardless of their status. Then he gathered soldiers to suppress Dong Zhou and finally the contend for hegemony, they were all things that this black fatty did!

Emperor Wu of Wei ah, although he was never an emperor when he was alive, he was posthumously named one. This was not merely because of his talents in the general and military affairs, he was also a remarkable statesman, military expert, writer and calligrapher of the late Eastern Han Dynasty.

Liu Mang had read his poems starting from primary school all the way till college. There's the Through the Tortoise Lives Long and the Watching

the Azure Sea! He was the representative of the Jianan style poetry!

Had it not been meeting each other on the battlefield, Liu Mang would've picked up pen and paper for Boss Cao to sign!

"Fengxian, I trust you have been well since we last met!" Cao Cao stopped his tracks at a distance a couple hundred li away from the city. From there, the archers cannot hit him and his voice was loud enough to be heard. Next to him was imposing and staunch man with a height of eight foot and a waist of ten wei. This fat fellow who appeared to be full of courage and strength was constantly checking around, watching attentively of the surroundings and protecting the safety of Old Cao.

"Mengde, Bu has been well" Although Lu Bu was surrounded by Boss Cao's troops, he was still able to laugh.

"Sigh! Oh Fengxian, during our battle in Xiapi, I had thought that us two would have an opportunity to sit down and drink wine with each other. Who would have imagined that the Heaven will play us for fools and allow us to cross path again." laughed Cao Cao. Although he appeared friendly, he was opening old scars.

What Old Cao meant was 'In the battle of Xiapi, you had already lost and almost became my prisoner. Now, I am meeting you as the winner of our last battle.'

"Oh Mende, we will cross path much more often, why concern yourself over a single occasion? Rather Mende you almost met the late emperor on the White Gate Tower. Hmmm, how come I don't see Mende's subordinate, your great general Xiahou Miaocai?!" Boss Lu wasn't

someone easy to deal with. Not only did he mentioned the fact that Old Cao almost got killed by him, he also brought out Xiahou Yuan to greet Cao Cao.

"Humph!" Cao Cao facial expression dropped and was about to get angry. However, he closed his eyes, took a breath and swallowed his anger. Cao Cao continued smiling. "Oh Fengxian, this time we must meet in Kaiyang!"

"That's right, Mende, Bu would look forward to your great chariot!" Lu Bu too was tightlipped.

"Cao Aman, you certainly didn't come here to sprout these meaningless words now!" Who in the Lu Bu army was the most dissatisfied with Cao Cao? That'll be none other than Chen Gong.

"Oh, so it's Gongtai!" Boss Cao spoke as if he's at home chatting with his friend. "That day in White Gate Tower, Cao was unable to find you and thought that you had also fallen down the city walls. For Gongtai to be here, Cao was able to lift this matter off his mind!" Cao Cao really admire Chen Gong. Were it not for the fact that Chen Gong and Cao Cao's ideology were completely opposite then perhaps Cao Cao's number one advisor would've been Chen Gong instead of Guo Jia!

"No need for Cao Aman you to worry!"

"My arrival this time, other than catching up with Fengxian, I also wanted to meet the little teacher whose stratagem almost cost me my life in Xiapi - Liu Mang!" said Cao Cao with a smile.

“What?!’ Liu Mang who was watching from the side noticed that something was wrong. Why did everyone cast their eyes on him? Only then did he noticed that Old Cao had named him.

“I believe you are Liu Mang?!” said Old Cao as he held his fist toward Liu Mang respectfully. As expected of Cao Cao, a towering figure of a generation. He would respect the wise. He would clean the bed to greet his guests. If you had talent, Old Cao would even had his children be your servant.

“Yes, yes!” Liu Mang almost stuttered his speech. This is Boss Cao! This is Cao Cao! This is the Emperor Wu of Wei! He was someone who had conquered China! And this someone actually held his fist toward him respectfully with a low posture!

“Hanyang!” Thanks to Lu Bu grabbing Liu Mang did he not shame himself on the scene.

Liu Mang composed himself and responded politely. “This humble person is Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang. Paying respects to Prime Minister Cao!”

“Hanyang?!” Cao Cao’s gaze grew more profound as he muttered Liu Mang’s courtesy name. “Rumor has it that Hanyang is a Han imperial clansman!”

Well shit, who knows where Old Cao got the information of his self declared Han imperial clansman status. And now he’s asking.

“Han imperial clansman?!” Within the Cao army there’s a middle aged

man with long hair and big ears. He was also watching the Liu Mang who stood atop the city walls with a flickering gaze.

To be pointed out by Old Cao, Liu Mang could only put a bold face and lie blantly. “Mang is indeed a Han imperial clansman. His majesty is my elder brother!”

“Oh?!” Old Cao was just asking to see. He had already checked the Han imperial clan's family tree. There was indeed a Liu Mang. However, it was a child that had long since disappeared before the chaos started. Who would’ve expect for that child to reappear here.

“In that case, Hanyang is of royal kin to our great Han!” Old Cao’s posture dropped even lower.

How would Liu Mang possibly be an opponent of this old fox Cao Cao. Thus he could only nod.

Chen Gong frowned. This Cao Cao certainly had something planned. He knew of this Cao Cao better than he knew himself.

Surely enough, Cao Cao’s following speech was like a strike directly aimed at Liu Mang’s balls. “Hanyang is both an imperial clansman and also His Majesty’s brother, you ought to return to the Xudu with this lowly Cao Cao and assist His Majesty in promptly pacifying the world, returning it to the Han people!”

Old Cao’s words were devout, righteous and inspires reverence. Had Liu Mang not knew of Cao Cao character from history books, he really

would've been moved by Old Cao. But Liu Mang knew of Cao Cao's character and what's on his mind - hold the emperor and you shall control his vassals! Had it been peaceful times, Cao Cao would've been a great statesman for certain. However, it is currently a period of chaos and the prestige of the Han Dynasty had already dropped to its lowest point!

Starting from the Yellow Turban Rebellion to Dong Zhou deposing Emperor Shao and finally Yuan Shu declaring himself emperor, how many Han imperial clansman are left?! Was Cao Cao really a loyal subject of the Han Dynasty? Even if he was to be loyal, his trusted aides and subordinates would never allow him to be loyal. Did you really think that Cao Cao would return the nation to Emperor Xian of Han?!

Stop dreaming, okay? If he returned the nation to Emperor Xian of Han then on one hand there's the emperor and his family and on the other hand there's Cao Cao, a subject and his family, Emperor Xian of Han will certainly eliminate Old Cao's trusted aides and replace them with his own.

And who will be the ones that gets eliminated? No one knows for certain and no one was willing to gamble their lives!

Thus, even if Old Cao wanted to be a loyal subject, sooner or later he will still take on the emperor's gown.

This was precisely what happened to Zhao Kuangyin, the founding emperor of Song Dynasty!

"Trying to woo me?!" Liu Mang knew what Old Cao was thinking of - he wanted to obtain Liu Mang. Old Cao was indeed a formidable person to

be trying to obtain he who almost caused his death!

"My lord. My lord, it's impossible for you to obtain Liu Mang!" said a sickly Cao scholar.

Old Cao looked at Liu Mang with a flickering gaze and said. "Hanyang, currently the Emperor is lacking young and talented individuals like yourself. This Cao Cao was also very impressed by you, Hanyang! I have a daughter who's of age and is currently seeking a husband. Say, Hanyang, what do you think?!"

"Fucking hell!" Why did Boss Cao also turned shameless like Boss Lu?! Now only did he try to woo me over, he's also presenting his daughter! Is their daughter ugly?! Is their daughter unable to get married?! Why the fuck are they all in a hurry to marry them off?!

You don't say, following Boss Cao was certainly a better choice than following Boss Lu. In another year, after the Battle of Guandu, Boss Cao will have eliminated Old Yua and obtained a third of the world! No matter what happened, I would not be risking my life the whole time like I am with Boss Lu right now.

Not to mention there's an addition of a wife. To accept or not to accept?! Liu Mang was indeterminant. However, before he was able to give an answer, Chen Gong already blocked the road.

"Cao Aman, you need not waste your efforts! Hanyang was already my Lord's son in law! Soon, he will be marrying our young Miss. Thus, you might as well find another person for your daughter!"

“Is this true, Hanyang?!” Asked Cao Cao toward Liu Mang.

Liu Mang could only nod his head. He believed that should he say that wasn’t the case, then Boss Lu will certainly kill him on the spot.

“It’s a shame! ” Cao Cao was full of regret. He wanted to obtain Liu Mang. So what if he had to marry a daughter? To not turn a great talent into a threat, that was something that Cao Cao needed.

Cao Cao was prepared to leave on his horse.

Liu Mang suddenly, out of nowhere, decided to call out. “Wait a moment!”

“Oh?!” Cao Cao ceased the reins on his hands. “Perhaps Hanyang had came to a realization?!” His expression and words were full of happiness.

“You really want to go to Xudu and marry Cao Cao, Cao Aman’s daughter?!” Chen Gong had lost his grace, he had already long since lost his calm toward his foe Cao Cao.

“No, that’s not it!” Liu Mang shook his head. He turned toward Cao Cao and asked. “Cao, your mother, is she well?”

[TL: 操，你，娘好吗？--> Cao, your mother, is she well? --> Fuck. your. mother. okay?!

Cao Cao's given name 操 also means fuck (slang). 操(Cao, conduct) sounds the same as 肏(Cao, fuck). So there you have it.]

“Ah?!” Boss Cao was totally confused. “Hanyang, why did you bring up Cao’s late mother? She had departed long ago!”

“Oh!” Liu Mang asked again. “Cao, your wife, is she well?!”

[TL: 操，你，夫人，好嘛？！--> Cao, your wife, is she well? --> Fuck. your. wife. okay?!]

What’s with this Liu Hanyang?! Cao Cao frowned. “My wives are all in Xudu!”

“Puu!” Before Liu Mang was able to do anything the city walls were already full of laughter. In the few days that Liu Mang was in the Lu Bu army he who was completely ignorant of military affairs, in order to intimate himself with the soldiers, could only use sexual jokes to become fellows with the soldiers. Even Chen Gong and Lu Bu came to understand a bit and now they too began laughing upon hearing Liu Mang’s questions.

Cao Cao wasn’t stupid, upon seeing that the whole city wall was full of laughter, he knew that he was played with. With ashen complexion, he brandished his horsewhip. “Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang, had I, Cao Mende, ever offended you?!”

“Nope!” Liu Mang shook his head.

“Then had I, Cao Mende, ever disrespected you?!”

“Nope!” Liu Mang shook his head again.

“In that case, why must you play with this Cao?! Did you really thought that I, Cao Cao, waves around a blunt sword?!” Old Cao was also someone who kills without blinking, his murderous aura no less than Lu Bu’s.

“Shit, joked too hard!” Seeing Old Cao’s expression, Liu Mang knew he fucked up.

“Rascal Liu Mang, you dared insult I! Soldiers, lay siege to the city with all your might!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 24 - If We're Going To Do It, Then We're Going Big

Although there were neither guns nor cannons in the era of cold weapon, it had something that weapons could not replace - the reek and sight of blood.

From Cao Cao's single command, the whole Cao army, like ants, began to rush toward the city walls.

North, South, West and East, all four gates were being besieged. Waves after waves of Cao troops had dyed the walls red with blood.

Although Zang Ba had dismissed his troops, he had been stationed in Kaiyang for a long time. Thus, the defenses of Kaiyang was no worse than Xiapi. In fact, had Xiapi not been protected by rivers on all sides, its defense might not even be able to match Kaiyang's!

Boss Lu was at the front gate. As for the other three gates, there's Gao Shun, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba. Their presence managed to keep the morale in place.

Having just finished killing a wave of Cao troops that have climbed the walls, before Liu Mang was able to take a rest, another wave of Cao troops had already climbed up the walls.

Four gates. Each of them were being attacked by twenty thousand Cao troops. Underneath the gates there's the also the Ferocious Cavalry gazing upon and waiting for their opportunity.

“Kaiyang. Kaiyang!” Cao Cao narrowed his eyes as he looked upon the city in front of him. He had originally thought it to be just a county city in outskirts of Xu Province, never did he imaged it to have defenses comparable to strategic cities like Xiapi. Even though he had the number advantage and the siege tools he was still met with disastrous amount of casualties.

“Fengxiao, do you know who was the originally guarding this Kaiyang?!” inquired Cao Cao.

As if knowing what Cao Cao was thinking, Guo Fengxiao drank his wine and said. “Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao, originally from Huaxian of Mount Tai, his father is called Zang Jie, he had two sons, Zang Ai and Zang Shun. When he was young, he had once gathered numerous people to rescue his father who had committed a crime and had been drifting all over the place ever since. Later entered the service of Tao Qian and was tasked with resisting the Yellow Turbans. With Sun Guan, Yin Li and others, he had gathered soldiers in Kaiyang and created an independent power. In the second year of Jianan, he defeated Xiao Jian and occupied the city of Ju. This led to Lu Bu dispatching his army to attack Zang Ba. After that, the two men reconciled!”

[TL: Second year of Jianan = 198 AD]

[TL: Xiao Jian was Lu Bu’s ally.]

“Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao?!” Cao Cao lowered his head and began to ponder.

“This Kaiyang was originally Zang Ba’s base. Prior to being subdued by

Lu Bu, this Kaiyang was the reason why Zang Ba was able to negotiate with Tao Qian!" To be able to transform Kaiyang into something like a capital city, this Zang Ba was certainly a great talent.

"My dear lord, you shouldn't always think of obtaining talents. You want to obtain Zang Ba too? Well, the South Gate is currently guarded by him. General Xiahou Dun had already dispatched multiple waves against it but was still unable to even reach the city walls!" What a headache it must be for Guo Jia. This lord of his have a disposition for suspicion but also wanted to obtain every single talented individual he met. If it really was that easy to obtain talents, then why would they come all the way to Langye?!

"My lord, this general is asking for permission to enter the battle!" next to Cao Cao, Xu Huang grew anxious seeing that his subordinates had already attacked Kaiyang for so long but was still unable to enter the city.

"Gongming ah!" Cao Cao looked at Xu Huang and shook his head. "Don't be anxious, it is still not the time yet!" On the city walls of the main gate, there's a golden armored general standing underneath the radiant sunshine. With his armor glittering, he was like the God of War! This was Lu Bu, as long as he's standing there his army will never be defeated.

[TL: Xu Huang's courtesy name = Gongming.]

How could he, Cao Cao, send forward his generals when Lu Bu had yet to make a move?! Xu Huang, Cao Ren, Xiahou Dun, Yu Jin and Li Dian were all Old Cao's top generals. However, none of these people were able to match Lu Bu. If they were to be sent out, Cao Cao would only be presenting to Lu Bu their heads!

Men cannot win against a tiger alone. However, men could use stratagems to win against a tiger - stratagem of attrition! To constantly attack the city, both day and dusk, for Cao Cao had plenty of people! As long as he could kill Lu Bu after tiring him out, then it would all be worth regardless of the amount of casualties!

"Pity that my E Lai is already no longer by my side!" Old Cao had a gloomy expression.

[TL: E Lai referred to Dian Wei. E Lai = Fei Lian's son and a man of great strength. Fei Lian is the chinese god of the wind. Hence by calling Dian Wei E Lai, Cao Cao is praising him.]

Guo Jia knew that Cao Cao was thinking of Dian Wei again. In the Battle of Wancheng, Cao Cao lost both his precious son and a fierce general.

The sky gradually darkened. The sun was about to set and both the Cao and Lu soldiers felt a relieve. Unlike modern times, there's no light in the night other than the moon. Thus, whether sieging a city or fighting a battle, both are usually conducted on daytime.

"Beat the gong to recall the troops!" Cao Cao looked at the golden armored man atop the city walls. Lu Bu, as if knowing Cao Cao was watching him, also looked at Cao Cao. Their two sights met and a spark belonging to heroes of the warring era surged amidst the empty air.

"How's the casualties?!" Lu Bu asked one of his officer.

“Over three hundred and eighty wounded, one hundred and twenty two dead!” By wounded, the officer meant seriously injured and unable to return to the battlefield. From just a single day, there’s already five hundred casualties. Take into account that there’s four walls, the total casualties would number more than two thousand.

How many people do Lu Bu have? He have less than ten thousand! Can he only last for five days?!

As to the amount of Cao casualties, no one bothered to pay attention to it for there’s already more than three thousand corpses underneath the city walls. But so what if they had more casualties? Cao Cao could afford to waste but Lu Bu cannot!

“Do you know of where Gongtai is?!” Lu Bu had never been like today, actively seeking out his advisor in hope of creating a strategy to cause Cao Cao’s army to retreat.

“Fengxian!” Chen Gong also had a bleak expression, they were all screwed over by Zang Ba. Had Zang Ba not dismissed his troops, with the thirty thousand Mount Tai soldiers and the ten thousand Chen family soldiers, then Lu Bu would have forty thousand troops in hand. With forty thousand troops, even Cao Cao would not dare to do anything rashly. However the thirty thousand soldiers were gone and all that remains were some five thousand stones of provisions, a few hundred armor and less than a hundred war horses.

The current situation was even more severe than Xiapi. There’s already no where outside of Xu Province that would have soldiers to reinforce them now!

“Sigh!” Lu Bu sighed. He too knew that he was already at a dead end. From the battle of Xiapi, he already knew that there is no such thing as an unbreakable city.

“If there’s really nothing we can do then Gongtai, breakthrough with my daughter, Liu Mang, Gao Shun, Zhang Liao, Zang Ba and them on the hundred war horses that’s in the city!” Lu Bu’s eyes shined. “With I, Lu Bu, here, I will certainly be able to help you delay them for a day or two!”

“My lord! You absolutely cannot!” The Lu Bu army was called the Lu Bu army precisely because of Lu Bu. If Lu Bu’s gone, then would they still be the Lu Bu army?!

Liu Mang was standing on the side. He did not speak but he was moved. In such a critical moment, Lu Bu did not think of himself but instead thought of Liu Mang and his daughter. Liu Mang, if one thinks of it, was but a worker working for Lu Bu. However, the Boss was actually thinking of his worker! That kind of feeling was like, yep, it’s like the feeling of an elder had toward those who come after.

The transfer button Liu Mang had with him once again began to shine. Liu Mang originally planned to leave but now…

“Give me money!” said Liu Mang calmly.

“Ah?!” Chen Gong frowned. What kind of situation is it to think of money?!

“I said to give me money!” Liu Mang repeated. Seeing the confused expression of Lu Bu and Chen Gong, Liu Mang explained. “Three days, as long as you all can withstand three days, I will be able to come back! Didn’t general Zhang Liao said that as long as he have enough horses, his Bing Province Cavalry will be unstoppable?! I can bring you horses and armor but I need money, lots of money!”

“Is this true?!” Lu Bu’s eyes lit up. Once his Bing Province Cavalry was to have horses, only then are they the real Bing Province Cavalry. Ferocious Cavalry, Righteous White Cavalry and the Heavy Cavalry of Western Liang, none of them could even bother Lu Bu.

“When have I ever lied to you?!” Liu Mang gave a supercilious look. “But I need a large amount of gold!”

“How much do you need?!” Chen Gong was still with a face full of distress. Kaiyang does not have a lot of money left. In the warring era horses became things of strategic importance and were all in the control of a few frontier warlords, people like Yuan Shao, Ma Teng, Han Sui and them. None of them were willing to sell their horses. Even if they were to sell them, it’ll be tens of gold per horse. With this kind of pricing, how many could they possibly be able to purchase with the money left in Kaiyang?!

Liu Mang wasn't profound in the arts of purchasing horses. But alas, he had a classmate whose family breeds horses. Liu Mang learned from that classmate that an ordinary adult horse was only some ten thousand yuan and only race horses would cost several millions. He also knew that there’s a huge horse farm in the city of Hongwei of Shandong Province.

Gold. The market price of gold was three hundred yuan per gram

before Liu Mang came here. To purchase a horse, it'll cost him thirty five grams of gold. For one hundred horses, three thousand five hundred grams.

"How many horses do you need?!" Liu Mang asked instead.

"A thousand war horses?!" Chen Gong carefully said a number.

"A thousand?" Liu Mang began calculating. He figured that it'll be thirty five thousand grams of gold. That's seventy pounds of gold and according to the gold weight of the Three Kingdoms period, it'll be a thousand and a hundred twenty gold.

Liu Mang rounded off the number. "A thousand two hundred gold!"

"What?!" Lu Bu was so shocked that he jumped.

"That's impossible!" Chen Gong wasn't calm either. This pricing was too unrealistic.

"Too expensive?!" Liu Mang didn't know of the pricing of horses in the Three Kingdoms period. However, this was precisely the price of horses in modern times. "If it's too expensive, I can negotiate with the other side!" Buying a thousand horses was a transaction of more than ten million. A transition this large will certainly be eligible for a discount!

"No! No!" Lu Bu and Chen Gong quickly shook their head.

“How much gold is left in the Kaiyang palace?!” Lu Bu fought back his happiness as he asked Chen Gong.

“There remains less than two thousand gold. However, General Zang Ba should have a couple thousand gold!” Zang Ba was already planning to retire to the countryside. Thus, he certainly would’ve taken a lot of Kaiyang’s assets.

“Good!” Lu Bu composed himself and said. “Borrow five thousand gold from Zang Ba. Tell him I will return him twice fold in the future! Then give all these seven thousand gold to Hanyang. I want five thousand warhorses!” said Lu Bu as he held out five fingers.

“Five thousand?!” Liu Mang looked at Lu Bu with eyes shocked wide open. “That’s seven thousand gold, even if I purchase five thousand horses, there’s still two thousand gold!” Was the rest of the gold to purchase armor?!

Boss Lu was prepared to go big.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 25 - Selling Gold

Seven thousand golds, roughly five hundred pounds worth of gold. Liu Mang found a large sack for all these gold.

Liu Mang looked at Lu Bu and Chen Gong.

Chen Gong handed the sack full of gold to Liu Mang. He said “Hanyang, it’s all up to you now!” Whether or not they could break through Kaiyang, whether or not the Lu Bu army could rise again, it was all now depending on Lin Mang’s return.

Although Lu Bu didn’t say anything, he had eyes full of encouragement as he looked at Liu Mang.

“Three days! Just resist them for three days and I will be back!” Liu Mang nodded.

“Don’t mention three days, as long as this Lu Bu is alive, Cao Cao could forget about entering Kaiyang!” Lu Bu had his pride for he was the number one general under heaven, his presence is like that of the God of War.

“Take care!” Liu Mang pressed the button to transport him back.

Golden light once again radiated the whole room. This time Lu Bu and Chen Gong was a lot more calm, after all, Liu Mang had already did this miracle once before.

The golden light soon disappeared and along with it Liu Mang.

Lu Bu laughed. “Let’s go Gongtai, it would appear that we must fight alongside this time around!”

“Hehe, my lord needn’t speak like so for I, Chen Gongtai, was more than just a mere scholar!” Chen Gong too laughed. Half a day ago they were still in despair and now they had found hope. As long as Liu Mang brings back the five thousand war horses and armor, then they will certainly will certainly have the means to break out of this siege.

Modern times. Jinling. An ancient city that was the capital city of six different dynasties. A city that currently the capital city of a single province.

[TL: China’s original capital was Nanjing aka. Jinling, a much more strategic location compared to Beijing. Some dumb emperor decided to move to Beijing, a place in the middle of nowhere.]

Liu Mang appeared in the middle of the street naturally and without drawing any attention. It was as if he was originally there.

“PM value was still 2.5! It’s still that familiar smell, it’s still that sentiment hazy sky!” Liu Mang affectionately breathed in a deep gulp of air. Those corpses that surrounded Kaiyang, those smell of blood that was in the air

the whole time, Liu Mang had enough of them. He who originally detested the polluted air of modern day now loved it. He even though that the hazy sky was cute.

"Ahhhhhhhhhhhhhhhhh! I, Liu Mang, am back again!" Liu Mang suddenly loudly shouted, frightening many passersby.

"This man is obviously crazy!" A pair of lovers who was next to Liu Mang was startled by his scream.

"A crazy bastard! Heck are you shouting about in broad daylight, we know you're a molester, okay?!"

[TL: remember that Liu Mang's name sounds the same as molester.]

"This bro got guts. Never had I heard someone self declaring to be a molester!" A fatty passerby who, upon hearing Liu Mang's words, turned to him and gave him a thumbs up.

"Molester?!" All the women who thought that they were some beauties decided to cover their skirt tightly.

Actually, in the eyes of Liu Mang, those women was wasting their efforts. That short, only idiots would not be able to tell the colors of the panties!

Fortunately Liu Mang changed onto the clean clothes he had brought with him the last time he transported. Otherwise, if he came back wearing ancient robes, then he'll certainly be sent to the police station.

“Five hundred pounds of gold!” Liu Mang was totally excited as he held onto the sack.

Back in Kaiyang, Liu Mang was already about to drool over the gold. However, he held himself back just so that he doesn’t shame himself in front of everyone. Now that he’s back, he began to feel the bumpy parts of the sack. This feeling, this material, he could not help but be excited.

Five hundred pounds of gold, that was certainly something that Liu Mang could not carry by himself. Luckily, he still had five thousand bucks on him. Thus, he called a taxi and drove toward the direction of the university.

Liu Mang didn’t know much profound knowledges, however he knew of one thing - one must not show his money! If he were to try to sell these five hundred pounds of gold directly, then only one thing could happen - he will be left with nothing! This was seventy five million yuan worth of gold! Who wouldn’t want it?!

Thus, there was only one person who could help him - Chen Yi. Liu Mang doesn’t know what Chen Yi’s family does, however he knew that they are very rich and not just ordinary rich!

He had once been to Chen Yi’s house. She lived in the Mount Huan villa region! Jinling was a place of high land cost, ordinary houses that’s a single square already cost some twenty thousand and those houses in the Mount Huan villa region cost about a hundred thousand per square. Chen Yi’s house was at least five squares! All the gold that Liu Mang had here was only enough to purchase her house!

“Wei? Who’s this?!” Chen Yi was at home. It was already late afternoon. There’s no class in the afternoon so Chen Yi had went home. Just as she arrived home, she received a call from an unknown number.

With doubt, Chen Yi pressed the accept button on her cellphone.

“It’s me Chen Yi, it’s me, Liu Mang!” Liu Mang said toward the phone.

“Liu Mang?!” Chen Yi noticed too. This voice was certainly Liu Mang’s. “Liu Mang, I was looking for you!” Chen Yi had a lot of things she wanted to ask him. That general gown she purchased from Liu Mang, upon bring it back home, was noticed by her grandfather! After identifying it, they found out that general gown was a governor’s general gown from the Eastern Han Dynasty! To be able to wear that gown, the person had to be at least a Province Governor!

Stuffs from the Eastern Han Dynasty, even if they didn’t had any archaeological value, it was still an antiques that worth several millions! A single Wang Mang coin was able to sell for a hundred million!

[TL: Wang Mang 45BC-23AD, Wang Mang usurped power from the Liu imperial family back during the Han dynasty between the period of Former Han and Latter (Eastern) Han. So one of his coins he made when he took over cost a hundred million yuan.]

But this gown was purchased from Liu Mang for only twenty thousand! This caused Chen Yi to feel bad. She initially wanted to find Liu Mang and return the gown to him but the gown was instead taken away by her grandfather.

“Perfect timing! I was just about to find you!” Liu Mang froze for a moment. Why did Chen Yi wanted to find him? Was it because of those two pairs of armor?

“Where are you?!” The two of them both asked the same question in unison.

“Let’s meet up in the university!” Once again in unison. This caused the two to fall silent until Liu Mang finally broke it by saying. “I will wait for you in the animation and manga club room!”

“Okay! I’ll drive there immediately!” Chen Yi immediately hung up. She dressed herself and was about the leave the house.

“Lil Yi, where are you going?!” This voice was Chen Yi’s mother. She was a successful career woman. In the business world, her swift and decisive reaction had earned her the will of the people.

“Mom, I gotta go to the university to do something!” replied Chen Yi.

“University? Wasn’t there no class today?!” Chen Yi’s mother confused.

“Yes, there’s no class! It’s that the owner of that general gown had returned. I’m on my way to see him and purchase the gown from him!” replied Chen Yi. Her grandfather was too fond of the gown, thus it was already impossible for her to return Liu Mang the gown. Thus, she could only use money to compensate Liu Mang.

“Is it your grandfather’s gown?!” Chen Yi’s mother was surprised. She

remembered that her father in law had recently fell in love with an ancient Han clothing, wearing it everyday and showing off saying it's some kind of general gown.

"That's right!" Chen Yi nodded.

"To purchase the gown, do you have enough money?!" Although Chen Yi's wasn't profound in the knowledge of antiques, she knew of their values. A well preserved Han Dynasty general gown was certainly not going to be cheap. "Take this card! There's fifty million in the card!" The card was a bonus she received this time around. Chen Yi's mother just shoved the card to Chen Yi like it was something totally worthless.

"Fifty million?!" Chen Yi didn't take the card. "Mom, I don't need this much. At most I'd been a couple million!" If it's a couple millions, then Chen Yi's card had enough money.

"Take it first! Just give it back to mom afterwards!" Chen Yi's mother once again handed her the card.

"Okay. Then mom, I'll be going!"

"Take care and be careful on the road!"

"I got it, Mom!" Chen Yi entered the garage and started up her car.

Hong (Red) University's Animation and Manga Clubroom. Liu Mang spent a great deal of effort to finally move the five hundred pounds worth of gold into the club room. Once he finished, he laid down onto

the floor completely exhausted.

"Ka ka!" The club room's door was opened. A beautiful figure came in.

The two looked at each other and said at the same time.

"Liu Mang."

"Chen Yi."

The two stopped. They paused and waited for the other to speak first and when neither does, they began to speak again at the same time.

"You speak first!" "You speak fist!"

The two's eyes both widened.

"I have something I need you for!" "I have something I need you for!"

Their mouth started twitching. They wanted to laugh but cannot laugh.

"Regarding that robe!" Their thought came together.

"Yeah, it's that robe!" Chen Yi nodded.

"Did you regret buying it?!"asked Liu Mang. He had sold the gown to

Chen Yi for twenty thousand. Had Chen Yi regretted buying it earlier, then Liu Mang had no way of returning her the money. However, he currently had a lot of gold. If she regret buying it now, then he could always just return her the money after selling the gold.

"No, that's not it!" Chen Yi shook her head. "It's just that the gown turned out to be more expensive than I thought!"

"So you didn't regret buying it. Then just let it be, don't bother over the extra money!" In Liu Mang's opinion, how could there be a lot of extra money. At most, the gold thread might weigh a couple more grams than expected. Now that he had five hundred pounds of gold, he couldn't care less about the extra money from the gown.

"No!" Chen Yi didn't agree with him. "That gown is worth over three million!"

"Aiya, we don't have to bother over that little amount of money!..." Right after saying those words, Liu Mang was stunned. "...you... what did you say?!"

"I said that robe might be worth more than three million yuan. I didn't bother to determine its exact value but according to the less Xiang Jiang auction, they had sold a general gown that was a bit damaged for three million and five hundred fifty thousand!" explained Chen Yi.

"In that case, that gown's worth over three million?!" Liu Mang swallowed a mouthful of saliva. That gown was just some ordinary clothes that Lu Bu gave to him after his original clothes were damaged.

A single piece of Boss Lu's clothes was worth over three million?!

"Yep!" Chen Yi continued. "I had previously given you twenty thousand so I still owe you three million five hundred and thirty thousand! Come, let's go to the bank to transfer the money!"

"Over three million? A single outfit cost more than three million?!" Liu Mang finally knew how wasteful Boss Lu was. Even the wealthy people in this world wouldn't buy an outfit for over three million!

Chen Yi saw the stunned Liu Mang. She was ready to bring him to the bank to transfer the money.

"Wait a moment!" Liu Mang shook his head vigorously to abandon the distractions in his mind. He was stunned by the three million and almost forgot about what he came to do this time around.

"Yeah?" puzzled, Chen Yi looked at Liu Mang.

"Chen Yi, regarding that robe, we can put that off to the side for now. I want to ask you a favor!" said Liu Mang earnestly.

"Put that off to the side? A favor?!" Chen Yi was confused. Liu Mang doesn't seem like some kind of wealthy person. Three million, that's an amount that he might not necessarily be able to make in his whole life time. To put that off to the side, was there something even more important to Liu Mang than the three million?

"Other than the gown, I want you to help me sell this!" said Liu Mang as

he pointed at the rag sack.

“Sell thing?!” Chen Yi was even more confused. What is it that’s more important than three million? That bag of things in that rag sack?

“Are you selling gold or what? To even put three million aside!” teased Chen Yi.

“You guessed correctly! I am selling gold!” Liu Mang rapidly went to open the rag sack.

A sack of gold was shining under the light exhibiting a great brilliance.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 26 - Big Transaction

Muddleheaded, Chen Yi drove home. She opened the door to her house.

“You’re back already?!” inquired Chen Yi’s mother as she looked at her daughter thinking that it was strange for her to be back so early.

“Have you finished buying?” The daughter was acting a bit strange, this was a mother’s intuition.

With empty eyes, Chen Yi nodded her head.

“What happened?!” Chen Yi’s mother moved forward to touch her daughter’s head. “No fever! How much did you friend ask for that general’s gown?!” Chen Yi’s mother asked casually.

Chen Yi didn’t answer. She was in a completely muddleheaded state.

“Why aren’t you speaking? Where’s the card?” asked Chen Yi’s mother. Her card was connected to her phone, should there be a transfer of money, she’d receive a notification on her phone. However, she had yet to receive any notification.

“I gave the card to him!” replied Chen Yi.

“Gave the card to him?!” Chen Yi’s mother was confused. What’s with this? That card had fifty million! That’s the total amount of bonus she

made this year in her company! Even if it's a general's robe, it wouldn't be that expensive! Did my girl went crazy?!

Chen Yi didn't try to explain. Instead, she took her mother to the garage and opened the trunk of the car.

Suddenly there's a burst of golden light. Chen Yi's mother also got stunned. Although she was wealthy, both her husband and she had their own careers and her parents were also wealthy, she had never seen five hundred pounds of gold before.

Gold! She saw that the gold had filled the whole trunk.

"These are what he gave me. He asked me to help him exchange these for money. As he urgently needed the money, I decided to give him the fifty million dollar card first!"

"What kind of person was that friend of yours?!"

Neither Chen Yi nor her mother managed to get any sleep that night. Chen Yi spent the whole night in shock. Her mother, on the other hand, was thinking about where the gold came from. Her family didn't lack any money. Although five hundred pounds of gold was indeed dazzling, it cannot move her heart. Instead, she was thinking of whether her daughter might have became friends with some bad people and the origin of the gold - if it's stolen or did someone rob a tomb.

If it was taken from a tomb, then maybe Chen Yi's mother would help taking into consideration that Liu Mang was Chen Yi's friend. However, if

this happens again then she'll definitely tell Chen Yi to stay away from him.

Liu Mang also did not managed to get any sleep that night. Three days. He only had three days! In these three days, he had to rush to Shandong Province at full speed. He had to find the horse ranch and purchase all the horses. He also had to find where to purchase armors and weapons!

Thus, immediately after he received the card with the fifty million yuan, he immediately rushed back to the University, found his friend whose family owned a horse ranch, dragged said friend, brought two plane tickets to Shandong and flew the same day.

Shandong. Liu Mang just got off the plane and was prepared to rush toward the horse ranch.

The domestic flights arrived early in the morning. By noon, he had arrived at Chen Yu's house.

Chen Yu's father could be regarded as a large scale breeder. With more than a thousand horses, cattles and sheep and thousands of shacks. He could already be considered as a big shot in the whole Shandong animal breeding industry.

"Dad, Mom, I'm back!" Chen Yu's house was located in the breeding ranch area. A western styled three story house. A distinctive style amongst the area filled with breeding ranches.

"Lil Yu?!" From the house came a middle aged woman. Chen Yu's family

business had been ran by his father the whole time. Thus, his mother was just an ordinary housewife.

"How did you come back?!" With a kind and concernful expression, Chen Yu's mother asked her son.

"I came back this time because my classmate over here wanted to purchase a couple horses to play with!" explained Chen Yu. Although the relationship between Chen Yu and Liu Mang was just so so, Chen Yu was an enthusiastic person. Especially after Liu Mang gave him an Apple phone, he became even more enthusiastic toward Liu Mang.

"A classmate? Come, quickly take a seat inside the house!" Chen Yu's mother totally ignored the whole horse purchasing ordeal. Instead, she began to entertain Liu Mang.

"No no. Auntie, I'm in a hurry. I would like to check out the horse ranch now, is that fine?!" Liu Mang didn't want to sit down in Chen Yu's house for it might last for a whole half day.

"In this much of a rush?! Okay! Chen Yu's dad is currently at the horse ranch. Chen Yu knows the direction, just have him take you there! I still have to cook dinner, don't forget to come back for dinner in the afternoon!" A mother was always the most enthusiastic toward her returned son.

Under the guide of Chen Yu, Liu Mang and him arrived at the horse ranch.

Once arrived at the horse ranch, Liu Mang was stupefied. It was completely different from what he had imagined. Instead of horses running around freely, all the horses were held in captivity with only a few li worth of area to move around.

That wasn't even the most concerning factor. The most concerning factor was that all these horses combined could not add up to five hundred. He needed five thousand!

"Chen Yu, are you certain that your family had one of Shandong's larger ranch?!" Liu Mang asked suspectly.

"Of course!" Chen Yu answered without any hesitation. "There's only a dozen or so families with ranches of some dozen or so li area. The rest of them were all smaller ranches that could only breed things like poultries!"

"Brat, how did you get back?!" A middle aged man who looked very similar to Chen Yu came by. Liu Mang knew that this was certainly Chen Yu's father.

"You decided not to go to school anymore? Was there no class? Or did you got into some sort of problem?!" Fathers are fathers after all. A bit less of that compassion of mothers. A bit more of that strictness of fathers.

"Dad, why am I always a kid in your eyes?!" Chen Yu was a bit embarrassed to be told such a thing by his father in front of his classmate. He's an adult after all.

“Humph, little brat. In my eyes you will always be like that!”

“Enough, enough, I won’t quarrel with you! Today I came back with a classmate of mine. He wanted to purchase some horses to play with!” Chen Yu was almost speechless toward his father. He’s already twenty two! Some of his original classmates were already married and had kids. Yet his father still regarded him as a naughty child.

“Purchase horse?!” Chen Yu’s father Chen De looked toward Liu Mang who was on the side of Chen Yu and complained. “Why didn’t you it earlier that you brought a classmate with you! Classmate, you came here to purchase horses right?!”

“Uncle, I am surnamed Liu and named Mang. You can just call me Lil Liu!” replied Liu Mang.

“Okay. Lil Liu it is.” After saying it a couple times, Chen De felt that it was easy to say and decided to call Liu Mang that. “What kind of horse were you planning to buy? Hot blooded horse, warm blooded horse or cold blooded horse?”

“Huh?!” Liu Mang was confused. How could there be so many different types of horses? Aren’t they all mammals? How could there be cold blooded horses?!

Seeing Liu Mang with a face full of confusion, Chen De laugh. He knew that this young man didn’t know much about horses. “Come! Let me

introduce the horses to you!”

The three walked toward the horse ranch.

“Lil Liu. Look. All these horses were purchased personally by your uncle from when they were only foals. We nurtured them until they grew older and give birth to more foals!” Chen De pointed at each and every shed. He knew of every single one of the horse.

After listening to Chen De’s explanation, Liu Mang understood a little about the horses. There are more than three hundred varieties of horses in the world.

According to the uses of the horses, they could be categorized into: riding horses (light horse) and harness horses (large horses, commonly referred as cart pulling horses).

According to the linage of the horses, they could be categorized into: hot blooded horses (clever, quick, suitable for becoming racehorses. However, they had poor physique and endurance and a stubborn personality. Not suited for leisure usage), warm blooded horses (clever with a meek temperature. Suitable for various applications, both for competitions and for leisure) and cold blooded horse (strong and able body, fit for pulling carts. Mostly used for agriculture.)

Liu Mang doesn’t know what kind of horse was needed for combat in the era of cold weapons. Do they need the explosiveness of a hot blooded horse or do they need the endurance of a cold blooded horse?

“Uncle, I want both the hot blooded horse and the warm blooded horse!” Since he didn’t know what kind of horse to get, might as well buy them all. Lu Bu could chose the kind of horse he want himself afterwards.

“Okay! I have a just grown Arabian horse. It’s a hot blooded horse. You can purchase that. As for the warm blooded horse, how about that Mongolian horse?! It’s pretty good too and isn’t too old either. Seeing as you’re the brat’s classmate, I’d sell you the Arabian horse for fifteen thousand. As for that Mongolian horse, consider it a gift from me!” Chen De didn’t ask anymore than the production cost of the horse.

“Okay! I’d take all of your Arabian and Mongolian horses!” Liu Mang’s words almost frightened Chen De to death.

“What? You want them all?!” Chen De could not believe what Liu Mang had said. He had no less than a hundred Arabian horses and two hundred Mongolian horses. Using fifteen thousand for an Arabian horse and five thousand for a Mongolian horse, that’s a transaction of over three million yuan!

“That’s right uncle, I want them all!” said Liu Mang with a smile. “This is the deposit!” Liu Mang had taken ten million in cash from the bank before he came here.

“Hey hey, Liu Mang, you didn’t went full retard right? What are you buying all these horses for? Here, my dad had over three hundred of the horses you want. Did you really want to purchase all those?!” Chen Yu was also stunned. Although he doesn’t know what Liu Mang’s family does, Liu Mang didn’t strike him as someone belonging to a rich family. To purchase three hundred horses, did he want to start his own horse ranch? Even if that was the case, he should be buying foals, not fully grown

horses.

"I didn't go full retard! Uncle, do you have the contact information of other horse ranches? What I wanted to buy was a lot more than these. I needed two thousand and five hundred hot blooded Arabian horses as well as two thousand five hundred Mongolian horses!" Liu Mang threw out another huge bomb. The bomb landed on Chen De and left him completely dazzled.

"Two thousand and five hundred Arabian horses? And another two thousand and five hundred Mongolian horses? Did you want all these horses to fight in a battle or what?!" Chen De muttered in his chest. He managed to guessed correctly, these horses were indeed for use of battle, only that it's not a battle in modern times.

Before he came, Liu Mang already got his manuscript ready. He said with a smile. "Uncle, have you heard of the Horse King?"

"Horse King?!" Those who breed horses does it not only because it's a business, they also do it because they loved horses. The Legend of the Horse King was something that all horse lovers longed for.

"Are you saying?!" Chen De seemed to have guessed something.

"That's right! The reason why we wanted to purchase these five thousand horses was to set them free. We are to let them roam freely and breed feedly. What we desire was the ruler of these horses! As long as we managed to have a single Horse King, once we could turned him into a racehorse we'd be profiting, profiting big!" Liu Mang was embarrassed red telling the lie, however he managed to make Chen De who loves

horses believe in his lie.

"Okay! I'll help you contact people. Two thousand and five hundred pure blooded Arabian horses and two thousand five hundred Mongolian horses!" Chen De nodded as he said it all seriously.

"Crazy! Crazy! You're all crazy! To spend fifty million to purchase a single Horse King? Did you really have nowhere else to waste your money on?!" In the views of Chen Yu, fifty million could buy a top racing car! What could a horse do?! They can't even be on the roads nowadays!

"Then I'll leave the matter in your hands. Uncle, please give me an account number, I will transfer the money to your account. Please try to get the horses for me as quickly as possible because I'm in a hurry!" Chen De dialed a series of numbers. Liu Mang transferred the money using the computer. Five thousand war horses, Chen De said it would only require forty million. Liu Mang got an additional two million. He gave a million to Chen De for him to help him purchase more horses in the future. The other million, he asked Chen De to help him purchase grain for the horses.

"I will be able to get you all the horses by latest tomorrow!" Chen De was second to none in the Shandong breeding circle. With him personally taking the reign, all the process will be very fast. He only said he needed to wait till tomorrow because they needed to transport the other horses.

"Okay! Just transport the horse to this warehouse at this address! We will have someone there to take care of the rest!" Liu Mang already got a large old warehouse. Not only was it located in a remote location, it was also very big. Let alone five thousand horses, even if it was fifty thousand

horses he’d still be able to put them all there.

“Okay!” Chen De nodded and started to continue contacting more people.

Seeing that his father had left, Chen Yu suddenly knelt to the floor and held onto Liu Mang’s thigh. “Brother! Big Brother! Big Brother Liu Mang! Please take me under your wing! If you tell me to go east, I’d dare not go west! If you tell me to chase after rabbits, I’d dare not do fowls!”

The response Chen Yu received was a large foot and a sentence. "This bro never do fowls!”

[TL : fowl = chicken = whore = prostitute = shameless woman = ecchi = hentai]

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 27 - Camaraderie Under the Setting Sun

After the horses arrived at the warehouse without any issue, Liu Mang was at a loss as to what to do about the armors and weapons. How do I purchase this stuff?! Weapons like blades and spears were all tightly controlled by the government. Only minor ethnic groups were able to obtain those.

Even buying regular kitchen knives requires identification. If Liu Mang went and purchase a couple thousand of those, he would certainly be arrested.

Armor? Although it wasn't something that they limit purchases on, it was still something that requires time to make. Kaiyang could only hold Cao Cao back for three days. Liu Mang only had three days too! That's why Liu Mang had a huge headache. Should Kaiyang be captured, according to Cao Cao's character, everyone will certainly be killed.

Liu Mang didn't know when he began to deeply worry about Boss Lu, Chen Gong and them.

"Boss, what are you thinking?!" Chen Yu had been following Liu Mang ever since. He had already decided to become Liu Mang's lackey. Liu Mang also decided to have someone help him take care of and purchase things when he returned back to the Eastern Han Dynasty. Thus, he decided to take in Chen Yu.

“I want to purchase armor and cold weapons!” replied Liu Mang

“What’s the use of buying those things?!” Chen Yu didn’t understand why Liu Mang wanted to purchase those things. He figured Liu Mang wanted them as toys. “if it’s just one or two, can’t you custom order them?!”

“What I want isn’t just one or two of them. I want five thousand spears and five thousand armor!” The horses will be used to create cavalry units when he goes back. And the one very distinctive weapon of cavalry was the spear.

“Five thousand spears?! That many?!” Chen Yu was a bit speechless. If there really was a manufacturer that would make five thousand spears, that manufacturer was certainly trying to run itself into the ground. Five thousand armors, on the other hand, wasn’t a problem.

“I have some friends who want to role play the battles of the cold weapons era and reproduce its brilliance. The five thousand sets of weapons and armors was precisely prepared for them!” Liu Mang’s casual lying skills became even more profound.

“So rich!” Chen Yu simply did some calculations in his mind. Five thousand sets of armor and weapons will certainly cost tens of millions. What a bunch of wasteful rich kids!

“It’s them who have the money, I’m actually just a proxy for them!” Liu Mang created another fake identity.

“Although our country has weapons regulations, there’s no such thing abroad. You could purchase those weapons in another country!” suggested Chen Yu.

“It’s not that I didn’t want to go abroad, it’s just that I don’t have time for that! In another day and half, I have to turn in all that stuff! There’s not enough time at all!” Liu Mang was also very anxious.

“Spears. Spears?!” Chen Yu suddenly remembered. “Boss, although we cannot purchase spears, we could purchase the javelins that are used in sports!”

“Javelin?!” Liu Mang’s eyes also lit up.

“Yeah, Javelins! Nowadays, the javelins are all constructed from steel. Although the tip is made of rubber, we could have someone produce spearheads for them using steel pipes! If we do it like that, we wouldn’t violate the law and could still procure five thousand spears!” Chen Yu’s idea got Liu Mang totally excited.

“That’s it! How come I didn’t think of it?!” Liu Mang was once a javelin thrower. Javelins are just the modern adaptation of ancient spears. They can certainly replace the spears that he needs. In fact, the quality of modern javelins was certainly going to be better than the ancient spears.

Javelins ranged from 1.5 meters to 2.8 meters. This length was definitely good enough to make spears since the most suitable spears of cavalries was around three meters.

“What about the armors?!” Although they managed to procure the spears, the cavalry units also need armors. Other than light cavalry which wore leather armor, the rest were all heavy cavalry wearing metal armors.

If they didn’t have any armor, then winning against the Ferocious Cavalry that’s outside of Kaiyang wasn’t something that was certain anymore.

“Armor!” Chen Yu was also thinking. “Polishing is required for armor to be comfortable for the wearer. There’s also the need for engraving. There won’t be enough time for sure!”

“Polishing, be comfortable, engravings?!” Liu Mang froze for a bit. “No need, no need! Those friends of mine only wanted to recreate the scene of the cold weapons era! We don’t need some ornate armor, just ordinary whole body armor would do!”

“In that case, it’d be easy to handle. Boss, you just have to find a large lathe factory. There are turning lathes and turning mills everywhere, just have them press some steel for you. You don’t even have to bring your own tools, you’d just have to pay them! A lathe mill could make some tens of sets of armor in a day. If it’s a large lathe factory, five thousand armors in a day is something easy for them to make!” Chen Yu really knew a lot more about the world than Liu Mang. After all, before Liu Mang crossed through time, he was just an otaku type person.

“Chen Yu, Ah Yu, you helped me greatly!” Liu Mang’s two major problems were resolved by Chen Yu instantly.

“Five thousand sets of body armor and five thousand spears. I’m giving you ten million. Come find me if it isn’t enough. Go, place the order for me right away!” Chen Yi’s mother had already sent over the rest of the money for the gold to his card. Liu Mang didn’t bother looking into the amount of money on the card, if he did then he would’ve found out that there was more than the twenty five million that he thought was left on the card. Rather, the amount was more than tripled at eighty million.

The gold bullion that Liu Mang brought with him, in both appearance and style, belonged to the Han Dynasty and was thus considered antiques. The five hundred pounds of gold was sold for one hundred and forty million right away! Taking away the transaction fee of ten million, the remaining eighty million was all transferred to the card by Chen Yi’s mother.

“Ten million?!” Chen Yu had never seen such a large number in his whole life. Seeing that number appear on the computer and then the notification that appeared on his account, Chen Yu was dumbfounded. “I don’t need this much! I don’t need this much!” Regular full body armor does not require super high technology or a large amount of steel. Thus, they’d cost no more than a thousand and five thousand full body armors would cost no more than five million. Those five thousand javelins were even cheaper! They could be made with just a steel pole. A single javelin would only cost some five hundred yuan. Adding them together would only be seven and half million! Yet, Liu Mang gave him ten million!

Hearing Chen Yu’s words, Liu Mang didn’t take back the extra two and half million. Instead, he said. “Use this amount of money to rent an office in Jinling for me. Then help me recruit some staff and set up the framework of the company. Our company will focus on these rich kids who have nowhere to spend their money. We will make them whatever

they wish to play with! I might also be bringing back stuff like antiques and gems. You will also need to help me find some professionals for that!"

"Eh?! Aren't you afraid of me stealing the money and running away?!" asked Chen Yu.

"Afraid?!" Liu Mang laughed. "It's just some two million bucks. If you follow me, let alone two million, even if it's twenty million, it'd be nothing!" The cheapo Liu has started to become rich! A couple days ago, he was a diaosi-class person who couldn't even take out a thousand bucks. However, now he found a trade route - selling things from the two different worlds.

"Okay! I, Chen Yu, will follow you!" Before, Chen Yu decided to follow Liu Mang only for the money. Now, however, he did it in hopes of gaining a large quantity of riches, enough to show it off.

"Quickly, let's go and place the orders!"

Outside of Kaiyang. Third day of the siege. The sunset was red, the city walls were red and the earth was also red. Corpses have now accumulated upto the the height of half the city walls. The hundred thousand strong Cao army had lost nearly twenty five thousand in the siege. The ten thousand Lu Bu army, although defending the city with the help of the walls, was left with less than four thousand. Amongst these four thousand were those that were seriously wounded. All of the

Formation Breaker and the Bing Province Soldiers had joined the fray. Even Lu Bu himself had joined the fray. They had fought back wave after wave of enemy soldiers.

"It's been three days! My lord!" Chen Gong was covered with blood. His eyes were bloodshot. Although he was a scholar, he wasn't a weak scholar. He was actually very skilled in horsemanship and shooting. In these three days, no less than fifty soldiers died under his hands.

"That's right, it's been three days!" Lu Bu also looked toward the sunset. The Cao army have retreated their troops. In the opinion of Cao Cao, Lu Bu was already like a setting sun that was unable to rise back up again. What he needed was to deal a final blow to Lu Bu tomorrow, killing him on the scene so that his heart could rest.

"Tomorrow, tomorrow at the latest. If Hanyang still doesn't return tomorrow, then we shall prepare to perish with Kaiyang!" said Chen Gong respectfully.

Lu Bu looked toward Chen Gong. Chen Gong also looked at Lu Bu. Suddenly, Lu Bu smiled and asked. "Gongtai, why did you choose me?! Although I, Lu Bu, was not inferior in any aspect to all the heroes of the world, I still knew of my limitations. If we're talking about fame, then my slave of three surnames can not compare to Yuan Shao's three Excellencies in four generations! If we're talking about the ability to use people, I, Lu Bu, am an opinionated man who can not compare with Cao Mende's love for talent! If we're talking about benevolence, haha, I, Lu Bu, other than toward my own family and brothers, have always been cruel toward everyone else and can not compare with that big eared Liu!" For Lu Bu to be able to make a name for himself in the Eastern Han Dynasty and even end up on the pages of history, he was no ordinary person!

“Oh Fengxian!” Hearing Lu Bu saying such words, Chen Gong loosened his taut nerves. He even stopped calling Lu Bu his lord, instead he called him by his courtesy name. “That’s right. If we’re talking about fame, then your fame could stink through eighteen streets! You killed both of your foster fathers, certainly not comparable to the Yuan family’s three Excellencies in four generations. If we’re talking about the ability to use people, other than me, is there any other advisor working for you?! Certainly not comparable to Cao Cao’s cloud-full of talents.”

“If we’re talking about benevolence, hehe. You are the number one general! Those who died under your hands numbered at least ten thousand! Women, children, regardless of who blocks your path, as long as they block your path, you’d kill them without any hesitation! You are certainly not comparable to big eared Liu! However, you had one thing right!”

“Toward your brothers, toward your families, you really do treat them as if they’re your own children, you really do give your all to them! With this single part, you had made this Chen Gongtai devote myself to you till my last breath!”

“Chen Gong oh Chen Gong, do you not regret?!” Lu Bu had never spoken like this with this old partner of his. Chen Gong was a huge talent, his talent could be considered as one of the top in the world. Sometimes, Lu Bu also wondered that if he had Chen Gong’s assistance back when he was in Luoyang and Changan, then he would’ve never been in this situation. Perhaps, he would’ve even been in a position of accomplishment by now.

“Regret?!” Chen Gong stroke his sleeves. “Oh Fengxian, you had once

said that you, Lu Bu, never regret. Then I will also tell you this, I, Chen Gong, never once regret following you! Never!”

“Great! Hahahaha! For I, Lu Bu, have Gongtai to accompany me to my burial, then this life is not lonely!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 28 - Battle of Kaiyang (1)

"Dong Dong Dong Dong!" Early in the morning, the war drums had already begun to sound. Lu Bu knew that the Cao army was about to attack again. There's not a lot of soldiers left inside the city now, they might not be able to last for the whole day!

"Sha!" The white clothed Cao soldiers, with the helps of ladders, was swarming over like an army of ants. This time, the vanguards were Xu Huang's troops.

Xu Huang was a famous Cao general in the Three Kingdoms period. He was originally a cavalry officer under Yang Feng. After Yang Feng was defeated by Cao Cao, he switched loyalties to Cao Cao. Although he hadn't been a Cao general for a long time, Cao Cao treated him generously and gave him a whole battalion of troops to lead. Thus, Xu Huang wanted to express his worth to his lord even more and show Cao Cao that he had chosen the right person.

"Brothers! Attack! The Lu Bu army is on its last breath! The prime minister has given the order! Those who ascend the walls of Kaiyang shall be rewarded ten gold! Those who kill a single Lu Bu soldier shall be rewarded a field of land! Those who kill ten Lu Bu soldiers shall be rewarded jewels and precious stones! Those who kill a hundred Lu Bu soldiers shall be given an official position and have his military rank increased! Brothers, this is the perfect opportunity to achieve something for yourselves! Kill them all!" Xu Huang's speech was very captivating. His soldiers' morale had increased significantly and they started to

dauntlessly advance in wave upon wave - attacking the city walls.

Xu Huang didn't shout what he usually told his soldiers. He didn't tell the soldiers to kill the head of the enemy. This was because he was aware of Lu Bu's prowess. Yesterday, he climbed up to the city walls and was seen by Lu Bu. Had it not been for Lao Cao dispatching Xu Chu and his own personal guards, then Xu Huang would likely have been unable to leave the city walls!

Even with this, there were still no less than ten deaths amongst the guards. Only then did Xu Huang know of the might of the number one general under heaven.

A single tiger wasn't scary. What's scary was a tiger commanding a group of wolves!

Lu Bu was the tiger and the Lu Bu army was the wolves!

"We must persist! We must persist! Once the Cao army breaks through the city walls, they will kill every one of us! To surrender is to die! To resist is also to die! In that case, men, let's risk it all!" Originally Chen Gong feared that the Chen family soldiers would revolt. However, ever since he mentioned that Cao Cao might massacre everyone after capturing the city, every one of the Chen family soldiers went insane, blocking the Cao army's advance. The effects of his words were very good!

Although the Chen family soldiers were personal soldiers of Chen Deng's family, they were all Xu Province folks before they enlisted. Cao Cao's attack on Xu Province had killed a great amount of people. Many of these Xu Province soldiers' relatives might even be amongst those killed

by Cao Cao.

"Sha! Sha! Sha!" Xu Province was a place of abundance and the folks were all of gentle temperament, however even gentle folks could get angry! And Cao Cao, he had caused these folks' bloody temperament to arise. They have fought back wave after wave of Cao troops.

"Lu Bu! Lu Bu!" Cao Cao started at the golden armored general on the wall. He had a very complicated expression as he looked at Lu Bu.

He so desired to kill that man because that man had almost killed him! Moreover, that man had immense charisma and excellent capabilities in leading troops! These Xu Province soldiers were originally weak and feeble; when they were in the hands of Tao Gongzu, Tao Qian, they had no military prowess at all. They were soldiers that could not win a single battle and would flee at the sight of the enemy! Even the elites amongst them, the Danyang soldiers, still amounted to nothing in the battle against Cao Cao's army. However, these same Xu Province soldiers were now fighting back the offense of his elite troops as if they had gone berserk!

[TL: Gongzu = Tao Qian's courtesy name]

Xu Huang was already on the level of a first-rate general, his soldiers no worse than those of Yu Jin and Xiahou Yuan. However, he was still unable to take over the city walls!

"If only he surrendered to me!" Cao Cao sighed. When he was outside of Xiapi, he once thought of reconciling with Lu Bu and turning him into his ally. If he were to give all his military forces to Lu Bu and have him

command them while he himself took care of internal affairs, then, with such a combination, they would certainly be able to sweep the world in a short amount of time!

But all of this was ruined by Chen Gong, that arrow almost cost him his life!

[TL: Lu Bu considered Cao Cao's offer for surrender but Chen Gong was like, fuck you bro, let me shoot teh arrow at yo head!]

After half a day of fierce fighting, blood once again stained the walls. Finally, there was a Cao troop that managed to board the wall.

"The reward! The reward is mine!" This Cao solder was very happy. He was the first to board the wall and thus the reward of ten gold for boarding the wall was his!

However, before he could even celebrate…

"Poof!" From the mouth of the Cao soldier came a spray of blood. On his chest appeared a sword. This was a masterpiece caused by a Xu Province soldier.

"Re-reward!" Even till he lost his breath and fell down the walls, the Cao soldier was still thinking of his reward.

To have one meant that there would be a second. Although the Lu Bu army fought bravely, they were way too tired. Slowly white clothed Cao soldiers began to appear on the city walls. First they occupied a small

corner. Then they slowly turned the single corner into two corners, then three corners.

"It's time!" Cao Cao looked at the increasing number of white dressed soldiers and waved his hand. "Xu Huang, Li Dian, join the fray!" Although none of the generals could match Lu Bu alone, they could fight him together! Even if Lu Bu was the God of War, he was still human! Humans will always grow tired!

"Yes, Prime Minister!" Li Dian and Xu Huang glanced at each other. Both of their eyes were blazing with desire. They knew of Lu Bu's prowess. The more they knew of Lu Bu's prowess the stronger their desire was to kill him and obtain the merit for killing him. Killing Lu Bu was the same as telling the world they were stronger than the strongest!

The two held their hands toward Cao Cao and immediately proceeded to leave with their troops, advancing toward the city walls.

As opposed to the two's blazing desire, Cao Cao was instead a bit desolate. In today's battle, Lu Bu will be defeated at his hands; his soul was about to go toward the Yellow Springs! In this world, how many heroes are left that are worthy for Cao Cao to struggle against?!

[TL: Yellow Springs = hell in chinese mythology]

"Zhongkang! Take my guards and follow after them. Prepare for and await my orders at all times!" He was afraid that Li Dian and Xu Huang weren't going to be able to kill Lu Bu; so he decided to have Xu Chu as backup for killing Lu Bu.

[TL: Zhongkang = Xu Chu's courtesy name.]

Actually, Cao Cao had people who were able to fight against Lu Bu. They were the two younger brothers of a certain imperial uncle. They are currently sitting under the tent drinking quietly. In the Battle of Hulao Pass, had big eared Liu not obstructed them then perhaps Zhang Fei and Guan Yu would've really been able to keep Lu Bu from escaping. And now, Lu Bu was both weak and weary, if the two brothers were sent to battle him, they're certainly going to fare well.

However, Cao Cao didn't send them. He wanted big eared Liu to sit and watch. He wanted to show big eared Liu that he too had a cloudful of valiant generals under him.

Li Dian and Xu Huang led their troops and arrived underneath the city walls. The sky was raining men constantly. There were both Cao soldiers and Lu Bu soldiers amongst those falling down the walls. There were also times when the whole siege ladder was pushed down, raining countless men at once.

"Mancheng, I shall take the left while you take the right. We shall attack both sides!" proposed Xu Huang.

[TL: Mancheng = Li Dian's courtesy name.]

"Everything shall be decided by Gongming!" Li Dian was a person who never once bothered to argue for meritorious service with others. As long as you use him, he'd absolutely not disappoint you.

[TL: Gongming = Xu Huang's courtesy name.]

Xu Huang nodded. The two then brought their guards and started climbing two siege ladders.

"Sha!" With a large roar, Xu Huang, with a large shield in hand, started climbing the ladder. Rocks, stones, stakes, hot oil and corpses, like rain, were falling onto the heads of those climbing toward the wall. With a large shield over him and his blade in his mouth, step by step Xu Huang climbed.

"Die!" On Li Dian's side, there was a bit less people. Thus Li Dian was the first to ascend the wall. Right as Li Dian ascended the wall, a Lu Bu soldier was already slashing his knife while also trying to kick the whole siege ladder away from the wall.

Seeing this, Li Dian immediately threw away his large shield, picked up the blade in his mouth and thrust the blade at the coming foe as if it was a sword.

Li Dian's speed was mighty fast. He's a first-rate general; his martial abilities were not weak at all. Thus, against a common soldier, it was so easy that it was almost like stretching out his hand.

Blood splashed all over Li Dian and contrary to expectations, the blood evoked Li Dian's fierce nature. With a huge step, Li Dian began to brandish his blade upon his foes. Xu Huang, on the other hand, was unlucky. He had set his siege ladder at a place filled with numerous Lu Bu soldiers. Soon, the siege ladder was going to be pushed away from the city walls. If that happened, then Xu Huang would be saying bye bye to

the world! To fall from the city wall, you'd be dead even if you were an immortal!

Li Dian was like a god of death. The area within two meters of him was suddenly emptied. He directly charged toward the direction of Xu Huang and saved Xu Huang's life.

"Many thanks Mancheng!" Xu Huang also ascended the wall. His guards that followed had also brought his giant axe up the wall.

Li Dian didn't have the time to return the courtesy, he only responded with an 'en' sound. That was because Li Dian was already sweating profusely. He knew that he had been targeted by a ferocious beast.

[TL: en = yeah. It's a grunt that chinese people use all the time to reply. kinda like mmhmm]

This kind of feeling! It's Lu Bu!! Li Dian considered himself not to be worse than other generals. Even if it was Xu Chu, he hadn't experienced this kind of feeling. There's only one person he had felt this from - Dian Wei! Only from Dian Wei had he experienced this kind of cold killing intent without any hint of human emotions!

Who would've thought that Lu Bu also had this kind of killing intent. And it's even more horrible than Dian Wei's!

"Lu Bu!" Xu Huang also felt it. However, he fared better off than Li Dian as he had experienced the prowess of Lu Bu first hand. Xu Huang couldn't help but tightly grasp his axe.

“Yesterday, I was unable to keep you here! Today, let this city wall be your grave!” Sure enough, Boss Lu’s voice resounded from the rear.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 29 - Battle of Kaiyang (2)

“Lu Bu!” Xu Huang's gaze was set on the golden armored general in front of him. “Kaiyang is about to be breached, if you were sensible, then you’d best renounce resistance and follow us together to Prime Minister Cao to surrender. If you do, we shall plea for leniency for you and ask the Prime Minister to spare your life!” Said Xu Huang with a stern voice. The amount of Cao troops that on the frontal walls was constantly increasing. Originally, there was but a couple white clothed soldiers on the walls that was packed with black clothed soldiers. Now, the black and white was completely mixed together.

The Cao army had already taken over half the wall. Their strength was also growing continuously. The Lu Bu army could no longer repel their enemies down the walls, all they could do now was defend themselves.

Lu Bu looked at the constantly increasing Cao troops. With a face void of expressions, he said. “Is that so?!”

“Marquis of Wen! You are an official of Han! Prime Minister Cao was the delegate of His Majesty the Son of Heaven! To dare point your blade at the Son of Heaven, you are seeking your own destruction! It’s best you lay down your weapon, perhaps then His Majesty will spare your life!” Although Li Dian had not battle against Lu Bu before, he had heard of rumors of Lu Bu’s reputation and prowess. Thus, he was speaking to Lu Bu with a respectful tone.

“Surrender?!” Laughed Lu Bu. “Spare my life?!” He laughed with a great display of happiness. “I find your suggestions to be very difficult to

accept!" Lu Bu took off his cloak and placed it aside. "Did you know that I, Lu Bu, was born in Jiuyuan county of Wuyuan commandery out in the frontier?! That region was a place of great scarcity and populated by exiled people. In order to survive, I, Lu Bu, entered the prairie alone to find prey. Who would've thought that instead of finding prey, I was instead surrounded by a pack of wolves! On the lust green prairie, I was surrounded by tens of wolves that night! Foreign cavalries had passed by me when I was surrounded by the wolves. They spoke to me. They told me as long as I beg them and become their slave, they will save me! A matter of life and death! I, Lu Bu, was unarmed and defenseless. I, Lu Bu, did not beg for assistance. Tens of wolves! They wanted to eat me! I too wanted to eat them! I was hungry, very hungry! I knew that even if these wolves hadn't found me, I would've died from my hunger on the prairie. Thus, I went insane! I charged into the pack of wolves! I needed to eat them! I needed to eat them in order to survive!" Lu Bu exposed his neck. On his neck was countless bite scars.

"Did you see that? For every bite they gave me, I returned them a bite! Wolves target the crucial locations of others - neck, arm and head! I learned from them, wherever they bit me, I would bite them back at the same location! Finally, I survived via their blood and flesh!"

Learn From wolves? Bite wolves to death? Survive via wolves' blood and flesh?! Some nearby Cao soldiers swallowed their saliva. Xu Huang and Li Dian's guards have surrounded Lu Bu but they dared not move.

Lu Bu continued. "When I grew up, I joined our great Han army. Winter was when foreigners come and plunder us. In the Battle of Jiuyuan, our Han army of a hundred and twenty three strong was trapped by thirty thousand Wuwan in the middle of wilderness! Thirty thousand Wuwan heavy cavalries! In that battle, my weapon broke apart, one after another, I changed my weapons. In that battle, my war horse died, one after

another, I changed my horse. My armor was dyed red by the blood, unable to wash off. A hundred and twenty three men, only three survived! Amongst them was I, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian! Never had I beg for forgiveness! Do you know how many Wuwan died by my hands?!"

Lu Bu extended his fingers. "A hundred and twenty three men. A hundred and twenty died. We defeated the Wuwan cavalry of thirty thousand, killed seven thousand!"

Whenever Lu Bu mention numbers, Xu Huang and Li Dian's hearts trembled. A hundred against thirty thousand! That's three hundredfold! Enemies three hundred times as many! Lu Bu also thought that he was certainly going to die too. Who would've imagined that because he went berserk and killed so many, the Wuwan grew afraid of him and issued an order to flee. Only then did Lu Bu managed to survive.

"Afterwards, I started working under Ding Yuan, Ding Jianyang. Bing Province Heavy Cavalries, we fought against the Wuwan and the Liaodong! From those foreigners, from those prairie wolves, and from those Han Dynasty officials, I learned of one thing - surrendering meant death! Had I surrender to those wolves, then perhaps I would've already become a cluster of bones on the prairie! Had I surrender to the Wuwan, then perhaps I would either be their slave or be killed by them!" Lu Bu smiled as he looked at Xu Huang and Li Dian. "Say, do you still think I should surrender?!"

"Marquis of Wen! Prime Minister Cao is neither wolves nor foreigner! He is our Great Han's Prime Minister, the representative of His Majesty!" Li Dian didn't give up on trying to persuade Lu Bu to surrender.

"What is the difference?!" Lu Bu gave off an insipid laugh. "Those

learned men like Gongtai always spoke of the heart of wolves and lungs of dogs, heart of wolves and lungs of dogs. However, what they didn't know was that men's heart were so much crueler than those of wolves, men's lungs were so much more malicious than those of dogs! In Luoyang, outside of the Hulao Pass and inside Xiapi, three times! Three times he Cao Mende almost died in my hands! Say, how would Cao Mende possibly spare my life?! Furthermore, I had gravely injured Xiahou Yuan." taunted Lu Bu. "Besides, is Cao Mende not afraid of this slave of three surnames turning into a slave of four surnames?!"

[TL: heart of wolves and lungs of dogs = a term to describe how cruel and unscrupulous someone is.]

Li Dian was left speechless. Even if it was him, he knew it was impossible. If someone almost killed you, how would you possibly be able to forgive that person? And this scene of almost killing you happened not just once but three times. Not only did this man almost killed you, he also gravely injured your blood brother. Most importantly, this man had a previous record of rebelling against his masters.

Much less Cao Cao, even a sage could not possibly be able to just forgive and forget this person right away!

"Lu Bu, did you really thought that we would be trying to persuade you to surrender out of our goodwills? Stop daydreaming! We are merely stalling for time!" said Xu Huang.

"Oh?!" Lu Bu looked around, half of the city wall was now occupied by the ever increasing Cao troops. The city of Kaiyang was soon to be broken

through and it was already impossible for Lu Bu to escape now.

"Forget about whether or not the Prime Minister would forgive you. If you were to surrender, how would we present your head as our achievement?!" sneered Xu Huang.

"Want my head?! That's simple!" Lu Bu raised his trident. "My head's here waiting for you to take it!"

"Since you wanted to die, then you cannot blame us!" Xu Huang waved his gigantic axe. "Brothers, attack Lu Bu! Once we killed him, all shall ascend three ranks, rewarded with a residence and thousands of gold!" The gigantic axe was lifted up and came striking down on Lu Bu.

"Attack! Once we killed Lu Bu, Prime Minister will certainly reward us greatly! This was the perfect opportunity to achieve something for yourselves, to grant your wives a title and to make your son heir to your titles!" Seeing Xu Huang engaging Lu Bu, Li Dian brandished his blade and joined the fray.

"Hahahaha!" Lu Bu laughed loud and proud. With his trident erect against the sky, he shouted. "Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is here, who dare battle against me?!" An aura belonging to a great and uncultivated ferocious beast was overflowing from Lu Bu.

An scene came into Li Dian. It appeared as if what they were confronting wasn't human at all. Instead, it's a beast, a great and uncultivated ferocious beast that could swallow the Ninth Heaven!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 30 - Battle of Kaiyang (3)

“Zhongkang, go help them out!” Cao Cao’s gaze grew gloomier by the moment. That golden armored general on the walls not only wasn’t tired at all, he even grew fiercer as the battle continued. Xu Huang and Li Dian, even with their guards assisting them, could only defend themselves and was unable to fight back. Much less of killing Lu Bu, they might instead be killed by him.

[TL: Zhongkang = Xu Chu’s courtesy name.]

Due to Lu Bu’s prowess, some of the Cao soldiers that were already on the walls were scared witless and began fleeing toward the siege ladders. With the fleeing Cao soldiers, the siege ladders that was already packed with incoming Cao soldiers was now blocked by their own people. The Cao soldiers on the siege ladders could neither go down nor up. Finally, the ladders was unable to withstand the weight and began to crumble. Immediately, sounds of screaming resounded throughout the place.

“The most valiant general of the era! The most valiant general!” Old Cao’s eyes flickered with radiance. Suddenly, his murderous aura exploded. “So what if he’s the most valiant general of the era?! To block this Cao’s path, even if you’re the most valiant general, I’d sent you to meet the former emperor! Transmit my order, strike the drums, all army, attack! He who kills Lu Bu shall be rewarded with the title of Marquis, his standing shall be in the Nine Ministers!”

Old Cao really placed his bids. Marquis of the Han dynasty was something really valuable. Although they aren’t granted much territory, their bearing wasn’t something insignificant. For instance, Lu Bu was

called the Marquis of Wen even by the people of modern days. The Nine Ministers was also an extremely high standing official position that was only below the Prime Minister.

"The Prime Minister have ordered, he who kills Lu Bu shall be rewarded with the title of Marquis, his standing shall be in the Nine Ministers!" The messengers transmitted the orders with voices one higher than the other. In no time, the order was transmitted through the entire battlefield.

All of a sudden, the Cao army was in an ebullition of fervor. Not only the generals and the officers, even the ordinary soldiers began to have ferocious bloodshot eyes. The will and courage that was broken by Lu Bu's prowess have returned. As the saying goes, human beings will die for riches just as birds will for food. One by one, the Cao soldiers were advancing dauntlessly in wave upon wave toward where Lu Bu stood. It was as if none of them cared for their lives at all.

"Brothers! No matter how strong Lu Bu is, he is but a single human! With all of us, just by giving him a single bite per person will kill him!"

"That's right! The title of Marquis! To receive a title of nobility was no longer a dream now! We too can become nobles!" With such a great reward, certainly there will be brave men to undertake the task. One amongst ten thousand, even if the chance was to be one amongst ten thousand, these soldiers would still throw their lives away for that chance.

"Although riches and honor are good, that's only if you could live and use them!" Lu Bu watched these infuriated Cao soldiers. Instead of cowering in fear, he grew ever more blood thirsty.

“There exist no difference between killing a single man and a thousand men! In that case, let this halberd of mine drink blood to its fullest today!” With the halberd in his arm, a circumference of ten meters around him suddenly burst into emptiness with flesh and blood flying all over. As blood landed on the Poseidon Scale, it radiated a strange beauty under the sunshine.

“Lu Bu, you could stop your savage act for this Xu Chu, Xu Zhongkang, have arrived! Prepare to die!” A robust man of over nine foot have climbed up the city walls. On his hand was a humongous blade. The blade was glittering with murderous intent like the icy snow.

“You again!” Lu Bu remembered the incoming man. This fatty was precisely the fatty that stopped him from killing Xu Huang yesterday. Lu Bu stopped his arrogance. He knew that the strength of this fatty wasn’t low. In the whole world, other than Big Eared Liu’s two brothers and the ugly black faced bastard, there’s only this fatty that was able to withstand a strike from his halberd.

Those arms must have the strength over a thousand jin. That giant blade was certainly no lighter than Lu Bu’s halberd.

“It’s I indeed!” Xu Chu was also full of zest. He too was a valiant general. As for valiant generals, what they cared most of was a worthy opponent! To be an expert means that one must suffer the bitter loneliness of an expert! Originally, there was still a Dian Wei to spar against. However, in the Battle of Wancheng, that big black man died! Thus, Xu Chu have been lonely ever since!

And now, with Lu Bu, Xu Chu rejoiced with exceeding great joy. His giant blade have never been this thirsty for blood before.

“Good!” Lu Bu too love battles. He have long since lost interest in killing those weak soldiers and officers. They were so weak that in his eyes they were like grass straws, cutting down numerous in a strike. Xu Chu, on the other hand, was different. If Lu Bu was to be a fierce tiger, then Xu Chu would be a vicious panther! Both the tiger and the panther are at the pinnacle of the forest food chain! Their encounter was certainly going to be a fierce battle between giants!

“Hou!” From Xu Chu’s mouth came an unhumanly shout. The veins of his arms were bulging. His muscles too were bulging to the extreme. This strike of his was certainly not something that could be taken on easily. Li Dian who was standing on the side was glancing at Xu Chu out of shock.

Fortunately, although Xu Chu was possess first class prowess, he was, like Dian Wei, completely ignorant of the art of war. Thus, he could only become a top guard and not lead soldiers as a general. Otherwise, Xu Chu would certainly be a top general underneath Cao Cao.

“Great blade works!” Lu Bu had an expression of admire. However, that expression soon flash past him and was immediately replaced with killing intent. His halberd soon sway around like a flower. Its path, the giant blade in Xu Chu’s hands.

Lu Bu wanted to meet force with force. He wanted to use his strength to subdue and instill fear upon this vicious panther.

“Hong!” The explosive rumble originating from the meeting of their weapons cause those nearby to have immense pain in their ears. A soldier who was closer to them even had his eardrums burst open and

was bleeding from his ears.

"The force of thirty thousand catties!" Li Dian and Xu Huang glanced at each other. From each other's eyes, they saw astonishment and a sense of fear. Both Li Dian and Xu Huang were standard first class generals. What separated first class generals and the top rated first class generals was a single crucial thing - the force of thirty thousand catties! It was like that those top rated generals have the divine assistance in their arms; every movement they make, they exhibit the force of thirty thousand catties.

"Kakakaka!" The stone platform that Xu Chu and Lu Bu was standing on began to rupture. The splashing cracked stones brought forth rows of blood blossoms as they encountered the face of bystanders.

"Ya!" Xu Chu's giant blade was struck at a standstill against Lu Bu's halberd. Xu Chu widened his eyes and poured all his strength into his arms and then into his giant blade. He wanted to use brute force to overwhelm Lu Bu.

"Battle of strength?!" Lu Bu thought that Xu Chu was thinking lightly of him. He was able to bite wolves to death, massacre the Wuwan and even suppress the eighteen warlords in the Hulao Pass! Other than possessing top quality martial abilities, his strength was also top quality.

The warlords of ancients was able to lift cauldrons. Lu Bu too could do that. It's just that after the Han Dynasty, cauldrons became the symbol of the monarch and was no longer something that regular people could touch. Otherwise, Lu Bu certainly could also lift up a cauldron.

"In that case, come!" Lu Bu's arms also burst forth an astonishing

amount of strength. A contest between the tiger and the panther, a battle bringing rise to a storm!

"En!" The veins in Xu Chu's arms was already bursting to their limit. A single thread of cold sweat have appeared on his face. "This Lu Bu!" Never did he expect that Lu Bu's strength was no weaker than his own. In fact, it even surpasses his own strength.

"This Xu Chu!" Lu Bu was no less shocked than Xu Chu. Throughout his life, no one was able to withstand the strength of his arms. However today he have met an individual who could persist for so long. Alas, that stops now.

Lu Bu eyes flashed. He shouted abruptly. "Rise!" and the halberd came down with even greater force.

"Abominable!" Xu Chu was irritated. He was irritated that he lost to someone in what he was an expert in. For him, that was an extraordinary shame and humiliation.

"Zhongkang, you need not enrage. Xu Huang shall join you!" Xu Huang was a general. Although his martial abilities could not compare with Xu Chu and Lu Bu, he was still decent. His gigantic axe came crushing down at Lu Bu's head.

"Che!" Lu Bu disdained Xu Huang's actions as beneath contempt. He increased the strength in his arms once again. He forcefully break away Xu Chu's giant blade and turned around to face the incoming axe.

“Dang!” Only after moving back a couple steps did Xu Huang managed to stabilize himself.

Lu Bu stood there with an indifferent expression. However, his hands was shaking back and forth by bits and pieces. Blood was flowing from his wrist toward the ground.

He was injured. The God of War was actually injured!

Xu Chu’s situation was no better. His hands were also shaking. Had Xu Huang not assisted him earlier, then perhaps he would have suffered deep humiliation from Lu Bu.

Without moving, Lu Bu wiped away the bloodstain on his hand. However, he was seen by the attentive Li Dian.

“He’s injured!” Cried Li Dian.

“Injured?!” Without exception, everyone was shocked. Lu Bu was the God of War with no match in the era. Even in the Hulao Pass when he was attacked by Liu Bei, Guan Yu and Zhang Fei he only fled. However, he was actually wounded now!

“He’s tired!” Xu Chu knew. He knew that Lu Bu was a top rated first class general that was even more powerful than himself. Thus, it was improbable for Lu Bu to be injured from a single blade of his and a single axe from Xu Huang. The only reason that could happen was that Lu Bu was overly tired and weary.

The Cao army's continuous attack have caused this man who was akin to Gods to be tired. Lu Bu was no longer at his full strength!

"So what if I'm injured?! To kill you all is like killing domesticated chickens and dogs!" After being discovered, Lu Bu decided to stop hiding the fact that he's injured. He teared open some cloth from his gown and began to bind his wound. The esteem of being the God of War was not something that Lu Bu would tarnish.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 31 - Battle of Kaiyang (4)

“Cough cough cough cough!” With great difficulty, Lu Bu resisted the rage in his heart. He began coughing blood repeatedly.

How many years?! How many years have it been since he fought to the death like this?! Ten years?! Twenty years?!

“Lu Bu is near death’s door!” Like Lu Bu, Xu Huang was also gasping for air. He was soon to be unable to lift up his giant axe. The web between his thumb and forefinger have already ruptured. Had it not been his willpower and determination, then perhaps Xu Huang would’ve long since kissed the ground.

Too strong! Way too strong! Even with Xu Chu, Li Dian and over a hundred guards that have survived through hundreds of battles with him, they still suffered immense casualties. Over half the guards have been killed. Li Dian have been gravely wounded. Xu Chu and Xu Huang was about to fall too. Only then did they manage to push Lu Bu this far.

“Again! One more time! Just a bit more and Lu Bu will fall!” With immense struggle, Li Dian stood up. The giant blade that he held was already chipped everywhere from the confrontation with Lu Bu.

After all, the amount of Lu Bu soldiers on the city wall was too few. The Cao troops have already ascended the city wall now. Additionally, Cao Cao wasn’t reassured of Xu Chu and them and decided to dismount the

Ferocious Cavalry and sent them up the walls as reinforcements. The Lu Bu soldiers were submerged by the ever growing Cao reinforcements and forced onto a single corner.

"Lu Bu! Today is the day you die!" Xu Huang spoke with a cold and fierce expression. In order to kill Lu Bu, Xu Huang's personal guards that have followed him for years have basically all been killed. These guards have followed him ever since the Luoyang and Changan campaigns. Not only were they like brothers to him, they were also very capable soldiers. Just from a single one of his guards dying would cause Xu Huang immense heartache! And now, pretty much all of them have died!

Li Dian didn't speak. However, his pair of murderous eyes have already spoke for him - he cannot possibly let Lu Bu flee.

Xu Chu, on the other hand, was a bit gloomy. Although Lu Bu's demise was near, he knew that Lu Bu was much stronger than himself. If he had fought Lu Bu mano a mano, then certainly the one who will be dying today will be him. Now that Lu Bu was about to meet his maker, Xu Chu unexpectedly had a desolate feeling. The curtain drops for yet another hero!

"Hahahaha!" Lu Bu suddenly bursted out in laughter.

"What are you laughing about?!" said Xu Huang with a cold expression.

"I laughed because I thought of some funny things." With great struggle, Lu Bu stood straight. Although he was seriously injured, he would never yield to others. "There existed a magnitude of people in this world who wanted this Lu Bu's demise. I have long since set my

resolution! As a general, my death shall be on the battlefield!"

"Back when I was a soldier of Ding Jianyang, I, Lu Bu, thought that I will die on the expedition against the foreigners. Alas, I hasn't!"

"After killing Ding Jiangyang and started following Dong Zhou, I, Lu Bu, thought that I will die by the hands of the eighteen warlords. Alas, I still hasn't!"

"Having lost the Battle of Changan, I once again thought that I will die by the hands of the Western Liang Heavy Cavalry, by the hands of Li Ru. A major disappointment. Guo Si and Li Jue were gutless like mouse. They dared not even pursue after me!"

"In Xiapi, I once again prepared myself for death. Who would've expected the appearance of my good son in law, Hanyang. This Lu Bu once again didn't die. Ever since my days at Bing Province, this Lu Bu have unwittingly swindled death for countless years!"

Lu Bu grew ever more exhausted with every laugh. However, not a single person dared to act. "Cao Mende have indeed won. He won this war. He won the whole Xu Province. However, he still haven't best this Lu Bu! He is afraid of me!" A trail of blood dripped down the corner of Lu Bu's mouth only to be wiped away by him.

"My lord is afraid of you? Jest! Who do you think you are? You're but a ordinary man! My lord is afraid of you?!" Disdained Xu Huang.

"Is that so?" Lu Bu raised his brows and stared at Xu Huang. "If Cao

Mende wasn't afraid of me, then why must he raise an expedition against my Xu Province? If Cao Mende wasn't afraid of me, then why must he dispatch the Ferocious Cavalry and his army of hundred thousand to pursue after me? He's afraid! He's afraid that I could really take his life?"

Lu Bu set his sight toward Xu Chu. "Xu Zhongkang, you're Cao Mende's personal guard, right? Cao Mende was known for his suspicious disposition, he trust but a few selected individuals. Wherever he goes, he brings you with him. However today he sent you to the battlefield just to kill this Lu Bu! Say, is he afraid of me or not?!"

Xu Chu did not speak. That's because what Lu Bu said was mostly correct. He was standing guard outside the tent in most of the conversations between Cao Cao and Guo Jia. As generals have great hearing, how could he not have heard the conversations. Wasn't the reason why his lord spoke in such a heavy tone precisely because he was afraid of Lu Bu?!

"Regardless of afraid or not, from today henceforth, my lord shall be able to obtain a good night's sleep!" Xu Chu grasped his giant blade. Because of Lu Bu, Cao Cao had already failed to sleep comfortable for multiple nights.

"Marquis of Wen, accept your misfortunes as decreed by fate!" With a deep and low tone, Li Dian spoke. "In your next life, you'd best not set yourself against the Prime Minister!"

"Come! This Lu Bu's head is waiting for you!"

Fifteen rounds. Lu Bu once again killed some twenty guards. His hands

could no longer lift the trident, feeling as if the trident weighted over a thousand jin. “Hanyang ah! Hanyang, I’m afraid that I might not be able to last until your return!” Lu Bu was too tired. He was tired ever since Xiapi. Lu Bu was a lone wolf that belonged in the prairie. However, fate didn’t smile at him. He was born at the wrong time. Had he been born into an era of peace and prosperity, even if it was before Emperor Ling’s era, he would possibly become someone like the Flying General Li Guang or Huo Qubing. He would even have titles bestowed upon him and famed throughout for his military glory. Alas, he was born to the wrong era. Being born into the warring era, he was doomed to only be a hero and never a warlord.

[TL: Emperor Ling of Han reigned China from 168-189AD. Battle of Xiapi = 198 AD. So basically author meant that even if Lu Bu was to be born before his time, he's still do great.]

[TL: Li Guang, died 119BC = A general from the Western Han Dynasty (early Han dynasty) who is famous for stopping the foreigners/barbarians from entering China. Nicknamed the Flying General.]

[TL: Huo Qubing = another famous general from the Western Han Dynasty.]

“It’s the end!” Xu Huang’s axe came crashing down. Even though Lu Bu had armor to defend, to be attacked by an axe in such a close range would have taken his life for certain.

Right at this moment, an arrow came piercing through like a ray of light. Following the arrow was an impatient voice.

“Don’t you dare injure my lord!” The arrow directly landed on Xu Huang’s giant axe, impacting it enough to deviate it a bit. This tiny bit of deviation saved Lu Bu’s life. Sparks came flying as the deviated axe came

down on the Poiseidon Scale.

"Gongtai?!" Lu Bu knew exactly who this voice belonged to - Chen Gong, Chen Gongtai. Chen Gong's archery skills was no less than his own. "Why bother?!" Lu Bu knew that even if Chen Gong came, there's nothing he could possibly do. Regardless of how strong he was, Chen Gong was still a scholar. There's no way that he could possibly match against these generals.

"Milord, please don't panic! Zhang Liao is coming!" In the wake of sounds of fierce battle, another general emerged in atop the city walls.

"Burst the formations, death to all enemies!" It was Gao Shun. Gao Shun's deep and low voice was as calm as always.

"Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, you can't die! If you die, how then could this Zang Ba defeat you?!" This was Zang Ba. He was always thinking about how to defeat Lu Bu but always lose to Lu Bu.

"You all?!" Only then did Lu Bu notice. Black army banners. Black clothings. The Lu Bu army have once again occupied a part of the city wall. "That's right! How could I, Lu Bu, die like this?! This Lu Bu still haven't lost yet! I still have them! I still have them!" Lu Bu once again grasped the trident and shouted toward the sky. "Cao Cao, Cao Mende, I shall be your forever nightmare!" Radiating a golden shine, the tiger have recovered.

"Lu Bu! Lu Bu!" Cao Cao grasped his fist tightly. His fingers have pierced his skin. His hands were bleeding. However, he didn't care for it at all.

Seeing the ever increasing amount of Lu Bu soldiers on the city walls, Cao Cao closed his eyes and said “Beat the gong to recall the troops!”

“Abominable!” having heard the gong signaling retreat, Xu Huang, Li Dian and Xu Chu showed a face full of bitter. Lu Bu’s head was in front of them. They were about to win. But now they have to flee with their tail between their legs. Should they hesitate for a moment longer, then perhaps they could no longer flee. Zhang Liao, Gao Shun and Zang Ba. Neither one of these three are some easy foe. Let alone that, Li Dian was also seriously wounded.

“Withdraw!” Xu Chu protected Li Dian and Xu Huang as they fought while retreating to the edge of the city walls, down the siege ladder and back into the army camp.

Chapter 32 Battle of Kaiyang (5)

"Why are you all here?!" Lu Bu beheaded a retreating Cao soldier, the blood splashed on to his face, but he did not care the slightest. Only after seeing Cao Cao's army retreat did Lu Bu have time to sigh in relief.

Right after he relaxed himself, his severe injuries immediately took its toll on him. Lu Bu stumbles because of the fatigue. Luckily Gao Shun immediately gave him a hand. Otherwise he would have blacked out and fall to the ground.

Lu Bu knew that the four men were guarding the other three city gates. Though the pressure they were facing were not as great as that he was facing just now, but they also clashed with Cao Cao's army led by Yu Jin, Xiahou Dun and Cao Ren. It definitely was not a favorable situation. For these four men to appear here, were the other three gates lost?!

Just as predicted, the usually quiet Gao Shun cried out "My lord, because of my incompetence I've lost the southern gate!" The look on his face was gloomy with a hint of loneliness. However Gao Shun should not be blamed for this. What was the strength of Gao Shun as a general? Besides leading the Formation Breaker, he was specialized in siege warfare! If Gao Shun had the chance to be in charge of the offensive, he would have eighteen ways to take down Kaiyang. Unfortunately, he was in the role of the defender.

"The northern gate fell!" Zhang Liao said with a wry smile. His Bing Province Cavalry should be riding and rushing down the enemy, but now they were wrecked on the city wall.

“My Lord! It is entirely my fault, please take my head!” Zang Ba kneeled down onto the ground. Most of the responsibility of losing Kaiyang fell on Zang Ba’s shoulders. If he had not dismissed the army of 30000 men, if the supplies and if the thousand horses were still here, the situation would be now reversed!

But is there an “if” in this world? That’s the reason why Zang Ba felled so ashamed and kneeled on the ground, hoping that Lu Bu can strike him down to let his heart get a little comfort.

“*Cough cough*!” Lu Bu clutched his chest, coughing continuously. Blood flowed out of his mouth and his hand gripped firmly onto the trident.His eyes eradicated a murderous intent, which makes it look like he could wield the trident at any time.

Zang Ba closed his eyes. Next to him, Gao Shun and Zhang Liao stared anxiously at him. If Lu Bu really intended to kill him, nobody could stop him.

“Stand up!” Lu Bu orders with a calm tone. “In the army of Lu Bu, there are only people who diestanding and no one kneeling while living!”

“What?!” Zang Ba was speechless. He saw Lu Bu’s hand releasing the grip on the trident and can’t help thinking. Does Lu Bu not want to dirty his hand anymore, do I need do it myself?

All right! Zang Ba’s heart was full of bitterness and bowed his fist toward Lu Bu “MyLord please take care, Zang Ba is leaving first!” Zang Ba ran toward the edge of the wall andplanned to jump down.

“Slap!” Suddenly aloud slapping sound could be heard. Lu Bu hit him with a great anger and the force to his face blew Zang Ba to the side.

A mark offive fingers immediately appeared on Zang Ba’s face.

“Lu Bu, you!” Warrior can be killed, but cannot be humiliated. Zang Ba was a general, before surrendering to Lu Bu he was a Warlord in Langya. Even after surrendering to Lu Bu, he still had a rebellious character. That’s why Lu Bu did not put Zang Ba in the ranks of his army. Right now Zang Ba was about to go mad. In the presence of so many people, Lu Bu slapped him in the face. Zang Ba was not afraid of death, but did not tolerate to be insulted.

“So you want to fight with me?!” Lu Bu gave him a cold laugh “Zang Ba, Zang Xuan Gao, I thought you were a strong character. You had grew stupid immediately after Xiapi was breached. You also unexpectedly disbanded your troops. If there was just stupidity, chances still exist to save you, but now it appears that your foolishness knew no bounds!”

“Lu Bu, you dare to humiliate me!”Zang Ba has already forgotten that Lu Bu was his Lord. Rebellious people have a big negative characteristic. They get easily enraged when provoked. His hand had already a firm grip on his weapon’s handle.

“My Lord!” Zhang Liao became anxious. During these critical times, Lu Bu was still abusing his men. Does he wants that the white gate incident reoccurs again?

TL: White gate was the southern gate of Xia Pi and where our story began. Lu Bu was defeated and captured there.

Lu Bu signals Zhang Liao with the eyes to not interfere. “You want to die! See if I, Lu Bu will stop you or not? If your death can let the Cao Cao army retreat, then go and die for me! I will personally cut off your head and bring it down to Cao Cao!”

“I!” Zang Ba calmed down a little, but wasonce again irritated by Lu Bu’s words.

“Who do you think you are Zang Ba, Zang Xuan Gao!?” Lu Bu pointed his finger towards Zang Ba’s nose and started cursing “If the city falls, the responsibility should fall onto the Lord. The Lord should not hide his mistake in front of heaven. If you, Zang Xuan Gao has to commit suicide to atone. Then I, the Commander in Chief should kill my whole families to atone!”

Lu Bu stood up and looked at the remaining of his wounded army and suddenly kneeled down on one knee.

“My Lord?!” Zhang Liao was stunned.

“No, absolutely not!” Gao Shun was speechless.

“Lu Bu? Lu Fengxian?!” said Zang Ba who was originally enraged had also calmed down.

“Fengxian, why would you go this far!” Chen Gong sighed, but did not stop him.

“Brothers, you campaign with me, from Jiuyuan to Luoyang, from beyond the Great Wall to the Central Plains. We returned to Jizhou, Bingzhou and fought in Yanzhou. Now we are under siege in Xuzhou! It cannot be said that I, Lu Bu had many successful ambition, but I, Lu Bu am not indebt to anyone.I executed Ding Yuan because I was publicly known to be his son, but was treated like a slave. A registrar! I sat there and worked as a registrar for seven years! How many seven years can be wasted in my life?!”

TL: Ding Yuan employed Lu Bu as a registrar before Dong Zhuo convinced Lu Bu to betray him.

“Dong Zhuo? He bestowed upon me both my Red Hare and wealth. I beheaded him not only because of my wife, Madame Ren. The world thinks that I, Lu Bu fell in the honey trap of Wang Yun. But all of you know that if a man can’t even protect his wife, he should not call him a man. People can curse me of double crossing. They can call me slave of three surnames. I will accept everything as long as I Lu Bu can have a fulfilling life. I don’t care what the rest of the world badmouths about me! ”

TL: Red Hare was his horse.

“But towards you all, I am greatly indebt! You campaigned with me, had numerous casualties but never regrets. Even when Wei Xu Hou, Cheng Song Xian, Hao Meng Chen Deng and Chen Gui turned their back on me, you allstayed with me!”

“When Xia Pi was breached, as long as you surrender to Cao Mengde, he would forgive you hence his heart loved talents. But you didn’t! You did not surrender, but instead broke out with me! And I? I could bring forth neither wealth, title nor a future to you all. I felt guilt!”Lu Bu looked

over them and put all the soldiers within sight in his heart.The soldier Zhang Yu, had followed him since his father. He survived Bingzhou, Jizhou, Luoyang and Chang'an! These are all sad places for Zhang Yu, since every one of his family died except him. His father and three brothers all perished in the battlefield.

Zhang Yu's childish face was covered in blood. He was only fourteen years old, but is already an experienced soldier! Lu Bu didn't know whether he should cry or laugh.

"Now Kaiyang will be breached, but there is still a chance! If you want to go, the gate might not be able to open, but you can climb down the ladders the Cao army left and arrive at the Cao camp. I can also write you a letter. Cao Mengde wants my life and if I die, he will give me some face and spare you!" Lu Bu said with a smile, like a dying person preparing for the general affair of his funeral.

"My Lord we won't go! Zhang Liao kneeled down, his head knocking against the floor and tears in his eyes.

"My Lord if you die, Gao Shun won't live either! "His eyes fixed on Lu Bu and also kneeled down.

"Follow the general to death!" An old soldier of Bingzhou shouted. One of his arm was already gone and was tied in a knot.The blood has spread over his clothes, his face was pale, but his voice was loud and clear.

"If the general die, we die!" A soldier yelled holding a broken sword.

“General, we won’t leave!” If we wanted to go, we would have left already! ”

“Right, we won’t leave! Death is just a big a scar. It is not a big deal, even though dead, we must follow the general!”

The fourteen year old Zhang Yu silently walked to the front and points towards his body where a thin rope holds a circle of small bones. “General, my father has died, my brothers are dead! Zhang Yu has nowhere to go!”

“Follow the general to death!” Follow the general to death!” The voices become louder and louder, bigger and bigger.

“You all!” Lu Bu, the man who would not shed tears even when he bleeds had begun to get teary eyes! How familiar these screams were. They screamed the same words as when Lu Bu was stationedbeyond the Great Wall and made his pronouncement, that he will achieve victory and become the Flying General of Han.

Chapter 33 A Turn for the Better (1)

“Follow the General to death, follow the General to death!”

Continuous shouts coming from atop Kaiyang had Cao Cao so enraged that he smashed his favorite jade marbles to the floor and shatters it to pieces.

TL: In ancient China, rich people like to play with 2 big marbles in their hand. Don’t ask me why…

“My Lord, please calm yourself!” Guo Jia instantly put down his wine glass and felt helpless in this situations. He knew that nothing could stop his Lord once he got angry and that his Lord’s chronicle headache would show up.

As Guo Jia expected, Cao Cao held his head and started shouting “Pain! So much Pain!”

“My Lord!” Guo Jia felt helpless and escorted Cao Cao to his bed.

“Ah, Fengxiao, why are there so many people following Lu Fengxian even though he is stuck in this situation? Is it true that I, as a leader am beneath him?“ Cao Cao became a little emotional and began to think what would have happened if he changed his position with Lu Bu. He suspected that he would’ve been be sold out by others already. During his first campaign against Xu Province, before he even suffers any defeat, his Yan Province was already sold out by others under him. Zhang Miao and Chen Gong gave Yan Province to Lu Bu. Had it not been that his

family roots was much stronger than Lu Bu's and that Lu Bu was not as greedy as him, then perhaps the person owning the two provinces right now would be Lu Bu instead.

However it was different for Lu Bu. Even though Wei Xu and Song Xian betrayed him and caused him to lose Xiapi, both of them eventually rejoined him. With less than three thousand soldiers combined, these two men managed to stop Cao Cao's hundred thousand strong army from exiting Xiapi for a whole ten hours.

Guo Jia shook his head and said: "My Lord, you are worrying too much. In terms of reputation, you are the descendent of the Grand Commandant Cao Song. You had led an expedition against the Yellow Turbans, fought against Dong Zhuo and saved the Emperor. Furthermore, you are now the Prime Minister! In contrast, Lu Bu is just a nobody from Bing Province. Additional, he has betrayed both his foster fathers Ding Yuan and Dong Zhuo. That is the reason why he is called the Slave of Three Surnames."

TLC: Cao Song is Cao Cao's father.

TL: In late Eastern Han dynasty, Grand Commandant is the highest rank of military officers but has no real power. TL: The Yellow Turbans is a civilwar started by farmers in late Eastern Han Dynasty.

"Slave of Three Surnames?" Old Cao laughed. It was a nickname through by that big eared Liu's illiterate black faced brother. His insulting ability was indeed profound. Had it been Old Cao, the most he could come up with would be to call Lu Bu disloyal and unfilial.

"Although Lu Bu is currently the General Who Pacifies the East and the

Governor of Xu Province, once we conquered Kaiyang, he would become nothing!" Guo Jia continued "As for our military forces, we have an army of a hundred thousand strong. For infantries we have the Qing Province Elites Troops. For cavalries we have the Ferocious Cavalry. As for Lu Bu, although he has the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, there are not many left! My Lord, you control Yan Province and soon the Yu Province. Additional, with the exception of Kaiyang and Guangling, Xu Province was also yours. Lu Bu has already become a trapped beast."

"Kaiyang! Guangling?!" Kaiyang was soon to fall. However, Guangling was still not under his control. "Chen family! The father and son of the Chen family that were controlling Guangling were not easy to deal with." Guangling was like a country within a country. Even though the family had bowed to Cao Cao and became his subordinates, Cao Cao's influence does not reach inside the city.

"Are you thinking about Chen Deng and his son?" Guo Jia smile. "It was not even worth to consider them as threats. As long as my Lord stays unbeaten, they would never betray you. Once we unify the world, the father and son can be easily be crushed. Furthermore, didn't the old head of the Chen family personally go to Xudu to request to serve the Emperor!"

TLC: In case you forgot, After finding the old capital Luoyang ravaged by war, Cao moved the imperial court and Emperor Xian to Xudu in 196. So basically Old Chen went to Cao Cao to say he wanna serve the emperor...aka, said he will work for Cao Cao.

"The head of Chen family?" Cao Cao gave a wry smile and said "He is already dead!"

“Dead?!” Guo Jia was shocked. He knew that Lu Bu broke through the White Gate Tower, he did not know that the old head of the Chen died there.

“Yes, he is dead! It was I, Cao Mengde who personally pushed him to his death.” Cao Cao answered with a self mocking smile. There was no other way. Lu Bu rushed up to kill him and he would be dead if he was a step late.

“My Lord, how many people knew about this?!” Guo Jia asked anxiously.

“Not many, only you, me, Miaocai and Hou Cheng who is already dead. Oh right, there’s also Lu Bu who is on the walls of Kaiyang!” Cao Cao’s facial color turned ugly again.

“Xu Province soldiers, the soldiers said that the one defending Kaiyang were Xu Province soldiers. They were all wearing Guangling army uniforms! When Chen Deng was defeated, according to Lu Bu’s character, he would have executed Chen Deng instantly. But he didn’t!” Guo Jia surprisingly said. “Had Chen Deng asked my Lord about his father?!”

Cao Cao answered “He had. After his defeated, I had him return home to recover. That was when he inquired about his father. I had casually answered that Lu Bu killed him.”

“And then?” Guo Jia wanted to get to the root of this problem.

“Then, Chen Deng asked me about his father last words.” Cao Cao was reluctant to tell him his father’s last words because he would lose face

greatly if it would be known. That's why he avoided answering Chen Deng's question.

"Foolish, oh my foolish Lord!" Guo Jia suddenly shouted up. "Guangling would rebel and our Xu Province would never be in peace."

"Fengxiao, do not scare me!" Cao Cao became a little nervous. He did not intend to kill Chen Gui. It was just that at that time he could not control himself.

"My Lord, oh my Lord. If Chen Gui was still alive, his family would never betray us. He knew that if his family wanted to gain power and influence, there are only two ways. One is to become an independent warlord and build his own territory. The other way is to become the vassal of one of the warlords and climb onto his war chariot. According to the Chen family's strength, it was enough to become independent. Tao Qian, Lu Bu and the big eared Liu, none of them can match the Chen family's reputation in Xu Province. But the Chen family did not declare independence and instead bowed before them. Why is that? It is because they knew that it's easy to become warlords, but if they were to be defeated then the Chen family would perish. That's why Chen family sold out Lu Bu so easily. They sacrificed the entire Xu Province in exchange for their own interest! When my lord has unified the world, how could you not reward the Chen family? At that time, it would practically be impossible for the Chen family not to gain immense wealth!"Guo Jia analyzed.

"Is there any difference now? Chen Gui might be dead, but the Chen family still exists!" Cao Cao pondered. "Won't they still be bound to the Cao army's war chariot?" Not only that, he will likely present upon the Chen family with even more grace because of his guilt.

“Although the Chen family still exists, but without Chen Gui behind it, the current head, the hot headed Chen Deng does not think that way!” Guo Jia gave a wry smile and shook his head.

“Before Chen Deng became the head of Chen family, he was renowned for his filial piety in Xu Province. There was a year when Chen Gui was severely ill. Chen Deng traveled over half the land to find him the best doctors. He even took especially care when he brewed the medicine and looked after his father carefully day and night.” Guo Jia explained.

“He’s such a filial son?” Cao Cao said annoyed. Normally, it would be a good thing to Cao Cao if Chen Deng was a filial son. As long as Chen Gui was in Xudu, Chen Deng would never cause any trouble. On the contrary he would pay more effort for Cao Cao’s cause. Historically, Chen Deng was an important minister of Cao Wei. The imperial examination system, Nine Grades Official Selection was implemented by him.

TLC: Cao Wei referred to Cao Cao’s state of Wei. You should know if you play dynasty warriors.

And now, Chen Gui was killed by Old Cao. It would be strange if Chen Deng were to not try to avenge his father.

Before Old Cao could prepare himself, a messenger arrived from Xiapi. “Reporting! Emergency message from Xiapi! Chen Deng of Guangling is leading an army of twenty thousand and arrived in front of Xiapi’s gates. General Che Zhou requests immediate reinforcements!”

“Under which banner is Chen Deng leading his army?” Guo Jia asked.

“They are all wearing white stripes. They intended to take revenge on the Prime Minister for killing their previous head.” The messenger replied.

“My headache!” Cao Cao held his head and screamed again.

Chapter 34 Turning point (2)

“Retreat?!” Old Cao felt slightly bitter. Xu Province would fall as soon as Lu Bu perished from this world. He had never expected that Lu Bu would manage a breakthrough. I really should have ended your life in Kaiyang! Cao Cao thought.

He did not expect that his unintentional act would push down old Chen and provoke an invasion of a Chen army. Furthermore, right now it was attacking Xia Pi.

If he pulled out now, Lu Bu would be able to escape. It was like letting calamity breed in the future, just like releasing a tiger back to the mountain. Then all of his efforts until now would vanish to nothing like a broken bubble. His childhood friend Yuan Benchu* was about to conquer Liao Dong in the north before long. As soon as Yuan Benchu achieved this goal, he would aim to swallow up Cao Cao’s territory Yan Province.

TL: Benchu is the courtesy name of Yuan Shao, a famous warlord in late Eastern Han dynasty.

If he let Lu Bu escape, he will be stuck between a rock and a hard place.

I am not willing to retreat!

“We cannot pull out!”Guo Jia said while shaking his head. ”Though Chen Deng has besieged Xia Pi, it will take a while before he can breach the city.” There are military supplies for one hundred thousand soldiers restored in Xia Pi. But if the city fell, Old Cao would have to go back with his pants down!

“Tomorrow, we have to conquer Kaiyang tomorrow!” Cao Cao issued the order after awakening from his thoughts.

Tonight, many people could not close their eyes.

On the wall of Kaiyang, Lu Bu’s army had been fully prepared to fight to death tomorrow.

Under the wall, Cao Cao was intended to kill Lu Bu no matter how much casualty it was going to cost him. After which Cao’s army would go back to Xia Pi and attack Guangling.

”The Cao army is breaking camp?!” Zhang Liao got confused by the big moves of the army under the wall. He immediately reported the Cao army’s movement to Lu Bu.

“There are some changes to the camp of Cao army? Are they leaving?!”Lu Bu was surprised as well. What the hell is Cao Cao going to do? Is he really leaving or…?

If it was true that Cao Cao decided not to attack Kaiyang, the rest of the Lu Bu army would be ecstatic.

“Wait a second!” Only Chen Gong’s face became serious, “There must be some problems happening in the rear of the Cao army!” Chen Gong analysed. ”The situation in Xu Province has become soothed after the Cao army took down Xia Pi. There are only two possible explanations to the disturbing factors in the rear of his army!”

“What are the two possible explanations?” Lu Bu asked in doubt.

“The first explanation is that Yuan Shao landed in the harbour of Mengjing or is invading from the direction of Puyang. In that cause, the Cao army has to retreat! That means, that the whole Hebei was pacified by Yuan Benchu. What is now left is the fight of supremacy between Cao Cao and Yuan Shao and perhaps we have a slim chance of surviving! Before Cao Cao besieged Xia Pi, Yuan Shao was not able to crush Hebei or else Cao Cao wouldn’t march his army without worry to Xu Province!” If at that time Yuan Shao had conquered Hebei, it was highly possible that Cao Cao and Lu Bu might have become allies now.

“The second reason!” Chen Gong did not even finish his sentence before Lu Bu knew the answer. “Food supplies!”

“Exactly, it’s the food supplies! Before an army marches, the food supplies need to move ahead! There is an army of a hundred thousand, but it needs a lot of food to sustain it. Therefore, Cao Cao would certainly prepare his food supplies on the rear. Before laying siege to Xia Pi they might have been stored near Xia Pi, but after conquering Xia Pi they will certainly be stored inside!” Chen Gong declared.

“Someone is attacking Xia Pi?!” Gao Shun, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba all looked puzzled. Inside Xu Province, except Lu Bu who else would invade Xia Pi? Even Lu Bu has no more than a several thousand soldiers right now.

“Yes, there is such a force that can!” Chen Gong replied.

“Gongtai, you are talking about him?!” Lu Bu’s eyes lit up.

“Exactly, I am talking about Chen Deng of Guangling!” Chen Gong replied “My lord, the conversation you had on the plain has created an opportunity for our survival!”

“So, Chen Deng is taking revenge for his father?!” declared Lu Bu while squinting his eyes. Lu Bu released Cheng Deng on the plain not because he wanted Chen Deng to save him in the future. He did not bother to kill him because he wanted Chen Deng to see what kind of person his father and he choose to serve was. What benefits Cao Mengde can give them!

“Tomorrow is the time for the decisive battle!” Lu Bu sighed. He knew that even though Old Cao was getting attacked from behind, he would absolutely not give up this opportunity to kill Lu Bu.

“Gongtai, I will go and inspect the city defence!” Lu Bu stood up while talking.

“Alright!” Chen Gong watched Lu Bu leaving. He knew that there were not so many defenders left in Kaiyang. Tomorrow, the Cao army would do total assault and they would not stop until they killed Lu Bu. His Lord was going on a walk to have some fresh air and to get some time without being disturbed.

In fact, there were times when Chen Gong was asking himself, is it worth it to follow Lu Bu? Sometimes he was confused by Lu Bu’s behaviour. When Cheng Gong was a part of Hao Meng’s betrayal, Chen Gong thought that Lu Bu would execute him. Because Lu Bu, who was cold hearted, would never let go of traitors, but he didn’t behead Chen

Gong! Lu Bu instead gave him a look. Did his eyes have doubts? Did he lose his confidence in Cheng Gong? It looked more like loneliness.

Did Lu Bu regard him as family? Chen Gong had only seen this look on Lu Bu's face when Lu Bu was with his family.

Exactly because of these kinds of looks, Chen Gong had followed Lu Bu until now.

Lu Bu walked out of the city tower and watched how his soldiers collapsed on the floor. They all did a great job. They were Lu Bu's loyal soldiers and his brothers-in-arm. Kaiyang's nights were very cold. Lu Bu noticed that most soldiers had already fallen asleep since they were too tired. During the day, they had exhausted themselves with the endless battle spirit. They were shivering while sleeping in the cold.

"Wush!" Lu Bu took down his cloak and gave it as blanket to some teenagers who still had childish faces. He could only do this much for them.

"Nhh!" At corner of the city wall there came an extremely painful moan. Lu Bu went to have a look and saw that it was the man who lost his arm during the day. The cold wind which blew on his wounded arm created an extreme pain, but he did not make any loud sounds in fear of affecting his brothers' rest.

"Is it painful?!" Lu Bu asked while kneeling down.

"So painful!"The men replied back unconsciously. He suddenly saw that

it was Lu Bu and tried to kneel down, but was prevented by Lu Bu.

"I, Lu Bu, ask for your forgiveness!" Lu Bu's eyes became moist. He turned his head to not let his tears fall down. "Go to the city tower and rest! Tomorrow is our final battle!"

"Right or wrong, success or failure, we will let the future generation decide! Tomorrow we will show Cao Mengde what I, Lu Bu treasure the most in my life!" declared Lu Bu with great fighting spirit and determination.

"Shing!" In Kaiyang city, most residents had already escaped. At night it was a like a ghost town without any life. Suddenly a huge beam of golden light fell from the sky.

"Bang!" A crashing sound appeared on the place where the sky shone. *Cough Cough* Liu Mang cried with a wry smile on his face "Shit I messed up!"

TL: The author made a mistake imo, he should be naked and say: "I. AM. BACK.!" Arny style!

Clip Clop Clip Clop more and more horses hoof sounds rang in this ghostly abandoned city.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 35 - Cavalry Cavalry

The sun slowly rose up the sky. The Cao troops was already preparing for breakfast. Today was the final day. They absolutely had to capture Kaiyang and return to reinforce Xiapi.

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian. This Cao Mende shall obtain your head!” Having tortured by his headache for the whole night, Cao Cao was unable to obtain a good night’s sleep. Right now, he wanted to kill someone really bad.

“Transmit my orders. Tell the troops to prepare for battle. After a single incense worth of time, we shall besiege the city with all our might. He who kills a Lu Bu soldier shall be rewarded ten gold, five mu of fields and a promotion in rank.” The remaining Lu Bu soldiers are the elite amongst the elites. They are very difficult to kill. Their every move and every stroke are meant to kill. They all knew the fastest and the most efficient ways to kill!

[TL: mu = classification for area of fields, it is equal to 1/15 of a hectare. 1 hectare is 2.471 acres. so…. they’ll be rewarded with 0.8367 acres of land that’s good for farming.]

“He who kills a Lu Bu general shall be rewarded with a mansion, ten beautiful women, a hundred gold and three promotions in rank!”

“He who kills Lu Bu shall be rewarded with the title of Marquis, his standing shall be in the Nine Ministers and he will be granted a general!”

Cao Cao went all in. He laid down grand rewards to kill Lu Bu.

"The Prime Minister have ordered. All army, prepare to engage. In a single incense worth of time, we are to besiege the city with all our might. He who kills a Lu Bu soldier shall be rewarded ten gold, five mu of fields and a promotion in rank. He who kills a Lu Bu general shall be rewarded with a mansion, ten beautiful women, a hundred gold and three promotions in rank. He who kills Lu Bu shall be rewarded with the title of Marquis, his standing shall be in the Nine Ministers and he will be granted a general!" One by one, the order was transmitted to the whole army. All the Cao generals were sharpening their weapons and wiping their hands. They all wanted to achieve greatness. They all wanted to be bestowed the title of Marquis.

Only Xu Chu was desolate. In today's battle, his lord have already given the death decree. Lu Bu will certainly die and he will lose another worthy adversary.

"Kakakaka!" A sound of door opening that causes one to be uncomfortable. The city of Kaiyang. The city that that was filled with corpses. The frontal gate of the city that the Cao army was unable to break through even after spending twenty thousand troops have suddenly opened. A general donned in a golden armor and holding a trident came out on his horse.

"Lu Bu?!" Just like how Lu Bu could instantly recognize Cao Cao, Cao Cao could also instantly recognize Lu Bu.

"Did he decide to surrender seeing that he's in a plight with no way out?!" Cao Cao laughed. Gates in the ancient times are very difficult to close once they're open. Once opened, it'll take a long time to close it.

This amount of time was certainly enough for his army to rush past. Cao Cao had initially thought that he had to fight a siege battle. However, it appears that it would just be an annihilation battle now.

"Surrender? Impossible!" Guo Jia shook his feather fan. His wine had been hidden away by Old Cao. A Guo Jia without his wine was without doubt unhappy. "If he wanted to surrender, he would've done it a long time ago!"

"Then what did he plan to do?!" asked Cao Cao.

"He most likely planned to fight to the death!" replied Xu Chu. Xu Chu was also a general who's at the pinnacle of first class. Thus, he knew of the loneliness of a general who belonged to the same pinnacle as himself - the bearing of rather die standing than to live kneeling.

"Fight to the death?!" Cao Cao also understood. This was indeed Lu Bu's style. Lu Bu had once dared to attack the barracks of the eighteen warlords with his mere three thousand Bing Province Heavy Cavalries. Now that Kaiyang's capture was just a matter of time, Lu Bu would rather exit the city and fight to the death.

Sure enough, Lu Bu held his trident against the sky and shouted toward Cao Cao. "Cao Mende! Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is here! Come forward and let's chat!"

"My lord, don't go!" Guo Jia was concerned about Lu Bu's actions. Was this man really the man who was known as the God of War? Was he really planning to fight to the death? Or was he planning something else? Just like how generals can't understand Guo Jia's stratagems, he too cannot

understand the thinkings of generals like Lu Bu.

What Guo Jia was thinking of was whether or not this was a trap set up by Lu Bu. A trap to capture Cao Cao when he goes up to talk.

“Fengxiao, you needn’t be so alarm. With Zhongkang here, Lu Bu cannot possibly injury even my hair!” Cao Cao also knew what Guo Jia was thinking of. However, he wasn’t afraid. That’s because he knew that Lu Bu wasn’t the sort who will break faith and kill an enemy’s commander in talks in front of the whole army.

Before Guo Jia could respond, Cao Cao had already brought Xu Chu and some others and went forward on their horses.

“Mende, how’s Xiapi?!” asked Lu Bu plainly.

Had Lu Bu also guessed the situation at Xiapi? Cao Cao wasn’t surprised. That’s because in Lu Bu’s camp, there’s the top advisor Chen Gong. If Chen Gong can’t guess that, then Cao Cao would’ve been surprised instead. Furthermore, Old Cao believe that Chen Gong played a major role in Chen Deng’s revolt.

“Can’t you tell that we’re preparing to go back?!” said Cao Cao as if it was an ordinary chat.

“You really wanted to kill this Lu Bu that badly?!” Lu Bu stopped beating around the bush and asked directly.

Cao Cao was also straightforward. “Cao cannot have a good night’s sleep if Fengxian doesn’t die!”

“Hahahaha, so, actually, as it turns out, Mengde you fears me so!” laughed Lu Bu.

“This isn’t fear?!” said Cao Cao. “I have long said, there exists but a select few in the whole world that could make this Cao cast sidelong glances. You, Lu Bu, are one of them. You are suited for being a soul of an army but aren’t suited for being the lord of a state! It wasn’t that I had to make things difficult for you, it’s just that you blocked my path! Therefore you had to die!” Cao Cao looked at Lu Bu straight in the eye with an overwhelming killing intent.

“Blocked your path?!” Mumbled Lu Bu. “Sure enough, like Gongtai said, Mengde, your ambition was certainly not small!”

“Chen Gong?!”

“Well, Mengde ah, since you wanted my life, come take it! I heard that you even brought your elite Ferocious Cavalry with you. A whole three thousand heavy cavalries! I suspect you personally prepared that for this Lu Bu?!” laughed Lu Bu.

Cao Cao didn’t respond. Cao Cao indeed established the Ferocious Cavalry after having suffered defeat in the hands of Lu Bu’s Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Their purpose was solely to defeat the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. And thus, he brought them with him when he decided to attack Xu Province.

“Come Mengde! Use your most elite soldiers to have a final settlement with this Lu Bu!” Using his trident, Lu Bu pointed toward the three

thousand heavy cavalries behind Cao Cao.

"To die at the hands of the Ferocious Cavalry, Fengxian, that's a proper burial for you!" Cao Cao turned his horse around and returned to his army. Three thousand Ferocious Cavalry resounded the earth as they came forward.

The leading general was Cao Chun. In the past couple days of siege, the Ferocious Cavalry was unable to do anything. This had caused Cao Chun to be impatient to the extreme. And now the fate smiled at him. To actually be able to fight the final battle, Cao Chun was extremely happy. In his view, he believed Lu Bu to have nothing left. Even if his troops were all elites, they're only infantries. How could the two legged soldiers possibly win against the four legged cavalries?

Not to mention the Ferocious Cavalry was an army of heavy cavalries. Although they aren't suited for siege warfare, they're overwhelming on the plains. Even if their enemies were ten times their amount, Cao Chun was still certain that he would be able to rip their enemies to shreds.

"Follow my lead!" shouted Cao Chun. "Sweep everything before us!" The Ferocious Cavalry began their charge, trembling the earth and the bodies of everyone present.

"This is the Ferocious Cavalry?! This is the strength of Heavy Cavalries?!" Although Guo Jia knew of the elite Ferocious Cavalry, he had never seen them in battle. Seeing the dust storm brought forth by the cavalries as well as that kind of grandeur, Guo Jia could not help but widen his eyes in

shock.

"The victor was determined!" Cao Cao started laughing out loud. The Ferocious Cavalry have never once lost a battle on the open fields. Even if they're against other Heavy Cavalries, Cao Cao believed that his Ferocious Cavalry would certainly not lose against them.

"Something's amiss!" Xu Chu suddenly shook his head and began to feel a little worried.

"What's wrong? Zhongkang?!" inquired Cao Cao while smiling. "For us to kill Lu Bu, Zhongkang have greatly contributed. If it wasn't for you wounding this fierce tiger, how could we possibly be able to force him out?!"

Xu Chu did not respond to Cao Cao's complement. Instead, he muttered. "the sound of activities are amiss!"

"My lord! I need to see my lord! Get out of the way!" A general donned in armor suddenly burst into the army tent. Wasn't this man Xu Huang?

"Gongming?" Seeing the incoming person to be Xu Huang, Cao Cao had his guards let him pass. "We were just discussing the contributions in killing Lu Bu. Gongming, you have also contributed greatly!"

"No, no. My lord! It's not regarding this!" Xu Huang quickly spoke. "these sounds of activities… there's heavy cavalries in the vicinity!"

"Heavy cavalries? You meant the Ferocious Cavalry?! The Ferocious

Cavalry are the elite amongst the elites, they're comparable with the Western Liang Heavy Cavalry that Dong Zhou had!" Xu Huang was formerly a subordinate of Yang Feng. Thus, he was naturally very familiar with the Western Liang Heavy Cavalry.

[TL: Yang Feng was a cavalry general under Dong Zhou who was later defeated by Cao Cao. Xu Huang joined Cao's camp after that.]

"Is it really my lord's Ferocious Cavalry?!" doubted Xu Huang. "My lord, didn't you only brought with you three thousand Ferocious Cavalry? How could they possibly have the grandeur of nearly ten thousand?!"

"Ten thousand?!" Cao Cao was also in doubt.

"My lord, please listen to the trembling of the earth. This is obviously the sound of ten thousand cavalries in the vicinity!" replied Xu Huang.

"Ten thousand cavalries?!" Cao Cao grew even more confused.

"That's right! It's certainly ten thousand cavalries!" Xu Chu came to it too."These sounds of activities was too large, too great! It's impossible for it to be originated from just the Ferocious Cavalry! There's other cavalries in the vicinity!"

"There's other cavalries other than our Ferocious Cavalry?!" Immediately, Cao Cao knew that the situation was bad. If it was like what Xu Huang and Xu Chu said that there's ten thousand cavalries in the vicinity, then taking into consideration of the three thousand Ferocious Cavalry, there's still seven thousand cavalries in the vicinity that wasn't his troops!

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian. This Cao Chun had set to obtain thy head! After reaching the realms of the dead, don’t forget to tell Yama that it is I who sent you there!” As the distance from Lu Bu grew ever closer, Cao Chun eyes grew with ever more malevolent.

“Hehe. There are numerous people who wanted my life. Amongst them, who are you Cao Chun?!” With a confident smile, Lu Bu viewed the magnificent army with thousands of men and horses as if they were nothing.

“Kakakaka!” The gates of Kaiyang have all been opened. Under the reflection of the sun, the armors were glistering. One by one, horses came running out from within the city as if there was no end. Mounted atop the horses were ferocious soldiers donned in heavy armor and holding long spears.

“Cavalries?!” Cao Chun was abruptly startled. “Where did these cavalries came from?!”

Just like this, two powerful currents of steel collided with each other.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 36 - Casualties of the Cao Army (1)

“Hungry. Starving.” Outside of Kaiyang, in the current of steel, an odor reeking of blood started spreading out.

“The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry troops?!” Old Cao abruptly ran to the observation platform. His eyes were almost popped out in shock. “Where did the cavalry came from?! Where did the horses came from?!” Lu Bu didn’t take a single horse with him when he fled from Xiapi. Majority of the war horses from Kaiyang was already pulled by Lu Bu to Xiapi. The remaining small amount of war horses were given away by Zang Ba. How could there possibly be all these horses now?!

An ocean of cavalries wider than the eye can see.

“Two horses per man, five thousand horses, three thousand cavalries?!” Xu Huang was certainly above all other Cao generals when it comes to cavalries. With a single view, he could already tell the situation.

“Three thousand cavalries?!” Only through great difficulty did Old Cao managed to grow a cavalry unit of five thousand. Now, more than half of these cavalries were here in Xu Province. They are precisely the three thousand Ferocious Cavalry. Cao Cao would be distressed to lose even a single one of them. That’s because a single one of these Ferocious Cavalry soldier cost as much as a whole infantry unit, a unit of heavy infantries.

And now, Lu Bu who was once a cornered beast had unexpectedly brought forth three thousand cavalries out of Kaiyang, the city that was

soon to fall. And they're heavy cavalries! Five thousand war horses! Cao Cao could tell that these five thousand war horses are not some inferior horses but instead genuine good horses!

Old Cao felt as if he was scammed. The opposing side was also heavy cavalries. Even if the Ferocious Cavalry are elites, there's certainly still going to be casualties from the engagement against other cavalries. Not to mention, the opposing cavalries are their old enemy, the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry.

Say, if you Lu Bu had the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry in your hand, then you should've broken out of Kaiyang earlier. Instead you had to go and play a defensive battle in Kaiyang. Now that you cannot stop the city from being captured, you decided to play a final decisive battle. While Lu Bu you had lost Xu Province, Xiapi and was willing to put all your reserve in this major battle, Old Cao cannot afford to do that. These three thousand Ferocious Cavalry was as expensive as an army of a hundred thousand. If he were to lose them in this battle, then Old Cao would certainly grieve till death.

"Bing Province Wolf Cavalry?!" Cao Chun had already led the charge with the Ferocious Cavalry. Although he was surprised, he cannot stop. What the cavalries needed was high mobility. Only through high running could they annihilate their enemies with their speed.

He who is more brave shall win when met with his rival! This was a confrontation between two cavalries.

"Follow my lead! Sweep everything before us!" shouted Cao Chun. The Ferocious Cavalry troops that were following him too began to shout vigorously. Their horses began to increase their speed and further

increase their speed and even further. They wanted to pulverize the enemies in front of them.

"So what if they're the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry! Today, I, Cao Chun, shall let you know that the number one cavalry unit in the world is the Ferocious Cavalry! Lu Fengxian, prepare yourself!" said Cao Chun as he took the lead and advance toward Lu Bu.

"Prepare? Heh. It should be you Cao Chun and Cao Cao who should prepare yourselves! " Lu Bu raised his trident against the sky and shouted. "Brothers, show these women what exactly our Bing Province Wolf Cavalry is made out of! Follow after me!"

"Hungry! Starving!" A group of starving wolves charged into the likewise battle-ready Ferocious Cavalry.

"Spears!" With a shout, Zhang Liao gave off an order and the spears that was originally pointed toward the ground were simultaneously faced forward. "Charge!"

"Pulverize them!" With an ominous glint on his face, Cao Cao began to squeeze his horse tighter.

[TL: I found out squeezing horse is the way to make horses run… not kicking them… oops]

"Sha!!!!"

The two currents of steel collided into each other.

The strength of cavalries was determined by their impacting prowess. The first row of the Ferocious Cavalry had collided with the first row of Bing Province Wolf Cavalry. Like the rest of the heavy cavalries in this era, the Ferocious Cavalry soldiers were armed with blades and spears. However, upon colliding with the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, they noticed that their spears were a whole segment shorter than their enemy's.

As the saying goes, the longer weapon wins the fight. The vanguards of the Ferocious Cavalry met with some rather unlucky fates.

"Die!" These Bing Province Wolf Cavalry Soldiers who have been besieged and attacked by the Cao troops all this time have kept within their stomach an immense amount of anger. Now that they have their horses, armors and spears, they were finally able to express their anger.

With great enthusiasm, they thrust their spears toward the Ferocious Cavalry.

"Pu pu pu!" One by one, sounds of armors being pierced through resounded through the battlefield. There were even some Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers that were going so fast that they pierced through two or even three Ferocious Cavalry soldiers at once.

"Close engagement!" Cao Chun noticed the prowess of the spears that the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry possess and decided to tell his troops to engage in a closer range. No matter how strong the spears are, their usage is limited to long range. Once the distance between them decreased, the spears would only become obstructions. At that time, the Ferocious Cavalry would have the whole battle.

“Raise shield!” Zhang Liao shouted again. Only now did Cao Chun notice that attached behind every Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldier was a large shield. Those shields were shining brightly under the sun. It was obvious that they were of metal construction. Such large shields, don’t they know that cavalry would no longer be mobile with those?!

Cavalry. Cavalry are known as cavalry due to their high speed movements. Once the rider wears too much armor or too heavy equipment, then not only would it be hard for the person to bear the weight, it would also be hard for the horses to bear the weight. The mobility of the horses would be lost. Once lost, not only could they no longer travel long distances, they would also be unable to engage enemies.

Initially Zhang Liao had thought of the same thing as Cao Chun. When had cavalries ever possessed shields? The motto of cavalries had always been engage, engage, engage and attack, attack, attack. Never once had cavalries ever used shields. Even if they had shields, then it had always been just small armshields and never such large shields.

However, upon donning his equipment, Zhang Liao was instead very happy. These shields, although big, were very thin and tough. So tough that it shocked Zhang Liao. So tough that his blade was unable to break through those shields.

Liu Mang had originally brought those shields for the Formation Breaker. However, all the Formation Breaker troops had jumped onto a horse. Thus, everyone ended up having a shield.

“Abominable!” Cao Chun dodged an incoming spear and returned with a slash with his Horse Beheading Blade. “Die for me!” His blade accurately went through the gaps between the shield and landed on the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldier’s body.

[TL: 斩马刀, https://www.google.com/search?q=%E6%96%A9%E9%A9%AC%E5%88%80&es_sm=93&source=lnms&tbmx0PSGxwIVToCSCh1VPwSK&biw=784&bih=771]

“Die!” Cao Chun had an ruthless expression. All the general had their expression turned ruthless upon entering the battlefield. This was due to being influenced by the atmosphere of war. This had caused some to be unable to calm themselves even after the war is over.

Cao Chun had an expression of excitement. Blood was soon to be sputtering. This Bing Province scrub was going to die.

Before Cao Chun’s excitement could reach its climax, he suddenly stiffened up. That was because his blade, his blade was unable to break through the armor! That white armor looked exactly the same as before. The only difference was that now there was a white blade mark.

“How could this be?!” Cao Chun’s weapon wasn’t just some ordinary large blade. It was a weapon bestowed upon him by Cao Cao to represent the might of the Ferocious Cavalry. It was originated from the same master blacksmith as Cao Cao’s Sword of Heaven. Cutting apart metal and leather armor was like cutting tofu for it. However, it was currently unable to cut through the Lu Bu soldier’s armor.

That Bing Province Cavalry soldier didn't care about Cao Chun's state of mind at all. On the battlefield, it's either you die or I die.

"Hungry! Starving!" The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry was like a pack of hungry prairie wolves. In their eyes, only through tearing apart the enemies in front of them could they obtain food to satisfy their hungry and obtain survival. Thus, these Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers were fighting desperately to find a way out of the impasse.

"Abominable!" Cao Chun immediately returned a strike to block the incoming attack. Although he could block the incoming attack with his great martial skills, his subordinates were not as lucky.

"Ahhhh ahhh ahh!" One by one, the Ferocious Cavalry soldiers fell. Other than the few first row Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers who were dismounted during the initial impact of the horses, they were practically unharmed.

Although the Ferocious Cavalry were wearing heavy armor, their armor was still full of gaps everywhere. Some of their heavy armor was even unable to defend against the attacks from the spears. That was because although their armor was classified as heavy armor, they were not fully composed of metal like those of infantries but instead a combination of metal and cloth.

Their Horse Beheading Blade was originally a nightmare for other cavalries. However, against the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, their blades was unable to even break through their defences. If they can't break through their defenses, they can't possibly win.

“Break through!” Cao Chun knew that this time the Ferocious Cavalry will suffer great defeat. However, as the commanding officer, he knew that he cannot retreat and could only break through the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry without any regards to the amount of casualties. Only through that might the Ferocious Cavalry be able to regroup themselves. That was because once a cavalry unit stops, then it will soon suffer complete annihilation.

“Break through! Break through!” The Ferocious Cavalry was indeed worthy of being the elite amongst elites within the Cao army. In an instant they immediately understood the thought of their general - when meeting enemies face to face, he who is more brave shall obtain victory. On the battlefield, there is no begging for forgiveness; there is only life and death.

“Sha!” Lu Bu’s eyes flashed. Although Zhang Liao is the commander of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, he was the commander before Zhang Liao. He admired Cao Chun’s action of breaking through and not to panic. He knew that Cao Chun was a good general who is very familiar with cavalries.

“You think you can leave whenever you please?!” Lu Bu perked his horse, his sword like eye fixed onto Cao Chun.

“This sensation!” Cao Chun was leading the Ferocious Cavalry in their breakthrough when he suddenly sense a tightness on his chest. He was trembling as if some ferocious beast had fixed its attention on him.

“Not good!” Cao Chun suddenly lowered his head. His whole body was like a turtle hiding within its shell. At this moment, Cao Chun could care less about his image. He wanted to survive and sure enough, his

experience of over hundreds of battles saved his life. Atop his head, a golden colored trident flew by like a flash.

"Poof! Poof!" Instantly two heads flew to the sky. Two Ferocious Cavalry soldiers that had been following Cao Chun close-by suddenly became two fountains of blood and lifelessly fell down their war horses.

"Lu Bu!" Only now did Cao Chun manage to have a view of the incoming person. Donning in a golden armor, holding a trident and with murderous aura all over; wasn't this the Lu Bu that he said he will kill earlier?!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 37 - Casualties of the Cao Army (2)

"Cao Chun! Humph!" Lu Bu suddenly started charging toward Cao Chun. On the White Gate Tower, he failed to kill both Cao Cao and Xiahou Yuan and had since been in a very bad mood. "Cao Mende took my Xu Province and uprooted my foundation! Today, I shall have you taste the pain of losing your loved general!"

Lu Bu didn't know who Cao Chun was. However, he knew that the Ferocious Cavalry was Old Cao's precious treasure - only these few thousands of them in the whole Yan Province. For this Cao Chun to be the commander of the Ferocious Cavalry, he is most definitely one of Cao Cao's great general!

What Lu Bu wanted was to slay this Cao Chun to give Cao Cao heartaches.

"Die for me!" Lu Bu's entire murderous aura was fixed onto Cao Chun. On the battlefield, anyone that Lu Bu wants to kill will certainly die. No one could stop him, not even gods!

"This cannot be! How can I die?! I cannot die!" Cao Chun did not knew of the prowess that Lu Bu possess before, he even dared to belittle him earlier. He had viewed Lu Bu to be just a brute, the slave of three surnames, a traitor who put petty personal love affairs over everything else, a person who cannot possibly accomplish much. Cao Chun had always viewed of slaying Lu Bu as a stepping stone in his meritorious contributions.

When his Ferocious Cavalry was called to the front of the battlefield,

Cao Chun was immensely happy. He had viewed Lu Bu as a fish on the chopping block. He wanted to kill Lu Bu and prove to the world that he, Cao Chun, was the greatest general; that he, Cao Chun, was the real God of War.

However now Cao Chun was in a panic. He was a general. Thus, his sensitivity toward dangers was much stronger compared to regular people!

He had only heard from others of Lu Bu's frightening prowess before. And now, he genuinely experienced it. He genuinely experienced the frightening man known who was known as the God of War, this man who was the Wolf God of the Prairie!

"Fast! Too fast!" Cao Chun saw the golden trident's shadow. Before he was able to react, he already felt a cold wind. This was the feeling of trident about to penetrate his body. "Abominable!" Cao Chun wanted to evade but he found out that there's nowhere for him to evade to. The trident had already block all leeways.

Forward! Only going forward using the horse's galloping strength would he be able to escape!

Worthy of being one of Cao Cao's great general, a general that Cao Cao had faith in, Cao Chun firmly decided to cut loss quickly and not to guard against Lu Bu. Instead, he took out his long blade and slashed his war horse's buttocks.

"Poof!" Piping hot blood was spraying from the war horse's buttocks. Under the immense pain, the war horse immediately started accelerating.

In a blink's time, it had flew past Lu Bu and a several horses distance away.

[TL: horse distance…. imagine placing a couple horses between Lu Bu's horse and Cao Chun's horse? Blame the author for making up length...]

"Cutting loose via self injury?!" Lu Bu didn't expect that Cao Chun would've injure his horse. For a general, a good war horse was a comrade in arms, one's second life. Generally, cavalries would treat their horses as a companion. They would love them dearly. Should their horse fall ill, they would be grow very anxious. And now, Cao Chun actually injured his horse to escape. Although his blade had caused the war horse to quickly accelerate, it cannot persist for a long period of time. This battle, no…. perhaps in a moment's time the war horse would fall and die.

Lu Bu could also tell that Cao Chun's war horse wasn't some ordinary horse. Although it could not compare to some famous horses like the Red Hare that he once had, it was still a rare and good horse.

"You want to compare horse strength?!" Lu Bu sneered. If he still had the Red Hare, he would've already reached Cao Chun and killed him with his trident. However he doesn't have the Red Hare now. It wasn't that his current horse was bad. Rather, it was that he wasn't familiar with the horse that he have now. Nevertheless, this didn't obstruct Lu Bu's pursuit.

"Let's see if my Ferghana horse is faster or if your war horse is faster!" Lu Bu slapped his war horse and his already fast war horse suddenly accelerated. It was accelerating like it was sprinting. Lu Bu felt as if that the wind that past by him had turned a bit prickling.

[TL: Lu Bu's mistakened the type of horse Liu Mang brought back? Blood-sweating horse was used to refer to Ferghana horse. It is also what Lu Bu literally called it. Apparently Ferghana horse was heavenly horses back in Han dynasty. They sweat blood when worked because of parasites.]

Arabian war horse! Although this type of horse might be common in modern days and were easily obtained via breeding, in the Eastern Han dynasty, they were genuine treasured horses! There existed three kinds of pure blooded horses: the Ferghana horse, the British horse and the Arabian war horse. Although the Arabian war horses does not have the superior quality of the Ferghana horse, they were pretty up there. Actually, the Arabian war horses was also a kind of Ferghana horse. Lu Bu didn't know of what Arabian war horse, he only knew it to be a Ferghana horse as it had the characteristics of a Ferghana horse.

Throughout the whole Han dynasty and even the history of China, every single Ferghana horse was rare to come by. Lu Bu never would've expected that Liu Mang would bring to him a total of two thousand and fifty of such Ferghana horses!

"How could this be?!" Cao Chun turned pale with fright. Although his war horse wasn't top notch, it was still very good. In the whole world, there were only a couple famous horses that was able to overtake his horse. Lu Bu's Red Hare might've been able to do that, however Red Hare is now in Xiapi! Where did Lu Bu find another such precious horse?!

"Where do you think you're escaping?!" Lu Bu had once again catch up to Cao Chun. His murderous aura had once again drew near.

"I absolutely cannot die!" Cao Chun bite his teeth. He saw that in front

of him was the Ferocious Cavalry that was still galloping under his orders. I'm sorry brothers! Cao Chun suddenly lifted his blade up and brandished it. The direction where he attacked was not toward Lu Bu who was behind him but rather toward those who were ahead of him, those Ferocious Cavalry soldiers, his fellow soldiers.

"Poof! Poof!" Two blood flowers blossomed. Two heads flew toward the sky. The war horses that lost their masters suddenly stagnated and began to slow down. In moment's time, Cao Chun ran past those horses and two corpses fell behind him blocking the path. Lu Bu was obstructed. If he continued then he would've crashed into the horses.

"This would baffle me?!" Lu Bu looked at the two warhorses that had lost their master and had a hint of admiration toward Cao Chun. This was his fellow soldiers than he killed! It was his brothers! To kill them just like that! To kill them just to save his own life! Not a hint of hesitation at all! As expected of a Cao clansman, he was exactly like Cao Cao!

Lu Bu did not slow down at all. Instead, his war horse's speed increased. Right when his war horse was about to crash into the two aimless Ferocious Cavalry war horses, Lu Bu violently pulled on the rope and, with his legs, grabbed onto the horse's stomach. Immediately, his horse leaped over the two aimless war horses and started pursuing Cao Chun again.

"Not good!" Cao Chun saw that the two warhorses were unable to stop Lu Bu at all. He bite his teeth and was about to attack again.

The two Ferocious Cavalry by his side had already seen Cao Chun's movements and their heart was trembling with fear. Without Cao Chun saying anything, they held their hand toward him and said "General, we

shall go first!" Immediately, the two turned around and stroke their horses.

"He who blocks me dies!" Lu Bu's trident impaled the two's body. However, he really was blocked by the two Ferocious Cavalry soldiers this time around, unable to catch up to Cao Chun anymore.

"Lu Bu, this Cao Chun will certainly have his vengeance for today!" Seeing that Lu Bu was stopped, Cao Chun loosened himself and started cursing at Lu Bu.

"Vengeance?!" Lu Bu said coldly. "I fear that you won't have such an opportunity! There have yet to be anyone that I, Lu Bu, wanted to kill on the battlefield to not die!" Lu Bu raised up the spear that was attached to his horse. Every single war horses had this kind of cavalry spear, otherwise they'll be hard to set formations with.

Lu Bu raised his spear. His eyes filled with murderous aura. His hands were like a vise firmly clamping the spear. His veins were exposed on his arms. His whole body was in a explosive state.

"Fly!" Lu Bu's hands have the strength of a thousand jun. And now, his thousand jun strength had all be placed onto the spear.

"Poosh!" A blood flower blossomed. Cao Chun had his eyes wide open unable to believe what had just happened.

"Poof!" On the viewing platform, Cao Cao also surpt out a mouthful of blood. "Zihe! My great general!" Cao Cao fainted.

[TL: Zihe is Cao Chun's courtesy name]

"My lord! My lord!" Panic burst through the viewing platform.

On the Ferocious Cavalry's path of breakthrough, one horse and one man was pinned to the ground by a spear. As the spear pierced through from above, the earth was dyed red with blood.

Ferocious Cavalry. Cao Chun. Cao Zihe. Dead!

Chapter 38 Fengxiao vs Fengxian

"The Ferocious Cavalry is finished!" Guo Jia observed the two cavalries' fierce confrontation. It felt like two strong waves clashing with each other before the gate of Kaiyang. He knew that the Ferocious Cavalry would meet its demise. Their commander, General Cao Chun was dead. If he was beheaded in combat, then the Ferocious Cavalry's fighting spirit and morale would still be high, since they were the cream of the crop. Their morale would still be at their highest because of the momentum even after their leader was gone.

However, that would be under normal circumstances. Guo Jia showed wry smiled. Cao Chun's death was tragic and he died in a horrible state. He was pierced by a spear and stuck to the ground like a statue. The spear had his horse alongside him pinned firmly to the ground.

His face still showed the horror and fear he felt before death. His body indicated that he desperately tried to rush his horse to flee in order to escape the imminent death.

Is this a warning to other people to show them what would happen to those who oppose Lu Bu?!

"Lu Bu, Lu Bu!" Guo Jia muttered to himself. Can that man really stand alone against the world?

"Military Counselor, your orders?!" The other generals, including Xu Chu and Xiahou Dun were asking for Guo Jia's next strategic move. Since Cao

Cao had fainted, it rested onto Guo Jia as Vice-Commander to issue the orders.

"Right now?!" Guo Jia was at loss. He did not know what order would be wiser. He was currently in dilemma where he could not decide whether he should try to overwhelm Lu Bu's army with his army of a hundred thousand men or whether he should sound the drums and order the retreat?

Guo Jia pulled himself together and came up with an idea. "Ready the Archers!" Guo Jia shouted with flickering gaze and waved his feather fan.

"Archer unit ready!" replied a general.

"Prepare your bow, target the cavalry in front of us with volley!" Guo Jia issued the order without any hesitation.

"Military Counselor, this?!" The cavalry in front of them were not only the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry but also their ally the Ferocious Cavalry. Even though the commander died, there were still one thousand of Ferocious Cavalry currently engaged in battle.

If the archers let loose those arrows, they won't be able to distinguish between friends and foes. Everyone inside the Ferocious Cavalry, who were their brothers-in-arms and the elite units of the Cao army will be hit.

"Volley!" Guo Jia gave the order with a cold tone while looking at the generals.

"But!" There were still people who wanted to argue with his decision, but kept their mouths shut when they saw Guo Jia's face became cold as

ice. Even though Guo Jia was only a weak scholar compared to those generals who are used to fight bloody battles, he was a brilliant tactician who killed thousands of soldiers using his tactics. He therefore had even more blood on his hands than the generals.

"Archers ready your bow and target the cavalry in front of us. Volley!" The Archer battalion's general shouted.

"Yes sir!" The whole archer battalion followed their commander's order and pulled their bows. "Volley!"

"Woosh!" Arrows filled the sky like heavy rainfall and flew towards the cavalry. Normally, archers can only hit the outer layer of an army. But using volley fire, it changed the arrows' angle. First, it shot towards the sky, afterwards it would fall vertically under the gravity and the force made it more lethal.

"Aaaaaaahhhhhhh!" Loud screams could be heard accompanied with the sound of soldiers falling from their horses.

"Raise shield!" Zhang Liao gave the order.

The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry raised their large shields beside their saddles again which could completely protect them from the volley. However some of them still got hit by the arrows, because the soldiers of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry also tried to protect their horses with the shield. If you combine the horse and the soldier, even the large shield could not cover every space.

From time to time, soldiers from the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry got hitby an arrow, but it was never critical. They were all trained men who

suppressed their pain. Their eyes were shining and blood was flowing out of their mouths, raising their bloodlust to another level.

"Kill them!" One Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldier eradicated an immense bloodlust in his eys. His horse was shot by several arrows. Even though the horse did not die on the spot, after this battle it could probably not be saved. It could only be killed and used as horse meat. For cavalrymen, their horses were almost as important as their own lives and like their brothers. Not to mention, they hear that Lord Liu Mang who saved their general almost died trying to bring back those horses. That was why the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry treasured them even more.

"Aaaahhhhh!" The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry were protected by their shields, but the Ferocious Cavalry were not so lucky. Since the arrowsshot through volley did not fly horizontally, their body armor could not stop it. One after each other the arrows penetrated them and massacred the Ferocious Cavalry armor like fish on a chopping block.

"Military Counselor?!" The generals who were watching on the side almost exploded in fury. Their own soldiers were dying like flies from friendly fire. Rage could be seen in their eyes. If Xu Chu did not stand in front of Guo Jia, the generals from Xiahou family would probably go mad.

Guo Jia stared blankly at the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry in front of him. "Large shield, spears, horse, what kind of cavalry is this? Is it a heavy cavalry?" Guo Jia hesitated. If it was a heavy cavalry it would be impossible to reach this kind of speed. Heavy cavalry could only do few assaults while wearing heavy armor, afterwards both horses and men will succumb from the fatigue.

The Ferocious Cavalry were already at their last breath. They wore heave armor and were already exhausted. The men and their horses were so

tired that some even collapsed under the fatigue. However the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry did not had any signs of exhaustion and their horses were full on vitality. How could this happen?

Guo Jia did not understand this anymore.

Seeing the Ferocious Cavalry taking countless casualties, Guo Jia's heart became soft. "Issue the retreat order to the Ferocious Cavalry!" Guo Jia did not give the order to march the whole army of hundred thousand soldiers. He knew that if he moved the whole army, he could easily overwhelm Lu Bu with number. However to destroy this heavy cavalry in front of him, Cao Cao's army would at least suffer a minimum of 30.000 soldiers. During the siege they had already suffered 20.000 casualties. If another 30.000 would be added to their loses, even if they would have conquered Xu Province, they would not be able to defend it anymore. Not to mention there is another beast lurking in Hebei.

"The Cao Army is retreating?!" Lu Bu looked over to the command platform. Cao Cao was already gone and only a scholar was remaining there. This should be Guo Jia, the legendary genius?

Lu Bu gave a cold laugh. Let me, the God of War test the ability of the legendary genius.

Lu Bu waved his trident and signaled his Bing Province Wolf Cavalry to release the remnants of the Ferocious Cavalry. Lu Bu had already lost interest in them. Cao Cao's Ferocious Cavalry were elites. Their abilities before were roughly the same with those of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry. But now, the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry had changed. The soldiers from the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry who survived under the siege of Cao Cao's army became the cream of the crop. Every one of them

would be equally matched in prowess to other captains.

Coupled with excellent horses, spears, heavy armors and giant shields that Hanyang brought, it could be said that the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry had currently no equal match.

“Hanyang?!” Lu Bu frowned. While fighting the Ferocious Cavalry his thoughts were constantly with Liu Mang whose life or death was still unknown.

“Cao Cao! Cao Mengde?!” Lu Bu’s eyes irradiated a strong killing intent. “Don’t you want this Lu Bu’s life? Now come and taste this tiger’s counterattack!”

“All units prepare to counterattack!” Lu Bu shouted while wielding his trident.

The Bing Proving Wolf Cavalry did not hesitate but quickly regrouped. The opponent was an army of a hundred thousand. Even the current elite Wolf Cavalry could not break through and might even perish while fighting inside this army. However, no one questioned Lu Bu. Someone who could compare to Lu Bu in leading a cavalry had not been born in this world yet.

“Lu Bu? What do you intent to do?!” Guo Jia watched how Lu Bu let the crippled Ferocious Cavalry flee and how he was charging directly towards his army.

“A army of three thousand attacking an army of one hundred thousand?!” The fighting spirit erupted in Guo Jia’s eyes. “it is time to remove the teeth of the tiger!”Guo Jia waved his command flag and the war machine made of a hundred thousand soldiers began to move.

“Shield formation at the front and spear unit behind them. Archers at the back!” When cavalry lost their mobility they would be as good as dead.

Guo Jia and Lu Bu both had prepared for the decisive battle.

“Humph?!”Lu Bu sneered. Gou Jia, ah Gou Jia, in scheming and planning, I Lu Fengxian am not your equal. However on the battlefield, I will teach you a lesson!”

“Flank, aggressive formation!” The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry suddenly made a huge turn and was speeding past the Cao army’s flank.

Attacking the flanks? Do you really think that I Guo Fengxiao’s reputation were some hollow words?” Guo Jia observed how the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry was moving at a high speed towards the Cao Army’s flank and commanded “Flank tight formation! Spearmen advance!” Guo Jia waved again the flag and commanded “Arches prepare yourself. Target the Bing Province Cavalry’ horses, rapid fire!”

” Guo Jia noticed it at the first glance. Aiming for the soldiers who were heavily armored was useless, but if they shot the horses the riders would be thrown off and squashed to death.

“Lu Bu, come and show me your skill!”

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 39 - Fengxiao vs. Fengxian (End)

"All army prepare for engage!"Guo Jia gave his orders. The spearmen readied themselves to the front in an offensive formation. Only Guo Jia, Guo Fengxiao was able to look at an incoming cavalry attack and instead launch a counterattack.

"Infantry dared to assault the cavalry?!"Lu Bu was surprised. Usually whenever infantries encountered cavalries, they either flee from the cavalry or defend against them, never attack back.

"Something's wrong!" Lu Bu was not the fool, Guo Jia was known as the sly genius so he's definitely outstanding. It was impossible for him to make such a blunder! Once the cavalry break through and the infantry formation, then the infantries could only wait to be killed!

"It's a bait!" Lu Bu immediately understood. These spearmen are a bait! Once Lu Bu attacks these spearmen, the archers would immediately shoot from behind and their shielded troops would force through the flanks, surrounding them and cutting out their path to escape.

"This is bad!" thought Lu Bu. The archers stopped shooting in a volley and turned to shooting straight at them.

"Their target is our warhorses!" Lu Bu shouted in surprise. "Whole army! Raise your shields! Protect the war horses!" Lu Bu really underestimated this Guo Fengxiao. Who would've expected that he would've found out their weakness so fast.

“Swoosh, swoosh!” Arrows fell like rain, one by one the horses dropped. Fortunately, the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry was armed with their large shields and thus did not suffer any causality. The ones with their horse shot immediately changed their horse. This was possible because they had less than three thousand soldiers surviving when Liu Mang brought back five thousand horses.

In no time, Lu Bu had lost no less than a hundred horses, causing him to have a great heartache. All of these horses were good horses. Every one of them could be considered a horse king! And now, however, they died in the charge.

“Humph! Although your cavalry are strong, it appears that your horses aren’t!” sneered Guo Jia as he saw the dead horses. Guo Jia then relay his command again “Order for archers, rapid fire, target warhorse!” Cavalry without horses, would it still be cavalry then?

“Guo Fengxiao!” Lu Bu’s eyes were flickering. He hold high his trident and commanded. “Increase speed! Increase distance!” Lu Bu understands that archer’s range is limited, so once they increased their distance, they will no longer be harmed.

“Retreating?!” Guo Fengxiao looked at the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry gradually getting further away. He wanted to intercept them; however he does not have the mobility of a cavalry unit. Although his army numbered a hundred thousand, he cannot do anything to Lu Bu.

“Clip clop clip clop!” The Bing Province Wolf Cavalry that was once retreating turned around to once again face their enemies. “Retreat? I, Lu Bu, never know the word retreat!” Ordinary archers can shoot a distance of one hundred and twenty steps, expert archers with training can shoot a distance of a hundred fifty steps.

Under Lu Bu’s leadership, the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry arrived at a distance of about a hundred and fifty steps from the archers, they turned around and immediately prepared for a long distance attack against the two flanks.

“What is he planning?!” Guo Jia frowned, he cannot comprehend Lu Bu's intention. “Bows?” All the soldiers of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry took out their bows and set themselves ready to shoot their arrows.

A distance of a hundred fifty steps. It was a safe distance. A distance that cannot be reached by arrows. Did Lu Bu went crazy?

A breeze blew by Guo Jia’s face. It was a fresh and cool sensation.

“Wind!” Guo Jia suddenly open his eyes extra wide. “Wind! Gale!”

”That's right, Guo Fengxiao, it is wind!” Lu Bu smile faintly. Lu Bu had already taken into consideration of the wind’s movement when he prepared for his long distance attack. He noted that his cavalry was located at the origination location of the wind whereas the Cao army was located at the ending location of the wind. While a hundred fifty steps was the maximum distance an archer’s arrow could reach, however, in the event of a favorablel wind, that’s a different story.

”To not reciprocate is against etiquette! Brothers of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, unleash your arrows!” All of Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers are expert mounted archers and with the advantage of wind, every arrow landed at Cao army main camp.

The first to suffer big casualties was the Cao archers who were hiding behind the main army. As they are the biggest threat to the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, so Lu Bu's very first step is to wipe them out. Additionally, these Wolf pups already had deep hatred for the Cao army's archers. Thus, they were basically releasing arrows non stop.

"AAAAAHHHHHHHHHH!" Arrows were falling like the rain. Within the rain, blood flowers blossomed from time to time. Immediately the Archery Unit suffered major causalities. The hundred thousand strong Cao army suffered three thousand dead. The rest were also mostly injured.

"Bam!" Guo Jia spontaneously threw down his war fan and punch angrily against a pillar.

"Bing Province Heavy Cavalry!" Lu Bu had already raised his trident.

"Hungry! Starving!" The wolves once again went berserk under Lu Bu's leadership "All army, charge!"

Guo Jia knew that when his archer unit was defeated, his plan was completely ruined. He wanted to use his spearmen unit as the bait, however, now that his fishhook had been gone, the bait had became fish feed.

What is a massacre? It's when a group of heavy cavalries rush into a group of spearmen. With only spears as their weapons, the spearmen simply cannot penetrate the defense of the cavalries. On the ontrary, the cavalry was able to easily penetrate the defense of the spearmen armed with plank armors. Even if they were to encounter the few officers that

possess metal armor, they could still easily kill them in a couple rounds of bouts.

During the slaughter, Lu Bu saw an acquaintance, Li Dian! Although Li Dian is heavily injured during siege of Kaiyang, the spearmen unit was his squadron. Therefore, even though he was heavily wounded, he would still lead his soldiers.

Although they say revenge is a dish best served cold, Lu Bu doesn't agree. He believes to take his revenge immediately.

"Li Dian, thou still recognize I?!" Lu Bu with his horse arrived in front of Li Dian. Li Dian was already in imminent danger. His infantry soldiers cannot withstand the force of Lu Bu's cavalry. If not for his person guards who persistently protecting him. He, Li Dian, would likely had already died in the chaos.

"Lu Bu!" Li Dian smiled very bitterly. He knew that he can't escape today. Had it only been the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, Li Dian still believe that he would be able to escape using his martial abilities, however, Lu Bu was the one who came!

Even with Xu Chu, Xu Huang and himself together, they were not a match for Lu Bu. And now, he is only alone, how can he hope to survive?.

"Your memory's not bad!" Lu Bu smiled.

"Clang!" Li Dian dropped his weapon to the ground and said "Marquis of Wen, Dian knew that he cannot escape death, but before I die, Dian

would like to plead a final request to Marquis of Wen!” Li Dian was already severely wounded in Kaiyang and had joined the battlefield in this wounded state. Now that he encountered Lu Bu, it was completely totally impossible for him to escape.

"Had you accepted your fate?!"Lu Bu said while looking at Li Dian. On the battlefield, a general’s weapon is his life. If you threw down that weapon then that means you had already given up your life. “Speak, I shall hear!”

"It is not that I accepted my fate! Dian just didn’t wish cause more casualties!" said Li Dian. "Dian can commit suicide in front of Marquis of Wen, but Dian also request the Marquis of Wen to please allow my eight personal guards to live!"

"General!" Hearing Li Dian’s words, the eight personal guards who were next to him grew anxious. “We will fight to the death to protect general!” Do they not fear when encountering Lu Bu? They were all afraid! In Kaiyang siege, the originally one hundred strong personal guard unit was left with only them eight. However, how could they possibly exchange their general’s life for their own?

"And if I refuse?!" On the battlefield, the most important personnel to each general were their fellow soldiers, their personal guards. Seeing them, Lu Bu remembered how Hao Meng, Song Xian, Wei Xu and Hou Cheng. They were all at a point Lu Bu’s personal guards. Had he been in Li Dian’s position, would they protect me to death? Would I exchange my life for theirs?

"If Marquis of Wen refuses, then Dian can only fight the Marquis of Wen to the death!" Said Li Dian after taking a deep breath. His complexion was pale, his body was still severely injured and he was currently fighting his tiredness.

"Good, I promised you!"Said Lu Bu after thinking a while and with closed eye. ”You die and these eight men may return to the main army!”

”In that case, Dian gives his thanks to the Marquis of Wen!” After saying that Li Dian took up the long blade that he threw to the ground. This time, he wasn’t planning to fight back; instead, he was going to commit suicide.

”General you cannot! You cannot!” The eight guards started panicking. They wanted to go forward and seize Li Dian’s blade. However, Li Dian’s martial skills were above them. He was also their commander; thus they revere him and dared not do such.

”Could it be that you all are not listening to my orders now?!” Li Dian stared at them angrily. ”Scram! All of you, scram! Return! Live and help this Dian take care of his old father and mother!”

"General!"

"Poof!" A blood flower blossomed mid air. The long blade was covered with their commander’s warm blood. Li Dian, dead!

"You all, return!" Lu Bu saw the Li Dian who just committed suicide and felt a bit disturbed.

"Return?! He he!" The remaining Li Dian bodyguards one by one knelt down in front of Li Dian's corpse. ”General, we deeply regret for unable to fulfill your final wish! We are unable to help you take care of your old father and mother! Please wait for us below, we shall follow you immediately!”

"Poof! Poof! Poof!” Eight kneeling corpses appeared in front of Li Dian’s corpse. Their blood sprayed all over Lu Bu’s face.

Lu Bu licked his lips "this blood turned out to be warm!"

In the midst of Cao main army

Guo Jia said "Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, deserving of the title of God of War!" as he looked toward the front with flickering eyes. The spearmen battalion was already pushed all the way back to the main camp. Amidst the air, Lu Bu and Guo Jia’s gaze met.

"Guo Jia, Guo Fengxiao, you’re pretty good too! The stratagem of the sly genius! The scheme that took away this Lu Bu’s Xu Province!" Lu Bu’s brows were also raised.

"In that case, we shall fight again!"

"Certainly!"

Chapter 40 The Wisdom of Crying

With the battle of Kaiyang ended, the war in Xu Province came to an end. The Cao army which consisted of 100,000 soldiers, adding Liu Bei, Big Ear Liu's forces of 20,000 soldiers would sum up to a total of 120,000 soldiers. With the leading of Military Counselor Guo Jia and the brave generals like Cao Ren, Xiahou brothers, Yu Jin, Li Dian, Xu Huang and Xu Chu, they had conquered the Xu Province, but Lu Bu broke through their siege and escaped.

After the war, Cao Cao was distressed for losing more than 50,000 out of his 120,000 soldiers. The saddest part for him was to lose his precious Ferocious Cavalry. Before the battle his elite cavalry consisted of 3000 elite soldiers. After the battle they were left with less than 300 wounded soldiers. Training a single soldier of Ferocious Cavalry was equal to training 10 normal soldiers, which means losing all 3000 riders of Ferocious Cavalry were equal to losing 30,000 infantries. That counted only for the rider's training without considering the loss of horses and equipments.

The battle also cost Lu Bu dearly. Originally he had 70,000 defenders. With the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Wolf Cavalry, he had a force of a total of 75,000 people. At the end, only around 2,500 soldiers survived. He had lost not only Xu Province, but also 4 generals: Song Xian, Wei Xu, Hou Cheng and Cao Xing.

Now he was left with only Zhang Liao, Gao Shun and Zang Ba.

Among the 5000 warhorses that Liu Mang brought to Kaiyang, only less than 4500 had survived. Most of the horses died under Guo Jia's volley

fire.

"Did Hanyang wake up?!" Lu Bu asked the people in the carriage while he took off his cloak and helmet.

"Father, he is still in coma!" Inside the carriage was a gorgeous girl with long silky black hair and a pretty face. She had inherited Lu Bu's dashing eyebrows and Madam Yan's gentle look. She was indeed a beauty with rare charm!

This young lady was indeed Lu Bu's eldest daughter!

Lu Lingqi's face showed exhaustion. She had taken care of Liu Mang day and night, while doing things such as feeding him and helping him to wash his body. Her face blushed when thinking about it.

In the whole Lu Bu army, she was the only person who was qualified to attend to Liu Mang. Men were not suitable to do this kind of job and women were rare on the battlefield. They either came from Lu Bu's family or Zang Ba's family. Miss Lu was the most suitable candidate to take care of Liu Mang because of their engagement.

"Still not yet waken up?"Lu Bu frown his eyebrows. Liu Mang was his benefactor who had helped him in countless bad looking situations. First, Liu Mang rescued him from the White Gate Tower and then brought food to his army. After that, Liu Mang had brought 5000 warhorses and spears which saved Lu Bu in a life or death situation. So talking about Liu Mang's wellbeing, Lu Bu could not be more concerned. Until now, he had visited to his son-in-law for no less than ten times.

"My lord, you don't need to worry! Hanyang will survive. He is a little pale, his vitals and breathing weakened a bit. Nothing else!" reassured

Chen Gong. The strategist Chen Gong had changed his uniform and now ore civilian clothes since his uniform were already soaked with blood. In addition to the civilian clothes, Chen Gong was also wearing the aluminum armor brought by Liu Mang. Chen Gong became a handsome guy in this attire! When standing next to Lu Bu, one cannot tell who was more charming.

"His vitals and breathing are weakening?!" Lu Bu was deep in his thoughts. He seemed to be preoccupied with fear and hesitation, but could do nothing but leaving the place. "When Hanyang wake up, inform me immediately!"

"Yes, Father!" Lu Lingqi nodded. Although Liu Mang and she were not husband and wife yet, they were already engaged. In addition, she knew that the man, who had seen her nude, saved her whole family in this crisis.

Is he really a saint?! Even though Lu Lingqi did not know much about military affairs, she was aware that bring so many warhorses and equipments out of nowhere was not something an ordinary person can do!

At this moment, there was another person who was in the same state as Liu Mang, the big boss, old Cao. Cao Chun's death and the destruction of Ferocious Cavalry were enough to make old Cao faint and did not regain his consciousness until recently.

When he woke up, his first words were "How is my Ferocious Cavalry?"

Guo Jia replied while showing a bitter smile, "My lord, from the 3000

Ferocious Cavalry only less than 300 survived!" But even that number was just a hollow one. The soldiers who had survived were severely wounded. Besides, the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry had diminished the Ferocious Cavalry's courage into the air. An army under such circumstances was unable to go into battle ever again.

"From 3000 to 300!!" Old Cao muttered to himself "Why did I have to pursue Lu Bu to

Kaiyang! Why couldn't I celebrate a victory feast after capturing Lu Bu?!" Old Cao lamented with deep regret.

"What about Zihe!" Boss Cao had thought about his younger clan cousin.

"His body has been put into a coffin with care. Before his death he retained a look where he showed his utter loyalty to you my Lord!"Guo Jia whispered to Cao Cao. How could he tell Cao Cao that Cao Chun's face was actually full of fear and disbelief before his death?!

"Zihe, oh Zihe!" Boss Cao started sobbing. If you compare Cao Cao with Liu Bei in weeping, Cao Cao was almost an equal match. During this time of chaos at the end of Han Dynasty, among the many people who wept, Liu Bei was unsurpassable. His profound ability to weep overshadowed his other abilities.

Cao Cao was hit hard by this sadden news. He lost both Cao Chun and the Ferocious Cavalry. A cavalry unit he spent many years cultivating. Cao Cao's tears rolled down from his face when thinking about this. He rushed out of the tent crying barefooted. He ran to a coffin, kneeled down on the ground and cried even louder and started to put on a show.

Many people sympathized with Cao Cao's weeping, since dashed out straight after waking up, not even wearing clothes or shoes. The scene immediately reminded the generals the soldiers who sacrificed their lives for Cao Cao. This kind of show made those generals to feel that it was all worth it to die for old Cao.

The Three Peach Oath Bros were also standing next to him.

The youngest one, Zhang Fei was the most naive out of the three brothers. Seeing Cao Cao's bitter cry he said "Cao Cao is really not a bad person! He is crying so heartbroken for the dead general. After all, he is a sentimental man who cares for his soldiers a lot!" Zhang Fei was truly simple-minded. In Zhang Fei's point of view, anyone who cries and drinks can be seen as good guy.

"Meng De is also a hero!" Guan Yu also started to appreciate Cao Cao a little. If his big brother Liu Bei did not found him first, perhaps he would now serve Old Cao. Coa Cao granted Lu Bu's Red Hare to Guan Yu, that's why he would certainly put in good words for Cao Cao.

Looking at his brothers, Liu Bei did not show any expression. In his heart he thought "Oh brother, can't you see that Old Cao is trying to buy you with the Red Hare? Why are you seeing him with one eyed closed?" Liu Bei then said "Oh my two brothers, why don't you observe closely at Cao Cao's lips? Who or what is he crying for?" From here they could not hear what Cao Cao was saying but Liu Bei was actually observing Cao Cao's lips movements.

Zhang Fei could not read Old Cao's lips movements. "Big brother, how

can I read his lips movements?"

"Zihe? Zihe! Ferocious Cavalry?" Guan Yu's expression become complex after observing Cao Cao's lips movements.

"My lord, overcome your sorrow!" Guo Jia's was currently the most helpless person since Old Cao was only screaming Zihe's name.

Old Cao opened the coffin cover before Guo Jia could run over to stop him. With tearful eyes Old Cao shouted "Zi-...!" But his words were suddenly cut. The one who lied in the coffin was Li Dian who committed suicide in front of Lu Bu.

"Li Dian?!" Cao Cao suddently felt that his loss now was even greater. The Ferocious Cavalry was destroyed, Cao Chun is dead and now Li Dian also died. Even though Li Dian was as vice general, his skills were top notch. Old Cao had planned to make him gain more experience before promoting him to the position of general. But now, Li Dian was dead and laying inside the coffin.

"So where is Zihe?!" Cao Cao carefully asked. He did not dare to be loud, or others would know that he had been weeping for a wrong person. Although Li Dian was a very important general, Li Dian's death cannot make Old Cao weep so miserably.

"General Cao Chun has already been escorted to Xu Du with a big and excellent cart." Guo Jia whispered to Cao Cao's ear. Cao Chun's body was nailed tight to the ground from a spear that Lu Bu threw. His body and his warhorse had been conjoined and could not be separated. Guo Jia couldn't find a coffin big enough to hold a man and a horse. He had no

other choice but sending Cao Chun's body to Xu Du. He would request a custom-made coffin when the cart arrived in Xu Du.

"Mancheng, oh Mancheng!" Old Cao's immediately changed his words.

TL: Mancheng is the courtesy name of Li Dian.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 41 – The Anticipated Meeting

Cao Army Main Camp. Although they had experienced a ridiculous tearful scene just a moment ago, their focus have completely shifted toward a competitive state.

Although three thousand Ferocious Cavalry were annihilated in the recent battle, there still existed two thousand reserves in Xu Du. To restore the three thousand that was lost was just a matter of time. And now, the main focus of everyone was on who would be the next commander of the Ferocious Cavalry.

The Ferocious Cavalry needed a new commander. What is the Ferocious Cavalry, you ask? It's the elite amongst the elites, the trump card amongst the trump cards! He who shall become the next commander of the Ferocious Cavalry was equate to becoming Old Cao's most trusted aide.

"Mende, regarding the Ferocious Cavalry!" Cao Ren spoke first. Cao Ren could be considered as the most senior amongst all the generals in the Cao army. He was one of those commanding officers who watches over others and thus should not have competed with the other generals. However, the commander of the Ferocious Cavalry was too alluring a position. To possess five thousand Ferocious Cavalry soldiers was equate as possessing an army of fifty thousand. When assistance from the infantries was added, even if the opposing army was a hundred thousand strong, Cao Ren was still confident enough to face them.

"Zixiao, why must you be so?! You're already the commander of the army, why must you still fight over this commander of the Ferocious Cavalry with us?!" The only one who can speak like that to Cao Ren was

the few from the Xiahou clan who have blood relations with Cao Cao. Being relatives, they were not hindered one bit in speaking out their mind.

[TL: Cao Ren's courtesy name is Zixiao]

"Why do you spoke so, Yuanrang? Do you want also want to compete with me for this position?!" The one who spoke the loudest earlier was Xiahou Yuanrang. Although Xiahou Yuanrang was a valiant general, he also possesses the integrity of a valiant general – being a brute. Perhaps he didn't want to bother using his brain; he had gone wherever he wanted using only his brute force. Thus, he was able to casually ask Cao Ren this question.

[TL: remember, Yuanrang is Xiahou Dun's courtesy name.]

"No, that's not my intent. What I meant was that you are already commander, so you should let other people to do the merit. Although I, Xiahou Dun, am not inferior to Zihe, I am not capable of commanding the cavalry, therefore I recommend Gongming for this position!" Said Xiahou Dun casually again.

[TL: Gongming is Xu Huang's courtesy name.]

"Hm?!"Cao Cao gaze grew more profound. This Xiahou Dun, when can he talk so elegantly?,He even said that he's not capable of commanding the cavalry and even recommended Xu Huang. Cao Cao cast his gaze behind Xiahou Dun to the youngsters of the Xiahou clan; amongst them was Xiahou Ba.

In the Siege of Xiapi, he was captured by Lu Bu. In Battle of Kaiyang, he was rescued as Lu Bu didn’t have time to bother looking after him. And now, he was whispering something to his uncle’s ear.

“Xiahou Ba? That's Miaocai's nephew!” As if he thought of something, Cao Cao started nodding to himself. He was praising Xiahou Ba. Xu Huang, Xu Gongming was Miaocai’s subordinate; Xiahou Dun never leaves Xiahou Yuan and Xiahou Yuan was the commander of the a cavalry unit, the long ranged raid troops, he would not go and become the commander the Ferocious Cavalry. Thus, the Ferocious Cavalry shall be under Xu Huang’s command name but when Xiahou Dun wanted to use them, Xu Huang won’t be able to refuse!

[TL: since this chapter have so many courtesy names…. In case you forgot… Miaocai is Xiahou Yuan’s courtesy name.]

“My lord, me!?” Xu Huang said with a very complicated expression. Xu Huang wanted to comply his master's order but the unit he is going to command was the Ferocious Cavalry, elite of elites. Although Xu Huang knew of the methods to commanding the cavalry, he had never commanded a trump card before. Although he had once commanded the Western Liang Cavalry under Yang Feng, they could not compare to the Ferocious Cavalry. Thinking of that and seeing the expressions of all the generals around him, Xu Huang wanted to reject the offer. He knew that he was one of the newest general to the Cao army, if he were to be at odds with these old generals, then it’ll be very hard for him to be in the Cao army.

“In my opinion, General Xu Huang has the ability!” Another general

voiced his opinion. This was Yu Jin. For a lack of better option, Yu Jin had to come out to help Xu Huang. He stood next to Xiahou Dun and had his thigh pinched by Xiahou Dun. Even now, his thigh was still very much in pain from the pinch. It was obvious that Xiahou Dun wanted him to come out and talk for Xu Huang.

"This general thinks it's still better for General Cao Ren to be the commander of Ferocious Cavalry!" Although the Xiahou clan had their most promising nephew Xiahou Ba, the Cao clan also had a lot of youngsters too. Amongst them was Cao Ren's eldest son, Cao Tai. This year Cao Tai only 20 years old but he was already an excellent general. This argument is for Ferocious Cavalry position, how can Cao Tai do not want that position? If Cao Ren got that position, would not that position will be inherited by Cao Tai someday?

"This general thinks!..."

"This official believes!..."

One by one, the civil officials and generals all began to expressed their own opinion, causing Cao Cao a major headache. It's not good regardless of who he gives the position to. If he were to give it to Cao Ren, then the Xiahou brothers would have something to say! If given to the Xiahou brothers, Cao Ren certainly won't stay quiet! Furthermore, Cao Chun was not just Cao Cao's , he was also Cao Ren's younger brother.

"Ferocious Cavalry!" Being generals themselves, Guan Yu and Zhang Fei was naturally also very tempted by the position of the commander of the Ferocious Cavalry. Alas, they are not Cao Generals. If they were, they will certainly join this argument.

When will elder brother have a trump card like the Ferocious Cavalry? Thought Guan Yu while looking at Liu Bei with a bit of pity and regret and a lot of resolution.

Liu Bei was very sensitive to a person glare and he immediately noticed Guan Yu's gaze. However, he only noticed the pity and regret and not the resolution that followed.

Although Liu Bei's external expression did not change, he frowned in his heart. Second brother, Guan Yu!!

"Enough" Shouted Old Cao as he banged his fist on the table. He was unable to bear listening to the argument any longer. "With our enemy in front of us, with Xiapi still in danger, yet the only thing in your minds were who to lead the Ferocious Cavalry! Do you still see me as your lord or not?! Ah?!" Old Cao was angry.

"This general dared not!"

"Thy servants dared not!" Said in a hard to come by unity.

"Humph!"Old Cao groan coldly "What don't you dared?! This Ferocious Cavalry, you can all forget about it! Forget about it! Other than Zihe, who amongst you all have the capability on par with him? Ferocious Cavalry in Zihe's command is THE Ferocious Cavalry, when in the hands of any of you; it shall become the Sheep Cavalry!"

Under Old Cao's anger, nobody dare to speak. Old Cao's personal charm

was that when he's in a good mood, anything you say would please him. However, you must certainly not think that his tolerance toward you was the same as taking shameless advantage of him. For instance Mi Heng and Xu You, one was killed by Old Cao borrowing someone else's blade and the other was directly killed by Xu Chu.

[TL: If you wanna know more about Mi Heng... https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mi_Heng or Xu You https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xu_You_(Han_dynasty)]

"Compared to Chun, none could restore! I alone shall oversee!" Old Cao opened his mouth. What Old Cao meant "Talent like Cao Chun unable to obtain again and no one can compare with him!, I will personally take command of Ferocious Cavalry, so don't raise this issue again".

Who dared to not be satisfied and fight over the position when Old Cao is the commander of the Ferocious Cavalry?!

"Disperse!" They are to march toward Xiapi tomorrow. As they cannot move tonight, they had to make up the distance tomorrow.

Next morning, the first order Old Cao gave after waking up was "Zihe, take your three thousand Ferocious Cavalry as the vanguard and head to Xiapi immediately!" Immediately after saying those words, Cao Cao face grew very bleak. Zihe had passed away. The three thousand Ferocious Cavalry are also gone.

Fortunately Guo Jia entered his tent at this moment "Milord, are you worrying about General Zihe and Ferocious Cavalry?!"

"Fengxiao, you really know me!" Said Cao Cao in frustrating manner. Cao Chun's death make him very uncomfortable, the loss of Ferocious Cavalry makes him much more miserable. How the hell his trump card lost to Bing Province Heavy Cavalry? Are they really that much of terror? Cavalry king?

"Milord, milord, general Zihe and the soldiers of the Ferocious Cavalry did not die in vain!" Said Guo Jia. If anyone else said that statement, Old Cao will immediately show his killing intention. But fortunately, the one who spoke that statement was Guo Jia, Guo Fengxiao. If he was changed to other person, then he will be cut down by Cao's sword.

"Speak!" Cao Cao's mood was not very good so he cannot tolerate Guo Jia very much.

Guo Jia smiled faintly; Cao Cao's mood didn't bother him. If Old Cao had been in a good mood at this time, then he'll have totally lost his human nature.

"Milord, please look at this!" Guo Jia's hand showed two pieces of metal linked together. In the middle of the two pieces of metal, there was something that seemed to be for sitting.

"What is this?!" Cao Cao received it from Guo Jia's hand. First he had a doubt about this tool, but right now he had no doubt at all, instead he held his breath in awe.

"This is?" Said Old Cao disbelieved as he pointed at the thing.

"It's precisely what you think it is! Men, bring a horse over!" Guo Jia placed the metal tool onto the horse. The two metal plates were on either sides of the horse and the seat like thing was placed onto the back of the horse.

"Milord, please try!" Said Guo Jia while smiling.

"Good!" Without being unreasonable, Cao Cao immediately stepped onto the metal tool and onto the horse. In the main camp, Cao Cao was riding his horse around shouting. "Marvelous tool! Marvelous tool!" Cao Cao released his two hands and stepped on the metal plates with his feet. Usually, one must use a single hand to hold onto the war horse's rein if one doesn't want to fall off from the horse. However, Old Cao was currently able to stand up without falling! If he were to hold a bow and arrow, won't that make him a natural born cavalry?

One must know that in order to learn to completely ride a horse, one need at least half a year's time or even a whole year. And in this year, one could only learn how to ride a horse and it was impossible to learn how to ride a horse and shooting from the said horse at the same time. And now, this tool had completely solved this problem.

"It was only with this marvelous tool that the Lu Bu army was able to completely annihilate General Cao Chun's Ferocious Cavalry!" Actually, Guo Jia did not realize this at first either. However, it was noticed by him when the whole Lu Bu army started shooting atoptheir horses. Although the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry was elite, the Lu Bu army's cavalry this time was not only composed only of the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers. Amongst them were the soldiers of the Formation Breaker and the Xu Province soldiers. Guo Jia believes that the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry soldiers were capable of shooting atop their horses but what about those solders of the Formation Breaker? Those Xu Province

soldiers?

Only through returning to the battlefield did Guo Jia discover this secret from the remains of the dead horses.

“With this marvelous tool, my lord will be able to create a Ferocious Cavalry numbering five thousand, ten thousand or even more!” Guo Jia’s gaze grew deeper. Lu Fengxian, we shall have a contest of cavalries in our next meeting!

Chapter 42 Prince of Shu

TL: this is due to past titles. Wang is usually used for prince not king, only since Ming Dynasty, Wang is king.

Liu Mang swore that he would never bring so many things to transmit at the same time ever again. 5000 warhorses, 5000 armors including spears and great shields were too much for the teleportation CD. Now the CD started ringing alarm. The cooling time for the machine was lengthened from one day to one month. Near the Teleportation CD, a limit bar was created. It told Liu Mang that if he exceeded the limit one more time, he would be regarded as disturbance towards the space and time continuum. It would mean that he would not be able to return ever again. It also refused the transmission of fire weapons. Once a fire weapon was detected by the machine, he would lose his life.

This time, being in coma was the penalty he had to pay.

Feeling blurry and dizzy, Liu Mang finally opened his eyes.

“You woke up!” There was a sweet and pleasant surprised sounding voice as he opened his eyes. That voice belonged to a person with beautiful eyebrows and a delicate face. This must be a goddess from heaven.

“What a goddess!”Liu Mang muttered to himself slowly, but suddenly he realized something. Something was not right, this girl was.. “My fierce wife?!” Liu Mang called out Miss Lu’s nickname.

“Fierce wife?!” Lu Lingqi instantly got angry. “What the hell did you just say?!”

“No, nothing!”Liu Mang was not a fool. While looking at Lu Lingqi’s exhausted face, he knew that he was cared by her. Hence, it was not appropriate to talk ill of her.

“Humph, tactful of you!” Lu Lingqi must have heard Liu Mang mentioning “Fierce wife”, but she was not bothered by it. Sooner or later she would marry him, therefore Lu Lingqi let Liu Mang off the hook this time.

“Am I really that fierce?” Miss Lu thought about it while walking to inform Lu Bu about Liu Mang’s awakening.

Liu Mang did not fully understand a girl’s thoughts, but one thing he knew. He could no longer continue to upset Miss Lu. After all, she had taken care of him for such a long time.

While Liu Mang was thinking about it, the tent curtain was opened by a large general in shining armor. It was general Lu Bu wearing gold cloth followed by several people behind him.

Lu Bu entered the tent but did not speak and looked Liu Mang straight in the eyes.

Was something wrong with me? Was there something on my body? Liu Mang looked at him and did not understand why he did not talk. When

Liu Mang saw Chen Gong gestures, he finally understood that Lu Bu wanted Liu Mang to call him.

"General Lu? Boss Lu? Marquis of Wen?!" All these calls failed to impress Lu Bu.

Liu Mang finally bit the bullet and shouted "Father-in-law!"

Behind Lu Bu, a bunch of the scholars and generals wanted to burst out laughing, but suppressed it so hard that their face became red.

Ha, ha, just laugh at me. Liu Mang stopped caring.

"Hanyang, did you recovered?!" Lu Bu finally opened his mouth after hearing Liu Mang addressing him.

"Much better now!" Besides feeling a bit hungry, Liu Mang did not have other complaints.

"Why were you so frail?!" Lu Bu asked puzzled. On that day in Kaiyang, after that golden light appeared with 5000 warhorses and equipments, Liu Mang fainted on the ground. Were not for the soldiers who found Liu Mang in time, he would have been trampled to death by the warhorses.

"Why was I so frail?!" Liu Mang wanted to say that it was entirely his fault. However, he remembered that Boss Lu gave him all these gold bars which in the modern world were worth millions. So Liu Mang quietly explained. "The heaven has its own rules. If you want to descend you must pay the price. This time, I brought too many things that can cause

turmoil in the world of mortals, therefore I was punished by heaven!" Liu Mang tried to explain the system as simple as possible to Lu Bu so that he could understand.

"Punished by heaven?!" Lu Bu seemed finally to understand something. "In the future let this general protects you!"

"Eh!" Protect me? I need your protection? If I didn't fear for Boss Lu's life, would I be like this? Return to the modern world would be much better for me. There was peace and development, in this era there was only war, hunger and death.

"Many thanks father-in-law!"Liu Mang could only helplessly thank him.

"Ah!" Lu Bu accepted with pleasure. "Come and look who this is!" Lu Bu said while opened up for a young man from behind.

So young? So familiar? That voice.

"Fuck, it is Chen Deng!"Liu Mang immediately got up and searched for something.

"What are you searching?!"Lu Bu asked seriously. Normally someone would not forget oneself just by seeing someone.

"I am looking for a sword!" answered Liu Mang without turning back his head. In the Eastern Han Dynasty, Liu Mang held only a personal grudge against one and a half person! Old Cao was accounted as the half, since Old Cao attacked him only because he was beside Lu Bu at that time and

it could be said that was an unexpected misfortune.

And Chen Deng was the other person he hated.

Chen Deng wanted to take his life while traveling on the way to Langye. “It was only because I was wearing the Aries gold cloth. You even assembled your big army to take my life.” Liu Mang thought.

Liu Mang must kill this bastard.

“That’s enough!”Lu Bu shouted in anger. The shout immediately stopped Liu Mang from going mad.For Liu Mang, Lu Bu was like a strict father. He could control Liu Mang just with a few words.

“Haha!”Chen Deng gave off a wry smile. Lu Bu did not have any sons but only a daughter. Currently Liu Mang was Lu Bu’s future successor who was gonna lead Lu Bu’s army. But now this successor hated him to the guts.

“Deng, is paying his respects to the Prince!” Chen Deng bowed down to Liu Mang.

As the situation indicated, Chen Deng probably had already surrendered to Lu Bu and could now be considered as Boss Lu’s subordinate. Chen Deng’s father got killed by Cao Cao, therefore the Chen family and Old Cao were now sworn enemies. Right now there was no one except Yuan Shao of Hebei who could rival Old Cao under the heaven. Chen Deng cannot come up with any warlord who dared to offend Cao Cao.

Yi Province and Jing Province both were only interested in defending themselves and had no ambitions to broaden their territory. In Xiliang, Ma Teng, Han Sui and those other feudal warlords in Zhili Provinces acted like dead people. They would be sooner or later conquered by Cao Cao. As for Yuan Shao, he got power and money to rival Old Cao. However, if Chen Deng went there, he probably would not receive a good position as Yuan Shao had too many advisers. Yuan Shao himself did not even how many advisers he had right now.

The only remaining force was Lu Bu. Although the Lu Bu army's force was small, as long as their fierce tiger Commander Lu Bu was alive, they could still make a comeback.

Cao Cao had stolen Xu Province from Lu Bu and according to Lu Bu's personality how could he not fight back. Therefore Chen Deng came to Lu Bu without any hesitations.

"Ah, hello!" They were already brother-in-arms, that's why Liu Mang could not go too far, right? Wait a moment. Why did they call me Prince? Liu Mang thought. Normally, people inside the Lu Bu army called him Sir or Lord, but never called him Prince. Usually someone who could be called Prince had to have such a titlel bestowed onto him.

"Cao Mengde had bestowed you the seal and title of Prince of Shu! The General of the southern expedition!" responded Lu Bu while seen Liu Mang's confusion.

"Prince of Shu?! General of the southern expedition?"Liu Mang could not comprehend Old Cao's thinking. Why would someone bestow the title

of prince to his enemy?

Liu Mang was trying hard to understand Old Cao's intention. Chen Gong saw the idiotic expression of helplessness on Liu Mang's face and started laughing. "Hanyang, Cao Cao recognized you as the emperor's younger brother and gave you the title of Prince of Shu. He was not intended to flatter you, but he wanted to kill you using borrowed knife."

"Murders with a borrowed knife?!"Liu Mang was not a fool and he started to understand what Chen Gong just said. Liu Mang got scared and cold sweat started to roll down his back. "Prince of Shu?" This was royal title. Lu Bu's title was only Marquis of Wen. The General of the southern expedition was supposed to govern both Yi and Jing Provinces. Such a title waS even above Lu Bu's title General Who Pacifies East. This could have Liu Mang killed easily. Fortunately, his boss was Lu Bu. If it were someone else who was suspicious, they would think it as a threat to have a subordinate whose title was even higher than thos eof themselves. He would then certainly be killed or imprisoned.

"Rest at ease, I am not Cao Mengde!"Lu Bu looked at Liu Mang who was sweating bullets and gave a laugh. Everyone knew that Mengde was overly suspicious to everything. "

"Cao Cao' scheme was a good one, but unfortunately he had to throw out a lot of money after his fallen soldiers right now!" Gong also laughed. It was not true that Lu Bu would not suspect anyone, but at least he treated his family well. Actually the reason why Lu Bu could be caught by Song Xian was that he had too much faith in them.

Now Liu Mang was Lu Bu's son-in-law and everything that Lu Bu owned would be inherited by Liu Mang. There was no point in being suspicious.

Having a Prince title could be a big advantage for the Lu Bu army. A righteous cause must always be grasped in one's hand.

"What is our next destination?!"Liu Mang asked Lu Bu and other people.

"Go to Shouchun!" Lu Bu replied "Conquer Runa and threaten Xu Chang!" According to the news Lu Bu obtained, Yuan Shao had already moved his troops to Guandu. Hebei probably had mostly been pacified and Cao Cao had also conquered Xu Province. It could be said that Cao Cao secured his rear. This two tigers would fight to the death soon, that was why Lu Bu was determined to occupy Runan and eventually control Yu Province.

"Occupy Runan?!"Liu Mang did not know the location of Runan, but he knew that historically there was someone stupid enough to threaten Cao Cao in Runan. At the end he was killed by Old Cao. What was that stupid person's name? Liu Mang thought about it. Right, that stupid person was called Liu Pi.

"You all had the same thoughts?!" inquired Liu Mang looking at both advisers.

"Ah!"Chen Deng was eager to get his revenge and therefore conquering Runan to threaten Xu Du was exactly what he wanted.

Chen Gong just smiled and did not say anything.

"No matter what, we cannot go to Runan!" Liu Mang finally calmed

down and gave his response.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 43 - To Or Not To Runan?

“What do you mean?!” Lu Bu frowned. To go to Shouchun and conquer Runan was the stratagem that Lu Bu and Chen Deng had came up with. The two were even zestfully discussing about how to develop the county into one that could threaten Old Cao’s XuDu after conquering it. Who would have imagined that they would be immediately shut down by someone before they could even implement their plans.

[TL: Runan is a county in Yu Province (presently, it is located in Zhumadian, Henan Province)]

[TL: Shouchun is a county in Yu Province, (presently it is known as Shou County and located in Anhui Province.)]

[TL: Parts of both the Anhui Province and Henan Provinces belonged to the ancient Yu Province.]

[TL: XuDu is Cao Cao’s capital.]

“That’s right, Prince! Traitor Cao was soon to be engaged with Yuan Shao in a great battle in Guandu. If we were to not take Runan now and threaten Cao Cao’s XuDu, then we will no longer have an opportunity to do so! When two tigers fight, one will certainly get injured. When that time comes, it shall be the time for our lord to take raise his flag again!” Chen Deng’s idea was indeed very alluring. Had Liu Mang not knew of that moron called Liu Pi or something then he would certainly joined Chen Deng’s boat toward Shouchun, conquer Runan and finally set out for XuDu to threaten Old Cao’s rear.

[TL: rear in this aspect refers to the supply line. Nope, not the butt.]

[TL: Battle of Guandu. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Guandu

If they were lucky, they might even be able to capture XuDu and obtain the emperor. At that time, with the emperor in hand, they

But they can't. That Liu Pi was located at Runan. Did you say Liu Pi wasn't Lu Bu and doesn't possess the bravery and fierceness that Lu Bu have and that's why he was defeated in Runan? Oh please! He was defeated even though Yuan Shao sent the three peach brothers to help him. Although the three peach brothers can't rival Lu Bu, they were still able to fight against him.

At last, the three peach brothers ended up fleeing to Jing Province and Liu Pi ended up dying in Runan.

Seeing Lu Bu's expression, Liu Mang knew that he must find a way to persuade Lu Bu otherwise this Boss Lu of his would not change his decision. He knew that he can't just go and tell Lu Bu that there's an idiot who thought of the same thing that he's planning to do - to attack Cao Cao's XuDu from Runan - and ended up getting killed by Old Cao!

Right when Liu Mang didn't know what to do, he saw that there was a man standing behind Lu Bu smiling. It was Chen Gong. Immediately he found his way out. "Old Man Chen Gong knows!" As Liu Mang was well acquainted with Chen Gong, he called Chen Gong as Old Man.

"Watch your manner of speech." Lu Bu criticized Liu Mang and then turned around to ask Chen Gong. "Gongtai?!"

Right when Chen Gong wanted to decline speaking, Liu Mang spoke before him. “Military Advisor Chen, if you didn’t have a plan in mind, how could you possibly smile this happily?!” With those words, Liu Mang had blocked Chen Gong’s way out.

“Eh!” As Chen Gong was smiling the whole time, Liu Mang knew there was something in his mind. After all, if everyone was to be pondering and thinking over the way to solve a problem and you’re the only person standing there smiling, then there’s only two possibilities. One, you’re a fool. And two, you already have a stratagem planned out. It was obvious that Chen Gong wasn’t a fool, leaving with only the single possibility - Chen Gong had already thought of a stratagem.

“Gongtai, if you have words, please speak!” Lu Bu had also understood. Chen Gong certainly have something in mind. Otherwise, he would not be standing there smiling at Liu Mang the whole time. Having worked with Chen Gong all these years, Lu Bu knew of Chen Gong’s personality well.

“My Lord!” Chen Gong gave a wry smile while shaking his head. He originally wanted to see how Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang, would convince his lord. However now, Liu Mang had passed the ball to him instead.

Chen Gong wasn’t as direct as Liu Mang. He knew that regardless of what happened, Lu Bu is still a warlord. Although he have only remnant soldiers and scattered generals as his army now, his dignity was still incomparable. Should you directly question his way of thinking, then it’s to not respect him. In that case, even if his thinking was proven wrong, he might still be stubborn about it and refuse to accept being wrong.

“My lord, do you know why Cao Mende attacked our Xu Province?!”

Chen Gong instead asked a question back at Lu Bu.

"Why Cao Mende attacked our Xu Province?!" Lu Bu thought for a moment and then looked at Chen Deng causing Chen Deng to be very embarrassed. One of the major reason why Old Cao wanted to conquer Xu Province was because of the offer the Chen family gave him. However, Lu Bu didn't say it clearly. Instead, he said. "Xu Province had a lot of foodstuffs!"

"Haha!" Chen Gong laughed.

Chen Deng took over Chen Gong's question. "It's better for Deng to continue. It was because Deng's old father sent Traitor Cao a secret letter. In the letter, it laid down my lord and Liu Bei's personal complaints and also the map of the defense layout of Xu Province!" Chen Deng decided to laid everything out in the open. Even though Lu Bu was trying to save him face, the generals under Lu Bu would still have lingering fears as he had once rebelled against Lu Bu. In that case, he figured he might as well just expose everything and admit his mistake.

After hearing Chen Deng's speech, Liu Mang learned why Lu Bu would lose Xu Province so quickly. He had an army of seventy thousand, even if he was to be a pig, he would still be able to last half a year against Cao Cao. Who would've expected that each and every move of his were monitored by Old Cao - where he plans to transfer his soldiers, where he goes, the amount of provisions he had, all of them were known to Old Cao.

Chen Deng's selling out of his master was very skillfully done.

Even though Lu Bu had already forgotten this thing, he still gave Chen Deng a couple more glances when Chen Deng exposed everything.

"Haha. Yuanlong, that is not true at all!" Chen Gong deliberately paused mid speech so that Chen Deng would speak the words in his heart. Some words are better spoken than kept within.

If Chen Deng didn't speak the cause, then perhaps Lu Bu might be afraid of putting him in important positions. After all, he had betrayed Lu Bu once. Who knows if he would betray Lu Bu a second time. Likewise, Chen Deng would also be uneasy. He would begin to guess what Lu Bu would be thinking, whether Lu Bu would try to settle the score with him. If the ruler and his minister were to be at odds, it would make the situation to be very bad.

"Teacher Gongtai, is there anything you can teach this Deng?!" Chen Deng wasn't a fool. How could he not know what Chen Gong wanted to do after hearing Chen Gong's speech? After letting the words that he kept within his heart out through his mouth, he does indeed felt a lot more comfortable. He had shown his lord Lu Bu that he, Chen Deng, had betrayed him but had also turned over a new leaf and was willing to accept any punishment.

"For me to teach you is out of the question, it's just a single opinion of mine! Even if there wasn't the Chen family working from within, there would still be another Li family or Wu family. Even if there wasn't any of these influential families, Cao Mende would still not abandon his conquest of Xu Province!" Said Chen Gong while shaking his head. "My lord had said that Xu Province's earth is great for growing crops, however my lord, you ought to remember that Xu Province was the location of four battles! Other bordering Cao Mende's Yan Province, it also borders the Qing, Yang and Yu Provinces. The Yuan Tan of Qing Province, the Yuan Shu

of Yang Province, do you perhaps think they didn't have interest in the Xu Province? Cao Mende obtaining Xu Province will only cause him a greater distraction!" Analyzed Chen Gong.

"Distraction? Since it was the location of four battles, why did Cao Mende still insist on taking over Xu Province?!" Liu Mang was completely ignorant of the military affairs.

"This was precisely because it was the location of four battles that Cao Mende had to take it!" Chen Gong directly got to the point. "Guandu! Yuan Shao of Hebei and Cao Cao of the Central Planes, the battle between these two are bound to determine a winner. The winner of the two shall conspire to conquer all eight provinces and obtain the whole world. As for the loser, his family will be destroyed and killed. Neither Yuan Shao nor Cao Cao could afford to lose.

"Cao Cao had obtained the emperor. Yuan Shao, on the other hand, had pacified the rear. A steady rear allows for a steady flow of supply of provisions to the Yuan Shao army soldiers. However, Cao Cao did not have such a rear. To the north was Zhili with Guo Si. To the south was Yuan Shu. My lord, although Guo Si occupied Changan, he is but an autumn grasshopper soon to overlive his life. As for Yuan Shu, he had declared himself the emperor and thus lost all his allies and was uttered isolated. Thus, the only place left was my lord's Xu Province."

"My lord, you are a fierce tiger!" Said Chen Gong as if sighing. "Cao Mende had already suffered the deficit in not having a rear to provide provisions for his troops! He would not allow for a second time!"

The first time that Chen Gong speak of was Old Cao's first expedition against Xu Province. At that time, the Xu Province was still under Tao

Qian's rule. Old Cao had past one obstacle over another and almost reached and killed Tao Qian. It was Lu Bu. Lu Bu had entered via Puyang and attacked Old Cao's Yan Province and conquered more than ten cities and almost causing Cao Cao to be finished.

As they say, once bitten, twice shy. One would not allow another to sleep soundly in one's own bed. This Xu Province was the gate of the Yan Province. If there were to be a battle in Guandu and Lu Bu were to attack Yan Province again, then Old Cao would really be finished.

If he were to be attacked on both sides, he would be unable to resist. Thus, using the opportunity given by Yuan Shao pacifying Hebei, Cao Cao decided to pacify Lu Bu at the same time. Only through killing this fierce tiger could Cao Cao's mind be set to rest in the major battle against Yuan Shao in Guandu.

"Regarded as an obstacle!" Liu Mang finally understood. It was not the prosperity of the Xu Province that attracted Old Cao. It was the Boss Lu of Xu Province that attracted Old Cao.

Old Cao's original idea was to subdue Boss Lu and then battle it out with Yuan Shao with Boss Lu in his camp. Alas, an arrow from Old Man Chen Gong almost shot him in the dick causing him to be furious and began attacking Boss Lu. This was how this they ended up in this tragic situation.

"Gongtai, you meant?!" Lu Bu seemed to have understood something.

"This Runan was the second Xu Province. Cao Mende would not allow anyone to threaten his rear before a decisive battle. Thus, he would

certainly gather up his troops to cleanse the rear first!" Immediately, Chen Gong pointed out why trying to conquer Runan was a bad idea.

Hearing Chen Gong's speech, Lu Bu was also surprised into a cold sweat. Should he really conquer Runan only to have Cao Cao besiege the city again, Lu Bu does not believe he could have the luck to escape a third time.

Chen Deng also turned pale with fright. He was muddled by hatred, he had only thought of the current situation and not what would happen in the future.

"Then where shall we go now?!" Asked Lu Bu. They were already enroute to Shouchun. The route toward the north was already blocked. All they could do now was to go toward the south.

"Toward Jiangxia to Xinye!" Chen Gong pointed to the map.

[TL: I figured a map would be useful. http://www.threekingdoms.com/map2.htm Jiangxia is by Lake Dongting. Xinye is above Han River]

"No, we shall still go to Runan!" Liu Mang retorted again.

"Hmm?!" Chen Gong eyes narrowed. It was Liu Mang who said not to go to Runan. And now, it was Liu Mang again who said to go to Runan. What exactly does he wanted?

Lu Bu and Chen Tend was also very confused.

“The route to Xinye through Jiangxia is a very long distance. Additional, we have to take the river. Does everyone in the army know how to swim?!” Liu Mang was very scared when he said those words. He fears that Lu Bu would say that everyone in his army knew how to swim. In that case, he’ll be fucked. Liu Mang gets seasick. He is afraid of boats and ships. He only decided to oppose after seeing the map and noticing that they would have to go through the river.

“Swim?!” Lu Bu frowned. Both the Bing Province Soldiers and the Xu Province Soldiers were from the north. Not many of them knew how to swim.

“Should we go through Jiangxia, it would be great if Huang Zu were to allow us to pass. However, if he doesn’t, then once we reached the surface of the river, then we shall become sitting ducks!” Said Liu Mang firmly. He was very very afraid of water. This was because when he was a kid, he almost died drowning.

[TL: Huang Zu is an administrator of Jing Province, Jiangxia is one of his commandery.]

Lu Bu looked toward Chen Gong.

Chen Gong thought for a bit and then said. “Hanyang have a valid argument!” Liu Mang was titled the General of the Southern Expedition who was supposed to govern the Jing and Yu Provinces. According to reasons, Liu Biao of Jing Province would still be Liu Mang’s subordinate. However, how would these feudal warlords possibly be willing to give up the power in their hands?! Once Liu Biao have the intent to kill, he really could exterminate the whole Lu Bu army atop the river.

[TL: Liu Biao is the boss of Huang Zu and owns the Jing Province. However, Huang Zu is in control of Jiangxia. Pretty much like how Lu Bu was controlling Xu Province but Langye was given autonomy control to Zang Ba.]

"However Runan!" Chen Gong hesitated.

"Rest assured!" Ling Mang composed himself and said. "Although we cannot occupy Runan, I still have a way!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 44 - Building An Army (1)

Kaiyang to Xiapi was over five hundred li, from Xiapi to Shouchun was another five hundred li, if they were to pass through Runan, that's another thousand and five hundred li. Although the Lu Bu army was mostly cavalries, their horses would still get exhausted from the distance. Furthermore,it was difficult for the carriages carrying Lu Bu's family to expedite their speed.

Chen Deng had removed everything of worth from Guangling, everything else that cannot be moved like houses and lands were turned into foodstuffs, golds and war supplies. Thus, in addition to the four thousand war horses Liu Mang brought over, Chen Deng had also brought with him two thousand war horses to the Lu Bu army. As for the soldiers, Chen Deng have brought with him all those that are loyal to the Chen family that didn't have their own families or was willing to abandon their families to repay the kindness of the Chen family - over twenty thousand soldiers.

After Lu Bu took out the the old, sick or disabled, there's still fifteen thousand strong and healthy men.

Lu Bu turned the five thousand old, sick or disabled into supply troops and transferred two thousand strong and robust soldiers that knew how to ride horses from the fifteen thousand healthy soldiers to the Bing Province Wolf Cavalry that was left with less than a thousand strong after the battle of Xu Province. The only reason they were able to best the Cao troops and display their might on horses in the battle of Kaiyang was because of the soldiers from the Formation Breaker and the Xu Province soldiers. Only with those troops did the leadership from the Bing

Province Wolf Cavalry managed to bring out the strength of the cavalry.

There were five thousand robust individuals amongst the fifteen thousand strong and healthy men, two thousand of them was taken to become cavalries, of the remaining three thousand, two thousand men were taken by Gao Shun to become new soldiers of the Formation Breaker. His Formation Breaker was badly damaged and even nearly annihilated from the previous battles; it needed to be reestablished and replenish the lost soldiers. As for why the originally eight hundred strong Formation Breaker needed two thousand soldiers, that's because Liu Mang brought back with him five thousand large shields, enough to allow Gao Shun to produce five thousand Formation Breaker troops. Had it not been for the lack of heavy armors, then Gao Shun might've really asked for five thousand new troops.

"What? You're giving me a thousand robust men to construct a new battalion?!" Liu Mang had just woken up and was still a bit muddle minded, however, Chen Gong have already came bringing with him the orders from Lu Bu.

"What's with that?!" Liu Mang didn't come to this world in order to become a general, had it not been for the existence of Lu Bu and his transfer cd, Liu Mang perhaps would've already left this world. While Liu Mang had brought to Lu Bu countless war-horses and armors, that was all for Boss Lu to fight in the frontline with. He planned to only follow Lu Bu and live comfortably from behind the frontline. In the situation that it would help, he'll use his knowledge of the two thousand year old history of the Three Kingdoms to help Lu Bu. And if he can't then so be it, he'll just stick around and go with the flow.

And now, Boss Lu wanted me to construct a battalion and join the frontline? What the heck is with this? With my fighting strength of five,

how could I possibly do anything other than being killed right away?

"You're pushing me to do something way beyond my ability!" Said Liu Mang powerlessly. It wasn't as if the Lu Bu army didn't have generals; aren't Gao Shun and Zhang Liao generals?

"Generals Gao Shun and Zhang Liao needed to reconstruct their respective troops, they are currently busy!" Said Chen Gong smiling.

"Then what about Chen Deng?!" Liu Mang remembered that even though Chen Deng was just a scholar, his marital strength was no weaker than a second rated general, he could be considered as a scholar-general.

"Oh, Yuanlong? He is busy commanding the remaining ten thousand soldiers!" Chen Gong continued to answer Liu Mang.

"Don't he also have two familial generals?!" Liu Mang remembered that amongst the soldiers and horses that Chen Deng brought over, there was two familial generals.

"That's right, one of the two familial generals were commanding five thousand spearmen and the other five thousand shielded blade soldiers!" explained Chen Gong.

"You really want me to command them?! Can't you find someone else?!" complained Liu Mang.

"This was my lord's intention, if you want to decline then please speak

with him yourself!" Said Chen Gong, holding back his laughter.

"Talk with Boss Lu myself?!" Had it been a day ago, Liu Mang was daring enough to do such a thing. However now, he wants to flee whenever he sees Lu Bu. Why? That's because Boss Lu have started to taken the role of the father-in-law more and more. Whenever Liu Mang met him, he would lecture him on everything from how to command soldiers to how to act with one's family and then to everything else. It was as if Lu Bu was trying to teach Liu Mang everything that he know.

"In that case, I shall take my leave! Your thousand troops are located in the main barracks."

"Don't… don't! Old man Chen Gong!" Before Liu Mang was able to respond, Chen Gong had already left.

"Fuck!" Liu Mang doesn't even have the strength to curse anymore, he have to immediately rush to the thousand troops located in the main barracks. Lu Bu had already given the orders, if he were not to go to the main barracks, he shall be punished according to the martial law.

Only through taking an immense amount of effort did Liu Mang managed to put the Aries Gold Cloth on. One cannot go to the main barracks wearing regular outfit, even scholars must wear their side sword when going to the main barracks. Failure to do so signify a lack of respect toward the soldiers and once the hearts of the soldiers were swayed, then there would be immense consequences.

"These are my soldiers?!" When Liu Mang arrived at the main barracks, he started to mumble to himself. It wasn't as if he had never led soldiers

before. Back in the Battle of Xiapi, he had led three hundred soldiers to rescue Lu Bu. However, that was an emergency situation and the amount of soldiers were also small, thus Liu Mang was able to lead them. However, what currently stood in front of him was a thousand soldiers. Heh!

The only thing Liu Mang could do was chuckle. That was because standing in front of him was a thousand heads staring at him.

“Your Highness, you have arrived!” Liu Mang saw someone that he know, wasn’t this person who is holding his fist out in respect toward me Cheng Yu? Chengg Yu have survived both the Battle of Xiapi and the Battle of kaiyang and was thus dispatched by Lu Bu to become Liu Mang’s assistant.

“Good! Very good!” Liu Mang didn’t know how to speak. Standing behind Cheng Yu was eighty five individuals. Liu Mang was familiar with all of them, they were the survivors of the troops that he led in Xiapi. Standing in front of him was a thousand pairs of eyes. Their stares had caused Liu Mang to be completely flustered. The only thing Liu Mang thought of was to imitate the ways the boss in TV shows address their underlings.

“Your highness is overpraising us!” Liu Mang was the successor of Lu Bu, the young master of the Lu Bu army. Thus, being praised by Liu Mang had caused Cheng Yu to be very happy. Without mentioning anything else, just by Liu Mang’s title of the Prince of Shu had caused all these soldiers to greatly revere him.

Liu Mang took a deep breath. What stood before him was a thousand pairs of eyes and also a thousand lives. Liu Mang had thought that

because he had experienced a couple large battles, his heart would've grew cold. However, upon seeing those simple and honest eyes, he had once again grew softhearted.

The soldiers that Chen Deng have brought with him were likely former peasants, farmers, and other common people. They did not seek much, all they sought was an acknowledged place in the warring era, a place where they would not starve, a place where they could live.

The incompetence of a general would cause the death of the whole army! These thousand soldiers have now all become his subordinates, he is now responsible for all their futures, all their lives.

After taking the another slow and deep breath, Liu Mang said. "Soldiers, perhaps you know me, perhaps you don't, however I must tell you all today: I, Liu Mang, from today henceforth, am your general! I will be bringing you all to the battlefield! Perhaps the smiles that you saw today will be forever gone! Perhaps in a single battle, the arms or legs that have been with your all your life would suddenly disappear! However, what I want to tell you all was that I, Liu Mang, am unable to promise that you will survive in the battlefield, but I could tell you clearly: As long as you're alive, I will never forsake you! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!"

"Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!?" Standing at a side, Cheng Yu was dumbstruck. He was a Prince, he was the Prince of Shu, he was the successor of Lu Bu, he actually shouted 'together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor'? One must know that what stood in front of him was a group of common soldiers, they were only a group of ordinary people.

“Shit!” Liu Mang also became aware of the mistakes in his words, ‘together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor’, only two things could cause someone to say that. One, during the time one swore brotherhood and two, during the time of a rebellion. If you want someone to risk their lives for you, then you would have to say those words, otherwise, who would bother risking their lives for you? However, how many actually shared the riches and honor that they obtained? It was possible to die together, however sharing riches and honor was hard to accomplish.

Neither Liu Mang nor Cheng Yu was able to anticipate that once Liu Mang said those words, the soldiers were immediately stirred up. They were shouting loudly: “We pledge our lives to follow the general till death! We pledge our lives to follow the general till death!” How many generals was able to say ‘together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor’? In a general’s eye, the soldiers might just be capitals to promote their positions or capitals to show their strength.

Let wrong be wrong! Liu Mang steadied himself and shouted. “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!”

“Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!” Perhaps Liu Mang’s speech had influenced these soldiers, they also started shouting after Liu Mang.

Their voice was heard throughout the main barracks.

Lu Bu was looking at the map in the main tent. As the commander of the army, he naturally had to be certain of the routes. Suddenly, he heard

the shouts that could even shake the heavens. Immediately, he called for some soldiers to inquire them about what happened.

"Hanyang?!" Soon, Lu Bu found out the source of the noise. With his eyes flickering, Lu Bu mumbled. "Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!?" Oh Hanyang, exactly how big was your ambition?

All the other generals had also heard the noise. Each and every one of them had a complicated expression. No one knew what they were thinking.

The army of the Great Han actually shouted the slogan of rebels.

Chapter 45 Building an Army (2)

Liu Mang did not expect that a few words from him would take over these 1085 people's heart.

He had never led a battalion consisting of over one thousand of people before. Leader of a squad consisting five people is called five-man squad leader, leader of a section consisting ten people is called section leader, leader of a platoon consisting fifty people is called platoon leader, leader of a squadron consisting one hundred people is called 100-man commander, leader of a company of a consisting two hundred people is called 200-man commander. And finally, the leader of a battalion consisting one thousand people is called a 1000-man commander, which in this case was Liu Mang while Cheng Yu became his lieutenant and second-in-command.

After sending 85 veterans from his army to be section leaders, he kept Cheng beside him. Since Boss Lu's intention was to name Cheng Yu as his Lieutenant, therefore no one else was allowed to get this position. Cheng Yu would take command of the whole camp at Liu Mang's absence.

Liu Mang had already decided on the name of the camp. What is the strongest army in the 21st century? It was the army from urban management. Who were the strongest soldiers? They were the member of urban management.

Therefore Liu Mang had named his army urban management. The force of three thousand soldiers of urban management is powerful enough to dominate the world!

Liu Mang had waited till before everyone was in position before giving the order. Everyone thought that he was going to lead everybody to practice martial arts, but surprisingly, Liu Mang was leading people to bask in the sun.

Martial arts? If Liu Mang was able to conduct martial arts, then pigs would be able to climb trees. It was unwise to reveal his shortcomings as his battle force was so weak. Even Cheng Yu was only a lower second-rate military officer.

The only thing that Liu Mang could do now was to rectify the army. The first step in a military training is to practice the standing pose.

“Han Yang has already led his army standing for the most of the day?!” Lu Bu looked bewildered after listening to the report from the soldiers. What kind of general would make his army stand for such a long time? Not to mention that the sun is hanging high in the sky, can standing improve the battle force of the army? Lu Bu felt a headache. He began to wonder if he had made a mistake by giving Liu Mang an army.

“How about Cheng Yu? Hasn’t he stopped him?!” Lu Bu asked. He was not familiar with the Cheng Yu until he made a name for himself in the battle of Kaiyang. If not to help Liu Mang to build his army, by now Cheng Yu would have joined Gao Shun’s army or Zhang Liao’s Bing Province Wolf Calvary. Lu Bu even had a thought of promoting Cheng Yu to be his private guard.

“No, Lieutenant Cheng is also standing!” The common soldier replied.

“What?!” Although Lu Bu frown his eyebrows, he did not stop them

right away, but waved his hands to dismiss the soldier." Standing? With a pose?"

Exactly, the entire army was standing under the scorching sunshine. Every soldier was getting numb legs and sweat-soaked back. However, not even a single one among the 1805 soldiers made a complaint, because their commander, Liu Mang, was standing in the middle of the yard as well.

"Right, your feet should be closer to each other. And there should be an angel of 60°formed starting from your toes! What? You don't know what 60° is?!" Liu Mang sighed. In his previous life, the bottom bar to be a soldier was a graduation certificate from high school. But now? He was afraid that the kids in kindergartens would know more than they did.

"When you put two fists between your feet, you will have a 60°!"Liu Mang did not expect that they could be precise, but at least it should be roughly right.

"Yes that's good! Look at Lieutenant Cheng!" Liu Mang saw Cheng Yu as a real born soldier. He was able to acquire the essence of soldier's pose after he was taught only one time! His pose was serious but not obdurate.

"Standing straight, hold your stomach, throws out the chest, upper body upright, lean slightly forward, shoulders straight and slightly backward. Relax your arms, fingers close together bend naturally, head looking forward, neck is straight, mouth closed and eyes towards me."Liu Mang felt like teaching children about correct postures.

“Is everybody exhausted?!” Liu Mang asked with a smile. To tell the truth, Liu Mang was the person who felt tired. Fuck. He never expected that imitating the military training as an instructor would be so exhausting.

“Yes!” The soldier beside Cheng Yu almost spit out the word but got a kick from Cheng Yu in behind. So he immediately changed to say:”General, we are not tired!”

Holy shit, Cheng Yu, is you doing it on purpose? Liu Mang thought after seeing his little trick. How can I order to take a rest if you say you are not tired? Did you intend to make me drop dead?

In fact, Liu Mang misunderstood Cheng Yu. No matter who the general was, the last thing he would want was to hear the cry of exhaustion from his soldiers. They saw soldiers as a tool in war. How were they able to achieve their goals without polishing their tools?

Nonetheless, Liu Mang’s thinking was different. His mind was too modern. Better said, he had never seen how a real army conducted their training. In his simple view, the general should take the training with his men, or how could he win their loyalty?

“I can see that you are all tired!” Liu Mang said while acted shamelessly. His weak constitution could not hold on for any longer.

“Everyone sit down. Section leaders and platoon leaders go fetch water following squadron leaders and company leaders.” Before the training started, Liu Mang had ordered the army cooks to boil some hot water. The water from the river was clear but there had to be some

microorganism inside. It was not worth it if the water would cause diarrhea.

When the water was boiled, it would be much safer to drink.

Liu Mang took a big gulp after receiving the boiled water from Cheng Yu. The standing training was too exhausting in such hot weather. Besides, he needed to readjust their poses individually. Even then, they still could not do it in the right way. Liu Mang had to resist his temper, remain patient to teach them over and over again.

Cheng Yu could tell that Liu Mang was exhausted by now, since he was correcting the poses from everyone individually. If it were the general that Cheng Yu served before, he would have already whipped at the faulty soldier. When one whip was not enough, then one more whip would be applied. He would have the soldier beheaded if he still did it wrong for the third time.

After drinking up the water, Liu Mang sensed another problem. What could be the next move? These soldiers were looking at him, which made him feel so uneasy.

“Ehm, Ehm! Can you sing?!” Liu Mang suddenly got a nice idea. During military trainings, when the instructors were having a break, they either told the recruits to do something useless or to sing.

“Sing?!” Cheng Yu was dumbfounded. Was this price making a joke? This was a military training, why start singing? Only scholars would sing when they had a discussion to test each other.

“Exactly, singing!” Watching them, Liu Mang knew that most people could not sing. Who were these soldiers? Before becoming soldiers they were mostly villagers, to be more precise, children of peasants. They did not even know how to write or read, so how could they possibly know how to sing.

“Cheng Yu, what about you?!” From the whole bunch, Cheng Yu was the only one who had some education.

“I can!” Cheng Yu nodded.

“Really?!” Liu Mang was somewhat pleasantly surprised that Cheng Yu could actually sing.

“I only know a song that my mother taught me!” Cheng Yu eyes suddenly became a bit depressed. Liu Mang knew that he just reminded Cheng Yu about a sad event. Oh old Cao, nobody cared if you attack Xuzhou! If you wanted to take revenge on Old man Tao Qian, then do so. Why did you have to massacre the whole city?

Liu Mang patted Cheng Yu’s shoulder to both encourage and comfort him. “Sing, Sing before all your brothers!”

“General, I…!” Cheng Yu wanted to reject, but was immediately stopped by Liu Mang.

“If your mother was still alive, she would want you to have a happy life! Sing in front of all your brothers. Did we not swear to live or die together, share riches and honor together? Your mother is our mothers! Sing!”

finishing his sentence, Liu Mang faced towards the soldiers and said "Soldier, let's make your Lieutenant sing us a song, alright?!"

"Alright!"

"Lieutenant, please sing! We are all from Xuzhou and we brothers will always support you!"

"Do you see!" Liu Mang shouted out in encouragement.

"I...!" Cheng Yu was still a bit hesitant.

Liu Mang angrily pushed Cheng Yu "Cheng Yu, are you a man or a pussy. The brothers asked you to sing because they think highly of you. Don't insult us when everyone is giving you face!"

"General, I...!" Cheng Yu's face reddened "I am a man, not a pussy!"

"Good, then you sing! If you don't sing then you are a pussy"

"If you want me to sing, then I sing!" Cheng Yu fiercely stood up.

"Everybody, give an applause!" Liu Mang took the lead and clapped his hands, while the soldiers followed and created a commotion. When did they have the pleasure to listen to someone singing? Those who could sing were basically nobles and scholars. They were children of peasants who could barely fill their belly, let along sing?

Let’s share the plate for breast! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our lances shine. Your foe is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the coat and vest! The king’s raised forces to the line. The king’s raised forces to the line. Your job is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the kilt and the rest! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our armor shine, And march, your hand in mine. Are you not battle-drest?

“Country dispatched their troops to war, we repair the weapons, I and you are facing the common foe.”

….

Patting his hands, Liu Mang tried to encourage Cheng Yu. Even though Cheng Yu was a tall and strong guy, he was feeling serious embarrassed, while singing. But wasn’t singing used to express your feelings? Let out your emotions and enjoy the music.

Cheng Yu included his entire memory of his mother into the song.

This song was created in the Qin dynasty, reflected the solidarity between common soldiers. Resisting together mentally against their powerful foe. The entire song was divided into three verses and used the tone language of common soldiers. It sang about the eve of the last battle, the common soldiers gather together to repair and maintain their weapons. During this period, some soldier started worrying about their uniforms.

His brothers showed their companionship and encourage him: “Let’s share the coat and vest!“

Let’s share the plate for breast!” This song also encouraged the companions to act righteous: “Country dispatched their troops to war, we repair the weapons, I and you are facing the common foe.” From his song, one could not only see the friendship between common soldiers, but also see them in the time of national needs and act willingly and patriotically sacrifice themselves. The sentences in this song are in short, passionate tone, which vividly displayed the scene of common Qin soldiers’ common hatred while joining the army.

Just by seeing Cheng Yu’s mother teaching him this song, one could guest that she was not a regular peasant housewife.

Liu Mang saw the corner of Cheng Yu’s eyes tearing up. It was not easy for men to shear tear. When facing Cao Pi in that desperate situation while prepare to fight to death, Cheng Yu did not cry. Today while singing this song, Cheng Yu started to tear up.

“Cheng Yu come here!” Liu Mang patted this young man. Cheng Yu was still young and only 18 years old. If he was born in the modern era, he would still be a kid who just left high school and war preparing to go to university. It would mean that a good time ahead of him. However in this era of war, could you imagine that this young man had already killed one hundred men?

“Cheng Yu look! There are 1000 brothers in front of you! Your mother is gone, but you have so many brothers. While your mother is gone, if she

knew that you are unhappy, if she knew that you live in sadness, tell me do you think she would rest well?!" Liu Mang was also a person while little experience in this world, but right now he had to take care of a young man who was even younger than him.

"General!" Cheng Yu wiped his tears from the corner of his eyes.

"You eyes need to look forward. In front of you is a bright light, in front of you is your destiny so rush bravely forward. At your back are 1000 brothers!" Declared Liu Mang and his face suddenly became cold.

"Lieutenant!"

"Here!" Hearing Liu Mang shouting out a military order, Cheng Yu stood firm. "I have an important task for you! I order you to teach your 1000 brothers-in-arm about the song your mother taught you! Do you understand?!"

"Yes!"

"Then go" Liu Mang said with a smile. While looking Cheng Yu surrounded by the 1000 troops, Liu Mang turned his back on them. Tears could be seeing in the corner of his eyes, because Cheng Yu's song had reminded him of his mother.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 46 - Army March (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

"Urban Management Army?!"Lu Bu brow frowned, what strange name is this? Usually elite soldiers is using the name of the location where it was formed, for example the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Danyang soldiers, Qing Province Soldiers, and there is a name that using tiger's ferociousness for its title, for example Ferocious Cavalry, but no one ever named an army as Urban Management Army.

[TL Note: From Chapter 45, there is a sentence "Urban Management Army is the strongest in the world", this is actually a joke (satire) due to their harshness to common people. My guess is they put a subtle joke in here due to Liu Mang is still weak and hiding behind the strong Lu Bu army, some kind like a bully if I may say.]

"You said that he still practicing on standing?!" Lu Bu asked rhetorically."Yes, Milord!" Replied messenger while lowering his head. "Now they not only practice standing but learning Goose step!""Goose step?!"Lu Bu surprised, what is this thing?.

[TL: Goose step. Reference: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Goose_step]

"Yes, it is like this!" Messenger demonstrated what Urban Management Army is practicing, the Goose step.

"Doing goose step?!" Lu Bu looked at the messenger's every movement and his brow wrinkled even further. If practice standing like before, Lu Bu can also understand that it is a military law demonstration. Saying that obedience to command must be excellent, after all Liu Mang has killed a

soldier before for disobedience.

Now after practicing to standing, now practicing to do goose step? If practicing battle formation it is okay, after all when in battlefield, we need coordination with each other, but do that boy understood battlefield? Lu Bu is really confused, what the hell is this boy thinking!

Cao Cao and Yuan Shao in Guandu already like fire and water, therefore when Boss Lu left Xu Province not only he do not send out troops to pursue but also makes the surrounding Cao army let him pass smoothly. Because, Cao Cao did not want Boss Lu unmonitored.

Due to not having any troops in pursuit of Lu Bu army, Boss Lu have enough time to recuperate his units. Now Lu Bu army not only consists of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker but also Liu Mang's Urban Management Army.

Lu Bu's intuition is correct, Liu Mang's goose step parade is also an actual matter for battlefield, his battle formation is not change into snake but also not changed into goose formation, moreover it is impossible to change it into circular defense formation. These formation perhaps a very strong one, but Liu Mang do not understand about formation at all. There fore he can only use square formation, square formation parade goose step.

“Milord!” While Lu Bu still thinking, a mighty general walked in and said a few but straight words “Milord, Hanyang took 200 warhorses from me!”From the total less than 6000 warhorses, Zhang Liao have planned to set up 3 platoon of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, but now creating 3000 Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is becoming more difficult. Zhang Liao cannot directly disagree with Liu Mang, after ll these warhorses was

brought by Liu Mang, so he can only report it to Lu Bu.

"Oh?!" Lu Bu surprised. When Liu Mang formed Urban Management Army, he requested a military order that decreed Urban Management Army can take any military supplies without reporting, who knows that this boy use it almost immediately.

"Does he want to form cavalry unit?!" Lu Bu think about that 200 warhorses, his Urban Management Army only less than 1000 people right now, he thinks to ride? If like that, a dozen warhorses should be sufficient, not to mention those warhorses that Liu Mang took are Ferghana horses.

What affect can several hundred cavalry soldiers have? A cavalry less than thousand people are unable to be called a unit.

Here Lu Bu not yet finished thinking, Gao Shun also come to complain "Milord, Hanyang took 300 pieces of great shields from my Formation Breaker unit. These great shields is a really good treasure. These shields not only light but also big and very sturdy can resist arrow volley without wearing out the shield. So Gao Shun loved thess shields greatly and all of a sudden Liu Mang took 300 of them! It would not be right if he do not complain to Lu Bu about this.

"He took also 300 great shields?!" These great shields only suit for the heavy infantry, for breaching enemy lines, what the hell is Liu Hanyang thinking?

At this time around, Zhang Liao's subordinate came in and whisper something in Zhang Liao's ear. Zhang Liao's voice at this time get very loud "What, he also took 800 cavalry javelin? Milord, you see that!".

Lu Bu had a headache, what the hell Liu Hanyang doing? What do you want to with cavalry javelin? That thing is no good in close quarters combat. You form cavalry soldiers took 200 warhorses, now 800 javelins.

"Gongtai, you want to complain also? Quick said, what Liu Hanyang took from you?!" Chen Gong who just entered the commander's tent, also confused. When Lu Bu explained, he laughed.

"I, Chen Gong, not come here to complain!" He shook his head while smiling. His purpose come to the tent is to tell Lu Bu to march tomorrow, but he did not expect to be encountered with such questions.

"Oh, yes, if you did not ask that question then I have also forgot. It seems, Hanyang also took 700 bows from Chen Deng!"Chen Gong also adds in.

"This Liu Hanyang someday want me to beat him, he want to amuse me with what!" Actually Lu Bu is also very curious with Liu Mang doing! Why he need so much tools for only 1000 soldiers.

800 javelins, 300 great shields, 200 warhorses, what weird creatures will come out of this? With these equipment, you can make formation consists of 5000 people.

Speaking of that, Liu Mang really give birth to a really weird creature.

200 warhorses, given to 100 soldiers. A person using two horses, maintaining enough horsepower. The arabian war horse's horsepower is high. The rider who is also acting as bodyguard equipped with javelin.

One can say, as long as do not have to fight big war, absolutely can protect oneself.

300 great shields, Liu Mang also give the cavalry soldier. This is the same treatment as Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. The remaining 200 shields was given to the front row. If 200 defense shield formed a good formation, then it can certainly protect these 1000 people.

800 javelin except 100 pieces that has been given to cavalry soldier, the remaining 700 javelins have all been given to other 700 soldiers. Those 700 bows also given to them. So the javelin soldier also can act as a bowman when long-range battle.

1000 people form a phalanx formation, 100 cavalry soldiers protecting flag. But people may ask, is Liu Mang's infantry can use cavalry javelin? Indeed conventional infantry soldier is impossible to use cavalry javelin because in close quarters combat, javelin impossible to show the strength. Even cavalry soldier draws sword on close quarters battle.

The phalanx formation that Liu Mang formed is different. The first row is for the shield troops, protecting and guarding front, behind is 700 javelin soldiers, it took 35 people in one row with total of 20 rows.

The first row of soldier is generally squat and align with the first javelin soldiers row. The second row of soldier, places his javelin on the shoulder of the first row. This can strengthen their destructive power. But the real essence of phalanx formation tactics lies in complete synchronization in all soldiers movement, so not in line with the formation, will compromised the tactics severely.

Therefore Liu Mang is very strict on that standing formation because if one people do not obey command, it will compromise the phalanx formation and can be broken by enemy.

That is correct, this is the famous Ancient Macedonian phalanxm the phalanx formation strikes the enemy directly, and those 100 cavalry soldiers protects the flank so as not to be besieged in all directions.

Right now it cannot be compared with the late Han elite units such as Danyang soldiers, Formation Breaker also with Great Ji soldiers and skirmishers of Ji Province, or with White soldiers or even Qing Province's elites! Liu Mang's prowess as a general also nowhere near Gao Shun or Zhang Liao. Also nowhere near Qu Yi's force not to say with Liu Guan Zhang.

TL: https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Macedonian_phalanx

TL: Qu Yi, Yuan Shao general known for his prowess defeating Gongsun Zan and on par with Zhao Yun

He can only have this tactics to compete with them, to work as one, unity as strength. If these elite units are wolves, then the present Urban Army are the sheep. If sheep work as one to attack, even wolves must retreat. 1000 people unity and striving to excel, can be compared as 5000 people.

TL: Urban Management Army is too tedious to write down, so from now on Urban Management Army is written as Urban Army

- - - -

- - - - -- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -- - - - - - -

At that time, when Liu Mang want to build Urban Army, Lu Bu complied with his request which to take any armament at will, but of course cannot do it due to intervention by Gao Shun and Zhang Liao complain report. The next day, the Urban army started to emerge by itself. Lu Bu is very curious and want to see what army Liu Mang has built, so he went to Liu Mang's camp.

When Lu Bu entered the camp, he saw a very well-formed phalanx formation. A very organized formation.

Before Liu Mang want to explain this phalanx formation, Lu Bu have pulled him closer.

“Today, we must leave, to march, after recuperation is over!” Liu Mang said.

When Liu Mang said this, a lot of soldier have a happy expression, maybe because they have been made miserable by Liu Mang these days. Not training martial arts but only practicing four monotone movements. Standing formation, Goose step, raise javelin, lay flat. This can put ill intent on these soldiers but now finally can rest a bit.

TL: Modern skills for ancient soldiers? But it is necessary for unity.

“Laugh, smile, happy, try to be as happy as possible!” Liu Mang also knows that these Urban Army have been harboring ill intent, but this is exactly the result that he want.

“So, no one complaining the training is boring? Want another new training?” Said Liu Mang while smiling. Urban Army who recognized this smiling gesture, become little afraid, because each time Liu Mang showed this gesture, there will be no good thing. Liu Mang threw down a big pile of cotton bags. Usually these sacks was filled with food but now has been used up and was borrowed by Liu Mang and he made a two straps sewn with a needle and a thread, a full 1085 sets.

TL: more like this https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Backpack

“These are the cloth backpack that my wives sewn?!” Lu Bu looks at these cloth backpack. Because couple of days ago, his wives was very busy due to Liu Mang brought these cloth sacks to add two straps, also few women participated in sewing these.

What he want to do?!

Then he saw Liu Mang take up cloth backpack on nearby slope, filling it with stones one by one until the entire backpack is full. Liu Mang then demostrating it by carrying the backpack behind him.

Oh, those two straps are used like that!, Lu Bu try to understood a little but he is truly not understand at all.

“Everyone steps forward and pick the backpack, and filled it with stone, takes both your weapon and armor and we begin the march!” Liu Mang shouted “Do you understand what I said!”

”We understand!”Everyone also shout with one voice.

Marching with stones on your back? Liu Hanyang is insane? From here to next camp site is at least a dozen li traveled. Carrying a weapon is very uncomfortable, now also carry stone? Lu Bu want to step forward to stop this craziness, but did not expect that one by one is also following their leader putting stones from slope in the backpack.

"Very good, it is very good!" Liu Mang also very satisfied that nobody questions him.

"I also carry the same heavy load with you crossing country! All cavalry soldiers dismount! You also carry stones with me!" Liu Mang said.

"Yes, sir!" 100 cavalry soldiers also got backpack filled with stones. On the back of each warhorses, they also put tent for troops garrison for their own usage.

"Everyone march!" Under the bright sunlight, Liu Mang took the lead to leave the camp. The big and powerful Urban Army also followed him.

Lu Bu looks at Liu Mang who already far away from him, is worried and talked to himself "He can really do training like this, huh?" After that Lu Bu laughed at himself, wondering when he began to be sentimental.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 47 - Father-in-Law? (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

After half a month marching with his own training regiment, Liu Mang felt that his own strength was stronger than ever.

Shouchun.... This Shouchun was once a very thriving capital and also the place where Yuan Shu proclaimed himself as emperor. But now, this place is in shambles, its people are scattered, its condition is real bad even miserable word is not enough to describe it.

“Yuan Gonglu's actions is really inhuman!”Said Chen Gong while looking at the ruined city. He cannot help but express his feelings. Yuan Shu, third brother of Yuan family's fourth generation. He once joined the alliance and together with 18 warlords who was gathered by Cao Cao to attack Dong Zhuo. Originally he come to Yu Province capital Runan, to affirm Yuan family's superiority. At the same time, he also held Henan region, which consists of two Provinces, Yu and Yang Provinces, while he also planned to observe this nation's political power shift before he could make his move. But, during these times, Yuan Gonglu got muddleheaded and carried away. After being handed down Imperial Seal by Sun Ce, he proclaimed himself as emperor in Shouchun.

TL: Yuan Shu's courtesy name is Yuan Gonglu. Yuxi is imperial jade seal, that was made by and handed down from Qin Shi Huang (First Qin Emperor) and is the symbol of sovereignty in Ancient China. For more information https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heirloom_Seal_of_the_Realm, right now, please tell me, do I need to write it down as Yuxi or Imperial Seal.

If Yuan Shu didn't get muddleheaded and proceed carefully, perhaps in a few decades, he will be the one on top of everything. But Yuan Shu is greedy, and he thought after proclaiming as emperor, he will be able to command whole nation verbally. Damn, even daydreaming didn't have this much delusions.

Chen Gong could help but shook his head and think. This is a chaos time. What person or to be correct, what warlord who do not have a thought to proclaim oneself as emperor? That would be a lot of them. And also there is also who is still loyal to Han Dynasty even if only a few.

"Gongtai! What are you thinking?"Asked Lu Bu, while he beat his horse to move at the same pace as Chen Gong. Chen Gong's expression is full of lamentation and sorrow.

"Milord!" Chen Gong nodded and shook his head.

"Sigh!" While Lu Bu still not understand what Chen Gong is thinking, another sighing sound also heard from behind. Lu Bu looked behind and found out that it is Liu Mang who made that sound.

"Is all the city in this late Han Dynasty looked like this?!" Liu Mang asked helplessly.

"Um?!" Chen Gong and Lu Bu's brow wrinkled, "Late Han Dynasty?" Han Dynasty not yet perished. But currently this is chaos times, so they also do not speak.

Liu Mang also realized that he spoke incorrect words, he should have

said “Is all city in this nation looked like this?!”. From Xiapi to Kaiyang, also when resting along the way. Everywhere is similar as Shouchun. Common people eyes are bleak and blank, heartbroken and simply do not have any hope to live.

“Majority in the whole nation probably looked same like Shouchun!” Chen Gong held back to say, entire nation. Because there is one and only one province that has not falled by chaos caused by war. That is Jing Province. Due to that peace state, many of scholars sought asylum in Jing Province.

"These damn warlord!" Liu Mang growled while biting his teeth.

"Damn warlord?!"Lu Bu looked at Liu Mang and ask this question subconsciously “Hanyang, do you really desire for peace and prosperity?!”

”Um! Why people of Han must kill each other, this is fratricidal completely!” Liu Mang do not know what these warlord are thinking. Is the position as emperor really that good?

"I got it!"Lu Bu seemed like have understand what Liu Mang said, and nodded toward Liu Mang. "Do not worry, that day will come!"

"Eh?!"Liu Mang whole face full of doubts, “Boss Lu, what part do you understand?”

Lu Bu patted Liu Mang shoulder to ask Chen Gong "male stage, you said Yuan Shu he did have the grain and fodder really?!"Reason that Lu

Bu will arrive at Shouchun, main taking advantage of the grain and fodder, in Lu Bujun the grain and fodder are not many, Chen Deng brings is also insufficient with Runan, say nothing of said Sinyeh. Lu Bu patted Liu Mang at shoulder and then asked Chen Gong “Gongtai, you said Yuan Shu really have grain and provisions?!” One of the reason that Lu Bu go to Shouchun is because there is grain and provisions. Currently in Lu Bu army, there is not much provisions. What Chen Deng brought is not enough to go to Runan, let alone to Xinye.

TL: Xinye city, or Xinye County https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xinye_County , this city always said as the only gateway for the north (Cao) to attack south (Sun-Liu and currently Lu Bu)

"He definitely have!"Said Chen Gong affirmatively. Around them are those common people who lacking of clothes, lack of possession and even do not have enough to eat. “Even these common people are starved to death, froze to death. Yuan Gonglu will have enough grain and provisions!”

"Is that right?!"Hearing Chen Gong's words, Liu Mang brows wrinkled deeply. He also can felt a very disdain feeling coming out from both of their hearts.

If only a group of official who benefits from common people due to chaos, Liu Mang cannot say anything, after all it is how the world works. But this, common people is in a desperate state, but you still can eat well and also have enough provisions? This is a very big issue.

“Let's go! We go to Yuan Gonglu!” Lu Bu also could not tolerate this. Even though he Lu Fengxian is not a competent warlord. He still cannot oppress people to this extent, not until no one can live properly.

After Old Cao hit Yuan Shu severely. Yuan Shu only barely managed to grab the last straw. Shouchun become an undefended city, four gates open and the defenders is only a skinny veteran or a young soldier who no longer have any hair due to malnutrition.

Lu Bu halt his army and instructed not to enter the city. Lu Bu instead bring only Chen Gong and Liu Mang and pass toward Shouchun front door.

”Do we not need any soldiers?!” Liu Mang a little worried. Although Old Yuan forces already crippled and scattered, but he still have at least 10.000 troops in the city. After all this is Old Yuan's homebase. Even if they are annihilated, at least they can still breakthrough.

“They are unable to do anything!” Said Lu Bu while looking the condition surrounding him.

"Eh?!"Liu Mang's voice is choked. Fuck man, Boss Lu, you have this self confidence because you are the God of War, right? Me??? My battle strength is only 5 points? Chen Old Man battle prowess is 70 points and if they lose, the one who is most hapless is me.

“How about you both go? I'll stay with the army” Said Liu Mang with low voice.

"Humph!"Lu Bu coldly humph.

"Yes, Yes, I go too!"Liu Mang reluctantly followed.

"Ha-ha!"Chen Gong laughed at this pair of father and son-in-law. A strong father-in-law and weak but resourceful son-in-law.

The pair along with Chen Gong go into the city. At the city gate, there is a dozen of cavalry soldiers meet up with Lu Bu and co.

Dozen of heavy cavalry, their body and their head are covered by cloak to hide their malnutritioned body. These do not make Liu Mang and co feel strange, after all Yuan Shu army although ruined, still have a tooth to bite.

The strangest thing is, what these soldiers wear, is black imperial robe with motive dragon four fingernails which are representing a royalty cloth? Also those banners script? Imperial guards?!

Old Yuan have not awake from daydreaming?

“Order from the emperor, Grand General Lu Bu do not quick dismount and kneel!”That arrogant word come from a royal messenger who come from behind cavalry soldier. In his hand, there is a golden-colored silk for royal command.

Grand General?! Old Yuan's gift is not small. Grand General position can be considered as the one who commands this nation's soldiers. It is a real big position who can compare with Three Ducal Ministers and also it can be said in chaos time, this position is even more important than those Three Ducal Ministers.

TL: Three Ducal Ministers
https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Three_Ducal_Ministers

Old Yuan sealed Lu Bu as Grand General, really do not care for his own subordinates opinions?

Liu Mang do not have the mood to think about this matter, because Lu Bu also silent all the time and also do not do anything, let alone kneel, even dismount is also do not care.

"Does Grand General Lu Bu do not want to dismount and kneel?!" Imperial guards have gotten angry, although Grand General is a big position, but they also have their pride, they are Imperial guard.

Lu Bu do not want to pay any attention to those imperial guards, but now Chen Gong just go forward leisurely and said "The official emperor government only sealed our lord as General Who Pacifies the East, which emperor sealed our lord as Grand General!"

"That is of course, our Great Cheng Emperor!" The imperial guard said casually.

TL: Cheng Dynasty was built by Yuan Shu after he proclaimed himself as emperor.

"Emperor of Great Cheng? This is still Han Dynasty world, where the hell come from Cheng Dynasty Emperor? Rebellious traitor, do you think my sword is blunt?!"Chen Gong angrily refuted.

"You!" Imperial guard want to draw sword, but stopped by the crown prince. This crown prince greet with a smile "This is my Father-in-law General Lu! Son-in-law Yuan Yao representing Father Emperor, greet

Father-in-law.

Father emperor is Old Yuan! Wait, Wait, Wait! Liu Mang thought suddenly stopped, “father-in-law?” What the hell is this? Does Boss Lu have a second daughter?

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 48 - Father-in-Law? (2) (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

“Yuan Gonglu!?” Yuan Gonglu previously bestowed title called Rear General with salary of 2000-shi. It is bigger than Lu Bu's General Who Pacified the East and Xu Province Governor, but after Old Yuan proclaim himself as emperor. His title is abolished and his reputation as third brother of Yuan family's fourth generation has been wasted.

Therefore Lu Bu can call him on first-name basis. Moreover, Lu Bu and Yuan Shu are warlords. So their standing is the same.

"Father emperor is waiting for the honorable father-in-law arrival in the palace!"Said Yuan Yao while smiling.

TL: Da Ren: according to chinese.yabla the definition is like this: adult; grownup; title of respect toward superiors. This novel have too much Da Ren involved. So I will use Honorable when there is a Da Ren involved. Please advise me, if I am wrong. Your input is very much appreciated

“Call him General Lu!”Liu Mang's mood is very bad. Why did you call Lu Bu honorable father-in-law? Can't you just call him honorable uncle or else?

"Um?!"Yuan Yao just about to reveals to Liu Mang discontentedly, doesn't this Lu Bu under so know the elephant? That side Lu Bu actually opened the mouth. “Heh?!”Yuan Yao about to reveal his discontent to Liu Mang. Do this Lu Bu's subordinate not know how to behave? Suddenly Lu

Bu's speaks.

TL: Yuan Yao is the son of Yuan Shu who wants to be married to Lu Lingqi historically, but unable to marry due to intervention of Chen Gui and Chen Deng.

“What arrogance you have, Yuan Gonglu!”Lu Bu himself is also angry. Do Yuan Shu really think himself as an emperor? When Lu Bu came, he did not come out and greet him himself, even sending a bullshit of imperial guards to announce imperial decree to himself? And now he is waiting inside the palace waiting for him?

“Eh?!” Yuan Yao's face is full embarassment and unconsciously said “Honorable--”, not yet Father-in-Law spoken, Liu Mang cut him in the middle and warned him.

"Call him General Lu!"

Yuan Yao no longer can tolerate Liu Mang, but afraid of Liu Mang's stare. Glancing at Liu Mang, he shouted, “General Lu, my father emperor is sick, therefore cannot greet General Lu, I also requested forgiveness from General Lu due to this rudeness!”

“He is sick?!”Lu Bu's anger dissipated immediately. He also felt a little relieved, because who cannot be sick in heart and body, after Old Cao attacked him so severely and took over his territory. When Lu Bu lost Xu Province, he did not as sad as Yuan Shu. After all, from the very beginning, Lu Bu did not have a domain to begin with. No matter if it is Xu Province or Yan Province, he just snatch it away. Snatched Yan Province

from Cao Cao, snatched Xu Province from Big-eared Liu.

But Old Yuan is different. Yu Province was his base camp. Yuan family growth very flourishing there, one can say that Yuan family is very accepted there, also Yang Province was occupied by Yuan Shu very early. With two states as his base camp, Old Yuan can definitely fulfill unification of area south of Yellow River. But when he proclaimed himself as emperor, Old Cao hit him hard until he lost his grip of Yu Province. Yang Province also lost, with the loss of his domain, his daydream of being emperor crushed instantly. How in the world he cannot be so sad.

TL: Actually I want to write down Big-eared Liu as Big-eared asswipe. I really hate Liu Bei

"Lead the way!"Lu Bu did not comment anything, as he and Old Yuan both are fellow sufferers. They are attacked by Old Cao and have been in an extreme difficult situation.

The city is very miserable, common people also missing. But there are a lot of soldiers. Old Yuan is a muddlehead person to the very end. Shouchun which also a capital of Yang Province is Old Yuan's headquarters. If other places miserable like this, then obviously headquarters was also in shambles.

However, when they arrived in the city, everything changes. There is a palace! Pavilion! Painting on the wall! Each one of them are very beautiful, but the outside is a very miserable appearance. The condition can only be compared as heaven and hell.

"Is this white jade for floor?!" Liu Mang finally felt that the floor was different. This white jade color is pure white like white cloud and also

there is a brilliance like jade. White jade is used for floor?

This white jade, is no less than ten thousand meters, Yuan Shu is really not giving up his dream. Even Xu Du palace is not very luxurious.

These ten thousand meters white jade can form a heavy cavalry unit, if turned into grain and provisions, it can bought enough food for commoners of Huainan to eat for one year! But this was treated as a floor. Even Lu Bu who have been to Luoyang and Chang'an also think this is an act of stupidity of Old Yuan.

"Oh, Old Yuan, Old Yuan, if you have not yet perish, then there is something wrong with God's natural order!" A warlord's life is quite luxurious but not to this degree, this is beyond of one comprehension. If Shouchun was in shambles like this, then you have only Old Yuan to blame, who dares to stay in a city with a voracious leader like this.

Shouchun has been broken through 1 time, there should not be any wealth left in the city. But this white jade is new.

Liu Mang and co only can shook their head.

"General Lu, my father emperor in imperial court hall!"Said Yuan Yao while stopping.

"Is this the imperial court hall?!" Yuan Shu's emperor daydream is really good. The specifications for imperial court hall is not lower compared with previous emperors' standards. The imperial court was built by everyone in the country, but Yuan Shu only using two provinces' wealth to built his imperial court. Thus one can say, this person is a very talented person.

“Cough!” On the imperial court there is a very skinny stature, who was supported by a few maidservants, who then served him a bowl to throw his phlegm in.

Seeing some people entering the imperial palace, the skinny man ordered those two maidservants, to help him sit in a well-seated position to reveal dignified and commanding presence as lot as possible.

As these are warlords, even though one is very tired or do not have any hope to live. In front of other people, he must maintain an air of superiority.

If Liu Mang do not know that the person who sat on the dragon-motived throne is Yuan Shu, perhaps he will think that he is the emperor.

"Father emperor, General Lu arrived!"Yuan Yao said to Yuan Shu while walking towards the throne.

Liu Mang looks at that skinny stature who sat on the throne trying to maintain a dignified presence as hard as possible and cannot help to think “If Old Yuan is an emperor, where the hell is his civil and military officials? Where the hell is his bodyguards? Why in this big imperial court only attended by only several maidservants?”

Lu Bu first opened his mouth when looking at this miserable person. Lu Bu somewhat cannot help but sigh with sorrow. He remembers when 18 warlords alliance on crusade against Dong Zhuo. Yuan Shu was very dignified and high-spirited. For the vice-leader who orders besided Yuan Shao, one can say that Yuan Shu is one of the strongest warlord at that time. But now all left was a very skinny old man who barely maintain a feeble existence.

“Gonglu, I trust you have been well since our last meeting!” Lu Bu held his fist respectfully toward Yuan Shu.

“Ah, I am still well! No need Fengxian to worry!” Yuan Shu also opened his mouth. Those words that he spoke, in Liu Mang's view is exactly meant to do a desperate attempt to save his face. After all he had suffered a lot of hardship from one very rich warlord reduced to depend only one city which is Shouchun. How he cannot tried to save his face. Imagine, from a warlord who have 2 states was reduced to a warlord who occupy one city. He who once have soldiers numbered to one hundred thousands, now left only with less than ten thousands. Annihilation is imminent anytime.

“Why Fengxian, a governor of Xu Province, have any business with my Yang Province?!” Yuan Shu's words in one glance, looked like he concerns about Lu Bu. But actually he is laughing at Lu Bu who has just thrown out from Xu Province.

Lu Bu was not angry, he just calmly said “I heard Mengde said that Shouchun is very good, so he come personally to meet Yuan Gonglu. I also heard, you also let him go to Shouchun very smoothly also right?!” Lu Bu's words meant that Cao Mengde also hit Shouchun and left almost nothing of it.

Lu Bu and Yuan Shu, these two warlords of Eastern Han Dynasty can be considered as a bad example as a warlord, looked at each other again.

Yuan Yao is nervous. His father's health is not good and if Lu Bu was really angry, perhaps in less than two punches, Yuan Shu will be flattened.

Liu Mang is also worried with Boss Lu. “Boss Lu please be calm, do not fell to your sudden impulse. If you kill Old Yuan, the outcome will be very difficult. We cannot get out from this Shouchun palace.”

Suddenly they laughed at the same times. The sound of those laughs is one of those who have suffered mutual damage. The sound of a friend who pity with each other.

“Well, Fengxian. You come to my Shouchun, surely there is something to ask!” Is there any person who wants or has become a warlord can be called a fool? No, of course not, it depends on one's personal ambition which vary to each person.

“Yuan Gonglu, you are right! This time I have come to ask for grain and provisions! When I was expelled from Xu Province by Cao Mengde, I did not take enough grain and provisions, therefore I need to go to your Shouchun to request your assistance!”Replied Lu Bu.”You could rest assured that whatever that I, Lu Bu, has borrowed will be....!” Lu Bu also wants to add a reason to convince Yuan Shu, but he did not expect that Yuan Shu also agreed with the offer.

”Grain and provisions, right?!”Yuan Shu said while smiling “I cannot provide too many, but 5000-shi, I still able to lend you!”

“5000-shi!” Lu Bu thought for a moment. With this 5000-shi provisions, it should be enough for 20,000 men to arrive at Xinye.

TL: 1-shi is 100 kilograms of provisions, total is 500.000 kilograms of provisions. An ancient time measurements

Liu Mang's brow wrinkled “When did Old Yuan become so good?” Previously, did not they bear a grudge, until Boss Lu want to dispatch troops to hit Old Yuan?

”Many thanks, Yuan Gonglu!”Said Lu Bu while helding his fist respectfully to show his thanks.

”You are too courteous, We are but one family, right? Why speak with estrangement with each other?” Yuan Shu finally shows his tail.

“One family?!” Lu Bu is confused.

”Fengxian, my son's age is not young anymore. He still not yet have a wife. Previously, the engagement that we set, due to various matters was delayed. Now we have met each other, we should proceed with the engagement and marry them both!”Said Yuan Shu while smiling at Lu Bu.

Old Yuan's idea is very good. Using 5000-shi grain and provisions to change for Lu Bu's daughter. In the surface, this looked like a loss, but actually it is a big profit. Lu Bu came to borrow provisions, should Yuan Shu took the advantage and actually just gave Lu Bu those provisions or do not accept Lu Bu's offer to borrow provisions? Yuan Shu will absolutely did not agree if directly lend those provisions. You, Lu Bu, on what reason, you want me to extort my land's bounty and stir discontent among my people? Is your words, Lu Fengxian, have any meaning at all?

If he not allowed to borrow! Lu Bu, who is a person that is not good at debate or argument, will definitely hit myself Yuan Gonglu pretty hard. With only 10,000 remnants soldiers, Lu Bu will surely win. But what does Lu Bu gain in the end, other than a dilapidated city?

Now, I am willing to provide you with provisions, as long as you marry your daughter to my son, so win-win solutions.

The one who marry Lu Bu's daughter can be considered, have gained half of Lu Bu's army, also equal to tying up the mighty Lu Bu to own war chariot. So, giving Lu Bu provisions isn't it not equivalent to that? Also those ten thousands soldiers remnant can also be led by Lu Bu. If Yuan Gonglu has Lu Bu as his guardian, then Old Yuan can still daydream being an emperor for several more years.

“Come, Yao, my son, pay your respect to your honorable father-in-law!” Old Yuan did not wait for Lu Bu to reply his offer, and quickly call his son to greet Lu Bu.

”Yuan Yao, pays his respect to honorable father-in-law!” Yuan Yao obeyed his father's words and quickly knelt down.

Fuck you both, you wife-snatchers.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 49 - I Am Me (MTL)

"I will not allow this!" It was not Lu Bu that spoke, instead it was Liu Mang who was already standing that refused.

Liu Mang had to refuse this. Fuck you, Old Yuan, by saying that thing. “My son not yet married” you spoke that word easily so it can act as a fishing line for your glory?

I who has twenty years of being a bachelor, whose only girlfriend is my left hand cannot allow this. My spring time of youth has finally come. I have a beautiful but fierce fiancée. Will I allow those things to be snatched so easily by Old Yuan.

You have always said that your Yuan family is a good family. You are the third brother of the fourth generation of Yuan family. Tall, rich and handsome wit good genes but this treatment on asking for a woman's hand, you are an absolutely no-good, unethical person. Both of you are arrogant pricks who are also a wife-snatchers.

“Who art thou? Dost thou have not seen my father and your sovereign had a discussion of utmost importance, thou as an unwanted party here, must stand down your opinion?” Young Yuan is very angry before, when he called Lu Bu, honorable father-in-law, he had already refuted by him. Now however he can directly oppose Lu Bu with his father by his side.

“Make me withdraw my opinion? Your father is not qualified to speak with me at the same level, let alone you!” Liu Mang will not be polite against these two wife-snatchers.

After hearing Liu Mang's words, Yuan Shu become startled and angry immediately because in Yuan Shu's view, Liu Mang was just Lu Bu's young

bodyguard. “Fengxian, is this your subordinate?! He, a mere servant, dared to speak while his masters are discussing important matters? Arrest him immediately!”

Arrest Liu Mang? Ha-ha, if there is no Liu Mang, there will be no Lu Bu now. In Lu Bu's army, the one who cannot be sacrificed by Lu Bu right now is probably only Liu Mang.

Hearing Yuan Shu orders to arrest Liu Mang, Lu Bu said this coldly “I want to see, who would dare to arrest him!”

“Fengxian You?!” Yuan Shu shocked to see Lu Bu's expression. “Lu Fengxian, what the hell you getting angry for? Is this not just a servant of yours?!” Yuan Shu thought.

“Yuan Gonglu, my visit here was just to borrow grain and provisions rather than talk about marriage matter. Hast thou forgotten about Han Yin?!”

TL: Han Yin, Yuan Shu's messenger. He came to Xu Province to make alliance with Lu Bu through marriage. But was killed due to intervention of Chen Gui and Chen Deng. For more complete information. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Han_Yin_%28Han_dynasty%29

“Han Yin?!”Yuan Shu face started to look bleak. This year he sent a messenger to Lu Bu, discussing about marriage alliance. That messenger is Han Yin. It is a pity that this messenger actually was executed by Lu Bu.

“Moreover, Yuan Gonglu. The one who stands before you is the Han

Dynasty Prince of Shu. Do you really have the audacity to arrest him?!" Lu Bu berated them.

"Prince of Shu?!" Yuan Shu look startlingly at Liu Mang. Although Yuan Shu have proclaimed himself as an Emperor but he also still have a fear of Han Dynasty. Otherwise Old Cao will not be able to annihilate him. After that, he himself also cannot show his face in public again.

"Correct, this is the Prince of Shu! His Emperor majesty bestowed him also General of Southern Expedition. His title is even above yours, Yuan Gonglu. And you actually said that he is a servant? In this nation, who dares to use him as a servant?!"

When hearing Lu Bu's rebuke, Yuan Shu's face is really red with anger. His anger even rises when he stroke his throne "Enough! Lu Fengxian, I asked you only this thing. Do you want to marry or not marry your daughter to my family?!"

"This Lu Fengxian's daughter already been betrothed to the Royal Prince of Shu, no second daughter to marry your son, Yuan Gonglu!" Lu Bu also glares angrily at Yuan Shu. 5000-shi grain to marry my daughter? What kind of offer is this? Do you, Yuan Gonglu, think everybody is a fool?

"Hey!" Liu Mang's heart cooling down a bit, but his mood is really not well.

Lu Fengxian, today you have to marry your daughter or else!" Old Yuan was angry and more determined to force Lu Bu to marry his daughter. Old Yuan then made a signal to his palace guards to surround Lu Bu and co.

“Yuan Gonglu, from the very beginning, I did not disrespect you even a bit, why should you start this now?!” Lu Bu said it with disdain tone. These people may not know about Lu Bu's prowess, but they heard about Lu Bu's participation in Hulao Gate. Only he can make the alliance of 18 warlords deadlock their advance and making all alliance warlords' faces becoming very bleak and pale.

Among those 18 warlords, Yuan Shu was one of them, so he felt the first-hand how terrifying Lu Bu can be. Lu Bu's army was stationed outside of Shouchun city. Even 100,000 troops of Cao army cannot hold them. There is no way those soldiers of Shouchun can protect this city if besieged, in addition Old Yuan's soldiers are all in no condition to fight, they are already old, weak, sick and disabled.

“Hey!” Yuan Shu suddenly sighed while sitting on his throne. His visage has becoming more of an skinny and dying old man, and nowhere was the visage of a mighty warlord can be found.

”All of you withdraw!” Said Yuan Shu, signaling those guards to withdraw.

“Father?!” Yuan Yao really anxious, if his father let go of this matter, then what about his engagement? Let go of them? Then how he, Yuan Yao, have a future? His father is really sick, and now seeing his wife and army already fleeting away, how he cannot worry about his future?

Yuan Shu did not pay any attention to Yuan Yao, then he said this to Lu Bu “Fengxian, how many years we have been acquaintances, this year should be more than ten years right?!”

Lu Bu nodded. Exactly from Hulao Gate siege until today, it had been

more than ten years.

"5000-shi grain, you can borrow it. But after borrowing it, I would like to ask you only two matters!" Yuan Shu said that with expression of pleading.

"Say it and I shall hear it!" Lu Bu also sighed in his heart while looking at Yuan Shu's old face, they are already old, older than those who already dead such as Ding Yuan, Tao Qian or Wang Yun. The next time, it could be their turn! Then when that time happens, this nation will be theirs, the younger generation's nation.

While thinking that, Lu Bu set his sights at Liu Mang.

"First! "Yuan Shu's eyes is flashing like never before "I need Fengxian to kill two traitors!" At that time, when Yuan Shu said traitors, Liu Mang also felt killing intent emanating from Yuan Shu's body.

He is also one of the warlords who have too much blood on his hands.

"Traitors?!"

"Yes! Chen Lan, Lei Bo! These two traitors, these two, when I proclaimed myself as an emperor had revolted on me!" Said Yuan Shu.

Liu Mang gently shook his head. These two should be considered as smart people. When Old Yuan proclaimed himself as the emperor, his path has reached a dead-end. Those who does not want to die with you, naturally will leave you. Yuan Shu also looked a little embarrassed in front

of Lu Bu and company. He knows when he proclaimed himself as an emperor, there will be many people who will find it unbearable, and will leave him. After all, this was all due to his delusions, being an emperor, being seated on dragon throne, and the feeling when people said, “I am your subject!”, it really was unbearable. Yuan Gonglu quickly snaps out of his delusions and begin to be depressed again. He said “If they just left me, Yuan Gonglu, then I would have tolerated them. After all, they are looking for better opportunities than being under me. I will never blame them. But they were not satisfied with just leaving me. They also attacked my supply transport, robbed me of my rations! They caused me to be stranded in Shouchun with nowhere to go!”

Ooohh! So This is the cause, Lu Bu and company understood immediately. If Chen Lan and Lei Bo only left him, Yuan Shu, then Yuan Shu will not be in this angry state and will possible considered as resigning from job in good terms. But, both of them took things too far. They attacked their former employer and become rebellious traitors out of their own interest.

“Good! Give me these two’s whereabouts, in three days, I will send you their heads! Lu Bu complied without even consulting with Liu Mang or Chen Gong. Actually, even if Yuan Shu did not request for killing them, eventually Lu Bu will solve these problems himself due to his provisions debt to Yuan Shu. Why? It was simply because Boss Lu is really hated traitors.

After hearing Lu Bu comply, Yuan Shu's expression become happier and said “For my second request, Fengxian. I request you to dispatch troops to escort me to the north, to Hebei To my cousin Yuan Shao’s territory! I will certainly reward you heavily!” Yuan Shu knew that currently Huainan had been abandoned and cannot be defended anymore, His people are also scattered. Thus Yuan Shu's only option is to go to Hebei and joined

hand-in-hand with Yuan Shao. If before, Yuan Shu looked down on Yuan Shao, because Yuan Shao is the son of a maid, but now, for him to survive, what choice does he have?

However the road to Hebei was not peaceful. Xu Province was now being seized by Old Cao. Yuan Shu who had been defeated severely by Old Cao, did not dare to face Old Cao directly now.

"That request is impossible!" Lu Bu immediately rejects it. Telling him to go north again? Is this a joke? Previously, only with great difficulty, Lu Bu managed to withdraw from Xu Province, and now you, Yuan Shu, tried to make him go north again, do you think this Lu Bu wants to seek death? Even if they arrive at Hebei. Lu Bu and Yuan Shao are incompatible. And if Yuan Shao found out that Lu Bu is in Hebei, Lu Bu will be decimated at Puyang. "But!" Yuan Shu still wanted to persuade through Lu Bu's rejection.

"If I can't obtain provisions from here, then I will only bring trouble to you!" Said Lu Bu. Bringing trouble to himself, meaning if Yuan Shu does not allow borrowing provisions from Shouchun, then he can get it from attacking Chen Lan and Lei Bo. At that time, Lu Bu may persuade them to surrender rather than kill them, therefore breaking Yuan Shu's first request.

Seeing that Yuan Shu was unwilling, but when looking at the miserable state of his acquaintance, Lu Bu's heart began to soften up "Please think slowly about the conditions that you present, as long as it is not too hard, I, Lu Fengxian will help you fulfill that!" "Let's go, Liu Mang, Chen Gong!" Lu Bu said, commanding his people to leave.

Leaving the imperial court hall, Chen Gong began to ask the reason from Lu Bu "Milord, why did you suddenly accept Yuan Shu's conditions for borrowing provisions?! Obviously we can just take it from them" What Chen Gong meant was, obviously they can just besiege Shouchun and

capture the city along with their provisions. After all, those two who revolted can snatch Yuan Shu's provisions so easily, what does this say? This obviously shows that Yuan Shu's forces were very weak and wasted to the extreme. The reason why Shouchun had not yet been annexed and destroyed, was because of this Hebei's older cousin.

But these things were not worth mentioning to Lu Bu.

True, attacking Shouchun may be easier than attacking Chen Lan and Lei Bo, as Yuan Shu's army were all remnants. Shouchun was also in shambles. However, if Lu Bu's army besieged the city, then Yuan Shu will be robbed even further by Chen Lan and Lei Bo. Thus, you can see their skills from here.

Lu Bu did not reply immediately, only staring at Chen Gong for a long time. Being stared like that, made Chen Gong's heart feel bit scared. He replied "If I have done such things, Gongtai. Would you still say that I am still the Lu Bu you know?!" Lu Bu did not wait for Chen Gong to respond, he just rode his horse leading the way and said these sentence again "Gongtai, do you remember that Cao Cao's principle that he would rather disappoint the world than let the world disappoint him, then I, Lu Bu's principle is to be myself, free from anyone's debt. I have my own moral code, and that will never change!" Chen Gong looking at Lu Bu who was gradually disappearing suddenly laughed and shouted to the sky "Do you see now, Cao Mengde? Precisely this is the reason, that I leave you and choose Lu Bu!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 50 - Renegade Traitor (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

"Yuan Gonglu have sent 5000-shi of grain and provisions!"Chen Gong reported to Lu Bu.

“Un!” Lu Bu nodded. To be honest, Yuan Gonglu did not want to shorten his provisions, but Lu Bu already said the advantage and disadvantage of lending Lu Bu some provisions, so he did not dare to not comply with Lu Bu’s request.

“Yuan Gonglu also brought information about Chen Lan and Lei Bo’s hideout!” Chen Gong’s tone starts to hesitate.

TL: Chen Lan and Lei Bo, both are generals of Yuan Shu, when Yuan Shu declare himself as emperor. Chen Lan and Lei Bo become bandits and plundered Shouchun palace. Lei Bo also known as Lei Bu (which is the way his name written and pronounced in this novel, both are correct as stated in kongming.net, which one that you readers prefer? Comment please)

"How?!"Lu Bu inquired.

"Sigh!"Chen Gong sighed “Their hideout’s terrain, I’m afraid that place is not very good terrain for battle! They hide in Bagongshan with all of their horses and troops!”

TL: Presently Bagongshan is a district in Huainan, Anhui county. But when in ancient time, it is really a mountain name, so the name is Mount

Bagong. Please comment, if you want me to translate it as Bagongshan or Mount Bagong. For this chapter, I will use Bagongshan.

"Bagongshan?!" Lu Bu who starts out from Luoyang, up until now, wherever he goes, has always been plains or prairie in the north. He never go south, to Yangzhou. So he do not have any idea about the terrain in the south, let alone about Bagongshan that Chen Gong said.

"Bagongshan other name is Shouchun Mountain aka Mt. Beishan! This mountain is the border between north and south, just like Yellow River, who become border between north and south. So this Bagongshan has always been a very strategic point since olden times. But now, Chen Lan and Lei Bo have occupied this place. From here, one can see Shouchun entirely, also there is a natural defense that is formed by the terrain. Now Lu Bu and co, can know why Yuan Shu cannot leave Shouchun even though that city no longer can be a habitat for living things anymore. Yuan Shu actually want to leave, but he cannot do that. Because his every action and movement are restricted and monitored by those two. Once his foot step outside Shouchun, it will be difficult for him to move either way. " So Lu Bu's army can be regarded as Yuan Shu's reinforcement. Even if Lu Bu did not come and ask to borrow provisions, Yuan Shu will definitely send a messenger asking for Lu Bu's help out of fear of those two.

Lu Bu made an effort to not comment.

If a normal adviser, they would certainly advised Lu Bu to take Shouchun. Hell, taking Shouchun is much better deal than attacking Bagongshan. Even if they have no plan to take Shouchun, the best course of action is to leave ASAP, leaving Chen Lan and Lei Bo, since they have occupied Bagongshan. Moreover, when we do this, it will be impossible with Old Yuan's temper for him not to retaliate with all of his might and

taking account Lu Bu’s army as Yuan Shu’s opponent, isn’t it the same as asking for death for Yuan Shu’s army?

However Chen Gong is not a normal adviser and Lu Bu was not a normal warlord.

”These two renegades! If this problem cannot be solved now, besides they will haunt us forever, we can forget having a lofty ambitions!”Said Lu Bu with indifferently, as if Chen Lan and Lei Bo of Bagongshan have already become a fish on chopping block. “Pass my orders, let the army prepare food in three-shift, we depart at dawn!”

”Yes!” Chen Gong nodded, he do not want to suggest to make a detour for this not Lu Bu's army style and he cannot persuade Lu Bu. So, what Lu Bu's army need is now is to rest and raise army morale. Tomorrow, Chen Lan and Lei Bo will have a torrent of misfortunes.

A night of rest with three-shift watch hours, the entire Lu Bu army have started to action. In order to help Lu Bu clean up Chen Lan and Lei Bo, Yuan Shu sent good quality meats and wine.

Liu Mang's camp also received provisions from Yuan Shu. He obtained roast lamb and one big jar of fine wine. If this is for Liu Mang then these food is more than enough with more to spare. But Liu Mang, true to his oath, actually divided those food and wine with his 1000 brothers. A person only get a small portion of meat. Also the wine, in order to adequate for 1000 soldiers, he mixed it with water so much until there is no more taste. Yuan Shu's wine gift is actually a very good wine, but now no one in Urban Army can taste it.

However tonight turns out to be a very unforgettable night for Urban

Army.

"Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor, as long as I, Liu Mang, still standing, I will not make you starve. Brothers we eat!", then Liu Mang instructed army chef to boil water, in order to make Sheep-bone soup. This meal is very excellent, even though it only served dry rations, eating only a small portion of meat and drinking tasteless wine.

Dawn, it is already fifth watch.

TL: They are using a nightwatch shift to predict the time, another ancient time

For example:

Definition

yīgēng first of the five night watch periods 19:00-21:00 (old)

sān'gēng third of the five night watch periods 23:00-01:00 (old); midnight

èrgēng second of the five night watch periods 21:00-23:00 (old)

wǔgēng fifth of the five night watch periods 03:00-05:00 (old)

sìgēng fourth of the five night watch periods 01:00-03:00 (old)

The armies into action, Lu Bu leads 3000 Bing Province Heavy Cavalry as the vanguard. Rear guard is Formation Breaker, after that supply transport troops. Finally Liu Mang's Urban Army. His division is responsible for shielding all of armed forces.

Yuan Shu also sent guide to inform whereabouts Chen Lan and Lei Bo's hideout.

An enormous army march of 20,000 troops will be naturally be known to Chen Lan and Lei Bo in Bagongshan.

So Chen Lan and Lei Bo knows about Lu Bu's army direction.

“Big bro, what is the best course of action?!” At the peak of Bagongshan, Lei Bo started to panic. Other people may do not know about Lu Bu's great strength, but how can these two do not know? When Yuan Shu want to attack Liu Bei at Xu Province, Lu Bu acts as a mediator. He himself shot his own Sky Piercer tip at a very far away distance. At that time, Chen Lan and Lei Bo also witnessed it with general Ji Ling, how can they do not know his prowess?

TL: Ji Ling, another general of Yuan Shu. Dispatched by Zhang Fei when Shouchun besieged by Cao Cao and Liu Bei

Earlier this year, they just bullied Yuan Shu's remnant, but now Old Yuan do not know from where, got Lu Bu's army help.

Looking at Lei Bo panicking, Chen Lan also feel edgy “Calm down, second brother. Sit down first, and you can tell me what is bothering you! Did you really fear Lu Bu?!”

“Big bro, this is the Lu Bu. When Yuan Gonglu still very powerful, he is not his match, now he want to eliminate us! You got any plan, bro?!”Although Lei Bo is very agitated, still obeyed Chen Lan's order to sit down.

Actually not only Lei Bo feared Lu Bu, Chen Lan himself also very afraid! Lu Bu's army might is famous in the entire land. Lu Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is a big trump card that is feared by every warlord. How can these two king of the mountain not afraid too?

“Calm down, calm the hell down!” Chen Lan took a deep breath and said “Second brother, although Lu Bu is strong and we're both are not his match, but this Bagongshan actually unfamiliar with Lu Bu. This place also have strong natural defenses, what is there to fear? Even if Lu Bu has the ability to crush this place, we just maintain a stubborn defense, surely we will have the advantage to destroy Lu Bu army in one fell swoop. And also at that time, we brothers will be famous in this entire nation as “The brothers who defeat Lu Bu””

“Bagongshan natural defense?!” Lei Bo then started to calm down.

Bagongshan territory size is 200 square-kilometer. It is located in Central Plains. Forming barrier on the south side is Yellow River, which connecting Huainan and Shouchun. One can say, if occupied this place, can be used as an impregnable mountain fortress. Say if someone tried to force entry from either Jiang Nan or Huainan, they will simply just retreat back to Bagongshan

Since ancient times, a place like this is a very strategic location. You know, when Old Yuan was still prosperous, there are several thousands of elite troops in Bagongshan. But a pity, they were not used now, because Old Yuan was frightened by Old Cao's attack and unable to escape to this strategic location. Therefore, now, Chen Lan and Lei Bo occupied it.

“Right, we have natural defenses of Bagongshan! Also elite troops numbered of 10,000, even if Lu Bu is god of war, he will also gave up the idea on conquering my Bagongshan. When his grain and provisions are exhausted, even he cannot repulse enemy!”Said Lei Bo as if he had see a hope.

“Transmit my military orders, tell them to prepare to battle. This time after repelling Lu Fengxian, I definitely must plunder Shouchun, I will never let that old fart Yuan Shu to be in peace!” Chen Lan is not a long-perspective person, as Yuan Shu as calculated. When treated like this, there will be a big retaliation from Chen Lan.

TL: Lao er and Xiao er, later in the story, it will show up a lot. It is actually an insult to the enemy. If the enemy is older than he is, he will call him or her Lao er = old fart. If younger, then he will call him or her Xiao er = brat.

He did not think the whole cause, if he didn't betray Yuan Shu and robbed his rations. How could Yuan Shu possibly asked Lu Bu for help?

“Hm, this is Bagongshan?!” Lu Bu arrived early as he is now a vanguard. The entire are of Bagongshan can be seen upfront. This place is filled with forests, very dense and overgrown with weeds. Wherever he looks, Lu Bu cannot get a clear picture of the mountain.

Among mountain, it is very easy to hide 100,000 troops for ambush! This information can be obtained through his intuition as military commander, and also from geographical information. This place is located in intersection between Huainan and Shouchun and can be considered the only mountain road that is connecting between both of them. If this road is blocked, then both of locations is finished.

This place is really easy to defend.

At the peak, one can see shadow of people moving. Chen Lan and Lei Bo have started to deploy troops for defense.

“This place is difficult for offensive act!” Gao Shun who is usually very silent, suddenly voiced his opinion.

“If we attack, then casualty to our army at least 3000 troops while enemy only loss 800 troops!” Zhang Liao also have given his opinion. Attacking a fortified position, is not cavalry jobs. Therefore Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is useless in this battle, but this does not hinder Zhang Liao's analysis.

“Even though it is difficult, we must still attack!” Said Lu Bu coldly while observing the whole mountain “Is my Lu Bu army have cold feet already?!”

Lu Bu, from his debut at Ding Yuan's office until now, already waging war from here and there. He is the only one who move against wind flow, against all odds. Usually facing enemy either, the enemy have a very big number of troops or the enemy have a very strong strategy

Therefore Lu Bu army cannot throw in towel no matter what the odd is. Bagongshan! Information of topography is important. This place is very easy to defend, but you also must observe, who is the one attacking and who is defending!

“Is this really worth it?!” Chen Gong inquired.

“There is nothing in this world that have no value! This mere natural defense can stop I, Lu Bu? It is a joke!” Lu Bu want to kill Chen Lan and Lei Bo not only coming from Yuan Shu's requests, but these two have committed the same crime, which is makes them renegade traitors!

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 51 - Lu Bu Starts To Change (1) (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

“Is the commander below is Marquis of Wen, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian!” An arrogant voice yelling out from Bagongshan peak.

“Oh, Chen Lan and Lei Bo also know Bu? I did not expect this at all!”Said Lu Bu with a disdain expression.

“Ha, How can we brothers cannot possibly know about Marquis of Wen, Lu Bu’s prowess” Said Chen Lan on the peak, while laughing boldly as if concealing something.

“Marquis of Wen, when my lord withdraw from Xu Province, he also brought this two lowlifes with him, so, they also know about Marquis of Wen’s prowess!” The guide said awkwardly. How stupid he is, Why he said, “when Yuan Shu withdraw from Xu Province”, he should said “When Yuan Shu assaulted Xu Province” .

“Wenyuan, you go forward and call out to them!” Said Lu Bu toward Zhang Liao.

Zhang Liao nodded and go directly go to the foot of the mountain . After arriving there, hee exclaim loudly “Chen Lan, Lei Bo, my lord has been entrusted by Yuan Gonglu to eliminate you both and your unit. If you know what the best for you, you should surrender immediately. Otherwise when we reach the foot of the mountain, you surely perish!”

“That old fart Yuan Shu, he is the culprit behind this siege!” Lei Bo angrily punched a nearby log.

After listening to Zhang Liao’s words, not only he do not become shocked and afraid, instead he sneered and answered “Why Marquis of Wen also become Yuan Shu’s lapdog? Is the title of Marquis of Wen given by the Emperor not enough? Have Marquis of Wen, Lu Bu, become so greedy that you threw away our Han?! Do you also do not fear 100,000 troops of Cao Army?!” These words that Chen Lan spitted out was very demeaning. Saying Lu Bu have become Yuan Shu’s lapdog, saying Lu Bu has become too greedy that he thought Emperor’s reward is not enough and he threw away Han.

Everyone knows that is Yuan Gonglu has committed a mistake when proclaiming himself as an emperor, as he is not a legitimate emperor. But by doing that, people of this nation, who initially respect Yuan Shu, began to keep a distance from him, for fear Old Cao are gonna attack those who are in contact with Yuan Shu, as Old Cao himself have called Yuan Shu an illegitimate usurper. And now Lu Bu who attacked Chen Lan on behalf of Yuan Shu, is that scenario that Chen Lan have predicted will happen?

Unfortunately, Chen Lan has made a mistake by saying those words. Other warlord may have feared Cao Mengde, but Lu Bu did not really care nor fear Cao Mengde. His confidence did not come because he knew Old Cao’s strength, but comes from being acquainted for, God knows, how long. From the time when Lu Bu attack Old Cao's Yan Province to when Old Cao attack Lu Bu’s Xu province. So both have known each other well enough

“Try to frighten me with Cao Mengde? You got the wrong person to threat!” Lu Bu coldly responded “Other warlord may fear Cao Mengde, but I, Lu Bu, did not really care at all!” Result of battle of Xu Province,

although it resulted with Lu Bu's lose and being expelled from Xu Province. However, during the breakout, Bing Province Cavalry really hurt Cao Cao's prized Ferocious Cavalry and made a name for themselves as the strongest cavalry in this nation. So, it can be concluded that Old Cao is the one who feared Lu Bu, not vice-versa.

"Chen Lan, Lei Bo. Your previous lord, Yuan Gonglu never treated you badly and never let you starve. Even when both of you leave him after he proclaimed himself as emperor, he never blame you even a bit. But not only both of you did not repay his kindness, both of you also attacked his supply troops. Even though this transgression is unforgivable, however if you surrender now, you still can live!" Lu Bu stressed every words clearly.

It seems words cannot reach these two, as Lei Bo already began to curse "You scumbag, slave of three surnames. Please don't be a hypocritical. Did you think you can force us to die with our previous lord? When Yuan Shu proclaimed himself as an emperor, he was deserted by his friends and allies, leaving us stranded here in Bagongshan. Yuan Shu did not even send any supplies to us, leaving us brothers, several thousands of people, to the hand of fate. So, out of needs, we robbed his supply line for us to use. He abandoned us like that, so why cannot we do the same to him?"

"Not good!" Chen Lan want to prevent Lei Bo, but it is too late already.

"Stupid men, insulting our lord like that, you have thrown a hope that our lord have given you to swine, you lost cause men!" All of Lu Bu's army personnel thinking the same thing.

"Slave of three surnames?!" Lu Bu then remembers the worst memory that he has. This god of war's eyes then flashed with an extreme killing

intention. He looked at both of them who standing at the peak “You two are really death-seeking person!”

Having completely offended Lu Bu, Chen Lan began to pale a lot, but he tried to not panic, for he is the commander of this mountain army and previously he is also a general in Yuan Shu’s army. He just coldly responded “In that case, us two brothers will wait for Marquis of Wen at the peak!”

Bagongshan. Once again we look at the topography of this area. This area only have one road, and if one guard the pass, then none shall pass that road. A real strategic location, difficult to attack, easy to defend. If Chen Lan and Lei Bo’s hideout in the flat land, even if they have 100,000 troops, Lu Bu will order an all-out attack. Why? Because he is Lu Bu and Bing Province Cavalry fear nothing.

However, due to difficult terrain, which is mountain, cavalry are not much of help here. Not having cavalry soldier to attack, also adds the value of Chen Lan and Lei Bo natural defenses.

“Milord, are you thinking of direct mountain attack?!” Zhang Liao asked with hesitation. In the past, usually Lu Bu just tell his troops to attack directly, because his basic principle is just attack straightforward is the best course of action, no matter how many casualties fell.

But now Lu Bu actually thinking of a tactic to attack from every possible angle.

“Lu Fengxian, come and go up here! Us brothers are waiting impatiently for your arrival!” Lei Bo have already offend Lu Bu severely, so

why not provoke him again and again.

Lu Bu who have finished observing the mountain, did not say a word, but said"Gao Shun, use your Formation Breaker, feint attack!"

"Yes, sir!" Gao Shun looking at Lu Bu with a strange expression. "Just feigning attack?" While Gao Shun have received a strange order from Lu Bu, he was also surprised again by Lu Bu next words.

"Gao Shun, be careful, exercise extreme caution!"

When Boss Lu start to care about his people? All soldiers present's face started to change color.

Only Chen Gong smile and nodded at that change.

"SHAAAAAA!"

As always, Formation Breaker is Formation Breaker. They are elite unit who have faced hundreds of battle, all equipped with great shield and heavy armor. The road in mountain is not stable, but this is not a problem for Formation Breaker division, because they are infantry division. They can move with the same speed as if it is just in flat land, not before long, they already arrived at the foot of the mountain. One can see panic expression on Chen Lan and Lei Bo's faces.

"Shoot, shoot, stop their movement right now!"While Chen Lan is calm, Lei Bo is very different, all of his insults actually just covering his fear.

But that desperate move, also stopped Formation Breaker's movement. Arrow rain and stone rolling everywhere and that big and tall stronghold gate, made Formation Breaker hard to march forward.

"Abominable!"Gao Shun roared loudly, he wants to storm, but he heard Lu Bu's shout from below the mountain "Gao Shun, retreat!"

Gao Shun looks at that peak road. Everywhere is arrow rain, big stone rolling. He sighed fiercely, because he unwilling to retreat, but he also knows, if he forced to storm, Formation Breaker damage is very serious. Does Lu Bu want to sacrifice Formation Breaker just to overcome Chen Lan and Lei Bo? He cannot have that kind of loss.

Seeing Formation Breaker retreat, made Chen Lan and Lei Bo beaming with pride.

Lei Bo smiled with disdain expression at Lu Bu army at mountain feet "Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen is only mediocre ability!"

"Idiot traitor, this is just a grace period, when my great army breaks through your precious mountain, there will be nothing left of you!" Another astonishing scene, Gao Shun who is a man of very few words actually insult this eloquently?

"Hah, Lu Bu Army is just nothing after all! Only having a proud motormouth. Dost thou and your idiots general think you have the ability to attack my mountain. All of you are a joke! Lu Fengxian, you are just a stray dog who has been driven away from Xu Province by Cao Cao. Now you have lost a place and barely maintaining a feeble existence, right?

You come to my Bagongshan and act unruly, where the hell do you think this is, huh? You are in our domain and you are facing us, king of this mountain.

"Beng!" Lu Bu hit a giant rock with his Poseidon halberd. That rock was blown to bits. Now, in Lu Bu's heart, his anger already burned the mountain to ashes. The one that can made Lu Bu this mad besides Zhang Fei who is Liu Bei's subordinate, is this Lei Bo.

"Milord, let me continue storming with soldiers. We will take those two son-of-a-bitch heads and report down!"Said Gao Shun knelt seeking command.

"Gao Shun, you may storm the mountain!" Said Lu Bu coldly.

In Gao Shun's heart, he only want to attack, but he listen to Lu Bu next saying "If you attack Bagongshan and took those lowlifes heads, how casualties will your Formation Breaker suffer?!"

"Eh?!" Responded Gao Shun is a little unsure "Several hundreds!" Gao Shun just blurted out his opinion. It is true in Gao Shun's division there are several hundreds of veteran soldiers of Formation Breaker.

"Several hundreds!" Lu Bu sneered. "Is it worth to exchange several hundreds of elites lives with those two lowlifes?!" Said Lu Bu while hitting the horse to retreat. "Withdraw the troops and return to main camp. Tomorrow we fight again!"

"Milord?!" Said Gao Shun, a little dissatisfied.

“Gao Shun, using those several hundred just to breach enemy line and took those two lowlifes head, that is something I cannot afford to exchange. Those troops, are dear to me!” After saying those lines. This general, this god-of-war, start to change bit by bit.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 52 - Assaulting The Mountain (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

In the commander's tent, Lu Bu reviewed all the information regarding that noon battle: Bagongshan is a location that easy to defend, if just storming ahead, the loss will be terrible. This advantage give Chen Lan and Lei Bo to be arrogant.

If cannot conquer Bagongshan, then Chen Lan and Lei Bo will humiliate Lu Bu to the extreme. In that case, how can Lu Bu relax under this circumstances.

“Fire attack on the mountain?!” Lu Bu is thinking about burning the mountain. It is the basic method to use for attacking fortified position. While Lu Bu still tried to think the method, there is someone come and destroy all his planning.

“Bagongshan, although its forest is dense, but the soil is very wet and damp. Milord, you cannot use fire attack here” Said Chen Gong entering the tent while smiling, following him also a mighty general suited with armor.

“Milord!” Said armored general while helding his fist toward Lu Bu.

“Xuangao also come?! Lu Bu felt a little odd. Indeed the person who come is the general who blame himself during siege of Kaiyang, Zang Ba Zang Xuangao.

“If fire attack is impossible, then I will surround the mountain” Said Lu Bu “My plan is surround the mountain for a hundred days, I did not

believe that Chen Lan and Lei Bo not descending the mountain to grab supply for his 10,000 armies!”

“Hundred days to surround the mountain, is your idea to cut off their water and provisions? Then please consider this, Chen Lan and Lei Bo's group has stolen Yuan Gonglu's supply troops. Yuan Gonglu said only 1,000-shi was stolen right? That is a blatant lie, they must have at least robbed 10,000-shi of provisions. If not, how can Yuan Gonglu so furious. Therefore, Chen Lan and Lei Bo do not lack forage, and water? This Bagongshan definitely has a lake. This Huainan weather also not in our favor if we want to surround them, plus this Huainan region weather. In a week, there must be a day where it rains, even so there are also an event where 3 days raining non-stop. Therefore they have an endless supply of water. So, surrounding the mountain.....!” While Chen Gong want to elaborate further about the disadvantage, suddenly he saw a faint smile on Lu Bu's face. Chen Gong knew that Lu Bu is only acting when saying surround tactics.

“Gongtai of Gongtai, why don't you say your plans earlier, must you wait me to guess your plan?!” Said Lu Bu while smiling at Chen Gong. He already knew that surrounding the mountain is a very bad idea. Let alone surround them, this time, Lu Bu cannot afford to delay any longer or the plan on going south will go bust.

When Lu Bu saw Chen Gong entered his tent, Lu Bu know that Chen Gong had a plan.

“Milord oh Milord!” When did Lu Bu start to use small scheme? Chen Gong shook his head helplessly and said “This time, Gong has a strategy but all of these depended heavily on General Zang Ba!”

“Xuangao?!” Lu Bu also felt a little strange. Zang Ba's Taishan Army were disbanded by Zang Ba. If Zang Ba's Taishan Army still exist, perhaps Zang Ba will still have a method to attack them. After all, Zang Ba also used to be king of the mountain. So he is a lot familiar with mountain warfare compared to Lu Bu.

“Yes! General Zang Ba have a way!” Since Chen Gong is the one who recommend him, Lu Bu are willing to listen. “Xuangao, anything you want to share, speak frankly!” To be honest Lu Bu also very admiring Zang Ba. From his heroism in battle, his rebellious nature which is the same as Lu Bu, and most importantly, he is a great leader and a senior general in his army. If following logic, when Chen Deng brought replenishment troops, Zang Ba should have reform his army, right? But he don't, he still felt guilt from Kaiyang, due to his dismissal of his Taishan troops.

TL: Taishan or Mount Tai, located in Shandong. One of the most revered and holiest mountain in China (for Taoist)

“Milord, upon my honor I said these facts. Ba is originally a mountain bandit brigade before surrendering to government troops. Only after surrendering, I can remove my predicate as a mountain bandit brigade and become government troops!” Taishan bandits. At that time, Taishan can be said as Zang Ba's territory. They are so powerful that government troops avoid them at all costs.

“Oh-kay, then what relations that your past has and the way you propose?!” Lu Bu did not care about Zang Ba background. Donning identity of a hero, one do not care about background. Liu Bei was a straw sandals and mats seller, Guan Yu was a red-bean seller, even Grand General He Jin was also a butcher, so background is not important.

“Taishan and Bagongshan, although their distance is hundreds li away, we have relations with each other!” Zang Ba pour out his opinion. Bandits must have their own way of gathering intelligence, because government troops can destroy them anytime. One of the means of getting this intelligence is exchanging information. At that time, Zang Ba's contact at Bagongshan is Zhang Yan of Heishan, Zang Ba also recognized this person.

“You have a contact inside?!” Lu Bu's brow wrinkled. Even if there is a contact inside, what good it would do? Bagongshan only have one road.“It is very difficult to raid the fortress's front door!” Lu Bu shook his head and said “Due to only one road to access the mountain.

“No! There is another entrance to the fortress!” Zang Ba now said what Lu Bu most want to hear.

"Another entrance?!"Lu Bu suddenly stood up.

“Um! I have been to Bagongshan before, at that time no Chen Lan and Lei Bo, Yuan Shu also still occupy Shouchun city, also at that time, still no government troops!” Said Zang Ba. That time when Zang Ba go to Bagongshan, it is still at the time of Yellow Turban Rebellion, chaos everywhere. At that time, bandit brigade of Bagongshan was still thriving.

“Another entrance of Bagongshan is located after Bagongshan main peak!” Zang Ba said this secret entrance. He obtain this information on mountain road by coincidence. He heard it from a Bagongshan bandit who blurted out this secret and Zang Ba listened it by heart. He thought it was a joke told by that drunk, but never know, that it is real.

“After main peak?!” Bagongshan's most dangerous place was the main

peak. After the main peak, there is a slope. But this slope's degree is almost 90 degrees vertical. Let alone a road, even trees are very difficult to grow, but now Zang Ba said, there is a hidden road there?!

When Lu Bu began to have doubts, Zang Ba said " it is because too steep, then it can be made a secret entrance, as people do not know about this secret entrance!" When one day, bandit brigade is bound to be exterminated, these bandits can use this escape route one day, in order to escape safely.

"Ha, Chen Lan, Lei Bo, this time I want to see how you die!" Lu Bu smiles heroically. Both Chen Lan and Lei Bo already incurred his wrath, so even if the two want to surrender, Lu Bu impossible to accept it.

"Xuangao, this time, you have done a great merit!" Said Lu Bu while smiling to Zang Ba.

"As long as Milord, no longer bring up about how Ba dismissed his troops!"Zang Ba said it embarassingly.

"Xuangao, Xuangao, you still tangled with what happened at Kaiyang?! All forgiven already!" Lu Bu patted Zang Ba's shoulder. "Presently my subordinate consists of Wenyuan's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Gao Shun's Formation Breaker and even Hanyang also have Urban Army, and you. Now I can't wait for your Taishan Army's contribution to the world."

"Many thanks, Milord!" Zang Ba half-knelt in front of Lu Bu. Lu Bu forgave him, so it could be said Zang Ba already absolved his sin at Kaiyang.

“Congratulations, Milord. Zang Ba Zang Xuangao this first tiger has regained his strength back!” Chen Gong also look very happy. With Zang Ba's commanding ability, Lu Bu army prowess will rise back significantly.

“Good! Zang Ba receive your orders!” Lu Bu said it with heroic smile.

“Yes!” Zang Ba received orders with half-kneeling.

“Tomorrow attack Bagongshan, I give you full authority to be in charge of both Bing Province Cavalry and Formation Breaker, select those who want to assault with you!”

"Zang Ba comply the order!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 53 – Liu Mang Become Bait (once again) (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Below Mt. Bagong, inside Urban Army's camp, There is a general who are wearing Aries cloth and riding a warhorse whispering something in his mouth, and if one approaching him, one can hear what he said. "Chen Old Man, Fucking old bastard with no asshole, this young master of yours will remember this day, the day that I become a damned bait again!"

TL: As requested by eytr, I change Bagongshan to Mt. Bagong

This general is our son-in-law Liu Mang. He is cursing Chen Gong along and the decision that was made during war council last night.

Due to Zang Ba said Mt. Bagong had the secret entrance, Lu Bu's mood is much lighter now. So he called those senior officers and Liu Mang. Although Liu Mang's division is just a small Urban Army, but he is also commanding a battalion consisting of 1,000 soldiers, so he is required also to enter the war council.

"Milord, let my Formation Breaker division storm tomorrow!" Said Gao Shun with enthusiasm. He knows that Lu Bu is angry due to insults hurled by Chen Lan and Lei Bo this afternoon.

"Formation Breaker has tried to storm. Milord, tomorrow let my Bing Province Heavy Cavalry to storm!" Even though Zhang Liao know that this fight is very hard to be wined but he also knew that the original Formation Breaker has been crippled and the original member only consists less than 200 people. If any damage again, Gao Shun will wept bitterly.

Therefore, Zhang Liao offered himself out of concern of his old buddy.

“Wow, both of you are so eager to fight, May I know for what? Is it to seize Mt. Bagong?!” Lu Bu teased his unit. It is the first time, Lu Bu teased his unit. “For this time, both of you need to stand down, as for this fight, I decided to use someone else that both of you!”

“Hm?!” Gao Shun very puzzled.

Chen Gong then said “This time the leader is General Zang Ba!”

“Huh?! Zang Ba?!” Both Zhang Liao and Gao Shun’s brow wrinkled. They are both surprised not because Zang Ba do not have the ability, but since Battle of Kaiyang. He did not have any division to lead. How then will he lead the assault on Mt. Bagong?

“Zang Xuangao?” Liu Mang also looked at this person. In Kaiyang, this man have clashed with Lu Bu frequently, why he is still given a chance to prove himself?

“Xuangao knows Mt. Bagong have another secret entrance. That entrance will directly breached enemy lines. So, in this battle, from hereby, I relinquished my command authority to Xuangao temporarily. So, all officers and all divisions must obey Xuangao other, that includes me, Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Formation Breaker and Urban Army!” Said Lu Bu.

“Commanding Boss Lu?!” Liu Mang a bit surprised. Liu Mang also

thinks that Zang Ba just be a guide while Lu Bu leads. Now, it really has not expected that Zang Ba were given full authority and responsibility in this battle.

"Milord, you!" Zang Ba is a little surprised that Lu Bu is willing to relinquished his command albeit temporarily. Is not this meant that Lu Bu are willing to do decentralization of each his divisions?

"Do not worry, Xuangao. Regard me as an ordinary soldier under you! Because in mountain battles, I, Lu Bu, am inferior to you!" That statement from Lu Bu is correct. What Lu Bu's division most excel is Cavalry charge. So, regarding cavalry battle, ten Zang Ba tied up together is not Lu Bu's match, but when it comes mountain battle, do the vice-versa, ten Lu Bu tied up together is not Zang Ba's match.

"Yes, sir!" Zang Ba had received the order.

"Milord! If solely depended on General Zang Ba, then it is not good!" Said Chen Gong.

"Oh?!"Lu Bu puzzled.

"Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, when they leave, they can leave without making a fuss. But you, Milord. If Chen Lan and Lei Bo discovered that you are not at mountain foot, they will be startled and keep alert at all times!" Chen Gong continues to explain.

"Me?!" Lu Bu understood immediately. This Poseidon armor set that was bestowed by Gaozu Emperor was too dazzling, attracting too many attention due to its golden color.Both Chen Lan and Lei Bo already in fear with his current appearance, so if he is to disappear suddenly, won't both of them will be very agitated and extremely uneasy? At that time, both of

them may have already discovered the second entrance that is located after main peak, and making assault impossible.

TL: Gaozu Emperor or Great Emperor as has been written in earlier chapters is Liu Bang, founder of Han Dynasty. Please tell me, should I continue as Gaozu Emperor or Great Emperor? Right now, I will be using Gaozu Emperor

So, in summary, Chen Gong's advice for Lu Bu, is Lu Bu to stay, but Lu Bu not willing to stay. He is Lu Bu the god-of-war. With his existence, Lu Bu Army can display their maximum prowess. On the other hand, Chen Lan and Lei Bo must be killed by Lu Bu's own hand for they have insulted him so. If not, killed by his own hand, then Lu Bu will be unhappy.

Looking at his lord's unwillingness, Chen Gong Old Man suddenly looked at Liu Mang and smiled.

That gesture made Liu Mang's heart surprised and feel very bad! Chen Old Man have the idea to use him as a bait again!

And as expected, Chen Gong said "As long as Hanyang stay at Mt. Bagong's feet, this Chen Lan and Lei Bo will feel secure!"

Fucking hell. Liu Mang want to shout and curse "Motherfucking bastard", Hey, Chen Old Man, you want to act as a father to reassure Chen Lan and Lei Bo, huh? Or you want me to take Chen Lan and Lei Bo go picnic, so they will not suspect anything?

"Wait a minute!" Liu Mang thinks, if just stay at the foot mountain, then they will not need to fight at all, can relax.

“Very well, I stay at foot of Mt. Bagong, you guys do not need me to join into fray right?!” Said Liu Mang while gazing profoundly at Chen Gong.

Hearing Liu Mang’s question, Chen Gong smiles. He knew that this boy must comply with the order.

“You just need to attract the attention of Chen Lan and Lei Bo from Mt. Bagong’s feet, so naturally you do not neet to attack the mountain!”

“That is good, I accept the order!” Liu Mang complied immediately. If attack the mountain, there will definitely have a big casualties, but if stay at the foot of the mountain, he will not need to throw his life.

“So tomorrow, Hanyang will stay at mountain’s foot to attract Chen Lan and Lei Bo, Xuangao to bring Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry to mountain fortress’s secret entrance to subdue Mt. Bagong!” Said Lu Bu, issuing several orders.

“This General Zang Ba receive the order!”

“Hanyang receive the order!”

After looking Liu Mang left the big tent, Lu Bu said this “Gongtai, you order Hanyang to do this, not just to make Chen Lan and Lei Bo’s worry away, right?!” That’s right, if solely to trick the enemy, Lu Bu can just take off his armor and helmet then find someone with similar stature to put on. As long as they did not said any word, same effect can make Chen Lan and Lei Bo’s worry away.

"Milord is wise!" Chen Gong show his thumb to Lu Bu. "Even though Hanyang has been given a title of prince, he is also Milord's son-in-law. This makes may officers to have a very discontented feeling" For son-in-law's position in government to be bigger that his honorable father-in-law, in the end people will asked, what will this army called? Still Lu Bu army or already become Liu Mang army? Before, when Chen Gong made Liu Mang to go to Shouchun is to solely subdue Yuan Yao, so other people in Lu Bu army saw he, Liu Mang, is also a part of Lu Bu army, so Lu Bu's army personnel can also risk their life for Liu Mang.

"Risk their life?!" If Chen Gong is the one who said these word, Liu Mang will absolutely strangle him. But Lu Bu is the one who said these words. In battlefield, no matter how menial the task is, how possibly there is no danger involved?

"Gongtai, while your idea is good, you did not fear that I, as your lord, have a different opinion?!" Lu Bu's gaze grew more profound when looking at Chen Gong. Actually, even though Liu Mang's task is to provoke Chen Lan and Lei Bo right now, it can be said that he is gradually accumulating merits and prestige. Now Liu Mang's title is higher than Lu Bu, once merits and prestige accumulated, won't those merits overshadow Lu Bu's own? And if Lu Bu got suspicious, Chen Gong and Liu Mang cannot escape death.

Chen Gong not replied immediately, but asked one cryptic question "Milord, are you able to do it?!"

TL: What Chen Gong want to said is, "Milord, are you able to gain peace and prosperity and maintain it? I believe Hanyang has the ability to do it!"

Lu Bu did not speak, but continuously looking at Chen Gong.

Chen Gong also staring at Lu Bu. A scholar and a general, a warlord and an adviser look at each other for half of incense stick. Then Lu Bu's mouth corner formed a smile while shaking his head "Gongtai, oh Gongtai!"

TL: Incense clock, in ancient China, one incense burn rate is one hour. So whenever there is a sentence "One incense time" that mean it is one hour.

"Milord!" While Chen Gong surface is indifferent, but his sleeve and palm is already cold sweat. Transferring merit and prestige to people is a big taboo to a warlord. Other people may not know it, but Chen Gong actually felt an extreme killing intention from Lu Bu, once Lu Bu burst out, then it is over.

But fortunately Lu Bu is not such a person at all! Correction, Lu Bu is not a competent warlord.

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 54 – Mountain Fortress Infiltration (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

When someone acts as bait, they must have a consciousness as a bait. So Liu Mang, is ordering his division to form an excellent formation, for Chen Lan and Lei Bo to see but also for Chen Lan and Lei Bo unable to comprehend the formation.

Liu Mang's Urban Army have been taking this course of action before dawn until now when the sun is already high.

“Lu Bu Army have anything like this?!” On peak fortress looking below, Chen Lan is in a big doubt “This is not Lu Bu's style!”. Chen Lan absolutely knows about Lu Bu's temperament, and due both of them have offended Lu Bu severely, they should be hit by Lu Bu by today if according to Lu Bu's ultimatum. But now they are just surrounding them.

“What plot is Lu Bu Army concocting?!” Chen Lan is pondering.

Lei Bo is a big idiot and thus his discourse is much simpler “Big brother, why should you ponder more?! Mt. Bagong is located in the throat of Central Plains, in the south there's Yellow River as barrier, and the only way to climb a mountain, only this road is available. Easy to defend, so whatever plot that Lu Bu has, it will thwarted immediately!”

“Is he trying to burn the mountain?!” Chen Lan tries to think from Lu Bu's angle. “It is impossible!” Chen Lan shook his head. Even though Mt. Bagong have very dense forest, it is also have a very moist soil and weather. So fire attack are completely impossible.

“Trying to close our route?!” Finally Chen Lan smiled. In his fortress, they have robbed 10,000-shi of grain and provisions from Yuan Gonglu, and now Lu Bu tried to close off their route? Lu Bu is really stupid after all, now he and Lei Bo both can just play patience, discover whose provisions will run out first, theirs or Lu Bu

“As long as Lu Bu only surrounding us, there is nothing to fear!” Chen Lan waved his hand, ordering his men to continue patrol and monitoring “Lu Bu” movements, while he go back and rest for a while.

It has been two ancient hours already, there is only very little or no movement from Lu Bu's army.

TL: 1 ancient hour when converted to modern time become two hour.

Chen Lan feel something is wrong, even Lei Bo also become alerted. So they gathered again in fortress main base.

“Okay, let us review what Lu Bu look like. He wear a full-metal golden armor, ride a big warhorse and using two-edged ji halberd!” Chen Lan is reviewing calmly. He also have 8 great generals and yesterday Chen Lan saw Gao Shun and Zhang Wenyuan yesterday.

“That's right. Generals!” Chen Lan suddenly stood up. “Second brother, do you see several armored warrior beside Lu Bu yesterday?!”

“Yesterday?!” Lei Bo touched his head tried to remember. “Maybe, big brother! What is your point, bro?!”

"They disappear!" Said Chen Lan.

“They disappear or not exist at all! What is the difference?!” Lei Bo do not care at all.

“What do you understand?!” Chen Lan is a little angry. This stupid brother of his do not understand anything at all. All he is good is only martial arts, and even that is no good either.

“You! Did you see at Lu Bu's side, is there any armored warrior yesterday?!” Chen Lan asked a soldier who is guarding fortress.

“I ?!” That soldier is really confused by Chen Lan “Great king, I have not seen them clearly!”

“You are useless! How about you?!” Chen Lan quickly inquired another person.

"Great king, I have not seen clearly!"

He continued inquiring until several archers responded “Great king, yesterday indeed beside that golden armored person, there are some generals!”

An archer vision is naturally very good and able to see things faraway.

“Really? Beside that golden armored person?!” Chen Lan suddenly caught up with archer casual words.

“Yes, Great King. Yesterday's golden armored person!” This archer is very confused about today's Great King's attitude. “Ah, yes, Great King. Today's golden armored person is wearing two more horns on his body!” The archer said that casually.

“Two more horns?!” Chen Lan go to guard outpost to see on that golden armored person down there. There is really two more horns on his chest area.

“No, No, No. That guy is not Lu Bu, that guy is not Lu Bu!” Chen Lan understood immediately, that this person is definitely not Lu Bu.

While Chen Lan looks for Lu Bu, the rear area of fortress suddenly there are war cries.

“Where that war cries coming from?! Is Lu Bu Army storming here?!” Lu Bu Army below the mountain is not doing anything at all, so there is simply no sound.

“Not good, it comes from the after main peak!” Chen Lan finally remembered the rumor about Mt. Bagong's second entrance, after occupying it. Chen Lan aslo looking for that second mountain entrance, but what a pity, he cannot found it.

“Great King, Great King! Lu Bu Army is annihilating our rear army at mountain rear!” Chen Lan not yet responded, a messenger come with a message while bleeding all over place.

“Lu Bu, Lu Bu!” Chen Lan should have thought about that second

entrance which he had not found. But now Lu Bu army tell him clearly at a very great cost.

Fire everywhere, the peak is already like a slaughterhouse. Lu Bu army is the one who set the fire.

“Shaaaa, drive them out of peak! Second brother, you lead the brothers to hit Lu Bu army! Once mountain rear has been broken, it will be the end of us!” Chen Lan roared a decisive voice, let Lei Bo support mountain rear.

At the mountain rear, there is provisions warehouse, and barracks, so it is impossible to have many people guard. Lu Bu army do not met with any resistance at all. And under Zang Ba's leadership, they swiftly occupied an open space for Lu Bu's Army checkpoint.

“Brothers do not panic, here comes support! Your second king has come!” Although Lei Bo is an idiot, but he have still have his ability with martial art and art of war. So he swiftly brought soldiers and horses to counter-attack them.

Although Lu Bu Army have occupied a checkpoint, but their numbers are too few, so they can be forced to retreat with unexpected support from Lei Bo.

“It is not good!” Zang Ba roared, if they were repelled, it will be impossible to attack Mt. Bagong again due to secret entrance already been found out, and will soon be blocked by them, so Lu Bu Army can only be frustrated with Chen Lan and Lei Bo. Zang Ba then roared loudly towards Lei Bo relief troops and determined to block their path, even though their troops are outnumbered 10 to 1.

“Absolutely cannot retreat!” Zang Ba want to open a new opportunities, but was suppressed by Lei Bo's elite bodyguard unit.

“Damn, at this rate, it will be over before the real battle even started!” Zang Ba is very helpless, he cannot claim merit this time.

At this moment, there is a valiant general rushed through the siege, with a Poseidon halberd in his hand. Wherever he goes, he strikes terror in every enemies' heart.

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian has arrived!” Shouted Lu Bu suddenly, giving Lu Bu Army morale boost that they needed. That war cry is a war cry that soars to the heavens.

Lu Bu is their soul, so long Lu Bu still exist, Lu Bu army will never be defeated.

“Oh no, It is Lu Bu!” Lei Bo's face now have the color of fear. He, as a military commander, naturally knows about Lu Bu's terror. But he could not flinch now, he could only bite his teeth “All of you do not need to fear Lu Bu, now his Lu Bu Army only left with less soldiers, even though you are Lu Bu, you cannot fight numerous soldiers with only your sheer prowess. Brothers come with me, drive Lu Bu Army away!”

TL: A little joke from Dynasty Warriors series, especially Dynasty Warriors 3, “It... It's Lu Bu!”

Lei Bo lead his bodyguard and try again to repel Lu Bu Army.

“Lei Bo?!” Lu Bu suddenly looked at him, second king of bandits. Even though they are bandit brigades, but they are a big group. Just like ants can overwhelm elephant with sheer numbers.

Lei Bo must die! Lu Bu thrust his Poseidon halberd aimed at Lei Bo.

"Lei Bo! Death has come unto you!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 55 – Bandit Brigade Retaliation (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

"Big, Big brother!" Chen Lan finally do not calm and started to panic, because Lei Bo come back alone with blood all over the place and also his blade broken already.

"How?!" Chen Lan inquired Lei Bo's foster son immediately.

"Hurry, hurry go, get away from this place!" Said Lei Bo while huffing and puffing.

“How about mountain rear?!” Asked Chen Lan. Chen Lan is very anxious because the sound of battle from mountain rear is getting bigger and bigger along with flames.

"Lu Bu! Lu Bu is at mountain rear!" Lei Bo said the worst outcome that Chen Lan has predicted.

“We're done with! It is the end!” Chen Lan know that once Mt. Bagong's defense is crumbling, they are dead man walking. When Yuan Shu proclaimed himself as emperor, Chen Lan and Lei Bo with clear-head, declare themselves to leave Yuan Shu and also when Yuan Shu is defeated, both of them rob Yuan Shu and let Yuan Shu only lingering his feeble existence. Thus you can see, Chen Lan also have his ability.

So, he once again give order decisively “Mt. Bagong cannot be defended anymore! Retreat!!!” Chen Lan calm himself down. Actually he is unwilling to let this place go. Betraying Yuan Shu and occupying Mt. Bagong is his plan. His next move, after leaving Yuan Shu is to surrender

to Cao Cao who have occupy Yan Province and Xu Province. His would-be offer is to give Cao Cao half of Yang Province, so Cao Army can have a firm footing in Yang Province.

Robbing Yuan Shu is also Chen Lan's plan, and he even threatened Yuan Shu to give him Imperial Seal or he won't let him go peacefully. He planned that after he successfully received Imperial Seal, he want to enjoy his life full of wealth endlessly

Who can predict, now having Lu Bu as enemy. At first, with Mt. Bagong natural defenses, he Chen Lan is confident repelling Lu Bu, and now Mt. Bagong's defense is crumbling. If Chen Lan knows that Lu Bu attack his brigade as payback for 5,000-shi of provisions to Yuan Shu, he is willing to do counteroffer to Lu Bu. Hell, even if Lu Bu take 10,000-shi of his provisions, he is willing to give him, as long as Lu Bu leave them alone but now, all of them finished.

“Breakthrough the mountain road, Quick!” Chen Lan bit his teeth. Mt. Bagong cannot be defended anymore. Waiting here is just the same as waiting for King of Hell pass his judgment, so we need to breakthrough, even though it will be the end of us.

Mountain rear had been seized by Lu Bu army, now for breakthrough, can only use front door.

“Big bro, on the mountain feet, also have Lu Bu's army!” Said Lei Bo anxiously.

Chen Lan and Lei Bo's brigade have 10,000 troops total and their morale already dropped to the bottom because of Lu Bu Army. Now the one that

can still fight in front of him counted only less than three thousand elites. At the mountain feet Lu Bu army is also still numerous. So Chen Lan is facing the same predicament as Lu Bu Army yesterday. Mt. Bagong is easily defendable but now, breakthrough is very, very difficult. Damnable pincer attack.

Chen Lan bit his teeth and said “Second brother, time to release this elites!”

“Big bro, are you sure?!” Lei Bo’s eyes flashed a happy expression, but he also hesitates “Bro, at the mountain feet, Lu Bu Army is still a lot. If we tried to breakthrough at this condition, there will be nothing left of us!”

“If not for breakthrough then for what else, if we do not use them, then these soldiers that we had trained are useless! They will die without any purposes!”Chen Lan replied coldly “Light up smoke signals! It is time to breakthrough, do or die!”

“Yes, big bro!” Lei Bo transmitted his orders. In Mt. Bagong, suddenly there are a lot of smoke signals.

“Second brother, you go first! No matter what happened to me, make sure you and this 3000 elites to breakthrough alive, in order to make our comeback!” Said Chen Lan disregarding the other bandit brigade’s troops

“I know big bro!” Lei Bo is still a human, therefore he still want to held his aspiration high, not dead like a dog in this place. What is die like a dog means, it meant to offend Lu Bu completely and annihilated along the way without knowing what has happened.

“Brothers, Mt Bagong cannot be defended anymore! We are bandit brigades, there is no way out for us if we are caught. Now, the only way out is to breakthrough the mountain road. Only by breakthrough can we survive and make a brilliant comeback! Else, we shall be walking corpse, waiting to die!” Chen Lan tried to raise his troops morale because the fire from mountain rear has made their morale plummet.

“We are no longer Yuan Shu’s army, we are now bandit brigades. If we are captured by government troops, then it is the end of us. Those who want to be alive, must escape with me, Lei Bo!” Lei Bo also a general, so he definitely knows that morale is very important.

“Breakthrough, breakthrough!” Nobody wants to die, these bandits are also the same, even though their existence is very ignoble compared to an ant, let alone human.

“Now at mountain feet there are a division of Lu Bu army blocking our way! Say, what should we do with them so we can stay alive?!” Chen Lan asked a question.

“Kill them, kill them, kill them all!!!” All 3000 people shouted in one voice.

“Right, to kill them is to live! Brothers, let’s slaughter!”Lei Bo opened the fortress front door to breakthrough

“Sha, Sha, Shaaaaaaaa!” 3,000 of bandit elites ran toward Lu Bu army Phalanx division.

- - - -

probably only Liu Mang.

“This?!” While watching Mt. Bagong, Cheng Yu can only smile helplessly.

Liu Mang’s nap is very calm. Well, because starting from Shouchun, Liu Mang do not have any good rest because always busy. If no war council then it is training and vice-versa. No time to proper rest.

"Bang, bang, bang!"Sound the earth is shaking.

"General, General!"Cheng Yu shake Liu Mang panickly.

“Cheng Yu, do not disturb me!” Liu Mang just waved Cheng Yu. Once Liu Mang already in deep sleep, it is very hard to awaken him.

"General, wake up quick, wake up quick!" When Cheng Yu sees that it is unable to awaken Liu Mang, he had no other option but "to offend the general!" Then he raised his hand to make a big slap.

"Pop"

"Ah" Liu Mang get up fiercely “Why the fuck you hit me for?!”. Hey, no matter who it is, someone will definitely get annoyed when woken up from sleep, let alone slapped.

“General!” Cheng Yu also sees that Liu Mang freak out, if at that time, Liu Mang take the sword to kill him, he would not be able to avoid death

at all.

Liu Mang also knows that the one who slap him is Cheng Yu, but he could not do anything about it, because there are more pressing matters on hand.

“This vibration. Earthquake?!” That is impossible, Shouchun is located at Huainan, there should not be any underground volcanoes that could make earthquake. Even it is in Sichuan, Yi Province, should not have this grandeur.

“There are cavalry! There are cavalry moving toward us!” Liu Mang suddenly remembered that this sound is the same as the time when Bing Province Heavy Cavalry in action.

But, all of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry already at the peak with Boss Lu.

“Enemy, there are enemy coming here!” Liu Mang stared at the road. The earth vibration comes from there, then that explained an enemy division is coming this way.

“Shaaaaa!” At the same time, Lei Bo brought 3,000 elites from Mt. Bagong, to breakthrough Lu Bu Army’s phalanx battalion, screaming war cry along the way.

“All army full alert, confront the enemy!” Liu Mang do not want to die but now at Mt. Bagong’s feet there are only his Urban Army and supply troops. They are the dead-weight division right now, how can they make a stand now?

Now, there is only doom from enemy.

“Ha!” Lei Bo rushing again with their cavalry unit. This cavalry with total of 2,000 troops, was raised from scratch by both of them and also taking them more than 10 years to do it. When robbing Yuan Shu, he did not use them at all. Now, Mt. Bagong already broken, Chen Lan finally released his trump card.

“SHAAAA! Kill them for me!” Chen Lan is very angry today. “Damn you, Lu Bu, you attack my nice fortress, and now drive me away from it, let me become a stray dog, I'll annihilate your division now.”

“Golden-armored warrior! Damned golden-armored warrior!” Chen Lan's eyes is sparkling with hate. Lu Bu wear golden armor, this general also wear golden armor. In that case, this person must have a close relationships with Lu Bu. This bastard must die, I must kill him. If he is killed, then Lu Bu will grief nonstop.

"Lu Fengxian, I must make you regret to offend me, Chen Lan!"

My Father in Law is Lu Bu - Chapter 56 – Urban Army Division First Battle (1) (MTL, not proofread or edited yet)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

“Motherfucker! Chen Old dickhead, you deceive me!” Liu Mang almost want to cry. On war council, Chen Gong said, your role will not have to fight, no need to slaughter, just need to confuse the enemy.

But now, there are cavalry soldiers moving toward him and trying to bust out his ass. If this is not to fight, then what is?

“All troops, engage with the enemy!” Liu Mang roared. At mountain foot, there are only his Urban Army Division and supply troops, and that’s it. But from the peak, there are cavalry soldier moving downward from the forest above. Their numbers should be no less than 2,000! At Kaiyang, Liu Mang saw by himself the power of Ferocious Cavalry and if compared now, their power should be quite similar.

At that time only 2,000 troops of Ferocious Cavalry deadlocked Boss Lu’s 10,000 troops in Kaiyang, letting them to be in despair.

But now, it is fucked up completely. In Liu Mang’s hand, there are only 1,000 troops of Urban Army. While supply troops have 5,000, but he cannot rely on these old supply troops. Therefore his potential only 1,000 troops.

“Kill all Lu Bu Army division in front of us. Kill them and we live!” Lei Bo roar again. His fortune today is extremely bad. That is quite understandable for Lei Bo to act like that. His den lost, his possession lost, his family lost. In conclusion, everything lost.

So, now Lei Bo vented all his anger at Liu Mang.

"Destroy Them!" Screamed Lei Bo. Now, we see at the geography first, Huainan is in southern area. This region is full with lakes and mountains, basically not ideal to raise horses with good quality. Therefore, to obtain a good horse, one must "import" them from north and their price is very expensive and only having warhorse can one warlord create a cavalry unit. Due to this constraints, only a few warlords can have cavalry division, Old Yuan is one of those warlords.

If Liu Mang carefully observe them, he will discover that these cavalry soldiers come from same roots which is the imperial guard of Old Yuan in Shouchun. Before Old Yuan was defeated by Cao Cao, he also have 8,000 cavalry troops.

And these 2,000 troops are Chen Lan and Lei Bo's subordinates. When Chen Lan leaves Yuan Shu, he also brought these 2,000 cavalry troops with him. After Old Yuan was defeated by Cao Cao, his Yu Province cavalry soldiers only numbered less than 1,000. And those also was added into Chen Lan and Lei Bo's hand,

"General we withdraw first!" Fuck, the enemy in front are heavy cavalry troops led by bandit leader Lei Bo. All of Urban Army troops are fresh recruit who not yet fight a battle, they are really afraid now. Every single of them are looking at Liu Mang searching for orders, and hopefully Liu Mang will order withdraw. Once Liu Mang said withdraw, they will scatter like a wind.

"Withdraw? Where we can withdraw?!" Although Liu Mang has never directed an army, he watched many war show on TV. Infantry cannot fight cavalry. If engage, infantry will die, withdrew also die, how can two legs

fight four legs? In any situation, infantry will always be oppressed by cavalry.

And you know what? The reason of Song Dynasty defeated by Jin Dynasty and finally annihilated by Yuan Dynasty is because Song Dynasty is confident with their numbers, but they are all infantry!!! Idiot, all of them. And finally, Southern Song become a sitting duck by Yuan Dynasty waiting for annihilation. Why don't they learn from history?

TL: Song Dynasty was defeated twice, Northern Song by Jin Dynasty, Southern Song by Yuan Dynasty (please refer to Wikipedia, for more further information)

"All army, without order, nobody move!" Shout Liu Mang summoned the last of his courage.

Urban Army fresh recruit cannot wait for Liu Mang order already for they are already afraid and even more the frontline, they already do not have unified direction because these people are not veterans, just recruits who was picked among Liu Mang's troops. So when they hear cavalry is coming, they are already scattered everywhere.

So now, the soldiers who is able to fight under Liu Mang is less than 3,000 troops.

"Sha, Sha, Sha, SHAAAAA!" Screams Zhang Kai. Zhang Kai is Chen Lan and Lei Bo's subordinate. This Zhang Kai do not have any military training prior, and joined Chen Lan and Lei Bo as bandit. Plundering, raping, and looting are his way of life. So his bloodthirsty can be extreme. Because of this aptitude of his, Chen Lan like him more and made him lead Yu

Province Cavalry.

TL: It is possible that this Zhang Kai is the one who killed Cao Cao's father Cao Song. He was a subordinate of Tao Qian, previous Governor of Xu Province before Liu Bei took over. For further information: http://the3kingdoms.wikia.com/wiki/Zhang_Kai , if it is real, then Lu Bu Army have done a favor to Cao Cao without knowing what he has done before.

The following cavalry soldiers also have an extreme bloodthirsty aura around them.

Zhang Kai's troops now have caught up with supply troops. Their massacre begin almost instantaneously, in not more than a flash, tens of people already fallen to their blade. Blood flower formed everywhere.

Zhang Kai licked the blood at his mouth corner, a salty and irony taste. Zhang Kai gets more excited again.

"Sha, Sha, SHAAAAA!" They want to run, but horse are more faster.

"Ha, Kill them all!" Zhang Kai and his soldiers are very ruthless in this battle, supply troops suffer great damage suddenly.

==========

"Rumble!" At the peak the ground also felt the vibration and sound of slaughter can be hear also from the fortress.

“From where, that slaughter sound?!” Asked Lu Bu who has just beheaded Chen Lan’s soldier. Although battle of Mt. Bagong’s fortress is still happen, but it has already reached conclusion, as long as Lu Bu army rushed into the peak, Mt. Bagong already claimed.

“SHAA!” Nearby Lu Bu Army also kill Chen Lan’s Army remnant, so how he can pay attention to his surrounding.

“From mountain foot?!” Lu Bu is a top military commander, so his hearing is very strong. If not have that, then it is impossible to be vigilant even when he is at death’s door,

“Chen Lan and Lei Bo flee to mountain feet?!” Lu Bu guessed a little. Lei Bo almost died at his hand a moment ago, but he managed to run away. Now, at mountain feet, there are sound of slaughtering which definitely from direction where they escaped.

Mt. Bagong is impossible to be defended again.

"Not good!"Lu Bu shook his head. He placed his ear on the ground to confirm his suspicion.

"Clip, Clop!"

Lu Bu’s eyes widened up “Cavalry! Where comes the cavalry!” That sound is really familiar to Lu Bu because he is the best of the best when it comes to cavalry, so the way cavalry moves, he would know immediately.

“Hanyang! This is bad!” Lu Bu suddenly realized, at the mountain feet there are only Liu Mang’s Urban Army and 5,000 supply troops.

This grandeur at the very most at least around 2,000 cavalry troops. Liu Mang Urban Army only have 1,000 troops. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker all here.

“Finish the battle quickly! Full rush!” Lu Bu has shouted his order. Destroy Chen Lan’s remnant and then support Urban Army immediately.

“Hold on, Hanyang! Lu Bu muttered to himself.

He and Chen Gong make Liu Mang guard mountain feet beside to confuse Chen Lan and Lei Bo also to keep another squad to cutoff those two’s escape route. Mt. Bagong easy to defend from attack. Vice-versa, Mt. Bagong is difficult to be attacked. So in similar fashion, if Chen Lan and Lei Bo want to attack mountain feet, is also difficult.

Therefore, they felt relieved when leaving Liu Mang with Urban Army and supply troops. If relying on these 6,000 people, they are able to suffocate Chen Lan and Lei Bo, therefore giving Liu Mang merit and promote him in Lu Bu Army.

But, who would expect that these bandits really have cavalry troops. And those 6,000 people aside from Liu Mang's Urban Army are unable to fight due to all of them mostly old, weak, sick and disabled soldiers. Even Urban Army, though consists of able fighters, mostly consist only recruits, no veterans.

Is Lu Bu do not have confidence to take on 2,000 cavalry troops with only 6,000 infantry?

That is the only reason why in Battle of Kaiyang, they only play siege battle not direct battle with Ferocious Cavalry. Because they simply cannot win using only infantry.

“Cavalry troops!” Zhang Liao, Gao Shun, Chen Gong and Zang Ba really aware of this sudden change in this battlefield, initially they think it is only a distraction, but Lu Bu shouts has reaffirm their minds.

“Finish battle quickly! Full rush!” Chen Gong is the most anxious here, because it is his strategy decision that Liu Mang was assigned down at mountain feet. If Liu Mang died here, he Chen Gong do not have a face to go on living.

“Finish battle quickly! Full rush!” A general is forever the soul of the army. Looking at Lu Bu and the other generals movements, the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker movement also burst with big speed especially those veterans who survives Xiapi and Kaiyang.

Why! Because Liu Mang brought meatbuns to them! They received a food for rich people! Also Liu Mang have saved their lives many times, how can these simple but honorable men do not show their gratitude? Now Liu Mang is in grave danger, how they cannot worry about him too.

“Sha Sha SHAAA!” In Mt. Bagong's peak, Lu Bu army suppressing Chen Lan army.

At the same time at mountain feet, Lu Bu army are being suppressed by Chen Lan army! Same place, same time, same battlefield but with two results waiting for them.

Chapter 57 -Urban Army First Battle (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“Destroy them! SHAAAAA!!!!!” Zhang Kai whole face is in killing frenzy, his sword has been covered with blood also as his body, making he look like a hellish general.

“Run! Run! RUN! DEMON IS COMING!” Only dead people who no longer fear death, living people, they all fear death. Supply troops are all scattered, decimated. Of 5,000 troops, casualties more than 1,000. Most of them are trampled to death. If good luck, then can be killed by Yu Province Cavalry soldiers, not trampled to death.

“General!” Cheng Yu screamed at Liu Mang only to find out that Liu Mang is very calm and unmoving. Although Cheng Yu have experienced hundreds of battles and have a general ability, but he have not been facing charge from Cavalry division therefore he is now in panic. So, when he noticed that Liu Mang is really calm, his heart calmed down a bit.

That is from Cheng Yu’s point of view, but what really happens is he is scared stiff. He is frightened to the point that his face muscle cramp completely, therefore it is just showing calmness

“General, what about these supply troops?!” The first soldiers that Liu Mang face now is not the Yu Province Cavalry troops which Chen Lan and Lei Bo leads, but the supply troops who are running in fear toward him.

These supply troops is being scrubbed off by cavalry charges. So their

fear already reached their max, and rushed quickly toward Phalanx troops. Perhaps their intention is to hide behind them.

More than 3,000 troops rushing toward Phalanx troops.

“Cannot retreat, absolutely cannot retreat!” Liu Mang muttered to himself. He know that once these supply troops are rushing over to his phalanx formation, the result is both are gonna die. And he who wear golden armor will also impossible to escape.

“CRASH!” The first wave of supply troops have clashed with great shield soldiers.

“I cannot die! How can I die here?!” Liu Mang saw those cavalry soldiers brandishing bloodthirsty look. Liu Mang pulled out his sword and ordered his cavalry who protects the middle phalanx to attack those who are fleeing.

“General?!” Cheng Yu noticed that Liu Mang advancing, also ordered his squad to also advance.

“I will not let you escape and disarray, ABSOLUTELY NOT!” Liu Mang become mad. Usually pressure of fear either making people have death wish or being mad, Liu Mang being the latter.

Liu Mang’s arrival in front of phalanx formation, raise the morale instantaneously.

Supply troops frontline when they saw Liu Mang, all shouting “General,

General, please saveus!" Their impact began fiercer as they want to break open the phalanx formation so they can escape to the rear, to the safe zone.

"Save you?!" Liu Mang muttered "Then, who will save me?! Forgive me!"

"General, why do you do--!" Common soldier looking at Liu Mang with disbelieve in his face. "Why, Why!" The soldier not yet said the sentence, his blood already splattering Liu Mang's face.

Liu Mang also raged by the blood and shouted "Anyone who dare to retreat, shall not be spared!"

Liu Mang's killing did not move these supply troops. A supply troops shouted "To go forward is dead end, who wants to live rush with me!" While saying that, they raised their sword toward Liu Mang.

"Yes! Rush him is to live! Kill him, kill him!" Supply troops have been stricken with fear by Yu Province cavalry troops started to raise their sword, not to kill the enemy but want to kill the general who is leading them.

"You dare do this!" Liu Mang had underestimated those supply troops potential to be fierce. Those supply troops are generally commoner who are seeking to survive within the army, which means, you as their general must be responsible for them.

Those supply troops pulling Liu Mang horse reins, they want to topple down Liu Mang, so they can kill him.

When it seem Liu Mang will die in the chaos.

“Who dares to hurt the general, will not be spared!” Suddenly Cheng Yu galloping with his horse, killing people with his spear and immediately protect Liu Mang. Cheng Yu has been indebted to Liu Mang since Xiapi and Kaiyang, so he is the one who will first defend Liu Mang at any cost.

“Enemy cavalry troops are nearing, if we do not escape, we shall die!” Yu Province cavalry troops are nearing every second. Some supply troops soldiers are trying to boost their messed-up morale “They are only two people, kill them!”

“The one who dares hurt the general will not be spared!” Behind Cheng Yu is 100 cavalry for phalanx guardian, all rushing together. They only following Liu Mang’s order. No matter if you are allies or enemies, as long as Liu Mang said behead, they will behead them all.

And the result, is as usual, these infantry supply troops become meat patty in front of cavalry! These 100 cavalry unexpectedly killed 200 infantry in an instant.

“General, are you all right?!” Cheng Yu said his concern.

“I am all right!” Liu Mang actually afraid that if Cheng Yu did not come in time, perhaps Liu Mang will be maimed by those supply troops.

With 200 people dead, the supply troops become calmer now.

Because they already thought, advance die, retreat die. So no escape for them

Many of supply troops become despaired as they throw down their weapons. Some even weeping. Fear of death has made them docile.

Survival is the most basic instinct. These supply troops before joining the army are just farmers and peddlers. How could they have any experience fighting in the battlefield. And their enemy now is cavalry soldier, even veteran soldier also nervous fighting them, let alone them.

Is it their fault for fleeing? No! Their task is just transporting grain and provisions, not to fight. Is it right for rushing their allies? Yes! But it is a matter of survival or not.

Liu Mang looking at these supply troops also felt bad in his heart. If he stop these 5,000 supply troops from fleeing now, no one will be able to live. These are 5,000 lives, they cannot be obliterated just because his orders to fight.

Liu Mang's heart began softened up, especially when he saw youngsters faces in supply army. Old people, children? These are people when in peaceful age should be taken care of. But this is chaos time, one can only struggle desperately. Those children whose sword are higher than their bodies, and those frail old men who took up sword.

He is thinking, whose son or whose father maybe they are. But in the battlefield, their name is only a soldier.

“Open the way!” Liu Mang suddenly made a big decision.

“Huh?!” Cheng Yu doubting this order… Open the way??? “Please general, think again, if making them go through phalanx formation, we do not have time to reform again and then we’ll die!” Cheng Yu also knows to fight cavalry troops with only infantry, it need a very organized formation. If that formation breaks, then it is the end for them.

Let them pass? They will destroy the formation.

“Take the path beside our formation! Quick!” near the phalanx formation that Urban Army stand, there are two narrow paths for people to walk.

“Many thanks for general to let us survive, many thanks for general to let us survive!” These supply troops seeing a glimmer of hope, profusely thanking Liu Mang and quickly go to the narrow paths.

“Puff!” Liu Mang behead a supply troop personnel. They began to shock and thinking that the general breaking his promise.

Then Liu Mang said coldly “The elderly and weak go first and after that the others!” If those cavalry soldier start to storm, the elderly and weak is the one going to be trampled to death. This kind of incident will absolutely compromise the Urban Army phalanx formation, so they must queue one by one. The one that Liu Mang just executed is a healthy and capable soldier who is forcing his way to the queue, so his execution is a warning to other soldiers not to mess up the queue.

“Yes, Yes!” Those supply troops who have experienced Liu Mang’s means, obediently formed a queue as Liu Mang ordered.

100 people, 200 people, 300 people, 500 people, 1000 people, when 2000 people have passed, Liu Mang suddenly ordered to seal the path.

"General, please you cannot do this!"

"General, we asked you to let us pass, PLEASE!"

"General saves us, saves us!"

These sound begging for mercy does not move Liu Mang, he is already too cold-hearted for that and said “CHOOSE! You attacked the enemy or tried to destroy the formation! Either way will grant you only death!”

It was not Liu Mang who want to make them pass, but the cavalry soldier is already here. Liu Mang already can see the opposite general.

“COME, COME! Let me witness with my own eyes, how terrifying you are, cavalry troops!”

Chapter 58 – Fight to the Death

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“Why those people have passed, and now you do not let us pass?!” Forever and ever there will be people who will discontent with one's decision. This kind of people will never realized that when Liu Mang let them pass, he is already jeopardizing them and Urban Army. This kind of people only know that Liu Mang is the one who currently making them perish.

Thus is the cruelty and the needs for phalanx formation existence.

Liu Mang's eyes throw cold glance. Liu Mang simply thought “You're the one seeking death right? So don't blame me on what about I do to you!” Actually they have the third option, if one may think, that is to built defense line along with Urban Army. If they think this way, then they maybe have opportunity to survive this battle but they do not and they are blocking Urban Army and disrupting their formation, so he have no choice but to kill them.

"SHAAAA!"Liu Mang issues order without hesitation.

“Puff! Puff!” And then, allied force become corpse by Urban Army. These supply troops really terrified and finally divided by two, some of them helped Urban Army construct defense line, and some of them just lying on the ground, waiting for death.

“SHA, SHA, SHAAAAA!” Zhang Kai's Yu Province cavalry troops has

arrived in storming manner. The one who has most bad luck are those supply troops who have given up resisting. Their bodies trampled over and over again until they become meat patty by those mighty cavalry troops.

"Clip, clop!" Liu Mang finally knew firsthand how cavalry troops might in cold weapon era. This feeling of earthquake is enough to make one frightened, let alone cavalry troops prowess.

Liu Mang noticed that Urban Army soldiers faces are painted with fear already. Hey, they are mostly newly recruited soldier, so this is their first battle and their first battle, they are facing with cavalry!

Liu Mang also afraid. This is battlefield, this is war, where the conclusion is "You or me who die". So Liu Mang, remembering what Lu Bu taught him, calm himself down. He cannot be confused or flustered. General is the soul of an army, if he show one weakness, then Urban Army will be annihilated. Liu Mang shouted "Brothers! All of you forget our slogan?! Our oath?! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!? This is our first battle! Are you all afraid like chicken?! Have you all forgotten all of that?!"

"Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!" Cheng Yu and his troops is the one who shout first. This kind of atmosphere is infectious to all humans who are staying right now. Their fear perishes and changed into different kind of madness, so Urban Army also roared "Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!! Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!"

Looking at Urban Army's restored morale, Liu Mang smiled and then

start taunting the enemy “Come On! Come On!”

Liu Mang ordered “Great shield row, raise your shield! Second row put your spear on the great shield troops shoulder! Third row, raise your spear! Fourth row, draw your bow!”

“Ha Ha Ha, Lu Bu Army already scattered by our first charge!” Zhang Kai who has decimated supply troops become extremely arrogant and start acting up “SHA SHA SHA! Lu Fengxian, you are but mediocre compared to me, Zhang Kai!”

Zhang Kai really underestimate the phalanx formation of Urban Army “A mere thousand infantries tried to stop my Yu Province cavalry?! Brat, you are an easy prey and easy merit!” Said Zhang Kai after seeing Liu Mang's phalanx formation. This war is easy as pie, and Zhang Kai will get the most merit of them all, so he become really greedy.

”Brothers, rush them, they are our merit and wealth! Easy as pie, Ha Ha Ha Ha!” Zhang Kai shouted.

"150 steps, 140 steps, 130 steps, 120 steps, 100 steps, 80 steps!"Liu Mang scream his order “Fourth row, arrow volley!”

When Liu Mang issued orders from fourth row of phalanx formation until the end row, they send volley to the enemies. With exception of first having only great shield, second and third rows having spears, all of Urban Army soldiers are equipped with long bow. Moreover this is cavalry troops charge, so no need to aim, like all volley tactic, hit everywhere.

“Abominable!” Zhang Kai using his sword tried to deflect arrows. Even if

he is a general, he can only protect himself during arrow volley. An arrow find its way to Zhang Kai's body, “AH!” Instead of stopping to calm himself down, he pull the arrow using his teeth. Blood gushing everywhere, but he did not care at all instead just increasing his bloodlust.

Zhang Kai can deflect arrows, but the other cavalry soldiers whose martial arts are not as good as him, started to fall one by one.

“You got big balls!” Zhang Kai's eyes have an overwhelming kill intention. These cavalry soldiers are Zhang Kai's subordinate, they are promised promotion. Now, no less than a hundred soldiers died under volley.

“Rush! I must rip that general!” Zhang Kai roared wildly.

Suddenly the speed of cavalry soldier, who was originally fast, become 100 times faster.

“Kill them all!” Zhang Kai's face become more bloodthirsty. Every time one of his Yu Province cavalry dead, increase his anger.

“Boom!” The strong wave of cavalry troops were met with Urban Army great shield row. The momentum of cavalry troops charging made the great shield troops stagger, but fortunately there are spearmen behind them.

“Puff Puff!” 2.8 meter spears stabbing those cavalry soldiers, making those who dare to charge similar to Hangtulu.

TL: Hangtulu https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tanghulu

The great shield soldiers who at the front row, also suffer a lot of soldiers. They have protection of great shields, so the cavalry soldiers cannot injure great shield soldiers. But when horses ram them, that is when they suffer internal injuries. Several great shield soldiers already vomiting black blood mixed with damaged internal organ.

“Second row give your spear to first row and switch positions!” Liu Mang scream again. This idea is to supplement those who are injured from the first row, so second row spearmen become the first row great shield soldier to stop cavalry charge.

“Third row spearmen, press on! Fourth row put down your bow and raise your spears, prepare to switch with third row!” Second row spearmen, all of them, already have stabbed their spears to cavalry soldiers and with blood gushing everywhere, it will be hard for them to see, so third row have to press on again on them!”

“What the fuck is this tactic?!” Zhang Kai is not stupid. At first when his vanguard troops made contact Lu Bu army, he is already slaughtering them, therefore he cannot imagine that now his vanguard army is blocked and starts to suffer a very hurtful casualties.

The great shield soldiers and spearmen is similar to barricade to stop cavalry troops

Horse screams everywhere, the whole battle has made the battlefield become pitiful.

“RUSH, RUSH, RUSH!” Zhang Kai ordered while biting his tooth. The loss of Yu Province Cavalry made him very sad, but he had to rush. He can see, although right now, his cavalry troops charge has been stopped by phalanx formation, there is one big flaw in this tactic and that is lack of troops. Usually 2,000 cavalry soldiers can press 10,000 infantries. So one cavalry troops can only be replaced by one heavy-armor infantry.

But that trade is also not so good, because cavalry has mobility, which infantry do not have.

So right now, even though Zhang Kai knew that he cannot break phalanx formation, he actually knew that the opposite division have too few soldiers. Due to horse charge, sooner or later, they will be able to breakthrough their defense line. Do they really think with those less than 1,000 infantries able to stop us, 2,000 cavalry troops? Keep dreaming okay.

Let alone, when they are hit by 3,000 troops of Chen Lan army from their flank.

“SHAA, SHAA, SHAAAA!” Cavalry troops kept charging again and again, Urban Army also kept persevere.

“Persevere, Persevere!” Liu Mang also bet his life in this battle, because if the formation was breached by cavalry, they are dead completely.

“SHAAAA!” Above the sidewalk, finally Chen Lan army arrived with 3,000 troops to flank Urban Army. If they managed to join the cavalry, then Urban Army will perish.

“Cheng Yu, you take over my position, direct our brothers here!” Said Liu Mang while pulling up his horse rein.

“Personal bodyguard, come with me to engage the enemy!” Now he can only use his 100 personal cavalry bodyguards, 100 versus 3,000! Ha-ha, even a stupid person know what the outcome of this battle, but now Liu Mang do not have a choice at all. Even though this is a fight that is impossible to win, what he needs now to buy time. So that Boss Lu who is still at Mt. Bagong dispatch troops to rescue him!

“General, you are our division commander in chief! How can you engage the enemy yourself? Just let me go and engage them!” Cheng Yu also knows that, 100 cavalry versus 3,000 infantry troops, the end is a narrow escape. How can he let Liu Mang, the commander in chief, take risk?

“You stay here and command! As long as you persevere, I will not die! Personal bodyguards charge!” Liu Mang waved his long sword towards Chen Lan army.

Chapter 59 - Deadly Battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (1)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

"You dare to charge here with so little men! Since you seek death, let me help you fulfill your wish!" Lei Bo is the vanguard of Chen Lan Army infantry division now. His 3,000 soldiers start scurrying down the mountain like ants evacuating their nest.

"Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!! Urban Army charge!!!!" Liu Mang has no other options now, once he let these 3,000 infantry troops joining with Yu Province Cavalry, then Urban Army will perish! His option right now is to buy time for Boss Lu's arrival with these 100 cavalry bodyguards.

"SHAAAA!" On mountain feet, Urban Army and Chen Lan Army collided with each other. Those Chen Lan's infantry have the big advantage because they have great shield called forest, if there are no shield, those infantry will certainly become meat patty. Lei Bo is a veteran general, so he know about this advantage and disadvantage, therefore he intentionally slowed down his infantries'speed when descending down the mountain.

First wave of charge, Liu Mang's sword already drink blood. The impact of his horse and his weapon enabling him to kill three people at once. His entire squad already gone into big frenzy, flesh and blood are dancing in the air.

Loss of his soldiers has not made Chen Lan and Lei Bo sad, because loss in battlefield is inevitable. On the contrary, Lei Bo is very happy, because

these hundreds of sacrifices made by his infantry actually shows how desperate Lu Bu Army is now. What Lei Bo needs is just surrounding them with his remaining army and these micro cavalry unit will die.

"Ha, Ha, Ha, SHAAAA, SHAAAAA!" Chen Lan Army casualties is numerous and Urban Army also suffer big casualties. When Urban Army's horses starts to tire, it is Chen Lan Army turn to massacre them, toppling them down off their horses and then killing them.

"Persevere! We must persevere!" Shouted Liu Mang while killing Chen Lan soldiers. His shout actually want to raise his bodyguards morale but was damped by the sound of battle, so they could not hear. Also those bodyguards who are following him now less than ten people, from the original of 20 people

During initial Urban Army charge, Chen Lan army casualties is about 500 people. But this does not matter because there are still 2,500 troops remaining. But Urban Army cavalry cannot afford that loss, for losing even one soldier, will compromise their potential.

"Lei Bo is here, General of Lu Army, you will be dismounted and die!" Lei Bo roared and charged directly to Liu Mang. His sword has been brandished and those who had any effort to stop him has already become corpses.

"Lei Bo?!" Liiu Mang stared at him, his eyeball almost fall from its place. This is Chen Lan army vice-commander, should not he be in Mt. Bagong? How can he appear here?

In Three Kingdoms novel and historical record, his name also appear on

both of them. Although he is just a one-time character who appear in one chapter, but he also must have the ability, otherwise how can his name written in both novel and historical records. Liu Mang did not have any time to further thinking about it and started to retreat from him.

"Who are you Lei Bo? Are you a country hick from nowhere??? I heard you want my life, right??? Come take my life, if you really have the ability!!!" Said Liu Mang intentionally. He cannot afford to lose his momentum, so he can only insult him in order to raise his unit's morale. Let me ask you a question, if you are face with famous general that want to take your life in battlefield, what is your response? Liu Mang's response is definitely to run away, that is the most optimal choice or the second one is to avoid face-to-face confrontation.

However those both options is not good now. If he ,as a general, run away from enemy, where the hell your troops morale will go? To gutter or toilet? Your cavalry will be decimated in no time, if you show fear. So Liu Mang cannot back down at all even facing with famous general, for he is the soul of his army.

A country hick? That insult proved to be quite effective, as the enemy troops unexpectedly also watching their general and losing their focus! The morale of Urban Army cavalry troops immediately risen again and start charging again.

"Excellent courage!" While Liu Mang successfully rising his squad's morale, but he also rousing Lei Bo's anger. From the beginning of this battle, Lei Bo is in a bad mood. Was hunted by Boss Lu, driven out from his home, able to escape only with great difficulty. And now, he meet up with young general who not only insult him for being a country hick but also kicking down his pride as a general. How he cannot be angry with this asshole?

“Today, I want to rip you apart!” Lei Bo’s rage has peaked, while brandishing his sword, suddenly he have a big boost of strength.

“Bang!” First clash has started, Lei Bo’s sword has been clashing with Liu Mang’s long sword sending sparks everywhere. But still no damage on them.

“His strength is too big!” From the initial clash, Liu Mang’s arm is shivering. Even though now, he is unharmed from initial clash, but he is just taking the advantage of using horses momentum. If Lei Bo have a warhorse or he wore heavy-armor infantry equipment, then Liu Mang will certainly die during that initial clash.

“Brat, you are good!” Lei Bo initially want only to scare Liu Mang, but he did not expect that this brat can also retaliate, even with his little strength assisted by his warhorse.

“Country hick, you are also very good!” Liu Mang just pretending not to feel Lei Bo’s sword impact and insult him again intentionally.

“Brat, you really seeking death!” Lei Bo whose temper just got better, got insulted again by this brat again naturally angry again “Brat, I will tear your mouth before I kill you. You filth!!!”

“If you really can do it, then come!” Liu Mang swing his sword again toward Lei Bo immediately. Begging for mercy to survive now is impossible because once in battlefield, the only result is you die or I die. Liu Mang become ruthless once again. He proclaimed in his heart, “If I cannot survive this battle, at least I will bring you down with me!”

“HAAAAA!” Lei Bo begin charging again toward Liu Mang.

Liu Mang also do not show his fear at all and facing him head-on.

Now, Liu Mang do not have the advantage horse momentum anymore. So this battle is very hard for Liu Mang. Although Lei Bo is only a small figure in Three Kingdoms novel and historical records but watching him fight now, he is clearly have the strength of second-class general. His strength at minimum is over 70, but his opponent, Liu Mang, only have strength around 5 points. So, it can be only persevere in this battle, waiting for Boss Lu’s rescue.

So, his Aries gold cloth become a very important defensive tool here.

“Bang-Bing!” Lei Bo’s attack is directed on interconnection between Liu Mang’s gold cloth. Because that place, whenever and wherever, an armor made, it always has the most thinnest layer of defense. If Xiahou De found this weakness earlier, then it is Liu Mang’s death. Lei Bo is stronger and more experienced than Xiahou De, naturally he noticed this weakness.

“Chi Chi! Looks this time, your mouth is not so toxic like last time, Brat!” Lei Bo teasing Liu Mang.

“Sorry, what was that? No toxic? In what way?? Hey, my mouth’s toxic is much better than traitorous dickhead who now become a stray dog!” As old proverbs of etiquette said, one does not beat face when giving beatings, also one does not curse one’s dark past. But Liu Mang just said everything from Lei Bo’s past from betraying Yuan Shu and to be driven

out from Mt. Bagong, how he cannot be furious now.

“Initially I want to let you survive, but now I want you die!!!” Lei Bo is really furious, no longer teasing Liu Mang. His sword is in frenzy immediately and started to hurt Liu Mang’s body. Liu Mang began to bloodied by his own blood.

Earlier, when showdown with Xiahou De, it was really fortunate that Boss Lu arrive on time. But now, showdown with Lei Bo, Boss Lu still in Mt. Bagong, so impossible to appear here.

“Is this my fate to die here?!” Said Liu Mang, while puffing blood from his mouth. Too much blood loss has made his consciousness blurry. Now he is trying to suppress sleepiness with all his might. He cannot rest, must not rest, once he closed his eyes, he will not open again.

“Remember in hell, that the one who killed you is I, Lei Bo!” Lei Bo once again slash his mortal strike towards Liu Mang neck.

“No, I cannot die! Cannot die!!!” Reflexively Liu Mang tried to ram Lei Bo, unknowingly the horn part of his armor has skewered Lei Bo’s neck.

“Puff!” Blood sprayed Liu Mang’s face. This amount of blood can only be produced if someone skewer or slash an artery.

“Am I dead?!”

Chapter 60 – Deadly battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“Impossible! How can this be!” Said Lei Bo with disbelieve look while holding his neck.

“I am not dead yet?!” Liu Mang do not felt ice-cold of death but instead he heard Lei Bo voice, full of resentment. Liu Mang raise his body slowly and found out that Lei Bo dead with his neck pierced, then he smiled bitterly “Oh, he is the one who dead!”

On one of the horn of Aries gold cloth, there is a bone mixed with flesh, is this larynx bone?

That is correct, the one who die is not Liu Mang, but Lei Bo. Just like we tell you from previous chapter, when Lei Bo want to unleash his mortal strike, Liu Mang reflexively evaded it and ram him. Even though his speed cannot be compared with Lei Bo who is experienced in battle, but Liu Mang is wearing Aries gold cloth, with horn on each side of his breasts. So, that is how Aries gold cloth skewer Lei Bo's neck.

Lei Bo thought he has won, but his luck run out, when Liu Mang ramming him, stabbing him in the neck with his armor.

“No, no, no, no, second king died?! SECOND KING DIED!!!” Chen Lan Army already lost morale when seeing Lei Bo has fallen near Liu Mang and began their retreat.

“What? Lei Bo dead?!” Asked Chen Lan who right now inside the main army. Chen Lan ordered Lei Bo to be the vanguard while he stayed in main army, holding down Lu Bu main army. Right now, he has not yet descend the mountain, already received bad news. Lei Bo dead!

“Who, Who in Lu Bu army managed to kill Lei Bo?! Is there any mighty generals again in mountain feet?!” Inquired Chen Lan, now he is really angry and surprised, he even coerced his messenger with sword.

“No, No. Only one general, his name is Liu Mang!” Messenger replied nervously. Their great king's attitude have scared them stiff.

“Liu Mang? Who the hell was that?!” Chen Lan start to recall again. “Lu Bu Army previously have eight superior generals, but no one have a name of Liu Mang!”

“That general is the golden-armored man who we saw on guard outpost earlier!”

“Golden-armored people?!” Chen Lan brow wrinkled, he thinks that golden-armored people is only Lu Bu army's VIP, one of his family. Never once he thought that this golden-armored man is a senior general ,which Lu Bu put him on purpose, able to kill Lei Bo.

Regarding Lei Bo, Chen Lan still sad but did not too deep, as if he is just losing a regular general. Also regarding Lei Bo's skills, Chen Lan admit that Lei Bo is strong and he is a good commander. If that golden-armored man can kill Lei Bo, that alone explain one thing, that man is strong.

If Liu Mang knews what Chen Lan is thinking, he will definitely thanked profusely!

If Lei Bo and himself fighting against Liu Mang, then Liu Mang will definitely be chopped into pieces, but that stupid Lei Bo, too proud of himself and now costing him his life. In the battlefield, the tide can change instantaneously, for example, how do you think Guan Yu able to slay Yan Liang and Wen Chou in one blow? Both of their strength and prowess are comparable to Guan Yu at that time, the difference is they both looked down and underestimate Guan Yu. They are senior generals in Yuan Shao army, how their prowess can be compared with one guest / captured general? And in that moment, they perished by one blow.

“General, you are mighty! General, you are mighty!!!” Liu Mang has killed Lei Bo, of course his own unit's morale will rise up to the top. If Liu Mang at one point is happy but now, he can only show bitter smile.

“Second elder brother, how can we surrender, seeing you dead like this?!” Liu Mang has killed Lei Bo, but Lei Bo's own troops have not died. Their master dead, killed by Liu Mang, so they are glaring angrily at Liu Mang. Personal bodyguards are usually treated as family by their general, so their loyalty will be very deep.

They are now very much want to kill Liu Mang, but actually also afraid of Liu Mang strength. But now with Liu Mang's cavalry batallion, those 2,500 troops of Lei Bo's personal guards began expressing again killing intent.

“Great King has ordered, whole vanguard to charge, to retreat is to live,

also whoever kill golden-armored people will have position of third king!" Screamed Zhang Kai. Lei Bo has died, naturally Zhang Kai must assume command. Chen Lan also wanted Zhang Kai to lead his cavalry division, but he can only give him position as third king.

"SHA, SHA, SHAAAAA!" Chen Lan army who has surrounded Liu Mang began to move again, because of the merit given by Chen Lan himself.

"Revenge for second king!!!"

"Revenge for second king, KILL HIM!!!"

"Third king position is mine!"

Their foremost reason to attack again is to take revenge for Lei Bo, the second reason is to get merit. With that reasons, 2,500 Chen Lan army morale were restored again and start to attack those micro cavalry unit again.

"SHAAA, SHAAAA, SHAAAA!!!" Liu Mang already exhausted physically and mentally, just to survive Lei Bo's battle took toll on his stamina. While Chen Lan army's soldiers are all Yuan Shu Army veteran, even though they are now bandits. So one can say that their battle experience are already a lot and they can maintain stamina better than these new recruits and that rookie general.

In this situation, the cavalry unit usually will close in to retaliate against Chen Lan army, these move will usually making those infantries unit to be startled and off-guard. But now they cannot do that, for Chen Lan army has the superiority of numbers.

“I'm not dead at Lei Bo's hand, and now I must die in these soldiers hands?!” Liu Mang's longsword already broken and his bodyguards now left around 3, 4 people from 20 people. The remaining cavalry unit also overwhelmed by those infantries, if they do not die in this fight then it is a miracle working for them.

“General!” Those four remaining Urban Army soldiers are already exhausted but they still engaging the enemy.

“General, you escape quickly! We will guard your escape route!” One of those four people shouted at Liu Mang. Liu Mang remembers that guy's name. His name is Xu Cheng, his voice has not yet changed, his age also smaller than Liu Mang, this year he is 17 and Liu Mang is 22. 17 years old in peace age, can be considered still blooming generation, generation that needs guidance.

This age, he should be have a carefree attitude and dozing off while attending class in school!!!

But in this chaos times, he must be in battlefield.

“General!!!” Cheng Yu who now become vice-commander of Urban Army main unit also discovered Liu Mang predicament, they had been surrounded. Cheng Yu thinks of rescuing him, but he is now confronted by Yu Province cavalry, so it is impossible for him to leave. Once he leaves, Urban Army will be defeated and annihilated completely, but if he does not save Liu Mang, he'll be executed by Lu Bu.

“Abominable!” Cheng Yu bite his teeth.

“Cannot escape this time!” Liu Mang see that he has been surrounded

by Chen Lan army. Chen Gong old man, now you really give your young master a bad time! But he also understood what Chen Gong's scheme. In the beginning, Chen Gong's tactics is very good. Making Liu Mang to confuse Chen Lan and Lei Bo as a camouflage. Once Mt. Bagong's attacks successful. Chen Lan and Lei Bo also cannot escape anywhere and has reached dead end. Because at the mountain rear there is Lu Bu, they definitely won't try to breakthrough that path. Their only path is to breakthrough toward front gate, where Liu Mang's 1,000 Urban Army and supply troops are waiting. Fighting them is also will not be difficult and Liu Mang will obtain merit also.

But who have thought that this Chen Lan and Lei Bo who are now bandit brigade, have 2,000 cavalry soldiers plundered from Yuan Shu plus infantries. Even Boss Lu is the god of war, he is also very hard to press on them.

Knowing that he cannot escape, Liu Mang relaxed himself again and prepare to go fight to death! Because he do not need to think to escape anymore, due to escape route has been blocked.

With this situation in Liu Mang's mind, he laughed mischievously. He pat Xu Cheng shoulders.

“Hey, little Xu Cheng, living this long, have you taste women???”

“Women?!” Xu Cheng startled, what the hell this general thinking???

“Looking at you, I can tell you have not taste women at all!” Liu Mang said in contempt tone, making him as if he had women before.

“Xu Cheng, I tell you, women have a very soft body, a smooth and delicate body, once you taste women, you will never forget it!” Actually Liu Mang is still a virgin but he can say this because previously he had fondled Lu Lingqi's boobs and unable to forget about her.

“General, I....!” Xu Cheng do not know how to answer his general and his face become blushing red. When one see, no one can knows if this is a shy blush or blood color. In the whole universe, the only general who discussed women on battlefield maybe only Liu Mang alone.

“Why should you shy about that?! We are already adults, so it is normal to talk that! As a matter of fact, your general still have not tasted any woman, still virgin! Still not have women, but will have to die here! I'm not willing to do that of course, because I have a fiancee now, but right now, I don't have a choice but to die as a virgin!” Liu Mang shook his head and stand up, taking sword from corpse's hand.

“Xu Cheng, do you still remember our slogan and our oath as Urban Army?!”

“Yes, together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!!”

“Yes, that is right! I, as your general, apologize to you because I am unable to bring you riches and honor. But I will not abandon you, I will now accompany you to die together! Urban Army division engage!”

“Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor, SHAAAAAAA!”

Five people who have been surrounded, start charging and engaging their enemies again.

Chapter 61 – Deadly battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (3)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“Hey, no wonder Lei Bo is dead, look at this people, their unity are this strong with that golden-armored man's leadership!” Chen Lan have started to descend from Mt. Bagong with main army, and looking at Liu Mang with only five people charging cannot help but admire him. But that admiration only temporary, immediately after that, Chen Lan's face become bloodthirsty again and shouted in cold voice “Lu Fengxian, you and me did not have any grudges at all! But you seize my Mt. Bagong and now you kill my second brother! Now I will make you taste the sadness of losing on of your senior general!” Chen Lan then raised his sword and exclaim again “Transmit my orders, KILL THEM ALL!!! THE ONE WHO OFFER THAT GOLDEN-ARMORED MAN'S HEAD WILL BE OUR THIRD KING!”

"Yes!"

At Urban Army main force right now, they no longer have 100 cavalry bodyguard, only these supply troops left. Liu Mang's order is to phalanx formation to stay here actually is to protect these supply troops from being annihilated by Yu Province cavalry.

“Supply troops brothers, go save the general!” Cheng Yu right now do not have anyone available to dispatch to Liu Mang's position. Urban Army cannot withdraw, once he removed, the whole division will be annihilated, but if he do not withdraw, Liu Mang will be dead undoubtedly. Therefore Cheng Yu need to place his hopes on these supply troops.

Nobody dared to move, for they already afraid by Yu Province cavalry. With great difficulty they had maintain survival, and you want to make them go out again to certain death??? You kidding, right?

"Supply troops brothers, who do you think saved you, HUH???? Who do you think has helped you survive???" Cheng Yu roared "If not general orders, ALL OF YOU ARE DEAD, DEAD!"

Still, nobody moves, even in the crowd there are people who talked back "Making us go again??? Are you insane??? Just to survive for us is a miracle! But now, you order us to march to our death again? Your general is a bad leader! Some of our supply troops brothers died in the hand of your general!!"

"Why you want to make us dead again?! If your general is in danger, you go save him yourself!"

"We do not go! We are not marching to our death!"

One of back row soldiers of Urban Army who hear that rebuke, already want to slash those supply troops, those assholes who maintain miserable existence. "ALL OF YOU ARE A SON OF A BITCH WHO DO NOT DESERVE TO LIVE, BASTARD CHILD OF OUR ARMY!!!" Said that soldier. "The general already brave danger open up his phalanx formation just to make you retreat, now you do not seek to repay his kindness but speak malicious remark toward the general!!! Yes, the general killed your people but why? Because they tried to attack our formation, they tried to desert us at a very critical point. So he handle them according to military law, by killing them. If our Urban Army has been destroyed at that time, how all of you can still stand and speak now? All of you will become dog food right now by those cavalry soldiers!!!" This veteran who speaks is a

survivor from Xiapi and Kaiyang battle and also Cheng Yu's fellow villagers.

“Wang Hao, STOP!” Cheng Yu hold down Wang Hao's sword, they cannot afford quarrelling anymore. Urban Army forces casualties has reached 20% of its original roster. One by one, its row are starting to get eliminated by Yu Province Cavalry. But that is also the same situation for Yu Province Cavalry. Their casualties also already not small so both sides are doing all-out.

As far as eye can see, one can see repeated actions from both side. Urban Army stabbing their spears into Yu Province cavalry soldiers, Yu Province Cavalry troops also swinging his sword into the body of Urban Army soldiers.

Due to the Yu Province Cavalry's charge, their impact is causing Urban Army soldiers to spurt out blood along with damaged organ. This kind of damage cannot be cured even by present time medical standard, let alone this ancient age.

These Urban Army soldiers also know that he could not survive after this battle, therefore each soldiers who have been severely injured made a resolve that they must trade their life with these Yu Province Cavalry soldiers. Even if they do not have any weapon, even if both their hands are chopped, as long as they are not dead yet, they are certain can kill these Yu Province cavalry soldiers, even with only teeth as their weapon.

So their massive loss have made these Urban Army soldiers vent their dissatisfaction to these goddamned supply troops.

“Lieutenant General Cheng! We retreat, we retreat! We save general now!” This is all Urban Army soldiers have agreed upon.

“Cannot retreat, we cannot retreat!” Cheng Yu can only reply that response. He also want to save Liu Mang, more than anyone in this unit. If Liu Mang did not exist, Cheng Yu also would not exist to this day because with Liu Mang's help, he can manage to escape from Xiapi and survive Kaiyang. Also Liu Mang give him strength and courage to keep on living and to take his revenge.

But he cannot retreat now! Liu Mang's order have made him nailed here.

“Lieutenant General Cheng, is our brothers sacrifice do not have worth? As they died for saving these good-for-nothings??? I, myself, already seen this good-for-nothings as an eyesore!” Shouted another veteran.

“Enough of that bickering, if you already fed-up with then you can complain to me later!!! Tenth row spearmen, prepare to press on!” Cheng Yu exclaimed.

Supply troops soldiers did not speak at all. If the Urban Army is not here, they would probably dead by now and cannot talk anymore.

“Splash!” Suddenly Cheng Yu kneeling.

“Lieutenant General Cheng, what are you doing?!” Shouted some veterans. Urban Army who are currently engaging Yu Province Cavalry have Liu Mang as their leader and Cheng Yu as second-in-command. But

now their second-in-command kneeling unexpectedly in front of supply troops, so those veterans also want to prevent him from doing this.

“Lieutenant General, what are you doing?!” Said supply troops with doubt

“I beg you, supply troops brothers! Consider I, Cheng Yu, asking a debt from all of you. Please save our general now!!! The Yu Province Cavalry soldiers who you fear have been halted by us!!! Halted by our Urban Army, so long as our Urban Army and I, Cheng Yu, still breathing, those Yu Province Cavalry will not take another step from here! The only enemy that you need to face now is a defeated and broken hearted bandit brigade who descended from the mountain, you only need to save our general!!! Mt. Bagong has been broken by our lord, Chen Lan army now are stray dogs. So long as we persevere for a while, our lord's army will come and save us!” Cheng Yu kowtow toward those supply troops. Cheng Yu whose mother has died, even when Xiapi is broken and facing death, he vows to never bow his head again, now kowtow toward those good-for-nothings supply troops begging them to save Liu Mang.

“We, we!” Those supply troops have been moved, although Cheng Yu is only a lieutenant general but he is also second-in-command of Urban Army. Definitely, one can call him a general and such general now bowing to them now, asking them to save Liu Mang.

“Come on, let's go!” Whispered some people who already been moved by Cheng Yu's gesture.

“If you must go, then go! I don't want to go, I am not a death seeker!” Some people also voiced their disagreement. An army that does not have a courage is the same as a limp dick, useless. So are these supply troops,

they are an impotent army.

“Then all of you are garbage, waste, coward! All you do is to stay behind while others fighting and kneel when you are about to be killed. Limp dick all of you!” Exclaimed Cheng Yu angrily.

“We are not garbage, not a coward!” Although supply troops is only second-line troops but they also have hot-blooded person, they are stirred by Cheng Yu's words.

“If you are not cowards, go save our general! Without him, all of you now already corpse, already become trash!” Cheng Yu can't no longer hide his anger in his heart. Urban Army may be decimated in this first battle, but if Liu Mang died can they raise up again another Urban Army??

Although Urban Army forces formed not long, but in each Urban Army soldiers heart, they already though that their general are the best that one can have. Their general shouted their slogan “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor”, let them sing! Even though the song only remember them about bad times in their life. He share with them good wine and good food! Although only a very little piece of meat and those good wine already tasted like water, but their general also share the same thing. Is not their general treat them like one of their own?

In chaos times like this, human life's worth become as low as a dog. But their general raise their dignity up again, so they become human once again.

Supply troops also silent, Cheng Yu looks at these supply troops, he have lost hope already. He already resolved his heart to make Urban Army to retreat and save their general. Without Liu Mang there will not be Urban Army, even if the whole army annihilated along with their general, they also do not care at all. Is not that “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor” slogan meant???

“I go!' A supply troop soldier stood out.

“I also go!” And there is another one.

“I.. I am not a waste, not a coward!” Soldiers will never lack hot-blooded person.

“My grandma and me owe our life to the general, the least I can do is repay him with my life!!!”

“Let's go, let's go! The worst outcome is only death by blade!”

“Thank you, thank you, thank you!” Cheng Yu really excited but he do not know how to praise or express gratitude, so he can only say thanks many times and kowtow to them until his head bleed.

Chapter 62 – Deadly battle with Chen Lan and Lei Bo (End)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“Only five people can kill my dozens of my men?!” Chen Lan looked at Liu Mang and his men already exhausted. Chen Lan only brought 200 elite of his unit when descending, he left his majority unit because at the mountain peak, his unit already scattered and slaughtered by Lu Bu main force.

From five people, the only one who is still able to stand only Liu Mang. Liu Mang can stand because his gold cloth also served as his impenetrable defense, but his own bodyguard do not have armor like him, so they fall one by one. Xu Cheng also cannot stand anymore, his lung already stabbed by spear and mortally wounded.

“Oh, little Xu Cheng, little Xu Cheng, why are you so stupid?!” Liu Mang half knelt though his feet is already above the ground, no, it should be said that he is stepping on a corpse because all over the place, there are corpse everywhere and Liu Mang now holding upper half of Xu Cheng's body, because his lower half already buried underneath other corpses.

That immature face now really pale and start to cold. That lance is meant for Liu Mang but Xu Cheng blocked it, if he did not do that, the one who is laying on the ground is Liu Mang

“Is it worth it?!” Liu Mang touched Xu Cheng's hair gently so he can see his face. People in ancient China used to have long hairs, men and women.

TL: Please watch Chinese drama series for more information about long hair in ancient China

“It is worth it! As long as general can continue living, what Xu Cheng done now is worth it!” Said Xu Cheng while struggling, trying to grip Liu Mang's arm.

“It is unworthy actually, unworthy! Xu Cheng, I tell you this! Your general cannot give you anything at all! The slogan “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor”. That is a nonsense, that is only a slogan, a motto, you know!” Liu Mang suddenly become insane.

“No, it is not just a slogan! General, you know that! When you said that words, you have taken our hearts with you, you consider us as brothers, all of us are willing to serve you wholly!” Said Xu Cheng while coughing blood due to his lung wound. He cannot live no longer.

“After that, you made Lieutenant General sing for us, you read a poem for us. We are all peasant farmer children, General! An outcast, a slave! When we listen to the song, we know that we will follow this general, this noble person to the death! And then you made us sing, how happy we are! Ha-ha-ha, that times is the happiest time of my life as Xu Cheng!” Liu Mang really do not know the impact of teaching everybody to sing has on these soldiers of his.

“Cough!!” Xu Cheng coughed blood again.

“Little Xu Cheng, do not talk anymore, your wound is worsened!” Liu Mang is denying himself. He tried to press Xu Cheng's chest, trying to stop his blood from flowing but to no avail.

“No, General, I know that I cannot live anymore, so please let me talk. That wine and that meat, that night meal is the most delicious thing that I, Xu Cheng, have eaten in my whole life! General, you know that this is the time of chaos, war everywhere! Human life is worthless, a joke, an expendable thing. I, Xu Cheng, do not afraid to admit that I become a soldier in order to eat, just try to survive daily like animal! It is you general, who made me feel what I have lost as a human, you gave me back my dignity! Dignity to live as a human!.. Puff!!!” Xu Cheng vomited blood along with his damaged lungs debris.

“Xu Cheng, I order you to shut up, SILENCE!” He did not know about ancient times training for commander. Their training is not to share joy and sorrow but to lead and that's it! But Liu Mang's training is from present times training regiment, so he did what he can, a training from the future with his own common sense. But what he did not know that when someone fighting for power in ancient times, soldiers are only an expendable commodity

Xu Cheng just smiled at Liu Mang. Military law demands that one to comply orders but Xu Cheng right now did not want to obey and continue saying “General, I am very tired now, I want to sleep!”

“You cannot sleep, Xu Cheng, I order you not to sleep!” Liu Mang knows extremely well, if Xu Cheng fall asleep in his wounded state, he will die.

“General, please sing a song to me! Sing our army's anthem!”

“Yes, I will sing our army anthem to you, I WILL SING NOW, so don't you dare to sleep, you got me?!” Xu Cheng heard every word but every

second, his blood gushes out of his chest.

“Let’s share the plate for breast! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our lances shine. Your foe is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the coat and vest! The king’s raised forces to the line. The king’s raised forces to the line. Your job is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the kilt and the rest! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our armor shine, And march, your hand in mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Country dispatched their troops to war, we repair the weapons, I and you are facing the common foe.”

TL: I am using Scar and Tchu's translation from Chapter 45, sorry brothers.

Xu Cheng really happy hearing this familiar song and said to Liu Mang in a very soft voice “General! Forgive me! Xu Cheng cannot...comply...your....or-....der!”

“Xu Cheng...XU CHENG!!!!!! AAAAHHHHHHHHHHHH!” The teenager who died in Liu Mang's bosom. His name is Xu Cheng. That innocent face, that shy teenager closed his eyes forever with a smile on his face, free of any regret.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA! Chen Lan, come on kill me, kill me, you bastard!” Exclaimed Liu Mang who become mad, releasing Xu Cheng's head and start cursing toward Chen Lan army.

“Come on! You do not want this Liu Mang's head??? Liu Mang is here!!! Come, you fucker. END ME!!!!” Liu Mang really become a mad dog.

Startling all Chen Lan army.

“Why all of you froze? Kill him! Kill him now!” Yelled Chen Lan angrily

Chen Lan Army do not want to move, because they fear Liu Mang!

“Do you want to disobey military order?!” Asked Chen Lan.

“Great King, he is--?!” Nearby Chen Lan army soldier is trying to ask their great king but he not yet said complete sentence suddenly “POOF!” His artery has been severed by Chen Lan. “Great King, why???” That soldier is disbelieve.

Chen Lan wiped blood on his face “If you do not kill him, I will kill you all! Is not he is just a person? Why you all fear him? If you kill him now, you are third king, you will become Chen Lan's brothers!”

“Yes, he is still a man not a demon, kill him, kill him will grant us third king!” As people always said, greed can overcome fear. Chen Lan army began to charge again.

“Forward, kill him!”

“Ha-ha-ha!” Liu Mang laughed watching those Chen Lan's army soldiers who want to kill him. He instead throw down his sword, giving up resistance. Both Chen Lan army and Lu Bu army are struggling in a spiral of cruel fate in this chaos times. If this were peace and prosperity time, can they still be like this? Quarreling with swords? Fuck that, now only death is the way out, might as well die and give them riches and honor.

Liu Mang closed his eye. Little Xu Cheng, your general will accompany you to afterlife, along with your 99 brothers. When Liu Mang gave up his resistance, he heard his army anthem.

“Let’s share the plate for breast! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our lances shine. Your foe is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the coat and vest! The king’s raised forces to the line. The king’s raised forces to the line. Your job is mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Let’s share the kilt and the rest! The king’s raised forces to the line. Let’s make our armor shine, And march, your hand in mine. Are you not battle-drest?

Country dispatched their troops to war, we repair the weapons, I and you are facing the common foe.”

“Who dare to hurt my general, Cheng Yu has come!” Suddenly reinforcement has come to take down those Chen Lan armies remnant.

“Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor! SHAAA SHAAA SHAAAAA!” This is the voice of Urban Army.

“We are not waste, we are not cowards, Kill them all, scrub them all!” This the voice of supply troops.

In an instant, Chen Lan army who originally have only one enemy: Liu Mang, was caught off guard by reinforcement and began to die one by one, leaving Chen Lan hapless

“So I'm not dead yet?!” Liu Mang is not happy because he just survive,

but instead his killing intention just risen to the max. Xu Cheng died, his own personal bodyguard has been annihilated, all 100 of them. All of these because that goddamn Chen Lan, that now struggling Chen Lan.

“Chen Lan, I must kill you today!” Liu Mang started to charge at Chen Lan with max killing intent. Never before Liu Mang want to kill a person this badly. Not Chen Deng, not Xiahou De can make him this mad, only this asshole did.

Chapter 63 – Xu Province ownership change

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

Mt. Bagong's campaign has ended with Chen Lan and Lei Bo killed. Chen Lan army was also absorbed into Lu Bu's Army. From 10,000 troops ended with only 1000 troops. Yu Province Cavalry also from 2,000 troops total, left only 800 troops severely injured, but able to escape due to Zhang Kai's quick thinking, otherwise they also will be absorbed by Lu Bu's army.

From 5,000 supply troops only less than 2,000 survived. Urban Army casualties is 50% and Liu Mang's personal bodyguards all has been annihilated.

“Milord, is Hanyang really all right?!” Said Chen Gong with brows wrinkled. He saw that Liu Mang is still kneeling in front of those corpses for quite a while. He is silent, not saying a word at all.

Lu Bu who was following Chen Gong from behind, also sighed “Let him be for now!” Chen Gong is not a general so he has not experienced the pain of losing one brother-in-arms in war. While Lu Bu understood well what Liu Mang is experiencing right now. Lu Bu has seen many of his personal bodyguards perish for just protecting him. Those who are fought side-by-side with him, those who have placed their hope and dreams with him, now become not exist.

“Hum!” Chen Gong nodded his head and moved on from Liu Mang's matter. He puts out good news now “Milord, please look. This is an account book containing all notes regarding Mt. Bagong inventory

including all amounts of gold and provisions!" Due to Mt. Bagong already seized and Chen Lan dead, this place have become deserted and thus all of Chen Lan's wealth have all become Lu Bu's war spoils.

"Their inventory is this much?!" Lu Bu really surprised when he read the account book. He thought that when Chen Lan separate himself from Yuan Shu, he took with him only provisions 10,000-shi at the very most, who would have thought that he have this many.

There are golds also jewelry and jade, those three items have not yet counted but really a lot of treasure that they have accumulated. And for grains and provisions, there are at least 15,000-shi. As for treasure, Lu Bu counted them to fit at least 30 horsecarts, so one can know how much wealth these bandit brigade has.

"Chen Lan and Lei Bo is just Yuan Shu's lower general, how can they have this much wealth?!" From Yuan Shu, Lu Bu heard Chen Lan and Lei Bo robbed Yuan Shu's supply troops, but those supply troops should be just transporting grain and provisions right? And they have treasures now, where they got this? When Lu Bu still become Governor of Xu Province, he has not seen these much gold and jade.

"Milord!!" Chen Gong shook his head "Those 15,000-shi of grains and provisions was indeed robbed by Chen Lan army but those treasures were accumulated by Chen Lan and Lei Bo while they are still in Yuan Shu's service!"

"Yuan Gonglu that generous?!" Chen Lan and Lei Bo is only Yuan Shu's second level official. Naturally not so much savings, but seeing these treasures now, Yuan Gonglu must be very generous to reward his official so much. Plus, Lu Bu also knows that Chen Lan and Lei Bo have 2,000

cavalry troops. To form these 2,000 cavalry troops is equal to forming 20,000 infantries troops, so they must be very rich to be able to form those troops and with surplus of treasure.

"It is not Yuan Gonglu generosity, but these Yuan Shu's soldiers were squeezing everything from commoners, robbing everything!" Said Chen Gong angrily. "Chen Lan's treasure here is worth a treasury of a province. Even Yuan Gonglu who occupies two provinces Yu and Yang cannot is impossible to be this generous! Do Milord know why Huainan's people is so little? It is because heavy taxes implementation beside war every year. 95% of taxes goes to Yuan Gonglu, this is from common people confession. When Yuan Gonglu proclaimed himself as emperor ten years later which is today, he implemented more heavier tax to his people until his people no longer can eat, no longer can store provisions.

"Yuan Gonglu really do that?!" Lu Bu himself is also not a good warlord, because he has been engaging in war here and there. When Xu Province in his hands, it never have any stability but people still able to make a living even though hard. If you compared Lu Bu to Yuan Gonglu, Lu Bu can be seen as a wise lord. Under Yuan Gonglu's rule, these two bandit brigades can squeeze common people until they cannot live, both of them adding taxes as they like such as protection money. So it can be said, under Yuan Gonglu's rule, common people flesh already been sliced one layer, and these two bastards sliced another one layer of their flesh, how common people not crying for death at that time?

"Yuan Gonglu, Yuan Gonglu, you pissed on your reputations as third brother of Yuan Family's fourth generation!" During these chaos times will give birth to warlords. And those warlords and those warlords will give birth to several nobility children. Thus, the inheritance and reputations that those ancestors leave behind will be finished by these generations.

“Gongtai, those 10,000-shi of grain and provisions that Chen Lan robbed, send them to Shouchun to Yuan Gonglu!” Said Lu Bu.

“Milord, what are you thinking!” Chen Gong doesn't understand what Lu Bu thinking. These grain and provisions were gained by sacrificing a lot of people in Lu Bu's Army, but now his lord said to send to Yuan Shu?

“Chen Lan robbed these 10,000-shi grain and provisions from Yuan Gonglu, therefore these grain and provisions is for Yuan Shu's forces to use, so he can reach Hebei safely!” Lu Bu said indifferently “When these 10,000-shi of grain and provisions were robbed from Yuan Shu, his life already very difficult. But even though he is very difficult, he still lend me, Lu Fengxian, 5000-shi of grain and provisions. So I must return this favor to him!”

“But, we have helped him vanquish Chen Lan and Lei Bo!!!” “Those 5,000-shi of grain and provisions are his payment for vanquishing Chen Lan and Lei Bo.”

Now Chen Lan and Lei Bo has died, so this war spoils naturally will become Lu Bu Army property, but Lu Bu has send a command like that, how does it cannot make everyone confused.

“Gongtai, I never like owing people something, it is my policy! Therefore, I am leaving this matter to you to handle!” After saying that Lu Bu left. Actually some of Lu Bu not yet said is, without these grain and provisions, Yuan Shu and his army will definitely starved to death. Therefore he needs to look grain and provisions again, and where do he get grain and provisions again? By robbing common people nearby. Those people already wishing for death and if was robbed by Yuan Shu again, they will be swapping child to eat. This matter cannot be just

overlooked.

Giving Yuan Shu grain and provisions also makes him do little damage to common people.

Chen Gong is also not willing to release it, but he cannot change Lu Bu's mind once he set on something. When Chen Gong preparing these 10,000-shi of grain and provisions to be transported to Shouchun, a messenger come and bring good news.

The messenger arrival bring light to Chen Gong's face.

“What? You said Yuan Gonglu left Shouchun, really?!” Lu Bu did not believe what these messenger's words so he asked him the same question many times.

“Where is his destination?!” Chen Gong asked their destination.

“He is heading toward Hebei!”

“Went to Hebei? To Yuan Shao's domain?!” Lu Bu slowly understood. After Cao Cao defeated Yuan Shu, Yu Province ownership change to Cao Cao and Yang Province also damaged beyond repair. So staying at both provinces only equal wait for death. Therefore Yuan Shu planning to sought refuge at his elder cousin Yuan Shao. Before Lu Bu arrived, Yuan Shu cannot do anything, because the deadlock caused by Chen Lan and Lei Bo!

Now, while Lu Bu dealt with Chen Lan and Lei Bo, Yuan Shu seized this

opportunity to pack up and leave Shouchun.

“Does not Xu Province's master is Cao Mengde?!” The intel that Lu Bu obtained that Cao Cao and Yuan Shao have stationed troops in Guandu and will begin skirmish at any time. So, news of Yuan Shu's movement will compromise Xu Province and Cao Cao's battle. Do Cao Cao have good intention to let Yuan Shu arrive safely in Hebei?!

“Milord, ah Milord! This messenger beside noticing us that Yuan Gonglu have left Shouchun, he also bring us two other news!” Chen Gong continued his speech

“Two more?!”

“Hum! First, the master of Xu Province now is not Cao Mengde!” Said Chen Gong.

“Not Cao Mengde?!” Lu Bu stunned and then he said “Does Yuan Shao has attacked Xu Province from Qing Province?!” Now Xu Province is the place of four war because of its strategic position. It is located bordering four provinces at once, Yan Province, Yu Province, Yang Province and Qing Province. If Yuan Shao want to attack Cao Cao, he can just send troops to Xu Province and he will be right at Cao Cao's Yan Province front door.

Yu Province currently is in Old Cao's hand, Yang Province who are led by Yuan Shu currently dilapidated and unable to defend himself. The nearest threat to Cao Cao is Qing Province who is led by Yuan Tan, Yuan Shao's eldest son.

“It is also not Yuan Tan!!” Chen Gong shook his head “The current owner is someone who you least expect!”

“It is someone who I least expect?!” Lu Bu cannot think of someone in Old Cao's side seizing Xu Province now.

“It is Liu Bei! Liu Xuande, that is current owner of Xu Province now!” When Chen Gong said his name, Lu Bu really startled.

“Big-eared Liu?!” Lu Bu clearly remembered. This Xu Province initially was Tao Qian's but after Tao Qian died, Liu Bei seized Xu Province before it was seized by himself. So Liu Bei hatred to Lu Bu is very profound, he even allied himself with Cao Cao to attack Xu Province. But isn't those two relationship very well? Even Cao Mengde called Liu Bei “My worthy little brother”.

“Is not Liu Bei pledge allegiance with Cao Cao by being his swordn brother?!”

“He do not pledge allegiance to Cao Cao, that is only a cover up for himself!” Chen Gong looking at Lu Bu with complex emotion. Liu Bei and Lu Bu is very much similar. The only difference is that Lu Bu is given nickname slave of three surnames because he betray and kill his two foster father, Liu Bei do not have that kind of nickname. This Liu Bei is even more so! From Yellow Turban Rebellion, to seeking lesson from Lu Zhi. He wander everywhere and then he arrived at You Province Gongsun Zan, arrived at Tao Qian, pledge allegiance to Lu Bu. One can say, wherever Liu Bei goes, those who took him in will end up terrible death. When Liu Bei stayed at one's place, he will drain their resources slowly and without anyone noticing and left as early as possible after his shelter already sucked up dry to its foundation, just like a goddamn parasite.

The only difference between Liu Bei and Lu Bu is that Lu Bu kill their boss personally but Liu Bei killed his boss by draining all of his resources, slowly killing him

They later met up with each other at Xu Province, the one who first seeks refuge with Liu Bei is Lu Bu. Lu Bu almost killed Liu Bei to seize Xu Province foundation. Liu Bei understand this difficult situation then he sought refuge with Lu Bu while plotting with Old Cao to kill Lu Bu. And that resulted with Lu Bu almost fell to tragic death at white gate tower in Xiapi.

Now with Lu Bu gone, Liu Bei began plotting again, he killed Che Zhou using Guan Yu to sever Old Cao's ties with Xu Province in order to support himself.

TL: Che Zhou http://the3kingdoms.wikia.com/wiki/Che_Zhou

“Liu Bei! Liu Xuande!” Lu Bu's face expression is also complex. He seized Liu Bei's Xu Province, and then driven out by Cao Cao. Finally this Xu Province unexpectedly returned into Liu Bei's hand. He really is a human with a good fortune

So, Xu Province is Liu Bei again. Liu Bei himself should be impossible to stop Yuan Shu's march.

“The second news!” This is an intel from Yuan Shu.

“The news is Liu Pi of Runan has surrenderd to Yuan Shao!” Said Chen Gong.

“Liu Pi of Runan surrendered to Yuan Shao?!” Lu Bu brow wrinkled. The news of Liu Bei recaptured Xu Province is not too big deal to Lu Bu, after all Xu Province is not his. Lu Bu used to snatch region from other people no matter who the people is. He also looked forward Liu Bei and Cao Cao's fight in Xu Province, and then he will emerge to gather the spoils for himself.

However this news now making Lu Bu headache, Runan was the only land way if they want to go to Xinye. Lu Bu and Yuan Shao relationship was over a long time ago. The only reason that Lu Bu can capture Yan Province from Puyang is because he and Yuan Shao was ally. But now, this news really making Lu Bu headache.

Now Runan was occupied by Yuan Shao! This trip will be harder than expected. So land route planning can be scrapped now. The other way is to travel using water, crossing Jiangxia to Xinye! However using water, the risk is too big, because Lu Bu army never had any experience in water battle and not familiar with water. If enemy appeared on water, then it is the end for his whole army.

“Milord, what about those 10,000-shi of grain and provisions?!” Chen Gong tried to intertwine a simple matter along with difficult matter that is now they are facing.

“Grain and provisions are to be capitulated into our army!” Said Lu Bu while waving his hand.

"Yes!"Obtained Lu Bu's answer, Chen Gong has complied with a smile, but 10,000 stone grain and fodder army one month of food, give up to

Yuanlu. “Yes Sir!” Hearing Lu Bu reply, Cheng Gong complied with a big smile. These 10,000-shi of grain and provisions is for army's food for one month, how can he, Chen Gong, willing to give Yuan Gonglu?!

Chapter 64 – Teach Me Martial Arts

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

Liu Mang has been kneeling by that pile of corpses for two hours, four hours, half a day! He never said a word even a bit, in his hand there is a decapitated head. His face is showing with big disbelieve and painful expression before he died, that head belong to Chen Lan.

Beside Liu Mang, Cheng Yu also kneeling.

“General, let's go back” Liu Mang has been wounded and exhausted but he is still kneeling. Cheng Yu is trying to persuade Liu Mang to go back because night will come soon and it will be very cold/

Liu Mang did not paid any attention to Cheng Yu, he just continued to kneel there and silent.

And thus, in two hours, night had come.

“Clip Clop Clip Clop!” Behind Liu Mang there are footsteps sound approaching.

The one who is approaching them is no other than golden-armored Lu Bu.

“Milord!” Cheng Yu want to stand up to salute Lu Bu, but because kneeling all the time, his body become real stiff. Therefore he can only

move with much difficulty.

“Hum!” Lu Bu nodded at Cheng Yu's gesture and that nod also meant that he accepted Cheng Yu's incomplete salute.

Liu Mang also knows that Lu Bu came, but he still staying there, not moving, not even turning around.

“How long have you been kneeling?!” Lu Bu asked lightly.

“About, about half a day already!” From battle end until now, Liu Mang just knelt there.

“Half a day?!” Lu Bu looks at the corpse of a soldier there, it was the Urban Army soldiers who did not survive their first battle, then looking at Liu Mang again without any expression “So, Urban Army's casualties is more than 400 people?!”

“It is 432 people!” Liu Mang opened his mouth to edit Lu Bu's count. That is the exact digit of this war casualties. That number is burned into Liu Mang's mind.

“Yes, yes, it is 432 people!” Lu Bu never likes people interrupting his speech, but Liu Mang is an exception.

“Those 432 lives exchanged with your life, is it worth it?!” Lu Bu approaches Liu Mang, before Liu Mang give answer, Lu Bu self-answered his question “It is not worth, really not worthy you know! I thought, what manners of hero, those 400 more people sacrifice their life for?! Is it just a

small man or a big hero?!”

“432 people!” Exclaimed Liu Mang with hoarse voice.

“I am asking what kind of person who deserved sacrifice of those 432 people? Is that to save one wasted person?!” Lu Bu's voice also getting big.

“If you think about it, these 432 people are 432 idiots, 432 fools, died saving a garbage!” Said Lu Bu while pointing at these corpses.

“Milord!” Cheng Yu really surprised, what is Lu Bu trying to do! Saying these 432 dead soldiers who died in battle are idiots? Is not this the time where he should comfort Liu Mang? This kind of saying will certainly spark a conflict between those Urban Army survivor, plus Cheng Yu is also one of the survivor of Urban Army. If not for these 432 heroes, I am afraid Cheng Yu will be the one lying among them.

Sure enough after Lu Bu said that, Liu Mang's really grim and glaring fiercely at Lu Bu saying “DO..NOT...INSULT...THEM!”

“Am I wrong saying that?! Those 432 people are idiots for saving a garbage like you!” Said Lu Bu continuing his insult.

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, you dare say that?!” Said Liu Mang. Liu Mang staggered while trying to stand, his gesture now is one wounded and furious man, he is biting his teeth and his fist already grasping and shaking nonstop.

“How, huh?! You want to hit me?! Come and hit me!!!” Lu Bu also shouted.

Liu Mang angrily glare at Lu Bu but he do not make any movement, right now he is not Lu Bu's match, and hitting Lu Bu will only bring disaster to himself, plus plus plus Lu Bu is his honorable father-in-law.

“How, huh? Afraid to hit me? Let me say you once more, THOSE 432 PEOPLE ARE BIG IDIOTS, SAVING A GARBAGE LIKE YOU!!! Even you do not dare to fight me! Come!!! Punch me, point that hammer toward me!!!” Exclaimed Lu Bu while pointing at his face.

“AAAAHHHHHHHHH!” Liu Mang is truly insane now, and he has done the most reckless thing with his fist.

“General, please stop!” Cheng Yu wanted to prevent Liu Mang but it is already too late.

“Piak!” His face landed solidly on Lu Bu's face. From Lu Bu's mouth corner there are blood immediately.

“General, Milord!” Cheng Yu swallow his saliva, he just see a very disturbing vision now. His general hits his lord?

Although Liu Mang has the title Prince of Shu also he have title “General of Southern Expedition” and cannot be compared with Lu Bu title, but the fact cannot changed that Liu Mang is still under Lu Bu Army and Lu Bu is currently the highest authority here, also Lu Bu is Liu Mang's honorable father-in-law. So in Lu Bu army, Lu Bu is the lord and Liu Mang

is little lord, but Liu Mang now has hit Lu Bu. This can be considered a severe offense in military, a subordinate did not follow his superiors orders and even question him and now subordinate even punch his superiors, if this is not a rebellion then what is???

Cheng Yu looked at Lu Bu cautiously. Lu Bu is the god-of-war, if he want to kill Liu Mang right now, Cheng Yu would not be able to block him.

Liu Mang calmed himself down. He hit Lu Bu! He hit the first god-of-war in Three Kingdoms, Lu Bu! He pinch his finger to make himself awake from sudden insanity earlier, that make him hit Lu Bu.

But Lu Bu is a valiant general, moody, and if suddenly he makes movement to kill Liu Mang, no one able to resist him. So Liu Mang right now is bursting with fear, but then he become insane again “Fuck, I am a dead man. I really become a death seeker. But killed by Lu Bu is much better than living dishonorably like this!”

So Liu Mang brave himself again, pointing at Lu Bu saying “Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, even you killed me now! I will make you realized that if you insult my brother again, I will rip your flesh, even if I must die to do it!”

Does he think that hitting Lu Bu can still survive? Lu Bu's gaze is flickering toward Liu Mang, that pair of tiger's eyes is sending off killing intent. Lu Bu really moving in to kill, and at this state, nobody dare to hit Lu Bu.

Lu Bu licked the blood at his mouth corner, the taste is salty.

“Milord, please appease your anger, please appease your anger!” Shouted Cheng Yu who immediately knelt and hold Lu Bu's thigh. He really afraid that Lu Bu may kill Liu Mang. Right now, he is Lu Bu's subordinate but also Liu Mang's subordinate. If Lu Bu killed Liu Mang, he will unable to exact his revenge at Cao Cao.

“General, please, admit to Milord that you made mistakes! I beg of you!”

“Cheng Yu, do not block his way! If he want to kill me, then kill me! I am fed-up with living already!” Liu Mang also do not back down even an inch, but instead he become crazier.

“Cheng Yu, do you not understand what he just said?! Your general order you to give way, you must give way!” Lu Bu's tone become more plain. On one glance, it is hinting any indication, but Cheng Yu knows that this is when Lu Bu's anger is already max, when Lu Bu want to kill people.

“Milord, the general was ignorant for a while, he did not want to offense Milord. Please, Milord. Forgive the general!” Cheng Yu asked for Lu Bu's mercy.

“Stay here and do not move!” Lu Bu said it lightly, when Cheng Yu want to prevent Lu Bu again, Lu Bu said “Do you want to disobey my orders?!”

In army, one must obey an order from his superiors. If one question or even disobey order, then the punishment is death.

Cheng Yu bite his teeth. If Milord want to kill general, then I, Cheng Yu, will disobey order to prevent Milord.

Lu Bu approached Liu Mang and then he lift both his hands toward Liu Mang

“You want to directly choke me?!” Said Liu Mang sneering.

“Milord.....!” Cheng Yu want to disobey orders to prevent Lu Bu, but he could not voice those words. Because Lu Bu did not choke or harm Liu Mang, but he patted Liu Mang's shoulder and smiling “Good, very good! These 432 soldiers, no, these 432 heroes were not a fool and did not sacrifice themselves for protecting a garbage, a coward. Their sacrifice have values!”

“Eh?!” Liu Mang really shocked. He himself have hit Lu Bu, everyone here can clearly saw that. At the Lu Bu's mouth corner there is red. If compared with Cao Mengde in terms of anger, Lu Bu is really incomparable, because this man is a fierce tiger. Seeing Liu Mang doubts, Lu Bu smiled “Are you thinking why this fierce tiger have not shred you apart right?”

Subconsciously Liu Mang nodded at his question.

“Ha-ha-ha, Oh Liu Hanyang, Liu Hanyang. Sometimes you are really smart like a god, sometimes you are stupid like a dog. Yes, this fierce tiger eat people, but have you ever seen a tiger eat his child?!”

“Child?!” Liu Mang chewing these words slowly.

“Hanyang I tell you this! These 432 lives have engraved their surnames, hopes and dreams in your body!” Lu Bu complexion become more cold. “In battle, one needs to lead his soldiers, one need to breakthrough enemy lines. Those above need formidable strength. Which vanguard unit who do not have big strength? Even this bandit Chen Lan and Lei Bo. Lei Bo himself, although weak, but can withstood my attack 5 bouts!” Lei Bo who almost kill Liu Mang, can actually go 5 bouts alone with Lu Bu.

“You are too weak, at that time if you make Cheng Yu as your personal bodyguards leader, they may lose badly but impossible to have the whole army annihilated, most of these soldiers died solely for protecting you!”

“Why they protect you, because you yourself do not have the ability to protect yourself, staying at this state will make you suffer more defeat like this!” Liu Mang expression is very bleak.

Because what Lu Bu said, each word of them pierce Liu Mang's heart painfully. And in his vision, Xu Cheng appeared again, if he have Lu Bu's strength then he probably do not need these many soldiers to protect him right? And Cheng Yu himself can assume a bigger responsibility, can carry out important tasks. Now he himself, are depending on his armor, which those good soldiers do not have! With only this strength, he did not die many times is probably because of God's grace.

“Is powerless can be an excuse?!” Lu Bu approaching Liu Mang again “Can be an excuse! That is because the one who lose is not only yourself. You cannot bear to see your companion's death! But, do not they also do not want to see you die?! Right now, you don't have teeth and claws to protect them. This time, there are 432 people dying to save you, then next time, then next time! If you do not improve yourself, then who will able to save you? Are you still want to be bound by guilt with the death

of these 432 people? Do you want to make their sacrifice worth nothing?" Lu Bu shouted really hard.

"No, I want to improve myself, I will make their sacrifice worthed! It just the present me is very very weak. If I do not improve myself, then who will be able to save me?!" 432 brothers, I,Liu Mang, am very sorry to all of you!" Liu Mang kowtowed many many times toward those corpses. Liu Mang do not know what is right and what is wrong, right now! But in this chaos times, being weak is wrong.

"Father-in-law, teach me martial arts!" Said Liu Mang, Liu Mang has never been more decisive than today!

Chapter 65 – Selecting Weapons

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Current translation is MTL, it is not translation checked, proofread or heavily edited yet.

“You truly have decided?!” Asked Lu Bu who stood in martial arts practice field in Shouchun

Yuan Shu has escaped from Shouchun, so Lu Bu naturally stationed in Shouchun temporarily. Now, cannot go through Runan, so now they are considering to reach Xinye from Jiangxia. So he temporarily stays at Shouchun, because compared to camping in the wilderness, the air is much better in the city.

“Hum!” Liu Mang nodded, he cannot be indecisive anymore, he must practice martial arts. He come from present time, where nowadays military force practice wushu as melee battle, even though there are wushu, battles usually fought with guns and bombs, no longer using wushu. But here, he must at least have a skill in wushu in order to survive. Having skill in wushu, also meant he no longer need to rely on other people to protect him.

“Good!” Lu Bu nodded. Lu Bu is the god-of-war. He has settled on Liu Mang as his heir, naturally is to inherit his power and position also he has a natural desire to make Liu Mang a valiant general. So, even Liu Mang had not request Lu Bu, Lu Bu can also force Liu Mang to practice martial arts.

In this chaos times, one cannot live if do not have skill in wushu.

Even these warlord need to learn also, even though they are not masters. For example Cao Cao and Yuan Shu. These two originally crusaded against Yellow Turban. At that time , Cao Cao and Yuan Shu are already a leader that leading their own army. Yuan Shu at that time also wield title as Officer of Westland

Liu Bei,Liu Xuande also have a skill in wushu, and his skill is also not bad. If not, how can he participate in “Three Heroes versus Lu Bu”???

Gongsun Zan's skill also excellent, if not how can he lead his Penetrating White Horse to drive out those invaders from beyond Great Wall? Thus one can see, Gongsun Zan's skill.

Tao Qian of Xu Province, Kong Rong of Beihai and Liu Biao of Jing Province, please do not think them as a mere Confucian scholars. The Confucian scholar at this age are not those who are from Ming and Qing Dynasty who even do not have strength to kill a chicken. In this day, they still following Confucius learning from Zhou Dynasty Six Arts which also included archery from horseback. And also Chen Gong although he is a strategist, his skill are very good also even defeating Cheng Yu's own skill.

TL: Six Arts of Confucius https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Six_Arts

Sun family who occupy Jiangdong. Those three brothers and sisters are also good in wushu, including Sun Quan, who have not yet experience battle.

Forcing people to do something will never ended up in good result compared to willingly to learn. Seeing Liu Mang heart has the resolve to become strong makes Lu Bu really happy.

“Here got a very nice roster of weapon, choose the weapon that suited you the most!” Asked Lu Bu while pointing to army's weapon rack.

“Choose a weapon?!” Liu Mang stunned, he has not thought about this matter, in his opinion, is not a military must be adept in every weapons? But now, he must choose one.

Knewing Liu Mang's mind, Lu Bu start explaining “Skilled in ten weapon is inferior than mastering one weapon!” Lu Bu then point at his Poseidon halberd and said “I am able to wield lance, spear, sword and great sword, but that is only able to wield. The one that I truly master is halberd!”

TL: actually the phrase is “Knowing well 10 gates, is inferior, to mastering 1 gates”, so I changed it into more appropriate sentence.

Holding his halberd in his hand, he start to explain more “With other weapons I can breakthrough enemy lines, can kill enemy, but it can only display my strength around 70%. Once I encounter Zhang Fei, Guan Yu or Xu Chu, these valiant generals, I can only maintain their rhythm but cannot break their rhythm and finally killing them! But with halberd, it is different, with this Poseidon halberd, even Zhang Fei or Guan Yu came, if one on one I can kill them, with two of them attacking me together, I can still kill them and if those three valiant generals attacking me, I can keep up with their pace to a draw!” This is Lu Bu's fighting prowess and where his confidence lies.

Guan Yu, Zhang Fei and Xu Chu is not a pinnacle of super generals but their strength is around 90 points, and Lu Bu is confident that he is able to kill them if one-on-one, able to defeat them when they come two people and able to keep up the pace with them, if three of them come at once!

“Is halberd really so strong?!” Said Liu Mang full of doubts. If halberd is really that powerful, why so few people using it? Beside Lu Bu, their user are Dian Wei, Taishi Ci, *etc*. No one else using halberd.

Not only that those two Dian Wei and Taishi Ci's type of halberd uses is different from what Lu Bu uses. Their weapon only have 1 single additional blade and not as long as Lu Bu's Poseidon halberd whose length is about 2m.

“It is not the halberd but the person who uses that weapon!” Lu Bu again replied “Everyone need to suit themselves with one kind of weapon. Example Zhang Fei is using snake spear. Guan Yu is using guandao, Xu Chu is using nine-ring greatsword, these are their chosen weapons and also they are most adapted weapons! So you need to discover your own weapon amongst these pile of weapons!”

“I found one!” Said Liu Mang after listening to Lu Bu, he picked up one weapon from weapon rack.

“I think I will take broadsword!” Said Liu Mang while thinking to use long sword.

“Broadsword is the king of hundred soldiers!” Lu Bu said “Broadsword is known for its ease of use, it does not matter whether it is broadsword or short broadsword, the main point of sword is to slash and slash! If you become a master of broadsword, you should be able to defeat a skilled person completely using three moves with your strength alone! With this, you will follow a strong and overwhelming path like Xu Chu with his nine-ring broadsword or Guan Yu with his guandao.

“King of hundred soldiers, strong and overwhelming path? Defeating people by overwhelming them?!” Liu Mang thought while brandishing the broadsword, then he shook his head. Broadsword was not the weapon that he desire. Although broadsword is very powerful but this is not what Liu Mang had in mind. Using broadsword surely will make him strong and be competitive but Liu Mang at the core is still that of a scholar, so he cannot show aggressiveness. Moreover, to defeat people using sheer strength? He himself almost defeated that way.

"Sword?!"The knife was too aggressive, Liu Manghuan an erudite Confucian scholar point. “What about two-edged sword?!” The broadsword is too aggressive, Liu Mang changed with a more refined weapon; Lu Bu nodded, because Liu Mang's physique has not suited with broadsword and broadsword wielder need physique like Xu Chu to use in order to maximize its true potential.

“Two-edged sword! Weapon of choice for soldiers and scholar alike!” Lu Bu said “Elegant form, practicing in road of two-edged sword lies in its elegant form, using sword as if it is dragon or snake, ease of use also!” Two-edged sword is not only a tool to kill in cold weapon era, it is also a symbol of status for those who are Confucian scholars. Like Chen Gong, who Lu Bu also praise his proficiency with two-edged sword. Lu Bu also have met two-edged sword master such as Royal Tutor Wang Yue which Lu Bu also confessed that he is at draw when fighting using two-edged swords with him. And again there is Liu Bei, who use dual two-edged sword, a male and female swords, his skill also cannot be just overlooked.

“No, it is not what I want!” Liu Mang shook his head. Although Liu Mang quite fond of two-edged sword, but two-edged sword is used as a symbol of status, it will not help him when fighting battle.

“What about spear?!” In Lu Bu's left hand there is a spear. “Spear?!” Liu

Mang took the spear from Lu Bu's hand, while he examining it, Lu Bu explained “Spear is the favorite weapon for commander-in-chief, a stabbing weapon, wielder of this weapon took their own path because it has the elegance of two-edged sword but spear also can be used to sweep enemy, like broadsword slashing technique, you also can overwhelm the enemy with your strength. So you can say that spear is a combination of two-edged sword and broadsword and mixing it with other weapons!” “Weapon for commander-in-chief?!” Liu Mang remembered that the user of spear in Three Kingdoms era really is very graceful. Spear users for example Zhao Yun or Zhang Xiu and no matter who use spear, they can be very charming person besides their skill with wushu! If Zhao Yun using axe or hammer, you will also like him! Though this spear is graceful! This is not what Liu Mang wants! Graceful is nonsense if you cannot use it properly. So Liu Mang will not use this weapon.

“Club?!” Boss Lu offered him many weapons broadsword, halberd, axe, kali sticks, hook, whip, mace, hammer, stick, polearm all turned down by Liu Mang, because he did not suited with those weapons. Hell, even if Boss Lu offered him his Poseidon Halberd, Liu Mang do not want that.

“What weapon do you want?!” Liu Mang had already searched the entire weapon rack, but he cannot find weapon that he liked.

“The weapon that I want must be big and able to block arrows, and can protect myself and people behind me!” Liu Mang said his own idea.

“Block arrows? Can protect yourself and people behind you!” Lu Bu brow wrinkled, is not that Liu Mang described is shield? “Do you want to use great shield as weapon?!” Asked Lu Bu trying to understand him.

“Great shield?!” Liu Mang also considering it, those aluminium shields that he brings, it is not just big but can also block arrows and protect himself and the person behind him! Great shield is the only weapon that can hide one's posture from enemy. “Right, that is my weapon!” Liu Mang said firmly.\

“You want to use shield as weapon?!” Lu Bu's mouth corner twitching. Since ancient times, a shield is to defend, but now Liu Mang want to use shield to attack?

“Okay, let me explain again, a great shield can only protect you but cannot kill the enemy!” And also defensive power of shield will deteriorate when it is used as a weapon. What Lu Bu believes is, the best way to defend is to attack.

”Said who, shield cannot kill enemy!” Liu Mang took out a polisher from the armory, He polished the edge of the shield until it become sharp like blade and he showed its proficiency for killing person by stabbing it on the ground and pulling it back up. “Using shield to kill people?!” Lu Bu never understood this son-in-law way of thinking, but he knows that Liu Mang will not change his decision based on his expression alone.

“Good, take your weapon, we start from the basics!” In the martial arts training field there are two figures already fired up to train.

Chapter 66 – Intermission before crossing over to XinyeTranslated by Bloodfalcon

“Now, the only route left for us to reach Xinye is going through Lujiang and Jiangxia!” Chen Gong spoke that while pondering.

Since Liu Pi of Runan have surrendered to Yuan Shao, Cao Cao will certainly be on red alert to guard his rear against Liu Pi and WILL CERTAINLY send his senior generals to blockade Runan access roads, therefore Runan is not accessible anymore. Even if no blockade by Cao Cao, Liu Pi will never let Lu Bu pass under Yuan Shao’s order.

“Lujiang?!” Lu Bu thought for a moment. This Lujiang once one of Yuan Shu’s domain, after Yuan Shu were defeated, Lujiang’s prefect Liu Xun declared independence from Yuan Shu. Afterward Liu Xun, got very greedy after defeated by Sun Ce in 197 and after Yuan Shu defeated by Old Cao, and quickly abandoned Lujiang and go to Old Cao to become his attendant, leaving Lujiang masterless.

TL: For more information about Lujiang former prefect https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liu_Xun_(Han_dynasty)”

“Lujiang’s prefect now is Little Conqueror Sun Ce’s subordinate!” Said Chen Gong.

“Sun Ce? Sun Jian’s son?!” Lu Bu’s mind flew back to the moment of Hulao Gate siege. Among those 18 warlords, Sun Jian was the vanguard and the only one who dared took on Dong Zhuo’s Xiliang Cavalries to the point of direct confrontation. Although he is defeated by Dong Zhuo’s general Hua Xiong, but he made his fame by his deed. When Sun Jian

returned triumphantly from battle, at that time, Sun Ce was still 17, still teenager.

From that teenager, now Sun Ce has become one of the warlords. Thus you can see, what kind of a character Sun Ce is. After Sun Jian's death, he took on his father's role and then gave Yuan Shu the Imperial Seal that was found in the well and then exchanged it with 3,000 soldiers and horses. After that he declared independence from Yuan Shu and proceeded with pacification of Jiangdong, laying foundation of Wu Kingdom or state at this time.

"Ah, two young valiant men!" Said Chen Gong after further reading the intel that he obtains. Lujiang was occupied by Sun Ce, and now the prefect of Lujiang is a young man called Zhou Yu! Sun Ce and Zhou Yu about the same age. Moreover, the occupation of Lujiang is thanks to Zhou Yu's stratagem. A very accomplished young man.

"Young men?!" Lu Bu then thought Liu Mang who now still practicing martial arts in martial arts field. What Chen Gong's meant by young men is that they are a generation below both Lu Bu and Chen Gong.

"Cao Cao and Yuan Shao are ready to begin confrontation at Guandu! Precisely of that situation that this Little Conqueror Sun Ce go to Lujiang this time, so we can see that his ambition is not small at all!" Sun Ce's plan is the same as Lu Bu's and Liu Pi's plan. Through Lujiang and go to Runan, directly threaten Xu Du. When Cao Cao and Yuan Shao really clash in Guandu, Sun Ce who are currently waiting in Lujiang, will just go to Runan and threaten Xu Du. If that scenario really happened, then Cao Mengde's predicament will be very very amusing.

"We are just passing through, so this Little Conqueror will definitely

agree to let us pass!" Zhang Liao said that because he also know Sun Jian when he served Lu Bu who was still in Dong Zhuo's employ, when both of their armies collided with each other at Hulao Gate.

Also, if one can traced the origin of Sun Jian's death, then Lu Bu Army (remnant of Dong Zhuo's army according to Sun Ce) is also considered as Sun Ce's personal enemy. Think about it, Sun Jian was killed by Huang Zu, not just because he had Imperial Seal but also because Sun Jian Army was defeated by Hua Xiong at that time, leaving him with no teeth or claws to protect himself. And because of that, Huang Zu able to kill Sun Jian effortlessly.

"Yes….. He, should allow us to pass!" Said Chen Deng uncertain.

"Ahem, if he do not allow us to pass, we will force our way through!" Lu Bu said it lightly "If his father was defeated by my hand, then his son also can be defeated!" Lu Bu is a valiant general, so he naturally interested in his strength. Hearing that this Jiangdong's Little Conqueror reached first-class general strength at such an early age, Lu Bu cannot wait to try his hand on Sun Ce's skill.

TL: Historically, Sun Jian Army defeated Lu Bu Army at Hulao Gate, but it is a matter of strategy. Also historically, Sun Jian cannot withstood duel with Lu Bu, so he speak partial truth here.

"Yes, if he does not allow us to pass, we will force our way throught!" Chen Gong also dispel his worry. We cannot go to Runan, because it will offend two sides altogether. Both Yuan Shao and Cao Cao neither are good to ally with. If they hit Runan, it is possible that they will have a truce and attack Lu Bu, one attacking to protect his rear and one attacking to protect his ally. But Lujiang is different. Jiangdong's soldiers

majority are trained for water war. If they are fighting in water, they are invincible but when they are fighting on the land? Are any of them a match to Bing Province Heavy Cavalry??

Plus, Lu Bu and Sun Ce do not have any relationships at all, and certainly Sun Ce did not want to taste any loss by conflicting with Lu Bu Army. Sun Ce who occupies Lujiang, one can see how big his ambition is, and he certainly will not be reckless in making enemies unlike Lu Bu who were overconfident prior his expel from Xu Province.

“Rest for a day, prepare army for three-shift cook tomorrow morning, we depart before dawn! Depart early, in order to avoid further problems or delay” Lu Bu issued order.

Those divisions leaders complied with orders and leave the tent, only Chen Gong remained.

Chen Gong want to speak his concern but cut off in the middle of sentence “Milord!”

“Gongtai, you want to speak about Hanyang’s matter right?!” Lu Bu already knows what Chen Gong’s concern is.

Hearing Lu Bu speaks frankly, Chen Gong also loosened his tense “Milord, Is Hanyang really well?!” Liu Mang are practicing martial arts 12 hours a day. He come into practice tent from dawn and did not come out until dusk.

“It is not good! But you and me cannot interfere with him!” Lu Bu shook

his head. This person, Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang, the man who stand aloof from this ancient times affairs (because he is from present times), now have become stimulated. Liu Mang who now have a heart that strive to excel cannot be prevented by Lu Bu, if he want to progress further. The reason why Lu Bu regard and admire him as his child not just because he saved his life and his whole family and become his daughter's husband, but also Liu Mang is very stubborn like him.

"Years before, my adoptive fathers thoughts are also like me now, full of concern to one's child!" Lu Bu said that with words that only Lu Bu can hear.

"Hey!" Chen Gong also concerned with Liu Mang's body. With this training duration, he is taking it too far, he also knows that Liu Mang want to excel in his training as fast as possible, but he also must take care his own health, a day practicing martial arts without rest is the same as burning oneself out.

"Do not worry, that boy has Lingqi as his martial arts coach, that boy is all right!" Liu Mang martial arts coach now is Lu Bu's daughter Lu Lingqi. Please do not see at her body which looked like a frail thing, she have 70% of Lu Bu's power and prowess. Hell, even Zhang Liao or Gao Shun goes one-on-one with her, they maybe will not victorious.

"Gongtai, you go back and rest, tomorrow is the big day!" Lu Bu also tired and he needs to rest.

"Yes! Milord!" Chen Gong left while still worrying about Liu Mang.

At Shouchun martial arts field, there are two figure of a man and

woman practicing. The woman is using two-edged sword and the man is using shield. Those two weapons colliding frequently and causing sound of metal collision.

"Good, today is enough, you have made quite a lot of progress!" Said Lu Lingqi who then took off her steel helmet while huffing and puffing.

"Um, you rest first! I want to practice again!" Liu Mang nodded. He and Lu Lingqi's sparring has brought him great benefits, but now he stops a moment to review both of their movement.

"Practicing martial arts again?!" Lu Lingqi who heard this words raise her eyebrows "Liu Hanyang, did you know the proverb haste make waste? You know right by doing this way, you will burn out your body!" They practice from dawn until now dusk already and the sky was getting black, they have not rested at all!

"I know!" Liu Mang replied lightly, and continued to doing martial arts training as before.

"Clang" Lu Lingqi put down her sword and hold down Liu Mang's shield, so he cannot move at all. "Why, why you should continue like this?! For what reason?!"

"Let go!" Said Liu Mang while looking at Lu Lingqi.

"I will not let go!" Replied Lu Lingqi, in her opinion Liu Mang is insane. Praciticing martial arts is not a one day effort can succeed, so in her eyes, Liu Mang want to burn out his body till he cannot move no longer.

“FINE!” Liu Mang released the great shield from his hand, and then took up another great shield from weapon rack.

“You!!!!” Lu Lingqi really angry “Liu Hanyang, you are insane!”

“My welfare is none of your concern!” Liu Mang said it with low voice.

"I am your wife!" Lu Lingqi is angry and also do not shy to speak her status directly.

“You are still my fiancée!” Liu Mang said it with disdain “Miss Lu, we have not yet married, so you cannot say you are already my wife! Leave here!!! Do not make me say it the second time!! Else I will make soldiers escort you!!!” Urban Army soldiers nearby also on standby.

“You are truly ridiculous!” Miss Lu now really angry, “If you want to keep practice, just practice till you die and see if I care about you!” Screamed Lu Lingqi. She finally found a person to care forever but was spitted out like saliva and even did not look back to her. Lu Lingqi running away with extreme anger.

Looking back at Lu Lingqi leaving, Liu Mang can only said these three words in a very low voice “I AM SORRY!”. Lu Lingqi do not understand the pressure on Liu Mang shoulder. It is very heavy and can crush him at any second. Liu Mang wanted to rest but as soon as he stops. Xu Cheng, his personal bodyguards, Urban Army casualties and those supply troops appeared in front of him, and the sound of those brothers are playing again in his mind like a broken record.

"General, General! "

"General, we died in misery, we died in misery!"

"General saves us, saves us!"

"HAAAAAAA" Liu Mang exclaimed loudly, he brandished shield again.

Chapter 67 – Luckless Boss Liu (Liu Bei)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Let us move our POV from Lu Bu and co, to the other warlords.

Xu Du, the Han Dynasty new capital.

"Crash! Bump!"

From Cao Cao's study room there are screaming sound and insulting words as well as something like porcelain are breaking.

“Did Milord have been like this all the time?!” Outside Cao's study there is a middle-aged scholar inquiring the bodyguard.

“Reporting to Minister Cheng! Milord has been indeed like this all these times!” The bodyguard replied toward middle-aged scholar.

This middle-aged scholar who just inquiring the bodyguard is Cheng Yu. He can be considered as one of Cao Cao's top advisors, his courtesy name is Zhongde. He is from Yan Province's Dong'e County of Dong Commandery. Originally his given name is Cheng Li, after dreaming that he is holding the sun in Mount Tai, he changed his name to Cheng Yu. Once he led people to resist Yellow Turban in Dong Commandery. In Chuping Third year (192 AD), he was appointed by Cao Cao as Prefect of Shouzhang in Shandong, Yan Province, Since then he has been loyal to Cao Cao and offer his stratagem and advice wherever Cao Cao goes.

TL: This is Cheng Yu who is Cao Cao's top advisors https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cheng_Yu , not Cheng Yu who is Liu Mang's subordinate.

For more information about reign year
http://kongming.net/novel/reign-years/

Before, when Cao Cao obtained both Xu Province and Yu Province, the one who offer stratagem is Cheng Yu. So, after Cao Cao invites the Han Emperor to Xu Du, for his contribution, Cheng Yu was given one of the nine minister position, and were given title Administrator of Jiyin and Yan Province's commander-in-chief.

“Mr. Zhongde, usually dispelling Milord's worry is my job, but now....yeah!” Said a sickly scholar from behind.

TL: The translation of Mr. Zhongde is actually Zhongde Gong, and Gong according to chinese.yabla means public; collectively owned; common; international (e.g. high seas, metric system, calendar); make public; fair; just; Duke, highest of five orders of nobility; honorable (gentlemen); father-in-law; male (animal) so, I put Mr. in these translation, because in this time, neither of them have reached rank Duke. So I put them as Mr., if any of dear readers have a better way how to replace this Gong, please comment on below. For the time being, I will use Mr. on every Gong encountered such as Cao Gong = Mr. Cao Cao

“I already said that big-eared bastard is not a good man to deal with. Many times I have proposed to Milord to kill him, but some people put some sweet words on him, so Milord not slash him. Just when one got good time, which is after expelling Lu Bu, who knows after that he actually acquired Xu Province again!” Cheng Yu's words all have tone of lamentation but if one listening closely, it is actually condeming the sickly scholar behind him.

“Oh!” Beside that sickly scholar there is another scholar smiling

awkwardly. That Cheng Yu who just put slanderous remark is his uncle, although he also urged Cao Cao to take out Liu Bei, but he as the younger generation, there is some taboo regarding badmouthing your elders (Liu Bei).

“Gongda! According to you, what is our next step?!” Cheng Yu inquired. That awkwardly smiling scholar is Xun You, his courtesy name is Gongda. Xun You is one of Xun family and their family is all of the top advisors, and such fate also come to Xun You as he is rank together with his uncle as Cao Cao's top advisors. And also why Cao Cao can have such a strong foundation, it is thanks to Xun You.

“Liu Xuande has killed General Che Zhou, and seized Xu Province back. Now our army confronting with Yuan Benchu in Guandu. War can erupt at any time. As this war concerns our life or death, there is no room for error. Xu Province is an important place, and why we attack Lu Bu at the first place? Because Xu Province is the gateway to our Yan Province, one other than us who grasp it can point their blade against us immediately! No matter who occupy Xu Province, Liu Bei or Lu Bu, we must either drive them away or kill them. We must occupy Xu Province at this critical juncture!” Xun You really worthy as the top adviser, he really can analyze the situation quickly.

“This Big-eared Liu must be backed by an expert!” The sickly scholar, Guo Jia also opened his mouth. From four of Cao Cao top advisers, all three are here. On Guo Jia's hands he waved his war fan, replacing his sickly appearance with a dignified and brilliant scholar look, letting Cheng Yu felt irritated.

“Having an expert backing him, how that bastard do not want to retake Xu Province?!” Cheng Yu said it with coughed voice.

Cheng Yu really not feeling well these days, so Guo Jia did not angry “When I say expert, I did not meant that expert want to help Liu Xuande, but actually want to harm him!”

“Want to harm Liu Xuande?!” Xun You and Cheng Yu both are thinking what is Liu Bei's intent to hid his blade at that time in Xu Du, is it to betray Cao Cao? Exactly that is the point, first he earn Cao Cao's trust by supporting him to battle Yuan Shao in Guandu. And then he kill General Che Zhou to retake Xu Province and he bid his time, betting which side is more favorable either Cao Cao or Yuan Shao. If Yuan Shao won, then at that time Cao Army will retreat to the south and at that time, and at that time Liu Bei who wield great power and great arrogance will deliver let Cao Army pass and maybe even following him to retreat, in order to recuperate. So, at the same time, Liu Bei army will increase in its power while Cao Cao army will get weaker.

If Cao Cao who are the one won this Guandu war, Yuan Shao still has many assets left. And because of that, Yuan Shao did not have to worry of losing one decisive battle. If he lost, he can recover in a short time but he can no longer expand to south, while Old Cao who have win the battle, it is a wounded victory. At that time his strength can only use to defend himself. So, if Cao Cao win, he can just go into Yuan Shao's domain and gain 4 provinces at once: Ji Province, Qing Province, You Province and Bing Province. If Yuan Shao win, he can just retreat to Yuan Shu's domain, gaining Yu Province and Yang Province as a result.

So, one can say, no matter the result, it is Liu Xuande who obtained the spoil of war! This kind of calculation certainly was done by an expert.

But Guo Jia said that this expert is harming Liu Bei.

Cheng Yu and Xun You after listening to Guo Jia then say why, Guo Jia does not speak. He just point to his mouth, meaning that he is thirsty, asking for water. If on their side only have military commanders or just Xun You here, they maybe just handed over a jug of water to him, but now there is Cheng Yu, who continuously contradicting Guo Jia. This makes Guo Jia unhappy and then putting up this snobby attitude.

"Aiyah, these two are clashing with each other!" Said Xun You while smiled bitterly

And sure enough, Cheng Yu opened his mouth with disdain "Hey, Guo Fengxiao. If you don't say that reason ASAP, and continue to be haughty like that. I am going to tell Milord that you are an asshole, who do not have any abilities and shortsighted. You hear me? No ability and shortsighted!" Cheng Yu's anger really have maxed out. Cheng Yu is a very serious and stern person while Guo Jia is a bit of a slacker. So whenever stubborn Cheng Yu meet up with slacker Guo Jia, there will be conflicts. If an average person hears Cheng Yu's insult, he would have hurled up his fist toward Cheng Yu. But Guo Jia is not your average person. He simply hide his face beneath his war fan and spitted toward Cheng Yu while other hand tweak Cheng Yu's ear. So even Cheng Yu already fed up with Guo Jia's discourse, this act also cannot let go right? He will retaliate ASAP.

"You, you, you!" Cheng Yu has been made mad by Guo Jia until he unable to speak. Guo Jia also foaming with rage.

"Good, good! Fengxiao, please said the explanation to Mr. Zhongde also in front of our Lord!" Xun You want to persuade Guo Jia, but Guo Jia is unmoved until Xun You speaks in his ear "I'll give you a jar of century

old of Du Kang's wine!”

TL: Du Kang, first inventor of wine according to Chinese legend https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Du_Kang

Guo Jia's eyes flashing, but his face is indifferent look, he just extended his finger to say numbers.

“Damn you, you are too ruthless? Five jar?!” After that Xun You directly pinch Guo Jia's three fingers and make counteroffer.

"Two jar!"

Guo Jia then stretched out two more fingers! Which means he is asking for four jars.

“Three jars is already too much, four jars is impossible for me. Three jars, my final offer!” In Xun You's home, a jar of hundred years Du Kang wine is very hard to get. He spend a lot of money to buy it, but he himself do not drink it.

“Okay, okay, three jars!” Guo Jia then put down his war fan, on his face has been smiling a lot.

At this time, Xun You also do not know where to get explanation on Guo Jia's initial discourse, so if he had no wine, impossible to get Guo Jia to talk.

“Damn you, brilliant young man!” Xun You biting his teeth in anger, seeing Guo Jia's smile.

Guo Jia starts explaining again, “The expert behind Liu Xuande on the surface, might look that he has given Liu Xuande road for hegemony, but the fact it is to place Liu Xuande on a path with no return!” Guo Jia spoke with confidence. “Although Xu Province is place of four battle, its land is very fertile! People are very populous, also can be regarded as a base to compete for hegemony! However, that is before Tao Qian come to Xu Province!”

“Tao Qian?!” Xun You think of something. “That Tao Gongzu right?!” Before Liu Bei and Lu Bu set their foot in Xu Province, there is Old Tao. His grain and provisions amounted to hundred thousands-shi, At Peng County alone, the number of grain and provisions are 100,000-shi.

The soldiers and horses also have several thousands. He have Danyang soldiers elite. One can say, at that time his force is quite formidable.

However, Old Tao Qian's two sons are really useless. So in desperation, Tao Qian want to give Xu Province to whoever want to obtain it.

“Before Tao Qian's arrival, Xu Province's commoners are fat and rich! However after Tao Qian, Xu Province ownership goes to Liu Bei and finally to Lu Bu. These two people want to dominate Xu Province. With those two warlords fighting each other and plus our 3 expeditions to capture Xu Province. Xu Province's have been abandoned. Commoners are destitute and homeless. Grain and provisions are also exhausted by these wars! So, Xu Province people prefer stable life now. Now that Liu Bei is

the one who obtained Xu Province, Xu Province will fall into chaos again by endless battle. Therefore Liu Bei has lost commoners support. Grain and provisions are also left a little. Do you think Liu Bei who have lost people's heart, can occupy Xu Province again?! Moreover, those soldiers that Liu Bei carries off are our Qing Province Elite soldiers! Do you think they will fight with full heart for Liu Bei who always shouting peace?!"

"Therefore this war will surely, decide whether who live and who died!" Said Cao Cao who suddenly come out from his study.

"Milord!" Those three scholars paying respects altogether.

"Jia with great courage, proposed for Milord to attack Xu Province immediately, fighting to decide Liu Bei's fate!" Said Guo Jia who suddenly knelt down.

Chapter 68 – Plot concocting in Wan Castle, Lujiang

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Our POV now change to Lujiang, Anhui. Precisely at the government office.

Inside the Lujiang Administrator building there are two young people having a drink together. Their ages is around Liu Mang's age, but their accomplishment is beyond Liu Mang as one of them is commanding hundred thousands troops and the other is helping that commander to pacify Jiangdong with stratagem and winning other cities. No one is equal to them in term of strength, wisdom and achievements.

Jiangdong region is actually that commander inheritance from his father. But because his father died early, the land of Jiangdong become chaos. So his father did not leave anything for him except a will letter and he had to re-pacify his former father's land by force.

"Gongjin, according to your intel, you said this Lu Bu Army are gradually approaching Lujiang?!" Lu Bu Army cannot conceal their movement, because they are moving with ten thousand soldiers and with cavalry as their vanguard. That kind of placement will rouse horror in anyone's heart especially warlords. So they will definitely be on alert and will tried to deal carefully with them. Due to cavalry can travel at least 100 li, it is not a joke that suddenly they can besieged the city.

TL: 1 li = 650 metres, or 0,65 km

Sun Ce has worried face. Although he had already had pacified Jiangdong which consists of state of Wu and Yue and Sanjiang (north of Yang Province), he did not dare to underestimate Lu Bu, because when in Hulao Gate, he also experienced first-hand how terrifying Lu Bu is, along

with his late father. Only he who dared to rush into their enemies territory with only his horse and his Sky Piercer like god-of-war.

TL: Wu and Yue and Sanjiang, all of them are states from Zhou Dynasty. Which is the current Jiangdong region.

Those who underestimate Lu Bu did not have a good end. Dong Zhuo underestimate Lu Bu, he thought that Lu Bu have surrendered by offering him Red Hare, but eventually was assassinated Lu Bu with his Sky Piercer. Old Cao underestimated Lu Bu, Yan Province was attacked and he almost left with no homebase, Liu Xuande underestimated Lu Bu, Lu Bu made him surrender Xu Province using force.

Even Sun Ce think that he is very strong, but he did not dare to duel face-to-face with Lu Bu. The loss will be too big.

“Bofu, why do you worry about it?!” Zhou Yu opened his mouth finally. The handsome and dashing Wu’s viceroy Zhou Yu with handsome face and calm and composed manner. The problem with Lu Bu Army who Sun Ce worried very much, instantly solved by Zhou Yu.

“Ooohh, Gongjin, what can you teach me?!” Sun Ce and Zhou Yu are friends since they are still child and their bond are as strong as real brothers. So when Sun Ce sees Zhou Yu gesture like this, he know that Zhou Yu has a plan.

“Bofu, the arrival of Lu Bu Army is not harmful at all, but very advantageous to us!” Said Zhou Yu while smiling toward his brother. His sworn brother is a very ambitious and charismatic but sometimes he worry too much.

“Currently Lu Bu Army destination is unclear, how can it be benefit for us?!” Said Sun Ce, he still had doubts. Because he just pacified the whole Jiangdong, stability just yet reached. Even this Jiangdong region never ran out brave generals, this is not the time to fight among him and Lu Bu. Not the right time to fight for hegemony.

Zhou Yu calm Sun Ce down and start to break down his analysis “Lujiang are located in the vicinity of Wu, a part of Jiangdong. If one want to go to Jing Province, they must pass Lujiang and Jiangxia! The State of Jiangdong, who we have just pacified, have many waterways. Yes, Lu Bu Army cavalry are numerous and a lot of soldiers but they are from the north, where all land is prairie. If we are the one who attack them, it is death for us, but now those Lu Bu Army is crossing the river. With this consideration in hand, it can be said, in water, Lu Bu Army potential become zero!”

If one want to conquer Jiangdong, one need a powerful naval units, otherwise you cannot move anywhere. So, in current state, Lu Bu unable to conquer Jiangdong.

So, back to matter that passing Lujiang is the only way to reach Jiangxia, Zhou Yu decisively think this “This Marquis of Wen Lu Bu only passing through!”

True enough, just when Zhou Yu want to say his conclusion, there is a bodyguard notifying them. That Lu Bu army messenger goes to the city, bringing carts full of gold and jewelry. The total is 3,000 gold. They said they want to pass, and this is the toll fee.

“3,000 gold for toll fee?!” Sun Ce get really excited. Even though he had the rich Jiangdong at his possession, lately his spending is too many. He need to construct naval units as fast as he can also he need also to appease commoners. So for Sun Ce, these 3,000 gold can be considered as a great sum of money.

“Gongjin, do we took advantage of this situation or not?!” Sun Ce's looking at Zhou Yu profoundly. Sun Ce really knew that no matter what, he must allow Lu Bu to pass through. Stopping Lu Bu in Lujiang will only bring loss, once Lu Bu is unhappy, Lujiang will be immediately besieged and the fun will really big.

“Of course, we must take advantage of this situation!” Zhou Yu has said it, the idea that Sun Ce most expected, because this 3,000 gold toll fee is too good an offer to turn away. Right now, Zhou Yu only following up with Sun Ce's good mood.

Zhou Yu then drink his wine in one gulp and said “It is natural that we need to take advantage of this situation and let them pass but we also need to show our hospitality to Lu Bu Army, so we can build a friendly relationship with them. So these 3,000 gold toll fee, we must reject it now in order to show our goodwill. And then we send troops as a guide so they will arrive at Jiangxia smoothly! Please tell Lu Bu army's messenger that our Jiangdong army have prepared hot food to reward Marquis of Wen and his army”.

“Eh?!” If according to Zhou Yu's discourse, these 3,000 toll fee must be rejected and it means, he, Sun Ce, did not receive anything at all. Those toll fee gone, and now we need to send out guide and prepare hot food? Anyone with logic will certainly say this is a big loss. Lu Bu army numbered tens thousands people, is this my sworn younger brother nuts? How much grain and provisions will be used for treating them?

Looking at his elder brother glum expression, Zhou Yu hold his smile and answered with stressing each syllable “Those 3,000 gold, troops for guide and many hot food indeed too much at a glance. But if those gifts can be traded with Jiangxia or entire Jing Province, this price is too cheap!”

“Jiangxia??? Jing Province???” Sun Ce said it coldly. Regarding Jiangxia and Jing Province, Sun Ce's hatred is very profound. True his father Sun Jian died in the hand of subordinates of Huang Zu of Jiangxia. But the true culprit for that order is Liu Biao of Jing Province. Therefore for Sun Jian's revenge, Sun Ce have always want to hit Jing Province.

“So, Gongjin, this gifts we gave to Marquis of Wen, really can win Jiangxia and Jing Province, are you really serious about this?!” Said Sun Ce with killing intention.

“About Jing Province, I am not certain, but Jiangxia, Marquis of Wen will certainly win!” Zhou Yu has given Sun Ce decisive answer.

“Damned Huang Zu of Jiangxia!” Said Sun Ce angrily, Huang Zu is the guy whose hand got blood of Sun Jian. “Good, let's prepare for this dinner banquet. Tonight we meet this god-of-war Lu Fengxian in Anhui city!” Sun Ce's eyes are flashing. He is Jiangdong's Little Conqueror and is extremely proud of his skill in wushu, now the person called god-of-war come to pass his region, how his hand cannot be itchy, eager to test Lu Bu's skill.

Looking at Sun Ce's expression, Zhou Yu can only smiled bitterly while shaking his head “Milord, why you showing all your emotions on your

face? You have to be more restrained in showing your emotion!” But this is Sun Ce's true value.

- - - -

Shucheng, behind following 2,700 infantries with lower speed.

“Is this Shucheng County?!” In front of Liu Mang, it is an ancient city. Although commoners also not much, equal to Shouchun's amount. But they are much lively here! There are life and hope from those commoner's eye.

“Enemy are coming, enemy are coming!” Those 300 cavalry have not yet approached the city gate. Shucheng's front door are slowly closed and commoners who are still left outside the city, starts dispersing due to fear and yelling to guards to let them in.

Chaos times, when chaos times the one who is suffering is commoners. So Liu Mang makes his Urban Army to guide commoners who are still outside of city to a safe place.

Liu Mang has not shouted anything. From the city come an official who shouted announcement “Are all of you who is standing outside of the city, Marquis of Wen Lu Bu's men?! Myself called Zhou Yi, Prefect of Shucheng County, Myself represent my lord, Sun Ce, to welcome Marquis of Wen with utmost respect. Milord are especially waiting for Marquis of Wen's arrival at Wan Castle in Anhui city with banquet!” Shucheng County of Lujiang district. This is Zhou's family homebase. Zhou Yi also can be considered as one of Zhou family as he was Zhou Yu's cousin, from his father's side. More specifically, Zhou Yi is Zhou Yu's uncle son.

From Shucheng County to Anhui City, if one is quick, he can reach Shiting at the end of the day so to speak. But this is already late and the army need to be stationed.

TL: Shiting https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Shiting , currently called as Qianshan County

“Honorable Prefect Zhou, yourself and your lord Sun Ce Sun Bofu already given too much hospitality to us and also receiving us warmly, so from of my heart, I would like to thank you profusely. Myself is Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang, acting as our army vanguard. As the time already late, our army would like to request that we can stay at Shucheng County outskirts for tonight, before we march again.”

Entering the city right now is impossible because this is Sun Ce's domain. People can let you pass already very good. So the army can only stay one night at Shucheng County outskirts before marching again

After crossing Shucheng County there is Shiting. Shiting had a reputation as a very treacherous region in Lujiang district, it can be an impregnable fortress. But to passing that area, is very hard. So they need also information and guide from Shucheng County.

“Liu Mang Liu Hanyang?!” This nation already in chaos. Although Han Emperor is at Xu Du. But their government body is not mature enough to do propaganda, therefore Liu Mang's reputation is very unknown at this time.

Relying on city wall for stationing Lu Bu army, actually very good for both army. Maybe after this, Lu Bu Army and Sun Ce Army will be an ally. Although the current Lu Bu army and Sun Ce army not in alliance, but Zhou Yi already have order that stated, all Lu Bu requests are to be complied except entering the city.

“If in that case, then I, Zhou Yi, permit general Liu to be stationed at Shucheng County outskirts. Please wait for a moment, while we cook hot food for your army!” Said Zhou Yi. In Shucheng County, grain and provisions are not much. Maybe after this food, their rations will run out already. But what can he do? His lord already commanded to receive Lu Bu army with utmost hospitality.

“Hot food also?! Sun Ce this kind?!” Liu Mang brow wrinkled. Requesting for the army stationed at city outskirts already very difficult. Because once had a discontent among each other, those army at outskirts may do night raid at the city and compromising the city severely. But this city actually let them stationed outskirts of the town and also providing them with hot food. Liu Mang started to pondering, what idea that Sun Ce is having now?

Chapter 69 – Hunted by tiger (1)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

Back to Lu Bu POV, Inside Lu Bu army main tent "They not only returned the toll fee, but also they let us through and received us warmly with hot food?!" Said Lu Bu with his brow wrinkled. This treatment is really unexpected. Even allies did not receive this grand treatment! It is just like as if Lu Bu are old best friend with Sun Jian. Even with Yuan Shu, his relationship is not that good, he just take advantage of borrowing grain and provisions. Even if they have friendship before, Sun Jian is now dead therefore any friendship should be over right?

When Sun Ce decided to return the toll fee can be seen as goodwill toward friendship to Lu Bu, but now they also receiving him warmly, what does this imply?

One who seized a region and become a warlord already give an impression as a no good person. Lu Bu can and will not believe that this Sun Ce to be so kind!

"Gongtai, how do you see this?!" Lu Bu really could not comprehend this act of Sun Ce so he asked other people opinions.

Chen Gong really surprised at Lu Bu's change. If Lu Bu before, when Sun Ce gives him this advantage, he will just receive their offer, never thinking about the strategic aspect.

"I also cannot discern his motive!" Chen Gong also cannot discern about Sun Ce's treatment to Lu Bu army. If one have a graph on Lu Bu's army treasure. It will show that they right now are in a very deficit states with only a few gold and treasure and horses, but now giving Sun Ce

jewelry, he rejected it! And about horse, Jiangdong have many waterways. Sun Ce may have cavalry units but impossible to be a lot because cavalry is totally useless on water.

Does he want to swallow Lu Bu army? Does Sun Ce did not fear get choked by Lu Bu Army?

“Okay then, since they did not want our toll fee but also receive us warmly. We will discern his motive step by step!” Lu Bu decide firmly. They do not want anything from us, there must be something that they cannot speak right now at the back of their mind. Even though no free lunch in this world, who dare to refuse Lu Bu’s demand?!

“Where is Hanyang?!”Lu Bu just remember Liu Mang. Although that boy’s martial arts skill still few, but he had proposed some twisted ideas before, so it is possible he can know what Sun Ce is thinking.

“Maybe he went to hunt!” Chen Gong said with uncertain tone.

Chen Gong is right! Liu Mang and Gao Shun is going hunting now. Going hunting is actually just an excuse, because Liu Mang want Gao Shun to teach him archery. Liu Mang’s coach in wushu have been changing so fast due to his diligent. The main coach is still Lu Lingqi but when it comes to archery, he was coached by Chen Deng’s two familial generals, Chen Deng himself and now Gao Shun and Zhang Liao.

“General Gao Shun! Please judge my next shot!” The arrow in Liu Mang hand flying to the bushes hitting a rabbit while still jumping.

“General, nice shot!” Praised Cheng Yu who stand nearby. Although Cheng Yu’s strength is excellent but his archery is not so good. So, when he saw Liu Mang hitting a moving target, he naturally very envious of him.

Liu Mang did not care Cheng Yu’s praise because he is just a novice in archery, it is what the expert comment that counts.

Gao Shun is also speechless. But he can’t help to think that this Liu Mang Liu Hanyang is really terrifying, not about archery but his growth.

Two weeks ago, Liu Hanyang is a person who knows nothing about archery, but after those two weeks, he can always hit every stationary target with his bow and he also can shot slow motion target.

The present rabbit served as a witness.

Gao Shun is really a man with very few words. Therefore he can only express his answer through his gestures, nodding if it is OK and shake the head if it is not good. If one is not familiar with Gao Shun, then it maybe can be considered as an insult.

However Liu Mang knows him well. If Gao Shun nodded after his shot, then that means it is a good shot but when he shook his head, means that he must further practice. Right now Liu Mang has just shot a slow-moving object, then he cannot grade his shot.

“Okay, we go back! Today’s prey should be enough for dinner!” Gao Shun’s teachings benefited Liu Mang greatly especially after Mt. Bagong

battle. Liu Mang always said he wanted to become strong and stronger, but Rome was not built in one day, so he still need to practice even harder from now on to bring his desired result.

While Liu Mang is very frustrated due to not yet reached that result, he is also surprised to discover his body changed, more buff up and his vision becoming more clear, he can see leaf veins from 50m distance and also his strength kept increasing. But as a drawback, his appetite also increased, he can eat three food portion of average persons' food portion.

One must know, that becoming a soldier in ancient time, naturally will eat a lot because of the training and battle. Eating three portion of regular person portion is considered as normal.

"Um!"Gao Shun also nodded, because his Formation Breaker need to be stationed. He let his lieutenant go to prepare the camp, but he little worried so he also need to be there to prepare the camp also.

Suddenly from the woods there is a very loud roar, like declaring superiority and feeling very hungry.

"What the hell?!"Asked Liu Mang while calming his restless warhorse.

"Oh no, this roaring sound!!!" Said Cheng Yu become more pale. Perhaps Liu Mang do not know, but Cheng Yu knows whose roar this belongs to.

"Tiger!!!!" Gao Shun opened his mouth.

“Hurry general, we must leave quick!” Cheng Yu said again “Hearing this roar, the tiger must be hungry for a long time, hungry tiger must never be our enemy, even a first-class general will certainly avoid it!”

“Run!” Gao Shun also speaks as he approve Cheng Yu’s words. Why today’s hunting session because it is give Liu Mang further training his archery skill. So they do not bring any soldiers. If encountered a full tiger, Gao Shun will leave it alone, furthermore if hungry tiger, Gao Shun will do everything in his power to avoid it. But now with three people, the priority of safety is Liu Mang not Cheng Yu. If a tiger lunging into him, it will be hard for Gao Shun to rescue Liu Mang, because Gao Shun strength himself is only second-class general.

“Alright, we go now!” Said Liu Mang while hitting his horse to go from there. His tone was firm, but one can see that he also pitying the tiger’s roar.

"HEEELLLLLLPPPPPPP, HELP US!"

”Did someone yell for help?!” Said Liu Mang startled.

”Is there? No, I do not hear it, general!!!” Cheng Yu also heard come people screaming for help, but he actually pretend not hear. He knows that his general’s compassion is great, but their opponent now is a hungry tiger, how can they survive? He feared that at this critical moment, his general want to be selfless and save the others, when that happens, that is the end!

“RUN..” Gao Shun also heard those yelling for help, but when he is still

speaking, he already cut off by Liu Mang's next speech.

"No, I definitely hear someone yelling help!" Liu Mang brow wrinkled even further. Is it just illusion? Why both of them have not hear it???

"RUN, GENERAL!" Cheng Yu already asked Liu Mang to leave.

While Liu Mang hesitates, suddenly from the forest there are two pretty ladies coming from the forest and following them are 3 – 5 people young male servant, their expression are PANIC.

[Tl: Guess Who Are Those Two Pretty Ladies???? We Are Already In Wu Territory In Jiangdong, Those Two Must Be Sisters, Anyone Who Play Dynasty Warriors Will Certainly Know These Two Sisters From Jiangdong, Wu Faction. One Hint, In Front Of Their Name There Are Sizes.]

"PLEASE HELP, PLEASE SAVE US!" Both pretty ladies screaming for help.

"I am certain that there are people yelling for help!" Liu Mang once again rectifying his hearing to be sure.

"General, PLEASE, LET'S GO!" Cheng Yu almost cry. He thought "We are not deaf, General. We just pretend not hear. WE ARE NO MATCH FOR THAT TIGER!" The situation got fucked up real soon, because after the fifth person emerge from the forest, that hungry tiger also emerge.

"QUICK, RUN!!!!" Gao Shun take out the weapon from horseback, fully alert.

“GROAAAARRRRRRR!” That tiger lunged toward those five people all of a sudden. That last male servant met his end already, his foot are bitten and dragged by that tiger.

“AAAAHHHHHHHHH!” That pitiful scream stopped suddenly, that first unfortunate servant is bitten on the throat by tiger.

That tiger was not satisfied by only one victim, it dropped the corpse and start lunging again toward another male servant.

One companion’s death, making those four male servant panic and those two pretty ladies also dropped to their knees on the spot, and yelling again for help toward Liu Mang, their last chance to live “General, please save us! PLEASE SAVE US!”

“We cannot rescue!” This is Gao Shun’s answer.

“Forgive us! We also unable to defend ourselves!” Cheng Yu pulls up Liu Mang’s warhorse rein and whip Liu Mang’s horse buttock. The warhorse who is in pain dashed into the other direction ASAP.

Those three warhorses already disappeared from their vision, making those five people really desperate.

“AAAHHHHHHHHH!” Three other male servants also died in a flash with throat bitten. All that remained are those two pretty ladies.

Those pretty ladies hug each other in fear.

“Big sister, we are gonna die!” Said the younger sister shivering from fear.

Chapter 70 – Hunted by tiger (2)

After that hungry tiger killed the last young male servant, the tiger lunge toward those two pretty ladies. Outside the woods suddenly there is arrow flying in between tiger and those two ladies. Those two ladies are seeing a golden-armored general riding a warhorse like a knight in shining armor.

“Big sister, they come back to save us!” Said the little sister while pointing toward Liu Mang.

”Yes, I see it too! Thank gods!” The elder sister also ecstatic, because previously she thought that they, two sisters will die by tiger, but suddenly come joy after sorrow.

“GENERAL, GENERAL DO NOT GO THERE, YOU ARE NOT A MATCH!” Cheng Yu really shocked, because this rookie general actually is challenging hungry tiger. If Lu Bu is the one who come in this hunt, he will definitely avoid fighting it, but Liu Mang actually rushing towards it.

“Stupid!” Gao Shun also shocked. That is not an ordinary hunting. The opponent is a tiger, A HUNGRY TIGER. When in hunger state, even a sparrow will dead other dead bird carcass in order to survive. Let alone this beast.

“DAMN IT!” Liu Mang forced himself to smile because he almost cried himself. When in present, a tiger is caged in zoo, are tame and docile. But for Liu Mang, this does not change its definition. A tiger is a carnivore and the one who stayed on the peak of food chain.

From ancient times, the one who can capture or kill a tiger is regarded as a hero, they will have their own biography. Because they know that tiger eat people.

Liu Mang also know that he cannot directly assault the tiger. Because the warhorse that he sat down has problems. When Cheng Yu whipped his horse to return to the camp, suddenly this goddamn warhorse smelled whatever something, it changed direction!!!! Dashing right through those two pretty ladies direction.

“Fucking hell, my opponent is tiger!” In his heart, Liu Mang already wishing for death, but his attention was captured by those two pretty ladies, he suddenly stunned by their beauty.

Two pretty ladies are wearing a white silk cloth that looks like a hagoromo, totally like goddesses, using beautiful cosmetics and with skin as white as white jade, they are too beautiful for men’s eyes. PLUS, they are like twins. If only one person, maybe Liu Mang will definitely escape after this. After all, Lu Lingqi also a very beautiful woman. But this, this is beyond Liu Mang’s comprehension.

TL: sorry guys, I put Japanese language here, because I do not know Chinese language for goddess cloth, so I could only use the terms from Japanese tale, hagoromo. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hagoromo. ONCE AGAIN, WHO ARE THESE TWO GIRLS??????

Both of them are exactly the type that men will drool over them. Men will be dreaming that they want to brought them home to fuck both of them.

Not to mention, that even both sisters are panicking right now, their expression is very gentle and charming, inviting desire from anyone.

“Fuck, one distraction, now I’m dead!” Liu Mang knows that after that shooting, he no longer can retreat. Because the tiger also stared at him after that, and its gaze is fixed on Liu Mang as if he is next prey.

“Vile beast, I challenge you!” Said Liu Mang raising his bow and ready to shoot.

“ROAAARRRRR!” The tiger has changed its target to Liu Mang. According to it, Liu Mang has disturbed his hunt, so naturally Liu Mang must die.

"HAAAAHHHHH"

Liu Mang’s archery practice for the past two weeks is not useless at all, he brandished his bow and arrow. With strongbow and his archery skill, that arrow is just like a bullet shooting at that tiger.

“Puff!” The arrow has entered the flesh, it flew from tiger’s forehead and stuck at its ear.

“NICE SHOT!” Gao Shun nodded his approval. From his POV, that arrow is clearly moving tiger’s skull, strong and powerful. If not for that last second, the tiger ducked, that arrow will definitely score a headshot.

However, it did not hit its head, only its ear.

The tiger just hold the pain and its bloodthirst surged like never before. The tiger suddenly lunged toward Liu Mang.

“HISSSSSS!” The tiger lunging its prey is the basic instinct that all tiger must have. Lunged by the tiger means the tiger want to kill. If one already pounced by tiger, one cannot survive, for example those five young male servant, one by one was bitten at the neck, their blood suffocate them and they died.

“Not good!” Liu Mang also knows that he had aroused tiger's fury, he do not have time to retreat with his horse. He jumped directly from his horse as it is the only option he have.

“HIIIIIIIEEEEEEEEEEEHHHHH!” Neighed the horse. Liu Mang managed to escape tiger's lunge but the warhorse's luck is extremely bad. With tiger's presence alone, it is hard to save itself, now that tiger already lunged at it, pinning it down.

On its neck, its flesh already ripped by the tiger, revealing throat bone. Its thick skin was ripped by the tiger like it is a paper.

Instantaneously, a lot of blood gushing from the warhorse body.

“Thump, thump!” The warhorse twitched several times before it ceased all movement and become horse corpse. The warhorse blood are dripping from tiger mouth, so the hungry tiger swallowed it up and moved its attention from Liu Mang.

“AAAHHHHH!” Two pretty ladies simultaneously screamed by seeing that warhorse eaten. That tiger moved its attention from Liu Mang because of their scream, so the tiger back targeting its original target.

“Damn it!” Liu Mang burst foul language again. He thought with that warhorse dead, that tiger will be satisfied due to horse's meat are a lot more than human's, but now, it is finished.

Liu Mang himself do not dared let alone these two girls. If this continues, these two living treasure will probably lost forever.

Liu Mang decide that he will not let this beast kill people again. Life is very frail, Liu Mang is impossible to see these girls bit to death without doing anything.

“ROAAARRRR!” Liu Mang also roared. He has read also about animal world. In animal's eye, there are two most intolerable things, one is snatching food and the second is contending for domain, both of them will definitely provoke life and death battle.

But, no matter how loud he roared, his roar just like a weak and old tiger compared to his opponent.

“ROAAARRRR, COME ON! DON'T YOU WANT TO EAT HUMAN??? HUMAN LOT OF NUTRITION RIGHT??? COME ON, ROAAAAARRRRRRR!” Liu Mang roaring while also provoking him.

And that prove to be effective, the tiger left those pretty ladies and

slowly start walking toward Liu Mang.

“RUN, RUN QUICK!” Liu Mang shouts toward those girls

With Liu Mang shout, those girls started to move. The little sister had been frightened to max already, she cannot walk. The big sister hold her and run away.

“General do not panic, Cheng Yu has come!” Cheng Yu and Gao Shun caught up with Liu Mang but now seeing Liu Mang is in deadly battle with this tiger.

“Do not come here!” Liu Mang suddenly shout. Both Cheng Yu and Gao Shun are riding warhorse. Those warhorses is naturally fear tiger, king of the mountain. He knew the risk, because before his warhorse was eaten by this tiger, it frozen in place by the tiger's roar. If Cheng Yu rushes again with the warhorse, it is a big fun eh?

Both Cheng Yu and Gao Shun who went hunting with Liu Mang did not brought any weapon, instead just a long bow and arrow. Therefore they can only subdue the tiger with arrow! Only Liu Mang brought his shield with him

Now Liu Mang can one-on-one with the tiger because he had protection of Aries gold cloth and great shield also can buy him some time until help come.

“Cheng Yu, quick, go to main camp, bring some reinforcement to help me!” Liu Mang ordered Cheng Yu.

“But General...!” Even though he was only equipped with bow and arrow, Cheng Yu cannot bear to let Liu Mang die.

“If you still babbling and not going, You will see my dead body in a few minutes!!!” Liu Mang roared again. Cheng Yu does not have any choice now, if he attacks too, he will possibly be dead under that tiger's tooth. The only way now is to ask for help from main camp, and rushed with several hundred cavalry soldiers to make this king of forest retreat

“I will stay here and provide cover!” Gao Shun nodded, he drew his long bow already. Though his strength is less than Cheng Yu but Gao Shun is still proficient with arrow, he can cover Liu Mang.

“General Gao, I will leave his highness to you!” Cheng Yu bite his teeth and then galloped his horse.

Chapter 71 – Another Tiger ???

Tiger is the king of the forest, king of hundred beast. Naturally have many weapons. Its front mouth, its claw, its strong back and its goldenish tail, those four are tiger's arsenal.

That beautiful beast are observing Liu Mang slowly. A moment ago, it regarded Liu Mang as a prey, but now it regarded Liu Mang as a match. Therefore this tiger take all precautions against this unknown enemy. One pair of tiger's eye are observing his movement.

Liu Mang also looking at the tiger, he cannot show fear at all! Regarding battle, animal and human are the same, once you show fear, in that instant you wil die. If you look at each other, he also scared to do anything rashly.

One man and one tiger confronting each other while walking in circle. One, Liu Mang did not have the strength to attack and also afraid, and one tiger cannot look down upon this match.

The tiger is the one who tired first, it get impatient. Suddenly it leaped fiercely toward Liu Mang, like a strong gust of wind. Liu Mang quickly dodged that lunge to sideways. Its big jaw almost hit him, and because of that he can smell it's bad breath and sickly strong odor of blood.

It not waited for Liu Mang to form a stance again, swiftly that beast change its direction and attacking him again.

“I cannot dodge it!” Its distance and Liu Mang is too near, therefore he

cannot dodge in time and also he cannot make other movement that shielding his body. No option, Liu Mang raised his great shield his chest.

“Bang!” That beautiful tiger huge stature pounding and pinning down Liu Mang's body.

“ARGH!!!” Liu Mang felt his body like broken all over. This tiger has length about 3 meters and weight around 600-jin. A 600-jin just pounding a person usually have internal bleeding and then followed by unconsciousness, that is the very lucky hit, the worst is dead.

TL: 1 jin is 0.5 kg

Liu Mang who have the protection great shield and Aries gold cloth did not have any flesh wound, but his internal organs are hurting due to that pound. He started to spit out blood due to internal damage.

Because now Liu Mang is basically an impregnable fortress, he did not have any opening at all. That tiger already started biting Liu Mang to pry open the armor, only to find its teeth hurting all over due to the material of the armor.

Usually if a tiger cannot bite open Liu Mang's helmet and armor, it will leave ASAP. But now is different, that tiger is not just hungry today but its domain is in threat because Liu Mang provocation.

Competition for domain and food are forever nature principles for survival.

“Release me!!!” Liu Mang struggling to escape from its paw. Pressed by 600-jin thing, will make Liu Mang spit blood. If pressed again, he really will be flattened. In Liu Mang hand, his vein already exposed, his two arms pushing the great shield up trying to escape from tiger's pin pressure.

“ROARRR!” Tiger roared again fiercely. Oh, this man want to do contest of strength, the tiger also strengthen its paws pressure.

“I would rather bitten to death, rather being flatten!” Liu Mang also not yet finished, and then like a rabbit who suddenly have an ability to jump the high wall, both of his eyes already almost red due to increase in blood flow. And then a unbelievable strength also rising from his body.

TL: it is his adrenal strength are playing http://www.nononsenseselfdefense.com/adrenal.htm plus because he got training, his adrenal strength may be much bigger than usual.

“It is this strength!” Liu Mang realized it because he has experienced it several times. This great strength sometimes appear, sometimes vanish. This strength is also the main reason that Liu Mang can survive several battles.

“HAAAAAA!!!!!” With adrenal strength alone, Liu Mang able to push back this 600-jin tiger.

“ROARRR!!!!” The tiger knows that the current condition requires it to go all out, it needs to press him again and again and dig its nail into Liu Mang's body. A predator is still a predator, even a human invents tool to face it, it is still no match for natural predator. Liu Mang now already

almost standing but was kept pressed down by the tiger.

"Whiz, whiz, whiz!" There are three arrow volley aiming tiger's forehead, buttock and chest simultaneously. This is Gao Shun's 3 volley arrows and his specialty with archery.

It does not matter if these three target was hit or not, as long as it is able to give the tiger heavy losses.

Man is the highest of all creatures because we have wisdom to control the world but predator have instinct on their own. When that tiger felt those three arrows are closing, it is quickly reminded to its ear wound and quickly leap from Liu Mang's body suddenly to avoid those three arrows.

"DAMN IT!!!" Gao Shun sighed. If that time those arrows hit its target, this tiger would have been wounded severely. A tiger's body is a treasure of medicinal trove as such a value of a tiger really not small. So Gao Shun quickly pulled out three arrows again, and tried to shoot again.

Liu Mang also leapt from the ground and make a stance again. He tried to become the king of ten thousand beast. The forest tiger who now occupy one forest, again in a threat of losing one's territory, because someone who ride a horse and even shoot it, so the tiger hurried again dashing toward Liu Mang.

"FUCKIN HELL!!!" This tiger only have eye for me??? Hey, it is not me who just shoot you, it's Gao Shun, GAO SHUN!!! Liu Mang cannot help to whine to himself. Although in his heart, he already concocted evil thought on how to make this tiger to attack Big Bro Gao, but it looks like

this tiger only have eye for himself only

“Hmmm?!” Watching the tiger and Liu Mang again battling, Gao Shun contemplated whether to put down his bow and arrow or not. This tiger already decided to take on Liu Mang as its enemy!!! So they once again entangled again. So for Gao Shun does not injure Liu Mang, it is to cease shooting.

“WOOOSSH!” A goldenish light sweeping Liu Mang, because Liu Mang cannot see clearly what happened, his great shield received a big impact. That big impact nearly made him throw the great shield. He calm down and looking around what that golden light is, it is really the tail of the tiger.

“That is its tail!” Tiger's tail is the secret weapon of a tiger. One who was stricken with the tail, they must have falledn. So Liu Mang hurriedly to avoid that strike, when that tail strike the ground, it cracked the soil a little.

“GAAAHHHH!” Liu Mang suck down its saliva. Although the ground in Three Kingdoms era are soils, its texture is very solid. Especially it is not rainy day, so the ground is pretty solid and this tiger able to crack the soil a little with its tail? This implies that the force of that tiger can break one bone.

Liu Mang stunned a moment, this time the tiger did not lunge toward Liu Mang, but sweep him again with its tail. Due to not paying attention, Liu Mang took direct hit. Can you withstood the power of 600-jin thing hitting you??? It is look like a train with cargo running you over.

“BRAGH!” Liu Mang who was stunned for a moment, was hit and flying

several distance at once the impact reached him.

“Good opportunity!” The tiger and Liu Mang have separated. Gao Shun then shoot 3 volley arrows again. Although the arrow was quick, the tiger was quicker, in one leap, those 3 arrows are able to be avoided by tiger.

Liu Mang hurried to get that great shield and make a stance again.

Unfortunately, this time the tiger also learned from its mistake. It did not target Liu Mang, but it directly rammed Liu Mang's great shield. Because of that momentum, Liu Mang lost his grip on the great shield and the shield flying away.

“I am finished!!!” He no longer have a shield naturally he is panicked now. During that moment, the tiger rushed, try to bit Liu Mang's face and neck.

“ROARRRRR!!!!!!” At this time, there is a second roar from the distance. Is there a second tiger??? A tiger can kill Liu Mang, if coming two tigers, even suicide will just become a luxury.

Chapter 72 – The one who reign over tiger

Liu Mang is now pinned down by the tiger and both of his hand are each placed on its snout and one on its lower jaw, holding it so it do not lick his face with its tongue. Tigers' tongue are barbed. If one licks you densely and numerously, it can tear your skin and flesh definitely and if it licked Liu Mang now, he will be disfigured.

"ROARRR!!!" The other roaring sound are getting nearer and nearer. A tiger can kill Liu Mang, but two tigers? They will crush him until his bone are no more.

Why there are so many king of this forest??? Liu Mang has shouted "motherfucker" who know how many times. Isn't a tiger is a solitary animal??? A mountain cannot have two tigers, so this is impossible.

Just when Liu Mang think he is finished, suddenly there is a powerful strength that is pushing him forward. Getting this sudden boost, Liu Mang can stand again unexpectedly and also making this big tiger staggered. Tiger then escaped from Liu Mang's engagement.

"Golden arm!" Liu Mang then saw on his own soldier, there is a golden arm on his shoulder and there are one again who support him from behind. This is another set of golden armor. The one who have another set of golden armor except Liu Mang is Boss Lu.

"Get up!!!" As expected there is a mellow and clear sound in Liu Mang's ear. And that big hand directly pulled Liu Mang to the side.

“Honorable Father-in-law!!!” Liu Mang really surprised to see Lu Bu at his side. Liu Mang want to warn his Lu Bu but Lu Bu already prevented Liu Mang to say anything, so that Liu Mang get out of his way. From Liu Mang’s eyes, he can see that in Lu Bu’s eyes there is a big excitement.

When Lu Bu see toward that big tiger, he roared so loud. So loud that it can pierce one’s eardrum.

The opposite tiger also roared as if accepted the challenge.

“General, are you all right?!” Said Cheng Yu leading Liu Mang to safety zone after Lu Bu saved Liu Mang.

“I am okay!” Liu Mang’s hair is all mess, all mixed up with broken grass leaves. During his confrontation with the tiger, His armor was a mess. There are a few places of his armor was damaged by tiger’s claw and also dirty all over. Except that he is tired due to confrontation, Liu Mang do not have any damage at all.

From Cheng Yu’s story, Liu Mang knows what happened to Cheng Yu when he returned to main camp. When arriving, Cheng Yu directly went to Urban Army camp. Fortunately Liu Mang’s Honorable Father-in-law Lu Bu also in Urban Army camp, surveying soldiers. When Lu Bu heard from Cheng Yu that Liu Mang was attacked by tiger, he immediately ride his warhorse to Liu Mang’s location. His arrival prevent Liu Mang being disfigured by tiger’s licking.

“We, two sisters, would like to offer our highest gratitude to General!” Those two pretty ladies also walking toward Liu Mang, and thanked Liu Mang with graceful gestures.

“Do not thank me, actually I have not do anything for you!” Liu Mang said it awkwardly. Liu Mang really said the truth, if not for that damned warhorse smelling whatever goddamned thing and returned to that tiger direction, how can he confront directly that tiger? Moreover, Liu Mang do not have any experience in fighting wild beast like that, if not for the Aries gold cloth that he wear, he might be dead like those five young male servants, returning his body to earth and reincarnated again.

“No, no, if not for general arriving at time, us sisters maybe already dead by that tiger’s fangs!” The big sister replied Liu Mang immediately, saying that if no Liu Mang there, perhaps they already bitten by the tiger to death. So no matter if Liu Mang victorious or not over that tiger, the fact remains that he gave these two sisters time to escape.

Being thanked by pretty ladies for the first time made Liu Mang shy, why he is shy? It thanks to being virgin for twenty-two years.

“May I know both of you are from what family? And why are both of you here?!” Liu Mang putting aside his shyness and awkwardness. He knit his brows and asking that question because he need to know how their appearances attract that tiger, because if without that tiger, how can both of them in this sorry state.

“Why we are here, is none of your business!!!!” Shot the little sister. If the elder sister is like a gentle peony, then the younger sister is like a thorny rose. Both of them just rejoicing because they are out of danger now, but now being questioned like a criminal, the little sister’s expression changed immediately.

“We do anything, go anywhere, is none of your business!!!”

“Bold, do not speak rude to our general!” When Liu Mang and both ladies are flirting, Cheng Yu will not interrupt them. But when they start to speak disrespectfully to Liu Mang, Cheng Yu will roared toward the speaker.

“OOOHHHH, HOW FIERCE YOU ARE!!! Your general come from what family, huh??? If Brother Yu are here and see how fierce you are to me, both of you are the one who must kneel down to me!!!” The little sister still retaliating fiercely, she kept saying about Brother Yu while showing her canines, like a beast that already want to eat a person.

TL: Guess who she talking about??? The little one is Brother Yu and the older one is Brother Ce

“Really…. I want to see what kind of man that your Brother Yu, who can make our general to kneel down to you!” Said Cheng Yu disdainly. Even in Lu Bu army, the only one who can make Liu Mang kneel down is Lu Bu, other people do not have any rights, also do not dare with Liu Mang.

“Brother Yu?!” Liu Mang also murmuring this name. From their looks, these two sisters origin definitely is not of low birth and the little sister can speak that this Brother Yu can make them kneel down, definitely this Brother Yu is a high-ranked noble. Shucheng County is Sun Ce’s domain right? Does Sun Ce have a great general who surnamed Yu???

"Seeing Liu Mang’s confused expression, the smart elder sister’s brow wrinkled and then stand up to save her sister, because her sister is really daring, not just did not say thanks to their saviors, but she also

threatened them, this is really deathseeking girl. She then pulled the younger sister and said “Yue'er STOP!” with tone full of blaming her sister and then lower her head again and said “My younger sister is still naïve and did not know the way of the world. We want to seek general's kindness and forgive my younger sister. Answering your question, we are sisters from He clan originated from Wancheng city. The reason that we are here, is because we are on our way to visit Shucheng to visit some relatives, but on the way we are camped here in this forest! Who can anticipate that this forest have a hungry tiger and started hunting us.

TL: I am sorry dear readers. I thought Wancheng is Wan Castle, but it is really a city name in Lujiang district, an ancient city called Wancheng city. I will asked James to change all Wan Castle from previous chapters to Wancheng city

“Sisters of He family?!” Liu Mang really have not heard this surname from all the history books he read. First he heard there is a general in Sun Ce's army have surname Yu and now these He sisters. Damn, history really neglecting a lot of people, these He sisters beauty certainly can compete with Lu Lingqi and his mother-in-law Madame Ren. Moreover, these He sisters are two person, so in Liu Mang's eyes, their point just raised by 1 point.

TL: The elder sister is using surname He because its writing is the closest to Qiao, Madame Ren is Diaochan. Please tell me, do I need to use Diaochan or still Madame Ren, because according to Yuan Dynasty canonized name, her real name is Ren Ang. Now I will use Madame Ren.

Liu Mang really see those two sisters with profound gaze.

“What?!!! keep your eyes from us, you lecher!!!” Said the younger He

sister. Aiyah, she really a small tigress who are able to bite anyone.

“You want to guard these ladies?!” Gao Shun asked straightforwardly. In this chaos times, when one want to visit friends, he or she must take three or five people as bodyguard to anticipate everything, otherwise he or she can be killed enroute.

“Yes, YES, I want to guard them!” Replied Liu Mang. The elder sister just kept quiet about the fact that she and her little sister sneak out of Wancheng City to play along with several male servant, who knows they met tiger and their escort was all killed.

“ROAAARRR!” While He elder sister want to confess, suddenly Boss Lu and that tiger coming to their position for a final showdown to decide victory and defeat.

The tiger once again steadied its stance and jump into the air to pin down Lu Bu. Lu Bu do not avoid that lunge unlike Liu Mang, instead he just challenge it with loud shout “COME ON, COME ON!!!”, so like that, he catch both of tiger's paw midair.

The tiger strength makes Lu Bu slightly stagger but he withstood it immediately.

“He withstood tiger's lunge??? Is he really crazy?!” Exclaimed the little sister in awe. It is said that tiger's strength is stronger than human's. When a human want to kill a tiger, he can only rely on tools or perhaps strategy. But now Lu Bu are facing tiger face-to-face with barehand.

“Please generals, go save your great general now!” The elder sister is saying it politely. It is a real tragedy for such a valiant general to die in the hand of a tiger.

However Liu Mang, Gao Shun and Cheng Yu was unmoved, they just standing there watching this magnificent battle, man vs beast, Lu Bu vs tiger. If Lu Bu cannot handle this tiger then he is not Lu Bu.

Lu Bu's height is nearly two meters but this big tiger's length is three meters. Now its paws are already held by Lu Bu's hands, so the tiger now is standing and its must be higher 1 meter than Lu Bu. Its head now stretching forward want to bite Lu Bu's head.

Its mouth stench already unendurable.

“Nooo, it is finished!” Both ladies already closed their eyes, they do not want to see that a general die by tiger's bite. These subordinates of that generals also very cold blooded, because no one tried to rescue him.

“FUCK OFF!” Screamed Lu Bu, and then followed with thundering sound. Both sisters opened eye slowly. In that field Lu Bu is the one who kicking its belly repeatedly, a 600-jin beast was kicked directly and then Lu Bu rushed toward it and throw it down.

“Ha Ha Ha Ha Ha Ha! EASY!!!” Lu Bu's heroic laughter is echoing in the woods.

“BRAGH!” That tiger quickly fallen to the ground. On its golden fur, already have blood on it.

“ROAARRRRR!!!” This tiger is the king of the mountain, master of the forest. It did not accept being defeated by a human. Then both tiger eyes started to redden.

“COME ON, PLAY AGAIN!!!!” Said Lu Bu while removing his upper half armor.

“ROARRRR!” This tiger has learned its lesson so it no longer do lunge, but tried to sweep Lu Bu with its tail. Tiger's tail have a very strong bone, one sweep can fracture human bone.

“WOOSSHHH!” The speed of tiger's tail is really fast, indistinguishable with naked eye. So, even Lu Bu's body is very strong, with this kind of speed, it certainly just like a mace hitting Lu Bu, unable to avoid any fracture of bone.

The tiger is quick but Lu Bu is quicker. His hand was stretched out and grab something that tiger while still in its sweeping path.

None should touch tiger's tail, if its tail was held it will bite Lu Bu's head fiercely.

How Lu Bu possibly give it opportunity? He grabbed its tail and began giant swinging the tiger. After second spinning, he loosened his arm's grip.

That big tiger was thrown again and fell on the ground, battered.

“Is that general is a human?!” Both sisters cannot believe their eyes. That general actually fought tiger with barehand, throwing it again and again. In the end, which one is the prey???

Lu Bu certainly not a normal human. He is the god-of-war. He is also known as invincible tiger. That king of forest has bumped into the one who reign over tiger, its defeat is inevitable!

Chapter 73 – Into Tiger's den

Translated by Bloodfalcon

So with that last attack, that big tiger is already exhausted but Lu Bu, the one who reign over tiger, is still standing strongly.

Seeing that its life will be extinguished by Lu Bu's hand. Suddenly the big tiger jumped again to attack, as if like a cornered general. Its mouth roared furiously and shook its body to escape from Lu Bu's pinning hands.

"Um?!" Lu Bu brow wrinkles. He contemplates whether to press the tiger further or letting it loose, but finally he let it loose.

"ROAARRRR!" The big tiger is gazing at Lu Bu quite long before it jumping into the thick patch of grass, leaving the battlefield.

"PURSUE IT!" Said Gao Shun. Tiger's organ is very useful to one who practice martial arts especially for the present Liu Mang. The tiger bone can be boiled to make medicinal soup. For a person who practice martial arts, it is the top booster than any animal bones soup.

"Yes!" Cheng Yu who have brought back his weapon also prepared to rush with his horse.

"Stop the pursuit!" Lu Bu waved his arm to stop their people.

"Milord, what are you?!" Said Gao Shun with doubts. He does not believe Lu Bu do not know about tiger's organs value. This thing can

boost up Liu Mang's skill to the next level. Moreover all other parts of tiger is extremely good for health also for example tiger's meat, tiger's bone and if it is male, tiger's dick.

"Now, we do not pursuit!" Lu Bu continues to said that while wearing his upper-half of his armor. Lu Bu continued his explanation "Right now that beast's consciousness is a cornered beast, fighting for his life! If all of you pursue now, that beast will absolutely fight will all of its might, when that happens all of you will be in great danger!!!"

Lu Bu do not know the reason behind that tiger sudden leap, he just know that this tiger must have a reason to go back to its den. The present tiger did not recognize anything due to its wound. It only want to escape, once people prevent him, it will fight like a cornered fox which is more dangerous than a jackal. Although it can be killed but the cost will be a lot of men injured.

TL: Sorry brothers, I just tempted to put Gray Fox's awesome quote here, because the literal translation is "It will fight with all its might"

Lu Bu who has put on the armor, goes more relaxed and said "Come on! We can pursue now!" then Lu Bu takes the lead. They are following the blood trails on the ground that beast left as a clue. They are following it step by step.

Walking beside Lu Bu is Liu Mang, Cheng Yu and Gao Shun both following from behind. Gao Shun did not speak at all and those two pretty ladies are also following them because of curiosity and fear for staying in wilderness alone.

“You have a very good luck, hunting this time!” Lu Bu opened his mouth. These pair of father-in-law and son-in-law already walked a few distance without saying a word finally broke the silence.

“Good luck?!” Liu Mang is smiling on one side of his mouth. It is really a luck certainly, do not know whether it is a good one or bad one. The bad one is he encountered tiger unexpectedly. Although the environment of Three Kingdoms’era is very good and bountiful, but the amount of king of the forest is very little, so the probability encountering it very low. His bad luck really began when that tiger targeted him and played him to almost dead. If not for those two pretty ladies, how can he got a very bad luck now? Thought Liu Mang while seeing those two pretty ladies.

Lu Bu also noticed Liu Mang’s gaze toward those two pretty ladies, they are wearing clothes like a hagoromo, although running here and there making those two’s clothes dirty still cannot hide their beauty. Lu Bu who everyday looks at his wives who are also the most beautiful women in all Three Kingdoms cannot help to also gaze at those two pretty ladies.

"Who are they?!" Asked Lu Bu.

“They are sisters from He clan from Wancheng city, they are on the way to Shucheng County to visit their old relatives, the tiger brought them to meet us!” Replied Liu Mang in detail. The way Liu Mang answered Lu Bu’s question is like a son answering his father question.

“Sisters from He clan of Wancheng City? They come out from the city to visit old relatives? With only these two alone?!” Lu Bu asked Gao Shun the same question. These two women are like lilies and roses, even if not chaos times they will be a subject for people to fight for their hands. Now is the chaos times, wherever people goes, it is engulfed with flames of

war, and these pretty sisters actually dare to visit their old relatives alone??? Unbelievable.

"Originally they have several male servants come with her, but they were bitten to death by tiger!" Liu Mang added the information.

"Only male servant?!" Lu Bu deeply looking at these two pretty ladies. These two beauty is really a top notch, how can they are accompanied by so little bodyguard? And moreover they are male servant!!! Without the protection of bodyguard, it is very difficult to go on a journey. The one who believe such half-assed lie maybe only Liu Mang! Lu Bu's first deduction is these two sisters, definitely not sisters of He clan from Wancheng City. Although Lu Bu still cannot guess their surname, but he decided to take along these sisters go back to Wancheng city, afterall what harm can these two sisters bring to Lu Bu army!

The more Lu Bu and co walking, the more bloodstain on the ground. Its den much be very near from here. Before entering tiger's den, Lu Bu gives his very rare praise toward Liu Mang, "You did a very good job today!"

"Eh?!" Liu Mang surprised, Lu Bu praising him? Did actually Lu Bu praise himself? He have not done anything today. Today he goes for hunting, meet a tiger, fight a tiger to almost dead, how can those feats counted as doing a good job?

The truth that Liu Mang do not know is when an average person encounter a tiger, it can be said that basically that person is a dead meat. Even a fully armed soldier will need a one team of soldiers to surround the tiger. If they want to kill the tiger, they will need at least a hundred people to do it. Now Liu Mang can hold out such a long time facing tiger, one can say that Liu Mang's skill in wushu have raised one level.

Getting to Cheng Yu's and Gao Shun level in martial arts.

Practicing martial arts goes through 3 phases. First, building up body for defense, then hammering your bone for stamina and refining strength which is divided by three-class. An average person took at least ten years to build the foundation of his/her martial arts skill, a talented person also need to take at least five years to build it. But Lu Bu noticed due to Liu Mang's diligence and perseverance, he can see that Liu Mang's body is changing day-by-day. Like a moment ago, with the injury received by that tiger, even a general must rest for several days. But Liu Mang now did not feel too much pain at all. This is the quality of his body now.

Hammering bone is to build up stamina to practice martial arts to certain extend. This phase is needed for those who just entering a general position, pushing the threshold of a mere warrior has. Cheng Yu himself just entered hammering bone stage, while Gao Shun is of a higher class than Cheng Yu, he is has entered strength refining and his prowess now is second-class general.

Refining strength is the one who divide between first-class generals and second-class generals

Zhang Liao is a person who has entered the phase of refining strength. His prowess is slightly below of first-class generals. Lu Bu also already entered refining strength. But due to his prowess higher than others, he is in his own class which is pinnacle of super generals. The one who reached this degree are Lu Bu only. Zhang Fei, Guan Yu, Dian Wei, Xu Chu, Zhao Yun, Ma Chao, Huang Zhong, etc, these people prowess can be considered one level below pinnacle of super generals. They belong to a class called super generals with strength a bit more than first-class

generals.

Lu Bu also watching Liu Mang's effort. Building up one's body as a foundation requires medicine like herbs etc, even if today no tiger appeared. But since a tiger appear today, Lu Bu want to seek that tiger to take its bone for Liu Mang's medicine soup.

"You wait me here, I'll go in!" It is a cave, although the cave entrance is big enough for all of them to come in, but there is no light at all, it is pitch dark. It is a very unadvisable thing to enter tiger's den without proper equipment like torch for example. Lu Bu can just waltz in because he have confidence in his skills, but other people did not have the same skill as he have, that is why Lu Bu asked them to stay outside.

Not waiting for Lu Bu's order, everyone are already waiting outside the cave.

Inside the cave, there are a very foul stench emanating from everywhere. Lu Bu brow wrinkled again but immediately restored. Because in Wuyuan County, where he lived before, the stench is more worse than this place.

TL: Wuyuan County, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wuyuan_County,_Inner_Mongolia, birthplace of Lu Bu

"ROARRR!" The tiger in cave also felt that some people is approaching, it roared. But it can only send out weak roar as it has used up every strength in its body.

Not long, the whole picture appeared in front of Lu Bu, making Lu Bu stunned up and kept looking straight.

Time has passed, one hour, two hour. Lu Bu who enter the cave looked like has dropped into endless pit, like no one has ever gone inside there.

“General Gao Shun, I wonder what happened to Honorable Father-in-law?!” Lu Bu who did not send news at all making Liu Mang and co really worried. Inside the cave only have a roaring sound but it is already two hours ago, Lu Bu have not been slaughtered right?

If there are slaughtered sound, it can make people relieved at this time, because at least they know what happened. This type of silence is the most uncomfortable.

“Let’s wait a little longer!” Gao Shun also impatient but he also has comply with his lord’s order.

But a few hours has passed.

“Waiting here no good, I need to go have a look!” Liu Mang really worried and started to walk toward the entrance, Cheng Yu also followed behind him, Gao Shun who did not stop them also followed them in.

“Big sister, do we also go in?!” Said the younger sister, while seeing that pitch black entrance, putting up little fear in her heart.

That pitch-black cave as if inviting fear on human is actually a good choice because outside is also not good! This forest already leave a bad

impressions on these two sisters, if staying outside and bump into another predator, then what to do? They do not have strength to defend themselves.

“We also go in!” Said elder sister while biting her teeth. Although that pitch-black cave is very scary, but it has Liu Mang and co to protect them. At the outside, nobody can help them. So they cannot help it but go into that cave.

Chapter 74 – Did we did the wrong thing?

Translated by Bloodfalcon

“Big sister, inside is very dark!” Said younger sister while holding her big sister's arm.

“Do not be afraid!!! Elder sister also here!” He Yu also very startled, being in the pitch-black cave full of foul stench, anyone would be afraid and flustered if encountered such things. But as the elder sister, she must be responsible and take care her younger sister. Not long ago, Liu Mang and co has given her big courage, and she can comfort her younger sister.

TL: In this novel, Da Qiao and Xiao Qiao were given complete name, so Da Qiao's complete name is Qiao Yu, with character Yu from jade and Xiao Qiao is Qiao Yue, with character Yue from moon. And now they are disguised at sisters from He clan, so Da Qiao's name is He Yu and Xiao Qiao is He Yue.

“Um!” Nodded the younger sister, obedient like little cat. The present He Yue's appearance is really a far away visage than before, when she put on a high air and arrogance. She is just now holding her sister's arm firmly.

“Big sister, why are you shivering?!” Inquired He Yue, because her sister's arm also trembling “Are you also afraid?!”

“No, I am not afraid, it just very cold in here!” Said He Yu struggling with her fear.

"Milord"

"Honorable Father-in-Law~" Shouted Liu Mang and co while walking. Their shouting made those pretty sisters heart calm down a bit.

“Big sister, come on, we get out of here!” The foul stench added He Yue's fear. So she cannot stand it anymore.

“Yue'er, be obedient, we must follow the general!” Although this place is pitch-black and its stench is very hard to endure, but whatever the outcome, it has Liu Mang and co's protection. The sky outside gradually getting darker, getting out of the forest who already had a very bad impression on them, how can these two possibly survive?

He Yu just said that they must follow those generals, but Liu Mang and co, suddenly silent.

“General!!! Are you there?!” Shouted He Yu anxiously, but no one responded to her in this cave.

“Big sister!!!” Liu Mang and co being silent all of a sudden, made He Yue frightened again to the point of crying.

“GENERAL!!!” He Yu also alarmed. They are now only two females in this big cavern, and because those generals suddenly going silent, both of them do not know whether they are alive or dead. Knowing this fact, how can He Yu be calm again?

While those two sisters feeling helpless suddenly a hand from the darkness touched those two sisters' shoulders making those sisters' fear

breaking the max threshold

“WHOAAAAAAAAA!!!! GHOST TOUCHING ME!!!!” The younger sister loosened up her grip at her elder sister's arm and running towards cave's exit.

“Ghost my ass!!!” A familiar sound grabbed He Yue's hand preventing her to escape, while covering his ears. This tigress scream really can make Liu Mang's eardrum almost explode.

“Is that you, General Liu?!” Asked the elder sister He Yu after calming herself down.

“Where did the hell did you go huh??? Did you not know that leaving two misses from good family outside without telling them at all is a big discourtesy??? Whose subordinate you are? When I got back, I will tell Brother Yu all about you, YOU JERK!!!” The younger sister who was very afraid and then was surprised by Liu Mang, threw all her discomfort toward Liu Mang.

But, can Liu Mang bow down to her threat??? Liu Mang not only won't bow down to her threat, that Brother Yu of hers cannot do anything to Liu Mang as Liu Mang is not an officer under Sun Ce. Liu Mang's boss is Boss Lu!!!

Also, Liu Mang was bestowed Prince of Shu and General of Southern Expedition titles by the Emperor, so if one can follow the logic, Sun Ce should be his subordinate.

“If you want to go, then follow me, if not, stay here. I did not have time for both of you!!!” Liu Mang quickly goes further in, his mood really not good after this two tigress shouting at him and then scolded furiously.

"OOOOO, SO FIERCE!" Sneered He Yue.

“We follow you, General!” Said He Yu swiftly, because they do not want to be left outside again, terrorized by the night.

“Okay then, all of the generals are further inside, follow me!!!” Liu Mang nodded and lead them further in and did not explain further to those two ladies

“Okay!!!” Those two sisters obviously cannot disobey Liu Mang, they just following him further inside the cave.

Further inside the cave, they also stunned and speechless.

Inside the cave is another universe. From the top of the cave there is basin size opening and light can illuminate this part of cave.

Using the light, one can see that big tiger is lying on the ground. Is not this the big tiger that just want to harm everyone's life???

“Meow!!!” A small sound emanating from the abdomen area of that tiger, two little golden tiger trying to suckle from their mother, their eye has not opened.

This tiger is a tigress, one can see nipples from its abdomen.

“How is that tigress?!” Asked He Yue while holding her big sister's hand.

“It died!!” Replied Liu Mang before He Yu replied her sister.

“But!!!” He Yue want to say, is not when the tigress want to leave still got vigor???

“That is just a burst before it died!” Liu Mang answered. He pondered, did it put its last strength to return to this cave? For giving food to its cubs???

Those cubs whose two eyes not yet opened and toothless, start walking slowly toward its mother anxiously tried to suckling, they do not know that their mother have died.

It is not the milk that those small tigers sucked but red liquid called blood.

The tigress have already exhausted its energy from giving birth these two cubs, and after that she need to hunt in order to have food also to supplement its milk.

The mother passes away while it curling up its body to protect these two cubs in her bosom.

“Are we in the wrong?!” Liu Mang start blaming himself. If not for them,

this tigress will not die, this small family will not break, and these two kids will still have a mother.

"We are not wrong!" Lu Bu then break his silence and stood up "We are not wrong!!! What is wrong is this times, this chaos times, changing people into beasts, making beast do not have place in this world. This chaos times is ruled by the rule of jungle, tiger eat people, people kill tiger! If you do not kill it, then it is you are to be eaten, choose between these two!"

"I!!!" When Liu Mang start blaming himself, suddenly thought what Lu Bu said it is right. If the do not kill the tiger, they will be the one eaten by the tiger. If they died, there are some people who will be sad right? If they died, did not they just break their own family???

"Honorable Father-in-Law, I do not understand!!!" Confusion once again enveloped Liu Mang. Tiger will eat human to survive, human also kill tiger in order to survive also. Both sides are not wrong. But no matter which side win, the result will always very sad.

"Slowly you will understand. Predator must always eat human. Have you ever seen cannibalism?!" Lu Bu said this afterwards "In chaos times, chaos of war, coupled with famine after prolonged war makes commoners do not live! Tree barks and grass has become last resort for food!" Lu Bu seemed telling real story, as if it is from his very own experience.

In his story, there is a young boy, he is very handsome, he have a very excellent eyebrows and delicate features on his face. But he is like a feral child.

TL: Guess whose story is the next chapter???

That year, invaders from Great Wall are plundering his village, that year was the beginning of big chaos much before Yellow Turban Rebellion begin, and that year he was six years old.

In his family, there are no grain left. Their only grain was robbed or should say drafted to give food to those government soldiers who are guarding the border. That year, he is very very hungry. Because of hunger, his eyes were very dizzy. His father and mother already departed because starved to death.

He remembered his father strong and stalwart appearance. The man participated in government troops, fighting those invaders who want to rob their house, we can say that man dedicated his life for Han Dynasty, but what has Han Dynasty given him? Only disability and impoverished family

In the battlefield, when he is outnumbered, out of league, did not make this man wrinkle his brow. But now, because of hunger, let this strong man bend down his back to hold his and his family hunger.

Chapter 75 – Mother's flesh (Lu Bu's childhood story)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

“Father, I am hungry!” His eyes widened showing his childlike innocent to that person who he called father.

“Bu, my good son. Please hold your hunger again, okay?! We will have something to eat soon!” Said that man with firm and resolute face, on his face he showed a very wry smile.

“Um!” He nodded to appear to understand but he really not understand anything at all.

After a while, he said again "Father, I am hungry!"

“Bu, my son, sleep. If you sleep, you will not feel hungry!” That man is very helpless now. He will not afraid when confronted with ten thousand army and he can take their enemies head easily. But in this impoverished family, he cannot change those heads with grain.

“But father, I am still hungry!” He blinked his eye. The intense sense of hunger lets him only can call his father again and again. He have a mother, but father said that mother was very tired and fell asleep.

“Bu, my son. You wait for father to seek food!” the famished man, drew up his body to pick up the dusty long bow from his room.

At evening, the man came back, his eyes devoid of any hopes and his face is very tired, his hand is empty. There are no tree barks or grass

found nearby, how he can expect bring back prey with his longbow?

But at that time, the boy did not understand anything. He only knows that each time his father bring long bow, he surely will bring something delicious, therefore he opened his hands and shouted “Father, I am hungry!!! Let's eat!”

That innocence face made that famished man complexion very dim, his tears starts flowing “I am sorry, Bu, my son. I am sorry, father is useless, cannot bring food for you!”

“Father!” Although he is still small, but he is very sensible. He knows that this man that he called father has made an effort even though the result is zero. Then he said “Father, Bu is not hungry, Bu want to sleep!” Then he closed his eyes, as the world around him become dim.

While his consciousness is still hazy, he as if hear two person voices. One of them has a very sweet and warm sound “Bu, my son, come here, come here!”

“Dear mother!” In his hazy state, he heard his mother's voice.

“Bu, my good son, mother is here!”

“Mother, I am hungry!” Long time did not see his mother, he said the thing that he thought without hesitation.

“Bu, my son, come to mother here, Bu will not feel any hungry! Come, Bu, my son!” That gentle voice still beckons him.

Another sound that he heard is hoarse and anxious “Bu, my son, wake up, please wake up! You cannot fall asleep. Please, stay strong!” This is his father's voice.

“Mother, is Bu will not be hungry at there?!” Asked him while tilting his head full of doubts.

“Yes, come to mother now. Bu, my son, you will not feel hungry anymore! Come here Bu, my son!” That gentle sound beckoning him again.

“But, what about father?!” He hesitated.

“Your father sooner or later will join us, we both go first and wait for him!”

“Oh!” his small head do not understand what his mother meant, but he do not want to be hungry. Being hungry is sad, is very uncomfortable.

“Bu, my son. You wake up, wake up!!!” That man worried with insane, because his son's body heat become colder and colder. His breath and palpitation slowly stopping. He knows that this is not a sickness, this is hunger! This is how hunger works, as long as he has food to eat., his son can survive.

But currently he does not have, does not have anything to eat.

“Have to search for meat!!!” That man really as anxious as ant on hot pot. “Meat, meat, yes, there is meat!” That man suddenly thought of

something and then bite his teeth and stand.

“My wife Yi, I am so sorry. I lost you, but I cannot afford to lost Bu, our son!”

Gradually, he opened his eyes. In his field of vision, there is no mother, did not have full tummy that mother said, only father's voice and that hunger feeling.

"Father! I am hungry!"

“Come, come, Bu my son. We have food! Look, there is meat, a lot of meat!” In that man's hand there's a lump of raw flesh still bloody.

“Hungry, must eat!” What his father had is a non-high quality meat nor is clean, also it is raw. When he nip on that flesh, it has a very fragrant smell. That is his first impression.

After he eat a large portion, he noted his father did not eat the meat and said “Father, you also eat, eat!”

The man just shook his head and said “Father is not hungry, Bu, you eat, be strong again!”

From that day, he has meat for his daily meal, although raw. But it at least can satiate his hunger! But his father did not eat at all.

Finally that great man could not outlast his hunger, that man finally

fallen.

“Father, oh father, what happened with you!” He startled, flustered. In his eyes, his father is a god, but now that god has fallen. He really frightened and tears starts to moisten up his eye socket.

“Bu, my good son. You must not cry, must not cry. Our son Bu is a great man, he will be a general of Han Dynasty in the future,, how can you cry!” The great man struggled to clean his boy's tears “Bu, father miss mother. Father want to accompany your mother! I am sorry to have left you behind!”

“I do not want that, father! I also want to go with mother! I also want to accompany father go with mother!” This day was possibly in his whole life, where he cried the most.

“No, Bu, my son. You must promise father. You must survive. Live on. You cannot accompany father and mother, cannot!” That man shook his head “Do you see that knife? When father falls asleep, cut father's meat gently, they can make you survive, can make you live on through famine this year!”

Cut father's flesh with knife? He did not understand at all, but his subconscious rejected his father's wish.

“After you finished eating, please bury father and mother together. Live well, okay? That is your father biggest desire. Bu, my son. I am sorry! Father cannot look after you again. My wife Yi, I come to your side now!” With that words, the great man closed his eye forever.

“Father, oh father!” Father has fallen asleep, mother has also fallen asleep, in this world only remain he, the last of his surname.

That thin and small stature dragged that man's body from that tattered family room toward behind home where his mother rest, where his father and he covered his mother with quilt made of earth. He still remembers father's last words that father must rest with mother in the same place.

He do not have tool to dig the earth, therefore he can only dig earth with his father's knife that is in the house. But he do not want to use that knife, so he use his thin little hand to dig up the earth, bit by bit, breaking the soil up, until his fingernails are broken, until his hands also lost its energy, until his mother reappeared from the earth quilt.

When he saw her mother, he is really shocked, stunned for a long time.

The mother who was buried not long ago, besides her head intact, the other places are mutilated here and there. Her thigh and arm no longer have any flesh, the only remaining is only her bones.

That is the moment that he understood all of them, understood the meaning of his father words, also understood the origins from those meat that he ate several days before.

Those fragrant bloodied raw flesh is from his mother, whose father shear little by little from his mother. He understood completely why his father prefer to starve to death rather than eat that flesh.

“Oh, father!” lowering his head. Confusion ambushed his physical

strength.

Finally famine had ended, invaders also left and he survived. Then he left the house which he have buried two people's bones who now embracing forever beneath the earth to serve at Ding Yuan.

Chapter 76 – First Aid in Three Kingdom's Era (1)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

"The fault not lies with them, but the fault lies with the current times of this world?!" Liu Mang appears to understand but he really did not comprehend anything at all. What Lu Bu said kept ringing in his head: "During chaos times, people eat people? Is at those times, people fierceness cannot be compared with tiger's fierceness? If the tiger does not eat people, then what does it eat? Is it changed its diet to vegetable??? If men do not kill tiger, then what do they eat at that time?"

The group then left the cave, Lu Bu did not bring that tigress corpse with him to make medicine for Liu Mang and Lu Bu did not even propose what to do about those two little tigers. Those He sisters already carry those cubs in their bosom.

Those five male servants were also buried properly by Lu Bu army. Although they are victimized by the tiger, they still cannot let their bodies decompose in wilderness, it is not proper.

"Hey, Hanyang. What is your next plan for these two He sisters?!" Suddenly Lu Bu asked a very strange question.

"My next plan? Once we arrive at Wancheng city, I will certainly take them to their home!" Liu Mang is looking at Lu Bu strangely. After saving people, it is natural to escort them safely to their home. Otherwise, these two homely girl who did not have any bodyguards now will be just like the proverb, escaping tiger's claw only to enter wolf's den, especially in this chaos times.

"Realllyyyy…. Escort them go home?!" Lu Bu give faint smile at Liu Mang

“you willing to do that???”

“What do you mean by willing?!” Liu Mang really do not understand Lu Bu’s question.

“Hahaha, that is good then. I am giving you the responsibility to escort those two sisters home! Gao Shun, we go back to camp!” Lu Bu smiled when looking at confused Liu Mang, and he suddenly hit his horse and return to the camp with Gao Shun.

“Really weird!!!” Said Liu Mang while shaking his head and puzzled at Lu Bu’s question.

“AGH!” That scream come from behind Liu Mang, exactly from one of those girls who now each riding a warhorse.

“What happened?!” Asked Liu Mang who immediately turned his head.

“Big sister, it bite me!” Said the younger sister He Yue while pointing toward the golden little tiger.

“Really bite you?!” He Yu then sees her younger sister to comfort her, but where it is like biting?

“How it can bite you, huh, lady boss??? Think about it, it is still a small tiger, just a newborn, it did not have long tooth yet, how can it bite you?? With its lip, huh?!” Liu Mang already have a really bad impression on the younger sister, so naturally he will speak in bad tone to her.

“It bite me!” Said He Yue again. Usually He Yue will just shot back at Liu Mang but now she is blushing and have complex expression

“Gimme that guy!” Liu Mang took that small tiger from He Yue. “You see now eh? it is still small, still young. It still cannot eat solid food, let alone bite you!” Then Liu Mang become confused again “Strange, how did it not bite me just now?! Why did it only to bite you, heh?” Said Liu Mang who decide to carry the little tiger by himself now, back to the main camp.

“You, you!” He Yue was rendered speechless by Liu Mang.

Cheng Yu actually quite understand what happened, he pointed at the cub and said “General, this is maybe very awkward, but it is possible that this cub nipped her…” Said Cheng Yu while pointing to his breast.

“How was that possible, it still do not have any tooth!”Said Liu Mang while holding the cub. Suddenly he also felt that his chest was scratched by little paw and then he sees that the kid trying to dig up his chest with its paw, while its small mouth seeking nipple. It is starving and want to drink milk, and because he has armor that kid just seeking nipple everywhere.

But it is different regarding both sisters, below that white silk clothes there are tits and they are not covered by armor. No No No, the more polite words is bosom.

“Cough!” Liu Mang hurriedly cough two times to interrupt his train of thoughts, but his eye, once staring at that place, his gaze is fixated at

that place. Also because of those tiger cubs, those two sisters'silk clothes are torn a little, and from that gap, one can see a very pure, jade-like white skin.

Big sister He Yu also understood and now are very awkward because Liu Mang's eyes are just rolling between him and her younger sister. She also know that the tiger cub was possibly attracted by her sister's bosom, but she cannot say directly as they are girls, naturally will be shy by it and also it is against this era's etiquette.

"General, are you there, General?!" He Yue calling Liu Mang several times until Liu Mang awakens from his daydream.

"Sorry, I am really sorry!" Liu Mang also know that he just being rude to those girls, he shook his head fiercely. "Damn, the reason that I am drooling over them is because I am lonely so long time, how I cannot avert my eyes from them?! Those silky white skin, those great figures!!!" And also recently he also has changed, because not only he become much more bloodthirsty but also his idea of woman changed. Originally whenever he see beautiful woman, it is just for his enjoyment only. But now, whenever he see beautiful girl, he have the urge to rip open those clothes on impulse.

After Liu Mang eyes finally averted his gaze, suddenly He Yu scream loudly in pain. What the hell is wrong? Is that little yellow tiger also want to drink milk?

Liu Mang guessed right, those two kids already hungry for a long time, their mother went to look for food, but it died in Lu Bu's hand, therefore these two cubs not yet eat.

But He Yu's scream is not because the cub nipped her bosom, but it is a very painful scream.

Above her chest, there is a long and bloody wound exposed (it is located around the 1/3 upper part of major pectoralis to almost the shoulder). This wound was caused by the big tiger pursuit. At that time, He Yu's wound's cause is punctured by tree branch, the branch is small but sharp, half of it was stuck in He Yu's wound. But because she did not have time at all, she just pulled it out carelessly, further opening up that wound. That wound was also dressed randomly because at that time is very critical. From the outside, one can see the leftover of that wooden branch.

Wound that was not treated well will leave a scar, that can be split open any time. At that time, when big tiger's pursuit, she cannot felt anything because of the adrenaline, but now when everything has settled, that wound was opened again by that tiger cub pressing.

"Big sister, how are you?!" He Yue is really alarmed when she saw those blood, because even though Qiao Yu covered her eyes, she also saw their servants bitten to death by tiger.

But currently that big wound now have blood flowing from it, how can she not startled?

"I am okay, I am okay!" Said He Yu while patting He Yue's shoulder comforting her. But that pale face could not cover up her condition.

"What all right?! This wound is really bad, one more centimeter deep, I

could see your bone!" Liu Mang frowned while looking at He Yu's wound. Perhaps this kind of wound is considered a minor injury in army but if this appeared on a girl, it is a heavy loss on her.

Let alone possibility that this wound might festering, anyone who see this big wound will definitely said "This is gonna leave a scar" Hell man, a scar this big on a girl, it is a complete disaster for the girl.

Moreover the wound is still bleeding. He Yu's previous random dressing not only cannot suppress her wound from opening again, instead it made the wound bleeding again. If it kept bleeding, then her life is unsaveable.

"No, No. Please, General!!! Please save my big sister!" He Yue already lost her haughty aura and start begging at Liu Mang.

"Cheng Yu, order the army doctor to help her dress her wound at once!" As long as the doctor cleans up the branch-punctured wound slowly, removed the fragments of the branches that is hard to remove, bandaging the wound with clean cloth, then it is okay already. As for infection, the doctor can provide vulnerary on her wound.

"General, about that...!"

"What is it?! What is the problem?!" Liu Mang looks at Cheng Yu. This injury is still in good point for dressing.

Cheng Yu smiles awkwardly and said "General, I forgot to bring the army doctor!" Liu Mang then see those who are following Cheng Yu are all cavalry soldiers, definitely no one knows of basic medical knowledge.

Cheng Yu himself does not understand on how to dress up wound. Each time he goes to battle, he had help from others to dress up his wound.

"Ck" Liu Mang brow wrinkled again. From here to main camp, the distance is quite far and Liu Mang came to this forest especially to train his archery skill.

"I am okay!" On He Yu's pale face there is a smile, this smile is for her younger sister so she do not have to be worried about anything.

The wound on He Yu's chest was reopened by that tiger cub, blood kept flowing from the wound. The way from here to main camp is way too much bumpy, it could make the wound bleeding much faster and she would likely be in shock before reaching the main camp, and in addition, this ancient age still do not know about blood transfusion technique.

If making He Yu wait here for the doctor to come, this is also infeasible, because night will come soon and the forest cold air is really damn cold, if waiting here again, she could catch a fever and maybe infecting the wound.

"No matter what, I must dress her wound right here and bandage her!" Said Liu Mang. But he is very awkward now, because he is the only one here who have medical knowledge, doing basic first aid and bandaging in university. If He Yu are male, then Liu Mang would have helped him bandaged already, but He Yu is lady, there are a lot of inconvenience, not to mention her wound location is slightly above her bosom, so it is making much more inconvenience.

“I will make those sisters decide whether to bandage or not” Thought Liu Mang and then said to them “Your wound must be bandaged now. If we carry you to the main camp definitely not enough time, because your wound kept bleeding. If left alone, you will be in shock in no time!”

“In shock?!” Both sisters do not understand the medical terminology called in shock.

“Simply put, bleed to death!” Answered Liu Mang.

“Ahh!” He Yue was scared by Liu Mang’s explanation.

“Our army doctor did not come together with the cavalry unit, so I can only give you dressing your wound and bandage it, but the decision for that remains at yours!”

“Can’t my younger sister help me dress and bandage my wound?!” Said He Yu. Although all the time, she always said to He Yue that she is OK, but she now felt the dizziness from blood loss, and also her consciousness blurred already and now she must let this stranger touch her body? Chastity is the utmost importance in this age, it is an impossible request, but again….

“Yes, she can!” Liu Mang nodded “But, can she do it?” Liu Mang then asked back. Everyone can do dressing and bandaging, but the technique is different. A person who knew basic first aid can stop the bleeding with dressing wound and bandaging it, if that person who do not know how to dress the wound will only make the wound bleeding again, such as He Yu’s random bandaging before.

“But, but…!” He Yu also know that her younger sister do not understand about medical knowledge, but making this stranger touch her body. This is against all that she learnt during her childhood, being in a well-educated family making He Yu reluctant to accept.

Liu Mang also know why He Yu is hard to make decision and then he added “Oh right, I forgot to tell you! Our army doctors are all male!” The ancient warfare is not like modern warfare where female can join as a soldier. In ancient warfare, women are very rare in army camp. Only those with prowess like Sun Shang Xiang and Lu Lingqi can form women soldiers unit and whose strength can be compared to men.

Therefore there is no doubt in Liu Mang division or in entire Lu Bu army, all army doctors are male.

“Big sister, what about you then?!” On the edge, He Yue’s face is very worried about her big sister. If her wound do not get proper treatment, she can anytime goes into shock. They are very close since childhood like twins, therefore their affection run deeply.

“Okay then, you help me dress and bandage my wound!” Seeing her sister’s concern as well as her own pain and her own physics start weakening, He Yu bit her teeth. She did not have a choice already, she cannot be dead because of the wound while she herself escaped from tiger’s jaws.

Chapter 76 – First Aid in Three Kingdom's Era (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon

“Cheng Yu, you cut a piece of clean cloth and bring me some clean water!” Said Liu Mang toward Cheng Yu. Right now he do not have any emergency medic kit, let alone Betadine to sterilize the wound, he also have no alcohol right now. So he can only use clear water to clean up the wound and re-bandage her wound with clean cloth.

“Yes sir!” Cheng Yu nodded and quickly tore up a piece of cloth and quickly scoop up clear water with his helmet.

The water is actually really crystal clear, maybe Cheng Yu took it from mountain spring water. Huainan’s river and spring water, one can drink directly at this time. But that cloth, Liu Mang frowned again, is that a clean cloth? Although it is indeed white cloth, but now it is already become black with dirt. Only those who wear it, can know that this is originally a white cloth.

Hey, even if this cloth was used to wipe your ass after shitting, that white cloth cannot become this much dirty!!! Bandaging the wound with this rag? It will get infection immediately.

“Cheng Yu, change another cloth!” Liu Mang threw away that dirty rag.

“Yes!!!” Cheng Yu then hand over another piece of cloth. This time it is much better than before, but still not a clean cloth and also cannot be used to wipe this girl skin, let alone cleaning the wound.

“Cheng Yu, change again!” Liu Mang throw again that rag, the third

time, it is more dirtier than before. When Liu Mang want to scream to change again, Cheng Yu who already distressed, suddenly shouted.

"General, I did not have clean cloth. Those three piece of clothes are the best and the cleanest that I have ripped. If you want to me to rip again, then I will not have any clothes to put on!" Liu Mang then notices that Cheng Yu got that three piece of clothes by ripping his own sleeves. He ripped the cleanest place already, and if he ripped another piece again, he will be naked.

"It is okay, Cheng Yu! We males do not know about cleaning up!" Liu Mang also had no choice. Because earlier he fought the tiger, his cloth is more dirty than Cheng Yu. So he has no choice but to use those piece of clothes that Cheng Yu hand over.

"Please use my clothes!" Said the younger sister He Yue. Although they are dirty right now, but they are women, and if compared their hygiene with guys, they are cleaner absolutely.

"Good!" Said Liu Mang. Because the two sisters clothing are silk clothing, it can be bandage much better than those dirty rags.

Then Liu Mang received a piece of clean silk cloth from He Yue and then he said in front of those He sisters "Both of you come with me!" Then he led both sisters to go under big tree. Although he only want to help clean up the wound, but right here there are too many males. Those good girls will be uncomfortable if glared by so many men.

This big tree should conceal many people's sight.

Earlier, judging from the size of that wound, Liu Mang knows that this is no ordinary wound. Now, when he took a closer look at it, he just discovered how depth is that wound. He thought that the branch only punctured her flesh and cannot see the bone, but who knows that the wound's depth is so deep that he can see her bone now.

Although women does not have their muscle developed like men, but women also have their own muscles. Now He Yu's muscle was tear by that branch. So now at her wound; her bone, branch debrises and torn muscle are all mixed by one. Each time of her movements possible to wound her bone.

This wound! Liu Mang looks at He Yu. This kind of wound will make a man scream in pain and also whine, but He Yu only screamed twice and after that, she was silent but even can comfort her sister.

She is really a young lady that come from a noble family! Thinking that, Liu Mang's heart soften and said something in soft voice "My bandaging skill is actually not too good, possibly will cause you a lot of pain, please bear with it!"

"Um!" He Yu nodded

While Liu Mang helped to dress He Yu's wound, Cheng Yu arrived with two small tigers in hand and also with several soldiers.

"You and you, carry these two cubs and return to main camp! I permit you to go back earlier to handle these prey that I shot, let those brothers to eat first, do not wait for General to come back!" Liu Mang really treat his division as his brothers. So every time he went hunting, he will share it

with his divisions. No matter how little is bounty, he just cooked those bounties into soup and share it with his divisions, one man one bowl of soup. His divisions is very happy with this general.

Liu Mang start with cleaning up the wound. Liu Mang then carefully dropping that spring water to the wound, the water starts flushing all the dust and dirty blood.

Liu Mang kept flushing the wound until all dirty blood was flushed completely. Thank gods, He Yu's wound did not damage her aorta, if it were also damaged, then Liu Mang's effort is nothing at all.

If spring water touched ordinary skin, there is only a pleasant feeling no ache at all. But flushing through wound it is really different. Damaged cells have exposed only pain neurons. If flush by clean and cold water, then the feeling is really painful, making those who are from present really appreciate alcohol as anesthetic.

Liu Mang noticed that He Yu's lips is pale white, but she did not scream at all.

The next step then to clean up debris that is still left not flushed. After He Yu being punctured by the branch at that time, she also fell down so that is why inside her wound there are small stones, weed, grass beside branch debris. If you do not clean this up, it will absolutely become infection. This era, they have not found any antibiotics like penicillin etc, once a wound is infected, the consequence is very dear, she can go into sepsis shock any time.

"Sorry, I must pull out those debris!" Liu Mang told He Yu to prepare

her mentally. Some stone and dust were stuck in the meat and pressed and muscle and skin, those debris are impossible to flush with clean water, so Liu Mang must extend his finger to clean these fragments one by one.

Then Liu Mang's hand press the left side of the wound in order to open the gap enough big for two finger pass. That tension will possibly twofold her injury therefore Liu Mang really careful with his motion, but even so still blood flow from her wound.

"AAAAHHHHHH!" He Yue screamed again after seeing those much blood.

"SHUT UP!!!" Liu Mang scolded He Yue, because it made Liu Mang concentration break and Liu Mang can feel He Yu's shivering from pain.

When Liu Mang flushing the wound, he need two times to completely flush them out. But when clearing the debris, Liu Mang needs five times to completely clean the wound, during that period He Yu's pain really unbearable, she bit her pale lips quickly, while her head is discharging cold sweat, even Liu Mang also felt it and started to sweat like it is raining.

Because unknowingly He Yu's hands are firmly grabbing Liu Mang's thigh, letting Liu Mang very uncomfortable because this is a pretty girl who grab his thigh, something bound to happen if that place grabbed tightly.

However He Yu is wounded now, so Liu Mang also understood the circumstances.

“Phew!” Liu Mang finally can relax a bit. Cleaning up wound accomplished. Liu Mang's hand are full of blood and He Yu's face start regaining color, but the dressing has not been completed.

Liu Mang had no vulnerary now, so need to go back to main camp to receive it, so now, he can only bandage the wound with clean cloth.

But when it comes to bandaging, Liu Mang felt hesitate. This large wound must be bandaged immediately with silk cloth but it cannot directly just pasted over the wound. It must be done with binding the bandage so it covers up the wound.

This wound is above her bosom, if want to bandage her, then there is no choice, the bandaging must encircle her bosom.

That time when cleaning up her wound, it only need washing her wound, no need to take off anything. But bandaging, it is different story, it needs to take off her upper half in order to bandage and put her cloth back on.

“About this.... Tch!” These two are not related by blood. Before, when cleaning up the wound, it is fortunate that it is only a non-taboo place that was inserted by Liu Mang's fingers, but now when it comes to bandaging. This need to take off her upper half, revealing her bosom and then wrapping the bandage by circling her chest to her arm in order to complete the bandaging.

Liu Mang could see that these two girls are to be married. Why Liu Mang knew? Because there is a mark of virgin from those two girls.

TL: Mark of virgin in ancient times
http://a4.att.hudong.com/83/68/01300000165488125652689143015.jpg

Hey, do those two ladies who are to be married want a stranger to look at her important place? Don't mention the ancient time, even at modern age is impossible. In modern age, there are women doctor who can help to do bandaging. But in Liu Mang army right now, there are no female doctors, therefore they can rely on him solely.

“Forgive me! Your life is more important than mere chastity!” Liu Mang said sorry to those two sisters. Then he grabbed He Yu's hand from behind, straightened her back. And his two hand grabbed the cloth from neck to her bosom trying to rip her clothes.

“What are you doing?!” He Yu who are preoccupied with pain, cannot react anything, but He Yue is very energetic, so when she saw what Liu Mang doing, of course she shouted.

Liu Mang has disrobed He Yu's cloth, exposing her lingerie and her jade-like skin.

Liu Mang also do not stop there, he also removed that lingerie.

“LECHER, YOU LECHER!!!! WHAT ARE YOU DOING WITH MY SISTER??? I WILL RISK MY LIFE TO STOP YOU!!!” He Yue's voice is getting more louder and louder, affecting Cheng Yu's side.

“General, what is it?!” Cheng Yu wondering what happened? Although

Cheng Yu want to come to that side of the forest, but he cannot do that because Liu Mang did not say anything.

“AAAAHHHH!!!!!” He Yue again screaming “YOU DON'T COME HERE!!!! DO NOT, AAAHHHHHH!!!!! YOU COME, I WILL SCREAM FOR HELP!!!! HELP!!!! HELP!!!!!!”

“What are the general doing?!” Cheng Yu's mouth corner twitching. Does the general want to rape those two in this forest?

Chapter 78 – First Aid in Three Kingdom’s Era (End)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Liu Mang pinned He Yue's body on the ground his hand tearing into her clothes.

He Yue filled with helplessness, can only lay in fear.

“WHATEVER YOU HAVE DONE WITH BIG SISTER, I WILL REPORT IT ALL TO BROTHER YU, WE WILL SEE YOUR PUNISHMENT AFTERWARDS!” exclaimed He Yue while flinching.

“Brother Yu? Even if your grandfather came here it would also be useless!!! I AM NOT PART OF SUN CE'S ARMY!!! HOW CAN YOUR BROTHER YU POSSIBLY CONTROL ME!?”

“You can keep calling for help, but in this vicinity only my men are around. Try calling for them and see if they listen to your order or not!” Liu Mang said with disdain to the pinned down He Yue.

“Rips!” the sound of white silk tearing up, a piece of white cloth was now in Liu Mang's hand.

“I AM NOT INTERESTED IN YOU, EVEN IF I AM INTERESTED, SO WHAT? DO YOU HAVE THE ABILITY TO RESIST ME???” Liu Mang is right, if he had any evil intention those two ladies be unable to escape from his clutches.

“BE QUIET AND STAY HERE, DO NOT MAKE A NOISE OR WHINE,

OTHERWISE, I'LL RAPE YOU!!! HUMPH!" Liu Mang threated He Yue. He did not want to threaten her actually, but this lady is really annoying him. All day annoyed by this little tigress, Liu Mang could not stand it anymore. When Liu Mang ripped He Yue's clothes, it was not to rape her, but to gain a white and clean silk cloth to bandage He Yu's wound.

Hearing Liu Mang's threatening words really made He Yue's scared and obediently stay put. Liu Mang really did not have an ounce of pity in his heart.

Then he turned back to He Yu's side, her clothes already removed by Liu Mang along with her undergarments.

"Haaaahhhhhh!" Liu Mang took a deep breath to remove all distracting thoughts, because after he removed He Yu's undergarments, it reveals a jade white skin, with beautiful pair of bosom. A real beauty.

If He Yu awoke now, she would definitely choose death, rather being treated like this by Liu Mang. However because of her wound, she was deeply unconscious, therefore Liu Mang could do "whatever he wanted".

Liu Mang lifted He Yu's arm gently. One single movement from her body, made her bosom jiggle, making Liu Mang repeatedly gulp his saliva.

"Smooth and white jade-like skin, really beautiful!" A moment ago, when cleaning He Yu's wound, Liu Mang did it without touching her skin, but now when he was bandaging her, his hand made contact with He Yu's skin. It was smooth as silk, Liu Mang couldn't help but compare her and Lu Lingqi.

Under that white skin, there are almost visible green blood capillary, adding one more point of her charm.

Liu Mang suppressed her wounds with white cloth first and then he slowly lifted her delicate arms, unconsciously Liu Mang's arm touched her bosom. His heart jumped again and again, his thoughts began to wonder and started comparing their hugeness with Lu Lingqi's.

She is not as big as Lu Lingqi, but she has a different beautiful bosom.

“Bah, what am I thinking?!” Liu Mang's complexion is becoming redder and redder. Although Liu Mang come from modern age, he had only seen sexy ladies in TV like Baywatch or some porn film that was set in some island. His had not yet held a girl hand, not to mention Lu Lingqi's hand.

Although Liu Mang is vulgar, and has fantasized about island nation porn film, he only also “experience” practicing with his left hand..... a lot of times....

He was nervous touching an unconscious, severely wounded lady.

Liu Mang suffered in mind and spirit until he finally finished bandaging He Yu.

“Phew!” Liu Mang voiced his relief. With her wound bandaged bleed again, because it already started clotting. As for the scar and infection, it will depend on He Yu's luck.

“Thank you for saving my big sister!” He Yue finally opened her mouth.

To be honest she was really frightened by Liu Mang a moment ago. Thinking Liu Mang will defile her, but she did not think that Liu Mang only wanted to scare her. At that time Liu Mang tore her silk dress in order to bandage her big sister.

“I don't deserve the thanks!” Liu Mang coldly replied He Yue who a moment ago still being treated as a shameless lecher, and what’s worse? She threatened Liu Mang a lot of times again and again.

Glancing at He Yu's, he remembered that he had torn clothes, so it was hard to conceal her bosom. Moreover the weather is already dark, so cold air will come shortly.

“Wear this!” Liu Mang remove his gold cloth and threw his robe to He Yue “Use this to cover you and your sister both, it is already dark, cold air is coming.

“What about you?!” He Yue asked.

“I can manage!' Said Liu Mang. He wanted to leave return back to main camp, but suddenly he turned back after He Yue shouted

"Hey!"

“What else?!” Liu Mang was becoming impatient now, his present mood was very not good. His penis had been erect for so long, he needed to find a place to relieve himself. Otherwise he felt like it would explode at any moment.

“You, what is your name?!” He Yue asked, her face little blushed, but because was already dark, Liu Mang did not notice.

“Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang!” Liu Mang was already irritated, so he responded rudely to He Yue. In Liu Mang's eyes her He Yu was very ladylike, her level ascended to goddess status for him. But He Yue on the other hand, although she was already 16, her behavior was like a kid who is throwing tantrum. On top of everything that occurred Liu Mang found this very irritating and wanted to scream out loud.

Although Liu Mang already dressed He Yu's wound, walking on the mountain road was very difficult. It was filled with bumps, and rocks, he was afraid that He Yu’s wound would open again.

Therefore Liu Mang ordered Cheng Yu to cut down two trees to make a simple stretcher using He Yue's gown.

Because of the wounded their traveling speed severely decreased. They arrived at the main camp when moon is already high on their head (possible around 8 – 9 PM)

At the main camp, the prey that Liu Mang had killed already been processed, but because Liu Mang not comeback, his Urban Army forces had not eaten yet. They are waiting for Liu Mang to the share meal.

“Next time, do not need to wait for me. Eat on time!!” Liu Mang brow wrinkled again. He is touched because they were waiting for Liu Mang to eat together but this is a bad practice, so Liu Mang will have to revise it.

A whole day's march, everybody was tired. To top it off they had not yet eaten any food, how would they have any strength to fight if there was a night raid? Moreover late night meals will be harder to digest and will affect their rest.

"Yes!" Cheng Yu nodded.

Liu Mang had already assigned most of his prey to his divisions. He kept and sent his wild chicken leg to army doctor to make chicken soup for He sisters to eat. Military provisions really unpalatable, they said it was edible, but it was a mix of barley, flour and rice husk! These three mixed together then became the so called "edible" rations. Its taste was not that different than hard bread, sometimes they added cockroach and insect to spice up the menu.

But this kind of meal, was already good for that of soldier, because at least these rations can make them survive a bit longer. In this age, what is the reason one become soldier? It is not to protect one's home or defend ones country. It also not for bestowing title and leaving inheritance to their descendants, but it is to eat until your belly is full!

In this time of chaos, one only became a soldier if they wanted to eat to their hearts content.

However, these fine gentlemen did not become a soldier of their own volition, but because of their situation. So if one soldier died in war, there is always a replacement for them, because in this age everyone wanted to eat until they dropped dead.

90% of the Generals from ancient times came from a noble family. Poor

people normally do not become generals, but a single general led an army of 10 thousand soldiers. So all the soldiers most likely came from poor families. Only 1 out of 10 generals came from poor families.

After Lu Mang finished eating he ordered his soldiers to build a cage for the two tigers cubs. Liu Mang then returned to his own tent and because of the built up exhaustion he fell asleep almost immediately.

Today he fought tiger, did first aid, and successfully repelled the ravenous urges of a virgin. He was exhausted both physically and mentally.

While Liu Mang slept, he do not know that the two girls he rescued today were thinking about him with full curiosity “What kind of a person is he?!”

Chapter 79 – Reaching Wancheng City

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Although they ran into a tiger yesterday, it do not hinder the armies marching speed the next day. Lu Bu also knows that Liu Mang is tired because if yesterday's tiger fight, therefore he ordered that his unit to set out at a later time.

Liu Mang rested until noon before he finally woke up. Fortunately there was Cheng Yu who acted as his Lieutenant General to manage his Urban Army, so when Liu Mang woke up, they were already set to march.

Before marching, Liu Mang visited the He sister's tent again, mainly to look if He Yu's wound became infected.

Her wound had not yet healed completely, so she was still lying on the stretcher.

Seeing Liu Mang come into the tent, He Yue quickly become very obedient but at the same time her always-calm big sister showed a hint of panic not only because of her excessive bleeding but because her face started to get hot, with blush of red.

She learned from her younger sister that the man in front of her, bandaged her body by tearing her silk clothes and disrobed her undergarments.

"Have you gotten better?" Liu Mang did not know that his own arrival made He Yu very awkward, so he just asked it casually.

“Um... We, He sisters would like to thank General Liu for your graciousness in saving our life!” He Yu was not being sarcastic when she said her thanks, Liu Mang really saved them not only from tiger but also by dressing her wound, so saying graciousness for saving their life was proper.

"Words of gratitude are not needed! “When Liu Mang thought about what had happened, the truth was him saving them was only because the warhorse became startled and ran up to in front of tiger, then afterwards he took advantage of her when he was applying first aid.

From He Yu’s facial color, she did not have any infection, otherwise her face would be flushed because of a high fever.

“That bandage needs to be changed with a clean cloth and applied with medicine on it!” Yesterday because he did not bring any vulnerary, he could only clean her wound and carry her back to the main camp. Now that they are at the main camp, he can treat her wound with medicine.

“You also need to replace the bandage?!" Because of yesterday's events, awkwardness has taken effect. She was really embarrassed just looking at Liu Mang. Now he must change her bandage?

“Un! That silk bandage is becoming unclean right now! So I need to change the bandage!” That wound was wrapped up a for a long time without medicine, so we need to ventilate the wound by changing it with a new bandage.

“Can we just do not change the bandage?!” asked He Yu because she was already feeling better.

“Change it or not it is your choice, but if your wound worsens, please do not blame me!”

Actually the bandage that Liu Mang did can be maintained for up to three days, but what Liu Mang needed to do is apply medicine. Applying vulnerary can accelerate the healing process and possibly prevent a scar from forming.

“Big sister, please change your bandage!” While He Yu hesitated, unexpectedly He Yue supported Liu Mang’s words.

“But! “He Yu really do not want to do this again, because bandaging would require her to take off her upper half. This good educated girl is really ashamed to expose herself before others.

“Big sister, have you forgotten our home’s steward son? Steward Zhang’s son?!” Said He Yue.

“Steward Zhang’s son?!” The beautiful face of He Yu suddenly got bleak. Steward Zhang’s son died because of a small scratch wound that was left untreated. It got infected and took that young man’s life.

He Yu’s eyes looking at both Liu Mang and He Yue’s earnestly. Biting her teeth She thought, “I have been seen once already, what is the matter if I'm twice or thrice?!”

“Please pardon me for troubling General Liu!”

This time, He Yu is fully conscious, therefore Liu Mang cannot treat her like last time, so he needed to be extra careful now. He disrobed her to remove the bandage, then sprinkled vulnerary powder and re-bandage her using He Yue’s silk cloth, which has been put in boiling water, to wrap her.

Because now He Yu is fully conscious, she is really shy is hugging her bosom in order to avoid Liu Mang’s vision, but this kind of action actually made her more alluring.

“Medicine has been applied! Now, my division must march, so I will send my soldiers to escort both of you until Shucheng County!” Said Liu Mang to those He sisters.

Since both of them are certainly a family of Sun Ce’s senior generals, putting them in Shucheng County will definitely be okay as there will be people looking for them.

“Thank you very much, general!”

Cheng Yu sent out a cavalry squad to escort those two ladies to Shucheng County. As the Urban Army began march the silhouette of the escort unit disappeared over the horizon.

After crossing Shucheng County territory is Shi ting region. This place is a very strategic location. It is located in-between Jiangdong and Lujiang district. If one wanted to enter Lujiang, they must first pass through Shi

ting and if one wanted to enter Jiangdong, they also first pass Shi ting. If Sun Ce’s army did not allow Lu Bu's army to pass Shi ting, the casualty suffered by Lu Bu's Army will rise up to 50%.

TL: Dynasty Warriors and ROTK players might recognize it as Yiling from Battle of Yiling.

From Battle of Shi ting, one can see, why it is a very important place.

But because of Sun Ce’s order to let them pass, Lu Bu's army passed Shi ting without any problems. Lu Bu's army did not fear battle, but they did not want to fight an unnecessary battle.

As Lu Bu’s army was passing through Shi ting, the complexion of the stationed soldiers was very grim. Although Sun Ce had ordered them to let Lu Bu’s army pass, they were all still very anxious and were in full alert. Until Lu Bu’s army has fully crossed Shi ting can they breathe in relief.

“All army, rapid advance. In front of us is Wancheng city, they have prepared hot food and good tent for us!” Sun Ce’s army sent out guide to tell Lu Bu that they have prepared everything in Wancheng city, therefore Lu Bu just simply ordered his army to rapidly advance to rest in Wancheng city.

If Sun Ce really kept his promise to entertain Lu Bu army then it is good, but if he dares cheat him, then Wancheng city will know the fear of the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry!

Wancheng city, when at the time of spring and autumn period, is

located at Qianshan County and is Anhui region capital. During Han Dynasty, Wancheng city was no longer the capital of Anhui region and instead its location became Lujiang Prefecture capital, its affiliation changed from Anhui to Lujiang, but Wancheng city is still a capital. This decision came from Lujiang's Prefect called Lu Kang who wanted to distance the city from the chaos of war, se he moved Lujiang Prefecture's governance body to Wancheng city.

Hearing the name Lu Kang perhaps a lot of people did not recognize him, but Lu Xun will definitely know, because Lu Xun is Lu Kang's second cousin grandson. Lu Xun had been studying Lu Kang's books for many years and become adept because those books.

Afterward when Yuan Shu had interest in Lujiang, he sent Sun Ce to attack Lu Kang. When the city fell, Lu Kang died of illness. At that moment the Lu clan was thought to have perished until Lu Xun's emergence. The big loss of Lu clan by Sun Ce can only be restored if Lu Xun can become Wu's Grand Commander.

After Sun Ce took over Wancheng city, he presented it to Yuan Shu as a tribute to him. Then Yuan Shu asked one of his subordinate to become Lujiang's Prefecture. After Yuan Shu lost, Liu Xun then occupied Lujiang, who later lost Sun Ce. After losing, Liu Xun and his family went Old Cao and sought protection. So now, Wancheng city is Sun Ce's to govern.

With Wancheng city serving as the bridgehead, Sun Ce can attack Central Plains from one side and can retreat and defend Jiangdong region on the other. Because of its strategic position, naturally this place is where 4 major battles have happened like Xu Province, the first one is when Sun Ce attack Lujiang Prefecture under Yuan Shu's order, the second one is when Huang Zu's battle with Sun Ce, the third one is when Liu Xun took over Lujiang Prefecture and the fourth one when Sun Ce

attacked Liu Xun of Lujiang Prefecture again in order to take control of Wancheng city. This Lujiang is a gate to attack three factions. One is Huang Zu of Jiangxia, Sun clan of Jiangdong and Old Cao's Yu Province. But Old Cao is currently preoccupied with Battle of Guandu.

"This Sun Ce really has skill!" In Shucheng County, one can see its liveliness but compared to Wancheng city, Shucheng County can be considered deserted. One can see many caravan goes in and goes out from the city, plus these caravans do not fear Lu Bu army. Is it because of their confidence in Sun Ce's army?

"My lord, this is not Sun Ce's work but Liu Xun's!" Said Chen Gong. "This Liu Xun, although he do not have a skill to be warlord but he is very skilled in administration, also when he was the prefecture lord, Lujiang is very prosperous!" Moreover the owner before Liu Xun was Lu Kang who was also a very capable person.

"Regardless to say. This Sun ce is much stronger than his father!" After Sun Jian died, he left Sun Ce with several veterans like Huang Gai, Cheng Pu and Han Dang. Those several veterans refused to accept Sun Ce, because he allowed himself to be an ordinary soldier under Yuan Shu.

When Imperial Seal granted him with 3,000 soldiers, those veterans were also did not have any confidence in Sun Ce. Only when Sun Ce using those 3,000 soldiers conquered Jiangdong and Lujiang, their eyes opened and confided in him wholeheartedly.

Lu Bu and Chen Gong's conversation stopped suddenly because there was a messenger from Sun Ce's army, greeting them.

“Announcing to Marquis of Wen, my lord has come out to greet Marquis of Wen personally!” Said Sun Ce's messenger while bowing down.

“Your lord has come to greet me personally?!” Lu Bu stunned was for a moment. Although Sun Ce's titles, General Who Exterminates Rebels and Hueiji's Administrator, cannot be compared to Lu Bu's own, Governor of Xu Province and General Who Pacifies the East. Sun Ce has a home base. He has pacified Jiangdong, and in terms of strength, he is also very good compared to Lu Bu.

But now Sun Ce unexpectedly comes out to greet him personally, making Lu Bu more curious as to what his intentions are.

From here to Wancheng is still 50-li, while the army is still doing its rapid advance, Lu Bu led Chen Gong and Liu Mang, to greet Sun Ce first.

“Is the person in front, Honorable Marquis of Wen, Lu Bu, and Lu Fengxian?!” Sun Ce side opened conversation first.

“Indeed I am Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian!” Lu Bu also returned Sun Ce's greetings. Only in Lu Bu's side there were only three people. They are confident because their army is in vicinity but Sun Ce and another person were the only ones to come out. It can be said that either this Sun Ce is very courageous or reckless, or he was not afraid that Lu Bu can kidnap Sun Ce and use him as a leverage to obtain his bases directly!

“HYAA!” That general taps his horse with his feet. Sun Ce he was not wearing war helmet at all. At his hand, a very long spear. He is also dressed in a purple armor made of metal with the same design as Lu Bu's

original armor and riding a maroon-colored warhorse he said “I have been hearing about Marquis of Wen's great name, today I can finally meet the person in flesh! I Sun Ce, Sun Bofu, welcome you, Marquis of Wen to Wancheng city!”

“This...!” Chen Gong and Lu Bu's vision interlocked with each other. His appearance and with maroon-colored warhorse, if one did not see his face, he looked like a replica of Lu Bu. But now that Lu Bu is using Poseidon's gold cloth his image has changed greatly.

Two Lu Bu? One big and one small, hehehe.

“Ha Ha, son of Sun Jian, the tiger of Jiangdong, you are very good!” Lu Bu hardly gave praise to someone but now he gave it to Sun Ce because he has acknowledged him. Only people of Cao Cao’s caliber have received Lu Bu's praise. “Father?!” When Lu Bu mentioned Sun Jian, Sun Ce's eyes suddenly looked very gloomy but his eyes restored immediately.

“Marquis of Wen is flattering us too much!” Said the young scholar who is riding a warhorse beside Sun Ce.

“This is?!” Chen Gong also opened his mouth.

“Oh, I am sorry, I forgot to introduce you to Marquis of Wen. This is my younger brother Zhou Yu, Zhou Gongjin!” Sun Ce did not say what position Zhou Yu has in his army, but directly said that Zhou Yu is his younger brother, thus one can see how important Zhou Yu is to Sun Ce.

“Zhou Yu?!” Said Chen Gong while observing that young scholar.

“Is he the handsome Zhou Yu?!” Liu Mang also admires him. Zhou Yu, can only be described with one word GaoFuShuai (tall, rich and handsome). He is also skilled in both civil administration and military matters. His wife is also a top-notch beauty, Xiao Qiao, who made everybody envy him. If that Zhuge Liang did not exist, Zhou Yu can be said to be the winner in battle of wits. What a pity, he died due to Zhuge Liang's ploy.

“This gentleman should be Mr. Chen Gongtai!” With Chen Gong strategies, Lu Bu can make a difference, he can make people fear them. So, considering Chen Gong as Lu Bu's top advisers is not overrated. “Zhou Yu, as the younger generation, paying respects to Mr. Chen Gongtai!” On knowledge, Zhou Yu know that he cannot match Chen Gong. Confucian traditions dictates that one must be respectful to one’s teacher, and since they are not confronting each other, Zhou Yu knows that he must be courteous with Chen Gong.

“There is no need to be so polite, one shouldn’t be too courteous?!” Chen Gong declined with a smile and he immediately glanced at Liu Mang. His glance is saying “Hey look, this Sun Ce and Zhou Yu is so respectful to me, why cannot you be more polite with me?!”

"Yeah, right" Replied Liu Mang through his body signs, while curling his lip.

“This person must be His Royal Highness Prince of Shu!” Sun Ce and Zhou Yu also noticed Liu Mang. Heh, Prince of Shu title. In this time, this only can be treated as a joke. Those four provinces are still in other people's hands: Yi Province is still in Liu Zhang's hand, Jing Province in Liu Biao, Yu Province is in Liu Pi, Yuan Shao and Liu Bei's hand and Yang

Province is master less due to Yuan Shu leaving Shouchun, while Lu Bu’s army still did not have a home base, so Liu Mang's title is a joke and worthless.

However Zhou Yu and Sun Ce actually gave full respect, even kneeling in front of Liu Mang, out of etiquette.

“Please stand both of you, you are too kind!” This is Liu Mang's first praise from an outsider.

With both sides complimenting each other, Lu Bu’s and Sun Ce army got off to a good start.

Chapter 80 – War of Words

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Zhang Liao, Gao Shun and Chen Deng were ordered to stay behind by Lu Bu. Although in case something happened, they were ordered to be on full alert. Chen Gong could rely on Zhang Liao's assistance as secondary commander-in-chief when that time comes.

Sun Ce and Zhou Yu led Lu Bu, Chen Gong and Liu Mang to enter Wancheng city's administration office. Inside the building, Sun Ce's army was very busy because of his orders to treat Lu Bu and Co as honorable guests. When they were seated Sun Ce deliberately put his seat below Lu Bu to further emphasize Lu Bu as an honored guest. This overtly gesture, made all of Sun Ce's civil and military retainers very unhappy.

After a few small talks, the banquet finally began.

Sun Ce really didn't pull any punches when he threw the banquet. From beautiful dancers to good food and good wine, one can say that this is the best banquet they've attended since Liu Mang followed Lu Bu.

Liquor was also served in three rounds. Lu Bu was really satisfied with how Sun Ce entertained him.

"Marquis of Wen's strength is unmatched in this world, and your army is the pinnacle of military forces. Our army cannot hope to match your prowess, those achievements that you achieved, really made me admire Marquis of Wen greatly!" Sun Ce had long since admired Lu Bu's prowess, so he set Lu Bu as his goal. Who else could have pinned down those

eighteen warlords at Hulao Gate, throwing them into disorder and plucking their generals heads as if they are paddy stalks?

Lu Bu's strength has could only be described as super class, and he broke one step further to reach the pinnacle of super class! Ahhhh, Sun Ce is very envious with Lu Bu. His strength also has reached super-class but he is far from reaching pinnacle of super-class. Therefore Lu Bu's strength is really to be respected.

"Um!" Lu Bu nodded "You are also very good, Sun Ce, Sun Bofu, Jiangdong's Little Conqueror. Still young, but your strength has entered super-class!" Lu Bu also admired Sun Ce to a certain degree, because if his strength was no good, how could he possibly be Sun Ce the Little Conqueror? So his strength was definitely not small.

Also because Lu Bu at Sun Ce's age, still do not have any home base compared to Sun Ce who has pacified Jiangdong which is his home base.

"Your strength is just like your fathers, in fact you are stronger than him slightly!" Lu Bu also admired Sun Jian. It can be said that he is the one that made Dong Zhuo restless day and night, because he is the only one who managed to defeat Dong Zhuo's Western Liang Cavalry in DIRECT confrontation.

TL: I want to change Western Liang to Xiliang, because it is cooler to said Xiliang rather than said Western Liang.

The familiarity in their speech had risen to a new level. It was as if they were an uncle and a nephew. Because of that familiarity, if anyone saw this they would have certainly thought they were related. Only those who followed Sun Ce from the very beginning, knew that these two were

complete strangers.

"In Marquis of Wen's opinion, what kind of man is my father?!" Everyone in this nation knows about Sun Jian's insatiable greed and delusions. In his eyes, once he got the Imperial Seal, he could rule this nation, but who knew he was to be eaten by his own oath to those 18 warlords and die a dogs death? But for whatever the reason, Sun Jian is still a very big figure in Sun Ce's eyes.

TL: Sun Jian found the Imperial Seal in the well after Luo Yang was burned to the ground by Dong Zhuo. But when he was inquired by Yuan Shao and 17 warlords, he denied and he swore to heavens "If I possess Imperial Seal, may my death will be a violent death" aka died like a dog. So, you can say, he was eaten by his own oath.

"Your father, eh?!" Lu Bu drank another glass of wine. Lu Bu thought "Should I say that, Sun Jian is a patriot? He indeed defeated Dong Zhuo and liberated Luo Yang, but at the same time, he also possessed the Imperial Seal, which destroyed his patriot image turned it into a usurper?!"

"Should I say that he is an ambitious and formidable character during the chaos of time? This is also wrong, because when those 18 warlords, except Cao Cao, were thinking of their own benefits whether to continue or not. Sun Jian was the one who was still thinking to continue to Chang'an and kept pressing their crusade against Dong Zhuo."

"This person is very difficult to judge. After pondering for a long time, Lu Bu finally responded with these words "Polaris has fallen!"

TL: Actually what Lu Bu said is “A star has fallen” it is a proverb, which means: A person who led a bright life like a star has died. So I use Polaris (North Star / Pole Star) as a stress in this sentence.

“Polaris has fallen!” Sun Ce chewing Lu Bu’s words carefully. The ancients are in awe regarding stars. If a person was compared to stars in the sky that means that person has been fully recognized by the other person.

Lu Bu and Sun Jian were originally enemy but now Lu Bu said “Polaris has fallen” in regard to Sun Jian, does not this mean that Lu Bu has recognized Sun Jian wholly as a worthy opponent and a person?

“Oh, father. You can rest in peace now, for your enemy also has recognized you!” Thought Sun Ce.

Because of Lu Bu’s word for Sun Jian, it made Sun Ce’s feelings surge to the top. Their familiarity goes deeper beyond of one’s uncle and one’s nephew. This is a very harmonious feeling of happiness.

With Sun Ce complimenting Lu Bu and Lu Bu accepting his compliment, both Jiangdong’s civil and military officials found this situation become unbearable, because Lu Bu did not show politeness toward their lord.

Usually when people were praised, the other will naturally said “You are too kind” and decline overpraise. But Lu Bu here, he did not decline any overpraise, he just swallowed them all up.

Regardless if those words that were spoken are or aren’t facts.

Finally a Jiangdong scholar could not tolerate any longer, he hold his glass and stood up “General Lu, as a teacher in Confucian lessons, today I, Qin Song, would like to consult a question that is been bothering my mind!”

Qin Song, courtesy name Wenbiao, is a native of Guangling. He is Sun Ce’s advisor and also one of Jiangdong noble families. His merit is ensuring Jiangdong’s stability after being pacified by Sun Ce.

TL : Qin Song https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Qin_Song

“If you want to consult, I do not dare to give you advice. Please speak frankly what is in your mind!” Lu Bu who has discovered his fault, also opened his mouth to Qin Song

True enough, Qin Song then sneered “I would like to ask General Lu one thing only. Due to your vast experience wandering in four directions, you must have known who in this nation deserved to be called a hero right? Please mention one of them!”

“Discussing heroes over wine?! Is this the same like Cao Cao and Liu Bei’s conversation?!” Liu Mang froze for a moment, and then he looked at Lu Bu’s face which showed very complex reaction, a mixture of feelings hurt and angry. He know that this is not a simple matter.

“Vast experience wandering in four-direction?!” This old bastard actually says something this degrading??? Sun Ce is a warlord, Lu Bu is also a warlord. A warlord who is someone who occupy one area, and this bastard just said Lu Bu is warlord who has a vast experience in

wandering. That old bastard just insulted Lu Bu by saying that he is a stray dog without no any place to put down his roots.

“Wenbiao put down your opinion!” Sun Ce brows wrinkled, because he did not ask Qin Song to satirize Lu Bu. “Marquis of Wen, please do not blame him!”

Insulting Boss Lu for having no domain, eh? Liu Mang also understood Qin Song's intention. It is a pity that old man Chen Gong is not here, due to other businesses that Boss Lu ordered for him to take care of. If he was here, naturally he would rebuke Qin Song's statement. With Chen Gong in the middle of his work, Lu Bu asked Zang Ba to be present as Chen Gong's standin for the banquet.

So Zang Ba also listened to that insult. As he is a combat general, he did not have any eloquence to rebuke Qin Song, so he wanted to do what was natural for him to do. Cut down the one who insulted his lord.

But, Liu Mang blocked him.

Want to start fight in Sun Ce's hall? Ha. In this hall, there are at least five of Sun Ce's generals already in state of alert, let alone those bodyguards standing outside. So, even though Liu Mang, Zang Ba and Lu Bu received an insult until it becomes unbearable, they still needed to maintain their manners. We do not want to show to others that our Lu Bu army is a bunch of barbarians’ right?

“Mr. Qin Song, Mr. Qin Wenbiao. If you asked about who is deserving to be called a hero in this chaotic time, then we must ask a hero to answer the question right?! Therefore, may I ask Mr. Qin Song, are you a hero?!”

Qin Songs question wouldn’t be met with a simply reply. If you answer that you are a hero, it means you accept Qin Song's satire. And if you say, you are not a hero, then it will reveal that you travel in four-directions just for pleasure and will reveal that you do not have big plans.

Therefore Liu Mang can only try to smooth things over with him, he asked back at that Mister, is he a hero?! If Qin Song answers yes, he is a hero, then he is truly a shameless person. Heroes are evaluated by other people not claimed by oneself. If Qin Song said no, then his topic ends here, and there was no longer any need for discussion.

What Liu Mang hadn’t thought of was that this old bastard Qin Song was a narcissist. “Boy, perhaps you should rephrase your question. You should ask, “What is a hero to me?” Then I will answer that question. A hero for me, is someone who has read all Confucius books and also understands what the sage king is saying and holds it deep his heart. Also he must have only one surname and respectful to his ancestors.”

TL: Confucius is regarded as sage king

Have only one surname? Also respectful to ones ancestors? This old man has not forgotten how to taunt.

The title which really defamed Lu Bu is a slave of three surnames which Zhang Fei shouted back at Hulao gate. Qin Song now is saying that a hero has only one surname, is this not another way to insult Lu Bu's who has the slave of three surnames title?

Liu Mang already saw Lu Bu complexion which gradually became cold, and his hand also rested at his sword hilt.

Oooohhhh, okay then! Mr. Qin Song, since you do not appreciate the chance that I have given you to rescue your face, then I will show you, how shameless you are.

Liu Mang who was also infuriated by this old bastard, actually started to praise and laugh at Qin Song and then said in his praise “I have heard so much about you Mr. Qin Song, Qin Wenbiao of Guangling, he is a very talented scholar. In the whole world, no one can match your prowess, today I really see that the rumor is true!”

“Hanyang, what are you doing?!” Zang Ba really do not understand Liu Mang. Hey, this Qin Song insulted your lord, your father-in-law, why did you Liu Hanyang not help Milord to counter-attack with a rebuke, but instead praised Qin Song.

Liu Mang did not respond to Zang Ba, but continued smiling at Qin Song.

“Oh, has this old man name become so famous?!” Qin Song really looking down at Lu Bu’s army. Lu Bu is a person whose reputation is already half destroyed, but some scholars can tolerate and see him as a great man. Such as Chen Gong, Chen Deng and even Zhou Yu. In their eyes, Lu Bu is very pleasing.

TL: He said his name as “Lao Fu” which translated as Old Man (it is a very respectful tone). Liu Mang's affectionate call to Chen Gong is Chen Old Man, but written as Lao Tou (a disrespectful tone)

However some people actually couldn’t tolerate him, especially those

moralist scholars. For example: Kong Rong. This Qin Song really is one of those characters.

“If you are studious chap and have eagerness to learn, this old man can actually teach you two a thing or two!” Qin Song touched his beard. Qin Song then thought “This Lu Bu’s army did not have any people who are intelligent enough, I insult them, still nobody reacts they are even while smiling accepting my insults!”

Smile, just smile right now! I will make you cry profusely after this.

“I have heard that Venerable Mr. Qin Song had 8 world-famous virtues. I would like to explain to you gentlemen who are here today what those are!” Liu Mang's mouth showed a big smile. Others could not see it, but Lu Bu who is sitting at the honored seat can see it clearly.

This is Qin Song's really has bad luck. Lu Bu has seen how bad Liu Mang can insult people. At Kaiyang, he insulted Cao Cao so much that his rage was fuming and he wanted to kill Liu Mang personally. Thus one can see, how profound his skill at insulting.

Chapter 81 – Qualifications for A Hero

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“The first virtue is filial piety!” Liu Mang spoke confidently “We of the Han Dynasty are taught to be filial to one’s parent and to one’s nation. Mr. Qin Song here, is the pinnacle of filial piety. Mr. Qin Song who has passed the Xiaolian examination at a very young age is truly a benefit to the people, and now has become an advisor to General Sun Ce, it is truly Our Great Han’s biggest fortune!”

[TL: Xiaolian examination system is a system proposed by Dong Zhongshu to Emperor Wu of Han to select government officials. The word stems from “孝顺親長、廉能正直” meaning being filial will result an incorruptible and upstanding person. This examination system is abolished by the time of Ming Dynasty.]

“Ha Ha Ha!” Qin Song touched his beard again. His expression did not show anything, but in his heart, he was really riding the wind, overloaded with happiness. He then said “Filial to ones parents is the basics of basic virtues, those who are parentless and less filial to foster parents are not worth mentioning!”

“CRRAACKKK!” At the seat of honor, Lu Bu’s hand made a loud cracking noise from squeezing his wine glass. When Lu Bu loosened his fingers, his hand made a mark on them. Fuck man, that is a goddamn copper wine glass.

Liu Mang’s eyes also got narrow, he paused for a moment then continued..

“The second virtue is brotherhood! Your love for your elder brother really surpasses those of regular brothers, it is as if he was your best friend! That virtue is really exemplary!” Liu Mang explained the second virtue. Qin Song you are the second child of your family, so you have an older brother. When your older brother died of illness, Qin Song you took care of your older brother’s children, making sure they were fed and had a good education.

“The third virtue is loyalty! Since General Sun Jian's time, Mr. Qin Song was already an official of the Sun Clan. After General Sun Jian passed away, when General Sun Ce lived under Yuan Shu’s mercy, Mr. Qin Song did not abandon him at all. So from this, Mr. Qin Song is indeed a loyal person!” Honestly Liu Mang also slightly admired this old man. He had served three rulers of the Sun Dynasty. When Sun Jian and Sun Ce were dead historically, he still do not leave Sun Quan and continued to serve him.

When Liu Mang explained the virtue about loyalty, Sun Ce was also touched and said “Uncle Wenbiao, these many years, it must have been very exhausting!”

“As long as I Wenbiao can continue serve the old lord and Milord. It is not exhausting at all!”

“The fourth virtue is trustworthiness. Mr. Qin Song’s words are certainly honest and sincere. A truly respectable virtue!”

“The fifth virtue is etiquette. Mr. Qin Song, who has read all of the sage king’s books, and is said to be very skilled in Zhou rites. His actions and movements all have the markings of a pre-Qin Dynasty scholar!” The ancients have always considered Zhou’s rites as the basics for all

etiquette.

TL: Confucian terms for Ceremony
http://faculty.plattsburgh.edu/kurtis.hagen/keyterms_ritual.html

“The sixth virtue is righteousness, he who puts others before him, need I say more?!”

“The seventh virtue is integrity. You do not have greed in your heart, nor do you have any egotistical desires!” We do not know whether Qin Song’s intention is to really remain pure and incorruptible or if he really treasures his reputation. But, historically, this Qin Song really did not covet even a single cent from the treasury. He only took his salary and moreover he helped to subsidize some of the budget. Probably these military provisions in Wancheng city came from Qin Song’s own pocket.

And so everyone listened attentively to Liu Mang’s summary. “So, this good teacher, this helpful friend is also a mentor. Mr. Qin Song is really a role model. Is he not our Han Dynasties greatest treasure?!” Liu Mang’s praise almost made Qin Song lose his grip on reality “So, in order to rule the country and pacify the world, one must learn from Mr. Qin Song!”

“You are too kind, you are too kind!” Praise wherever and whenever is always very comfortable. With Liu Mang’s praise, Qin Song was more reluctant to provoke Lu Bu again.

When Liu Mang quickly sat down and continued drinking his wine, a nearby scholar suddenly felt strange and stood up “please pardon my inquiry, Your Highness. Your Highness Prince of Shu only said seven virtues, what about the eighth virtue?!”

“Yes, that is right. Your Highness, what about the eighth virtue!” All of the scholars on the scene also started asking Liu Mang. Since Liu Mang praised on how Qin Song cultivated his attitude according to Confucius’ way, then there should be eight virtues.

That eighth virtue was the most important virtue. It’s to know of shame and having a sense of honor.

But Liu Mang said nothing, furthermore, when those scholars kept pressing, he just said he forgot.

Other scholars began to calm down, but only two people kept their view on Liu Mang, that was Zhou Yu and Zhang Zhao.

“Poof!” Behind Sun Ce, there was a young man standing while laughing loudly, inviting attention to himself. Seeing all people gazing at him, this young man tried to hold back his laughter, but due to the subject being too funny, even though he tried it very hard, tried and tried until his whole face turned rose red from holding down his laughter, he couldn't hold it back!

“Lu Meng?! Why do you laugh?!” Sun Ce’s brow wrinkled heavily. Just now Liu Mang was praising Qin Song, and Lu Meng laughed at his praise? This young man is really rude for laughing at Mr. Qin Song.

“Is he Lu Meng?!” Liu Mang had now seen the young man who will become Jiangdong’s viceroy in the future, who will defeat Guan Yu with his stratagems. But currently he is still a brash, unrefined young man who is currently 20 years old.

“Forgive me Milord. It is Meng’s fault for not holding back his laughter! It’s just that His Highness Prince of Shu’s words, was too funny!” Replied Lu Meng while holding his stomach.

“What words did His Highness Prince of Shu say that you found funny, huh? Presumptuous! Say it now, or I will not forgive you!” Sun Ce really scolded Lu Meng, because Lu Meng is just a young man, even younger than he is. If Qin Song provoked Lu Bu now, Sun Ce couldn't scold him directly, after all, Qin Song can be considered his uncle, but what status did Lu Meng have? Did he want to invoke Lu Bu’s army’s wrath?

Because of Lu Meng’s laugh, Qin Song had the opportunity to escape punishment, because Sun Ce was reluctant to do it. So he could only punish Lu Meng to appease Lu Bu’s army.

“AH, AH, AH!” Lu Meng just realized that he has become the scapegoat for Qin Song’s punishment. Then he said it all “Please appease yourself, Milord. I will say it, I will say it. Earlier those scholars were asking His Highness Prince of Shu about the eighth virtue right, but His Highness said he forgot.

Earlier when His Highness Prince of Shu elaborated those 7 virtues and gave examples, I, Lu Meng did not understand at all why he went to such lengths.

But I too know about eight virtues such as filial piety, ceremony, loyalty, *etc*. they are all connected together, if one did not possess all, you could say that one possessed none. But he had forgotten the eighth virtue which is to know of shame and sense of honor. Is this not another way of

calling him “Shameless SOB”??!”

TL: Liu Mang insult is like this. In Confucian tradition there are eight virtues that must be followed at all costs. 1. Filial Piety, 2. Brotherhood, 3. Loyalty, 4. Trustworthiness, 5. Etiquette, 6. Righteousness, 7. Integrity and 8. Know of shame and sense of honor. When Liu Mang elaborate those virtues of Qin Song, he deliberately left out the eighth virtue. So indirectly, he said “Qin Song, you are a shameless SOB for declaring yourself as a hero!”

“Shameless SOB?!” Those people are not idiots, they quickly realized the meaning and comprehended Lu Meng’s speech.

“Wait, wait, there’s more! His Highness Prince of Shu also added that in order to rule the country and pacify the world, one must learn from Mr. Qin Song right?”

People began gathering the logic “To cultivate oneself completely one can rule the country and pacify the world. But according to the Prince of Shu’s elaboration, Qin Song only had 7 virtues therefore, ruling the country and pacify the world, one must be shameless? But to practice the 8 virtues, one’s heart must be clear and positive and must be righteous. If according to Lu Meng’s conjecture, then when Qin Song was learning those 8 virtues, his heart was not upright and was polluted?!”

So, Liu Mang’s summary regarding Qin Song can be summed in a few words “You Old SOB, You are a very shameless lowlife who knows no shame and has zero honor!”

Qin Song’s, who modestly rejected the overpraise from Liu Mang earlier

had suddenly become a very big joke.

There were many of Jiangdong's personnel here, so they naturally could not laugh or make any noise. They actually suppressed their laughs until they become rose-red and shut their mouths to not speak.

But it is different on Liu Mang's side. Zang Ba already started laughing out loud "WAHAHAHAHAHAHAHA, Old SOB, HAHAHAHAHA, Hanyang, YOU ARE GOOD!" Even Boss Lu was also smiling.

"Hey?!" Zhou Yu shook his head. He and Zhang Zhao are the people who initially understood what Liu Mang wanted to convey, but they kept their mouths shut. They did not want to stab their elder in the back! They really had bad luck. That Lu Meng could not hold his laugh and to top it off he even goes on to explain the meaning. This Qin Song's face was just thrown into toilet full of feces.

"Rascal, Rascal!!! You, You!!!!" Earlier he was praised until he went to heaven, but now due to Lu Meng's explanation, that pride had all gone to hell. He was criticized as shameless SOB. The older people get the more they care about their reputation. Earlier he was still happy and haughty and wanted to angrily rebuke Lu Bu's reputation, who knew it would result with him turning into a very big joke.

Although the scholars right now are Jiangdong's scholars, they will probably not tell anyone immediately about this incident. But scholars are everywhere, as long as they spread out, the rumors of this incident will definitely be spread. At that time, how can Qin Song possibly show his face around people anymore?!

“Old man, old man!” Qin Song pointing at Liu Mang with killing intent. But suddenly he clutched his chest and his complexion turned blue because of anger.

“Meng, help Mr. Qin Song to get out of the hall!” Sun Ce’s complexion became really bad. His own advisor was scolded as a shameless SOB, where could he put his face as his lord?

And now Qin Song was enraged to the point that he almost fainted because of Liu Mang. If he continues to fight Liu Mang, then this Jiangdong will lose one of his most trustworthy retainer.

“Yes sir!” Behind Sun Ce, there are Lu Meng with two young people carrying Qin Song. When Lu Meng arrived in front of Liu Mang, Liu Mang winked towards Lu Meng.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu is really worthy of your reputation!” Zhou Yu always thought that it was only rumors when Liu Mang in Kaiyang insulted Cao Cao until he was so angry he wanted to vomit blood. However after seeing it now, it is definitely not false. If Qin Song was still in this hall, he would be so angry to the point of vomiting blood. So Zhou Yu quickly toasted to stabilize the situation “I would like to apologize for the incident with Mr. Wenbiao, for being impolite to the Prince of Shu. Here is one cup to you Your Highness!”

“The handsome Zhou is also very intelligent!” Liu Mang also raised one glass of liquor. Zhou Yu did not mention to Liu Mang, Qin Song’s intention for initially provoking Lu Bu. Maybe Liu Mang is not a rival in terms of stratagem, but in insulting, Zhou Yu was a thousand years too early to be match for him.

“Although Mr. Wenbiao is impolite, he actually opened up a discussion for us. Yu has little talent. So Yu would like to ask Your Highness Prince of Shu and General Who Pacified the East Lu Bu one question. In this chaotic time, may I know what kind of person has the qualifications to be called a hero?”

Thus the topic continued. Heroes are many in times of chaos, what kind of person has the qualifications to become a hero?

What is with this question? Is this a test for me? Or does Zhou Yu want to elaborate what is a hero even further?

Chapter 82 – Heroes in Your Heart

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Hero?!” Liu Mang was dazed for a moment. “What qualifications are needed to be called a hero?!” Thought Liu Mang to himself, is it the person who has the last laugh in this chaotic time? Aren’t they the only one who deserves to be called a hero?

Lu Bu did not say a word. Perhaps in Lu Bu’s mind and heart, only he himself was hero.

“Gongjin, are you not worried of being laughed at by my definition? This nation is really big, I have only been to Xu Province and Yu Province! How can I know which person is qualified to be called a hero?!” Said Liu Mang. It’s not that Liu Mang refused to speak about heroes, it is just that to him there were so many people that qualified to be a hero. That goes for Zhou Yu and all people who were here in the room right now.

“Your Highness, please speak your mind!” Replied Zhou Yu casually.

“In my view, Gongsun Zan is a hero!” Said Liu Mang. Was Liu Mang exaggerating? Gongsun Zan also known as the White horse general Gongsun Zan, was already defeated and had dead! Was Liu Mang trying to joke?!

TL: Gongsun Zan is one of 18 warlords crusading against Dong Zhuo. He was defeated by Yuan Shao when he is trying to pacify You Province. He burned himself and his family to death and as thus, regarded as a coward and dishonorable. For more information

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gongsun_Zan

"Heh, this rascal really does not know what a hero is!" Suddenly there was another middle-aged scholar sneering at Liu Mang's saying.

"Oh, may I know what this Mr.'s name is?!" Liu Mang's brow wrinkled while looking at this middle-aged scholar. Wow, today all of Jiangdong's advisors really out for blood eh?

"Your Highness, this scholar is Mr. Chen Rui, Chen Zizheng, friend of Mr. Wenbiao. Please forgive his rudeness!" Said Zhou Yu. Zhou Yu also adds that Chen Rui is also a native of Guangling and Qin Song's best friend. When Qin Song was insulted by Liu Mang, naturally he would stand for him as a best friend.

"So, In Mr. Chen Rui's opinion, did the Prince make a mistake with his words?!" Asked Liu Mang.

TL: Liu Mang showed his hierarchy now, which is higher than any people present.

"Yes, there was a mistake, you stupid boy!" Chen Rui stood up. "Humph, that Gongsun Bogui, even if he was alive now, he still would not be considered a hero. Now that is dead, and his tomb is already a mound of bones, how you can say that a dead person is a hero, huh?"

"That Gongsun Zan was a militaristic person, yes. But he did not have any plans for further advancement. After Yellow Turban Rebellion and Dong Zhuo's uprising, he occupied the northernmost part of this nation

which is Liaodong.

With 100,000 soldiers and innumerable warhorses, he led to the creation of the very first white horse cavalry called Penetrating White Horsemen of You Province, he was able to pacify all of Hebei. But he was muddleheaded and killed Liu Yu, throwing all You Province into chaos.

During his battle with Yuan Shao, initially he had a big advantage to Yuan Shao. However, due to his foolishness, he actually let Yuan Benchu to take a breath, to recuperate his forces rather than keeping pressure and annihilate Yuan Shao in one blow.

At the Battle of Longcou for example, Gongsun Zan could have won that battle if he kept pressing Yuan Shao, leaving him with no room to breathe. But what did he do? He did not use the advantage he had to press further, instead he kept maintaining his defense, being a goddamn turtle.

If that is not short-sighted, then what is? By doing that, he had dug his own grave and was later defeated in two more battles. He lost the battle of Jieqiao and as a final result, he burned himself in his home at the end Battle of Yijing!!!" Said Chen Rui with extreme confidence. He said every battle that Yuan Shao and Gongsun Zan partook with a disdainful tone toward Gongsun Zan.

"Clap, Clap, Clap!" Liu Mang applauded toward Chen Rui. "Nicely done, bravo!" Chen Rui really deserves to be one of Sun Ce's top five advisors. He can analyze Gongsun Zan thoroughly.

"How is that huh, Rascal?! How can that man be called a hero?!" Chen

Rui provoke Liu Mang again. In his view, Gongsun Zan is a trash that was not even worth mentioning.

“Oh, Does Mr. Chen Rui now understand, what makes one a hero?!” Asked Liu Mang to Chen Rui with a questionable expression on his face.

“I don't understand. Does this rascal understand?!”

“A hero can defined by many definitions.

A man who has a soaring ambition and great aspiration is a hero.

A man who possess the influence and power to take and rule the whole country is also a hero.

A man who has the ability to protect and reinforce security of Nine Provinces is also a hero.

A man whose aspiration goes far beyond Four Seas is also a hero.

A man who saves the common people from abyss and fire is also a hero.

A man who helps solve the common people's problems and uphold justice in his shoulders is also a

Hero.

These are the definitions of a hero. Am I correct in saying that, Mr. Chen Rui?!"

"Un!" Liu Mang's definition of a hero really is lot. So, even for Chen Rui it was also impossible to escape the problems.

"Gongsun Zan! No, The White horse General! Mr. Chen Rui, do any of these definitions fit The White Horse General?!" Asked Liu Mang again. Chen Rui knew it was impossible to answer negatively.

"This subject that I speak of a lot of people may not understand, but I do not speak about it thoughtlessly. I do not speak about his battles with his fellow Hans, but I speak about those beyond Great Wall. Those invaders who were pushed back by General Gongsun Zan!" Said Liu Mang to those scholars.

This place is south of Huainan. Although this was a chaotic time, they did not feel the pain of those living in frontier, those who are living near the Great Wall. Those people must withstand famine and invasion from those beyond the Great Wall.

Invasion from the outsiders can only bring the Han people sadness, pain and endless death.

But Gongsun Zan's appearance actually gave those frontier people a glimmer of hope.

Gongsun Zan used his blood and iron, and with his cavalry trampled

upon those outsiders as a warning to get out of the Central Plains.

Gongsun Zan was fond of white horses. Therefore when outsiders saw the Han army riding white horses, they withdrew immediately. This is the origin of his nickname The White Horse General.

“Defending one’s soil against outsiders, can that person not be called a hero?!” Asked Liu Mang toward Chen Rui in interrogative tone.

“Humph!” Chen Rui who could not refute Liu Mang just replied coldly “So, a dead person can also be called hero, huh?!”

“Yes, The White Horse General is dead physically, but he still lives on in the hearts of the frontier people, giving them hope. Even though this “Mr.” is still alive his feats cannot be compared to that dead man!”

Gongsun Zan has also doing some wrong things, but his presence made those outsiders liv in fear for dozens of years, giving hope to those living in the frontier. Those outsiders did not dare to take one step inside.

“You, You!!!!” Liu Mang disdainful remarks makes Chen Rui really angry.

“Mr. Chen Rui, you should not be angry. If your anger continues, it would not be good for your health!” Who Liu Mang most admired the most were those who helped to repel invaders from beyond Great Wall. Such as Wei Qing, Huo Qubing, Dong Zhuo, Gongsun Zan and his Honorable Father-in-law Lu Bu. And this scholar is being marked as worthless by Liu Mang, naturally will debate until he vomited blood.

“Damned Rascal, do you have another person, you can considered a hero?!” Gradually the atmosphere changed from Zhou Yu's question about Hero qualifications to Chen Rui and Liu Mang’s showdown.

“In my opinion, Yuan Shu, Yuan Gonglu is also a hero!” Said Liu Mang again.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA” Chen Rui burst out in laughter at Liu Mang’s answer and then said “Rascal, you are a really vain person. Not only you are defiling your Han Dynasty clan by mentioning Yuan Shu, but you are also further insulting your clan, by calling that rebellious traitor as a hero! Really a joke, A BIG JOKE!”

“Yuan Shu?!” Sun Cen and Zhou Yu were also surprised. If Gongsun Zan was declared as a hero, then everyone could understand it, because his merit as a Frontier guardian was enough for him to be called a hero. But Yuan Shu? He wanted to create two poles in this country, dividing this nation between Han Dynasty and his Zhong Dynasty. So it can be said that what he was doing is a very disgraceful.

“OHHH, Rebellious traitors?! May I ask Mr. Chen Rui, what kind of person can be called a rebellious traitor?!” Liu Mang did not refute Chen Rui immediately, he wanted to first boil this frog slowly.

“One who does not abide by the law, a person who throws away and does not protect his sovereigns’ clan is regarded as a rebellious traitors. And Yuan Gonglu went far beyond that by proclaiming himself as an emperor!”

“So, Mr. Chen Rui. What do you think, one should do when one

encounters a rebellious traitor?!" Asked Liu Mang to Chen Rui with a smile.

"One must smite them!"

"Ok then. Since Mr. Chen Rui also mentioned about ones sovereign clan. I was the younger brother of His Majesty and His Majesty himself has upon bestowed me with title Prince of Shu and General of Southern Expedition whose land consists of four provinces, Jing Province, Yu Province, Yi Province and Yang Province. Since this Lujiang is in Yu Province. WHY DO YOU, CHEN RUI, NOT KNEEL DOWN TO GREET ME?!" Suddenly Liu Mang exclaimed in angry voice. Chen Rui was an official in Wancheng city. If one followed logic, he would be considered Liu Mang's subordinate.

"YOU, YOU, YOU!!!!!" Chen Rui was made speechless by Liu Mang.

"Rebellious traitor, huh?! I would like to ask Mr. Chen Rui, which person that I will mention is a rebellious traitor?!

Cao Mengde, only a mere warlord, dares to use Emperor for his own purpose.

Yuan Shao declared himself as Grand General and actually did nothing to save Emperor from Cao Cao's clutches.

Yuan Gonglu declared himself as emperor using Imperial Seal he obtained from General Sun Ce. When the Emperor was insulted by Dong Zhuo and now by Cao Caoe, these two warlords, Liu Biao of Jing Province

and Liu Zhang of Yi Province, both of them have the title of Imperial Uncle, yet where are both of them when the Emperor needs them the most?

Even Liu Bei of Xu Province who was just bestowed as an Imperial Uncle also does not do anything to save the Emperor, let alone your lord!" Sneered Liu Mang mercilessly.

Chen Rui was really made speechless by Liu Mang. Because according to his words and logic earlier, his lord Sun Ce also can be considered as a rebellious traitor.

"In my opinion Yuan Shu is a hero, not because of what he did for the people of this country but something else. I have gone to Shouchun and Huainan! I saw starving people everywhere, and it is true that Yuan Shu deserves to die for that, but why he is a hero?

It is because I admire him for his courage, he dared to say the idea in his heart. Unlike other people, on the surface who act like a kind-hearted moralist but deep inside his heart, he acts like a lowlife prostitute! Isn't that correct, Mr. Chen Rui?!!!!"

How can Chen Rui not understand Liu Mang's indirect insult? Even though he understood it, he do not have any opportunity to refute him.

In Liu Mang's heart, a hero is not a person who has the last laugh. In his mind, a hero is a person who leaves a dazzling reputation enough to be recorded in history.

For example for Liu Biao, Cao Cao's assessment for him was that he was person who deserved less praise than he actually had, because his reputation is only for managing his own land and just become a turtle. But In the chaos times, only Jing Province remained pure land. Only in this province, one can hope to live a fulfilling life and eat as much as one can during. Couldn't he also not be considered a hero to those people living there?

Also Zhang Lu, with his Five Grains Sect. Hanzhong under his rule is also flourishing.

Every person has a hero in his heart and each mind has its own definition of a hero. Why should put this kind of discussion up for debate?!

Chapter 83 – Yuan Shu’s Testament and Legacy

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Liu Mang has just destroyed the pride from two of Sun Ce’s top advisors. Naturally Sun Ce’s army is very uncomfortable right now, so the evening banquet was finished early.

Right before leaving, Lu Bu gives Liu Mang two wedding invitations, naturally they must be present.

“April 5th?!” Liu Mang saw the time after he opened the envelope. Isn't this the day after tomorrow?! An army who was stationed outside the city is very rare, so this is the best time to purchase goods before marching again, so delaying for 1 or 2 days is harmless.

At this time, naturally they had time to attend the wedding, but Liu Mang felt that something was off with this wedding invitation. It was only for Sun Ce and Da Qiao’s wedding party?! If he do not know the historical events, Liu Mang probably wouldn't have given it a second thought, because a man and woman marrying is a very common matter.

However Liu Mang knew the history of this event. Wasn't Sun Ce and Zhou Yu supposed to have their wedding at the same time? With Sun Ce marrying Da Qiao and Zhou Yu marrying Xiao Qiao?

Liu Mang really did not understand what Zhou Yu was thinking for not holding his marriage at the same time as Sun Ce.

What Liu Mang didn't know was that Zhou Yu is currently preoccupied

with important matters, he had a big assignment at the same time of Sun Ce and Da Qiao's marriage. It was to liberate Sanjiangkou area from Liu Biao’s hand. So, Zhou Yu can only delay his marriage and let his brother marry first.

TL: Sanjiangkou, now called Three Gorges, a junction where 3 rivers met. In that place now, there is a structure called Three Gorges Dam.

Outside Wancheng city inside Lu Bu’s main tent, Liu Mang came here not because Lu Bu summoned him, but because there was an unexpected guests.

There, people were wearing white clothing similar to funeral attire.

What happened here? Who has died? Why did they put on this attire?” General Lu, I am Yuan Shu’s chief officials, Yang Hong. I pay my respects to the General who pacifies the East, Lu Bu!” The middle-aged man opened his mouth first.

Liu Mang was feeling really confused as to why Yuan Shu’s subordinates ended up in Wancheng city? Didn't his forces go to Hebei, to merge with his cousin Yuan Shao?!

While Liu Mang was still pondering, suddenly a young girl knelt down toward Lu Bu “Honorable Uncle Lu Bu, please support this young girl!”

Honorable Uncle Lu Bu? Is she Yuan Shu’s daughter? Lu Bu and Yuan Shu’s relationship aren't good but it also want considered bad, therefore that boy Yuan Yao can call Lu Bu, Honorable Uncle. Why did she want

Boss Lu to support her?

Liu Mang's head is full of questions, but he got an explanation fairly quickly.

"Honorable Rear General Yuan Shu, Yuan Gonglu has passed away!" Said Yang Hong while sobbing. His expression is filled with misery.

Yuan Shu is dead? Liu Mang was really surprised. Our Lu Bu army helped him, by taking care of Chen Lan and Lei Bo. Xu Province right now is not in Old Cao's possession so there should be no blockade right? He should have had a fast and smooth journey to Hebei, how can it be that Yuan Shu is now dead?

"Get up!" Lu Bu also sighed when he looked at this group of people. The way he shook his head was evidently saying that Lu Bu had obtained this news beforehand.

"Chen Gong Old Man, what happened here?!" At the same time, Liu Mang also inquired Chen Gong.

"Aiyah, Yuan Gonglu, how miserable you must feel!" Really, Yuan Shu's luck is pretty bad. He arrived at the same time when Old Cao wanted to destroy Big-eared Liu.

So, the entire Yan Province and Xu Province was in a state of full alert. Since Yuan Shu arrived at the same time when both armies were clashing, Xu Province army attacked Yuan Shu's army, thinking that Yuan Shu's army is Cao's Army. Cao's Army knew that this is Yuan Shu's Army but they also

mercilessly engaged Yuan Shu’s army before crushing Liu Bei’s army.

And so, before long, because of the pincer attack by Cao from the left and Liu Bei from the right, Old Yuan perished quickly.

TL: Poor Yuan Shu, historically, after Lu Bu died, he also attacked by Liu Bei and died while yearning for honeyed water after being robbed by Chen Lan and Lei Bo. And now, this novel, maybe the author portrayed a more noble death for him. He died fighting enemies, but his army was really annihilated by a pincer attack.

“Where is Yuan Yao?!” Lu Bu looking at those people, but he do not find Yuan Shu’s son Yuan Yao.

“Little lord, the little lord also died in battle in Xu Province!” Said Yang Hong while his tears kept flowing.

They couldn't survive, not because Cao's Army and Liu Bei's Army were merciless to them, but because the clothes and jewelry they wore slowed them down and made it easier for those soldiers to recognize and kill them.

Yuan Shu and Yuan Yao, this stupid father and son. Even when he suffers defeat, he still took his jewelry as a priority, wearing a lot of gold and silver accessories. Disregarding their safety over their treasure first, if they did not die, it is really God’s unfairness.

As a result only Yang Hong and Yuan Shu’s daughter, as well as several people were able to escape from there. The other people were all either

scattered or dead.

Due to Yang Hong's quick thinking, he took his already crippled remaining forces and quickly tried to seek asylum within Lu Bu's Army who is currently possessing a considerable amount strength.

In this nation, there are very few people who can accommodate Yuan Shu's descendant.

He cannot go to Hebei with only these old, sick, malnutrition people, they will all die before even reaching Hebei's border.

Go to Cao Cao?! If he dared go over there now, it is really a death wish. Moreover, Cao Cao also treated his wife and daughters like commodities, so he could not go there.

What about Liu Bei? Liu Bei himself cannot guarantee their safety. Moreover Liu Bei often disregarded his own wife and daughters, let alone other people daughter's.

The most difficult one is Sun Ce. When Sun Ce was Yuan Shu's subordinate, Yang Hong many times made slanderous remarks to Sun Ce. Because at that time, when Yuan Shu still had power, Yang Hong was not willing to consider Sun Ce as a person.

Other warlords are also impossible to accept Yuan family's heir.

"General Lu, Milord informed Yang Hong before his demise that General Lu still owed Milord!" Said Yang Hong while looking at Lu Bu.

“Hmph!” Lu Bu nodded. During his visit to Shouchun, Lu Bu owed Yuan Shu grain and provisions.

“I, Yang Hong with all that I have, earnestly request General Lu to avenge the death of Milord and Little Lord!” Said Yang Hong who suddenly knelt down begging Lu Bu.

“Avenge Yuan Shu’s death?!” Are you fucking kidding me? You still did not say which side killed Yuan Shu, whether it is Liu Bei or Cao Cao who dealt the killing blow.

Even if they knew, Lu Bu will not attack them now, because Lu Bu’s army is still in recuperation because of Xiapi, Kaiyang and Mt. Bagong battles and not strong enough to fight one of them who occupies a province each. So, even though they are Lu Bu’s personal enemies, now it is not time for revenge.

TL: It is time for revenge, a quote from Contra 3: Alien Wars SNES. HEHEHHEHE.

Furthermore, for Lu Bu it is also impossible to exchange 20,000 lives for fulfilling Yuan Shu’s promise.

“Even though I, Lu Bu have a debt to Yuan Gonglu, right now your request is beyond my capabilities now. I cannot just throw away more than 20,000 lives of my men just to avenge your lord!” Lu Bu rejected it without any hesitation.

Yang Hong also knew that right now it was impossible for Lu Bu to comply with his request. So he then said “Since Milord and little lord has died, we're only left with our Lady Miss. We would like General Lu to support her!”

“Relax, I will look after Yuan Gonglu’s daughter like my own daughter!” Since Lu Bu cannot take revenge for Yuan Shu, he can still take care of his daughter like his own, this is also good.

Lu Bu thought that Yang Hong would be satisfied with his answer, but Yang Hong quickly shook his head and said "Pardon me for being bold, General Lu. But Milord's testament is: Please let Fengxian took care of my daughter, but not as a daughter!"

“Not as daughter?! If not as a daughter then as a wife right?!” Liu Mang looked at Lu Bu and Miss Yuan back and forth. The age gap between these two people were huge. Lu Bu was old enough to be considered her father and Miss Yuan can become his daughter.

If united, no matter the result it is still very bad in everyone’s eyes, Lu Bu will be marked as a pedophile. This is not like when Old Cao redeemed Cai Wenji.

He did not dare to touch her after redeeming her. Nevertheless that is what Old Cao did, whether his intention was pure or not.

While Liu Mang was still laughing at Miss Yuan’s misfortune, being forced to marry Lu Bu, suddenly his smile stiffened after what he heard next.

Yang Hong then explains “Milords hope was that our Miss can marry His Highness Prince of Shu!”

“What??? Marry me??” Liu Mang jumped up. Hey, that Old bastard Yuan Shu, what's his relationship to me? Even though Old Yuan and Boss Lu are good friends, I, Liu Mang, only have grievances from the time in Shouchun right? And now you want me to marry your daughter, what the hell was that old man thinking?!

Before dying, Yuan Shu told Yang Hong to marry Liu Mang out of consideration for his daughter. Even though Lu Bu has the sentiments to take care of his daughter, those sentiments only lasts for a while. After all she is not his real daughter. His love for her is definitely limited and she could only be a sacrificial victim of a political marriage.

Even if she is not sacrificed, she is living under another family’s roof, at the mercy of others, how can she feel good for the rest of her life?

But marrying to Liu Mang is different. Liu Mang now is Lu Bu’s son-in-law. Marrying Lu Bu’s daughter can be said that all of Lu Bu’s inheritance will be Liu Mang’s, so it can be said Liu Mang is Lu Bu’s army's little lord.

By making his daughter marry Liu Mang, Lu Bu’s heir, her daughter will have a home to return to, also she does not need to depend on others. And if possible, when she gave birth to a child, that child can compete for Liu Mang’s inheritance.

“Humph!!!” Lu Bu humphed at Yang Hong. Lu Bu really do not know what Yuan Shu had in mind but when it comes to his son-in-law, it made Lu Bu very irritated.

“Our miss does not care about status, you may consider her as a sister wife!” Yang Hong threw in his last chip. Being first concubine, meant she did not have to compete with Lu Lingqi for her position.

TL: Ping Qi (平妻) meaning is wife of same status, taken from http://naturallywhite.blogspot.my/2008/07/blog-post.html. If you guys have better translation, please do not hesitate to put in comments. For the time being, Ping Qi is sister wife. (James: Sister wife sounds fcking white bruh.)

“This matter I could not decide by myself, you have to ask for his decision!” Lu Bu calmed himself down and looked at Liu Mang his eyes, he shoved the problem to Liu Mang and Liu Mang knew, if he do not give a good and satisfying answer, Boss Lu will never forgive him.

“I am very satisfied with Lingqi! I am not even legally married yet, how the hell could I get a concubine first?!?!”Liu Mang hurriedly decline the offer. He is not crazy enough to offend this tiger father-in-law of his to take concubine for himself.

Liu Mang words made Lu Bu really satisfied “You see, it is not me who disagrees, but he himself does not want to!” Actually letting Liu Mang marry Miss Yuan is very good to raise his reputation, so Lu Bu is not going to reject the offer on the spot.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, our Miss is very gentle and understanding, she can serve both you and Miss Lu” Yang Hong started marketing for his Miss.

Honestly, when Liu Mang saw Miss Yuan he noticed that she was really a beauty. “Nice work passing your genes, Old Yuan!!!” Earlier when she cried miserably, Liu Mang really wish to hug her and comfort her.

However the key question is Boss Lu. Liu Mang do not want to slap a tiger's ass.

Seeing that Liu Mang remain unmoved and Lu Bu also looking casual, Yang Hong bit his teeth and said “General Lu, Milord has left behind a dowry for Miss. Please have a look first!” Yang Hong pull out something from his breast pocket. When he opened the piece cloth, all people on the tent gasped at that thing on Yang Hong's hand.

Chapter 84 – Miss Yuan's Imperial Seal as a Dowry; The Path of Princes or The Path of the Emperor.

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Its body is made completely of He Shi Bi jade, glittering and translucent with carvings at the bottom. Its four sides were casted using pure gold. On its top side there is a carving of five dragons, bottom side, there is something written

"The Mandate is received from Heaven, May He have Longevity and Prosperity".

TL: For more information about the Imperial Seal https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heirloom_Seal_of_the_Realm

"It can't be!" Not mentioning the other people, Lu Bu also swallowed his saliva. Their eyes are flashing looking at that thing.

"Correct, this is Milord's dowry – Heirloom Seal of the Realm or The Imperial Seal!" Said Yang Hong with serious face.

"That thing is made of He Shi Bi jade right?!" Liu Mang always thought that the Imperial Seal was made using normal jade, but, if it was made using normal jade how could it possibly be this alluring. This object is the embodiment of greed! He discovered exactly how wrong he was.

The base material for Imperial Seal is He Shi Bi jade. Originally, a person found this material in the State of Chu by a man named Bian He. He offered this stone to the king at the time claiming that it was a priceless

treasure, the ignorant king however called it a normal stone so he cut off Bian He's left foot.

After he passed his son ascended the throne and once again Bian He offered this jade stone. And again the king calling it a normal stone cut off his right foot this time. Once he passed away, his son also ascended to the throne.

For the third time Bian He offered the stone, and finally the king realized the quality of the stone. In light of the discovery he named it the He Shi Be stone (The jade disc of He).

The jade was then stolen from Chu and eventually sold to the state of Zhao

The State of Qin hearing about the news offered the State of Zhao, 15 cities in exchange for that He Shi Bi jade.

TL: State of Chu and State of Zhao. Both are states from Warring States period called the Spring and Autumn Period, the same time when Confucius started to spread his teachings

Later, State of Qin destroyed the State of Zhao, and retrieved the He Shi Bi jade. After the entire l nation was pacified, the first Emperor of Qin, Qin Shi Huang, Emperor Ying Zheng assigned Li Si to create a script to be carved on that piece of jade

“The Mandate is received from Heaven, May He have Longevity and Prosperity” and then asked Sun Shou to carve it properly until it become

a proper Imperial Seal.

TL: Again, want to know better about the history https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heirloom_Seal_of_the_Realm

After Qin Dynasty fell, the Imperial Seal was received by Liu Bang and passed on from emperor to emperor for four hundred years, until it changed hands after Luo Yang was burnt to the ground by Dong Zhuo. Our Sun Jian, Sun Wentai, then salvaged it from a dry well.

Not long after Sun Jian took hold of it, he died eaten by his oath in front of 18 warlords.

He left behind the Imperial Seal for Sun Ce who then exchanged it to Yuan Shu with soldiers and horses, for his quest to gain independence from Yuan Shu.

When Old Yuan took hold of it, he proclaimed himself as Emperor. Right after he was deserted by friends and allies, and now finally died like a dog with no bone to bury.

Actually, you cannot blame Yuan Shu for being greedy, even Liu Mang looking at this Imperial Seal, his heart oozed with greedy intentions.

This is the symbol of sovereignty, this symbolizes that you are king of this nation. That piece of jade was shining, brimming with luster, it's as if there were rays of light coming out from it.

This stone value is too big, no wonder numerous heroes lost their life

after obtaining this.

Chen Gong's eyes were also shining when he saw that thing in Yang Hong's palm.

Chen Gong who is a Confucian scholar, cannot possibly know about quality of material like gold or jade, but his gaze is fixated on those carving of characters. It is indeed Li Si's script which Sun Shou crafted into the Imperial Seal.

"General Lu, I, Yang Hong with all that I have, would like to ask one question. Which path does General Lu want to tread?!" Said Yang Hong with an increased tone after seeing Lu Bu's hesitation.

"Huh?!" Responded Lu Bu as he did not understand what Yang Hong is talking about.

Yang Hong then continues "General Lu, I would like to ask, which path you want to take? The path of prince or the path of emperor?!" Said Yang Hong with profound gaze toward Lu Bu.

"What do you mean by The path of prince or The path of the emperor?!" Lu Bu then shifted his gaze from Imperial Seal. That thing is really too attractive, it can drive people crazy.

"If General Lu takes the path of prince, then you can definitely establish a dynasty by your strength alone, and then you sit back and watch the political trend of the world! General Lu's military power is second to none in this world, and because of that, no warlord would want to offend

General Lu so easily! Isn't that what Genera Lu is planning by going to Xinye to take refuge there?!"

Yang Hong is correct. This is exactly Chen Gong's stratagem to Lu Bu, establishing a dynasty, making home base, increasing his forces and then sit back, and watch politics take place.

At Hebei, Cao Cao and Yuan Shao are fighting for hegemony, Western Liang also has Ma Teng, Yi Province and Jing Province are both ruled by 2 Liu clansmen, both Imperial Uncles. In addition to Sun Ce at Jiangdong, Xinye is located right in the middle of them, so whenever Lu Bu wanted to fight for hegemony, he could just choose any one of them. Thus, that place is the place of opportunity, the land of opportunity.

TL: Heh, Land of opportunity, you think Xinye is USA????

"And, what about The Path of the Emperor?!" Lu Bu really didn't expect that Yuan Shu had a very capable person under him.

"The Path of the Emperor?!" Yang Hong looked at Lu Bu with one eye "Forgive me for being rude, General Lu. But the current General Lu's foundation simply does not suffice if you want to take the path of emperor!" Yang Hong directly hit Lu Bu with the current truth.

What Yang Hong's words meant was Lu Bu can only achieve so much by being a warlord. Once something happened with Boss Lu, it would result in complete ruin for Lu Bu's army

This middle-aged person dared to stand before Boss Lu and even

attack him with the truth, this Yang Hong really had courage.

Liu Mang thought that Boss Lu will be angry, but who would have expected that Boss Lu casually asked “Yang Hong, please continue”

“If General Lu wants to take the path of the emperor, you must have two things.

The first is military force. A military force strong enough to strive for hegemony is the first prerequisite!”

Currently Lu Bu’s army has 5,000 people in Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, 3,000 people in Formation Breaker, 3,000 people in Urban Army, 10,000 foot soldiers and 5,000 bowmen. With the army strength of 26,000 men, it is enough for Lu Bu to compete for hegemony in this nation.

In this time in Huainan, no warlord can match Boss Lu’s prowess in war.

But, having strength is actually only the very first step in competing for hegemony in this nation.

If comparing strength, Lu Bu at the time when he invaded Yan Province and Xu Province, his strength was much stronger than the present. Even when he was besieged by Cao Cao in Xiapi, he also had 70,000 troops under him. Definitely cannot be compared with current Lu Bu who was just expelled from Xu Province by Cao Cao.

What Lu Bu wanted to do was to listen Yang Hong’s second point.

“The second point is fame!” Replied Yang Hong.

“Fame?!” Liu Mang smiled mockingly at Yang Hong’s discourse. When Yuan Shu proclaimed himself as emperor, his fame was over, only his infamy kept rising. Moreover, the entire Huainan only remembered Yuan Shu’s infamy as an oppressive tyrant.

Please do not look back when Liu Mang praised Yuan Shu at the banquet. That explanation is only for rebuking Chen Rui.

Seeing Liu Mang’s smile, how can Yang Hong not know what Liu Mang is thinking “My lord, although his proclamation as emperor is intolerable by the principles of righteousness, but he still had the Yuan family’s fame!”

Yuan Shu is Yuan Feng’s legal wife’s son. So we can say that he is the real spokesman of Yuan clan, and he represented one of the three sons of the fourth generation of the Yuan Family.

Thus Yuan Family clansmen are spreading throughout this nation. Yuan Shu has died, but Yuan Family has not died.

So, if Yuan Shu’s orphaned daughter were marry Liu Mang, these Yuan Family will definitely recognized Lu Bu’s army who took care this orphaned daughter.

TL: Yuan Feng is Yuan Shu and Yuan Shao’s father, they were born from different mothers, Yuan Shu’s mother is legal wife of Yuan Feng while

Yuan Shao's is Yuan Feng's third wife.

"Nobles!" that's what Yang Hong meant. Marrying Yuan Shu's daughter means you can have the support of nobles. After all, you are the son-in-law of a nobleman. Your social standing is also the same as them.

It is just like a merchant. A merchant who wants to stay in power surely will be close to a politician. And if that politician marries a family member of a merchant, that politician will surely make many policies in favor of that merchant.

Marrying Yuan Shu's daughter is equal to obtaining the support of nobles.

Perhaps you want to think that due to the population of the ordinary people they are the majority influence and the nobles are the minority influence right? Well, you are completely wrong.

From ancient times to modern times. This whole world has being dominated by these noble families. The Eastern Han Dynasty is the pinnacle of noble's existence in all of Chinese history.

All of these warlords, came out from noble families, such as Cao Cao's family. Cao family consists of two noble families which are Cao clan and Xiahou clan. Yuan Shao is also one of three sons of the fourth generation of Yuan Family

When Liu Biao entered Jing Province, in order to appease Jing Province's noble families, he quickly married the daughter of Cai family.

Liu Bei also married Madame Gan. Madame Gan's origin is from Tao Qian's wife's clan.

Lu Bu also married Cao Bao's daughter, however Cao's family fame I simply cannot match the Yuan's. In Xu Province, maybe Cao's name is still famous, but it is unknown in other provinces.

TL: Cao Cao was adopted by Cao Teng, who at that time do not have son to carry his family name. Cao Cao originally come from Xiahou clan with name Xiahou Cao. Cao clan and Xiahou clan is very famous during Liu Bang's time, for they helped him to rebuild the country. But Lady Cao's of Cao family (Lu Bu's wife) is a different Cao clan. Cao Cao and Xiahou is based in Chenliu, Yan Province. But Lady Cao family is based on Xu Province and not famous at all.

Lu Bu was also moved by his desire to walk the path of the emperor, but to exchange his daughter's happiness for walking the path of emperor, is it really worth it?

"Milord only wanted to seek a good home for Miss to return to, she can be a sister wife. If General Lu still does not want to accept her, it is okay too. I will just leave this Imperial Seal for General Lu's safekeeping, so Milord can rest in peace!" Said Yang Hong while holding the Imperial Seal.

Then he moved back to withdraw from Lu Bu's presence. With these options Yang Hong also can see Lu Bu's dilemma.

If he said OK, then he will be forever be remembered as a humane person who put his selfish desires aside for a better gain of his family, but

if he rejected, then he will be marked as a selfish person. Yang Hong's maneuver is really good.

Chen Gong also had not spoken. Although he also wants to make Lu Bu accept this Imperial Seal, this matter involves Lu Bu's family, he as an outsider, how can he intervene?

"You go back first! Let me think about it more!" Lu Bu's mind was split in two.

Which is more important his daughter's happiness or his pursuit of the path of the emperor?! If it was before, when he was Governor of Xu Province, Lu Bu would definitely put aside his daughter's happiness, because at that time for himself, the path of emperor was his goal.

After experiencing Xu Province's chaos, Lu Bu has changed. Especially with Song Xian, Wei Xu, Hou Cheng and co. Their betrayal and their deaths caused him to change his attitude. He has sacrificed too much in his pursuit for the path of the emperor.

Yang Hong lowered his head and headed back to his tent, he put down the Imperial Seal on the table in Lu Bu's big tent.

"Path of emperor! Path of emperor!" Lu Bu's heart was very complex while holding the Imperial Seal.

Chapter 85 – A Worthy Drinking Adversary, Even One Thousand Cups is Not Enough

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

The day is April 5th

The entire city of Wancheng fell into a festive mood. The city was outfitted with red lanterns and decorations, especially Wancheng city's Administration Office, the building became really beautiful and vibrant.

Apart from naval troops that was dispatched earlier to liberate Sanjiangkou, all of Jiangdong's civil and military officials are attending the wedding party.

How can they do not attend their lord's wedding? It will be very disrespectful of them to not attend.

There is an attendant who shouted endlessly in regard to the presents and from whom the present came from:

“Wujun Administrator Zhu Zhi delivers a pair of jade!”

“Colonel who Exerts Might Sun Jing, delivers a painting and a calligraphy!”

“General Who Spreads Martial Might Sun Fu, delivers 200 gold taels

And so on....

He shouted with a very nice tone, it almost sounded as if he was singing. This was a very merry day.

“So, Milord is finally settling down with a family, on good day like this, it is like the old lord is smiling from heaven!”

“Yes, it is as if old lord had just died yesterday, the years flow like a river, quick and ever flowing.

With a distinguished father like that, his son is sure to reach his father's rank!”

Those who said these words were Sun Jian's former subordinates, like Huang Gai, Han Dang and co.

“After Milord has a male heir, the Sun clan's dominance in Jiangdong will be much stronger!”

“We are set to assist Milord to set down a foundation for a hundred years to come!” Those who speak these lofty words are Sun Ce's new subordinates. Ambitious young people such as Lu Meng and Ling Tong.

There are also those who are silent all the time, because they are hiding away their joy and anger in their minds, if they speak, they would not be able to hold their overflowing emotion. Those who are silent are Jiangdong's top advisors, such as Zhang Hong and Zhang Zhao and co.

Liu Mang along with Lu Bu is also among those who are invited. Lu Bu and Liu Mang delivered a pair of fluorescent pearls, which was only produced from East Chinese Sea.

Yuan Shu bought it before and had spent a lot of money for it, but it was robbed by Chen Lan and was retrieved as spoils of war by Boss Lu.

There are a total of 180 tables laid there. So the entire Administration office was filled with tables and chairs. Their seats are arranged according to their ranks in government office.

Liu Mang sat with Lu Bu at the main table.

Liu Mang and Lu Bu’s arrival made everyone's brow wrinkled, especially Liu Mang who everyone's gaze was fixated upon.

A few days before, during the welcoming banquet, he enraged two of Jiangdong's most famous scholars so it can be said that Liu Mang is the victor in the war of words.

But those two advisors, Qin Song and Chen Rui, not only was their fame big but they also had lot of disciples.

If someone in their sect was humiliated, naturally the students must stand up for revenge right? But even their teachers lost, how could this group of scholars possibly defeat Liu Mang in a war of words?

So after discussing over and over about how to face off with Liu Mang, suddenly one of the students pitched a great idea, which is a war of words... again!

However this time not showdown in knowledge but showdown in schemes!

One can see, many of Chen Rui and Qin Song’s disciples whispering to each other, they have not yet touched the good wine on the table.

“Gentlemen, this time, we are representing Jiangdong's scholars, while we still need to respect that Rascal Liu Mang, it is imperative that we make him shame himself by making him drunk!” Said the leader of those scholars group.

“Today is Milord's greatest happiness. This Administration office is packed with Jiangdong’s noble families, and also with Lord Qiao here, one can say that today half of the Han Dynasty's noble families are attending Milord's wedding.

As long as we can make that Rascal Liu Mang a fool out of himself, he will definitely be the laughing stock of the nation!

Let him taste the shame of being humiliated!” That group of students seem to have agreed to make Liu Mang drunk. The best humiliation they thought of is to make Liu Mang as drunk as possible and then he will unconsciously take off his clothes one by one in front of all the guests.

The banquet started real slowly, the initial greetings was finally over, and so Liu Mang's stomach was filled with food already.

Just as Sun Ce finished his wine toast, Liu Mang wanted to use his chopsticks to eat desert, but directly on the other side, there was a group of scholars approaching, each of them are carrying a wine glass and behind them were several servants following while holding jugs of wine.

“Hanyang, it seems trouble is coming for you!” Said Lu Bu.

Lu Bu also lifted his eye and looked at this group of scholars. They

absolutely did not have good intentions. It could be said that all of Jiangdong's scholars held an unfavorable impression of Lu Bu's army.

"Yes trouble is coming, so what? They want to scold me surely to avenge their masters right?!" Liu Mang really do not care about these damned scholars.

If those scholars wanted to do a match of literary knowledge Liu Mang was not a match for them, but if you wanted to come and debate, Liu Mang will oppress them completely. Liu Mang can spurt out his poison and abuse them without the need for dirty words.

"Your Highness Prince of Shu!" the leader of scholar then raised his glass "At that time when Your Highness Prince of Shu was in Xiapi, the traitor Cao fall into your strategy and when in Kaiyang, you also cursed him until he was extremely angry, you are really an example for our generation.

We, Jiangdong's scholars, propose a toast to Your Highness!" While the leader is smiling, he drank his wine in one gulp.

"Hmm?!" Liu Mang was also a bit puzzled, only proposing a toast, yet they come here in groups? With other people also proposing a toast, Liu Mang would embarrassed to decline so he hurriedly gulped the wine.

"Your Highness, today is Milord's marriage. For Your Highness to accept his invitation, it is a big honor for our Jiangdong. We would like to propose a toast to thank Your Highness!" Another scholar walked while carrying a wine glass.

Wow, all of you keep flattering me? Could it be, these scholars did not

want to attack me so they started fawning over me? Liu Mang drank one cup again.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, you are very young yet you have achieved this high-rank, I ask the heaves to bless Your Highness to progress further in your career!” One of the scholars spoke wrongly.

The Title of Prince of Shu is very high already, if one went further, would next level not be the

Emperor?

But Liu Mang right now can accept their flattery and gulped down another cup.

After drinking the third cup, there is another scholar behind him, Liu Mang finally understood these scholars intention. They want to make Liu Mang drunk as a skunk so he can humiliate himself right? They took turns attacking Liu Mang with toasts.

One toast was great, even two toasts is still good, however Liu Mang notices that there are a lot of scholars queuing, waiting to toast him. This is stratagem to wear a person out, by attacking him in turns.

Usually Liu Mang could not endure battling so many people, doomed to be toyed around with.

But fortunately, today the young master came prepared. "Since all of you want to play, let's play bitches" Liu Mang thought to himself.

“Today is General Sun Ce happy day, toasting one person at a time, one after another is very boring!

So, the Prince would like to propose a toast to every one of you, the Prince cannot stand it if everyone does not toast with me!” Said Liu Mang while looking at those scholars.

You want to take me down shadily, eh? I'll take you all on openly.

“So, everyone. I want to toast together. You drink one cup, I drink one cup, so we will be happy together. No cold treatment from me!”

“This!” the lead scholar's brow wrinkled. If everybody drinks together and followed Liu Mang we will be making a fool of ourselves, he then responded

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, we are many people, but Your Highness is only one person. Does your Highness Prince of Shu despise us so much that you did not have enough respect to have a one-on-one toast with us?

The leader's speech is to provoke Liu Mang. If Liu Mang does not drink, then looks down upon all of Jiangdong's scholars. This is a heavy handed insult.

“Okay then! How about this, for each toast, all of you drink one cup, I drink two cups?!” Liu Mang also knows that they will not relent at any cost.

So he made an illusion and gave them an option that will increase their chances of success in their plot in order for them to swallow the bait.

Us one cup, him two cups? The Leader of scholar is moved. If we drink a cup, then Liu Mang must drink two cups. Do not underestimate this count, the difference of alcohol intoxication is like heaven and earth.

“Good, then I will drink to my heart's content!” Liu Mang then clapped his hands, behind him there are two soldiers from Lu Bu’s army which Liu Mang brought as a bodyguard and a butler. Each of them are carrying a wine jug.

“Full glass!” Said Liu Mang while pointing to his wine glasses.

A soldier who understood walked toward Liu Mang and filled two wine glasses to the brim.

“Bottoms up, gentlemen!” Liu Mang then reversed his glass after drinking those two glasses to show it is already empty to those scholars below.

With Liu Mang's action, those scholars also followed Liu Mang's lead.

First cup, second cup, third cup, that leader of scholar's face became more cheerful. He then thought “Drink, drink and drink more and you will be drunken and start to humiliate yourself!”

Fourth cup, fifth cup. The leader's smile started fading and started being uncomfortable. But he withstood his discomfort because he wanted to see this Rascal in drunken state but his state is actually is worse than Liu Mang.

However Liu Mang's face also showed signs of struggle, making that leader's mood quite happy.

Sixth cup, seventh cup, eighth cup, the leader felt little dizzy. There are many scholars who were also unable to withstand intoxication and their complexions were already red, but they were still holding on.

They all wanted to see the limit of this rascals drinking prowess. They had drunk a total eight cups, but the rascal drank 16 cups.

Ninth cup, tenth cup, eleventh cup. The leader was reaching his limit. His complexion became very purple because he was holding down his vomit. If he vomited now, his disgrace would be unsightly.

“Come, come, come, drink one more cup!” Liu Mang once again reach for his glass and toasted again.

Come on, you want to see me humiliate myself right? Come drink with me again.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, I could not drink anymore, we take our leave now, we take our leave!” When the leader made the scheme to humiliate Liu Mang, he didn't take into consideration Liu Mang's drinking prowess. 22 glasses of wine!!! Even military generals do not possess this prowess. But Liu Mang only felt a slight discomfort during his early toast. The later it went on, he had already adapted to the wine.

“No, do not leave, do not leave, keep drinking with me!!!” Want to escape, huh?! After provoking me, do not even dream about escaping!!!

Then Liu Mang held the back of the leaders neck and said. “Meeting a worthy drinking adversary, even one thousand cups is not enough to get you tired. Today is General Sun Ce's happiest day, if you did not drink, you do not respect me. If you did not drink, you did not respect General Sun Ce!!!

Come, drink again!!!”

Chapter 86 – Binge Drinking in Ancient Wedding Banquet

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

"Milord, please look at that side!" Sun Ce is proposing toast here and there. But the problem is, there are 100 more tables for him to toast, so he did not pay any attention to whatever happened at the main table. However Zhang Zhao who sat nearby main table, did not avert his gaze at Liu Mang.

Two days ago, Liu Mang did a war of words with Qin Song and Chen Rui. That event left a very deep impression in Zhang Zhao's mind. Therefore, the result today, their disciples wanted to make trouble for Liu Mang to avenge their masters. As Zhang Zhao is close friends with those two, he naturally wanted to see Liu Mang make a fool out of himself, but he did not think that their plan was thwarted by Liu Mang and now he is pulling the leader scholar and do not want to let him go.

Zhang Zhao knew the leader of scholars is Chen Rui's top student. Revenge for an insulted master is a good thing, but one also must know his own ability, in order not to shame himself.

But now, Zhang Zhao needed to save them from embarrassing themselves. We cannot let these Jiangdong's scholar youths disgrace their whole clan. Therefore Zhang Zhao notified Sun Ce to help them.

"Eh?!" Sun Ce moved his gaze to the main table. What is the Prince of Shu doing? Why is he pulling Chen Rui's top disciple? That Chen Rui, two days ago because Liu Mang made him angry, his health was deteriorating very fast and now he must recuperate at home. So he must stay at home. If according to logic, Chen Rui and Qin Song's disciples

should made Liu Mang their mortal enemy, right? But right now, Liu Mang and that disciple is really friendly with each other, there is something wrong with this picture?

Sun Ce then noticed Chen Rui's top disciple's complexion, his face already turned to purple. In Sun Ce's view, the leader of scholars is acting very awkward and embarrassed due to not knowing what to do next, then Sun Ce saw wine glass at the table. Is he intoxicated by wine?

And then Sun Ce saw those disciples behind the leader, all of them also have a purple complexion and ready to vomit at any time and saw that Liu Mang's complexion is normal.

"Does His Highness Prince of Shu have a very high alcohol tolerance?!" Thought Sun Ce. Because he is only one man, how can he outdrink so many people?

"Ha-Ha-Ha!" Zhang Zhao's laugh bitterly while shaking his head. He actually already knew what that rascal is drinking, if not, how can one human to outdrink so many people? "Milord, His Highness Prince of Shu is drinking the same liquid as yours!"

"Same liquid?!" Sun Ce stunned. Earlier, indeed he drank wine, but now he drinks water. Does that mean Prince of Shu also drinking water? No wonder, he can outdrink those people.

"Let's go, we go back to main table!" Sun Ce also felt that he need to rescue those scholars. Otherwise it will make those Chen Rui's disciples embarrass themselves to death. How, as lord, can he put his face again?

“Why do all of you not drink, we are all best friends right?? If we are best friends, you must drink with me!!!” Liu Mang will not let Chen Rui’s disciples go. Earlier you came and wanted to shame me right? And now you want to get away? Keep dreaming!!! I will make you drink until you pass out, so no one leave.

“His Highness Prince of Shu!” Exclaimed Sun Ce while holding his fist toward Liu Mang. Chen Rui’s disciples really lucky because Sun Ce show up.

“I, Sun Ce, will accompany you to drink wine!”

“Milord!” Sun Ce’s arrival made those Chen Rui’s disciples want to salute him, but their pose is completely messed up due to nausea by wine intoxication.

“Hmmm….” Sun Ce brow wrinkled and then he made a signal with his hand “It is okay, all of you leave!”

“Yes, sir!” Chen Rui’s top disciple and those scholars quickly excused themselves and ran away to vomit at a secluded place.

“General Sun Ce!” Liu Mang also held his fist respectfully back at Sun Ce. Today is Sun Ce’s wedding, his biggest day. So Liu Mang has no alternative to give Sun Ce face by releasing those scholars.

“Today is the happiest day in my life. I am truly honored for Your Highness Prince of Shu gracing his presence in my banquet. I propose a toast to Your Highness with this one cup!” Said Sun Ce while carrying

wine glass, Liu Mang also followed his gesture.

"Please pardon me, Your Highness Prince of Shu. That liquor is no good for toasting!" Said Zhang Zhao while smiling and pointing to Liu Mang's glass.

Liu Mang's complexion become red. They know that it is water!

Liu Mang had no other choice but to change his glass and fill it with real wine again in order to toast with Sun Ce.

Seeing that Liu Mang began to fill his glass with wine, Sun Ce finished his water and quickly followed his gesture. While Liu Mang held his wine jug, suddenly Zhang Zhao speaks "Your Highness Prince of Shu, in Jiangdong we have a custom. The newly-wed groom must drink wine with the most revered person in this party until he passes out! Is not that right, everyone?!"

TL: Binge drinking in ancient age? WTF???

As Zhang Zhao is Sun Ce's most trusted advisor, naturally when Zhang Zhao opened his mouth, everyone will respond.

In all Jiangdong, the most revered person here is probably Sun Ce's mother Lady Wu. But if according to official title, the biggest one is Liu Mang. According to title, he is one of the lords of this nation, a royal scion. So the most revered person in this party is Liu Mang.

What custom is this? The most revered person in party drinking wine

with the groom until they pass out? Liu Mang really did not know how to respond this.

But he is helpless against all of the Jiangdong natives who is now cheering him incessantly, if he did not drink, he does not respect Sun Ce.

Liu Mang once again reach for his wine glass, but prevented by Zhang Zhao who said “Your Highness Prince of Shu, this kind of cup, will not be satisfying! Servant, please bring our specialized banquet cup for Your Highness!”

“Yes, sir!” two servants comply the order and bring out the “special banquet” wine cup.

“What the fuck?!” Liu Mangs mouth was twitching. This is a special banquet cup? This is as big as a basin for washing clothes. When Liu Mang stretched his arm, it is unable to cover 50% of the diameter. Old bastard, you are good, you really want to make me drunk as a skunk.

TL: Basin https://jenanardella.files.wordpress.com/2012/07/photo1.jpg

That is correct, Zhang Zhao also wanted to make Liu Mang drunk! Liu Mang gave Jiangdong’s scholars a big grievance, if they do not take revenge, how can Zhang Zhao be seen as a Jiangdong scholar also? Now came an opportunity, if he did not utilize it, it is his stupidity.

“FLUSHHH!” A big wine pot pouring its content to the large basin.

“Come, Your Highness, I drink the first bowl!” Said Sun Ce, while he and

Zhang Zhao looking at each other smiling. Hehehe, you young inexperienced fox, how can you outsmart an old fox, eh?

Looking at Sun Ce has drinking the wine, Liu Mang also started to drink his bowl. Although the liquor in Eastern Han Dynasty looked white pale made from rice, but still has alcohol which can make you drunk. Even a low alcohol content beer can make a person drunk.

After several large bowls, Liu Mang gave up, kept shouting “No more”, with both eyes shut due to severe intoxication. Fortunately, Liu Mang is quite a well behaved person when drunk. He is a person who will just fall asleep after too much drinking, not the type who will get crazy. Therefore, those Jiangdong scholars were really unsatisfied because of a no show.

“Servants, please help carry His Highness Prince of Shu, to a nearby room!” Zhang Zhao smile faintly. Brat, you are a thousand years too early to outmatch me.

However, he miscalculated one person, a real pity.

Looking at several maidservants carrying Liu Mang, finally Boss Lu opened his mouth “Sun Ce, my worthy nephew. Today is your wedding day, your Uncle Lu cannot give you anything except bless your marriage with wine. Come, let us, uncle and nephew, drink again!”

“Oh no, son-in-law is drunk, now his father-in-law takes revenge?!” Zhang Zhao really cannot fathom Lu Bu. Now Lu Bu has stood and spoken, as his official title is bigger than Sun Ce, he naturally has become the most revered person in this banquet after Liu Mang. So Sun Ce is unable to decline if Lu Bu wanted to toast him.

“Okay, Ce propose a toast to uncle, one cup!” Sun Ce hurriedly grab a wine glass, but was prevented by Lu Bu who pointed to the basin “We use that!”

Lu Bu also did not mind using dirty the basin that Liu Mang has left behind.

“Fine then…..!” In his mind, Sun Ce already rejected, because this is his first night with a pretty girl, so whatever the outcome, he cannot afford to get drunk. But now, he can only helplessly hold the bowl while glancing at Zhang Zhao with a message “Fuck you, old man! You harm me on my first night!!!

Zhang Zhao was also very helpless. Who knew after defeating the young one, there is also the old one as an opponent?

Then the banquet continues in the hall.

Liu Mang has fallen asleep for quite some time, and after that he sat, feeling uncomfortable in his head. He woke up because he wanted to piss due drinking a lot of water to flush out the liquor. His bladder already suppressed a lot, and his head is very tipsy, making him unable to stand properly.

“Servant, servant!” Liu Mang calling out for a servant to bring him a pisspot, but at this time, every servants is busy in the banquet hall. How can anyone hear his voice?

“FUCK!” Liu Mang burst out foul language. After waiting a long time no one hearing his scream, Liu Mang jumped down the bed while holding his head, opened the door and walk outside.

He did not want to suffocate in his own urine. The Administration office was where Sun Ce held his marriage, it is just a small one but it is Lujiang Administration office, the government body of all Lujiang. Its size is reduced considerably by the previous owners Lu Kang and Liu Xun. And because of the chaos of the war, this Administration office was damaged, therefore it is now undergoing big repairs and also because of that, Liu Mang cannot find a toilet.

“I do not care anymore, I’ll pee here!” Liu Mang cannot hold it. Hey, this is not young master’s fault okay, but you, Sun Ce, forced me to do it. Then Liu Mang started to pee in the courtyard while enjoying spring wind.

It should be easy to go back to one’s room in a full conscious state, but right now he is not sober at all. This Administration office maybe small in one glance but it is quite big with no servants around as all of them are busy in the banquet hall.

Still blurry and drunk, Liu Mang just followed his own instincts to go back into his own room in rear court.

But he did not read the direction labels due to his blurry state, that he is not going to back to rear court but instead he is going to West Wing, where Sun Ce’s wedding room is.

Chapter 87 – Fornicating with a Goddess

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Fuck, I am so tired, where is this place?!” Liu Mang shook his head and because of the dizziness, he is unable to find his room.

So now he decided to just to find a room nearby to dispel his dizziness first, before setting out again to find his room!

That room will do! Liu Mang had chosen a room nearby before he fainted again. That room is decorated with house silhouette and also the entire room is very bright.

“Kreeen!” Liu Mang tested the door first. Hey, it is not locked!!! Liu Mang rushed in.

The entire room is colored red. It had red candles, red bed, red clothing, truly a festive appearance.

“Bed, there is a bed here!” Liu Mang’s eyes focusing on bed right now, seeing there is a bed, he walked toward the bed shakily.

Due to his dizziness Liu Mang did not note that there is another person in this room. That person wore a red gown, with a red scarf covering her head and face, just like an appearance of new bride.

Correct, Liu Mang just stumbled upon Sun Ce’s wedding room. On the bed is Sun Ce’s soon-to-be-consummated wife Da Qiao.

“Has he fallen asleep?!” Da Qiao lifted her scarf and saw Liu Mang lying beside her marriage bed. Because Liu Mang was lying with his face down, Da Qiao could not see his face.

Also, the room is very poorly lit and there aren't any light sources besides the red candles and lanterns, further limiting Da Qiao’s vision.

“Umph, you reek of alcohol!” Liu Mang’s breath had the stench of alcohol which made Da Qiao frown greatly. But as a new wife, her first service is too disrobed Liu Mang’s clothing and removed his shoes.

Liu Mang then muttered “Water, water!” He then unconsciously pinned down Da Qiao caressing her body trying to find a moist place, he needed to drink water!

“Husband, ah, ah!” Da Qiao’s wanted to resist Liu Mang, but how can she resist a man’s strength? Shamefully, she closed her eyes.

“Need water, thirsty!” Liu Mang had found something moist... With a soft and luscious feeling, he began kissing her... As if he was a dog drinking from a bowl, he repeatedly drank Da Qiao’s saliva, making her body numb, and unconsciously started hugging Liu Mang.

TL: Unconscious French Kiss? Can anyone do that???

Driven by lust, gradually, both people who had different surnames, took off their clothes one by one....

Liu Mang really had the nicest dream ever. A very surreal and vivid dream, he had never had such a wet dream in his entire life.

In his dream, he kissed a woman who possessed a jade-white skin, with a silk-like black hair. This woman, every inch of her body was amazing. Liu Mang had never seen a woman like this in his mortal life not even Lu Lingqi, so this must be a goddess, nothing more nothing less.

In his dream again, he is caressing every part of the goddess... inch by inch.....

kissing her... their tongues intertwining... tangling their bodies with each other... Kissing the goddess breasts while his hands stroking her most important place..

From her venus mound flowed love juices. Then he insert his little brother as deep as possible into that opening.

He pounded several times until he deflowered her. Damn, fuck this is good! Liu Mang was really determined, he must vent all his lust by pounding this goddess and kissing her profusely to quench his thirst. Soon enough, both Liu Mang and Da Qiao reached their climax together.

“Aaahhhh!” Liu Mang’s dream felt so real, he could even hear the beauty moaning in his arms.

Liu Mang was really venting out all of his feelings in his dream. His bloodthirst which only kept rising from Xiapi, his wildness, his guilt because of his unit’s death, as well as his needing a woman's touch from

Lu Lingqi and He Yu’s encounters.

After having intercourse with the goddess, Liu Mang started to get sober, but he was still thirsty in his mind.

“Water, need to drink water!” Liu Mang opened his eyes slowly, he needed to look for a glass of water. The Drunken feeling for an extended period of time is not a good feeling. Dizziness plus nausea, later I absolutely must reject all alcoholic drinks. Liu Mang thought.

So, that dream is not real right?! Hahahaha, Liu Mang foolishly laughed, of course it is only a dream!

However... that smooth skin, that small and delicate body, that hole which his little brother pounded over and over.. that pleasurable feeling, that felt so real...

Pounding like this right? Liu Mang then made a stroking movement with his hip.

Right! This is the feeling, it's so real and so pleasurable!

“Eh!!!” Suddenly Liu Mang was stunned. I am awake.... right...? Liu Mang is really unsure, because if it is just a dream, how can it have a feeling like this?!

Slowly his vision was restored, then a charming naked lady was slowly revealed in front of Liu Mang.

CALM DOWN, MAN! Liu Mang slapped his cheek furiously in order to sober himself.

This room is not a guest room and that bed is not a guest bed and this naked white lady is definitely is not reserved for a guest.

“This is a dream, this is definitely a dream!” Liu Mang kept saying over and over.

“Grrrrch!” His stomach suddenly made growling sound. Liu Mang is really hungry. Because of those goddamned toasts from the scholars and Sun Ce, Liu Mang hardly finished eating.

“I am starving, NOW?!” Liu Mang felt hungry now. How can a dream have the feeling of hunger?

“No, No, it can’t be!” Liu Mang’s arm is shivering a lot. His hand slowly approached that naked lady’s arm and move it slowly.

Because of his nerves being numbed because of the alcohol, Liu Mang felt that the goddess’s jade-like skin is like touching air. Then Liu Mang breathe a sigh of relief after confirming with his sense of touch “I have not felt anything from the goddess, so this is a dream!”

Is this a dream or not??

Liu Mang who just relaxed then testes his theory again, he wanted to

pinch her index finger to check if this is a dream, because this dream is very real!!!!

Then he pressed firmly on her index finger.

"Ah!" That cute voice comes out again "Husband, you are hurting me!" Then after she spoke, the goddess opened her eyes slowly.

"Eh? She spoke? The Goddess from his dreamland also speaks like a human?!" Fuck this is not right! The more Liu Mang sobered up the more the naked lady's voice became clear and loud in his ears. This is not a dream anymore. This has been reality from the start of the dream.

Right now, Liu Mang observed the naked lady carefully. The face, that stature, isn't she the elder sister He? He Yu?! Why she is not in Shucheng County?!

How.. How.. How can she appear in my arms?! This is where? Where am I? Did I not just pass out from drinking the wedding liquor? How can I be at Sun Ce's mansion?!

Liu Mang was really confused, because his wet dream, turned out to be reality. Liu Mang's mood is not happy anymore but instead he felt a deep fear, because this room was decorated with red accessories. A room with this kind of coloring, only two places should have this decoration available, a wedding room or a bridal chamber.

FUCK, FUCK, FUCK. Is she not He Yu? Eh, He Yu? He???? Is it not read as He but Qiao? Then Brother Yu that He Yue said, is Brother Zhou Yu???

Finally Liu Mang understood, He Yu is Qiao Yu and essentially Da Qiao.

TL: 禾 = He, 乔 = Qiao. See the similarities???

“Me and her, didn't do anything, that time was only a dream!” Liu Mang started to try and trick himself but all is futile. For Liu Mang then saw, on the bedsheet, there is blood from his defloration, it can be seen clearly because the bedsheet’s color is white. FUCCCCKKKK!!!!! I COCKBLOCKED A PERSON ON HIS FIRST NIGHT WITH HIS WIFE!!!!

I’M DEAD, I SLEPT IN THE WRONG ROOM, I SLEPT WITH WRONG PERSON! THIS IS DA QIAO, SUN CE’S BRIDE-TO-BE, DA QIAO!!!!!

“YOU!!!!!” Qiao Yu has also regained consciousness. After carefully looking at the person on the bed, isn’t this person General Liu Mang who saved her life from tiger and blood loss from outskirts of Shucheng County?

“You, how did you appear here?!” Da Qiao panicked. It is true, she had a favorable impression of Liu Mang and even fell in love with him. But that feeling is worthless because she had been engaged to Sun Ce from the very beginning. And today, she was going to be Sun Ce’s wife, so all she can do is bury her feelings for Liu Mang forever.

But just now, in this wedding room, on the wedding bed they were both relatively honest with their feelings.

Liu Mang finally knew why when he touched her earlier in his “dream”, her skin was very familiar. Because he had touched her a lot of times

before, when bandaging her! Also on Qiao Yu's chest, there is a faint scar mark which had started to heal up.

"Miss He Yu, no no no. I should call you Madame Qiao. If I said I entered the wrong room, would you believe me?!" Said Liu Mang while smiling bitterly toward Qiao Yu.

Qiao Yu also understood, a moment ago when they slept together, his partner is Liu Mang not Sun Ce.

"Da Da Da Da!" Suddenly there were footsteps in courtyard.

If he was discovered entering wedding room, being killed on the spot would be considered a gift. Even if he managed to run away, how can he possibly stay in Lu Bu's army? People invite you to a wedding but you sleep with the inviter's wife?! In this day and age, both adulterers included in Fornication must be castrated.

"Madame, I will explain to you later, but right now, please put on your clothes ASAP! Otherwise, both of us are going to die!" Liu Mang was really afraid Qiao Yu would not quickly react. To be honest, Liu Mang still had a way out if he was discovered. He could just go back to the present, but Qiao Yu's fate will be death. Sun Ce is a warlord, so it is impossible to let this matter go, so he could only kill Da Qiao to appease his anger.

Fortunately, Da Qiao also knew that the situation is very serious. After she listened to Liu Mang, she quickly put on her wedding attire again. The steps are getting nearer every second. Liu Mang then hid behind a closet, with a sword on his hand.

Chapter 88 – Wedding's End

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“How can Milord be so drunk?!” Huang Gai and Han Dang, who are both of Sun Jian’s retainer, are watching Sun Ce sleeping from intoxication. They watched Sun Ce grow up since childhood until he became the warlord that he is now.

So for Sun Ce, they are his elders. Seeing their child like this, how can they not worry? It is true that this is Sun Ce wedding day, and he needed to drink wine for courtesy, but one cannot drink this much. Both of them can’t help but blame Sun Ce.

“It was General Lu. Milord accompanied General Lu to drink many bowls!” Said Sun Ce’s personal bodyguard shyly.

“General Lu?!” Han Dang and co really did not expect this outcome. At first, they thought Sun Ce had made His Highness Prince of Shu drunk as revenge for those scholars, but who would have thought that his father-in-law toasted him for his son-in-law’s revenge, and finally made Sun Ce drunk as a skunk. Sun Ce wasn’t much of a match for Lu Bu in terms of drinking prowess.

“Ah, forget it! Forget it!” Those veterans really do not care at all “Hurry, take Milord to the wedding room!” The first night as a groom equals to a thousand nights as a man. So it must not be delayed by any means.

“Yes sir!” Then several maids helped Sun Ce stand and walk to wedding room.

“Thirsty, give me water!” Sun Ce was a general whose strength has reach super-class. Even though he is drunk right now, he was still conscious of what was happening. When he opened both his eyes, he saw Qiao Yu who is wearing a red wedding attire with a phoenix embroidered on her cloth.

“A real beauty!” Sun Ce was taken aback with Qiao Yu’s appearance, but then his intoxication started to take over, dropping his consciousness. “Hey, this is my happiest day, so this is my wedding room right? And the one who sits on the bed is my wife? So, I will rush her right now!” With that thought, Sun Ce rushed to his room, wanting to plunder his war spoils. She be a mother of his descendant which will safeguard Sun clan’s existence and footing in history.

“Hehehehe! Da Qiao is my wife!” Hey, this is one of Jiangdong’s most beautiful women. How could Sun Ce not be proud of his achievement?

Actually he has seen Da Qiao’s appearance. At that time, he was really startled by her beauty. Especially when two sisters stood together, it can make the moon blush when seeing both of them.

Therefore, once he has conquered Wancheng city, Sun Ce set an engagement with Lord Qiao. At that time, Zhou Yu was also with him. Why they became friends, even the best of friends, simply because their interests and hobbies are the same, and that goes value in a women’s beauty.

If, at that time Zhou Yu was not present, it is possible for Sun Ce to have both sisters’ hands.

Listening to the footsteps getting closer and closer, Liu Mang who was currently hiding behind closet, began to panic more and more.

"Oh, my wife, wait for me to lift your red scarf!" Sun Ce cannot wait to consummate his marriage, but his mouth is very parched, and his head is still very groggy. Seeing there is a jade jug on the table, he quickly drank it to quench his thirst.

"Milady, here I come!"

Listening to footsteps sound getting nearer and nearer, Qiao Yu had a very different reaction to Liu Mang, she did not panic at all, but instead a kind of calmness.

Her scarf was lifted, and it revealed a jade-like face, beautiful and alluring.

In front of Qiao Yu there is a very handsome man, taller than Liu Mang. Liu Mang's appearance can be described as an average person, if he was lost in crowd, he would not be recognized at all. Sun Ce was different, with height of 190 cm, his placement would be a GaoFuShuai (tall, rich and handsome) kind of character. Even Dao Ming Si of F4 can be counted as an average person compared to him.

He is the boss of all Jiangdong, of course he is rich. His subordinate's numbers in the thousands with numerous excellent people, and on the top of it there is Zhou Yu as the chief of those talented people. His height is 190 cm (enough to be a celebrity and basketball player), his strength is at super-class, his eyebrow is beautiful and his facial cast is very good looking (this is his handsomeness)

If Sun Ce did not grow up to be this handsome, how could Yuan Shu want him to marry his daughter? It is because Sun Ce is so handsome, even men are also attracted to him.

And if Liu Mang was compared with Sun Ce. Liu Mang's would be a featherweight compared to Sun Ce's who is a heavy-weight. His battle prowess is only 5 points, no no no, after training, Liu Mang's battle prowess already risen to 50 points, but if he ran into Sun Ce, he'll die by one move.

If you compare appearance, you can say, Liu Mang is a comedian like Stephen Chow and Sun Ce is an idol and actor like Andy Lau.

If you compare government positions, Liu Mang's is higher than Sun Ce, because he is Prince of Shu, but in this chaotic time, Prince of Shu is not valuable at all because it cannot attract soldiers and retainers to serve for him

Liu Mang's men is only Cheng Yu, a second-class general, but Sun Ce?! He had a lot of valiant general under him and numerous veterans.

Liu Mang's division is only Urban Army with total of 3,000 people. Sun Ce, lead an army of hundreds of thousands and that is not including his naval units and cavalry units.

However even with this big gap, in Qiao Yu's mind Sun Ce does not exist, only Liu Mang exist.

Eileen Chang once said once a woman led by a man on her first pleasurable experience, she would not be able to forget it. These words which written in her novel Lust/Caution is correct, because women will remember her first night to be most profound of all nights, especially if the first partner is gentle.

TL: Eileen Chang https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eileen_Chang (modern novelist)

“Milady, you are very beautiful!” Sun Ce is really infatuated with the beautiful lady in front of him. He then extend his arm to touch and feel the beautiful skin of his wife.

But Da Qiao unconsciously moved her body to back, avoiding Sun Ce’s arm.

“Does my breath reeks of wine? Is that why, milady is avoiding my touch?!” Sun Ce shook his head and kept looking at Da Qiao. He thinks that Da Qiao unconsciously avoided his touch because he reeks of liquor.

“Milady, this is our first night together, we should not waste this time, ‘okay?!” Sun Ce’s face is paralyzed due to intoxication and now forcing himself to smile, exerting his last effort. Suddenly, he disrobed his clothes to consummate his marriage as quickly as possible. So fast, that when he disrobed his wedding cloth, the nearby red candle was extinguished by a gust of wind produced by his movement.

“Milady, I am coming to you!” Said Sun Ce while plunging himself to Qiao Yu.

Outside wedding room, there are a few veterans who are eavesdropping the wedding room. Sun Ce's personal guard can only smile wryly watching those veterans.

"What do you think, is Milord capable of drinking that much wine?!" The owner of the voice is an old man, but his voice is full of anger.

"How can he not be capable? A Long time ago, we also drank that amount of wine with the old lord, remember?!" Said a few veterans while laughing, because they are among those who understand Sun Jian and Sun Ce the best.

"And now Milord is striving to be as good as our old lord, how can he not be capable of handling that amount of wine?!" Finally Huang Gai opened his mouth. From the beginning, he was just silent and listening to his compatriots.

"You see it, now!!! Milord has extinguished the candle! So right now, he must be enjoying his wife!" Said a bunch of veterans, who understood the meaning.

"Okay then, it is good already. We go!" Eavesdropping is not a good thing. However the one who is marrying is your old lord's son, how can you resist the temptation not to eavesdrop?! Let alone they are Sun Ce's new retainers or Sun Jian's former subordinate. Inside the wedding room, Da Qiao was pinned down by Sun Ce.

- - - -

“General Sun, Hello, General Sun?!” Qiao Yu is shouting cautiously. Has Sun Ce discovered that she is no longer virgin?!

“Bofu?!” Qiao Yu called his courtesy name, yet he still had no reaction. “Husband?!” Qiao Yu called with an alluring voice, but still no reaction at all. Qiao Yu is being pinned down by Sun Ce. Sun Ce’s height of 190 cm has covered Qiao Yu small stature completely. Therefore Qiao Yu could not see what Sun Ce is doing right now.

“Wheet!” Qiao Yu is whistling in Sun Ce’s ear with the sound larger than thunderclap, to check on Sun Ce’s condition.

“Did he fall asleep?!” In Qiao Yu’s mind, she thought on how ridiculous this person is. He fell asleep on the first night? He fell asleep in the wedding room?!

Qiao Yu then put her hand on his breast. Seeing that his pulse is constant and stable, she finally determined that Sun Ce has fallen asleep.

She had exhausted all of her strength when she slept together with Liu Mang. So Qiao Yu feared that Sun Ce would be awakened by the noise. Therefore she continued to be cautious. Her hand has been sweating profusely when she tried to touch Sun Ce.

Sun Ce is asleep and is now snoring. Beside the bed there is a broken jade jug. That jade jug earlier was filled with newly-married wine for a couple. Seeing the wine pouring on the floor, but with only a little liquid left implied one thing, Sun Ce drank up the whole jug.

Qiao Yu really cannot understand it at all. Actually when Sun Ce was almost sober, he was very thirsty and when he saw a jade jug on the table, he just drank it thinking it was water. Drinking that much wine without getting drunk? It is an impossible feat for any person.

"Oohh, he is drunk as a skunk!" In Qiao Yu's heart there is a sigh of relief. That pretty lady now sitting on the bedside with moonlight shining her, was almost like a goddess who descended to earth.

Anyone would wish to hold this celestial female in their bosom, and would love to relieve all her sadness. If a man saw this, he will definitely be charmed by her expression and he will wish to hug this goddess relieve all her sorrows.

"Come out!" Qiao Yu calling toward the closet.

A naked man holding a long sword showed himself. It is Liu Mang who hid behind the closet. It is good that Sun Ce is drunk, otherwise Liu Mang will probably kill Sun Ce from the back using the long sword.

"Speak, how did appear in my newly-wed room?!" Qiao Yu said coldly to Liu Mang.

"Madame Qiao Yu, the truth is, I was just wandering here, and I could not find my guest room!" Liu Mang smiled bitterly. Then he said that he did not know this Administration office is so big with many-many crossings. He really only wanted to find a room, so he can sleep. But who knew, that he went into wedding room and slept with the bride.

From Liu Mang's liquor breath, Da Qiao also believed that Liu Mang was lost and accidentally entered the wedding room however the matter that has occurred is very difficult to undo.

"Now, what we should do?!" Da Qiao frowned on the bed. Sun Ce is still snoring, he drank too much liquor.

Liu Mang was watching Da Qiao bite her teeth realize that he had made a huge mistake someone's wife. Furthermore, this is not the modern age, even in the modern age, the punishment for rape is very strong, he could be imprisoned for lifetime, but this is the ancient age punishment for an adulterer like this will result in him being castrated and the girl being tortured.

Should I kill her?! This is not a modern time, it is ancient time. So, this time, there is no good forensic techniques. If Liu Mang kills Qiao Yu, I believe Sun Ce will take a very long time investigating the case. But Liu Mang could not do it, because it is his mistake from the very start. Qiao Yu is innocent, moreover, can killing Qiao Yu solve the big problem? Once exposed, Liu Mang's death will be worse.

"Come with me, elope with me! Let's find a place where nobody could find us!" This is Liu Mang's other suggestion. Liu Mang and Da Qiao could escape and live in seclusion or he could hide her in his division and set out to Hanzhong furthering Lu Bu's plan. Liu Mang believed that he, as a general, can support a girl.

"I cannot go with you!" Qiao Yu shook her head. Before, she had a very good impression of Liu Mang and her heart has already been fallen for him. Now Liu Mang has also asked her to be with him, you can say that she has completely dedicated her heart to Liu Mang, and of course, she

also wanted to go with Liu Mang. But she cannot, if Sun Ce could not find her, he will definitely hold her father responsible and possibly shun her whole family, so for her family, she could not go.

"Then, I kill Sun Ce now!" This is Liu Mang's last suggestion.

"If you kill Sun Ce, our clan will not be able to live!" Sun Ce is Jiangdong Army's boss. If Liu Mang kills Sun Ce, then he will make the entire Jiangdong his personal enemy. If one can find the connection between Liu Mang and Da Qiao, then the Qiao clan will also suffer very big consequences.

"You go!" After thinking about it for a long time Da Qiao finally said it.

"I go?!" Liu Mang said his doubts "I go, but what about you?!" If before Da Qiao has not seen Liu Mang, Liu Mang may run away, but Liu Mang did not want to leave her now, if he went then what about her?

"Today Sun Ce is drunk! So I decided that as of tonight, I do not know you and you do not know me, you may never appear before me, and you did not come to my wedding room tonight. There is only me and Sun Ce, never you!" Said Qiao Yu with a cold tone. Actually she is shivering when she said those words, because she just denounced him who stole her virginity and heart.

"Eh?!" Liu Mang stunned.

"Am I not clear?! Forget everything about tonight, forget everything about me!"

Liu Mang deeply looked at the woman called Qiao Yu and said “I understand!” As of today, Liu Mang does not know Qiao Yu, and Qiao Yu does not know Liu Mang, they have taken their paths separately. This is the best solution for both of them. This woman’s heart is really magnanimous!

Liu Mang remembered when Qiao Yu was wounded deeply, she did not scream at all, because she did not want to make her younger sister worried and now she can forget tonight’s event for the sake of her family and Liu Mang too.

“I go now, please take care of yourself!” Liu Mang then get dressed, ready to leave.

“General Liu!” Suddenly Qiao Yu called Liu Mang.

“En? “ Liu Mang stopped.

“Please take care!” Said Qiao Yu.

“You also!” Liu Mang nodded and left the wedding room.

Qiao Yu is very tired and wanted to sleep but right now she knew that she cannot rest. So suppressing her drowsiness, Qiao Yu removed Sun Ce’s clothing and removed her own clothes, leaving only lingerie behind and then separated her body and Sun Ce and laid again to sleep.

Her eyes closed and this time she fell asleep.

Soon, morning came.

Sun Ce slowly opened his eyes to the sun's warmth and then shook his head fiercely. Wine really left a very bad aftertaste, as of now Sun Ce head is very sore.

Who drank wine with him yesterday?! Is it Lu Bu? Right, it is Marquis of Wen Lu Bu. Sun Ce started recollecting his memory. How many bowls did he and Lu Bu drink? 10 bowls? 20 bowls? Damn, that man's alcohol tolerance is really scary. Sun Ce wanted to laugh bitterly but suddenly found out that he is wearing nothing but his underpants.

The bed quilt is red, the room is red and even the decorations are all red.

Yesterday was my wedding banquet. Sun Ce remembered that yesterday he and Lu Bu had a drinking bout, so he must have missed his first night.

He thought, yesterday Da Qiao must have waited a very long time and now he thought since he missed it, he wanted to wake up Da Qiao to make up for first night, but he was suddenly startled, because at bed corner there is a red stain on his white silk bed sheet.

Right, there is a red stain on the white silk. The white is the silk original color, but the red stain was blood.

This stain is from her defloration last night, so Sun Ce understood it, every first night, there must be this stain. Was he not drunk last night? How can there is a stain?! Sun Ce really had a doubt. Did I do it last night, without me remembering it?!

Sun Ce was completely dumbfounded.

Sun Ce's movement on the bed affected Da Qiao. Last night, she was deflowered, so at morning it is still very painful and Da Qiao cannot help but moan and wrinkled her brow in her sleep.

"Is this pain from being deflowered?!" It was now more believable to Sun Ce that yesterday night he consummated his marriage unconsciously. If he did not consummate, how would her face have that painful look? While Sun Ce is pondering it, suddenly his personal bodyguard shouted "General Sun, General Lu and Prince of Shu are waiting outside for you!"

"Are they?!" Sun Ce touched his head. Hmm…. Still a little giddy. They come to say farewell right?!"

"I have to change clothes!" Sun Ce afraid to disturb Da Qiao. Went to his concubine's room to change his clothes into a formal one after that he went to the main hall.

At the main hall, there are some military officials who attended last night's banquet stayed at Administration office. They are mainly veterans and are headed by Huang Gai. Seeing Sun Ce come into the hall, Huang Gai winked "Milord, how was your sleep last night?!"

“Quite OK, but because of the wine, I cannot remember anything!” Responded Sun Ce. These veterans had seen him grow up, so if they continue to gossip about last night, they will bring down their lord’s dignity with them.

“Drinking liquor, but can also blow out the red candles??? WOW!” Han Dang said frankly.

“Yigong!” Those veterans wanted to prevent Han Dang, because this veteran may tell their lord that they eavesdropped last night.

TL: Han Dang’s courtesy name is Yigong

“Cough!” Although Sun Ce did not say anything, but he knew that these veterans eavesdropped on his wedding room. One can say that these veterans are Sun Ce’s uncle and Sun Ce’s family. So Sun Ce just helplessly heard their conversation, but from a few of them, he knew that last night he was not sober.

But because Da Qiao’s virginity is lost, he did not suspect anything further.

“Uncle Lu! Your Highness Prince of Shu!” Sun Ce greet Lu Bu and Liu Mang who have been waiting inside the hall “Last night, did you rest well?!”

“Yes, I rested well!” Lu Bu has not spoken yet, but Liu Mang already spoke out of guilt.

“Eh?!” Lu Bu felt that Liu Mang today is very strange but he could not

say put his tongue on it.

“My worthy nephew Sun Ce, we have been disturbing you for a few days, so today, we must start again our journey!” Lu Bu said it straight to the point.

“Eh?! Uncle Lu, why don’t you stay a few more days?!” Said Sun Ce out of courtesy. Actually Sun Ce was also looking forward for Lu Bu to leave, because he spent too much grain and provisions of this Wancheng city, making Sun Ce very distressed.

“No, your wedding day has passed, and we have been delayed too long in our journey!” Lu Bu refused Sun Ce’s courtesy and he and Liu Mang returned to his army camp.

Chapter 89 – There Is No Such Thing as Free Lunch

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

"So, all of Lu Bu's army is leaving…" Sun Ce stands on top of an outpost that is overlooking Wancheng city. He is watching the way Lu Bu army's moving, it is very organized and very disciplined, worthy being called Lu Bu's army, the elite of elites. Their divisions are really good. Urban Army, Formation Breaker, Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Sun Ce then murmured "Those divisions, if they belonged to me, Sun Ce, how good it would be?"

He said that in special regards to Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Those cavalry men are really making Sun Ce drool with envy. A warhorse is needed to create a cavalry, but in Huainan area, it is not suitable to grow a good horse, therefore he must import them from north for one hundred gold a horse. So, all these times, Sun Ce has been desiring to form a cavalry unit of his own.

If right now he had Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, he can invade the Central Plains and directly confront Cao Cao. However, he can only pity himself because he does not have any cavalry.

Yesterday, entertaining Lu Bu's army and his wedding banquet really made Sun Ce distressed, because he needed to entertain a lot of people. The amount is not hundreds but tens of thousands of people. The amount of grain and provisions used to entertain Lu Bu's army can used to fight in war two times in succession.

"Gongjin, is this really worth it?!" Asked Sun Ce, really puzzled from Zhou Yu's proposed scheme before his departure to liberate Sanjiangkou, and now he returned empty handed because he was unable to do it.

The true meaning of his scheme is actually to spread gossip that Lu Bu's army and Sun Ce's army formed an alliance. Lu Bu's army is very happy because Sun Ce's had given entertainment without any conditions or any interest, instead he just took a big loss of supplies at the surface.

"Milord, do not worry!" Said Zhou amusingly while looking at Sun Ce's bewilderment. Sun Ce is afraid of being poor. Since his father passed away, Sun Ce was at mercy of Yuan Shu. So every foot soldiers, money, and grain and provisions is very valuable in Sun Ce's eyes.

Zhou Yu then swung his feather fan toward the map while smiling ""Yesterday's entertainment was not a gratis entertainment. In this whole world, people always knew that there is no free lunch!

In order to reach Xinye, Lu Bu's army had passed through our Lujiang and now they are heading toward Jiangxia. Huang Zu of Jiangxia is our enemy. If he knew that we have entertained Lu Bu's army lavishly, Milord, what do you think his feelings are like right now?!" Said Zhou Yu again with smile on his face.

"He will be uneasy all the time!" Answered Sun Ce toward Zhou Yu's question.

"Correct, he will be very uneasy all the time. Although Huang Zu did not have power to invade, he still has the strength to defend his land.

Although we beat him once, but we were still unable to conquer Jiangxia! Now we have Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen, who can help to break Jiangxia! With this scheme, conquering Jiangxia has become our key to

conquering the Jing Province!”

“So, as long as we keep spreading gossip that we had formed alliance with Lu Bu’s army, the one who will be most afraid is Huang Zu. Plus there are news that Lu Bu’s army is approaching Jiangxia, the panic-stricken Huang Zu will definitely dispatch troops to hit the enemy. Given their temperament as consideration, Lu Bu and Huang Zu will definitely do battle, and at that moment, our opportunity will be opened!”

“Can Lu Bu defeat Huang Zu?!” Sun Ce’s brow wrinkled heavily. He tried to capture Jiangxia so many times before. But, no matter what method he used to capture, he is still unable to capture Jiangxia and his casualties are very high every time he campaigned toward Jiangxia.

Zhou Yu then elaborated his analysis “If in naval battle, then Lu Bu’s army potential is currently zero. But if it is about land battle, ten or twenty Huang Zu tied together is still not Lu Bu’s match! Right now, we lack a land force. Once Lu Bu and Huang Zu do battle on land, simultaneously we capture Jiangxia through the water under the pretext that we are Lu Bu’s allies.

“But, if Lu Bu knows that we are using him, he will definitely be infuriated!” Sun Ce is really worried at this matter. No one wanted to start a war with Lu Bu.

“They will not do that!” Zhou Yu shook his head and while smiling he said “When that time comes, Lu Bu cannot afford to be our enemy!” Once we have both advanced to Jiangxia, Lu Bu will have offended Liu Biao of Jing Province, whether he had intention or not, he is also near Jing Province and Yu Province which belong to Cao Cao, and he is Lu Bu’s mortal enemy.

With Liu Biao and Cao Cao offended, Lu Bu cannot afford to offend another warlord. If he also made Sun Ce his enemies, Lu Bu may never have a home base ever again. Therefore, no matter what, if according to logic, Lu Bu will ask for Sun Ce to form an alliance.

And, if it is true, Lu Bu will get angry. They each possess a different realm of warfare. On land battle, Lu Bu is the king. But on sea, Sun Ce's army can be personified as a dragon in water, really strong. Can one group of northern land-lubber fight with southerners in naval battle?!

"Okay then, so we just sit back and wait for the good news from Marquis of Wen Lu Bu!" Sun Ce is smiling now. Jiangxia is the location that he wanted to grab the most, and he looks at Jiangxia's direction with expressions full of determination. He thought "Oh, father. Please wait! Your son will certainly take revenge for you. Huang Zu!!!! Liu Biao!!!! Soon, we will settle our blood debt with you!"

"Un!" Zhou Yu also nodded. Seeing that Sun Ce has a look full of determination, he knows that this is Sun Ce, Sun Bofu that he knows.

- - - -

Currently he is reading an intel from Jiangdong, his hand is trembling the entire time he was reading it. Huang Zu is really restless. It said in the intel, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is heading south. He did not know what is the reason for Lu Bu to head south, but when he heard news that Lu Bu is approaching Lujiang, his heart was very happy, because he thought Lu Bu wanted to swallow Sun Ce's domain. But the intel that he got today, made Huang Zu really restless.

Several days ago, he had Intel that Lu Bu had passed Shucheng County and Shiting to go toward Wancheng city. Sun Ce unexpectedly let them pass Lujiang. Furthermore Sun Ce and Zhou Yu came out of Wancheng city, without bodyguards, ride 50-li to meet Lu Bu and co from Wancheng city.

They are both warlords. How can Sun Ce want to meet up with him as if he was meeting up with guests, with no bodyguards at all? Sun Ce really did not fear that Lu Bu may take him hostage to seize his domain directly.

Did Lu Bu join forces with Sun Ce? Huang Zu can only think this possibility for now. Sun Ce is Jiangdong's Little Conqueror, Lu Bu is a mighty tiger. If these two joined forces, this Jiangxia will be hard to protect.

Please do not look at Huang Zu's defeat record when defending Jiangxia these many years, but look at who is his opponent who caused him so many defeats. With Sun Ce as his opponent, he suffered only defeat after defeat, ingloriously.

Moreover, Huang Zu is old now about 60 years old, even when that time, when he killed Sun Jian he was 50 years old. So he no longer has any ambition. But even if he was defeated many times, he still maintained

a stubborn defense in order to prevent Sun Ce from entering Jing Province through Jiangxia.

From his prowess alone, it can be said Huang Zu still had the ability as a commander-in-chief of the army, but he is getting old and his prowess has declined by the years.

“Gentlemen, do you have a stratagem to propose?!” Inquired Huang Zu while glancing towards his civil and military retainers.

Because Jiangxia is the bridgehead that connects Jing Province and Jiangdong, it is also fortress to withstand the Sun clan's attack, Liu Biao assigned his elites to guard Jiangxia, and it resulted with many generals and scholars in this place. But they have kept silent all this time.

With Sun Ce's frequent attacks it made these generals and scholars lose heart, now with the addition of Lu Fengxian, their morale is at the lowest point.

A young man then stood up, holding his fist and said “Dear father, I would like to take vanguard this time. Since ancient times, soldiers are used to block water and hold off the earth. We do not need to worry about these two bastards Sun Ce and Lu Bu, who are they anyway? Please assign 20,000 elite troops to your son, I will make sure they die shortly!” Hearing that young man's words, Huang Zu nodded many times.

That young man's courage and strength is really praiseworthy. That young fellow who just spoke is Huang Zu's dear son, Huang She. He is tall and quite good looking, he can be compared to Huang Zu in his younger times. But only his looks is similar, his administration and military skill is

only average but this person had “ambition” in his heart.

“General She, your decision is incorrect!” Huang Zu had not yet opened his mouth to respond, when suddenly a nearby general stood up. His armor is dark yellow, on his face is a full of beard which length is already touching his chest. His face filled with a heroic look.

“Huang Zhong, why you do this?!” Huang She hit his table and pointing toward this veteran general. Huang She is really angry, because each time he showed his determination in front of his father, this Huang Zhong always poured cold water on his request.

TL: Huang Zhong, master archer, http://kongming.net/novel/sgz/huangzhong.php

Actually he also knew that he sometimes spoke many very unreasonable things, but if you want to refute him, everyone must wait after his father praise him, and only after that can you refute him.

If you refute him without praise, how can Huang She have face?

Huang Zhong really did not care about this Huang She. Although he is a general of Jing Province, his master is Liu Biao, not Huang Zu. He asked to be Huang Zu's subordinate just because of the rumor that he had a good doctor to treat his son.

“General Huang She, please listen to my analysis. Little Conqueror Sun Ce as well Marquis of Wen Lu Fengxian, are both dragons among dragon. Once they form an alliance, it will be a big calamity for our Jing Province. Jiangdong will lead several tens of thousands of naval troops, this Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian also will bring several tens of thousands of land troops.

With them attacking our Jiangxia together, it will be very hard to defend Jiangxia with only 30,000 troops. Therefore we should just maintain a stubborn defense to buy time, and request reinforcements from Milord!" Huang Zhong analysis is very rational. If Lu Bu and Sun Ce form an alliance. It is over for them. They both cover one realm of warfare. Sun Ce with his invincible navy and Lu Bu with his invincible land troops. They will tear apart this Jiangxia. So we should make a stubborn defense stance while we wait for reinforcements from Xiangyang.

Only with reinforcements, one can keep defending Jiangxia and subsequently Jing Province.

"Hmph, are you afraid, huh??? We haven't even fought, yet you are already afraid??? Huang Zhong, you are really an old chicken!" Huang She really did not respect Huang Zhong at all, even calling his name directly. Hey, Huang Zhong's rank and Huang Zu's rank is the same!!!

"Give me 20,000 elite troops. I am confident that I can protect Jiangxia unharmed. Tch, maintaining a stubborn defense and asking reinforcements from Xiangyang. This is still our Jing Province battle, right?! So we do not need reinforcements from Xiangyang" Huang She finally said nice things for once.

We have not gone on war yet, but someone told him to maintain defense and ask for reinforcements, isn't that cowardice? If we do not fight, then how can we maintain morale, how can those generals be willing to follow you?

If it was a veteran who said this, everyone will probably listen to his

discourse. But these words come from Huang She, Huang Zu's successor, how can anyone believe him? He's never gone to battle, he did not have any brains to think clearly, he was stupidity personified.

"Bah, give you 20,000 elite troops, if it isn't annihilated, it would be God's grace!" There is someone who is whispering in low voice.

Jiangxia's soldiers have only 30,000 troops. They need to be spread out to defend vital places. So, they could only dispatch 10,000 troops at the very most.

If Huang Zu could not look at the big picture, and proceeded to give his son 20,000 elite troops, once Lu Bu and Sun Ce hit them and they fall apart, at that time, we civil and military retainers could only pack up everything and leave Jiangxia ASAP.

"WHO, WHO THE HELL SAID THAT JUST NOW!!!" Huang She's anger reached its limits. Today Huang Zhong had already decline his request directly, but retorted him by giving him his rhetorical speech and now there is another bastard who spoke foul words at him. It really made him infuriated.

Huang Zhong was already showing much respect by saying "General She, your decision is incorrect!" But this voice just threw shit to his face. That voice is just saying that 20,000 elite troops will possibly be annihilated in battle. That's the same as verifying that Huang She is garbage?

"THAT VOICE IS YOURS, GAN NING, GAN XINGBA!" Huang She already found that person. Gan Ning, Gan Xingba and Huang She's age is similar

around 25 years old at this time. But if you want to compare Gan Ning's merit to Huang She's, Gan Ning is much, much bigger than Huang She. But at this time, Huang She is his superior, so at least he must show respect to him.

TL: Gan Ning, naval master, http://kongming.net/novel/sgz/ganning.php

“YOU’RE ONLY A LIEUTENANT GENERAL, ONLY A MERCENARY, HOW CAN YOU HOPE TO CRITICIZE ME?!” Huang She was just hit in the face by Gan Ning. How cannot he not retaliate back? Naturally he will talk about position to hit Gan Ning's honor.

At the moment Gan Ning is still a mercenary. He offered his services to Liu Biao and became his subordinate, however he then went to Huang Zu after finding out that Liu Biao is blind for talent.

For many years he offered his services here and there, but he never got entrusted with a big task. The highest post that he has been assigned to is Lieutenant General.

In ancient times, a lieutenant general really did not amount to anything at all. And Huang She as Huang Zu’s eldest son, who is also the Administrator of Jiangling Commandery, naturally he can scold and insult Gan Ning.

“SCREW YOU!!!!” Gan Ning is a mercenary, so naturally he did not have a good temper. Just now he was insulted by that haughty bastard, so he want to strangle his neck, but he was blocked immediately by a general.

That person who blocked Gan Ning is called Su Fei, another of Huang Zu's subordinates for his naval forces. Gan Ning is his lieutenant general for his naval force, furthermore Su Fei is the one who recruited Gan Ning to Huang Zu's forces. So their relationship is definitely very good.

"Xingba!!! Stop being presumptuous to General Huang She!" Su Fei blamed Gan Ning a little. He whispered this to Gan Ning's ear "Xingba, I also do not have a good opinion on Huang She, but if you hit Huang She now, you'll be dead!!!"

Gan Ning then calm down a little. Huang She is Huang Zu's son, so it could be said that Huang She is Jiangxia's army little lord. So if earlier Gan Ning hit Huang She, he will have an excuse to execute Gan Ning.

"Ptui, once a pirate is always a pirate, you really do not know manners at all!" Huang She spits in front of Gan Ning, further disrespecting him.

Huang She really wanted to kill Gan Ning, the moment he hit him. But looking at Su Fei quickly calm Gan Ning, he further insulted him with utmost disdain.

Today Gan Ning is a mercenary but in the past, he had a reputation of being river pirate. He can be recognized because he always wore silk clothing with bells on his hips. It is known that once you hear a bell ringing, it will send fear to all the merchants who knew him.

But that's already in the past, because not long after that Gan Ning realized that he cannot continue living like a bandit.

So, Gan Ning then read all sage king's books and strategy books, and became very adept in art of war and etiquette.

After that, he was hired by Liu Biao, but he did not make him a central figure of his army, because Liu Biao looked down on his past, being a river pirate. A fact that Gan Ning is not comfortable to talking about.

If this is a normal time and place, Gan Ning would just choke Huang She immediately. But currently in he is in Jiangxia's war council, there are several generals who are present right now, not to mention outside this room, there are several bodyguards, so Su Fei quickly calm Gan Ning down.

Gan Ning just swallowed his anger and kept quiet toward Huang She's insult and closed his eye to calm himself down.

Su Fei then patted Gan Ning's shoulder and said "Milord, what General Huang She and Old General Huang said are both reasonable. Why is what Old General Huang reasonable? Because at this point, if we do not request reinforcements to Xiangyang for Jiangxia defense, we will be destroyed by Lu Bu and Sun Ce's coalition.

So, we need to request reinforcements in order to fortify our defenses, but we need also to consider, the case above is only and only if Lu Bu and Sun Ce formed coalition.

If both of them did not form a coalition, then the reinforcements that we asked is a big joke!"

While listening to Su Fei, Huang Zu nodded to his discourse. He and Su Fei also have the same worry. Although Jiangxia is one of Jing Province's commandery but the fact remains that this place is Huang Zu's home base.

It can be said inviting reinforcements is easy but returning reinforcements is very hard.

If it turns out Lu Bu and Sun Ce did not form a coalition, how can he, Huang Zu, explain it to Liu Biao? Maybe at that time, he must hand over Jiangxia's control back to Liu Biao.

"What General Huang She said is also reasonable. If we are to be afraid before we do battle, then we have committed a very big mistake in military law. If Sun Ce's army attacks our Jiangxia, 20,000 elite troops are too many, because we also need to defend our cities. So, Fei proposes that Milord dispatch 15,000 troops but send only 100 soldiers to keep enemies outside Jiangxia!"

Su Fei strategy really considered everything. If Lu Bu and Sun Ce are not allied then it is the best. But if they are allied together, we can send those 100 troops to feint pre-emptive on Lujiang, in order to quickly put Sun Ce into a defensive stance. While those 15,000 troops create a diversion to buy time until reinforcements from Xiangyang arrived.

"Un!"Huang Zu nodded "Zimo's suggestion is extremely excellent. Okay then, Huang Zhong and Su Fei receive your order!" Finally Huang Zu was really determined because of Su Fei's suggestion. Su Fei's courtesy name is Zimo, therefore he is Su Fei, Su Zimo.

TL: Su Fei, another naval master, one of Huang Zu's best generals http://the3kingdoms.wikia.com/wiki/Su_Fei

"We await your order, Milord!" Said Huang Zhong and Su Fei while kneeling.

"I appoint Huang Zhong as commander-in-chief, Su Fei as vice commander. You will command 15,000 troops. Both of you are to standby against enemy from beyond Jiangxia!"

"This general receives the order!" Huang Zhong and Su Fei said at the same time.

On the side, Huang She is really anxious. He is the first one who proposed to do battle and even volunteered himself, the command however is given to other people, in the end what role is he going to play in this battle?!

"Father, father!"

"My son, She, you also want to fight right?!" Huang Zu also saw his sons' eagerness. He also thinks that his son has the ability to assume responsibility for an important task.

This battle had Huang Zhong and Su Fei to command, so there should not be any major problems and should be safe for his son to gain merits then he said "Huang She, receive your order!"

"I await your order!" Hearing this sound, Huang She excitedly kneel to

receive order.

“You will assume responsibility as our army’s quartermaster! All of the provisions and grain distributions are your responsibility!” Quartermaster is a very important position as it can help to strengthen the overall army’s strength.

“Eh?! As quartermaster?!” Huang She thought that this job is too low for a person with his title.

Chapter 90 – Inevitable Battle With Huang Zu of Jiangxia

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Report!” Suddenly there is a scout reporting intel in Lu Bu’s big tent. The intel is that there are troop movements in front of Huangzhou city.

“Army, huh?!” Said Lu Bu while looking at a very rough map drawings. This is a map which covered Jiangxia and all of Jing Province. This map was given to him by Sun Ce.

Although this is very rough, it had detailed information with labels of names of all the districts, evidently Sun Ce invested alot of their time to make this map. From this map, we can see that Sun Ce has been plotting to take Jing Province for a long time.

Huangzhou city is in one of Jiangxia’s region, so obviously there will be army movement from Jiangxia belonging to Huang Zu.

“What does Huang Zu want to do?!” Lu Bu tried to guess what was going on in Huang Zu’s mind.

“Gongtai, has our messenger returned?!” Lu Bu who wanted to pass through Jiangxia, naturally will need to ask permission from Jiangxia’s owner.

From Jiangxia to Xinye, there are only two ways to reach it. One is through water, using waterway not only convenient but also quick. The second one is to take mountain road. The mountain road is very treacherous, and very bumpy. Not a good choice for his army to march

using the mountain road, as he is bringing his family and Miss Yuan, also it will be difficult for his cavalry unit to walk. So, the only way is to ask Huang Zu to provide Lu Bu with ships to transport Lu Bu army.

But, now Huang Zu unexpectedly deployed his army? What does he want to do? Evidently, he wanted to do battle!!! Chen Gong then said "Milord, we can forget that about messenger we sent or bringing toll fee to him, the result will always be battle.

This event happened because we have been sold out by Sun Ce!" Chen Gong then hand over an envelope containing detailed intel to Lu Bu.

Previously when Lu Bu arrived at Huangzhou's vicinity, he sent scouts and spies to gather information. The information that he obtained was that the entire Jiangxia is in full alert with the city gates shut tightly and soldiers wearing their armor. Why they did? It was because their side received an order that stated "We must fight with Lu Bu and Sun Ce's coalition army!"

"EH, WE ARE ALLIED WITH SUN CE'S ARMY?!" Lu Bu was suddenly standing. Disbelief with his own eyes, he already read the news more than ten times. What is written in the news is a rumor spread by Jiangdong's army that Lu Bu has allied with Sun Ce.

If you heard a rumor only once it will be dismiss it as rumor, but if you hear it again and again, you will start to believe that it is real. And the result is all of Jiangxia is on defensive from Lu Bu's "invasion". Huang Zu sent out Su Fei and Huang Zhong, his two best generals to command an army of 30,000 troops to repel his enemy.

“30,000 troops, eh?!” Lu Bu smiled disdainly. In the entirety of Jiangxia, it is impossible for him to have military a strength of 30,000 troops, does Huang Zu want to fight all out with his soldiers?!

“Who the hell is Su Fei and Huang Zhong?!” Lu Bu really have not heard the reputation of these two people before. Lu Bu not knowing who Su Fei is can be considered very normal because he is a general of the younger generation, this year hes only 29 years old. But Huang Zhong, if according to age, is almost the same age as Lu Bu. This year only 38 years old. But Huang Zhong did not show himself at the early stages of this chaotic time which is the Yellow Turban Rebellion, why did he not appear? Because he is busy going here to find remedy for his son’s illness.

Until later, Liu Biao’s foster son Liu Pan discovered Huang Zhong’s prowess and then recommended Huang Zhong to Liu Biao.

“Su Fei, is regarded as one of Jiangxia army’s mightiest general, a master in naval warfare!” Said Chen Gong. Chen Gong had already inquired all of the information regarding Sun Ce and Huang Zu’s several battles. At that time, Sun Ce’s general subordinates are Taishi Ci, Huang Gai, Han Dang, *etc*. They are all valiant generals. His advisors at that time were Zhou Yu, Lu Su, *etc*. But they still were not able to overcome Jiangxia, these are Su Fei’s merit. Su Fei’s strength is not strong, but he has the ability to train soldiers, much like Gao Shun. And also his men are very loyal to Su Fei , therefore in each battle, Su Fei can order his men to fight to the death.

“About Huang Zhong, I’m sorry Milord, I do not have any information on him!” Currently, Chen Gong has lost much of his intelligence-gathering prowess. It needed to be restored, because after they were expelled from Xu Province, his intelligence agency also fell apart.

“Damn, that evening banquet and entertainment for our army, it made it look like we were going to go to war for Sun Ce!” Lu Bu and Chen Gong understood this. During the banquet, Jiangdong’s scouts were spreading gossip of Lu Bu and Sun Ce’s army forming an alliance all around Jiangxia. That is why they “knew” that Lu Bu and Sun Ce are forming an alliance. So they really feared Sun Ce’s sudden growth in strength.

Sun Ce has been drooling over Jiangxia for far too long. He and Huang Zu were mortal enemies. As the proverb says, the enemy of my enemy is my friend. So Sun Ce entertained Lu Bu that day, at the banquet calling him uncle and even provided free grain and provisions to Lu Bu’s army. This kind of very intimate manner, how can it not make Huang Zu suspect the treatment heavily?

“We really did not expect this outcome!” Chen Gong shook his head. Originally he only thought that Sun Ce wanted to absorb the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, because in southern China, a warhorse is a very rare commodity. After the chaos broke, Gongsun Zan of Hebei managed to smuggle a few hundred horses at a constant rate to the Sun clan in the south.

Now Gongsun Zan has been extinguished by Yuan Shao. For Yuan Shao himself it is impossible for him sell or send warhorses, because cavalry is one of his strong points as a warlord. So, in the entire Jiangdong army, they only have several hundred warhorses. With only these warhorses, Sun Ce cannot make a large and strong cavalry unit, only micro cavalry unit.

Actually before they left, Lu Bu wanted give Sun Ce several hundred warhorses. Because if he did not, he will be marked as insincere. So, Lu Bu

wanted to give Sun Ce compensation for his hospitality and also wanted to tie up his relationship with him.

Lu Bu and Chen Gong really hadn't thought that what Sun Ce and Zhou Yu wanted is much more than just a warhorse. They wanted to use Lu Bu to kill Huang Zu of Jiangxia as a borrowed knife. If he conquered Jiangxia, Lu Bu will have offended Liu Biao thoroughly and at the same time Cao Cao will also target him as a threat for his rear, at that time Lu Bu will have no choice but to ally himself with Sun Ce. And if he cannot conquer Jiangxia, at that time when Lu Bu’s army and Jiangxia's army do battle, it will reduce Jiangxia's army strength considerably. At that time, Sun Ce and Zhou Yu could just emerge and obtain the spoils for themselves.

“Milord, what shoud we do now?!” Chen Gong is waiting for Lu Bu to decide. To battle or not battle with Jiangxia all is decided by Lu Bu.

“Gongtai, you speak, can we still clear things between us and Huang Zu?!” Lu Bu asked Chen Gong, a rhetoric question.

Chen Gong immediately shook his head. They were stationed in Wancheng city for quite long time. Sun Ce also treated them very well, his treatment is so well that even his own uncle did not have this kind of treatment.

In everyone eyes, if Sun Ce and Lu Bu did not form an alliance, can they still do this kind of thing? Even a stupid person wouldn't believe that they have not formed an alliance.

“Then it is inevitable, we must battle him!” Lu Bu’s eyes flashed killing intent. Lu Bu is not the first one to provoke by deploying their army

before him. The one who did that is basically asking for death by Lu Bu's hands. Moreover in the letter, another info said that the messenger sent to Jiangxia was killed by Huang Zu's son, Huang She.

"Pass my military order, army prepare for battle!" These times during recuperation, the nation already forgot Lu Bu army's terror. Whether he has or has not been used by Sun Ce, Lu Bu must fight Huang Zu. Not only to appease his bloodlust, but also to remind the entire Jing Province and even the entire nation that Lu Bu is still the god-of-war and his Lu Bu army is still number one in the entire nation.

Chapter 91 – The Precipice of Battle; Enter Huang Zhong

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Inside Huangzhou city's main camp.

“Any activities from Lu Bu’s army?!” Su Fei asked the scout. The news saying that Lu Bu’s army is approaching really made Su Fei restless.

He has not battled with Lu Bu’s army, but he had heard about his prowess making Cao Cao lose disgracefully back in Kaiyang, which made his restlessness even worse.

Moreover, there is something on his mind bothering him all the time. Su Fei always heard about the phrase “Among men, Lu Bu, among horses, Red Hare!”If Lu Bu is said to be the number one warrior who is also riding the number one warhorse, how can Lu Bu form an alliance with Sun Ce??

Jiangdong's Little Conqueror and god-of-war Lu Bu, they are both arrogant and domineering characters. If they form an alliance, there must be one person who will be the leader of the alliance. Will Lu Bu want to submit under another person again?

If Lu Bu is the leader, can Sun Ce relinquish his Jiangdong to be under Lu Bu's rule?!

Therefore Su Fei has been waiting from the beginning. Waiting for the opportune time to negotiate with Lu Bu’s army. Too bad, all of his efforts have been in vain. Lu Bu’s army, not only did they not explain their actions but directly prepared for battle with them. Is it true that Sun Ce and Lu

Bu formed an alliance?!

“Did they send messengers to us?!” Su Fei is a master in naval warfare, but he is also good in land warfare. But currently they only have 10,000 soldiers. It is not sufficient to defend against Lu Bu’s army who currently has soldiers and cavalry as far as the eye can see, making Su Fei's heart quiver in fear.

“They did send a messenger!” Suddenly there is a veteran general coming inside the main tent.

“General Huang!” Su Fei promptly held his fist respectfully toward the veteran.

Su Fei held profound feelings toward this veteran Huang Zhong. Not a disdain and contempt feeling like he had toward Huang She, nor suspicion like toward Huang Zu. Only admiration in his heart.

This veteran general looks old in appearance, but his skill with a curved broadsword made Su Fei deeply admire this general.

Moreover, Huang Zhong is a master in archery. One who can command troops and become a general is definitely a skilled person.

Working your way up the chain of command, you look up at generals wanting to be one. Once one becomes a general, they would then only admire other generals who have skill.

Su Fei had long admired Huang Zhong, let alone now when Huang Zhong has become a commander.

“Hmph!” Huang Zhong's mood is really bad now. So he just nodded when Su Fei paid his respect and goes on to sit at the commander's seat.

Suddenly Huang Zhong threw down a letter on his hand to the ground then cursed “SHIT!!!!”

TL: Original curse word is disgraceful, but I changed it to give more emotion

“What happened, General Huang?!” Su Fei is really confused why Huang Zhong angry, but he soon discovered the reason when he picked up the letter.

“Oh no... Why did this event happen?” Su Fei's brow also wrinkled.

“HUMPH, Lu Bu’s army has obviously sent a messenger, but that shitty Huang She killed him. Completely offending Lu Bu!”

Huang Zhong is angry from the bottom of his heart. Huang Zu, a fierce tiger, and father gave birth to such a pig-headed son. Huang Zhong understood his eagerness to contribute, but not like this, not this stupid action.

Earlier when Lu Bu sent out a messenger, we did not know whether he wanted to fight, pass through or send a war declaration, at the very least, we could have asked the messenger.

But that damned young master did not think far ahead and killed the messenger personally, leaving no room to maneuver.

Huang Zhong clearly saw Lu Bu’s army strength. 5,000 cavalry troops, 3,000 troops of Formation Breaker, 3,000 people in the Urban Army, more than 10,000 foot soldiers, and about 5,000 bowmen. The total is approximately 26,000 troops.

And Huang Zhong's army, although the amount is 30,000 troops, his

potential is only 15,000 troops with another 5,000 from his 15,000 is naval units. Actually, Huang Zhong also wanted to test this god-of-war Lu Bu's fierceness.

After all, they also have a navy to help resist Lu Bu's army, so Huang Zu's army can also force a standstill with Lu Bu. But this Huang She is a type of person who withheld any information for his own glory, an act that irritated Huang Zhong greatly.

"Grain and provisions! The eldest son needs to send a lot of grain and provisions!" What Su Fei was really worried is this. Huang Zu had made Huang She responsible for logistics,

If Huang She misplaced priorities then it will exhaust their grain and provisions at an alarming rate.

"He wouldn't dare allocate an insufficient amount grain and provisions for us!" Huang Zhong said in low voice.

Although Huang She really didn't have any skill at all, he wasn't stupid. He knows that an army who is going to go battle will need grain and provisions. If he sent Huang Zhong less supplies, Huang Zhong will be defeated and at that time, the eldest son will not escape the consequences.

"Grain and provisions is good now!" Su Fei sighed in relief. "So, General Huang, how do we fight this battle?!" Su Fei actually had opinions but he respected Huang Zhong's choice, moreover Su Fei needed to learn Huang Zhong's art of war and martial arts.

"Duel!" Said Huang Zhong while clenching his fist. "Duel?!" Su Fei was really stunned. Although they received the order to fight, they needed to take advantage of their naval units, so they can attack them using the

pincer method.

But the naval units had not arrived, and even though he had 10,000 foot soldiers, the enemy had cavalry troops, how can they possibly win?

“We leave main camp and confront them directly!” Huang Zhong said it in cold tone. “But!” Su Fei wanted to voice his opinions, but he was stopped by Huang Zhong fierce glare. “If we are to be afraid before doing battle, we have already lost one point from them. If this continues, then how we can fight a battle in the future? Therefore we must strike first, in order to secure momentum!”

The news of Sun Ce and Lu Bu’s army having made alliance made every Jiangxia soldiers lose their heart. If they refuse to do battle and only maintain a defensive stance, the heart of these soldiers will be crushed losing all their will to fight.

Moreover, Huang Zhong also wanted to see the Marquis of Wen Lu Bu's prowess, while thinking that, Huang Zhong rub the hilt of his curved dao.

“Good! Then we go to war!” The Vice commander's responsibility is to assist in performing the commander-in-chief's order.

So, once the commander-in-chief had made a decision, the vice commander must fully cooperate with him. So Su Fei immediately nodded.

“Bump, bump, bump!” From the direction of Huangzhou city, there is a huge amount of noise caused by the war drums. At the same time, Huangzhou city's front gate opened and Jiangxia soldiers poured out one after another and are now facing Lu Bu’s army directly.

“HMMM, INTERESTING, VERY INTERESTING!” Said Lu Bu while looking at Jiangxia's soldiers pouring out one after another. Originally Lu Bu thought that Jiangxia's army will just defend with Huangzhou city as its front and the river as its flank, so they can perform horn-shaped defense maneuver. But he really didn't think that Jiangxia's army would actually come out to attack Lu Bu’s army directly.

“This army is truly insane!” Liu Mang looks at the opposite army. 10,000 infantry versus Lu Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry in direct confrontation??? If that's not crazy then what is this?

“They are not insane!” Said Chen Gong who is standing nearby. He can see Jiangxia soldiers from here. From their terrified looks and slow movement, one can see that these soldiers are very restless.

This restless mood can be felt from all of Jiangxia's soldiers. Those soldiers are afraid of Lu Bu’s army. Currently their morale is at the lowest point.

If the commanding general refused battle again, perhaps their morale will be gone and their afraidness will become fear and restlessness will become their defeat.

If the soldiers are already afraid since the beginning, you might as well we drag them into battle. This is the bet.

If they won, then their morale will rise, and their afraidness will be gone.

If they are defeated, there is also merit, those who die will arouse the bloodlust from those who survived. Those who survived will be free of fear and restlessness and will regain the ability to fight.

“Huang Zhong of Jiangxia is here, who among Lu Bu’s army dares to duel with me!!!” That veteran hit his horse and pointing his curved dao toward Lu Bu’s army.

On his horseback, there is a long bow hanging. Because, Huang She has killed Lu Bu’s army messenger, it can be said he had clawed Lu Bu's face, and the result can only be one. BATTLE!!!

“Huang Zhong?!” Chen Gong froze for a moment, they're really betting everything on this battle.

For the commander-in-chief to go out directly.

“Eh, Huang Zhong?!” Liu Mang was stunned. Which Huang Zhong?! When Lu Bu and Chen Gong were discussing earlier, he did not come inside the main camp. He was busy sorting out his mind about the He sisters who turned out to be the Qiao sisters. And now he heard this name, he was stunned once again.

Huang Zhong of Jiangxia? Liu Mang started to sort out his history lesson. Huang Zhong is a native of Nanyang who later became a general in Changsha's commandery.

How can he become a general in Jiangxia commandery? Is he that Shu Country, Old Huang Zhong? Who is that old guy?

While Liu Mang was still pondering, Lu Bu has hit his horse to confront Huang Zhong.

Being challenged by the other army, how can Lu Bu’s army not send a respond? Plus, the one who placed the challenge is the commander-in-chief, so definitely Lu Bu will not send anyone else but him. So he himself begun riding toward the enemy's commander.

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian is here. Huang Zhong, you will receive a quick death!”

While the first reason that Lu Bu went out was because the enemy who challenged him is the commander-in-chief, the second reason is that Lu Bu felt that Huang Zhong is very strong, another pinnacle of the super-class generals!!!

And then, his Poseidon halberd and Huang Zhong's curved dao collided immediately!!!

Chapter 92 – Huang Zhong VS Lu Bu

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

All the experts present are in awe of this battle and continued to observe.

When the Poseidon halberd and golden curved dao collided in air. In their hearts only two words emerged “Really strong!”

It is said that Lu Bu's arms strength can hold up one of Nine Cauldron's tripod by himself and if this strength was used to kill, definitely this Jiangxia army commander-in-chief will die in a matter of seconds, causing Jiangxia's army to gain heavy losses.

TL: Nine Cauldrons of old yonder. It is said, that these cauldron is symbol of Zhou rites. Its weight is around 7,5 ton. And there is a proverb that if a man’s words have the weight of nine cauldrons, then he is a very trustworthy person.

The opposite Huang Zhong is also thinking the same, he fought this battle on his own initiative and even personally took charge in the assault, so he can kill a senior general in Lu Bu’s army to raise his army’s morale. But he did not think he would have such a big miscalculation. Never in his wildest imagination, did he think that Lu Bu is the one to come out and accept his challenge.

If Lu Bu is a mighty tiger, then Huang Zhong is a ferocious lion.

One is king of the forest and one is king of the savannah. When they

meet with each other, naturally they must decide with life or death.

“HAAA!!!: Huang Zhong raised both of his arms with his curved dao on his back and then tried to slash Lu Bu's skull with this posture. If this slash hit, it will be the end of Lu Bu.

“Good move!” Said Lu Bu while looking at this old general. He is only average in appearance but his beard is very long, on his face is a lot of wrinkles but his martial arts is very very strong.

He is able to take on Lu Bu's strength just like Zhang Fei, Guan Yu, and other super-class generals. Other people who met Lu Bu, will certainly die in one move.

That is, if Guan Yu and Zhang Fei are attacking him together.

But this veteran actually can match his strength by himself alone. And the most important thing is this veteran can also counter his attack. Really surprising Lu Bu.

“Interesting, interesting!!!” After Kaiyang breakthrough, Lu Bu has not been in duel for a long time. At Mt. Bagong battle, Chen Lan and Lei Bo can be considered as appetizers.

Now he can do battle because who he fought is a very strong general. So Lu Bu's excitement currently is very high.

Lu Bu does not avoid the overhead slash, but quickly blocked Huang Zhong's slash and added more strength in his hand and countered his attack.

With this burst of strength, Lu Bu is trying to take down Huang Zhong

in one blow.

You want to pin me down?! Huang Zhong has acknowledged that Lu Bu's strength is very big. But Huang Zhong's strength is also almost on par with Lu Bu. You want to compare strength with me, huh?

“Neigh, neigh, neigh!!!!” While Huang Zhong can withstand Lu Bu's strike his warhorse however cannot withstand it anymore, it's already kneeling in one leg.

“Hmm??!” Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled. His warhorse already could not withstand Lu Bu's attack, if Lu Bu attacked again, then the warhorse will possibly die from its organ failure due to pressure.

So, Huang Zhong swung his curved dao so that Lu Bu's Poseidon trident halberd had a downward movement was deflected to the other side in order to rescue his warhorse, who is currently unable to stand.

They did the same actions over and over with Lu Bu and Huang Zhong taking turns in attacking, until they spread out.

“God-of-war Lu Bu, you really live up to your reputation!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong while he redirected his horse away from Lu Bu.

From Huang Zhong's first debut after being scouted by Liu Pan, in all the of the battles he participated in, no one can survive more than three bouts with Huang Zhong.

Please do not think that Jing Province's soldiers are weak, but Huang Zhong is just simply too strong for them.

Huang Zhong's strength has been refined to the peak of his body, so we can see the result of his training today. It can be said that he has reached the pinnacle of super-class generals in terms of strength.

Huang Zhong's age now is not too high. It can be said that he is still at the prime age of his life, so now, he is at his strongest state.

Even when Huang Zhong's was at his old age, Guan Yu still cannot beat him in a fair duel, only after he feint his attack and does his strategy which is, pretend to retreat and suddenly turn back and surprise him, only can he beat Huang Zhong.

TL: For reference Guan Yu vs Elderly Huang Zhong https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=YQ9RlaVgYaY

“Huang Zhong of Jiangxia, you are also very strong!!!” Lu Bu suddenly discovered that he cannot underestimate this veteran. Since Lu Bu has refined his strength to be pinnacle of super-class generals, he is unmatched by anyone.

His prowess is so strong that when at Hulao Gate, he was able to kill enemy generals in one bout, even when Guan Yu and Zhang Fei attacked him, he is able to fight to a draw. But he really did not expect this veteran can take on himself alone.

That veteran, Huang Zhong, do not just have the capability to follow Lu Bu's rhythm but also able to counter his attack to a stand-still.

“Why did I not meet this person sooner?!” Thought Lu Bu who then began to be aware that he should never ever underestimate this world.

“But, I will stop you right here and now!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong coldly. He had drawn his long bow from his horseback.

“Eh, that general is using a gold curved dao and a long bow?! And that general is also old, his hair is all white and has a long beard??? Fuck is that really Old Huang Zhong, why did I not realized it sooner!!!!!”

Seeing the three signs, Liu Mang's eyes almost fell out of its socket. It is really he, Huang Zhong. One of Shu Country's Five Tiger Generals, Huang Zhong.

If you ask, who in the Five Tiger Generals has the most skill in wushu, they will say Huang Zhong without a doubt. The reason why he is not as famous as Guan Yu, Zhang Fei and Zhao Yun, is because when Liu Bei recruited Huang Zhong, he was already at old age of 65 years.

That veteran who can cut down Xiahou Yuan personally in Mount Dingjun, that veteran also was counted among Five Tiger Generals along with youngsters like Ma Chao and Zhao Yun. So you can measure how fierce Huang Zhong is.

“Honorable Father-in-law, be careful!!!” Shouted Liu Mang, really worried.

“Eh?!!!” Chen Gong raised his eyebrows while looking at Liu Mang. In Chen Gong's eyes, Lu Bu could be said as the strongest man in the world, a god-of-war. He does not believe that Liu Mang doesn't know that, but this.

Liu Mang showed a worried look unexpectedly. Is this Huang Zhong really that strong?

“STRONG!!!” Gao Shun’s compliment is short but straight to the point.

“We are not a match for him!” Zhang Liao who commanded the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry also have analyzed Huang Zhong. Zhang Liao's strength is actually a first-class general and now almost reaching super-class, but he still cannot see Huang Zhong's depth.

“How can this be!!!!” Zang Ba stunned and could not close his mouth. In his eyes, Lu Bu is the strongest man alive and now there is a man who is equally matching his strength. Zang Ba's character is very arrogant and full of pride of his strength. He was beaten by Lu Bu until his pride is gone, before he pledged his allegiance to him.

Now there is another person who is as strong as Lu Bu who may take him down at any time, how can he not be stunned the entire time?

“Old General Huang, you are really strong!!!” Su Fei knew that Huang Zhong is strong, but he didn't think it to this extent. Huang Zhong's strength is almost equal to Lu Bu’s.

He also knows Lu Bu's reputation in Hulao Gate, when he deadlocked 18 warlords to a state where those 18 warlords did not dare to do anything. One person with one horse shook the whole nation, but that person right now is evenly matched with Huang Zhong.

Lu Bu who heard Huang Zhong exclaim earlier, suddenly become uneasy. “Hard longbow!!!” Lu Bu looked at Huang Zhong's bow. That bow Huang Zhong drew is absolutely a hard longbow.

A normal person can only draw a 1-dan bow, a person who can draw 2-dan bow can be said exist in only one in a hundred people. But this Huang Zhong's longbow is at least 5-dan.

TL: 1-dan = 50 kg

TL: Hard longbow, was used by archer at that time and only an expert using it. The stiffer bow, the better its arrow penetrating power will be.

If this type of arrow was launched by this longbow and hit a human target, it will pierce through the body immediately.

Possibly there will be no arrow wound, but it will be like Cao Chun who was pierced to the ground and stuck like a statue.

“Come on then!!!” Lu Bu dispelled his uneasiness and built up his confidence again, because that longbow previously gave him a feeling of a threat.

That is correct, it threatened Lu Bu. As if it is a predator who is lurking, trying to ambush its prey. That longbow has chosen Lu Bu as its prey and now it wanted to swallow Lu Bu.

From the very start, it is Lu Bu who always made people frightened, and now unexpectedly he has been given that same feeling.

“Lu Fengxian, sorry!!!” Huang Zhong's finger is resting on that longbow string. Then an unspeakable energy engulfed his body. One person, one arrow, actually made all people on the scene in awe and hold their breaths.

“For I, will stop you here!!!” Huang Zhong showed his death glare. Suddenly he pulled his five-dan longbow. It is five-dan longbow! The arrows strength it will produce is a thousand-jin.

TL: 1-jin = 0.5 kg, 1 pound.

A normal person can only draw a 2-dan bow and that is it. This veteran can draw a 5-dan bow he has definitely refined his strength to the pinnacle of super-class generals.

Actually, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba also can draw a 5-dan bow because their strength is almost reaching super-class, but it is impossible to aim accurately after they drew the bow, because that is their limits.

However, this Huang Zhong can actually lock on Lu Bu.

Lu Bu wad now like a prey on top of this lions list.

“You want to prey on me, huh?!” Waiting for death is impossible for Lu Bu. Staying still waiting for the end was not his style.

“We'll see now, who is preying who!!!” Lu Bu, this mighty tiger, has also revealed his fangs.

“Poof!!!” There's blood splashing from Lu Bu's face. It is his blood flowing, along his cheek which was grazed by the arrow.

“MILORD!!!”

“HONORABLE FATHER-IN-LAW!!!” All of Lu Bu’s army is currently panicking, because Lu Bu has been injured by an arrow shot from q 5-dan longbow. The injury has made him truly like a general from hell.

“DO NOT COME HERE!!!” Lu Bu stopped his crowd. His arm is shivering,

because he was just shot. That arrow just now almost cost Lu Bu his life. If it were not for his Poseidon Gold Cloth's defensive capability which was covering almost his body, it would have been possible for Lu Bu to die at that time.

Even that is the case, that arrow just bounced off his armor, and cut Lu Bu's cheek.

Lu Bu then cleaned the wound on his face with his saliva and then licked the blood on his hand. The taste is salty.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!” Lu Bu suddenly laughed. His entire body cannot suppress his shivering.

“Did Lu Bu go crazy?!!!” Said Su Fei puzzled from inside Jiangxia army outpost. He thought that Lu Bu died from Huang Zhong's arrow at that time, but Lu Bu actually survived the shot.

But surviving the shot is also of no use because his whole body is shaking to his arm because of the wound he received!! So, it can be said, it is our win this time.

“Hmph!!!” Huang Zhong looks at Lu Bu coldly. He knew that Lu Bu it is impossible for Lu Bu to be scared, even if that arrow almost cost him his life a moment ago.

Others cannot see it, but Huang Zhong understood Lu Bu. Lu Bu's body did not shiver because of fear but excitement. He is excited because he finally found a worthy opponent, finally found a rival.

Everyone wants to become a master in martial arts, but after becoming

a master, one can only feel lonely because nobody is able to defeat him at his current state.

Staying at that position will make it unbearable for that master if one cannot find a rival that can stand on the same ground with him.

At that time, when there is no enemy who can defeat you, when you are called a god-of-w, you will no longer be excited, because you are lonely.

Before long, you will start having a death-wish, asking people to defeat you so you can compete again.

Now Lu Bu has found that feeling of defeat, that feeling that has been sought by Lu Bu for too long.

“Come on again!!!” Exclaimed Lu Bu fiercely. With Lu Bu not treating his cheek's wound, blood kept flowing again and again. Making Lu Bu like a monster from hell.

“Lu Bu, you are really a death-seeker. No wonder you charge again after I shot you!!!!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong coldly. He did not think that Lu Bu would start to charge again after that arrow almost claimed his life.

The arrow that Huang Zhong shot was called Ghost Arrow made from glass. It is famous for its extreme fast speed, leaving no shadow, with tremendous penetrative power and is un-seeable with naked eye due to it reflecting light camouflaging itself when in day time.

Nobody has ever seen this arrow, because once they have seen it, is the moment they die and met King of Hell. Lu Bu was spared from that disaster because of his Poseidon Gold Cloth, and due to his warriors pride, he started charging again.

The Ghost Arrow can only used the very first time, because the second time it is used, the enemy would have discovered it. But Huang Zhong still had a lot of tricks in his sleeves.

Huang Zhong then pulled out all of his arrows from his quiver.

“What does he want to do?!” Recently Liu Mang has been training hard in archery but has not gone far enough, so Liu Mang wanted to benefit from seeing Huang Zhong's archery.

“He wants to draw again?! Using the whole quiver?!” A bow since forever can only project one arrow. Even some master archers, can only project two or three arrows max, but no one has ever put ones whole quiver.

5-dan long bow was drawn again with bowstring filled with arrows, whole arrows from its quiver.

He really thinks to launch them at the same time??? If that is the case, then it is impossible to hurt Lu Bu. If he shoots all of them, it will be similar to volley tactics and impossible to have accurate aim. Liu Mang couldn’t follow his logic.

“Whiz, Whiz, Whiz!” Those arrows released were hunting its prey. Those arrows sound was just like the God of Death swinging its scythe, trying to claim Lu Bu.

“This!!! What the fuck is this?!!” Liu Mang once again opened his eyes as wide as he can. The arrows were shot one by one continuously just like

a semi-automatic weapon, with no gap for rest.

Is Huang Zhong using the semi-automatic crossbow designed by Zhuge Liang?! Even if he is using semi-auto crossbow, it is impossible to reach this velocity!!! This kind of shooting, it is still cold weapon era right??? Its speed is faster than the projectile ejected by any modern semi-automatic weaponry.

TL: Semi-automatic crossbow designed by Zhuge Liang https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Repeating_crossbow

“Is he using rapid-shot arrow?!” Thought Lu Bu while looking at those arrows which currently speeding toward him. “No, it is not rapid-shot arrow!” If it is only a rapid-shot arrows, as long as he can protect his own vital spots, it is hard to injure him using rapid-shot arrows. After all, rapid-shot arrows do not have much strength and it will not hit the same place over and over. But these arrows forming a straight line one after another, like a spear trying to stab him.

The drafting of the arrows dancing in the air to the front arrow, a super empowered one are speeding towards Lu Bu, like a locomotive waiting to crash. “These are rapid-concentrated-shot!!!” Lu Bu finally saw why these arrows formed a straight line in order to damage him.

Those arrows distance are almost gapless in order to increase the strength and flying distance of the first arrow. If Huang Zhong did not do this, how could he possibly harm Lu Bu with an ordinary rapid-shot?

Those arrows can be analogized like launching a space rocket. In order to reach space, a space rocket need help from several thrusters and when

thruster has used up its fuel it will release them one by one.

So, a rapid-concentrated-shot is just like a space rocket taking off. The strength is put on the first arrow and the other arrows just following it. The first arrow is very big in strength and fast in speed. It is used to tear up an armor. No armor can resist that kind of strength. After the first arrow pierced the armor, then all of the follow-up arrows will just pierced that arrow wound, and then killing its victim.

Huang Zhong saw how high Lu Bu's armor defense is. So he can only send out this rapid-concentrated-shot, in order to pierce his defense.

"HAAAAA!!!!" Lu Bu roared fiercely. His Poseidon halberd danced again in his hand. What he did next is indeed insane. Rather than taking a passive defensive stance, he charged toward those arrows. Both sides speed are very fast and have very high force and if both sides collided with each other, it will just like a meteor strike on earth.

"Lu Bu, are you renouncing this fight?!" Muttered Huang Zhong while looking at Lu Bu. If Lu Bu retreated, then maybe he can buffer rapid-concentrated-shot impact or also avoid its trajectory, after those projectiles reduced its strength in mid-air. But now, he is charging toward it? Is he really renouncing his life?

"Dang, dang, dang, dang, dang!!!" A series of sparks are glittering in midair. That kind of sparks only can be produced by colliding metal with metal.

"How can that be?!" Both Jiangxia's army and Lu Bu's army are stunned by what they saw. Lu Bu with his Poseidon halberd intercepted the rapid-

concentrated-shot arrows, deflecting them one by one.

Two types of sharp weapons collided fiercely in midair. This view made everyone present flinch, because of sparks produced by the fierce collision of the arrows and Poseidon halberd.

When normal arrows are launched into the air, it is difficult to trace it and distinguished with the naked eye, let alone these arrows that are sharper and faster. But Lu Bu can actually see the arrows and unexpectedly intercept all of them with his Poseidon halberd.

“Dang dang dang dang!” Those sparks gradually got lesser due to the last of the arrows being inserted in to the soil.

Huang Zhong’s eyes has been shut the entire time from the moment of the first of his rapid-concentrated-shot arrow has been deflected by Lu Bu. His complexion shows a very complicated emotion. There is anger, excitement, disbelief, pride and calmness, all together in one.

“Do you have anything else, before you die?!” Lu Bu’s heart is beating very fast, fiercely. It has been too long since he felt this excited.

“Yes, I still have one more skill to show you!” Huang Zhong then extended his arm to pick up one cold and dark spear. “No one has force me to use this. Nobody!!! You are the first one to do that!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong while caressing that spear. “It has been 30 years since I used this against a person” Thought Huang Zhong. This thing will decide who is the one will lose, Huang Zhong or Lu Bu.

Chapter 93 – Duel Conclusion; Who defeated who?

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

That cold, dark thing is a short halberd. Its whole body appearance is ordinary, but the cold radiance that it emitted, made any person who saw it understand that it is a murderous weapon.

But people were also confused. That is a short halberd, and it is used only for close quarter combat not for long-ranged battle. Does Huang Zhong want to use it as a projectile?

“Short halberd?!” This is the first time that Lu Bu has seen a short halberd acts as an arrow, but after seeing Huang Zhong’s skill, he does not dare to underestimate that halberd.

“No, it is not a short halberd!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong while stroking the steel pole object. Yes, that is a giant arrow made of black steel. That arrow serves as Huang Zhong’s ultimate move, but until now no one has ever pushed him to pull out this move. Usually people died under Huang Zhong’s curved dao or by his rapid-concentrated-shot at max.

TL: Black Steel http://metalsupermarkets.co.uk/blog/difference-between-black-steel-and-bright-drawn-steel/

Sometimes Huang Zhong will use the halberd privately to hone his skills. But today he must use it, for his opponent is the god-of-war, who has just survived all of his attacks and even countering his attack. So, in order also to survive, he must use this move.

“Lu Bu, you should be proud, to die by my most powerful move!!!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong coldly while looking at Lu Bu as if he is already dead, the look on his face is of absolute self-confidence.

“Die??! A person who can harm me, Lu Bu, has yet to be born in this world!!!” Retorted Lu Bu coldly.

“Is that right?!” Huang Zhong is looking at Lu Bu with strange smile and gaze. “Then today I will send you to your death!!! If you are the god-of-war, the today, I, Huang Zhong will become the god-of-death by sending you to your doom!!!”

Huang Zhong’s short halberd has been placed on the long bow drew his bowstring. He is already locking-on Lu Bu with his bow.

“Not good!!!” Lu Bu’s heart is startled. That short halberd in Huang Zhong’s hand is pressuring him too much. For the first time in all of his battles, Lu Bu does not have confidence on how to attack, defend or avoid that attack.

I can't let him shoot!!! Lu Bu thought, so Lu Bu will need to attack first. This is not because Lu Bu has become rusty in battle, but it is because he is currently dissatisfied being pinned by that attack, forced to be passively defensive and unable to do anything. He is Lu Bu, he is the god-of-war, he is always the one who destroys his enemies, he is an offensive type, how can he become passively defend?

Lu Bu once again violently shook his Poseidon halberd, exhuming killing intent from his body. Everyone needs to remember who he is. He is Lu Bu, the god-of-war a mighty tiger, a nightmare to all of his enemies.

“Fight, Fight, Fight!!!!” Lu Bu once again roared, the voice did not sound like a human, but more like a prehistoric beast, like the famous T-Rex.

Lu Bu’s warhorse is also excited because of Lu Bu’s spirit. Then it raised its front hooves and neighed as loud as possible before dashing directly to Huang Zhong with lightning-like speed.

“Does he want to do a final charge?!” Huang Zhong smiled at Lu Bu. He admires Lu Bu very much, but also pitied him, because he is the one who can force him to unleash his ultimate move, but he will also die by this move, so Huang Zhong would get lonely again, unrivalled under the heaven. He made his resolution then and said “Lu Bu, you will die by my hands today!!!”

“Die?! HMPH!!! I say the same thing!!! GIVE ME YOUR LIFE!!!!” Lu Bu also bursting out all of his courage and strength. They have fought long enough, it is time to decide who the victor is and who the loser is.

“SHAAAAAA!!!!!!” Lu Bu, one man one horse, invincible under the heaven.

“DIE!!!” Huang Zhong, one man one arrow, peerless among men.

“BOOOMMMM!!!!” The movement both side took is so big that the entire earth is shaking up and dust flying everywhere, obscuring their view.

“MILORD!!!!”

“HONORABLE FATHER-IN-LAW!!!!” Liu Mang is very worried, because he knew about Huang Zhong prowess from history. But Gao Shun and Zhang Liao are worried because they are seeing it from a military perspective. That arrow was unleashed at a very short range, no human could survive that attack.

That short halberd, judging from its length and material, its weight must be very heavy. Gao Shun and Zhang Liao came from a frontier village in the Bing Province.

At that time, both of them were low-ranked soldiers guarding a frontier fortress. They have seen a ballista in action when they were defending the city. Before shooting the missile, it needed several people to pull the bowstring and then put the missile into the bowstring and fire it. It can only shot one arrow at a time, but the strength of the arrow can claim several people’s life.

Because of its strength, when people are hit by it, they can be considered as human shish kabob. Even armored cavalry can be compared as a paper armor when hit by it.

Therefore, when those invaders from beyond the Great Wall see a ballista placed on a city wall, they will quickly retreat. Although it is only a few in number and can only shoot projectiles one at a time, it is actually very frightening.

But, the one Huang Zhong’s shot earlier gave them a nostalgic feeling, like that arrow was launched from a ballista.

That is correct, Huang Zhong ultimate skill is basically turned him into a portable ballista, but a ballista is an inanimate thing, but Huang Zhong is a breathing and living person. Also ballista's needed several soldiers to pull the bowstring in order to shoot, but Huang Zhong only needed himself to pull the bow.

"General Huang!!!" Su Fei is also very anxious, because today he had seen Lu Bu's terror with his own eyes. If Huang Zhong could not withstand Lu Bu, then Jiangxia's army could not do anything against the might of Lu Bu's army.

The dust dissipated slowly, revealing two people forms.

"Cough!!!" Lu Bu appeared first, he coughed blood. His mouth already dripping blood, his Poseidon halberd has fell to one side, and his helmet falling revealed a pitch-black hair which has been untied.

The opposite Huang Zhong also had his bow broken, but his condition is not as bad as Lu Bu.

"Milord, MILORD DEFEATED!!!" Zang Ba and all of Lu Bu's army personnel on the scene cannot believe that Lu Bu, their god-of-war, their army's soul, was defeated in battle.

A commander-in-chief who has lost its weapon and helmet, what does this view represent?! It represents that he has lost in the battlefield.

All of Jiangxia army roared "We won, we won, we won!!!!" They really cannot believe that their commander-in-chief, their general Huang Zhong

has won, they have beaten Lu Bu, the invincible god-of-war!!!

“We really won, we really won!!!”

"General Huang, General Huang has defeated Lu Bu, has defeated that god-of-war!!!"

“Old General Huang, you did it!!!!” Su Fei also flashing a happy expression. Currently he is inside the grain and provisions warehouse handling distributions, when he saw Huang She come and suddenly gave him a big hug. Because if Huang She did not propose this idea to confront them directly, how could this result happen? Lu Bu defeated and Lu Bu’s army is in deadlock.

Lu Bu is Lu Bu's army soul, the embodiment of the army’s willpower. Since he was defeated, their willpower has also been defeated, Lu Bu’s army has lost their courage. But on the opposite, Jiangxia army's morale got a big boost.

Completing one big task is much bigger than three small tasks.

Su Fei then wield his flag fiercely “Beat the war drum, we march!!!” With Lu Bu's army being defeated here, it can be said that Sun Ce's army is also defeated. Now that Jiangxia has General Huang, can Sun Ce’s army still wreak havoc? At that moment, it will be their complete defeat.

“Sun Ce, Taishi Ci, Zhou Yu, Huang Gai, Ling Tong...!” Su Fei said each name with stressed tone. Every single name was Jiangdong's bigshots. Their skill in wushu are outstanding as they are valiant.

Jiangxia is not weaker than Jiangdong in naval warfare. After all they tread the same waters.

However Jiangxia has been suffering loss after loss, because they did not have a valiant general.

The one who can fight is only Gan Ning, Su Fei and Huang Zu. Gan Ning although strong, he cannot cope up with many valiant generals attacking him. Su Fei did not excel in wushu, and can only depend on his troops and Huang Zu is already old.

Now, with Huang Zhong's presence, all the issues have suddenly been solved. This old General Huang Zhong's son is sick and needed help from Jiangxia's doctors, so he requested to transfer to Jiangxia. No one thought that Huang Zhong's presence would actually give a big benefit to Jiangxia.

“We also beat a drum to counterattack!” With Lu Bu down, Chen Gong does the only thing he can as an advisor. So the first thing that he thought of is to save his lord. “Wenyuan, Xuangao, Hanyang, the three of you are responsible to rush ahead. Gao Shun, you are responsible to rescue Milord!!!”

Both sides began to move up together, a war will shortly begin.

Jiangxia's army has been eager to try Lu Bu’s army, but they are surprised that Huang Zhong prevented them from advancing

“I lost!!!” Said Huang Zhong in a low voice, he is truly distressed.

“What?!” Su Fei staring at Huang Zhong. Huang Zhong said he is defeated, but how can this look be of defeated? He can just take his curved dao from his horse and behead Lu Bu and it is done. But now Huang Zhong is the one said that he is defeated.

“How can that be?!”

“Did Milord win?!” As far as Zang Ba realized, Lu Bu's undefeated legend has been broken. He dropped his weapon and helmet, his warhorse already lying on the ground unable to get up again. How can this Lu Bu be the one that won?

“Wait!!!” Chen Gong also stopped Lu Bu’s army movement.

After hearing Huang Zhong say that he is defeated, Lu Bu only nodded and did not say anything, he just picked up his helmet and his Poseidon halberd.

That is correct, Huang Zhong is the one who lost!

Beside Huang Zhong's bow has being broken into two, his curved dao, armor and helmet, are all still intact. His body did not have as many scars as Lu Bu, but Huang Zhong's beard is gone.

Huang Zhong's proud beard is gone, leaving only stubble under his chin. Telling the people, that he once had a long beard.

How the process happened only Lu Bu and Huang Zhong knew, other people did not know because their vision was covered up by dust earlier.

“Why didn't you kill me?!” Said Huang Zhong with hoarse voice while looking at Lu Bu.

“If I kill you now, it would be a waste!!!” Said Lu Bu while picking up his Poseidon halberd while putting on his helmet.

“I do not need your pity!!!” Exclaimed Huang Zhong.

“It is not a pity!!! I, Lu Bu, never show mercy to any person! Look forward to our next encounter!” Lu Bu did not want to waste time explaining to Huang Zhong. He is very excited today, because he finally encountered a person who can go toe-to-toe with him, how can he possibly kill Huang Zhong now?! Moreover, you also did not kill me right?!

Lu Bu knew if that time he went for the kill, Huang Zhong will die, but it would also cause him mortal injury.

“Beat the retreat signal!!!”

Both commander-in-chief’s return to their respective camps.

“Milord, are you all right?!” Zang Ba and co, quickly opened their mouths, saying their worry. First Lu Bu and Huang Zhong's battle made

them really worried and scared and Zang Ba's heart almost lost his faith because he kept believing that Lu Bu is invincible. That battle just showed that Lu Bu almost lost his life to Huang Zhong.

“I am okay!” Lu Bu just continued to wipe blood from his body. Can this be called all right? It has been a long time, since Lu Bu got this severely injured. Now, he is did not even bother to look for his Poseidon halberd.

In his mind, he is thinking about Huang Zhong!!! Lu Bu gave a long gaze passing through Jiangxia's army main tent into Huangzhou city.

Compared to Lu Bu who get much caring in his army, Huang Zhong got much less than he deserved

“Old General Huang, are you all right?!” Inquired Su Fei while helping Huang Zhong remove his armor, he really did not understand why today Huang Zhong lost. From his point of view, obviously Lu Bu had lost his helmet and Poseidon halberd. It is a mark that he has lost the duel.

“Are you thinking about how I lost?!” How can Huang Zhong not know what Su Fei's was thinking?

“Um!” Su Fei nodded on the spot. In his opinion, Huang Zhong should be the winner. And after that duel, Jiangxia's army will immediately hit Lu Bu’s army as hard as they can, to repel Lu Bu.

“Ha-ha-ha!!!” Huang Zhong laughed bitterly. Su Fei's idea is very good. Because if Huang Zhong won, he can use the newly gained morale to repel Lu Bu’s army, but actually he is the one who lost.

He cannot stop wondering, how Lu Bu avoided that ballista arrow, it is very fast!!! Has that man's speed reach a demonic level?

“Su Fei, can you see where my beard is right now?!” Huang Zhong asked Su Fei.

“Your beard?!” Su Fei then paid attention to Huang Zhong. His beard has vanished, leaving only a stubble where it once was.

There is bloodstain mark on Huang Zhong's throat. The skin has been cut, but not deep, therefore it did not bleed.

“General Huang, how can this be?!” Su Fei finally understood.

“That man showed mercy, he could have swung his halberd to sever my artery!” Answered Huang Zhong. That man is really terrifying, Huang Zhong's heart has been painted with fear of Lu Bu.

“The earlier Duel has caused many troubles for you, Old General Huang!” Su Fei said while his heart is filled with guilt. If he is the one who accepted the duel, perhaps he is the one whose head will be on that battlefield just now. Su Fei shame unfathomable.

“Huang Zhong, Huang Zhong!!!” From outside there is a rude and frantic voice calling Huang Zhong's name directly, no respect for him as a commander-in-chief. Also without saying “Excuse me”, the owner of the sound entered main camp.

Su Fei and Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled. A man who can be so rude like that is only Huang She, Huang Zu of Jiangxia eldest son.

After Huang She entered the big tent, he immediately spurt out words like machine gun “YOU BOTH, WHY DID YOU NOT KILL LU BU JUST NOW, HUH??? WHY DID THE ARMY NOT MARCH, ARE YOU THROWING AWAY THE MOMENTUM???” Those words are spoken with a tone like a warden interrogating his prisoner.

One must know that Huang Zhong currently is commander-in-chief, but Huang She is just a quartermaster, his rank is private. If they are normal superior and subordinate, Huang Zhong will have ordered Huang She to be executed under military law. A private rushing to the main tent, this is a capital offense in military law, moreover Huang She also left his post abandoned.

“Eldest son, Old General Huang has been defeated, therefore we have no other options than to beat the drum to retreat!!” Huang Zhong does not want to bother speaking to Huang She, so Su Fei is the one speaking and explaining now.

“HUH, DEFEATED???!!! BOTH ARMIES HAVE SEEN THAT LU BU DROPPED HIS HELMET AND HALBERD, HUANG ZHONG STILL HAD HIS CURVED DAO, HELMET AND ARMOR INTACT, AND YOU SAID HE IS DEFEATED!!!! WITH THAT APPEARANCE, ANYONE CAN TAKE LU BU'S HEAD, BUT YOU, HUANG ZHONG, YOU SAID YOU ARE DEFEATED? ARE YOU FUCKING KIDDING ME!!!?”

Huang She roared loudly. During his service inside the army, he has not battled even once. So he eagerly wanted to perform meritorious service. If today they can kill Lu Bu and repel Lu Bu’s army, then his father will be

proud of him. And now, the chance to obtain merit just disappeared, how can that not make Huang She outraged?!

"Eldest son, you do not know the whole story!!!" Su Fei tried to explain, but due to Huang She's non-stop roaring, he did not hear Su Fei's voice.

Huang Zhong suddenly grab his curved dao and chopped the table to half.

"WHAT Huang Zhong, you want to kill me, huh?! Do you want to rebel?!" Huang Zhong's act of cutting the table has made Huang She jumped back frightened. However at the same time, Su Fei jumped in to protect Huang She and saying to Huang Zhong "Old General Huang, please think three times. This is our lord's son!!!" Hearing Su Fei protect him, made Huang She haughtier than ever.

"If I say I was defeated, then I have been defeated simple as that! Now fuck off, otherwise I will execute you under military law, a private rushing in to the main tent, roaring at the commander-in-chief. All of them are sufficient for me to execute military law, even if you are General Huang Zu's son!!!" Said Huang Zhong with a cold stare, making Huang She startled once again.

"Good, good, very good! Huang Zhong, your wings have already hardened so think you can talk back to me like this. I already said to father that person who Liu Pan recommended is untrustworthy, unworthy as a person!!!

I will report to father so he dismisses you, wait for the news!!!" Shouted Huang She while he exited the main tent. He knows that Huang Zhong is

really terrifying, so he is afraid that Huang Zhong will be in rage and kill him in one blow.

Looking at Huang She exit main tent, Su Fei smiled bitterly. That eldest son of Milord really said malicious remarks toward Huang Zhong and then said “Old General Huang, please do not get offended by those small sentences!!!” If Huang Zu really dismissed Huang Zhong, then it will be a calamity for Jiangxia's army.

“Humph, dismiss me or not, it is not Huang She's decision!” Huang Zhong just snorted coldly. If Huang Zhong were not looking for medicine for his son's illness, how could he possibly come to Jiangxia? He is not Huang She's subordinate but Huang Zu's.

If Huang Zhong was really dismissed, he will accept it gladly.

“Su Fei, I am tired, please go back now!” Huang Zhong waved with his hand, signaling Su Fei.

“Yes, general!” Su Fei also looked at Huang Zhong's condition. It is tired, so he can only go back to his own tent.

Chapter 94 – Planning for Jiangxia's Downfall, Liu Mang Go Back to Present to Find Medicine

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Under Huangzhou city, within a few days after Lu Bu's duel, Lu Bu’s army and Jiangxia's army has been skirmishing more than 10 times.

Jiangxia's army are depended on two things to resist Lu Bu’s army.

The first by fortifying their defense wall and 5,000 naval units, forming a horn-shaped defense formation. Lu Bu’s army themselves cannot use cavalry attacks due to the land being very wet, dampening their impact.

So Lu Bu is deploying only infantries, resulting in very little progress.

“Damn, has Jiangxia become our roadblock?!” Lu Bu slammed his fist on the table. Being a borrowed knife for Sun Ce’s army has made Lu Bu unhappy and now Huang Zhong's forces are blocking his advance.

Chen Gong who stood on the side, also wrinkled his brow. Now that Lu Bu has defeated Huang Zhong, Jiangxia's army has been on the defense the entire time.

Actually due the the longbow men in camp, Lu Bu’s army can defeat Jiangxia's army but cannot completely crippled and annihilated them.

They have too many ways to escape, they can directly retreat using the river and plan for comeback next time. Lu Bu’s army currently consist of

only land-lubbers for their naval units.

Huang Zhong's Longbow division is as strong as the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker.

Chen Gong observed that even though the Longbow division only had 3,000 people, all of them are aces in archery trained by Huang Zhong himself.

So, it can be said whenever they division launched their arrows, it would be as if Huang Zhong himself is shooting at Lu Bu's army. That will cost many casualties in Lu Bu army.

"Should we ally ourselves with Sun Ce army?!" Actually there is another method to annihilate Jiangxia's army.

It is to contact Sun Ce's army, form an alliance with them, and together they form a two-prong attack on Huang Zu. Lu Bu's army through Jiangxia land road and Sun Ce's army from the river.

"We cannot form an alliance with them!" Lu Bu shook his head. He had been coerced to be a borrowed knife by Sun Ce to kill Huang Zu. If they requested to ally with them, doesn't that mean that Lu Bu is incompetent? That would be a big shame and Lu Bu would not allow that.

Moreover, if they did ally together, who will be the leader of the alliance?! Lu Bu or Sun Ce? And based on Lu Bu who requested the alliance, then Sun Ce would be de facto leader.

Plus if they conquer Jiangxia, then he had offended Liu Biao and if they went Xinye after Jiangxia, and since Xinye is currently under Liu Biao, they would meet a dead end no matter where they went.

Lu Bu started to feel a little regret that he did not kill Huang Zhong directly a few days ago. At this juncture, if they do not ally with Sun Ce, they will be deadlocked in Huangzhou city, as their grain and provisions start to deplete.

“How about we storm them?!” Zang Ba voiced his opinion. Zang Ba now has no division to lead, so he became Lu Bu's personal guard. “Formation Breaker as vanguard, and then use 10,000 soldiers to maintain pressure. Coupled with Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, we can destroy them in one blow!!!”

Zang Ba's idea is very good but according to current circumstances, it cannot be used. An Injury of 1000 or even 800 soldiers for defeating the enemy is currently unacceptable by Lu Bu.

Lu Bu's army only has 30,000 troops, so no matter if they win or lose, Lu Bu cannot stomach those casualties. Furthermore, Jiangxia is not their destination, so how can they afford to lose so much right now?

Isn't this what Sun Ce hoped for? For knotting an alliance with Lu Bu’s army he could control his cavalry units? Suddenly Liu Mang shouted out “I have an idea!!” making all of people present look toward Liu Mang, embarrassing him a little.

“Oh? Hanyang, what can you add to this discussion?!” Lu Bu looked at

Liu Mang. Although Liu Mang is not a counselor, sometimes when Chen Gong is stumped, Liu Mang always came up with some very good solutions.

“This is just an assumption!” Said Liu Mang while all eyes in the room were looking at him.

Lu Bu continued “Even if it is an assumption, just say it! Since all of us are stumped, if you have an idea even if it's just an assumption, we would appreciate it!”

Liu Mang then continued “The one who is blocking us currently is Jiangxia's army, if it was a normal army, they are no match for us.

But currently they have leader who is very formidable, Huang Zhong, isn't that correct?!” Asked Liu Mang.

All of them nodded their heads. Huang Zhong is not only a very powerful general but he is also very capable in leadership and strategy. “That being the case, then I have a method against this veteran!” Said Liu Mang.

“You have a method against this veteran?!” What Liu Mang said is correct.

However currently from all Intel they obtained, there isn't a method against this veteran, because they have too little information on this veteran.

At the beginning of the turbulent times, when Lu Bu started his debut, Huang Zhong did not appear at all. Whether he was afraid to fight or defending his property, we currently do not know.

“I do not know if this message is accurate or not. But I got a message that Huang Zhong is not Huang Zu's men. He is Liu Biao's foster son, Liu Pan's men. And also Huang Zhong has a son named Huang Xu, his only son and his son currently has a serious illness! We can begin our approach from his son!!!” Liu Mang speaks his mind.

“Huang Zhong has a son who is currently ill?!” Chen Gong was in charge of Lu Bu’s intelligence Corp, but due to his intelligence gathering prowess has being severely compromised, he did not know anything about Huang Zhong.

He thought Huang Zhong fell from the sky therefore had no information on him, but Liu Mang knows!

Chen Gong never asked where he got that information, because Liu Mang brought Lu Bu a lot of unexplained things. Like warhorses, armor, spears and meat buns.

Why Liu Mang knows this information? It is because he has been reading kongming.net, Wikipedia and baidu.com.

But again, that information is only a conjecture because those sites also did not have a clear information about Huang Zhong's son, Huang Xu, his disease, and death year. If Huang Xu is dead now then all of his knowledge will amount to nothing.

TL: It is really written like that kongming.net, Wikipedia and baidu.com

“Let's say for argument's sake, we know that information, but what use is it to us?!” Zang Ba is really confused.

Are we supposed to go to Jiangxia and kidnap Huang Zhong's son?! “I need to know what kind of disease that Huang Xu has now so I can cure it!” Said Liu Mang.

He is unsure what Huang Xu's disease is, but from all historical records, he knew that Huang Xu's disease is some kind of pneumonia. This kind of disease is incurable in late Eastern Han Dynasty but in present time, it can be easily cured. If Huang Xu has this disease, then it is good, he can cure him completely by a lot of therapy.

“Creating chaos in the enemy's heart!!” Chen Gong did not care whether Liu Mang can treat Huang Zhong's son illness or not, what he needed is to lower the enemy's morale.

Can you imagine what Huang Zhong's face would look like when Lu Bu's army told him that we can cure his son? As a father he will be very excited. With Huang Zhong excited like that, what would Jiangxia's army think when watching Huang Zhong?

Huang Zhong being like that, will obviously set an internal strife in Jiangxia. “The only uncertainty is whether his son is still alive or not!” Liu Mang shook his head. If Huang Xu is dead, everything would be in vain now.

“He is still alive!!” Said Lu Bu, while closing his eyes and tried to recall the duel a few days ago. “Eh?! Honorable father-in-law, how do you

know?!" Liu Mang is really confused.

How can his father-in-law know about Huang Xu? He is pretty sure that he conveyed the message about Huang Xu just now but how can Lu Bu say with certainty that he is still alive?

"Not only still alive, but he is still in his camp!" Lu Bu added his information. How could Lu Bu know this? Because when Lu Bu was dueling, Lu Bu smelled Huang Zhong.

Lu Bu as a fighter naturally has a heightened sense of smell and at that time, Huang Zhong's body smelled like herbs.

Lu Bu originally thought that Huang Zhong is a drug addict, being contaminated with smelly herbs. But due to Liu Mang's information just now, he is sure that he cooked medicinal herbs for his son to drink.

And Huang Zhong definitely has been exposed to drugs for a long time, if not how could he have this odor? "Okay then, now that we have determined our method to attack, please rest for today! Tomorrow is the beginning of Jiangxia's fall!"

Chen Gong said with a smile. It is already late, and all of them needed to go to rest. Liu Mang stayed until everyone left.

"Anything else?!" Said Lu Bu while looking at Liu Mang, Lu Bu also needed to rest.

"Ah! I need to go back there!" Said Liu Mang.

“Go back?!” Lu Bu pointed his finger to the sky, “There?!”

“Yes” Liu Mang nodded, his CD button wad already lit up in green, so he can make another trip to the present.

“Then go!” Lu Bu already unraveled his cloak, to take a rest. Seeing Lu Bu not command Liu Mang anything, Liu Mang took his leave.

When he almost at the door, Lu Bu's voice come from behind “Stay safe, be careful!!!”

Chapter 95 – Major Event in Jiangxia

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“CRASH!!!” Inside Huangzhou city, a young man is full of anger and throwing, destroying anything that is made of porcelain and jade, shattering them to pieces.

The entire room is already in ruins.

“Abominable, damnation. Why, WHY DOES FATHER NOT LISTEN TO ME, WHY?!” This young man Huang She has been roaring for some time now. He already notified his father Huang Zu of Jiangxia that Huang Zhong is possibly collaborating with the enemy, if not how can Huang Zhong say that he is defeated a few days ago.

But Huang Zu did not completely trust Huang She’s report, instead he kept Huang Zhong as appointed commander-in-chief and only reprimanded him through a letter, in order for Huang She to be satisfied as quartermaster.

So, it can be said, Huang She’s restlessness is caused by Huang Zhong’s appointment as commander-in-chief.

“Report!!!” This time there is a guard coming in to his room. Huang She glared an angrily at this guard. This guard was planted by Huang She into Huang Zhong's army, so he can be informed of Huang Zhong’s every action and movement.

“How, huh? Was the army defeated?!” Huang She currently expected

Huang Zhong to lose. If Huang Zhong lost, then the position of commander-in-chief would automatically be transferred to him.

"No, our army did not lose!!" The guard looks strangely at the little master. Did he expect them to lose? If the army lost, how can he still standing here? Maybe at that time, his escape route would have been cut off. Then the guard continued "Old General Huang Zhong has clashed with Lu Bu's army again and has repelled the enemy!"

"If he is not defeated, then why have you come back here singing praises about that old fart Huang Zhong before me, huh? An ordinary man compared to me!!!" Huang She's eyes started to turn red, killing intent emanating fiercely from his body. His face looked like he wanted to eat a person.

"No, this servant did not have the slightest intention, Eldest son!" The guard became very scared, he is afraid that this eldest son may kill him. "The Old General Huang, just before both armies clashed, some of Lu Bu's army scouts shouted that among Lu Bu's army, there is a doctor who can cure Old General Huang's son!"

"Huang Zhong's son is sick?!" Huang She is puzzled. He and Huang Zhong have had big disputes recently so naturally he cannot inquire about Huang Zhong's family.

"How did Huang Zhong respond?!" What Huang She wanted to know is how Huang Zhong responded to the news.

"Old General Huang is very excited at first, but later I informed him that our Jiangxia also has a famous doctor to cure General Huang Zhong's

son’s illness!” Honestly the guard also very much admires General Huang Zhong.

“Very excited, eh?!” Huang She did not have a clear reason as to why Huang Zhong appeared in Jiangxia. He is Liu Pan's subordinate. Although Huang She disdained Liu Pan very much, he had to admit that his vision is good. Because he is able to persuade such a valiant general to serve under him obediently.

Huang She also recognized Huang Zhong's skill. If Huang Zhong was not opposing his idea again and again, Huang She really did would not mind if that brave general guarded Jiangxia.

But now, it looked like it is not Liu Pan who recommended Huang Zhong to his father, instead it was because Jiangxia has a famous doctor who can treat Huang Zhong's son illness, therefore Huang Zhong requested to transfer to Jiangxia.

"Good, good!" Huang She smiled suddenly, finally he knew there is a weakness that he can exploit.

"Eldest son?!"The guard is very strange as to why the eldest son smiled suddenly.

"You go back to your post!"Huang She waved his hand signaling the guard to return.

“Famous doctor, eh? Huang Zhong's son!!! HEHEHEHE, you will be my, Huang She's, leverage!!! Old fart you just wait!!! I will make you relinquish

your military authority to me!!!” Said Huang She's with very cold eyes look at the sky.

- - - -

Because Huang Xu has been sick all these years, it made Huang Zhong worry so much. All of his hair turned white and his it caused appearance to be much older than his age.

This time, he went to Jiangxia because there is a rumor that Jiangxia has a famous doctor, therefore he requested Liu Pan to transfer him to Jiangxia.

But up to this day, he still could not find the famous doctor to cure his son.

Now Lu Bu’s army, he did not know where they got information about his son being sick or his sickness, but they said that they have a cure for Huang Xu's sickness! How can this information not make Huang Zhong excited?

If Huang Zhong is not affiliated with anyone currently, maybe Huang Zhong would kneel before Lu Bu, asking him to cure his son, even if he is to be cattle or a horse in the next life. But currently he is a commander-in-chief of an armed force, and they are enemy opponents and Huang Zhong's principle made it impossible to for him to surrender to the enemy.

So, after repelling Lu Bu’s army attack, Huang Zhong fell into a deep depression in the main tent.

“Old General Huang!” At this time Su Fei walked into main tent.

Su Fei see Huang Zhong in a distressed state while seating on the

commander's seat. He also knows Huang Zhong had a son. His son is a very talented person, Su Fei knew that when he paid a visit to Huang Zhong's mansion.

Huang Zhong's son Huang Xu is a good seedling. He has a natural talent for war, but it's a pity that his body cannot support his aspirations.

That appearance now, is just like as Su Fei remembered when Huang Xu coughed up blood and Huang Zhong is worried.

“Su Fei, you are here!” Huang Zhong nodded.

“Old General Huang, are you thinking about that matter just now?!” Su Fei really did not know how he should could his opinion. On one side, he hoped that what Lu Bu said is real, so that Huang Xu could be saved but on the other side, he hoped the news is false, so Old General Huang did not worry so much.

Hearing Su Fei said that, Huang Zhong just waved his hand to say no. “Su Fei, please do not raise that matter again today!” Huang Zhong currently is very agitated and upset, he no longer wished to speak about this matter. He knows that this maybe a scheme to lower the troops morale, but he really cannot hold his excitement down.

“Um, I know!” Su Fei also knew that currently, Huang Zhong needed to dispel his agitated state. If Huang Zhong kept thinking about the news that Lu Bu has a medicine for his son, it is the end.

“Report! Reporting to General Huang, outside of main tent, there is a

person claiming to be your house steward seeking an audience with the general!" A guard came relaying a message.

"My house steward?!" Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled. How is he here? Why did he not stay in my Jiangxia's mansion? "I accept his request, let him come in!"

The man who wore the house steward's clothing quickly entered the main tent and knelt before Huang Zhong "General, General, Zhao Qian is incompetent!"

"Zhao Qian?!" Su Fei knows that this servant is Huang Zhong's family steward, having people as his house steward, it can be said that Huang Zhong is also wealthy. This person has been following Huang Zhong through fire and water, risked his life with Huang Zhong as a personal bodyguard. Afterward, when his prowess has been wasted by age, he was taken in by Huang Zhong as his house steward.

With Zhao Qian to appearing here, did an accident happen in Huang Zhong's mansion?

It was exactly as Su Fei's suspected, hearing Zhao Qian's words, he discovered ill news. Huang Zhong's son, Huang Xu disappeared!

Chapter 96 – Huang Zhong is forced to Submit under Huang She's leg

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Huang Zhong is really anxious. He has discharged all of his strength to seek for Huang Xu, but he found nothing. That is his only son. Su Fei also reported this event to Huang Zu, so Huang Zu helped search as well, but until now, there is no report at all.

“Oh, my son Xu, where are you?!” On Huang Zhong's table there is a jug full of white wine. In times of war, wine is prohibited inside the army, let alone in main tent, but Huang Zhong could not hold his anxiety. He has been worrying too much.

Who, just who in the world kidnapped my son Xu? WHO? Is it Lu Bu’s army? That is impossible, Huang Xu disappeared in Jiangxia. Lu Bu’s army is currently unable to kidnap anyone from Jiangxia, who then, who? While Huang Zhong pondered, he had drunk several cups of wine.

“In the army, one is prohibited to drink wine. This is your rule, General Huang. How dare you lick your own saliva?!” A malicious sound reached Huang Zhong's ear.

“What do you want?!” In all Huangzhou city, the person who Huang Zhong do not want to see appeared in main tent “Eldest son She, you are leaving your post in Huangzhou city. What do you want by appearing in Zhong's main tent?!”

Huang Zhong's mood is very bad now and he is angry because the guard did not notify him of this young asshole's arrival.

“Nothing, I just want to ask when General Huang wanted to expel Lu Bu’s army out of Jiangxia!”

Huang She is asking lightly, in his tone, he do not have any respect at all for his commander-in-chief, Huang Zhong.

“Now is not a good time!” Said Huang Zhong while gulping down a cup of wine.

Huang Zhong thought to himself"Expelling Lu Bu’s army outside of Jiangxia? Going on the offensive? Ha-Ha-Ha. If you did that, you are playing into Lu Bu hand.

How can 10,000 troops fight with an army of 30,000 troops? Use your damn brain you useless Idiot."

Now what Huang Zhong is playing defensively, refusing to battle, Lu Bu army's grain and provisions to deplete it to almost nothing. Until then can they do a decisive battle to expel Lu Bu's army.

“THEN WHEN IS THE GOOD TIME?!” Huang She unexpectedly used an interrogating tone. A quartermaster is interrogating the commander-in-chief? Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled.

“This thing does not concern you, Eldest son She. It is Zhong's duty. Eldest son She's responsibility is only preparing grain and provisions for the military campaign!”

Huang Zhong also replied impolitely. The division of duty has been clear from the very start. Huang She's duty is a quartermaster, and Huang

Zhong is commander-in-chief. So planning for war, Huang She is not qualified to do that.

“HUMPH! My father has given you military authority, why are you delaying to battle? You know the consumption rate of our army?

How many common people are restless every day because you do not repel Lu Bu’s army out of our Jiangxia? I ask you, can you bear this responsibility or not?!” Huang She shot back and kept pointing with his finger toward Huang Zhong

Huang Zhong just smiled coldly. This Huang She really just wanted to do battle eh?

“I believe I have already said it, if Eldest son She finds Zhong's tactics unacceptable, please submit a memorial to General Huang Zu. Ask Milord to transfer military authority to you!!! We will see, if General Huang Zu want to carefully read your letter or not!!!”

If this is an ordinary quartermaster, Huang Zhong can execute him immediately. But this is Huang Zu's son, even though this young bastard was in the wrong, how can a quartermaster question his commander-in-chief in an interrogative tone?

“YOU!!! YOU!!!!” Huang She anger hit its peak. His father sent Huang She a letter reprimanding him, it almost dismissed him from the army and had hum return from the front line in Huangzhou city back to Jiangxia.

Needless to say why Huang She blamed Huang Zhong. He also realized why his father is writing a reprimand letter is because Huang Zhong submitted a memorial to Huang Zu.

Actually Huang She wanted Huang Zhong to submit under him. But Huang She really hated Huang Zhong so he reported him to Huang Zu. In actuality it is Su Fei who submitted memorial to Huang Zu.

Huang She is useless in the frontline, but because Su Fei knows about his ambition and worried that he would snatch military authority from Huang Zhong, making him dismiss himself voluntarily. Therefore Su Fei quickly reported this to Huang Zu.

“Old fart, you should not be proud or arrogant now, even though you hold military authority now, in the end you are a DOG of my Huang clan!!!”

Dog of Huang clan, those words are really demeaning. Huang Zhong's complexion became grim “My lord is Liu Biao of Jing Province not your father General Huang Zu!”

“What is the difference? Now you are in Jiangxia, my territory. Those soldiers you command are also my Jiangxia's soldiers and horses! It is true currently my father is the owner of Jiangxia and he can be like this because he has use for you, old dog. Sooner or later this Jiangxia will fall to my hand, and you will be my dog for life!!!”

“HUMPH!!!” Huang Zhong just coldly humphed. What Huang She said is right because Huang She is Huang Zu's son, eventually when Huang Zu dies Jiangxia will be inherited by Huang She.

“I do not care about the future, at least now Jiangxia's current affairs is not your decision. Guards, please send Eldest son She, back to his camp!” Huang Zhong did not want to argue further with Huang She.

“Huh, are you angry now you should be ashamed of yourself!!!” Huang She sneered. “OH, LET ME REPEAT ONCE MORE. HUANG ZHONG, YOU ARE MY CLAN'S DOG, WHEN YOU DIE, YOUR SON WILL BECOME MY CLAN'S DOG!!! HIS SON WILL BE MY CLAN'S DOG ALSO HIS FURTHER GENERATION'S WILL ALSO BE MY CLAN'S DOG!!!!”

“SHUT UP!!!!” Huang Zhong's eyes started to emit killing intent. Huang She insulted him again and again, Huang Zhong still can endure, but when his son was also insulted, he cannot hold his anger!

“Huang She, dost thou think I do not dare to kill thou!” Huang Zhong's manner changed into an imposing one. He locked-on Huang She like he is a prey and already dead.

“You want to kill me? DO YOU DARE?!” Although Huang She is a little afraid with Huang Zhong's anger, but he still had a trump card in his hand.

“TRY ME!!!” Huang Zhong approaches Huang She step by step. This bastard Huang She again and again provoked Huang Zhong and today it is the last straw.

Huang Zhong transferred to Jiangxia to find a good doctor for his son Huang Xu. Now, in addition he did not finding good doctor, his son also disappeared. Suddenly Huang Zhong's presence here become a lost

cause.

In addition he was drunk because of the wine, Huang Zhong wishes to kill Huang She immediately and then surrender to Lu Bu.

Looking at Huang Zhong approaching step by step, Huang She a little nervous. But looking at Huang Zhong's expression right now, Huang She's heart actually pretty happy. This Huang Zhong really cares for his son, then he said “Huang Zhong, you dare to hurt me even a hair, you will never see your son ever again!!!”

“What?!” Huang Zhong stopped his steps at once “My son Xu!!! You know my son Xu whereabouts?!” Huang Zhong asked Huang She while holding his shoulders.

“LET ME GO, LET ME GO NOW!!!!” Due to Huang Zhong excitement, he subconsciously held Huang She shoulders with full power. The strength of pinnacle super-class generals is very big, making Huang She felt that his own shoulders were about to crushed.

“Eldest son She, tell me, where is my son Xu now!!” Huang Zhong is really excited. The news of his son suddenly returned life to his eyes.

"Kowtow before me!"

"What?!"Huang Zhong stunned.

“ARE YOU DEAF?! KOWTOW, KOWTOW BEFORE ME, NOW!!!” Huang She sneered.

“Eldest son Huang She, don't push me too far!!!”

“OKAY THEN, IT'S FINE!!!!” Huang She sneered again. “SO, GENERAL HUANG, DRINK THAT WINE UNTIL DAWN, YOU WILL NEVER KNOW YOUR SON'S STATUS NOW!!!” Said Huang She while walking toward the main tent's door.

“Wait!” Suddenly Huang She was stopped by Huang Zhong's voice.

“I will kowtow now!” Huang Zhong's fist has grasped his hand tightly, even he did not feel the pain caused by his fingernail.

A real man’s kowtow is worth a thousand gold. Even though this is ancient time, kowtowing is only reserved for his ones teacher.

In the military, there is also a tradition on respecting, usually it is holding one's fist and even though there is also kneeling, it is only half-kneeling toward higher ranks. But currently Huang She wanted Huang Zhong to kowtow toward him.

“Splash!” Huang Zhong kowtowed toward Huang She, hung his pride, in order to save his son.

“Eldest son She, please inform Zhong about my son's whereabouts!”

“RIGHT, THIS IS THE CORRECT ATTITUDE. BUT YOU KOWTOWED SO EARLY, SO I FORGOT TO TELL YOU!” Huang She has arrived in front of Huang Zhong and he patted Huang Zhong's head. Similar to patting a dog.

Huang Zhong bit his teeth, his hand shaking violently. He is furious.

“BUT I CHANGED MY MIND NOW, I WILL LET YOU IN THE DARK LONGER!” Huang She walked slowly toward the commander’s seat and sat on it. He looked at Huang Zhong from this angle, a really good feeling.

Huang She was really happy right now, is this a feeling of a warlord? No, this is the feeling for becoming a commander-in-chief.

“OLD FART, I SAID AGAIN. YOU ARE MY HUANG CLAN'S DOG. YOUR SON ALSO! SINCE BOTH OF YOU ARE DOGS, YOU MUST HEAR MY COMMAND IMMEDIATELY, MAYBE WHEN I, HUANG SHE, AM HAPPY, I WILL TELL YOUR SON'S LOCATION!”

“HUANG SHE, FUCK YOU!” Huang Zhong stood fiercely, his face revealed blue vein and his hand already stroking the sword on his waist.

Chapter 97 – Command Transfer in Jiangxia's Army

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“It has been a few days already, but Huang Zhong still hasn't sent his response to us!” Lu Bu’s army stratagem is to instill chaos among the enemy ranks, by lowering morale. However did not have any effect at all.

First they thought that Huang Zhong is willing to bring his son here to save his life, so even if it is a false information, they thought he would want to come here to try the rumor. But, who can predict, that suddenly there is no response from him. Moreover, his vice-commander Su Fei who should be more suspicious of Huang Zhong, instead is trusting Huang Zhong more and more.

If Huang Zhong did not respond at all then that stratagem is useless.

“Do we really have to resort to storm the army?!” Lu Bu’s head really ache from this.

During this time, suddenly Chen Gong rushed into the main tent “Milord, be happy now, rejoice now!!!”

“Rejoice? From where does this happiness comes from?!” Lu Bu is really confused. It is very rare for Chen Gong to be like this.

“Huff, Huff!” Chen Gong huffing and panting heavily. He is overly excited right now, so he ran at full speed after getting the Intel, he is out of breath.

“Slow down, Gongtai, take a deep breath!” Lu Bu went forward to pat Chen Gong's shoulder, helping him to relieve his breath.

“Cough!” Coughing relaxed Chen Gong’s breath and then he said “Milord, we have obtained a big harvest in Jiangxia!!!”

“Obtained a big harvest?!” Is Huang Zu willing to retreat to give pass to us?!” If that is the case, then it is the best. Because these days deadlocked by Huang Zhong’s army has caused Lu Bu army’s grain and provisions to be depleted. It's so depleted, that they cannot continue to Xinye or make a detour to Hanzhong.

“No, it is not that Huang Zu retreated but we have obtained Huang Xu, Huang Xu!!!” Chen Gong saying it excitedly.

“Eh, Huang Xu?! Who is that?!” Lu Bu really pondered. As far as he recalled, he does not remember anyone with that name.

“Huang Xu is Huang Zhong’s son, his only son!” Answered Chen Gong.

“You have news about that?!” Chen Gong is responsible for military Intel so his intelligence personnel was already sent into Jiangxia. This is just a news right? How can Chen Gong be so happy with only a news?

“We do not only obtain news, but we also obtain Huang Xu!!!” Chen Gong said it casually, having regained his consciousness.

“WHAAATTTT?!” Now it is Lu Bu’s turn to be surprised, so surprised he jumped from his seat. “Gongtai, say that again, once more!”

“Milord, I will repeat it once more. Huang Xu, Huang Zhong’s only son, has been obtained by us!” Chen Gong repeat his words. It is true Lu Bu’s army has good luck.

At that time, Chen Gong sent a team of scouts to Jiangxia to inquire news about Huang Xu. But due to Jiangxia being heavily guarded, those team of scouts were camped in Jiangxia's outskirts, unable to enter Jiangxia. But at that same time, there is a team of Jiangxia soldiers getting out from Jiangxia into the forest where Chen Gong's scouts are. When those soldiers met, naturally there was a confrontation.

A team of scouts is only a few people, naturally when meeting a larger number of soldiers, those scouts will be destroyed. But who would have thought that Jiangxia's soldiers were so weak that they were helpless when fighting those scouts. All of them were beheaded save for 1 or 2 people for interrogation purposes.

After the interrogation session, those scouts discovered that this team of Jiangxia's soldiers unexpectedly is Jiangxia’s Eldest son Huang She’s personal soldiers. They appeared outside Jiangxia to go to a safe house near the forest after kidnapping Huang Zhong’s son Huang Xu, which is why they bumped into Chen Gong’s scouts.

“Eh, Huang Zu’s son kidnap Huang Xu?!” Lu Bu really do not understand his motive. Huang Zhong is a general of Jiangxia. Because of his presence, Jiangxia is able to breathe normally. Why did Huang She, Huang Zu’s son want to kidnap his veteran general’s relatives? Did he want to dig his own grave?

“He wants military authority!!!” Replied Chen Gong, dispelling Lu Bu’s doubt “Huang She is Jiangxia’s little lord, although he is Huang Zu’s son, Huang Zu had not given him military authority because of his nearsightedness and stupidity. And also because Huang Zu is very doting to his youngest son who just turned ten years old this year, this Huang She felt threatened out of jealousy and fear that he would not get any inheritance over his brother!!!”

“Military authority?!” Thought Lu Bu while keeping silent. Is it really worth it to fight for? How many warlord’s clan are suffering from this? Father and son become bitter rivals, brothers become mortal enemies. This kind of event is really heart breaking.

“So the one who is commanding Jiangxia's army is Huang She!” Said Lu Bu after getting out from his main tent and looking at the direction of Huangzhou city.

“If Huang She threatened Huang Zhong with Huang Xu’s safety, I am afraid Huang Zhong will obey him!” Said Chen Gong.

“Yes, he will certainly do that!” Lu Bu nodded his head in agreement. What a pity you are Huang Zhong. You have an unrivalled skill in wushu and leadership, but you serve the wrong master. You worked yourself to the death for Jiangxia, but you were stabbed in the back by your lord’s son.

“We will go for a small skirmish tomorrow morning. We need to see who in the end assumed command at Huangzhou city!” Lu Bu distributed the order.

All of the generals present receive their order and returned to their respective camps.

- - - -

“No, Milord! Huang Zhong already handed over military authority to Huang She!” Milord, look the standing position of Huang She and Huang Zhong!” Logically, the one who is standing in front must be the commander-in-chief. Even though Huang She is Jiangxia's little lord, but when he goes to battle, his status is only a quartermaster. Evidently he needed to stand behind Huang Zhong.

But now, it is very obvious that Huang She is commander-in-chief and Huang Zhong has been demoted to staff.

“Is this Lu Bu’s army?!” Huang She smiled disdainly while observing Lu Bu’s army. Lu Bu’s army has been trying several times to attack the city but was repelled with no result, causing dozens of casualties under the city. Then Huang She continued “Heh, they are only mediocre!!!”

“Eldest son She, please be vigilant!” Huang Zhong who stood on the side opened his mouth with low voice. “Lu Bu army is only testing us.” Although Huang Zhong has handed over military authority, he does not want to see those soldiers die under Huang She's miscalculation and stupidity, therefore he opened his mouth to remind him.

“Have I told you to speak, huh?! HAVE I???” Huang She did not appreciate Huang Zhong kindness but he continued to sneer “WHO GIVES YOU PERMISSION TO CALL ME ELDEST SON SHE, HUH??? WHO??? CALL ME MASTER LIKE A DOG YOU ARE!!!”

"SCREW YOU!" Huang Zhong glared toward Huang She.

“OOOOHHH, DO YOU NOT WANT TO SEE YOUR SON, HMMMM?!” Huang She whispered to Huang Zhong’s ear.

“GRRRR!!!!” Huang Zhong gripped his hand tightly to calm himself down and then he took a deep breath, said these words while he hung his pride “I am sorry, master!”

“Clever dog! Since you are a dog, you must have a consciousness of a dog!” Huang She slapped Huang Zhong’s face, his hand made a very sick sound.

Huang She continued looking at Lu Bu’s army. Although used a devious method to seize military authority, he was not that stupid. He also knows that Lu Bu's army is a bad case to deal with, therefore he did not dare to act rashly.

But his idea to render meritorious service made it difficult for him to decide which is important, his own rations or repel Lu Bu’s army. Jiangxia's army rations was neglected by him, so now their own rations are also depleting. Huang Zhong’s tactics is to deplete Lu Bu’s army’s grain and provisions in order to make Lu Bu attack, but looking at their current supplies, it is no longer feasible to stay on defense.

Therefore Huang She’s plan is to go on the offensive against Lu Bu’s army.

“Testing huh?!” Huang She talked to himself slowly “FINE THEN! IF YOU CAN TEST ME, I CAN ALSO DO THE SAME!!!”

“YOU, bring 2000 troops to go out of city, meet the enemy head-on!” Huang She pointed at a normal officer.

“HUH?!” The selected officer is surprised very much. Send out 2000 troops to meet the enemy head on?! Although the opposite force did not send out cavalry soldiers due the lands wetness, they have more than 10,000 people. Those 2000 soldiers who are to meet head-on with 10,000 soldiers, is not that asking for death?!

“Eldest, Eldest son She, why me?!” That military officer was already sweating cold sweat profusely.

“What do you fear, HUH?! Behind you is the entire Huangzhou city. I only send you out for testing, nothing more. Moreover, there are 5000 naval units to support you!” Beside Huangzhou city, there is a big river, so those 5000 naval units can become your bodyguard. They can shoot arrows to give Lu Bu’s army a big threat.

Seeing that military officer not move, Huang She become angry and pulled out his sword “WHY YOU DO NOT MOVE NOW? I HAVE GIVEN YOU YOUR ORDER BUT YOU STILL DISOBEYED IT?! IF YOU DO NOT GO NOW, I WILL SHOW YOU THE CONSEQUENCES OF DISOBEDIENCE!!!”

“Yes sir, yes!” That military officer clenched his teeth. If he went, he might die, but if he refused, then it is death that awaits for him! Dying early is better than dying late. So, he prepared himself and said these words “Gentlemen, please excuse Xu Zhi. If Xu Zhi does not come back, please take care my family!”

Other military officers nodded at him with full sympathy.

“Thank you very much!” Then Xu Zhi got down from tower and

prepared his soldiers to meet enemy head-on.

Chapter 98 – Lu Bu uses one of the 36 Stratagems.

(Inflict injury on oneself to win the enemy's trust)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Huangzhou city front door has opened, Jiangxia's army one by one flushed out of the gate. The opposite Lu Bu’s army is observing them real close.

“Hohoho, going on the offensive, eh?!” Lu Bu hits his horse to look at those 2,000 troops go out of town. “With this, I am pretty sure that Jiangxia's army has changed its commander-in-chief!” Lu Bu shows a faint smile. Jiangxia's army troops have a total of 15,000 with 10,000 infantry and 5,000 naval units.

Actually with this number, they can play a defensive battle in the city, waiting until Lu Bu’s army exhausted their grain and provisions which would result in their retreat from the frontline.

But now, Jiangxia's army broke their routine from being defensive to going on the offensive.

“Humph, a few days before, they were hiding in the city like turtles, they did not dare to fight with us. Now, they are unexpectedly becoming offensive, those soldiers are waiting for death to claim them!” Zang Ba licked his lip and then half-kneeled toward Lu Bu with one hand on his chest. “Milord!!! Zang Ba requests to join the battle! Give me 1,000 soldiers, I will make sure that Jiangxia's army will not be able to return ever again!”

Those words are said by Zang Ba, because he wanted to prove himself in front of Lu Bu again. Even though currently Zang Ba is Lu Bu's personal bodyguard he is tired of being a mere bodyguard.

He is Zang Ba, he is one of Lu Bu's eight great generals. So right now, he longed to have his own division back, to announce to the world that he is still a fearsome general.

"Xuangao, this time you need to stand down, it is my turn to be in action! Milord, Zhang Liao requests to join the battle!" Zhang Liao also half-knelt toward Lu Bu.

His Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are stuck because this place is littered with wetlands and rivers, so he cannot rampage like usual. Therefore he has been suppressing his bloodlust in his belly. Now there is an opportunity, how he cannot jump into battle?

"Wenyuan, you and me should not fight over who is going to be deployed. Your division is cavalry. This kind of land is not suitable for large-scale cavalry charge!" Zang Ba and Zhang Liao are staring at each other.

Only Gao Shun who kept silent all the time did not want to bicker on who is going to be deployed, he only awaited for his lord's order.

TL: Oh boy, two of eight great generals of Lu Bu's army is bickering on who is the one should fight, shouldn't they be scared?

"Cavalry are mounted infantry, cavalry soldiers are also made from

infantry! Even if my boys dismounted, they can become elite infantries!”

"But you....!"

“Knock it off!!!” Lu Bu tweaked both of his generals’ ears, to stop their quarrel “Xuangao, are you determined to do battle with them?!”

“Yes sir, Ba is willing to bring enemies severed heads to Milord!” Zang Ba’s heart is really happy, so he did not suspect anything about Lu Bu’s intention. He really thinks that Lu Bu is moved by his determination.

Using 1,000 troops to vanquish 2,000 enemy troops. This is not Zang Ba’s arrogance but his self-confidence.

On training soldiers, Huang Zhong’s ability and Zang Ba’s ability is on par.

"3000!" Lu Bu stretched out three fingers" I will give you 3000 troops! "

“No, no, Milord, 1000 troops are enough!” Said Zang Ba eagerly “If those 1000 troops cannot take those 2000 Jiangxia soldiers, please take my head!”

“I neither want your head nor do I want you to defeat these 2000 Jiangxia army!” Lu Bu shook his head and said the strangest thing in his career as a warlord. “I want you to be defeated, I want you to go back to our camp with shame!!!”

“Eh???” Zang Ba is looking at Lu Bu with a disbelief expression. From time to time, the commander-in-chief always requested his subordinates to personally lead a battle to win, never has any occasion happened where the commander-in-chief asked for his subordinate to be defeated.

1000 troops are not enough to draw troops, so you must use 3000 troops?

Does Milord want to entice the enemy so they fight to the death? Zang Ba who only had talent in battle as a senior general, suddenly he wanted to understand Lu Bu’s stratagem.

“Milord, please do not do this!” Whether it is to entice or not to entice the enemy, where a defeat is certain, no military general likes to smear his own battle record.

“Hey, you said you wanted to do it already!” Said Lu Bu.

Looking at Zang Ba’s pained face, Lu Bu’s mouth showed a weird smile “Xuangao, Xuangao, this is the first time you launch your division to battle since you surrendered to me. If I do not let you fight, it is my mistake as your lord!”

“Yes, Yes! Xuangao, this is your first battle under Milord, you better play it nicely!” Nearby Zhang Liao also encouraged Zang Ba? Earlier he is annoyed because he did not have any chance to do battle, now because of Lu Bu’s discourse, he smiled at Zang Ba’s misfortune, being a part of Lu Bu’s stratagem

“Okay then, I will go now!” Zang Ba exchanged stares with Zhang Liao. He then rode his warhorse and 3000 troops left the camp gate towards the battlefield.

“Jiangxia army, Zang Ba, Zang Xuangao of Mt. Tai is here. All of you will receive a quick death!” Exclaimed Zang Ba while swinging his broadsword toward those 2000 Jiangxia soldiers who are currently stationed under Huangzhou city.

“Zang Ba of Mt. Tai?!’ The Jiangxia general who are currently stationed at Huangzhou city is truly worried that they will bump into Lu Bu or Lu Bu’s subordinate Gao Shun or Zhang Liao. They have witnessed the terror that Lu Bu brings, and also Gao Shun and Zhang Liao. Although they have not seen those two’s skill in wushu, they command a division by themselves, thus one can see their strength.

But the one who challenged them is a nameless general! Making Jiangxia’s general really happy and relieved.

Jiangxia's general naturally did not know about Zang Ba, because since the Battle of Kaiyang, he has stayed at Lu Bu’s side as a personal bodyguard.

“Enemy general, cease your savage boast! Remember that Xu Zhi of Jiangxia, is the one who will cut your neck!” Xu Zhi then thought “Hehehe, only a nameless general, maybe I can survive this battle and also bring merit with your head!” Xu Zhi’s heart has been painted with greed.

Their warhorse speeding along in the battlefield and clashing with each other. In an instant, they have been fighting for ten bouts.

“Humph!!!” Zang Ba humphed in his heart. If it were not for Lu Bu’s order, this garbage would have already died in the first blow. Only second-class in strength yet he dares to fight with me?

However, now Zang Ba can only accompany Xu Zhi’s rhythm. Regardless of the outcome, the battle is really exciting and fierce.

“When did this Xu Zhi become this strong?!” Above the tower overlooking the city gate, Huang Zhong watches the following duel with a big doubt. Huang Zhong did not know much about Zang Ba’s strength, but he knows for certain that this Zang Ba has refined strength enough to almost enter super-class generals.

Zang Ba’s eyes focus did not waver, his breath is stable during battle, these are the basic signs that Zang Ba has almost broken through to become a super-class general.

A first-class general battle with Xu Zhi to a draw? Has Xu Zhi really become this strong? Or is Zang Ba too weak?

“Who is this person? He's really strong!” Although Huang She is also a warrior, his martial art cannot be compared with Xu Zhi, therefore he cannot see the depth of the situation. So, instead he thought that this general called Xu Zhi is very strong and can fight Lu Bu army’s senior general to a draw.

“That person is Xu Zhi of Huangzhou city! A senior general!” Nearby Huangzhou city officials reply while looking at Xu Zhi’s intense battle.

“Oh? If he managed to repel the enemy, this eldest son will heavily rewarded that person!”

While both warriors are fighting intensely suddenly there is a big movement. Zang Ba showed a big flaw intentionally, he showed his entire back to Xu Zhi.

“Good opportunity!” Xu Zhi then stabbed his spear again to pierce Zang Ba’s armor. He is truly happy that he can get a merit today.

“Clang!” Zang Ba also moved his broadsword to intercept Xu Zhi’s spear, causing sparks.

“ARGH!” Zang Ba’s helmet was hit flying by the deflected spear. His long hair was unknotted and on his cheeks, there is a scar caused by that spear.

“You are more skillful than me. Today I am tired, look forward to our next encounter!” Zang Ba quickly turned his horse to escape.

“Where do you want to go?” Xu Zhi who has already removed Zang Ba’s helmet, naturally saw his opponent head as a persimmon, so he eagerly wanted to chase Zang Ba to gain his merit.

So, he quickly hit his horse to chase him. Lu Bu’s army after seeing Zang Ba run, how can they themselves not run also?! Because they are too far from main camp, they have become food for the valiant Jiangxia army.

Their harvest is really a lot. In an instant they killed around hundreds troops. Their heart is really good.

Xu Zhi who was carried away by success, wanted to attack Lu Bu main camp when suddenly he heard a big commanding voice bellowed toward him “STOP NOW!” and he retorted “Heh, Lu Bu’s army is just a weak army!”

“Damnation!” Zang Ba who has just entered the main tent wanted to exit the main camp and kill Xu Zhi immediately but was blocked by Lu Bu.

“No joke, that man is really wild. But, this degree is good!” Lu Bu smiled. After winning a little battle he's drunk from victory and is not only heading to our main camp taunting us. Ignorant people have no fear. We will tolerate you until we break Huangzhou city.

Chapter 99 – Jiangxia's Destruction is Coming

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Today, Jiangxia army really showed off their prowess, especially Xu Zhi. This person can fight a general in Lu Bu's army into a standstill, an invincible person.

When he returned to the city, Huang She rewarded Xu Zhi with 100 gold, promoted his title to a first-class officer, and expanded his influence from commanding 2,000 troops to 5,000 troops. The scenery right now is very festive.

"Heh, it seem like Lu Bu's army is only mediocre!" Said Huang She while looking at his subordinate, his valiant general Xu Zhi. So, he cannot help but to rise his heroic spirit.

The battles that have happened these two days are very satisfying for Jiangxia's army. Huang She had found a really big talent which can be explained with him having a mind for tactics. If he did not send the testing squad, how can he have these big victories?

"Messenger, send a report to my father, Jiangxia is victorious! And say that our army repelled Lu Bu army's offense several times and killed 300... Wait!!!" Huang She thought again "No, you say we killed 3,000 enemy troops and our army casualties was only 200 troops. We will make sure Lu Bu's army will retreat as soon as possible, no need for father to be concerned!!!"

Those 300 troops perhaps, the complete summation of casualties for Lu

Bu army since the first day of siege. But Huang She bloated that number from 300 to 3000, in order to further increasing his merit.

As for 2000 people of Jiangxia's army's casualties, it was reduced by Huang She to 200. So in order to complement the loss who were falsely reported, Huang She forced 1800 citizens from Huangzhou city to conscript themselves into the army.

"Come, General Xu Zhi. Huang She offers you one cup of wine as a respect. You have shown our Jiangxia's army strength and prowess today as you are able to push back Lu Bu's army! Thank you for your trouble!" Huang She is patting Xu Zhi's shoulder continuously. Because with this person, Huang She will be able to win against Lu Bu's army.

"Much thanks, little lord! Xu Zhi is glad he can be a help for you to overcome your difficulty in repelling Lu Bu's army. Even if it is really tiring, Xu Zhi is also willing to fight again for the little lord!" Xu Zhi patted Huang She's ass directly.

"Wait a minute, what did you just call me?!" Huang She suddenly grabbed Xu Zhi's hand. His cold gaze is staring at Xu Zhi, making him tremble. Xu Zhi then thought "Oh, no, did I address him wrongly? Did I said the wrong words?!"

Earlier today, he was almost cut down because he hesitated to bring 2000 soldiers out, and right now he has been blessed, not to die in the enemy's hand. Why must he now die in his master's hand because he address Huang She as "little lord"?

Old General Huang Zhong just kept silent, he do not dare to offend

Huang She for fear of his son's safety.

"I address you as little lord, little lord!" Said Xu Zhi trembling.

"Say it again!" Huang She tightened his grip on Xu Zhi's hand.

"It is little lord, little lord!"

"Hahahaha!" Huang She suddenly laughed. His happy expression made Xu Zhi breathe a relief sigh. If this second-generation of Jiangxia's rule is angry, Xu Zhi himself may be unable to survive anymore.

"Good, very good, Xu Zhi. You have the talent of senior general and also have the attitude of a senior general!!!" Huang She's mood is really good, really good. These two days, he went to war, won two battles consecutively. This evening was brought by this Xu Zhi.

Addressed as Little lord! Although Huang She is Huang Zu's eldest son, he was only called Eldest son She, and now there is a person who called him little lord for the first time. Huang She being called little lord, represented that he is already Jiangxia's legitimate successor, the next lord of Jiangxia.

"Thank you very much, little lord. Praise the little lord!" Xu Zhi sees that this Huang She liked to be called little lord, naturally will call him little lord again and again.

"Hahahaha, do not worry about your future. As long as you follow this little lord. I will make my father entrust heavy responsibilities to you!"

At one side, Huang She and Xu Zhi is really happy. It is different with Huang Zhong who have been drinking wine all this time to drown his sorrow. Su Fei had just gone to the naval unit's main camp, therefore there is nobody to accompany him to drink. His son is still in the hands of Huang She, so he did not have any interest in the current jovial state. Then again, is today really a victory?

Huang Zhong really had big doubts in his heart. Is this Xu Zhi really strong? Two times, a first-class general was defeated by a second-class general. This kind of predicament raised doubts in Huang Zhong's heart.

"Are they feigning defeat?!" Huang Zhong guessed. What is Lu Bu army trying to gain by feigning defeat? Is it in order to swallow those 2000 troops that act as a test?

If that is the case, then it is too much, it is like fussing a minor issue with a big response. Dealing with 2000 troops that Huang She sent is a very easy matter, that general can annihilate them ASAP.

While Huang Zhong is still pondering, the answer to why Lu Bu's army is feigning defeat is revealed.

He saw Huang She stand up and screamed heroically "This little lord has decided. Tomorrow open the main gate. We will do a decisive battle with Lu Bu's army!!! A battle to decide the victor!!!"

"Decisive battle! Fight to decide the victor!!!" They have been successfully brainwashed by Huang She. In their eyes Lu Bu's army is nothing and Lu Bu's terror is yesterday's news and is not worth

mentioning.

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, the trump card of Lu Bu's army, is unable to show their might due to topography of Jiangxia, The remaining divisions are 10,000 infantries including the 3000 troops of the Formation Breaker and 3000 troops of the Urban Army.

These land-lubbers are nothing, if they are suppressed from land and water.

Also, for the retreat path, Huangzhou city has many waterways. If they are defeated, they can just jumped into the river and enter Huangzhou city through waterways.

"Humph!" Huang Zhong just humphed coldly in low voice. If their ploy is that simple, can they truly he called as Lu Bu's army?!

Huang Zhong and Lu Bu are not long acquainted, but he knows that Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are unable to display their might due to topography. However, he is also aware of the elite infantries that Lu Bu has. The Formation Breakers and the Urban Army.

Huang Zhong has paid more attention to the Urban Army. Although he had not seen the Urban Army do battle, he has seen their organized steps. It is a much disciplined army and definitely can be called as an elite team. The only question that he had in mind is why the Urban Army had not yet become a division that can be dispatched at any time.

To hell with Huang She, he can lose this battle and die in a river for all I

care. All Huang Zhong wanted is for Huang She to return his son back to him after this battle ended.

To hell also with military authority, take it Huang She if you want.

Dig your fucking grave with your own hand.

At the naval main camp. “WHAT? This military order, orders us tomorrow infantry and naval unit coordinate our attack to do a decisive battle with Lu Bu army?!”

Su Fei is really uncertain with the order he received. Old General Huang, why now? A few days ago, you decided to play defensively, in order to exhaust Lu Bu’s army’s grain and provisions but why now, did you decide to do a decisive battle?

Su Fei has a hunch that this is not Old General Huang’s order, but when he saw the tiger seal mark, he dispelled his doubt immediately. Su Fe is a really clueless as to what happened in main camp, after he went back 2 days ago.

“Xingba! Prepare the naval unit. Tomorrow we need to coordinate our attack with Old General Huang’s offense. We are going to fight a decisive battle!” Su Fei said that order toward the young man who wore silk clothing.

“BUMP!!! BUMP!!! BUMP!!!” Battle drum finally thundered in Jiangxia's army. The signal announcing an offensive strike.

Slowly 10,000 troops flushed out from Huangzhou city, forming formation one by one. The naval unit also have been prepared on river side from their camp with archers ready.

Giant crossbows also already prepared.

Lu Bu then speaks "Hahaha, finally the day of Jiangxia's fall has finally come!"

Chapter 100 – Jiangxia's Downfall (1)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

TL: Never thought that Bloodfalcon, James, TearsofLoki, Tchu and Krayto would reach this 100th chapter. But finally we did it, 1/9 out of a total 900 chapter journey has been achieved.

"BUMP!!! BUMP!!! BUMP!!!" The sound of the battle drums reverberated throughout the field. Two huge square formations gradually forming by themselves. War banners are fluttering on both sides

Huangzhou city's wetlands made the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry unable to show their true might, so Lu Bu's army can only send infantries to do battle with Jiangxia's army.

"Milord, Zhang Liao requests to join the battle!" Said Zhang Liao half-kneeling while holding his fist.

"Milord, Zang Ba request to join the battle!" Zang Ba also made the same gesture.

"Milord!!! Battle!" Gao Shun also unexpectedly opened his mouth. Yesterday, the enemy only sent out 2000 people. Insufficient to sate Gao Shun's appetite. Now, the enemy is fighting them all out, how can this veteran general keep silent now?

"Do not quarrel, today I will make sure all of you get your portion until full!" Said Lu Bu while staring at that veteran general with a longbow.

If possible, Lu Bu wants to fight with him once again, fair and square. It is a pity that he did not have this opportunity.

“Is Zang Ba present?!” Lu Bu shouted in a clear voice.

“This general is present!” Zang Ba quickly half-knelt on the ground, shouting with a nice face.

“Like yesterday's battle, you cannot win against Xu Zhi!” Lu Bu said loudly.

“Eh?!” Zang Ba’s is showing a mixed complexion. Yesterday, he did that to feign defeat, but what use is it for today?

“Relax, today you only maintain the rhythm for a while, I will signal you when to counterattack, earn your revenge!” Said Lu Bu to comfort Zang Ba.

The enemy has naval units, which is their big advantage. Lu Bu’s army cannot do anything to those naval units, but on the contrary naval units can deal serious damage to Lu Bu army. Especially that giant crossbow, the threat is really huge, even with Lu Bu or Liu Mang’s armor, it can still kill them.

Once Lu Bu’s army is in a deadlocked by Jiangxia navy, their damage will be very serious, therefore they must spread their forces.

To separate Jiangxia's navy and army, one must lure them to Huangzhou city's border and that is Zang Ba's role.

"Yes!" As soon as Zang Ba learned that he got the opportunity for revenge, naturally he received the order gleefully.

"Is Zhang Liao present?" Lu Bu shouted again.

"This general is present!"

"Wenyuan, go prepare your boys for a big feast! You are to stay at Huangzhou city's border, wait for the prey to come!"

"Yes, sir!" Zhang Liao and his Bing Province Heavy Cavalry cannot show their prowess in this battle, stuck in the main camp all the time.

A few days ago, even the supply troops had the opportunity to help siege, but Bing Province Heavy Cavalry still had not been dispatched at all. So their belly is boiling with bloodlust, after Zhang Liao heard Lu Bu's order, his heart is really happy.

"Is Gao Shun and Liu Mang present?!"

"This general is present!" "Present!" Gao Shun and Liu Mang responded. Gao Shun half-kneeling but Liu Mang only held his fist respectfully.

"Both of you are to detour Huangzhou city, stay at their flank, I want

those Jiangxia soldiers cut off when they are at hard retreat!" Lu Bu does not want Jiangxia's army to run away. If half of Jiangxia's army is able to enter Huangzhou city, then it will become a disaster for Lu Bu's army as they will stay on the defense the whole time.

"Yes, sir!" Although Liu Mang was paired up with Gao Shun, Liu Mang's mind was actually distant from Gao Shun. Although they both got along pretty well, Liu Mang still had grudge against this crazy Gao Shun who did not help him when he was pinned down by that tiger.

"Gongtai, How is Hanyang's medicine?!" Lu Bu asked after all people had been assigned to their tasks.

"Do not worry, Milord. Huang Xu's breathing is already stable!" Replied Chen Gong. Chen Gong is a Confucian scholar, but he has also studied medicine a little in his youth. He really felt this pill was magical.

When he saw Huang Xu brought into their medical camp, he diagnosed that his disease is very hard to cure. But this medicine brought by Liu Mang is actually able to treat Huang Xu's disease, that medicine called Qingmei tablet.

TL: Qingmei tablet http://www.google.com/patents/CN103751350A?cl=en . Liu Mang brought modern Chinese medicine and also a book containing method on how to create them.

Chen Gong really did not understand, this Qingmei tablets base is sour plum which is usually used only for snacks. Can this raw material really be used for medicine?

TL: How plum can be used to treat lung disease http://straightbamboo.com/how-to-stay-healthy-in-autumn/

“That is good, then!” Lu Bu smiled very happily. Oh Huang Zhong, since you are mistreated by Huang Zu and his family, come to me and be my familial general.

“Xu Zhi, you go out and challenge the enemy to battle!” Commanded Huang She while sitting on a warhorse. This feeling of being a commander-in-chief is really, really good. Huang She intoxicated with this feeling.

“Yes, little lord!” Huang She really thought this Xu Zhi is an outstanding person, adding little lord on every sentence, making Huang She really happy.

“Hear me Lu Bu’s army. Your grandpa Xu Zhi is here, who dares to come out to fight 300 bouts with me?!” Being a winner of two consecutive battles, made Xu Zhi really confident, as long as Lu Bu did not accept his challenge.

TL: Comment from James: Chinese people love to refer themselves as grandpa, father, granny, old lady, etc as a sign showing their status is higher than yours, or showing superiority.

Even if Lu Bu is the one who answered his challenge, there is Huang Zhong with his longbow standing by, what need is there to be afraid?

“Hey, your grandpa Zang Ba Zang Xuangao is here, Xu Zhi, you will

suffer before death!" A valiant general comes out from Lu Bu's army answering Xu Zhi's challenge, it is Zang Ba who came out.

Seeing that Zang Ba is the one who answered, Xu Zhi smiled because he remembered him. Heh, this war's victor is already decided and then sneered "Heh, is there nobody in Lu Bu's army worthy enough to challenge me? Sending you out again to die!"

"HUMPH, yesterday I was not in a good condition, today I will surely take your head!" Zang Ba who also refused that he is inferior also retorted back.

"Fine then, since you seek death, do not blame me!" Xu Zhi's hand already gripped his spear and then he hit his horse to go toward Zang Ba.

Zang Ba's anger is getting bigger and bigger, making Lu Bu frown. He is afraid that Zang Xuangao will be unable to control himself and kill this Xu Zhi.

If that deed was done, surely the enemy's morale will be in chaos, but it will be difficult to wipe them out completely.

"Why did this Xu Zhi begin the duel with so little impact?" In the army outpost, Huang She looks at Xu Zhi fighting Zang Ba. Huang She began to be impatient, he want this duel to end quickly to boost morale.

"Huang Zhong, shoot your arrow towards the enemy!" Huang She shouted an order toward Huang Zhong.

“Yes!” Huang Zhong pulled an arrow from his quiver! Although Huang Zhong is unhappy, he obeyed Huang She’s order and shouted to Zang Ba in his heart “Please be careful!”

Zang Ba’s heart is burning, he wanted to kill this clown. But no matter how unbearable Xu Zhi’s insult, Zang Ba must endure in order to ensure his lord’s stratagem a success.

Failure to do so would mean that Zang Ba has to face execution by military law. But right now, Zang Ba found it unbearable and wanted to kill this clown.

“YOU DIE!!!” Zang Ba gathered his strength in his hand, but suddenly Zang Ba hesitated. “Hnh?!” Zang Ba felt a very cold gaze piercing his head, making his heart agitated all of a sudden.

“This feeling!!!” Zang Ba quickly glanced at Jiangxia's army main camp. He then held his breath, secreting cold sweat profusely, because he saw Huang Zhong already locked on him with his ballista arrow.

Oh no, Huang Zhong! Although Zang Ba did not know this veteran personally, he has seen this veteran and Lu Bu duel each other. It made Zang Ba stunned during the whole duel. That ballista which made Lu Bu severely wounded was now aimed at himself!

“Milord, that is dangerous!!!” Chen Gong who had seen Huang Zhong want to unleash his ultimate move, warned Lu Bu quickly. If that arrow was unleashed, it is the end of Zang Ba!

Lu Bu is also master archer, if not how can he shoot his own Sky Piercer from far away at that time? Chen Gong then said “Hurry, give lord a bow and arrow!” Why Chen Gong said that was because only Lu Bu can stop Huang Zhong’s arrow.

“It is okay, he doesn't intend to harm Xuangao!” Lu Bu waved his hand to stop Chen Gong. He and Huang Zhong both are pinnacle of super-class generals. So naturally, he can see that Huang Zhong did not have killing intent or we should say it that Huang Zhong has lost his fighting spirit.

So that bow is just for show only. If one pays attention from his position from tower outpost, it is impossible for Huang Zhong to hit a target, his field of vision is too small.

But Huang Zhong who had held a longbow, naturally will shift to his fighting stance, emitting killing intent with full focus. But his gesture right now, is for announcing to Zang Ba. Telling him that I will shoot, please deflect it.

Sure enough, Huang Zhong shot his ballista arrow, speeding toward Zang Ba.

“That arrow is really fast!” Zang Ba has not seen the trajectory of the arrow, but his talent as a senior general made him swing his broadsword to deflect Huang Zhong’s arrow reflexively.

“Clang!” Zang Ba felt that he is also affected by Huang Zhong’s ballista arrow, so he retreated a few steps and that ballista arrow fell to the side

of his warhorse.

His arm is trembling intermittently, because of the big strength.

“Zang Ba, GIVE ME YOUR LIFE!!!” Xu Zhi who looked for an opportunity, did not want to lose this chance. So he went forward, and tried to stab his spear on Zang Ba’s flank.

“Today I will spare your life!” Zang Ba who has gotten angry because of Xu Zhi’s attack, suddenly was suppressed again by Huang Zhong who has reloaded his bow with another ballista arrow.

Luring the enemy further, Zang Ba then retreated quickly along with the following Bing Province Heavy Cavalry who also had been informed of the ploy.

“Where do you want to run away, huh?!” Xu Zhi really thought that Zang Ba already feared him. So he wanted to take Zang Ba’s head in front of Huang She to gain more credit, so how can he let Zang Ba run away?

After Zang Ba distanced himself further away, Huang Zhong puts down his longbow.

“All army onward, press further!!!” Huang She who has seen Zang Ba retreating exclaimed in a happy tone and he thought in his heart “Today, I will make Lu Bu’s army regret that they attacked my Jiangxia!!!”

Chapter 101 – Jiangxia’s Downfall (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Jiangxia's army had been charging the entire, smooth without any resistance; while Lu Bu’s army had been retreating. It is as if Xu Zhi had become Jiangxia's army’s beacon, sending Lu Bu’s army everywhere to chaos.

“Lu Bu army is defeated and scattered?!” Su Fei who currently standing on the big warship is surveying entirety of Huangzhou city's battlefield. “Does eldest son She really have the ability?!” Su Fei is truly surprised. When he was under Huang Zhong’s command, he was ordered to stay on the defense, but when this Eldest Son She ordered to go on the offence, he was unexpectedly able to defeat and scatter Lu Bu’s army. It is truly a blessing for us.

"Pah, defeated and scattered, REALLY?!” The Silk-clothed man said it with disdain tone. “That man is the true idiot!!!”

“Xingba, watch your language!” Huang She really looks down on Gan Ning. How could Gan Ning have a high opinion of Huang She? Being looked down all the time, didn't listen to others opinions even if it was for their own benefit; it can be said that Huang She and Gan Ning are un-reconcilable. “Hey, if Eldest son She won against Lu Bu’s army, it can give us both high merit!"

Huang She who will win this war, will definitely rewarded heavily by Huang Zu. And if according to merit, Su Fei and co, will also have big merits.

“Win?! Big bro, why have you also become like that idiot?!” What Gan Ning wanted to say was that Su Fei did not have any experience, but he quickly change his words.

“Eh?!” Su Fei’s brow wrinkled. Gan Ning can be said as the second person that Su Fei really admires. The first one is Huang Zhong. Even though Gan Ning cannot match Old General Huang’s strength, Gan Ning has several points that made him on par with Huang Zhong. Moreover, he had his naval units and the ability to train naval units. On that aspect, Huang Zhong cannot hope to match him.

So, Su Fei did not mind that Gan Ning insulted him, because Gan Ning certainly had a big reason for that.

“Hmm, why you do you say so?!” Su Fei inquired Gan Ning.

“Okay, big bro. You listen to me!” The reason that Gan Ning called Su Fei, “Big Bro” was not only because Su Fei was much older than him, but also because Su Fei can tolerate his own blunt and rude remarks.

Gan Ning spoke his analysis “Lu Bu’s army has 3 divisions that serve as its main force! Those divisions are Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Formation Breaker and Urban Army!”

“But, can you find them now? All of those divisions disappeared! We can leave out the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, because Huangzhou city's wetland is littered with rivers they are unable to fight, but the other two?

They are infantries, and they should be able to fight! But, all of them

have currently disappeared! Leaving only one possibility!" Said Gan Ning.

"Are you saying that?!" Su Fei also thought about that possibility.

"Yep, they are blocking that idiot's escape routes!" Said Gan Ning impolitely. "As for Lu Bu's army retreating and being scattered that big bro just said, it is true that Lu Bu's army is retreating, but did you actually see any of them dropped the banner? I saw nobody drop the banner!"

Su Fei had also seen that. Although Lu Bu's army was repelled during their retreat, nobody threw down their banner.

The banner is the beacon of the army, especially a division's banner. It represents who is the commander-in-chief. Other banners were also used as a representative division commander.

Sometimes, the commander-in-chief had not died but the banner has been dropped, that means the army has been defeated.

However, the banner has not been dropped but Lu Bu's army is retreating in a very organized formation, what does this represent?!

It represented that they have not been defeated, but they are luring the enemy.

"They are going to that side?!" Su Fei trying to assess main army's pursuit route. That direction is not Huangzhou city's border, it is not even Jiangxia's border.

It is no longer littered with rivers everywhere, and also the land is hard and the soil is dry, and because there is no river, navy units cannot pass anymore.

“Oh no, it is the end!!!” Su Fei stood up startled. “Messenger, messenger!!! QUICK, send an emergency message to Eldest son She. Inform him to retreat, this is the enemy’s stratagem!”

“It is too late!” Gan Ning shook his head. By the time the messenger got off the ship, unto land; they might be destroyed by the time messenger got there.

On the battlefield, all of Jiangxia's army troops is oozing with bloodlust. In front of them is a merit army. If they kill one person, their merit increase by one more point. They can bestow titles on their wife’s and their posts in government will be inherited by their child. They can win promotion and riches by killing them.

Lu Bu also inside his own army in order to lure Jiangxia's army. After 50% of Jiangxia's army already out of Huangzhou’s border, Lu Bu suddenly turn back his horse and exclaimed “Prepare to close the net!”

“Un!” Chen Gong nodded and then he waved his hand to signal the messenger. Then the messenger pulled out a large horn and blew a signal sound.

“Horn?!” Huang She looked at Lu Bu’s army which is gradually assembling their army and sneered “Now, you want to counter attack? It is too late!”

“Horn? Are they preparing to kill us?!” Xu Zhi’s spear also kept his assault, making it all bloody. That's the blood from Lu Bu's soldiers.

“Horn?!” Zang Ba, who had heard the sound, suddenly stopped his warhorse.

“Hehehe, why are you not continuing to run?! Are you already forfeiting your life?!” Said Xu Zhi while pointing his spear toward Zang Ba.

“Yes!!!” Zang Ba really happy now. “I am not thinking of forfeiting my life! I am thinking about how to kill you!” Zang Ba’s hand is shaking. He has endured far too long. Starting from yesterday, this fly has been flying around his ear. Zang Ba has thought a lot of times to swap and kill this fly, but he was pressured by military order.

Now, finally the time arrives to kill this fly.

“Toothless boast! Today I, Xu Zhi, will make you die under my spear!” Xu Zhi pulls his warhorse so hard, that the warhorse stood on its two hooves; starting to charge toward Zang Ba.

“HUMPH!!!” Zang Ba humphed with disdain. Then two warhorses collided with each other.

“How can this be?!” Xu Zhi’s eyes almost fell down from his eye socket, truly disbelieve with current situation. In one blow by Zang Ba, Xu Zhi’s spear was divided into three segments and his warhorse beheaded. “This is impossible!!!”

“Impossible, eh?!” Zang Ba sneered.

“You obviously, obviously had…!” Xu Zhi said it while stuttering. While he stuttered, Zang Ba gave him a reply.

“Obviously had been defeated by you, is that you meant, huh?!” Zang Ba cleaning his sword, because it had horse blood on it. “Do you seriously think, that you have won over me?! That you have power over me??? If Milord yesterday not inform me of any ploy, your head would have been mine yesterday!”

“I cannot believe this, no, I refuse to believe this! You cheated, you obviously cheated on that strike! YOU CANNOT DEFEAT ME!!!!” Xu Zhi refused to believe that the enemy who he defeated yesterday came back so strong today.

“Heh, cheat? Against you? You are not worthy to be cheated on!!!! DIE!!!” Zang Ba then rushed forward and slashed his broadsword fiercely. Xu Zhi’s head flying in midair, with a face full of disbelief; his blood splashing on Zang Ba’s face.

- -

“What? Xu Zhi is killed?!” Huang She cannot believe the news he obtained. Such a valiant general. One who was able to attack the enemy until they were defeated and scattered was killed. Killed by the one he defeated yesterday.

Looking at Huang She's angry look, Huang Zhong sneered in his heart "It is really feigning defeat, but fuck that already!!!"

"THAT GARBAGE XU ZHI ACTUALLY DIED!!!! FINE THEN, AS LONG AS I WIN AGAINST LU BU'S ARMY, EVERYTHING STILL GOES AS PLANNED!!!" Huang She is shortsighted and unable to appreciate people's effort. Last night he appreciated Xu Zhi, now he has turned Xu Zhi to garbage in an instant.

"Pass my military order, full pressure on Lu Bu's army!!!" Huang She's eyes is flashing deep hatred. Even though Xu Zhi had died, it did not affect their whole situation. Lu Bu's army has no formation, so they will absolutely perished under Jiangxia army attack.

"Rumble!!!!" Huang She in the main army, suddenly felt a big vibration on the earth. This caused unease among the warhorses and soldiers.

"Eh?! What is the matter?!" Huang She quickly ordered so all warhorse not to run all over the place. But currently, the earth is still vibrating.

"Is this an earthquake?!"

"Earthquake?" Huang Zhong who has been ordered to calm the warhorses down also pondered.

Huang Zhong have felt an earthquake before, but it is only for a little moment, after that the earth returns to normal again however the vibrating has not stopped for quite some time.

“General, look, look!!!!” A soldier is shouting while pointing at a certain point “It is over there, there!!!”

On the vast prairie, a mighty division emerged slowly in front of Huang She’s eyes from the horizon.

“WHY THAT THING?!!!” Huang She’s eyes slowly getting bigger and bigger, and he said the same thing what Xu Zhi had said before his death “How can that be? IMPOSSIBLE, I REFUSE TO BELIEVE IT!!!!”

In the horizon, more and more forms emerged. They wore heavy armor, their spears already ready in hand, and their horses are speeding up.

“NOOOOO, IT IS CAVALRY, CAVALRY IS COMING!!!!!” All of soldiers are emitting that pitiful sound.

"RUN, RUN, RUN!!!!!"

"WE ARE DEFEATED, WE ARE DEFEATED!!!!!"

“Cavalry? How is that possible?! Isn't Huangzhou city's soil wet?! Where the hell did this large-scale cavalry come from?!” Roared Huang She when he captured a fleeing soldier.

“Huangzhou city? General, we, we are already outside of Huangzhou city!!!!” The captured soldier was panic-stricken. Because he is an army deserter, he feared that Huang She might cut him down.

“We are not in Huangzhou city anymore?!” Responded Huang She and then he turned his back. Huangzhou city had already vanished some time ago. This is already far from Huangzhou city, they pursued too deep.

“Hungry, starving!!!” Those cavalries increased their killing intent. They are wolves, invincible wolves. They have been starved this entire time, so they prepared their fangs for a feast. They needed to drink blood, a lot of blood.

Chapter 102 – Sit Back and Wait for Result

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

If you have not seem what happens when cavalry kill, here is a very good comparison. Imagine Jiangxia's army right now is meat and the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is meat grinder.

Blood, flesh and bones are flying everywhere.

Above the plain, there are no longer any military formations. Those infantries are unprepared against a sudden cavalry charge. This kind of scene, even calling it a massacre is not good word enough to describe the situation.

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is the number one heavy cavalry in this nation. Even if their opponent is the Ferocious Cavalry or Western Liang Cavalry, Bing Province Heavy Cavalry can annihilate them completely. Thus, you can see their superiority in cavalry class.

Jiangxia's army infantry is already drunk by the illusion of the victory. How could they hope to retaliate against the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry?

So, there is only one outcome from that battle: Jiangxia's army was torn completely.

“NO, NO, NO, THIS IS A LIE, A LIE!!!!” Huang She shook his head fiercely. He himself was unable to count how many times he had closed and opened his eyes, hoping that this would only just a nightmare. What a

pity, he is doomed to be disappointed as the current situation is a complete fact.

A moment ago, his army wad still pursuing Lu Bu’s army for the final blow, but now, it turned into a slaughter fest.

“Devil, they are all devils!!!” Jiangxia's army have lost their spirit. They are all afraid. Fear had consumed them. Wherever Bing Province Heavy Cavalry assaulted, none lived to tell the tale.

Jing Province’s infantries had been living comfortably for far too long; they never dispatched for war. Even if there is a war, it is only a naval battle between Jing Province and Jiangdong. These infantries are used for backup only, in case Jing Province’s naval units are defeated and as they recall, Jing Province’s navy are still unbeatable.

Moreover, Jing Province is very wealthy. They are not those people living in the frontier, who are poor and always hungry. Those people who are living in the frontier are often faced with two choices, one is to starve to death and second is to join the army in order to maintain their livelihood.

And because Jing Province is very wealthy, these soldiers become very docile and are only thinking of themselves.

Because of that, these Jiangxia’s soldiers started to be annihilated and scattered by the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

“PERSEVERE, PERSEVERE, WE WILL WIN, WE MUST WIN!!!!” Huang She

exclaimed angrily. He is not willing to be defeated. He is not willing to lose his military authority. So Huang She killed a deserter who ran in front of him.

"ALL OF YOU CANNOT ESCAPE, FACE THE ENEMY!!!!! I WILL KILL WHO DESERT THIS BATTLE!!!!" Huang She is already crazy and began to command his personal soldiers to kill those deserters "HEAR MY COMMAND, KILL ALL THOSE DESERTERS!!!!"

In front had lord's son blocking the way, behind had the devil cavalry troops? If they rushed towards cavalry soldiers, surely they will be stabbed by cavalry soldier. Even if not stabbed, they will surely trampled by the horse until they become meat paste. But if they rushed toward their lord's son, the eldest son She only had around 110 bodyguards and all infantries. So their brains started to recognize which sides are the weaker one.

Jiangxia's army had decided that to retreat is to survive; emitting killing intent toward Huang She. Usually they are obedient to Huang She's order, but currently their survival is their top priority, so no wonder they are trying to kill Huang She.

"Idiot!!!" Huang Zhong cursed Huang She in his heart. If only it was only being defeated and scattered, Huang She killing an army deserter can stop those soldiers from becoming unorganized and presumably will do counterattack.

But he actually ordered his soldiers to kill all those deserters. By doing that, he was only sowing more dissention in his army.

“Guards, protect Eldest son She, we retreat!!!” Huang Zhong actually was looking forward for Huang She to die in chaos. But now is not good, he had yet obtained news about Huang Xu, therefore Huang She cannot die!

“I do not want to go, I do not want to go!!!!” Huang She wanted to struggle, but his body was held by Huang Zhong his guards who subsequently put him on his horse. Huang She’s guards did not stop their movements. They also knew, if this Eldest son She stayed on the battlefield, the result would be everyone's death.

Huang Zhong’s bodyguards added with Huang She’s own bodyguards, their number totaled 200. With these number, even though they are unable to do battle, they can evade the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and return to Huangzhou city.

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry assault is very big in scaling. Although currently they are destroying those Jiangxia's army, those who are defeated and scattered actually made Bing Province Heavy Cavalry’s mobility compromised due to Jiangxia army are moving in random paths. Also because of their heavy equipment, they cannot catch up to Huang She.

“Can you really escape by running away?!” Lu Bu casually saw those soldiers who are escaping and then he exclaimed “Let Zhang Liao be easy on them, try to make Jiangxia's army surrender!!!” These Jiangxia soldiers also have great use for Lu Bu.

With option for surrender, naturally they will surrender. These Jiangxia soldiers threw down their weapons immediately. From total a total of 10,000 soldiers, Jiangxia's army had been cut down by the Bing Province

Heavy Cavalry. Their casualties amounted to 3,000 dead, 800 severe injury what surrendered was more than 6000.

Those who are severely wounded, naturally asked Lu Bu's army soldier to kill them, to set them free of pain.

For Lu Bu's army casualties. Except from the beginning, when luring the enemy, they lost several hundred infantries. Regarding Bing Province Heavy Cavalry's casualties, other than at the beginning when one soldier was too excited and died being trampled by horses, their casualties only amounted to two people suffering minor injuries. No severely wounded.

This is an almost flawless victory, so Zhang Liao is really proud of it.

While Zhang Liao is really satisfied, on the other side Zang Ba is really depressed. During the entire war, he had lost, so where can he put his face now? Also he had been long disgusted by a fly. He held his urge to counterattack with big difficulty. After that fly was killed, he wanted to defeat those Jiangxia's army soldiers with his big strength, who knew that portion was also stolen by Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

When he want to kill several people, his lord already exclaimed "If you surrender, we will not kill you!!!" How can now Zang Ba be happy?!

Zang Ba's current facial expression is similar to a pouting woman. Watching him raised a smile in Lu Bu's heart.

"This war, Wenyuan gains the first rank in merit!!!" Lu Bu did not hold his praise.

“Milord you overpraise me!!!” Zhang Liao’s words are modest, but his face is brimming with pride and he often took a quick glance toward Zang Ba.

“Milord, I…!” Zang Ba wanted q to voice his discontent. If not for Lu Bu’s order, how can he lose face in this war? TWICE defeated in order to lure the enemy.

“Hahaha, everyone look Xuangao’s expression, is not like a pouting woman?!” Lu Bu played a joke on Zang Ba. This is the first time that Lu Bu has played joke on his subordinate.

People who are nearby Lu Bu, also started laughing very hard.

“Milord?!” Chen Gong was truly touched when he saw Lu Bu now. He followed Lu Bu for so long and interacted with him the most, so he is the first one to realize that Lu Bu has changed. Since their victory from Yan Province, Lu Bu had been extremely arrogant and opinionated to the point of being unchangeable. His arrogance kept appearing when they occupied Xu Province, even when Xiapi were surrounded, that opinionated and arrogance did not change at all.

Lu Bu’s behavior is similar to that of a child who is unable to admit their loss, a sore loser, making Chen Gong very helpless.

But since that person appeared, Lu Bu changed bit by bit. Lu Bu start to smile, Lu Bu start to care his men, even Lu Bu started to laugh. That person truly brought big fortune to our lives.

“Okay then, Xuangao. I said we will not be able to win this battle if not for you, so you hold a first rank in merit as well!” Lu Bu said it with smile.

“Milord, this is Xu Zhi’s head!!!” Zang Ba is really happy. His effort to suppress his anger, his harvest was really fruitful. So, he immediately pulled out Xu Zhi’s head from his waist.

“Heeeeyyyy, already got first rank in merit, you also want reward from me, eh?!” Lu Bu teased.

“No, it is not that!” Zang Ba wanted to explain but he does not know how to explain it.

“Go then!!! You have been at my side for quite some time now, I should now let you get your own division!!!” Said Lu Bu and pointing to outside “Jiangxia's army outside! I have left behind 3000 troops, now they are yours!” When Jiangxia's army surrendered Lu Bu hand-picked these 3,000 soldiers who had no longer any relatives to give to Zang Ba, so they became his familial soldiers.

“My soldiers!!!!” Zang Ba truly overjoyed. He quickly exited the main tent, forgetting to thank you his lord.

”Aiyah, this Xuangao!!!” Lu Bu shook his head. That Zang Ba’s age is no longer small, but still so crude. He was like a little child rushing outside to play with his new bike.

“All right then, all army’s move out, tonight we camp inside Huangzhou

city!" Lu Bu said that to point out that Jiangxia's army has been decimated. Now only depending on naval units, they are unable to defend Huangzhou city and in addition the Formation Breakers and the Urban Army were also sent by Lu Bu to destroy the remnants of Jiangxia's army.

- - - -

After defeat, Huang She had no other choice but let Huang Zhong take command. They should not go to Huangzhou, but detour to the naval units. Huang Zhong had discovered that Lu Bu's army Formation Breaker had disappeared. They must have been positioned in their retreat route to Huangzhou city, therefore, going back to Huangzhou is a dead end and the worst choice.

Only after they reached naval units, can they be safe.

This discourse is okay, but Huang Zhong always felt the something was missing. He had been able to deduce why the Formation Breakers are waiting on the route to Huangzhou city when the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry was massacring Jiangxia's army, but he still cannot dismiss this uneasiness.

Before long, Huang Zhong will understand where this uneasiness comes from.

"General, will Huang Zhong and Huang She truly go to his path?!" At Huangzhou city's border, near the river. A young man is asking toward a young man who wore gold cloth.

Across the river is Jiangxia's navy HQ. So they may be discovered by Jiangxia's navy units at any time.

"Since when has this generals guesses been wrong?! Why are you the same as that blockhead Gao Shun!!!?" That speaker is Liu Mang. He is just lying down on the grass, basking in the sun. In his mouth, he is biting a foxtail grass. Truly carefree and relaxed like taking a vacation.

It is not because of Gao Shun's stupidity; he reacts based on an army's habit. If one has been defeated, where is the first place they will go when escaping? Their direction naturally is their own HQ, which is the idea of a regular person.

But Liu Mang knows that Huang Zhong is not a regular person. After being routed at Huangzhou city border, there are two routes to retreat. One is a land route, back to Huangzhou city and second is through river, back to Jiangxia using his naval units.

Huangzhou city already could not be defended, if they go, they just wait for death. So the remaining route is to return to Jiangxia using naval units.

Therefore Liu Mang had confirmed that Huang Zhong will definitely go this path. Earlier Liu Mang has told Gao Shun this idea, Gao Shun also approved Liu Mang's idea, but he actually went to the road in Huangzhou city. Gao Shun's idea is actually to cover up both paths, thus his preparation is very prudent.

"But…!" They have squatted for half of the day without accomplishing anything. Waiting here are too many mosquitoes. Cheng Yu wanted to complain that to Liu Mang but was already cut off by Liu Mang.

"Don't say "but" you're too NOISY, learn from that young man, he is so calm and quiet!!!" Liu Mang pounded Cheng Yu's head lightly while pointing to the young archer on the side.

"Yes!!!" Cheng Yu felt very sore on his head and he retreated, suddenly the scout that he sent returned with the news.

Upfront, no less than 200 cavalries are speeding toward them.

Chapter 103 – Liu Mang, A Hostage???

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Inside Huangzhou city, the administration office was transformed into Lu Bu's temporary HQ.

"You said, Huang Zhong and co, have not come to Huangzhou city?!" Lu Bu's brow wrinkled. This battles most important spoils are Huang Zhong and Huang She. Although occupying Huangzhou city meant Jiangxia's army is defeated, that is not Lu Bu's goal.

If only just to win Huangzhou city, Lu Bu would have done a siege from the get go.

"Um!" Gao Shun nodded. This person does not like to speak. His gesture meant, that when Gao Shun blocked the route to Huangzhou city, he did not meet with Huang Zhong and Huang She. Only army deserters were arrested by Gao Shun.

No Huang She, Lu Bu's army leverage is gone. Moreover, with this battle, they have offended Jiangxia thoroughly. No, we should say that they have offended the entire Jing Province. With Jiangxia attacked, Jing Province will definitely send out troops and it will be very difficult to reach Xinye unharmed.

"Gao Shun, you go. Choose one division to be stationed in Huangzhou city!" Lu Bu waved his hand to send Gao Shun away. Now, he must think on how to knot relations with Liu Biao of Jing Province as well as Sun Ce.

Just as he prepared to remove his armor, suddenly the sound of a battle drum thundered.

“Who beats the drum? What is going on?!” Lu Bu’s vision turned fierce again. This is the battle drum thundering and their signal meant to attack.

“REPORT!!! Milord, report. Outside Huangzhou city, Jiangxia naval units are attacking!!!” A messenger hurriedly run in into tent and said it toward Lu Bu while panting.

“Jiangxia's naval units?!” Lu Bu was really confused. He had decimated Jiangxia's army. Although Jiangxia's naval units are strong, without coordination with the army; they cannot do anything to Lu Bu’s army. However at the same time, Lu Bu’s army cannot do anything to naval units as well.

“Come with me, toward the city wall!!!” Lu Bu directly went toward the city wall. A few days ago, the one who was standing there is Jiangxia’s army’s expelled master, master Huang She. Now, it turned into Lu Bu’s HQ.

Gao Shun, Zhang Liao, Zang Ba and co also followed. Chen Gong also followed.

“Is it really Jiangxia's naval units?!” Asked Lu Bu.

“Yes, Milord!!!” Chen Gong responded. In Huangzhou city’s canal, there is only Jiangxia's navy. All of Lu Bu’s army are landlubbers; they cannot swim, so this navy unit is not theirs. These large ships definitely belonged

to Jiangxia's navy. Their ship can be considered the “Red-Hare” of waters due to their speed and strength.

“No more infantry!? They want to attack a city with their naval units? Keep dreaming!!!” Zang Ba said it with disdainful tone.

Although Huangzhou city is situated near the river, the river is quite far from the giant crossbow and arrow shooting range. Also Huangzhou city is not like Xiapi which is surrounded by two rivers. It is not feasible for naval units to attack Huangzhou city, let alone now that the city has been occupied by Lu Bu’s army; it is simply unbreakable.

As if responding to Zang Ba, Jiangxia's naval units unexpectedly anchored near Huangzhou city. The landing board has been deployed from the large ship and Jiangxia’s naval soldiers are flushing out one by one from the large ships and the “Red-Hare” ship.

“Are they insane?!” Chen Deng once governed Guangling commandery with his father Chen Gui, so Chen Deng knew a little about naval units. He even clashed with Jiangdong and Jing Province once. The reason why Jiangxia naval units are invincible on water, it is because they are experts in naval warfare. However once they are ashore, their fighting skills might be lower than infantry.

Moreover, naval soldiers all wear light armor. So they can stay afloat after they fall into the water. On water battles, they use long-range weapons so this is not too much of a bother. When they are ashore and act as an infantry; they are useless.

The drum beat, signaling that Jiangxia's navy is going to attack the city.

5000 naval units attacking a city that is guarded by more than 20,000 troops? Are they joking? Isn't this asking for death?

“HUMPH, since they dare to attack, DON’T EVEN THINK ABOUT RETREATING!!!!” Lu Bu’s original plan is to capture Huang She for leverage against Huang Zu of Jiangxia. After all Huang She is Huang Zu’s son. He can tell Huang Zu that Lu Bu's army did not have any malicious intent when they wanted to pass Jiangxia. They can give Intel asking for him to be in full alert. Stating that Sun Ce of Jiangdong had made his move, so Huang Zu can prepare himself. But Huang She himself now is missing, no one knows whether he had escaped back to Jiangxia or is dead. With Huang She is missing, the friction between Jiangxia and Lu Bu’s army is irreconcilable.

Since they have offended Jiangxia, what is wrong with offending completely?

“Milord, Zhang Liao requests to join the battle!!!” Zhang Liao quickly held his fist. Although, he just ate Jiangxia's army, the first rank in merit was also shared with Zang Ba. Although Zhang Liao is not an envious of the person, his life principle is to surpass the others. So Jiangxia's naval units are God-sent merit to him.

“Milord, Zang Ba also request to join the battle!!!” If those 5000 naval units stay in the water, Zang Ba would leave them alone. These ducklings actually came ashore now. This is a slaughter fest, who wouldn't want this easy merit?

“Xuangao, your newly formed Mt. Tai Army division is currently

comprised of recently surrendered soldier, they are tired and have morale. How can you want to battle with them?!" Zhang Liao said to remind Zang Ba.

"Wenyuan, your Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is not suitable to do battle here either!"

"Xuangao, you also had your first rank in merit, give me this one!!!"

"Wenyuan, I want to train my boys!!!" Nobody wants to give up this easy merit.

Two of Lu Bu's eight generals disputed over who is going to fight. Gao Shun on the other hand just stayed quiet because he has completed his own duty.

"Ahem, ahem!!!" Nearby Chen Deng walked out to interrupt their bickering "Please, generals, both of you, please cease your fighting. This time, please let Deng to join the battle!"

"YOU? HOW CAN YOU FIGHT?!" Both Zhang Liao and Zang Ba shouted in one voice "You are not a general, how can you want to join the fray?!"

"Yeah!!! With your physique, I doubt you can even kill a chicken!!!"

Being insulted as not a general and being considered as very weak that he cannot kill a chicken, made Chen Deng's complexion very bad. How can he, Chen Deng, who is not a general, be called so weak that he cannot kill chicken with his bare hand?

Right now, he is no longer that weak scholar like before, he also undergone a rigid training regime that Lu Bu has taught him.

But Chen Deng can be said that he is not only a military commander, but he is also a Confucian scholar.

“Okay then, how about this? Each of us dispatches 1000 troops, whoever can clean out those 5000 troops first, is the winner!!!” Heh, 5000 naval soldiers on the land fighting us? There will be nothing left of them, and our merit will definitely go up in Lu Bu’s army.

“Go, go, go!!!!”

One general dispatches 1000 troops. So the total is 3000 troops versus 5000 troops. On the surface, it is Lu Bu army’s loss. In reality however, they only needed 1000 infantry to crush 5000 naval soldiers.

Those three people rushed down from city wall to build up their divisions. They are afraid they will be too late to obtain that merits.

“Report, General. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry all ready!!!”

“General, Mt. Tai Army all present and ready to dispatch!!!”

“Eldest son Deng, our Guangling Army is also ready to be dispatched any time!!!”

“Excellent!!!” Under Huangzhou city wall, three generals ordered in one voice “All divisions, prepare to march out of town. Meet the enemy head-on!!!”

“Kakakakakaka!!!” Huangzhou’s drawbridge slowly lowered and 3000 troops slowly flushed out from city wall.

Banners with letters Zhang, Zang and Chen are fluttering with the wind in an imposing manner.

“Xuangao, this time, the merit is mine!!!!” Said Zhang Liao who quickly brandished his dao halberd.

“Humph, Wenyuan, do not be so sure!!! Regarding cavalry, I must study under you, but regarding infantry, you are the one who must study under me!!!” Zang Ba also taunted back to Zhang Liao.

“I said do not fight anymore. This is Deng’s first merit in this Lu Bu army!!!” Chen Deng also refused to admit being inferior to them. Who would have thought that Zang Ba and Zhang Liao simultaneously turned their head and shouted “SILENCE, YOU MALE BITCH!!!!” This is Liu Mang’s nickname for Chen Deng.

“FUCH YOU ALL!!!” Chen Deng also tried to emulate Liu Mang’s favorite phrase.

TL: Chen Deng tried to emulate Liu Mang’s foul words. Liu Mang words is for “FUCK” is “我擦” pronounced as wo cao, while Chen Deng’s words is “我此奥” pronounced as wo ci ao, so I said it as FUCH

“Okay then, we have a contest now. The wager is one month salary, how is that?!!” Chen Deng already irritated by these two scumbags to the point that Chen Deng almost forgot whose generals they are and who the master that he is serving now is.

“Hohoho, I thought you dislike to spend money, eh? Is not that right, male bitch?!”

“How was that? Do generals dare to bet?!” Chen Deng kept provoking both Zang Ba and Zhang Liao.

“Dare!!! Why should we not dare? You are the one who will give money for us to drink!!! HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!” Zang Ba and Zhang Liao have responded.

“Then let’s go!!!” Those three people’s spirit is really high. Zang Ba wanted to get the merit, in order to fill his shame caused by feigning defeat yesterday, Zhang Liao want to be the first rank in merit, and Chen Deng wanted to prove himself that he can be counted as a replacement for Lu Bu’s great eight generals. So they are competing fiercely.

On the tower city gate, Lu Bu did not know that these three people have made gamble. When those three people about to depart, Lu Bu suddenly asked “What about Hanyang?!”

“Eh, Hanyang?!” Chen Gong also stunned. Since entering Huangzhou city, Chen Gong has been very busy, so he did not pay any attention to Liu Mang’s whereabouts.

“Hanyang, is blocking the other road!!!” Gao Shun said it in a brief and straight manner.

“The other road?!” Lu Bu stunned also. His gaze are fixated on those three whose spirit is very high, but suddenly he thought that these three generals of his will suffer disappointment because of Liu Mang.

“HAAAAHHHHH!!!!” Chen Deng has raised his spirit. After he had broken through Xiapi to join with Lu Bu’s army, Chen Deng had not been in the battlefield. During battle of Mr. Bagong, his unit was on standby, protecting Lu Bu’s family.

Now, this feeling made Chen Deng really excited. He is a Confucian scholar, so he excels in scheming. But that cannot suppress his bloodthirst.

Chen Deng held his spear with high-spirits and exclaimed “Hey, old buddy. For all these times you've stayed sheathed I have not let you drink blood. Today, you will drink blood to your heart’s content!!!”

“Xuangao, that male bitch wants to snatch my Zhang Wenyuan’s first rank in merit. That male bitch can try as he can!!!” Zhang Liao is Lu Bu’s army elite Bing Province Heavy Cavalry vice commander-in-chief. Although that position is very enviable, the position as vice commander-in-chief actually did not have any power at all.

Zhang Liao cannot command Bing Province Heavy Cavalry at his will. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are wolves, and what wolves follow is their alpha, which is Lu Bu. So unless Zhang Liao can defeat Lu Bu with his

wushu skill. Command will never go away from Lu Bu.

Now, he got a very rare opportunity to obtain merit, to create his own division. How can Zhang Liao let go of this opportunity?

“Two days ago, I bumped into a fly, truly hateful. Today, your grandpa Xuangao will use your blood to wash my smeared record!!! Two months of salary, can buy me a nice wine to drink!!!” Zang Ba licked the corner of his mouth. His wushu skill is higher than Zhang Liao, naturally he had a lot confidence.

Looking those naval soldiers approaching closer and closer. Those three grasped their weapon and exclaimed “All soldiers listen up! Rush with me to…..”

They had not spoken the word “kill”, when suddenly those three people were stunned with that scenery.

Jiangxia's army naval soldiers suddenly opened their square formation. From inside the formation, appeared some people from it. Some of them with happy expression and the other with a hateful expression.

Liu Mang!!

Lu Bu’s command is to block Huang Zhong and Huang She, how can he appear in the middle of these naval soldiers?

Has Liu Mang been taken hostage by Jiangxia's navy soldiers?

With Liu Mang’s life at threat, Lu Bu’s army did not dare to act rashly.

Chapter 104 – Reusing of Surrendered Generals

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Like this, is our bet still valid?!” Zang Ba swallowed his saliva while looking at Liu Mang and Jiangxia navy

This kind of appearance, when in the world had Liu Mang been taken hostage? He walked in the style of a leader with 3 valiant generals side by side with him. Zang Ba do not know those two young generals but he definitely recognized that veteran. That veteran is Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng, the one who almost killed him with his ballista arrow.

TL: Huang Zhong courtesy name is Hansheng

“It is still valid! Because you are the one who assault first, I, Zhang Liao lose one month of salary to you, Xuangao!!!” Zhang Liao said it distressfully. Zhang Liao is also a family man like Lu Bu. Every month, his salary is exhausted for his family expenses and support for his family. If he lost one month salary, Zhang Liao will have nothing to eat.

However, Zang Ba quickly cancelled their bet.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, welcome back!!!” Chen Deng quickly welcomed Liu Mang by holding his fist respectfully.

“Where is my Honorable Father-in-Law?!” Asked Liu Mang while feeling really strange. Today’s treatment is really nice. Everyone goes out to welcome him unexpectedly. Besides Gao Shun who stayed inside, it can be said all of Lu Bu’s generals present and accounted for.

“Milord is on city gate’s tower!” Said Chen Deng while pointing toward golden silhouette who is currently standing in Huangzhou city’s tower.

“Old General Huang, your words please!” Liu Mang said toward Huang Zhong.

“Yes!” Huang Zhong nodded and walked in front of Jiangxia navy. He pulled his shirt from his battle dress to put it behind his knees and knelt down, his voice is very clear and smooth “Jiangxia’s defeated general, Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng with...”

“Gan Ning, Gan Xingba!”

“Su Fei, Su Zimo!”

Both generals also knelt down.

“Along with Jiangxia navy forces. Pays respect to General Who Pacifies the East, Marquis of Wen Lu Bu. General Lu Bu with finesse in skill and martial arts, sweeps away all obstacles, and truly has shown us your magnificence in battle. We, defeated generals, are willing to mend our way. With Jiangxia's naval forces, we wish to serve under Lord Lu. We beg to surrender!”

“We beg to surrender!!!”

“Milord, this?!” Chen Gong did not see the scene like Zang Ba and co,

but he saw that the golden-armored Liu Mang had done something impossible.

That boy, Liu Mang, had made Huang Zhong surrender and unexpectedly, Huang Zhong also brought 5000 naval units and 2 military officers along with him.

“Hm, open the city gate, let them come in!!!” Lu Bu exclaimed loudly. He as master of his own army, naturally will receive Liu Mang back into his own army. Moreover these Jiangxia’s naval units already disarmed their weapons, so Lu Bu knew that Liu Mang would not be harmed in any way.

In addition to the veteran general who is standing beside Liu Mang, Lu Bu knows that this time Liu Mang had an extremely big harvest. Who can predict that this boy acquired 5000 Jiangxia naval soldiers, in addition to that, he also got 2 navy officers in one package.

Lu Bu’s army currently comprised of infantries and cavalries. All of them are landlubbers, none is familiar with naval warfare. With these 5000 naval soldiers, Lu Bu will be even more powerful because now he had an army that can fight in both land and water. Normally, one should be very happy with this, but Lu Bu frowned because this boy did not notify him earlier, making all of Lu Bu’s army think that Jiangxia's naval units are going on the offensive almost turning into a war.

In fact, what Lu Bu really wanted is for Liu Mang to go back as soon as possible. But the Urban Army refused to come back, because they still had their task which is blocking Huang She’s retreat route. By doing that, Liu Mang single-handedly acquired Jiangxia's naval units, he ordered them to anchor their warship and sped away toward Huangzhou city.

Although these 5000 naval soldiers have surrendered, Lu Bu’s army will not take those surrendered soldiers lightly. So he prepared a big tent outside Huangzhou city for them. Not long after that, the Urban Army also returned back.

Inside Huangzhou city’s administration office, Liu Mang led Huang Zhong, Gan Ning and Su Fei inside to wait for Lu Bu’s arrival.

Are you wondering how Liu Mang can get Huang Zhong, Gan Ning and Su Fei in one package? This merit should be shared with our Mr. Huang She.

At that time, the Urban Army met with Huang Zhong and Huang She's bodyguard squadron. In order to obtain news about his son, Huang Zhong was prepared to protect Huang She at the cost of his life. So he made Huang She and his bodyguards go on ahead, while Huang Zhong protect their rear.

Huang Zhong hadn't seen any formations like the Urban Army. Its Formation consisted of a Phalanx Formation on the middle guarded by 100 cavalries. And because of this formation, suddenly those bodyguard’s squadron suffered an extremely big loss, one by one they fell to this formations. With this loss it would be difficult for Huang Zhong to help Huang She escape.

Liu Mang quickly caught up with the cavalry squadron with his bodyguards. All that remained were a few from the 200 cavalry troops who were against Liu Mang’s 100 heavy cavalry troops.

Huang Zhong quickly wield his long bow in order to create a chance for Huang She to breakthrough. In this case, Huang Zhong intended to capture the leader of this Phalanx Formation first. So Huang Zhong hastily aimed at Liu Mang's warhorse, as he knew that Liu Mang's armor was made from same material as Lu Bu, shooting the warhorse will definitely make Liu Mang stumble and can be used as a hostage. When he wanted to shoot, suddenly there was an arrow shooting at Huang Zhong from Liu Mang's back.

That person who shot the arrow is a handsome young man, a quiet and skinny youth. That shooter is Huang Xu, Huang Zhong's son. When Huang Zhong saw his son alive and healthy in front of him, naturally he lost his cause for protecting Huang She.

He quickly threw down his long bow to surrender.

But Liu Mang's and Urban Army's objective was also to arrest Huang She

When Jiangxia's army discovered that Huang Zhong surrendered to Liu Mang, Su Fei and Gan Ning also wanted to save Huang She, so they asked him to surrender.

But Huang She is not willing to surrender under Liu Mang. So he killed nearby Jiangxia naval soldiers who had surrendered and in addition, he also spurted out foul words toward Gan Ning and Su Fei. Calling them unloyal dogs and bastards and they will be punished after he reported it to Huang Zu.

Gan Ning who at the very beginning had a very low opinion of Huang

She could no longer hold his anger and punched Huang She's abdomen as hard as he can until he vomited his lunch and quickly put down his weapon with Su Fei.

So then there were three. Huang Zhong, Gan Ning and Su Fei were obtained by Liu Mang.

This event made Liu Mang really surprised. So surprised that he is unable to close his mouth.

Lu Bu then came into the administration office along with all of his civil and military officers. "Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng. Gan Ning, Gan Xingba. Su Fei Su Zimo!" Lu Bu read their names one by one. He deliberately let Liu Mang's name unread, because it was his fault for not notifying him. Let Liu Mang feel really embarrassed.

"What skill do you have?" Lu Bu asked Su Fei. Lu Bu has seen Huang Zhong's skill personally. His strength can be said to be match with Lu Bu and he excelled in leadership. Truly a valiant general and excellent commander. This person is a very rare character, he definitely will be trusted heavily by Lu Bu.

As for Gan Ning and Su Fei, Lu Bu was not familiar with them.

"I have little abilities. I understand weapons and have the ability to train soldiers. I especially excel in naval warfare!" Su Fei said his own abilities modestly.

"Excel at naval warfare?!" Lu Bu can also look, this Su Fei, Su Zimo, is not

a person who excelled in strength. His strength did not even reach a second-class general, but he had the ability to command and train the army, like General Gao Shun.

"What about you, Gan Ning, Gan Xingba?!" Asked Lu Bu.

Compared to modest Su Fei, Gan Ning is much more arrogant and he grinned and said "I am able lead any division. Give me 3000 cavalries, I am able to destroy Jing Province and Jiangdong for you. Give me 10,000 naval soldiers, I will conquer the water for you. Give me 30,000 infantries, I can open a new territory for you!!!"

Gan Ning really said it proudly and confidently. As long as you give me soldiers. With 3000 soldiers, he is able to destroy Jing Province and Jiangdong. With 10,000 naval soldiers, he is able to dominate the water. With 30,000 infantries, he is able to open new territory for his lord. That is how useful Gan Ning is.

"XINGBA, DON'T BE PRESUMPTUOUS!!!" Su Fei quickly pulled Gan Ning. They are surrendered generals, not honored guests, so they should not speak arrogantly. If Lu Bu is unhappy, they cannot escape death definitely.

"Humph, NICE!!! SO ARROGANT, EH?!!!" Gan Ning's words truly touched Zang Ba who possess the same character as him. "A defeated general can speak with a presumptuous tone, eh?!"

"Yes, I am a defeated general, but at least I will never lose to that waste Xu Zhi!!!" Gan Ning refused to admit that he is inferior, responded similarly.

“YOU!!!!” Zang Ba is really angry because Gan Ning is really looking for trouble with his response.

“Milord, my younger brother Xingba is a frank person, he is a good character. So please Milord to forgive him!” Su Fei really did not think that Gan Ning would suddenly offend Lu Bu and his civil and military officers. They have betrayed Huang Zu, so Jiangxia is a dead end for them. If they offended Lu Bu again, then it is finished.

“Forgive?!” Lu Bu smiled “What crime does he commit to me?!” Lu Bu waved to Zang Ba, making him sit down. Lu Bu also liked arrogant people. He is not afraid that his lord may get violent, he feared that his skill is unused. In the past Zang Ba was also very violent. When Tao Qian and Liu Bei ruled Xu Province, he was able to create separate regime in Langye. But when he bumped into Lu Bu, he became more honest and tame.

Gan Ning, Gan Xingba is also an extremely arrogant person. Lu Bu saw that this Gan Ning had entered refined strength, almost breaking through to super-class. His skill in wushu is above Zhang Liao, but currently he is the same strength as Zang Ba.

He is a first-class general!!! If Gan Ning can boast like that, then this is a great talent, a senior general.

Huang Zu was really blind, not employing him. Only giving him a position of Lieutenant General!!!

“I can give you neither 3000 cavalries, 10,000 naval soldiers nor 30,000

infantries. Hehehe, my entire army only amounts to 30,000!!!”

The more Lu Bu said, the more Gan Ning’s heart sunk. Was it a mistake to betray Huang Zu and come to Lu Bu? Is there no wise lord that wants to use me, Gan Ning?

“But!!!” Lu Bu quickly said “I can give you an opportunity for you to lead a division!!!”

“What?!” Gan Ning’s heart who just sunk, suddenly turned afloat again!!! A joy after sorrow!!! Gan Ning’s eyes become alive again. He had been a mercenary and a lieutenant general for far too long. Although Su Fei really took care of him, he cannot command his own division, he cannot display his ability.

Now Lu Bu actually said that he will have an opportunity for him to lead a division, he is now willing to surrender to Lu Bu’s army completely “Thank you Milord, Thank you Milord!!!” Gan Ning speaks it stuttering. One cannot blame Gan Ning for being like that.

If one counted carefully, Lu Bu is his fourth lord.

The first lord is Liu Biao. At that time, Gan Ning just resigned from his pirating life and because of that Liu Biao did not entrust him with heavy responsibilities due to his reputation of being a pirate.

Afterward, Gan Ning left Liu Biao and found himself under Liu Zhang’s service with the thought that he can find a wise lord to serve now. After all when one changed jobs, that job must be greener than old job right?

But who knew Liu Zhang also like Liu Biao, was not a good judge of character. Turning Gan Ning into a guard of a small commandery.

Afterward when Liu Biao and Liu Zhang clashed, Gan Ning joined Liu Biao's army again.

Because of his criminal record, Liu Biao simply threw him to Jiangxia. Huang Zu of Jiangxia is an overtly suspicious person as well as a moralist scholar, therefore it is even more impossible for Gan Ning to be entrusted with heavy responsibilities.

But his current lord, Lu Bu, who he has just surrendered to, unexpectedly can give him an opportunity to command a division. How can this not make Gan Ning truly excited?

“Do not thank me, you must thank Hanyang. He is the one who recommended you highly!!!” Lu Bu quickly referred to Liu Mang. If Liu Mang did not recommend Gan Ning to Lu Bu, maybe Lu Bu would not immediately entrust heavy responsibilities to him. A lieutenant general is worthless to him, even if that lieutenant general has refined his strength to almost breakthrough super-class.

“THANK YOU, THANK YOU, THANK YOU!!!” Gan Ning shows grateful expression to Liu Mang, making Liu Mang really embarrassed.

Gan Ning, one of Jiangdong’s valiant generals, one who can fight with Liu, Guan, and Zhang!!! If one did not use him, it is like casting pearls before swine.

Chapter 105 – The Beginning of an Event

[TL: From this point on, the story is major battle against Sun Ce, those who were looking for NSFW chapters, must wait until 100 chapters, until the major battle end]

Mighty Tiger VS Little Conqueror; Liu Mang and Lu Bu’s Illustrious Beginning

Reassigning the newly surrendered personnel into Lu Bu’s army has been done. Lu Bu did not leave anyone out including Gan Ning. Lu Bu’s principle is NEVER SUSPECT PEOPLE THAT YOU USE.

In the past, this is why Wei Xu and Song Xian were able to betray him despite many warnings, it is Lu Bu who kept hold on his principles.

Such a little move made Gan Ning and co, truly grateful

Defeating Jiangxia's army and occupying Huangzhou city is only one small step. The most important is, Lu Bu wanted to discuss with Liu Biao of Jing Province and Huang Zu of Jiangxia to let himself safely cross Jiangxia.

Although this war was caused because Sun Ce of Jiangdong having Lu Bu act as a borrowed knife, he can consider this as training for his troops and also act as a message and warning for Liu Biao of Jing Province, in order to accept Lu Bu’s request for discussion and a warning so Liu Biao does not act rashly.

Lu Bu kept staying in Huangzhou city. He did not press on to Wuchang commandery and finally to Jiangxia. This is to signal Huang Zu, that I, Lu Bu, do not want to tear up your face completely, battle to the death.

Acting as the bridge is one person, which is Huang She who is currently in Lu Bu's hand.

With Huang She in his hand, Lu Bu believed that Huang Zu will let his army safely cross Jiangxia. After all Huang She is Huang Zu's eldest son, it is impossible for Huang Zu to overlook Huang She's safety and will definitely provide Lu Bu's army a means to cross Jiangxia. So after they cross Jiangxia's waterway, the next location is hard soil, which is definitely Lu Bu's army domain.

Right before Lu Bu sent a messenger to Huang Zu, suddenly there is an old acquaintance with a small amount of troops coming to see Lu Bu.

That is right, Sun Ce sent a messenger to see Lu Bu, right after the news of his victory spread.

"I believe you have been well since we last met, Marquis of Wen. Milord at Wancheng city misses you so much, so he made me and the others come visit you!" The one who visit Lu Bu is Chen Duan, Jiangdong's top adviser. It is the same Chen Duan who was made angry by Liu Mang until he wanted to vomit blood. Chen Duan's top skill is negotiation.

"Bofu really cares much for this uncle. Bu is very moved by his feelings." Although Lu Bu did not have a good impression about Chen Duan, he still welcomed him with a smile.

They sat in the hall. Food and wine are served.

“Marquis of Wen overpraises Milord!!! Marquis of Wen, my visit here is to discuss four matters. The first one, I request one person from Marquis of Wen.” Chen Duan spoke his words in straight forward manner.

“Request a person?! Who?!” Lu Bu inquired.

“Huang Zu of Jiangxia’s Eldest son Huang She” Chen Duan quickly responded.

“Huang She?!” Asked Lu Bu while maintaining his composure. Sun Ce’s army intelligence personnel really good. He himself just captured Huang She, and they already have news about it.

“May I know, what your lord wants with this Huang She?!”

“Huang Zu killed my old lord, so the debt is to be repaid by his son. Milord wants to use Huang She as a sacrifice to our banner!!!” Huang Zu has killed Sun Jian, therefore the Sun clan and Huang clan’s hatred are absolutely irreconcilable.

“The second matter?!” Lu Bu asked the second matter directly without agreeing or disagreeing on the first matter.

“The second matter is of course, I request that Marquis of Wen forms an alliance with Milord!” Chen Duan said it after he drank his wine.

“Form an alliance?! Although your lord called me uncle, we are not so desperate that we want to form an alliance!”

“Marquis of Wen, why should you ponder more? The matter should be really understandable. Marquis of Wen who wants to go to Xinye definitely will need to cross Jiangxia. Because of the battle, now Marquis of Wen had offended Huang Zu completely. Offending Huang Zu equates to offending the entire Jing Province. That also equals to turning all of Jing Province into an enemy. So, Huang Zu will not let Marquis of Wen cross Jiangxia. Even if Huang Zu allows you, Liu Biao will definitely not let you to go into Xinye!!!”

“Xinye is no longer my destination, I want to detour to the north!”

“Heh, detour?!” Chen Duan smiled disdainly “Is Marquis of Wen’s grain and provisions enough for detour? If you detour to the north, you have Yuan Shao and Cao Cao. Your relationship with those two is very bad already!!!”

“So, you said, the only choice is to ally with your lord, eh?!”

“OF COURSE!!!” Chen Duan nodded “Forming an alliance with Milord, will bring only advantage to you. My Jiangdong’s navy is invincible in the water but Marquis of Wen’s land force is the best in the nation. With both of us joining together, Huang Zu will be nothing! Milord has said, if we win Jiangxia, Milord will give Jiangxia as your home base personally. After all, Marquis of Wen has contributed the most in capturing Jiangxia!!!”

Sun Ce’s army really offered a big slice cake. What Chen Duan said is right, Lu Bu’s army potential currently is zero in naval warfare, but they

are the king in land warfare. When Lu Bu's army and Sun Ce's army are separated, Jing Province will just dismiss them as a threat. Jiangdong's naval units are elite, but on land warfare, their value is much less than Jing Province's infantries, vice versa with Lu Bu's army.

If both united, occupying Jiangxia will not be a problem.

After that, if Lu Bu's army wanted to continue their journey, Sun Ce's naval units will definitely guard Lu Bu's army until they reach Xinye. If Lu Bu's army wanted to remain in Jiangxia, then Sun Ce will give it to Lu Bu personally. This is a really big slice cake.

"If one formed an alliance, naturally one must have a chief of this alliance. Let's say I agree to form alliance, who will be the chief?!"

"Of course, the chief of the alliance is Milord!!!" Chen Duan spoke it spontaneously.

"Heh, your lord is the chief of the alliance eh?!" Lu Bu's mouth formed a sneer gesture. He has been used by Sun Ce as a borrowed knife, naturally felt badly.

He actually want to still form an alliance, spouting fine and pleasant words talking about all advantages. Those words actually pierced Lu Bu's ear because it is obvious that Sun Ce wanted to swallow his army by disguising it with pleasant words. Seriously!!! Did Sun Ce really think that he, Lu Bu, had a good temper?

"THIRD!!!" Lu Bu ask Chen Duan to continue while gulping one glass of

wine.

"The third matter...!" Chen Duan suddenly made strange gesture because in his mind appeared a person that he loathe the most, the one who made him and Qin Song sick during his lord's wedding "is that Milord wanted to propose a marriage to General Lu!!!"

"Propose marriage?!"

"Milord have long admired Miss Lu!!! If both sides can tie knot in marriage, it is a very wonderful matter. It is can be said that our Jiangdong has become General Lu's big family!!!" Chen Duan speaks it with a happy expression, however his tone is very cold.

"My daughter has been betrothed to His Highness Prince of Shu! Bu does not have second daughter!" Lu Bu replied.

"HAHAHA, Did Marquis of Wen want to joke with me? That "Your Highness Prince of Shu" is just a title given by Cao Mengde, did you really take him seriously, mm???" Chen Duan was truly disgusted by Liu Mang's title Prince of Shu. Lu Bu then spoke coldly and calmly "Say no more about marriage, if you speak anymore, then you have retreat from my sight!"

Chen Duan is not serious about this "knot marriage" speech. In fact, this request was just thought of by Chen Duan, in order to have revenge against Liu Mang for humiliating him at Wancheng city.

"Your lord has already gotten married, he had drinking celebration with

Bu! So he already had a legal wife right?" When Lord Qiao married his daughter, he had stressed Sun Ce that his daughter must be his legal wife. So Sun Ce did not dare to refuse that great scholar's request.

"Yes, he has a legal wife already. Therefore we can only ask Miss Lu to occupy the position as sister wife!" Chen Duan did not have an apologetic tone at all, instead he kept looking at Lu Bu. One can see how high he thought of Lu Bu by his proposal to make his daughter a sister wife.

"FOURTH!!!!" Lu Bu's surface is very calm, but his eye has been narrowing at Chen Duan.

"Fourth, Marquis of Wen: General Lu Bu. I heard that Yuan Shu Yuan Gonglu, before his death, he gave you the Imperial Seal. I demand that General Lu, return that thing to its rightful owner, MILORD!!!!"

"CRRRAAAACCCCKKKKKK!!!!" Lu Bu pinched his wine glass. He could not control his strength so, it made cracking sound suddenly.

Where does this Chen Duan learn that news from?

"So, as long as Marquis of Wen agrees with these four matters, from now on we are one big family!!!"

"I HAVE DECIDED TO DECLINE ALL OF THOSE DEMANDS!" Lu Bu said it while putting down his wine glass.

"What do you mean by those words, Marquis of Wen?!" Chen Duan's

face become really bad.

“Are you deaf?! I SAID NO.

First, why I refuse to hand over Huang She. Your lord treat me as a borrowed knife, that itself is already a deplorable act.

Second, forming alliance is impossible. Because Sun Ce does not respect me at all. When one talked about forming an alliance, a lord must be face to face with the other lord. Sun Ce sends you, a mere dog of Sun Ce, to talk to me about allying with me, what does that mean, huh?

Third, what do you think of me, Lu Bu, huh? A servant offering his daughter to his lord??? Make my daughter a sister wife??? HUMPH, you really think highly of this Lu Bu, eh?

Fourth, I have not obtained the Imperial Seal. Even If I have obtained it, I will definitely return it to His Majesty Emperor Xian, what right does your lord have to wield it? Humph, return to its rightful owner... Did you really think your lord is the emperor?” Lu Bu said it casually.

TL: It is true, Lu Bu has not obtained it, because he returned it to Yang Hong, sometime before Jiangxia battle.

“Lu Fengxian, I will let you understand one thing!!!”Suddenly Chen Duan stood and no longer call Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen

“About what?!”

“DO NOT GIVE YOUR FACE MORE SHAME!!!” Chen Duan’s words are becoming ruder “STRAY DOG, MILORD WILL FORM AN ALLIANCE WITH YOU, IT MEANS HE ALREADY THINKS HIGHLY OF YOU!!! REALLY THINKS OF YOU AS A BIG CHARACTER!!!”

“Stray dog?!” Lu Bu’s complexion also become bad “Chen Duan, I respect your lord, so I won’t bother to argue with you any further. But you now need to return to Jiangdong, back to your domain. BEGONE FROM MY SIGHT!!!”

“HAHAHA, Lu Bu, Marquis of Wen Lu Bu. Just because your official title is big, you also consider yourself a big character?

You really think that I did not know what is in your heart? I know that you want to bargain with Huang Zu by using Huang She. That is already a fleeting dream. Do you really think swallowing Huang Zu’s generals and soldiers will make Huang Zu give you a pass? Keep dreaming.

Oh yeah, I forgot to tell you. At that time you were still doing battle with Huang Zu, Milord also moved out to conquer Sanjiangkou. So, even though you have passed through Jiangxia, you will also be blocked by Milord’s troops. Keep dreaming about your detour to the north!!!!!”

Eh, Sun Ce has conquered Sanjiangkou? Lu Bu really stunned. This is quite fast. Sun Ce calculated it well. By the time that Lu Bu launched attack on Huangzhou city, Sun Ce also made his move. So the result, they both conquered one territory at the same time.

If Sun Ce blocked them in Sanjiangkou, it is really difficult to pass them.

After all, naval battle is not Lu Bu's army's forte.

"Are you already shivering from fear? These four conditions, you must comply it by today. Milord had even thought to knot marriage with you. It is the symbol that he really thought of you highly!!! GODDAMNED SLAVE OF THREE SURNAMES!!!!" Chen Duan's talking more aggressively, he even said Lu Bu's infamy title.

"HAHAHA!!!!" Lu Bu sneered while getting up "Chen Duan, do you seriously think that I do not dare to kill you!!!"

"Kill me?! HAHAHAHAHA, YOU DARE TO KILL ME, LU BU?!" Chen Duan laughs disdainly at Lu Bu. "This nation warlords. There are Cao Mengde, Yuan Shao, Milord, Liu Biao, and Liu Zhang!!! You have offended 3 of them! You kill me now, you will no longer have any place in this world!!! I DARE YOU TO KILL ME!!!" Said Chen Duan while spurting out those facts.

It is true what Chen Duan said. Cao Cao wishes for Lu Bu to be dead, for he fears Lu Bu!!! Yuan Shao also disliked Lu Bu greatly and he even surrounded Lu Bu in order to kill him. Although Lu Bu did not offend Liu Biao on purpose, he however had done it. If he offended Sun Ce, then he will truly be isolated.

"Heh, offend three only, eh?!" Lu Bu muttered to himself slowly.

"WHAT!"

"Then, I WILL OFFEND ONE MORE!!!!" Lu Bu fiercely choke Chen Duan's neck.

“LU BU, LU BU, YOU, YOU DARE DO---!!!!” Chen Duan struggles trying to remove Lu Bu’s hands but all of his efforts are futile. Lu Bu’s hands are like pliers, when it pinched something, it is hard to remove it.

“CHEN DUAN, OH CHEN DUAN, YOUR LORD’S STRATEGY IS VERY GOOD, TAKING ADVANTAGE OF ME IN ORDER TO KILL HUANG ZU AND LIU BIAO. BUT UNFORTUNATELY, HE FORGOT THAT THIS KNIFE DOES NOT HAVE A HILT, IF ONE IS NOT CAREFUL USING THIS KNIFE, IT CAN KILL YOURSELF!!!”

“YOU, YOU, YOU!!!!” Chen Duan stopped his struggling and slowly closed his eye.

“Guards!!! Pull this Chen Duan out!!!!” Lu Bu clean his palm with cloth. He exerted too much force. Chen Duan’s Adams apple was crushed by his choking earlier.

“This, this, this!!!” Chen Gong just exited for a while and this happens.

“Milord, this?!” Chen Gong puzzled while looking at Lu Bu.

“I killed him!!!” Lu Bu just said it casually.

“Eh?!” Chen Gong’s brow wrinkled. Chen Duan is Sun Ce’s army personnel. Lu Bu’s army now has offended too many people. Huangzhou city's war offended Huang Zu and Liu Biao. Xu Province’s war, he and Cao Cao are already irreconcilable. During their stay at Hebei, Yuan Shao and he parted not in good terms.

Now, Sun Ce has joined the fray into Lu Bu’s list of offended people.

Now, Lu Bu army is the public number one enemy of the nation.

“Gongtai! I changed my mind!!!” Lu Bu already done cleaning his hand, he said these words while continue drinking “We no longer go to Xinye or Hanzhong!!!”

“Milord, what are you?!” Do not go to Xinye or Hanzhong? If this is the path, then they have gone far away from their original plan. Originally they wanted to go to Xinye and then go to Hanzhong. Hanzhong is very fertile land and easy to defend and also it is far away from chaos of this nation. They can make living there while building up their army’s strength and watch the political trend of the world.

But now Lu Bu unexpectedly cancelled their own plans.

“Milord, you must not stray away from our plan!!!” Chen Gong quickly remonstrate Lu Bu.

“Gongtai, I have decided. If I want to fight for hegemony in this nation, we can conquer other places than Hanzhong. Moreover now Sanjiangkou is occupied by Sun Ce!!!!”

“What?! Sun Ce army has occupied Sanjiangkou?!” Doesn't Jiangxia's naval units consist of 10,000 troops? How can they lose so quickly? What Chen Gong does not know is that Sanjiangkou only left 5,000 naval units because the remaining 5,000 naval units was assigned to defend

Huangzhou city along with Gan Ning and Su Fei.

"Today I have killed Chen Duan, crossing Jiangxia is a dead end!" He has offended completely both two warlords Huang Zu and Sun Ce

"Since Jiangxia is impossible!!! Then we go to Lujiang, to Wancheng city!!!" Lu Bu has given his answer. Since you Sun Ce will not let me pass Jiangxia, then good. I go to Lujiang, your territory. I go to Jiangdong. Four goddamn conditions, huh? HAHAHAHAHA!!!! DO YOU REALLY THINK THAT THIS LU BU IS A GOOD PERSON TO OFFEND?!"

"Lujiang, Wancheng city?!" Is not that Sun Ce's domain?

"Since the ancient times, people have said that Jiangdong is littered with talented people, if one conquers it, you can dominate this nation. That is what Western Chu Xiang Yu said. So today, I, Lu Bu must have a look, in the end, how good is this Jiangdong.

TL: Western Chu Xiang Yu = Liu Bang's enemy
https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Xiang_Yu

"But...!" Chen Gong wanted to say is if Jiangdong is compared to Hanzhong, Hanzhong is just a region that is led by a tame dog, which is Zhang Lu.

That guy did not have any ambition in his heart, he only wanted to maintain his inheritance from his ancestor's. His subordinates are docile people. But Sun Ce of Jiangdong is a very ambitious person. He is truly worthy as Jiangdong's Little Conqueror.

If Lu Bu is Mighty Tiger that conquers the land, then Sun Ce is a Great Dragon that conquers the water. If one met with each other, there will definitely a big battle. “Are you afraid against this Little Conqueror, Gongtai?!” Said Lu Bu while gulping his wine.

Afraid? How can he be afraid of this Little Conqueror? A few years ago, when Lu Bu attacked Yan Province from Puyang. At that time, Cao Cao was much more powerful than the current Sun Ce. At that time, Chen Gong is the one who challenged Cao Cao, even almost killed Old Cao. If he is afraid, how can Chen Gong be here?

“Hmph, I DARE!!!” Chen Gong took the wine jug and drank from it directly. Chen Gong suddenly realized that what Lu Bu said is right. In this nation, if one wanted to compete for hegemony, Hanzhong is not the only place to do that. If they conquer Jiangdong and conquer its rivers, they can really achieve hegemony. Essentially they can walk the path of emperor at Jiangdong.

Also Jiangdong’s population is much more than Hanzhong that is located in the middle of Sichuan. That place is covered by dense forests, not many in population. Lu Bu then patted Chen Gong’s shoulders and said “HAHAHAHA, This is Chen Gong, Chen Gongtai that I knew and recognized!!!”

Chapter 106 – Plundering of Jiangxia by Sun Ce

Inside Sanjiangkou naval units' main camp, Sun Ce is currently reading all the documents and Intel. He was truly lost in thought.

"Bofu, anything happen?!" Zhou Yu puts down his battle helmet. A moment ago, he is inspecting the main camp. The reason why they can be ready at any time is because Zhou Yu led the inspection personally and because of that, it sped up integration between soldiers and their generals. That merit is truly attributed to Zhou Yu alone.

With Sanjiangkou being occupied, those generals of Jing Province in Wuchang commandery will also surrender in a few days. With Wuchang commandery surrendered, Xiakou town will immediately surrender too. With that said, the entirety of Jiangxia was already acquired by Sun Ce.

Xiakou towns' current state is in total distress. This feat was only possible because of Marquis of Wen, Lu Bu. So we must say thanks to him. Huang Zu's senior generals Su Fei, Huang Zhong and Gan Ning are those who can withstand Jiangdong's naval units, but currently they had all transferred to Huangzhou city by Huang Zu. With Huangzhou city defeated, Jiangxia's troops morale dropped to the bottom.

Sanjiangkou initially had 10,000 naval units, but 5,000 were transferred to Huangzhou city and currently being assimilated by Lu Bu's army, becoming Lu Bu's navy. The remaining 5,000 naval units were not led by a competent commander.

And as a result, Zhou Yu won this battle easily.

“You calling Marquis of Wen, uncle, did not end in vain right Bofu? I am right as always, right?!” Zhou Yu teased “After your Honorable Uncle forms an alliance with us. Those 5,000 Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will be your sharp blade!!!”

“HAHAHAHA, form an alliance? Gongjin, we had an accident!” Sun Ce smiled bitterly. He wanted to obtain that 5,000 Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Formation Breaker and the Urban Army. Those divisions made Sun Ce drool. But thinking about getting it is a completely different matter than obtaining it.

“Here, you can see for yourself!” When Zhou Yu had doubts, Sun Ce quickly passed over his bamboo slips to him. When he opened the letter, Zhou Yu brow wrinkled and suddenly got angry.

“Lu Bu killed Chen Duan? He truly killed Chen Duan!!!” Zhou Yu did not want to believe this news. “Does this Lu Fengxian seriously not care for his life?!”

He had offended Huang Zu. Then Sun Ce under the pretext that Lu Bu and he formed an alliance, quickly attacked and occupied Sanjiangkou to intimidate Xiakou town.

For Sun Ce’s army to have big harvest today, half of it was Lu Bu’s army’s merit. So it can be said that Huang Zu hates Lu Bu to the bone.

So Sun Ce sent out Chen Duan to contact Lu Bu in order to force him to ally with Sun Ce. If Lu Bu's side is slightly “smart” or truly smart, they will definitely form an alliance with Sun Ce, even if it is uncomfortable. With Lu Bu and Sun Ce allied together, Jiangxia will definitely be a no problem and after Jiangxia had been conquered, Sun Ce will give Lu Bu two

options to leave or to stay.

But, who would have thought that Lu Bu killed Chen Duan. It's the same as clawing Sun Ce's army's face!

What profit is there to be gain with Lu Bu’s army offending Huang Zu and Sun Ce’s army?

Sanjiangkou is in Sun Ce's hands. Lu Bu’s army is king in land warfare but in naval battle, they are zero. Once Sun Ce blocks Sanjiangkou, Lu Bu’s army does not have an escape route.

“We sent Chen Duan to force this Marquis of Wen Lu Bu, but it is just to threat this tiger a little. But this Chen Duan actually bared his fangs!!!” The bamboo slips on Sun Ce table wrote about the event clearly.

When Chen Duan arrived in Lu Bu army, he put out four conditions.

First, is to hand over Huang She; Second, is to form alliance; Third, is to marry Lu Bu's daughter as a sister wife; Fourth, to hand over the Imperial Seal to Sun Ce.

Sun Ce remembers that he ordered Chen Duan to pressure Lu Bu with the first two. The first is handing over Huang She. If they handed over Huang She, Lu Bu’s army will have to cancel their destination to Xinye, because they will make Huang Zu their mortal enemy and subsequently a mortal enemy to the Jing Province.

The second is to form an alliance. Besides Jiangxia, the entire Jing Province is not to be underestimated. Although Liu Biao is a person who only wanted to maintain his inheritance, his performance actually had

made Jing Province the wealthiest place in all of the 9 Provinces of China, and in this times of chaos, they are still able to maintain stability.

Because of chaos caused by war, all of the common people, famous scholars and talented person sought out asylum in Jing Province.

If there is no Liu Biao and his family making every effort so that Jing Province maintain their wealth, perhaps those people who sought asylum, will live in uncertainty to this day.

With Jiangxia occupied, Jing Province will definitely make every preparation to counter attack. So Sun Ce wanted his and Lu Bu’s army allied at this critical point.

The third is marriage, Sun Ce can only shake his head and smile bitterly. He lamented that he should never ever have sent Chen Duan to negotiate. Chen Duan is an excellent negotiator, but his personality is not a good one. He had been made angry by Liu Mang to the point of almost vomiting blood and also he has become a laughing stock in every corner of Jiangdong.

So the third point obviously was added by Chen Duan himself for revenge against Liu Mang.

Let Lu Bu's daughter become Sun Ce's sister wife? A concubine? Chen Duan really is crazy. He spat on the fact that Lu Bu's daughter has been engaged to the Prince of Shu, Liu Mang. If Lu Bu's agrees, then how would the entire nation see Lu Bu? A person who threw away everything for riches, right?

The fourth point, Sun Ce had obtained news that said after Yuan Shu died, the Imperial Seal vanished. But here is the point, after Yuan Shu died, suddenly in Lu Bu's army appeared Yuan Shu's chief official Yang Hong, so this Yang Hong was suspected by Sun Ce to carry the Imperial Seal with him.

But only suspected without any hard proof, but Chen Duan actually coerced Lu Bu for it.

Finally, he also threatened Lu Bu. Who is Lu Bu? He is a mighty tiger. If you threatened this mighty tiger, you are really seeking for death.

So Chen Duan's death is not undeserved. Zhou Yu quickly said "Bofu, immediately send someone to your Honorable Uncle to explain clearly our intention!!!" Although Chen Duan is one of five top advisers in Sun Ce army, he is also Jiangdong senior statesman. He could be seen as a representative of Sun Ce's army and his plans.

"Um!" Sun Ce also nodded. Lu Bu's army is vital to his ambition. What Sun Ce wants is the entire Jing Province not only Jiangxia.

"REPORT!!!" A messenger quickly ran "REPORT, MILORD. AN EMERGENCY REPORT FROM JIANGDONG!!!"

"Emergency report? Quick, give it to us!" Zhou Yu and Sun Ce were stunned. An emergency report from Jiangdong? Jiangdong is located between 4 provinces, which are Yang Province, Xu Province, Yu Province, and Jing Province

Half of Yang Province has already assimilated by Jiangdong. The remaining place is Shouchun which had been dilapidated and desolated.

In Xu Province, Cao Cao and Liu Bei are fighting like a raging fire, it's impossible for them to send troops to Jiangdong.

At Yu Province only have Liu Pi of Runan, but that person is only a dog, Yuan Shao's dog. Without orders from his master, he does not dare to attack Jiangdong. Moreover, if he dares to move. Will Cao Mengde let go such good opportunity to annex his rear pass by?

Jing Province is currently focusing on the defense now, they cannot attack Jiangdong.

"Abominable!!!" Sun Ce quickly threw this emergency report on the table after reading it.

"Eh?!" Seeing that Sun Ce that angry, Zhou Yu knows that an emergency matter happened. He maintained composure and carefully read that emergency letter that Sun Ce has thrown off.

"South?!" Zhou Yu also dumbfounded when reading this letter.

Lu Bu's army unexpectedly abandoned Huangzhou city. His army is currently moving to the south. His goal? You don't have to be a genius to guess it. It is definitely Wancheng city!!! Lujiang's capital, Wancheng city.

Although Wancheng city is a strategic place, their military strength was insufficient. Wancheng city needed to be defended by two places which

are Jiujiang and Chaisang. But currently those two places have deployed all of its soldiers toward Wuchang commandery and Sanjiangkou.

Lu Bu now goes to the south, once his army reached the city. Wancheng city will be broken.

"ARMY RETREAT!! ALL ARMY RETREAT!!!" Sun Ce drew out the sword on the wall. "This brute Lu Bu has bullied me majorly. When he comes to pass Lujiang, I did not receive even a single coin, but I prepared him grain and provisions, hot food and I even threw a banquet for him. Unexpectedly, he redirects his army south to seize my city now. If I do not taste Lu Bu's blood my heart will be difficult to calm down!!!" Sun Ce is so angry that he forgot the big advantage that Lu Bu's army had given him

"All army retreat?!" Zhou Yu thought while holding the table now and tidying up many things that had fall to the ground "Bofu, now we cannot full retreat!!!"

For what reason did they amassed troops in Wuchang and Sanjiangkou? Isn't it to plunder Jiangxia in order to capture Jing Province? If they retreat now, then these efforts will be in vain. Next time when they attack Jiangxia, it will not be so easy like this. They will not have Lu Bu's sharp blade to help them. No, without Lu Bu's help, Sun Ce will not be able to win Jiangxia.

As far as they knew, when Lu Bu has not yet come, even though Sun Ce won so many wars with Jiangxia, he never got this far. This time, Sun Ce can is knocking on Jing Province's door because after this Jiangxia will be his.

Moreover they are assembling troops here in Jiangxia and Xiakou. Once they retreat, they do not only face Lu Bu’s army, but they will also face Huang Zu. It will impossible for Huang Zu to throw away such an opportunity. He will definitely commence a pincer attack with Lu Bu.

“So, in your opinion, we just let this brute Lu Bu attack my Jiangdong?!” Sun Ce's heart now is very volatile. His anger is maxed. He had planned for both sides to gain profit, but who ever thought that Lu Bu will get angry by Chen Duan and attack Wancheng city directly

“If now, we retreat, then all of our efforts are in vain!!! Just let Lujiang and Wancheng city be occupied by Lu Bu!!!” Zhou Yu then sneered “Lu Bu’s army is the king in land warfare, but in water, they are sitting ducks. Without naval units, he is unable to cross the river. We can just deploy our naval units in Wuhu Lake and Chaohu Lake. That is enough for stopping Lu Fengxian from going anywhere but north!!!”

TL: Wuhu and Chaohu, both are lakes in Lujiang vicinity

“Our present task is now to overcome Xiakou and devour Jiangxia. Once one succeeds, we only need to leave behind several senior generals to block Jing Province forces in Chibi. Then we return to Wancheng city. At that time, with our Jiangdong forces freshly resupplied, Lu Bu will perish quickly.

“Good then, let us make that brute Lu Bu live a little longer!” Looking at Sun Ce put down his long sword, Zhou Yu breathe a sigh of relief.

He feared that Sun Ce will quickly order for retreat and fight a losing battle with Lu Bu; disregarding his plan to spread Jiangdong's dominance.

Zhou Yu and Sun Ce then thought "Lu Bu, Lu Bu! We really underestimated you!!!"

Chapter 107 – Breaking Wancheng City

Wancheng city is the capital of Lujiang. It is guarded by walls surrounding its four sides with four heavy doors.

The inside of Wancheng city is divided into two areas. The Inner city's area is 7-li and the outer city area is 15-li.

At the outside wall, one can see Lu Kang's unfinished project to build a moat surrounding the city. That project was finally competed by Sun Ce, and the moat was filled by water from Yangtze River.?

With these designs, Wancheng city is very easy to defend and very hard to attack.

TL: 1-

= 0.5 km

Before Liu Mang did not paid attention to the details of the city, because at that time Lu Bu and Sun Ce is were in their “honeymoon” period.

Now, he truly discovered that this Wancheng city is similar to a stationary monster. When they opened up their gate, it is just like swallowing its prey alive. If the city had Sun Ce's main army, the city would turn into a shredder.

The Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are the ones who arrived first. Liu Mang was really worried, therefore he also come with Bing Province

Heavy Cavalry.

Fortunately Wancheng city still had not obtained any news. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry's speed is extremely agile; especially at night, they can raise their speed to almost double their original speed specially at night.

Due to Wancheng city not receiving any news at all, they are in a relaxed state and gate defense force is still docile.

Merchants and commoners are still coming and going out of the city as usual and because Lu Bu’s army did not raise their banner, there are commoners who are smiling and nodding to Lu Bu’s army. Obviously they regard Lu Bu’s army as Sun Ce’s army.

“Sire, please look! There are cavalry soldiers!” A soldier who is guarding city gate quickly reported to the commander of the gate defense force.

“Eh, cavalry soldiers?!” The commander still dozing off his tiredness. “Cavalries come here? Are your eyes blurry? Leave me alone!!!!”

Their Jiangdong only have several hundred warhorses, and those who rode horses are only generals.

That commander was tired from yesterday event. He tasted a fresh, newly arrived girl in Wancheng city's brothel, so he has lost all of his stamina.

“It is true, Sire!!! All of them are high and tall horses!!!” Gate defenders did not know about any type of warhorse. But those cavalry soldier's

warhorse really made them green with envy and they started thought “If I can become one of Milord's cavalry soldiers, how good would that be!”

“Do not daydream, these warhorses are to be given by Milord to his generals!!!” The commander quickly said it, because he also had the same daydream as his subordinate so he needed to return his subordinate to reality.

But, when he finally become sobered up from his drowsiness, he is truly shocked. If one takes quick look at outside of Wancheng city, those cavalry soldiers are watching Wancheng city like a predator watching its prey.

“When are so many cavalries under Milord?!” The commander slowly muttered to himself.

“I am right, am I right? Those are Milord's cavalry soldiers coming here!” The soldier said it in extreme confidence.

“No, you are wrong!!!” The commander shook his head. Although he is just a lower officer responsible in defending the city he also has joined on Sun Ce's army’s war council.

He learned from that war councils that Jiangdong is littered with river but no prairie, therefore it is difficult to breed a good horse and the lands that remain was used for food production, therefore Jiangdong was only able to procure few hundred warhorses.

“That person...!!!” From the commander's eyes emerged one person.

From his vision, inside these cavalry soldiers there was a person wearing golden armor. Under the sun, he shined and sparkled.

That commander was really confused. At that time, when Lu Bu's army was stationed outside Wancheng city, he had seen this golden-armored general. Did not they go to Jiangxia? How did they appear here?

"Sire, do you want us to go down and welcome them?!" Asked nearby defender.

"Welcome them? YOU SAY WELCOME THEM???" The commanders quickly hit his subordinate's head "WELCOME THEM YOUR ASS!!! GATE DEFENDER!!! SHUT THE GATE!!!!"

"SHUT THE GATE?!" The defender's are stunned. What is the good for closing the gate? We should get down and greet them.

"SHUT THE GATE, THAT IS THE ENEMY, ENEMY!!!!"

"Enemy?!"

"Oh man, we are busted!!!" Liu Mang said it helplessly. Originally he had planned to wait for main army to come and surprise attack together. Now, Liu Mang can only raise his long sword and exclaim "ALL ARMY, RAID!!!!"

"HUNGRY, STARVING!!!!" Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are hungry wolves. Their claws have been brandished and their saliva is already drooling. So they must tear open the enemy, they must eat them.

“ENEMY RAID, ENEMY RAID!!!!” Immediately painful and terrified cry fluttered in the sky of Wancheng city.

“SHAAAA!!!!” What Liu Mang currently rode was an elite horse that Lu Bu personally choose from the 5,000 warhorse that he brought back. It is faster and stronger than the Arabian warhorse, therefore Liu Mang is already leading those wolves.

“QUICK, CLOSE THE GATE NOW!!!!!” The commander really pale. He has not rested, and now unexpectedly he met an enemy and the enemy is a heavy cavalry division.

The front door of Wancheng city is a very heavy door. Its weight is at least 1000-jin. The body was made by mixture of steel and copper, nearby was a suspension bridge. With this combination, those two door and suspension bridge are complementing each other. This is the defensive measure for Wancheng city.

TL: 1-jin = 0.5 kg.

But these defensive measures are actually useless against a surprise attack like this. That commander is simply crying now. The suspension bridge's weight is 1000-jin. Each opening and closing requires a lot of time, especially that 1000-jin door. Slowly but surely, several dozen of soldiers gather up trying to close the bridge and door.

“I WILL NOT LET YOU CLOSE THE DOOR AND SUSPENSION BRIDGE!!!” Around Wancheng city was moat, its city walls reached at least ten feet high. If they do storm, the damage will be very great, let alone, Liu Mang

only left with cavalry soldiers. These cavalry soldiers are king in prairie and field, but when attacking a city, cavalry cannot do anything at all and that is why Ferocious Cavalry is useless during the siege battle in Kaiyang. If this front door closed, then Liu Mang can only stay outside helplessly.

The front door has been shut half, but during closing the other half, the situation is becoming much more menacing. Those cavalry soldiers are getting nearer and nearer, especially that golden-armored general.

“SHOOT ARROWS, SHOOT THEM. WE ABSOLUTELY CANNOT LET THEM ENTER THE CITY!!!!” The commander exclaimed.

Waves of arrows rained toward Liu Mang's head trying to pierce his skull. This is the method of attacking for defenders. Arrow rain like this can make a human turn into a hedgehog.

“RAISE THE SHIELD!!!!” Liu Mang issues an order. All of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry held up the great shield from their horseback to their front. Their line of sight was covered, but it did not hinder these wolves' speeds.

“DANG, DANG, DANG!!!” Arrows fell continuously on Liu Mang's great shield. Impact from the arrow made Liu Mang's arm tingle with numbness. But he cannot stop now because in front of him is Wancheng city. He need to claim that city and reclaim her from Sun Ce!!!!

“ABOMINABLE!!!!” The commander looks that arrow has no effect on Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. He suddenly pulled out his long sword and exclaimed “WE CANNOT AFFORD TO LOSE THIS WANCHENG CITY, WE

MUST NOT LOSE THE GATE. MEN, COME WITH ME!!!!”

With that war cry, the commander and his troops flush out from the city. He must stop these cavalry soldiers, even if he cannot do that, at least he can buy time for his subordinate to close the city gate.

Infantry against cavalry, the result will be total annihilation for infantry, how can the commander not know? He actually knew, however, he had no other option. In Wancheng city, there are his family and he wanted to survive for his family. If Wancheng city is broken, can this commander be spared by this enemy?

“We swore to follow Sire commander to the death!!!” When a general dares his men, “is he afraid of death?” A soldier will naturally be encouraged and respond with vigor especially if they know it is a dead end, they will certainly take up arms and fight to the death.

“Kamikaze corps?!” Liu Mang sneered when he saw this Sun Ce army defender commander trying to charge him. Although Liu Mang truly admired this commander's courage, but he is impossible to show any mercy. This is war and this times is chaos times. If he let this commander shut the gates, then Lu Bu’s army can only reopen it with the cost of many lives.

So for my brothers to live, I will have to ask you to die!!!

"Budum" Mighty cavalry soldier collided with the infantry, like praying mantises battling each other.

The commander of city gate managed to keep his life during the initial impact. However his men are not so lucky. The one that is lucky was killed

by spears, the one who is not lucky was trampled to death by horses. They vomited their internal organs, bleeding profusely being damaged on the head, after that they are turned into meat paste by horses.

"YOU SHALL NOT PASS!!!!" The commander roar a cry. He had avoided the initial impact quickly stabbed one of the warhorses and killed one of the cavalry soldiers after he had fallen from the warhorse.

"BLOCK ME AND DIE!!!!" Liu Mang's eyes is full of killing intent. His long sword already blood-stained.

Both of them want capture the respective commander now.

"KILL HIM!!!! ONLY KILL THE GENERAL OF THIS CAVALRY SOLDIERS, WANCHENG CITY WILL BE SAFE!!!"

"KILL HIM!!!! ONLY KILL THIS DEFENSE COMMANDER OF SUN CE'S ARMY, ONLY WITH HIS DEATH WANCHENG CITY WILL BE BROKEN!!!"

Chapter 108 – Da Qiao Declared As Dead

“Is this worth it to die like this?!” Said Liu Mang while holding his bloodied sword.

“There is nothing in this world that has no worth. I am just doing my task, which is to not let you enter Wancheng city!” The commander said it with much difficulty, he has been coughing blood all this time.

“Because you ask them to do commit suicide, none of them survived!!!!” Those troops who are following the gate commander totaled 110 soldiers. They are now lying dead bloody in front of the city gate. It can be said it is a bloodbath at the gate.

“Yes, they died. However their family members can live because of their sacrifice!!!” The gate commander smiled. His vision is blurred and he as if seeing his family that is still inside Wancheng city. His wife, his child that is crying for food and his old mother.

In these times of chaos, ambitious people are not lacking, but more than ambitious people, are those who want to grasp a chance to survive.

The Front doors of Wancheng city closed slowly. Liu Mang stayed with the gate commander who is currently in a very painful state because Liu Mang stabbed his lungs earlier. Not long after that, he breathe his last, on his face there is a smile.

Liu Mang looking at that gate commander's corpse for a very long time while maintaining silence. Liu Mang does not take back up his long

sword, but makes his long sword as a grave marker for this nameless gate commander.

“I am sorry that you have to die!!!” In Wancheng city, sound of battle was resounding again. Although the city gate that Liu Mang passed through has been closed, the other three city gates were forced through. Some people can die for their family but a lot of them prefer to live rather than dying. Of all four city gates, except the one that Liu Mang passed through, all of remaining three gate commanders escaped and surrendered. They even led Liu Mang to Wancheng cities Administration Office.

“So, I am back here again, huh?!” Liu Mang is no longer that drunk man from that night; who was so drunk he couldn’t even find his location. Today he can observe and watch the scenery of this Wancheng city Administration Office.

“I am coming to you!!!” The Administration Office was really in a really big confusion. Servants and servant girls are trembling profusely, fearing that they will be punished by the owner, Sun Ce. Liu Mang currently are looking around this familiar place.

Wancheng city Administration Office was once occupied by Lu Kang. He is the patriarch of Lu clan of Yang Province and Lujiang Prefect. Naturally his mansion will not be in bad shape.

Afterward when Liu Xun and Sun Ce occupied this Administration Office successively, they expanded this office. Even though this Lujiang was a location of 4 battles and the people occupying it kept changing, it actually did not affect this Administration Office. Therefore Liu Mang can compare this Administration Office with Yuan Shu's Shouchun Imperial

Palace.

After he passed through Administration Office, he came across a stone garden. After the stone garden is a lobby, but he avoided it to go quickly to the backyard which had ponds in it.

Wedding decorations from weeks ago has not been cleaned, therefore this place has not changed. But Liu Mang's status has changed today, from honored guest to master of this city.

"I must see her!!!" Liu Mang did not know why his heart had this kind of anxiety. He quickly shook his head to dispel his anxiety and asked the servant girl who quickly bent on her knees, he asked for directions to the place that he has been anxiously wanting to go.

The scenery on the road is familiar with him but also not familiar. Liu Mang can remember the place that he had peed on, but soon, he reached THAT place.

Liu Mang hesitantly placed his hand on the door. Properly speaking that he is the victor, so he can burst in directly, but Liu Mang actually held his urge and feelings and politely knocked on the door.

"Who is it?!" That familiar sound said with a cute voice.

"It is me!" Said Liu Mang while suppressing his excitement in his heart.

"Come in!" Liu Mang push the door. Just like that day, she sat on the bed and said it casually "You came back!"

“Un, I came back!” Liu Mang also sat down on nearby chair.

“Should I call you Da Qiao, Madame Sun or Miss He Yu?!” Liu Mang's eyes a bit complicated.

“Does that make any difference?!” Da Qiao looks at Liu Mang “I am me, and will always be me. In your mind, what is she? Is she different in your mind?!”

Both of their eyes met. Suddenly Liu Mang laughed “No difference at all!!!”

“Today, you came back, is there anything at all?!”

“Today, I need to kill you!!!”

Lu Bu's army gradually advances toward Wancheng city one after another. Lu Bu army when they first come, they are just passing through but now Lu Bu has become de facto master of Wancheng city. Occupying a city, naturally there are a lot of things that need to take care of.

First they must reassure the public. This place is not Huangzhou city. Huangzhou city is only a place for Lu Bu’s army to recuperate a while, that place is impossible to stay for a long period of time. Therefore when Lu Bu’s army arrived there, they did not try anything to reassure the public, making all of Huangzhou city's citizens increase their anxiety. Here is

Wancheng city, this is where Lu Bu will set up his true homebase. Therefore they needed to reassure the public.

Second is examination of Wancheng city internal affairs. To govern a homebase, there are lots of things that needed to be taken over. They needed to be clear in order to know more about this Wancheng city.

Currently Lu Bu sat in the Administration Office hall, along with all of Lu Bu’s army’s civil and military officials to discuss official business.

Finally after being expelled from Xu Province. Lu Bu had a nice domain, no longer travelling in four directions.

“Gongtai, the matter to reassure the public. I am counting on you!” Lu Bu said toward Chen Gong.

“Yes, sir!” Chen Gong nodded. From when at Yan Province until Xu Province, Chen Gong's role is not strictly only as a military strategist, but his role also to reorganize all of the internal affairs after conquering a territory. It can be said that Chen Gong was the entirety of Lu Bu’s shadow. He controlled everything from the shadows, he even controlled everything for internal affairs. Having Chen Gong take care of internal affairs, made Lu Bu's mind at ease and can keep thinking about battle.

“Milord, although our army has conquered Wancheng city, we are still surrounded by Qianshan County, Jiashi County, Shiting County and Shucheng County. These four counties need to be conquered and pacified as soon as possible, in order to avoid another chaos. The news of Wancheng city's fall will spread across all of Jiangdong like wildfire. It is only a matter of time before all of Jiangdong is in full alert. Although

Jiangdong is scarce in troop numbers, if they close the door to defend, then Lu Bu's army will need to do siege. Such loss is unnecessary, therefore they must be conquered swiftly.

Lu Bu thought for a while. He also knows that this is a danger that must be solved ASAP. All of his generals right now are looking at Lu Bu with a profound gaze. Chen Gong has said four counties, so the newly surrendered generals which are Huang Zhong, Su Fei and Gan Ning want those merits so they can quickly be entrusted by Lu Bu with heavy responsibility.

But they are doomed to be disappointed because Lu Bu's next words are "Is Zhang Liao and Gao Shun present?!"

"This general is present!" Gao Shun and Zhang Liao come out from formations, those people who were not chosen are oozing with envy.

"Zhang Liao, you bring your Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Day and night travel with double speed to capture Shucheng County and Shiting County!!!" Bing Province Heavy Cavalry have speed and mobility. They can travel 100-li in one day, so they are able to take down these two places quite quickly.

"This general complies with the order!" Zhang Liao receive the order and retreated.

"Gao Shun, you bring your Formation Breaker to attack Qianshan County and Jiashi County. After you take Qianshan County regroup with Zhang Liao and take Jiashi County." Jiashi County and Shucheng County is near. With the news of Shucheng County having fallen, Jiashi County will

surely closed their door and defend themselves and our army will have to siege. With the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry the ones who are doing the siege, the result is obvious. Jiashi County will fall.

Zang Ba is to stay within Wancheng city to practice and train his new recruit. Chen Deng go with Zhang Liao. Shucheng County is not smaller than Wancheng city, therefore it needs a senior general to guard and govern. Chen Deng is capable in military and administration skills, therefore he is the most logical choice.

As for Huang Zhong, Gan Ning and Su Fei. Lu Bu assigned Huang Zhong as the one responsible for the longbow division that has been left by Chen Deng. Huang Zhong's archery skill is truly terrifying. The rest of the army was given to Gan Ning.

Gan Ning quickly chose his navy units along with Su Fei. Lu Bu's army generals for land was already too much, but for naval warfare, he only had Su Fei, Gan Ning, two people.

"Okay then, all of you already have your own tasks, please proceed with them! Hanyang, you stay here!" Lu Bu had said all of his plans and then wave to signal them to leave. Everyone else also has something to do, so they quickly held their fist and excuse themselves.

"I heard that Da Qiao died?!" Said Lu Bu casually while waving for servant to fill in his wine glass.

"Um!" Liu Mang also sat down, not waiting for Lu Bu ask him to sit-down.

“You killed her?!”

“Yes, I personally hung her to death!”

Lu Bu watch Liu Mang, his face is really complex, because he was disappointed. Liu Mang just maintained his calmness. Actually Lu Bu did not care whether Da Qiao was alive or not, what Lu Bu is disappointed at is that Liu Mang did not speak the truth with him. He thought “Hanyang, what is a woman's worth in your eyes?!”

“Okay then, I have no more inquiries, you go back!”

Liu Mang also saw Lu Bu's disappointment in him, but he truly tells the truth.

Da Qiao really died and the one who survived is He Yu.

Chapter 109 – Held Banquet for Lujiang Nobles

Within a few days the 4 counties of Lujiang had fallen, Shucheng County, Shiting County, Qianshan County and Jiashi County! The Nearby Wuwei County who heard the rumor quickly surrendered.

With this most of Lujiang's region already in Lu Bu's hands, but nobody in Lu Bu army is slacking.

Although Lujiang's Prefect is good, it cannot afford Lu Bu's 40,000 soldiers! Lujiang Prefecture has 20,000 households with a population of more than 150,000 people. Since Lujiang Prefecture is located in far south, it did not experience the chaos of the Central Plains caused by war. So Lujiang is the ideal destination for refugees.

TL: Central Plains, location of China capital. Luoyang, Chang'an, Beijing are all located in Central Plains (Zhongyuan) and I believe this is why People Republic of China called themselves Zhongguo.

Originally Lujiang Prefecture had more than 150,000 mouths to feed now adding more than 40,000 military mouths to feed!!! This raised a big issue in grain and provision distribution.

You cannot let Lu Bu dismiss this issue! Abandoning this issue will only be seeking death.

"Gongtai, how many grain and provisions remain in Lujiang?!" Lu Bu frowned while looking that big pile of official documents.

“Grain and provisions are less than 7000-shi!!!” Chen Gong shook his head. 7000-shi of grain and provisions may look like a lot, it is 700,000 kg of grain and provisions, but in fact, it is not. Even if this grain and provisions were used efficiently being rationed, it can only maintain the army for less than 3 weeks.

If there is a battle, this amount of grain and provisions are nothing.

“What about those paddy fields surrounding the city?!” When Sun Ce went toward Xiakou, he not just took almost all the soldiers from Wancheng city, he also took a majority of grain and provisions. Therefore when Lu Bu’s army captured Wancheng city, there is not much left of grain and provisions.

“Paddies?!” Chen Gong smiled bitterly “Milord, this time is early summer. To have a freshly matured paddy, it needs at least three months!”

“We must wait three months?!” Lu Bu’s army now cannot even afford a one month wait.

“Can we buy them from the market?!” Buying at the market is the only solution in order to support these months until the new paddy matures.

“Milord, the market has grain and provisions but the price is truly expensive!” Chen Gong is very helpless now. In these times, the value of grain and provisions is much more than gold. It’s so expensive that a half-jin paddy rice (25 kg rice) equals to 100 bronze coins. Probably 1 tael of gold can probably only buy 1-shi of grain and provisions.

TL: According to historical records, when in peace and prosperity time, half-jin paddy equal to only 10 bronze coins and 1-tael of gold can buy 50-shi of grains and provisions. Checked it in historical records.

Lu Bu’s army need at least 10,000-shi of grain and provisions. So, if they tried to buy them all, Lu Bu’s army could not afford them.

“What about commoners?! Is it feasible for us to raise grain taxes?!”

Chen Gong said “Commoners also do not have surplus. The only thing left for them is enough to survive next harvest!” Those in the commoners hand is the last harvest grain and provisions, if they raise grain taxes, those commoners will not be able to eat.

“How about we borrow from those noble clans?!” Lu Bu said.

“Milord, if we can just borrow from them casually, then we would not need to have this discussion!” These merchant shops are controlled by noble clans. So when Chen Gong wanted to borrow grains and provisions, they just avoid him. Either they do not have grain or provisions or they just wanted to take advantage on him. Chen Gong then began to tell Lu Bu what he had encountered when he want to negotiate with those nobles.

These people are not hesitating even a bit to decline Lu Bu's request to borrow grain and provisions. If ordinary families refused, it is understandable, because they are also struggling in order to survive day by day, but those are noble clans!!! They have fertile lands amounted to 10,000 mu. And they still refused to lend grain and provisions? This kind of treatment is definitely to demean Lu Bu, saying that he is a beggar in

order to shame him.

Especially the Zhou clan, Chen clan and Liu clan. They closed their doors and only sent their lower servant to receive Chen Gong. Chen Gong held his anger as best he could, because in order to govern this Lujiang, he must have the local nobles support Lu Bu.

“HUMPH!!!!” Lu Bu bang his fist on the table. “So they do not want to lend grain and provisions, eh?! Gongtai, you send a letter for all of Lujiang noble’s clan patriarch, tell to them that I am inviting them to a banquet in this Administration Office!”

“Milord, what are you want to do?!” Chen Gong a little worried because currently Lu Bu is quite unhappy and he is afraid he is going to cut all of them down. That issue is too big. In chaotic times, nobles are in power. Chen Gong also wanted to kill those nobles, but he hesitated because by doing that, he will offend the nobles of this nation and at the very least, this Lujiang will fall into chaos.

“Relax, Gongtai. I still have my own sense of proprietary!”

Inside Wancheng city, Zhou clans’ mansion.

In the main hall there is a middle aged man pacing back and forth, in his hand there is an invitation that Lu Bu sent.

There are also people who sat in nearby chairs.

“What is Lu Bu’s intention in inviting us?!” Said a middle-aged man

toward Zhou clan's patriarch. That middle-aged man who speaks is the patriarch of biggest noble clan in Lujiang, the Liu clan, Liu Kai.

TL: Insert a screenshot of Yakuza series when introducing the character. "Patriarch of Lujiang's Liu clan, Liu Kai"

This Liu clan is truly one of Han Dynasty's ancestors and relative. It is not like Liu Bei who needed to remind everyone that he is of Han Dynasty Royal Family and unlike Liu Mang who spoke that he is one of the Royal Family out of blue. This Liu clan is truly the relative of Liu Zhen the son of Prince Jing of Zhongshan, Liu Sheng who later became Marquis of Lucheng and after that he resided at Lujiang before being kicked out to Zhou County.

Liu clan's root has been very deep since Liu Zhen resided in Lujiang. They are one of Wancheng city's rulers. Originally Lu Kang and Liu Kai compete each other for leadership of this Wancheng city, but after Lu Kang died, he took over the command.

Therefore in Wancheng city, all of the noble clans think Liu clan's as the representative of Lujiang nobles.

"Brother Liu, this slave of three surnames intention is obviously trying to make us give him grain and provisions! This stray dog is hard to predict in the long term, we cannot give him grain and provisions, we must expel him from Lujiang!!!" A patriarch of noble clan suddenly stood up and said those words.

"This brute Lu Bu, although he has conquered Wancheng city, it will not for a long time. If we give him grain and provisions and he is defeated, it

is loss for us!!!" Another patriarch stand out.

"Lu Bu, whether he can bring us advantage or disadvantage, currently he has 30,000 soldiers. How can he not defend this Wancheng city with those numerous soldiers?!" Some clan patriarchs argued. Those nobles are the nobles who do not want to fight for hegemony, but they are the ones who wanted to invest their future on the final victor of this chaos times. With Lu Bu the victor just now, naturally they will hesitate.

Financing warlords, if that particular warlord is able to achieve hegemony, those noble clans will certainly got the most merit but if that warlord lost, then these noble clans will lose everything from family property even their lives.

"Heh, support Lu Bu now, so we can be like Zhang Miao of Yan Province and like Cao Bao of Xu Province, eh?!" Some patriarch sneering against the idea "Zhang Miao of Chenliu, Zhang clan might be bigger than all of you, but Cao clan of Pengcheng city? That clan is Xu Province's master. After that, Zhang Miao died executed by Cao Cao and Zhang clan was eradicated by Cao Cao. The once big clan of the Han Dynasty in Yan Province was reduced to a mere rubble.

And Cao clan of Xu Province is also pitiful. Thinking that marrying his daughter Lady Cao to Lu Bu can make Xu Province stable. But who would have thought that Lu Bu had too many enemies and Cao clan was uprooted by Cao Cao and Liu Bei and in the end, Cao clan vanished into thin air.

With these two as an example, who would dare to finance Lu Bu?

“But, if we do not give Lu Bu’s army grain and provisions, what can we do if he acts rashly?!” Some people were truly worried. After all the master of Wancheng city is Lu Bu. Making Lu Bu unhappy is not a good thing.

“Does he dare to do that?!” This is the voice of patriarch of Chen clan. “Lu Bu killed my cousin elder brother. I have sworn revenge upon him and HEAR MY WORDS NOW. WHOEVER FINANCES LU BU, HE WILL AUTOMATICALLY BE MY CHEN CLANS SWORN ENEMIES!!!!” That person who speaks is Chen Yao. Chen Duan is his cousin, elder brother who Lu Bu choked to death. How the Chen clan gained big fame and fortune is because of Chen Duan’s merit. Chen Duan working his way from the bottom, allowed the Chen clan to have a stable position in Jiangdong.

“Yes, what Master Chen said is right! If he dares to act out rashly, he will offend not only us, but he will offend all of Jiangdong’s nobles and even this nation nobles! When that time comes, Lu Fengxian will never have any place to take refuge again!!!!” Killing one member of noble clans is still fine, but killing a lot of nobles, that will bring only big trouble, even more if those nobles had big connections with each other.

As an example the original ruler of Wancheng city is the Lu clan. When Sun Ce conquered Wancheng, he put Lu Kang to death and by doing that he destroyed the Lu clan until it almost perished. Properly speaking Lu clan should be unable to threaten Sun Ce anymore.

However when Sun Quan is the ruler, the Lu clan began to emerge once more with the emergence of the last son of Lu clan, Lu Xun. Lu Xun began to rise to power and was trusted with big responsibilities until the end of his life. So with that, Lu clan was compensated by Lu Xun's rise to power

Why he re-emerged? Because when Sun Quan marry Lu Xun's sister as concubine, several patriarchs began to recommend Lu Xun and Lu Xun's sister also begging Sun Quan to use Lu Xun.

"Therefore, we must not give Lu Bu's army grain and provisions!!!" We must push Lu Bu to the point of collapse, until it becomes a life or death situation. At that time, he might also slaughter us nobles, but he will also offend the other nobles in this nation. "What we do first is to offer him only 1-shi or a dozen-shi, we must make his army starve to death, unable to eat until full. This is the correct path!!!"

All the patriarchs nodded.

"Brother Zhou, what do you think of this?!" Liu Kai's vision goes to head of Zhou clan who just drink tea and silent all the time.

The head of Zhou clan looking at all of them and put down his teacup and said it casually "I only want to say one thing! I got news from my younger brother, that they have conquered Xiakou and almost conquered all of Jiangxia. With this information, I believe you know where my standing is now!!!"

The head of Zhou clan only spoke few words but put all of the clan heads in uproar. Everyone knew who head of the Zhou clan's younger brother is, so they did not doubt his information.

With Jiangxia almost conquered, that rascal Lu Bu will not hold Wancheng city for long!!! They have truly opened their eyes to Sun Ce's strength. If it was before, they still doubted about which side to take, but right now, their goals have been cleared. They must not give Lu Bu grain

and provisions.

Otherwise, when Sun Ce returned to his HQ, they will be criticized as being opportunists.

“Very well!!!” Liu Kai stood up and said “This evening banquet, we must act in unison!!!”

“Act in unison!!!”

As night slowly fell, a war without fire and smoke is about to start in Wancheng city!

Chapter 110 – Lu Bu is Regarded as a Beggar; All of Patriarch Eat Beggar's Food

Editor note: Changing "Chaotic times" or "Times of Chaos" to "Times of War"

Night fell slowly, the Wancheng city Administration Office is lit up brightly.

The new master of Wancheng city invited all of Lujiang's nobles to a banquet. One after another, these nobles arrived, but they did not exchange greetings with their master and just kept going inside.

Lu Bu also ignored these people's behavior. Above the table, good food was prepared for them. All of them are seated properly.

"Gentlemen, all of you definitely know why I invited you here!!!" Lu Bu went directly to the point. "I am asking for grain and provisions. Bu and Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is our Han Dynasty's protector. Therefore we will not make trouble to you. However Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry grain and provisions is insufficient, therefore Bu asks all of the gentlemen here to help Bu!!!"

After Lu Bu said his opening speech, someone opened up the conversation "Thank you General Lu for being our protector. General Lu's accomplishment will definitely benefit all of us. We will definitely provide a good amount of grain and provisions for General Lu and will also give money to you in order to strengthen our Han Dynasty armed forces! However..." the head of Wang clan suddenly becoming embarrassed

“These are times of war, common people are dying one by one; even we are unable to sustain our livelihood. My Wang clan for example have dismissed all of our servants. In peaceful times, we definitely will comply with your request but for now, we are sorry, we are also helpless ourselves!”

The head of Wang clan is definitely a master of acting. He can change his expression from time to time, showing regret, grief, anger and sometimes frowning and eventually he showed that he had gritted his teeth and said “Very well then, due to General Lu and his Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are risking their life for our Lujiang, how can we let those soldiers hungry to death. Even though my Wang clan also suffers starvation. General Lu, I am willing to allocate 20-shi of grain and provisions to give to you!”

20-shi?! Lu Bu's eyes flashing dangerously. At the seat of honor, he unconsciously pinched his fist.

20-shi of grain and provisions, if those are given to commoner's family, they possibly can have one year, even one-and-a-half years of rations. But for these noble clans, perhaps their daily meal is worth more than 20-shi of grain, and maybe their delicacies are more than 10,000 taels of gold.

Now, they are sending 20-shi of grain and provisions. It’s like giving food to a beggar.

“Yes, General Lu. These times of war is truly uncomfortable, we are also affected by it! However, we absolutely will not let General Lu starve, my Li clan only can provide 30-shi of grain and provisions, in these times we already saving food for us to eat!” The head of Li clan suddenly stood up and said.

30-shi? Lu Bu's heart began emitting killing intent.

“General Lu's work is very accomplished. Even if I have to sell everything in my house, I must help General Lu! I provide 10-shi of grains and provisions!”

Huh, selling everything in your house and you can only provide 10-shi?!

“I provide General Lu with 50-shi. I planned to buy a fat pig for my family. But now General Lu is in difficulty, we must help with whatever we can!”

While all of the clan head speaking in turn, the head of Zhou, Chen and Liu clan just kept silent and watching Lu Bu.

“I provide 200-shi!” Finally the head of Liu clan opened his mouth.

“200-shi? Brother Liu, you are really insane!” The nearby heads of clan also quickly acting as if they are truly surprised with head of Liu clan. “You give 200-shi, what will your family be able to cook? How will you be able to survive?!”

“It is no problem at all for me, our home will just be reduced from eating two meals to one meal then! No matter what, General Lu's soldiers must not be hungry!!!”

“Yes, previously when General Sun is the master, we are unable to help

him, we are unable to help our Han Dynasty. Now with General Lu here, we definitely can return our debt to our country. Even if we have to starve and thirst ourselves we will definitely help General Lu!" Chen Yao said raising his voice. In his words, General Sun and did not have opportunity to return a debt to the country. This is not demeaning Sun Ce, but being a cynic toward Lu Bu!

Lu Bu almost cannot hold his rage in front of these noble families. They are dominating 80% of Lujiang's total wealth, their land amounted to ten thousand mu, but all of them are acting toward Lu Bu as if they are poor people. If they cannot eat until they are full and truly gave their own provisions to common people, then in this nation, there will be no one who starved to death.

Lu Bu quickly took a deep breath, he is truly afraid that he will be overcome by his emotion and cut down these people "So, Bu is very sorry now for forcing all of you to support Bu. Bu really did not know about all of your predicaments. Furthermore, these foods that are presented now, it is too extravagant. Bu did not know how many flesh and blood were sacrificed for the banquet tonight!"

"Yes! These foods are worth of one and a half year for my family to eat!"

"Yes, General Lu! We cannot be too extravagant! Eating until full is already a big blessing!!!" Those clan heads talked while looking at Lu Bu. At the surface they seem to be respectful but inside, they are sneering toward him.

All of them thought "You want us to donate food to you right?! OK, we donate to you, we give you 20-shi of grain and provisions. It's not that we don't want to donate, but instead we are also "poor". We even told you

that these meal is very extravagant even for us!!!”

“Servants, please remove these extravagant dishes! This time, the nation is still suffering, we should not be too extravagant and wasteful. Eating these foods meant eating the flesh and blood of common people, this act can be smitten by the gods! Send simple meals!” Lu Bu’s mouth is sneering and thought “Nice acting, eh? I will follow your train of thoughts now!!!”

All of extravagant dishes are quickly taken away and changed into simple meals. With all meals changed into Jiu Cai dishes, all of clan head brow wrinkled very much.

TL: Jiu Cai: vegetable that was eaten only by poor people http://cafenilson.com/wp-content/youchoyfresh.jpg

Three vegetables soup, one meat dish and two vegetable dishes. The vegetable are picked from wild herbs from the wilderness. The meat dish is only a few slices of meat added with wild mushrooms mixed into the dish. At that meat, it still had pig’s hair on it.

This is to let those haughty clan heads who are “starving” right now, to fill their belly.

And as for the rice, it is brown rice. White rice is very difficult to find. So brown rice is mixed with bran, chestnut shell and even small stones.

Those clan head currently swallowing their saliva over and over again. These bowl of foods also had burnt insect on it, they began to wonder, is

this human food?

“What is wrong? Is not everybody hungry?!”Lu Bu picked up his chopsticks quickly and started to eat. Those clan heads are truly disgusted with this food and now they are truly stunned because this food is actually eaten by Lu Bu with a guzzle.

None of those clan heads are touching their chopsticks. Lu Bu’s heart is sneering toward them and said “I am truly sorry, our army’s grain and provisions are already insufficient. I am truly moved with your heart and want to give all of you some financial aid also, but unfortunately, our army was also stricken by poverty in this time of war. Therefore I can only serve all of you plain food. I beg that all of you can be understanding with my situation!”

Lu Bu wanted to borrow grain and provisions from these noble clans, but these nobles actually rejected him politely and even treated him like a beggar, saying that their family’s grain stock has been diminished. So Lu Bu just played with them, he showed them his army’s rations in order to keep their pace.

Lu Bu said it in a very sympathizing tone, but he actually was just sneering toward those poor pretenders.

“We understood!” Said those poor pretenders while disgusted trying to digest the food.

Lu Bu then said "This food is really delicious, All of you cannot eat this well at home right?! See, we also provided you with meat!!!" But none of those head clans took their meal and then Lu Bu ordered those food to

be picked by female servants and started to stand to propose a toast.

"Come, let's drink, this drink is for you all of Lujiang noble clans. Without all of you, Lujiang will be nothing. Bu and my Bing Province Heavy Cavalry respect all of you one cup!" Lu Bu propose a toast toward all of clan heads.

Lu Bu is Wancheng city current master. He also had the title of General Who Pacifies the East, and he is also Governor of Xu Province. Therefore those noble clan heads cannot look down Lu Bu for it will breach etiquette severely, so 1 by 1 those nobles raised their wine glass to return toast.

They quickly drink that wine and immediately their face become green. Because this wine is actually vinegar. It should have been clear wine, instead Lu Bu give them fermented wine, which had turned into vinegar.

"Cough!!!" An elder clan head was choked by this wine. From the very first time he drank the wine, he just kept the wine in his mouth. But Lu Bu has drank his wine in one gulp, those people have no alternative but must return the gesture to respect Lu Bu. So they just endured the sourness while drinking the wine.

"Gentlemen, Bu just become the master of this city, later I will need all of you to help Bu. Bu again respects everybody here one cup!" Lu Bu quickly drank another cup.

Drink again? Those head clans are truly in a big predicament. Drink this wine again? Drinking one cup is already too much for them, how can they drink another one?

“Why do all of you not drink? Is this wine not to your liking?!” Lu Bu looking at all of clan heads, each of them are showing an ugly complexion.

It’s not that the wine isn’t tasty, but this is not a drink for a human. They actually wanted to say it, but their mouths just kept silent.

“General Lu, it is not the wine is not tasty, but you gave us vinegar, vinegar!!!” A clan’s head stood out and said it out loud.

“Oh, vinegar eh? That two cups? Ooooooohhhhhh I know, I know, it is because we are hungry that this wine tastes like vinegar! Okay then, we eat first, then we can drink this!” Lu Bu signaling to those female servants to return the food to the table in order for those nobles to eat.

Either those Jiu Cai or those mushroom or those hairy pork, those nobles when looking at it, their faces are filled with disgust and bitter complexion. And now they ate them truly half-heartedly.

“Come on, let’s drink again!” Lu Bu quickly held up his wine glass. Those clan heads are already learned much from the previous experience. If they do not want drink this vinegar, they must eat that pig food. If compared to the food, this vinegar is much better.

With Lu Bu proposing a toast, the nobles helplessly drank the vinegar again.

“Ohh, Master Chen, why do you not move your chopsticks? Does Master

Chen dislike this foods?!" If those nobles said "I like it" then they must show big appetite to eat it, but if they said "I don't like it" then it is a slap to the banquet master.

"I did not dislike it, but it is solid food. Recently my stomach is not good so my daily meal is only congee, so I do not have the luck to enjoy good food!" Chen Yao then thought "I would rather die than eat these things! This is not a food for human beings!!! Even my dog does not eat this."

"Eat only congee?!" Lu Bu looked at Chen Yao with only one eyes. A moment ago he satirized Lu Bu viciously and now you said you have a bad stomach and cannot eat this meal that I prepared? Keep dreaming.

"Why did Master Chen not say so earlier?! Bu will certainly prepare it for you!" Lu Bu complained.

"Please do go through the trouble General Lu!" Chen Yao was truly relieved because he did not need to eat this pig feed.

Nearby people also shouted the same words like Chen Yao, saying their stomach is not good and can only eat congee.

"Hahaha, good then, because Bu also likes to eat congee in the evening, therefore I had boiled a pot of congee for all of us. Because of Master Chen cannot eat solid food, therefore I offer Master Chen my congee! Servants, please serve the congee!"

What the hell is this congee? Chen Yao's mouth twitched. Congee in his mind should be like La Ba congee, made up of many kinds of rice, beans,

dried fruit, tofu, potato, meat and vegetables and even red beans, also sometimes added with ginseng and honey. That is congee in this time and age.

But this congee, it is just like that pig feed. Full of brown rice and little stones, not a single piece of rice can be seen. Furthermore, this congee also had grass and had insects moving inside.

“Come, come. Since all of your stomach is not good, we eat one bowl of congee! Careful eating it, so none of you are choked by it!”

The banquet continues until a messenger of Lu Bu’s army who quickly bend his knees toward Lu Bu, ready to announce his report in whisper, but Lu Bu stopped him.

“If you have any words, speak frankly. All of Lujiang noble families head are here now!”

“Reporting to Milord. New grain and provisions are already inside the storage. Due to grain storage being full, there are surplus 4000-shi. Mr. Chen Gong awaiting Milord's order on how should handle this!”

Chapter 111 – Disastrous Event for Lujiang Nobles

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Editor note: For clarification a “shi” is equal to 60kg or 132lbs

“New grain and provisions are in the storage?!” The following noble clan heads who are currently enduring the pain of eating “pig feed” congee, quickly set up their ear after Lu Bu's announcement.

"Now is not the season for fall harvest, where did this new grain come from? “Isn’t Lu Bu's grain and provisions already exhausted? Isn’t his purpose right now to borrow grain and provisions from us? How is there news of new grain and provisions going into storage?!” Now is not the season for harvesting, where the hell did this new food come from?

Also the news stated that whole of grain and provisions already filled the whole warehouse? This Wancheng city is the capital of Lujiang, its grain storage is really big and can fit 100,000-shi of grain and provisions. That warehouse unexpectedly has been filled until full and also there is surplus of 4,000-shi of grain and provisions. How can this be?

From what or where on earth did he produce so much grain and provisions?! When Sun Ce's army went to Jiangxia, he pulled out all the grain and provisions until it was empty. Did Lu Bu want to create an illusion that he had grain and provisions? Is he putting up a show in vain? If that is the case, then it is for the best, we no longer need to provide him with “donated” grain and provisions! All of clan heads do not believe the news at all.

“Go, transport those surplus grain and provisions in front of Administration Office gate!” Lu Bu waved with his big hand.

“Yes sir!” The messenger comply the order.

Before long, carts containing grains and provisions arrived in front of Administration Office.

“This many carts, I do not believe that inside those carts are grain and provisions! Perhaps only sand and stone are inside it!” some people just voiced their opinions, disbelieving it.

“Hehehe!!!” Lu Bu beckoned his hand happily. His own guard nodded and went forward to help carry a sack of grain and provisions but he carelessly tore the rice sack.

"Pshhhhh!" The white rice poured like waterfall to the ground.

“Ai, WORK CAREFULLY. THIS FOOD IS VERY VALUABLE FOR US!!!!” Lu Bu put up an angry act.

“Yes, yes!” Lu Bu's guard became really terrified and quickly looked for a cloth sack to clean up the rice.

Is this really white rice? Looking at the color of this white rice, this is definitely a grade-A white rice. Where the hell did Lu Bu obtain this? If Lu Bu’s army and his 40,000 soldiers' grain and provisions are exhausted, then this white rice must be from those lesser clan heads who have confided toward Lu Bu army.

While people are still pondering, Lu Bu opened his mouth “Gentlemen, because all of you are in a very difficult position, therefore Bu finds another solution for grain and provisions. See, my new grain and provisions have arrived! With this, even though Bu is also in great difficulty now, Bu will help all the gentlemen here!” Lu Bu deliberately show this excessive generosity.

“Now Bu wants to reciprocate the gentlemen's donation. As the saying goes, one must return even the smallest favor. So, Bu must reciprocate all of the gentlemen here. Whoever decided to donate Bu grain and provisions earlier, will get double the grain and provisions that he donated earlier!”

“Wang clan head, did not you just say that your family is unable to cook after you donated to Bu? I, Lu Bu, return 40-shi of grain and provisions from 20-shi that you donated to Bu!” Said Lu Bu while pointing at the head of Wang clan who earlier was pretending to be poor from the very beginning.

“Eh?!” Head of Wang clan was stunned, then he became a little panic, did Lu Bu just say unable to cook? Earlier I joked with you, deceiving you Lu Bu. Even today is time of war, we nobles will definitely able to eat various delicacies.

“And the clan head over there! You take 60-shi, with this amount of rice, you can sell back the grain and provisions to buy 1 or 2 pieces of clothes so you can survive the winter!” Looking at Lu Bu's expression, those noble clan heads finally knew the feeling of receiving charity from people, they finally knew the feeling of the people who begged for food. If they did not take the gift, they do not respect Lu Bu, but if they took Lu Bu's gift,

then they are admitting they are poor. So poor that they do not have anything to cook in their home. Furthermore, what is the meaning of this 60-shi of grain and provisions to them?

“Let's just take General Lu's generosity, why we should reject it?!” Chen Yao sneering toward Lu Bu “Whatever this Lu Bu gives, we need to receive it!” Why was Chen Yao this confident? Because he had obtained a reliable information. Lu Bu's grain and provisions are truly exhausted, otherwise how can Chen Gong come knocking on their door asking to borrow grain and provisions? Moreover, today is the start of summer, so all the farmers in Lujiang’s vicinity have finished their harvest, so it is impossible for Lu Bu's army to get it from commoners. The only possible place to obtain grain and provisions is Shouchun. But Shouchun has become a dead city. There are thousands of refugees in Shouchun, it is impossible to have adequate grain and provisions. The only place that he can get food is south, toward Jiangdong. However, Jiangdong is now fighting with Jiangxia, how can they possibly share their grain and provisions with Lu Bu's army?

With these news, Chen Yao took a pre-emptive action by raising grain and provisions price in Wancheng city. He was not afraid Lu Bu, only afraid that Lu Bu's army cannot afford his price.

Now Lu Bu puts out these grain and provisions, it should be his army’s final military provisions right? Why come out with this scheme? Is this to tell us that you, Lu Bu, did not lack grain and provisions, so we can drop the price huh? Do you think we are fools that we will fall for your scheme?

“General Lu, according to your discourse, My Chen clan has donated 200-shi of grain and provisions, should not I get compensation of 400-shi of grain and provisions?!” Chen Yao reminding of what Lu Bu just said.

“Of course!!!” Lu Bu also looks at Chen Yao. This person is the current head of Chen clan, before it was not him who is the head. The former head is Chen Duan; the same Chen Duan that died being choked by him.

“Then I say many thanks to General Lu!!!” The corner of Chen Yao's mouth raised. In Lu Bu’s army, grain and provisions is already less than 10,000-shi. If it was divided again to them, Lu Bu’s army will run out food the day after tomorrow. With prices staying at high, Chen Yao is looking forward to what Lu Bu’s army will do in the end.

With Chen Yao getting a head start, the other clan heads naturally followed his gesture “Thank you very much General Lu!!! General Lu is truly righteous!!!” After that, those 4,000-shi of grain and provisions were distributed by Lu Bu.

Chen Yao is smiling, because they are laughing at Lu Bu's end.

Lu Bu is also smiling, he is smiling at these noble clan heads. Looking at their attitude, these people are truly what is wrong with this world.

“Wait, something is amiss!!!” The head of Wu clan, suddenly discovered that something is not right.

“Anything else? Old man Wu, are you not satisfied with General Lu's division?!” Some people said it while smiling. Although 4,000-shi are really a lot, Lu Bu had not divided them all.

But they do not mind at all, because these dozen-shi meant nothing to their eyes.

The head of Wu clan felt very wrong. He felt very wrong not because of those grain and provisions, but because he is looking at that grain and provisions carts.

The style of this cart, these symbols. “Why are those carts so familiar?” thought the head of Wu clan. Then he goes nearer for further inspection.

“This, this!!!” The head of Wu clan's eyes suddenly enlarged to the max suddenly. Finally he knows why these carts so familiar. These carts are his clan's grain and provisions carts.

This is his Clan Wu's carts, how this could appear here?

The Wu head of household was a little hurried, hurried to run up to the grain pile to look. How can this be? The head of Wu clan is nervous quickly sought after the rice.

Although the rice bag is ordinary, but looking closer to see whose rice bags these, because in ancient times, they differentiate with the technique that was used to make these rice bags.

These meters are not his Wu Jia mi lines. After inspecting it, the head of Wu clan can breathe in relief. These are not his Wu clan's rice bags. These rice are not his, save for the cart.

The head of Wu clan wiped his sweat over and over again.

“Old Wu, are you all right?!” Some noble heads inquired.

“I am okay, I am okay!!!” Although the head of Wu clan did not know why his transport cart appeared here, as long as those rice is not of his family, it is still good.

“If you are okay, how can you sweat like this?!” Some noble heads are laughing at him.

“Hahahahaha!!!” The head of Wu clan just laugh bitterly.

At this exact moment, suddenly outside of Administration Office, there is a steward quickly running to the office.

“En?!” The head of Wu clan felt very strange, isn’t that person is Yuan clan's butler? Yuan clan is the newest addition of nobles in this Wancheng city and also his mansion is the closest to this Administration Office. Previously the head of Wu clan interacted a lot with Yuan clan, therefore he is very familiar with this butler.

Why did he come? Did he want to call back his boss? The madam of Yuan clan is a tigress. Everyone knows that the head of Yuan clan is afraid of his wife.

“Hey, Brother Yuan. Does sister ask you to go back?!” Earlier he was teased by Lu Bu and his fellow noble heads, so the head of Wu clan now must tease people.

“But now is General Lu’s banquet, if you are to go back now, it is very disrespecting to General Lu!!!”

The head of Wu clan thinks that his teasing will make the head of Yuan clan embarrassed, but who knows that brother Yuan's complexion is very bad after getting message from his steward and even shoved him aside while saying “GET OUT OF MY SIGHT!!!!”

“Why are you so angry with me? Can't you take a joke?!” The head of Wu clan is also angry. He was told to get out of his sight and also shoved by the head of Yuan clan. Who does that head of Yuan clan think he is? I am also head of Wu clan.

“This is a disaster, a disaster!!!” The head of Yuan clan hurriedly ran toward Chen Yao and co while shouting “disaster”.

“Eh? Watch your etiquette! You are a clan master! Calm down!!!!” Chen Yao's brow wrinkled. He originally do not have a high opinion toward the smaller noble clans, but seeing the head of the Yuan clan running toward them and shouting like he was in marketplace, raised his disgust!!!

“No, it is not...!” The head of Yuan clan wanted to explain that he is in anxious and in a hurry, but he cannot speak those words.

And another two stewards appeared in Administration Office, they are Chen Yao's house stewards who are responsible to manage grain and provisions. “Master, master, there is an emergency matter!!!” After those Chen stewards said that, they gathered beside Chen Yao ears to say the information.

“WHATTT!!!!!” Chen Yao suddenly stood up. On his face complex expression was displayed, there is anger, shock, and disbelief.

Chapter 112 – The Extermination of Three Generations

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

More and more stewards and servants from noble families appeared in the Administration Office, each of them who heard the news gave Lu Bu, who sat at the seat of honor, an angry stare.

“What happened? What happened?!” The head of Wu clan is feeling very strange.

“Master, master!!!” Finally servant of Wu clan also appeared.

“Ah Fu, why did you come here?!” The head of Wu clan quickly inquired and in his heart there is an unknown surge of panic.

“Master, not good, not good. All of our grain and provisions in our storage and shops, all are gone!!!” The servant called Ah Fu, huffing and puffing, said those words slowly.

“How can that be?!” The head of Wu clan now truly anxious. These grain and provisions are his lifeblood. In war times, grain and provisions become as valuable as gold. Therefore many noble families changed their currency from gold into grains and provisions. If their grain and provisions are gone, the head of Wu clan will have nothing left.

“Did it catch on fire or destroyed by earthquake?!” The head of Wu clan thought of all the worst possible outcome.

“No, no, neither of that!!!” Ah Fu shook his head.

“Then spit it out now!!!!” The head of Wu clan is truly anxious, he grabbed Ah Fu’s shoulders as hard as he can.

“Cough, cough!!!” Ah Fu removed his master’s hands with great difficulty. Ah Fu then said their grain storage and shops were emptied by government troops, they said that this grain and provisions are drafted for upcoming battles. That event happened in the evening, after all of noble clan heads went into Administration Office. One by one government troops arrived at the grain shop and their houses, forcing them to open the front door.

When they wanted to reject, suddenly the commander pulled out his sword. Under the cold radiance of the sword, those servants become really scared and opened the door. After that, government troops quickly moved out all grain carts from grain shop.

“Emptied?!” The head of Wu clan’s leg suddenly lose its strength and dropped on the ground “Everything gone?!” This head of Wu clan’s is held by Ah Fu and still hoping that news from Ah Fu’s mouth is a false news and only joking with him.

But how disappointed he is because the news is true “Forgive me, master. All the grain is gone!!!” Ah Fu nodded.

The head of Wu clan has grasped the main focus. This Wancheng city has been conquered by Lu Bu. Ah Fu said that government troops are the one who came to his shop. That government troops must be Lu Bu’s army, it cannot be any other army.

“General Lu!!!” The head of Wu clan naturally will look for Lu Bu, but another person already took the lead to find Lu Bu and already shouting at him.

Chen Yao not only did he not salute toward Lu Bu, but is directly shouting and pointing his finger toward Lu Bu “GENERAL LU, FOR WHAT REASON DID YOU DISPATCH YOUR TROOPS TO MY GRAIN STORAGE AND MY GRAIN SHOPS AND TAKE MY GRAIN AND PROVISIONS!!! ALSO YOU KILLED MY SERVANT AND DESTROYEDMY GRAIN STORAGE?!”

Chen Yao’s anger is erupting. The troops who were sent to his stores and his storage had completely cleaned out his grain and provisions. And also, several of his servants became victims, killed by Lu Bu’s army and also his grain storage was burnt down.

Chen Yao thought that Lu Bu is just bluffing against him, in order for him to reduce the grain price. But who knew, that Lu Bu hit his face directly.

“General Lu, by committing this act, what is the difference between you and a robber?!” Liu Kai has spoken. Liu Kai’s loss is the biggest here. All of his three grain storages in Wancheng city are all emptied and destroyed. It can be said that the Liu clan’s wealth suddenly shrunk from wealthy to almost destitute. How the Liu clan became this rich is because they accumulated it from generations to generations, who ever expected that this wealth is destroyed in only one night.

“General Lu, you must give us an explanation for your action!!!”

“Yes, even if you are the current master of Wancheng city, you cannot seize our grain and provisions by force. If you do not give us explanation now, none of us will leave this Administration Office!!!”

“Explanation, eh?!” Lu Bu looks at those noble families who just pointing and scolding him, his mouth forming a sneer. Chen Yao said that his grain storage and his stores are emptied and his servant also died and also his warehouse was burnt.

That Chen Yao needed to look into the mirror to see who is to blame for this incident. Heh, servant? That servant is his private soldier. That soldier can defy the law because he is employed by Chen clan. When government troops arrived he is seen abusing his colleague and when he saw Lu Bu’s army, suddenly he revealed his weapon. He was asking for death!

“So, all of you want explanation eh?!” Lu Bu step by step walked toward all of noble clan heads. Every step that he took, he radiated extreme coldness. This type of coldness is the type that wanted to eat humans. How could these pompous and haughty noble clan heads have encountered these feelings?

All of them subconsciously averted their eyes from Lu Bu.

“I will explain to you!!!” Lu Bu casually saying “Let us be straightforward now, when I wanted to discuss with all of you on borrowing grain and provisions, what did you say to me?! Master Wang, please speak first!”

Head of Wang clan wanted to retreat to the back but he was actually called first by Lu Bu.

“General Lu, I....!!!” The head of Wang clan actually wanted Chen Yao to be the first interrogated by Lu Bu, but now with he is the first one, he actually had nothing to say and can only silent all the time.

“Alright then, Master Wang cannot say anything, what about Master Li?!” Lu Bu's vision went to head of Li clan.

“You, I...!!!” The head of Li clan is speechless, unable to speak anything.

“So, all of you don’t want to say anything? Good, then I will come and explain to all of you!!!” Lu Bu's height is a little more than two meters, but not so tall like Yao Ming of Houston Rockets. In the present time, it is a standard for a person with high skill, let alone in this end year of Eastern Han. When Lu Bu walked toward those clan heads, he truly stood out between them.

Although Lu Bu currently is wearing his home clothing, it still traced his dignified stature.

“Head of Wang clan, you said that your entire family is hungry right now. Why when we cleaned up your grain shop, there are more than 5,000-shi of grain and provisions?!” Lu Bu said it coldly while looking at the head of Wang clan.

“That is... Because we.... I....!!!” The head of Wang clan wanted to argue but this time he is in the wrong side and his argument is baseless.

“You do not need to explain it!!! I KNOW!!!! Is it not because you did

not respect us Lu Bu, is not that correct?!”

“As for all of you, clan heads! All of you must have not have tasted commoner's food for a long time!!! All of you never have to think about what to eat. But what about those commoners? They are eating the same food that I, Lu Bu, eat!!!” Lu Bu's eyebrows raised.

“All of you can see the food on this table! I know, you cannot eat this!!!! Because this foods in your eyes, are servants' food. But I am sorry, this food was eaten by my troops and my family for half a month!!!”

“As for you, head of Liu clan!!!” Lu Bu looks at noble clan heads leader “You are a relative to our Han Dynasty, a descendant of Prince Jing of Zhongshan. You unexpectedly give me 200 grain and provisions as if you are giving a beggar something to eat!!! Did you think that this Lu Bu is a good person to bully?! When I opened your grain and provisions storage, I found out that you collected tax from half of this city until your grain and provisions amounted to 50,000-shi of grain and provisions. This Wancheng city, one year of tax are amounted to 5,000-shi and your grain and provisions are amounted to 10 years of taxes. Hahaha, those 200-shi grain and provisions, if those are not for demeaning me, then for what else?!”

“So, for that reason, you, Lu Fengxian, took my and the others grain and provisions?!” Chen Yao stood out and pointing at Lu Bu. Perhaps other people feared Lu Bu but Chen Yao did not care at all, for he and Lu Bu had deep grudges.

“Only because the others and I did not give you grain and provisions, you dispatched your troops to directly snatch our food? That is plain robbery!!!” With Chen Yao taking the lead, other clan heads began to

speak their mind. Their grain and provisions are their wealth. Only those who are engaged in salt and iron trading are the ones who did not scream with Chen Yao.

"Ooohhhh, is that what you want? At first, I did not coerce you for anything but you are willing to allocate a few grain and provisions to me, right?! I also did not demand you of anything, I even wanted to compensate all of you twofold. How that is not kind?!" Lu Bu casually saying it.

"It is true you did not coerce us, but you directly snatched our grain and provisions!!!" Chen Yao refuse to back down.

"Oh, that thing eh? What you said earlier is yours and I am willing to compensate it. I go pick up that which does not belong to you!!!"

"You are a robber, a bandit!!!"

"Hahaha, I am a robber and a bandit, so what!!! You want to bite me eh?!" Lu Bu did not know when Liu Mang rubbed off him, changing his sneering attitude and almost everything about him

"You, You, Lu Fengxian, do not bully me too far!!!" Chen Yao pointing at Lu Bu, scolding him

"I bullied you, how did I bullied you? Let me tell you this. You are a person who is shameless, even after a person had tried to give you respect!!! I wanted to borrow from you legally, but you did not want to do it, forcing me to do this!!! I know, all of you are thinking about Sun Ce and

Jiangdong's army. All of you are thinking that without grain and provisions, that this Lu Bu would be unable to defend Lujiang and when the time comes, I would be expelled!!! Yes, your ideas are very good! I also admit that currently Jiangdong army is much more formidable that my Lu Bu army! However you forgot one simple thing!!! This Wancheng city, is my, Lu Bu's domain. This Lu Bu is responsible for this city and the location where I call the shots, not yours!!!!"

"You damned slave of three surnames, patricide lover!!!" Chen Yao cursed Lu Bu directly.

"En?!" Lu Bu's eyes narrowed. This Chen Yao is the same as Chen Duan eh? A moralist asshole. "Do you want to know how your cousin elder brother died?!"

Chen Yao was taken aback, he then said "After you killed my cousin elder brother, you also want to kill me? Come and kill me then. After you kill me, you can forget about how long you will reside in this city!!!"

"General Lu, please do not harm yourself!!!" Liu Kai opened his mouth quickly. He wanted to see Lu Bu and Chen Yao quarrel, but he never wanted for Lu Bu to kill Chen Yao.

"Are you thinking the same thing?!" Lu Bu asked at those noble clan heads

Both sides are looking at each other disdainfully.

Lu Bu laughed and said "Since all of you are thinking of not killing him,

well then this Bu will first have to say sorry for not fulfilling your expectations!!!”

“You...!” Chen Yao already cannot speak “dare do this to me”. He finally knows how his cousin elder brother died. He finally knew why his cousin elder brother's corpse showed purple color due to asphyxiation as he is now experiencing it himself. Before long, Chen Yao stopped all movements.

Lu Bu just casually threw Chen Yao's corpse like throwing trash and said “Pass my military siege the Chen clan's Residence. Kill everyone, no one is to leave. Execute the Chen clan up to the third generation!”

Chapter 113 – So What Is Wrong With Killing Them?

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“This, this, this!!!” Looking down at Chen Yao corpse, the clan heads did not know what to say. They thought that Lu Bu did not have grain and provisions, they thought that they must deceive Lu Bu, they thought that Lu Bu did not dare to offend them, but suddenly they discovered that they were completely wrong.

Lu Bu did not reason with them, Lu Bu also did not begin a war of words with them, but directly did a hands on approach. He not only dispatched troops to snatch their grain shop and grain storage, but when Chen Yao cursed Lu Bu angrily, he was killed by Lu Bu personally. If it was only Chen Yao, those noble heads would maybe only be surprised and not restless like this.

What made them restless is that Lu Bu unexpectedly also issued a command to kill Chen Yao's whole clan up to the third generation.

What is he up to by doing this? The crime done by the patriarch only has a small connection to their wife and children, even smaller to their relatives. These noble clans are only waiting for better opportunity. They cannot make their entire family share the burden of the decision that the patriarch has made.

For example Xun clan. Xun Yu and Xun You both think that Cao Cao is a wise lord, therefore they devoted their whole being for Cao Cao's big plan. If Xun Yu, Xun Wenruo and his four brothers were to favor Yuan Shao, Yuan Benchu. When Yuan Shao and Cao Cao were to become enemies, Xun clan can definitely scheme for Cao Cao's downfall ASAP.

Leaving him no room to breathe. With that disadvantage in front of him, how can Cao Cao not charm Xun clan as soon as possible?

There are also Zhuge clan. Zhuge Liang and his brother Zhuge Jin are also split into two, one favor Liu Bei and the other favor Sun Quan of Jiangdong. Zhuge Liang's strategy made Liu Bei win Jing Province and made Zhou Yu Zhou Gongjin truly mad and die by anger. But even with this transgression made by Zhuge Liang, Sun Quan still did not kill the Zhuge clan, because he knows that they are nobles. And nobles are the one who give recognition on who is the boss.

But this Lu Bu, just because of Chen Yao and Chen Duan's mistake, he issued an order to eliminate the Chen clan? He wanted to oppose noble clans directly?

“General Lu, please do not do this!!!” Liu Kai truly had a bad feeling with this. Did he not want to obey the law? When Yuan Shu, Yuan Gonglu already without weapons and grains and provisions, even he did not dare to touch those noble clans, for fear he will be shunned by the nation. The only person who dared to offend the nobles is Gongsun Zan, now he has joined the ranks of the dead.

“Do you want to tell me on how I should do things?!” Lu Bu truly loathes these noble clans so he is just looking at Liu Kai coldly. If they let Lu Bu to borrow grain and provisions, will there be an end like this? Those noble clans only account for 1% of population but they occupied 90% of the wealth.

They refused Lu Bu to borrow grain and provisions but also rose the price ridiculously, how can Lu Bu not want to kill them?

“Eh?!” Liu Kai was choked by Lu Bu's words, his face also showed a disdainful expression. “Very well then, please excuse us, General Lu!!!” You, Lu Bu, truly kill as you like. Even though the death of Chen clan are grieved by these noble clans, it did not hurt the Liu clan's foundation, even more it restored their influence which had been taken by the Chen clan.

“Yes, General Lu. Please allow me and the others to leave now!!!” All of noble clan heads did not want to stay here.

“Why are you in such a hurry?!” Said Lu Bu coldly. “Our banquet had not ended!!!”

In Wancheng grain storage, a middle-aged scholar now is very stunned with this news. “Milord wants to destroy the Chen clan?!” Chen Gong is truly dumbfounded with this news. Lu Bu's order to confiscate all of these noble clans' grain and provisions had made Chen Gong feel little guilty and now the order is to kill the Chen clan, his lord is truly offending the noble clans in this nation.

I must prevent it, I must prevent it, otherwise the consequence will be too disastrous. You can kill one person, you can even oppress the noble clans as warlords but you must not exterminate the whole clan. You must not make people to change their surname.

People can be killed but the family cannot be extinguished, that is the rule. If some people broke the rules, he will be eliminated. After all, this world is ruled by nobles.

“Quick, we go to Administration Office!!!” Chen Gong quickly let his driver to go to Administration Office, but when he boarded the carriage he shook his head. How can he be so stupid, the order was just sent out from Administration Office and said to his driver to change destination “Go to Chen Residence, QUICK!!!!” So he only can go to Chen Residence, his hope is to catch up before Lu Bu’s soldiers begin their massacre.

“QUICK, QUICK!!!!” Chen Gong urged his driver to be quick, because when he obtained the news, it is already late.

“Yes, sir!!!” Chen Gong's carriage is pulled by an Arabian horse, which Lu Bu gave to Chen Gong as his personal warhorse, the driver is also an excellent driver.

The speed of warhorse inside the city is pretty fast. Also at night, there is nobody on the road, therefore they can maximize their speed.

Nearing Chen Residence, there are already screaming "HELP!"

"DON'T, PLEASE DON'T!"

“SHAAAAA!!!!” The closer they are in approaching the Chen Residence, the more pitiful those sounds.

“No, this is real bad!!!” Chen Gong's heart sank. Wherever Chen Gong went at that house, he can see corpses everywhere plus the mansion is in flames now, inside the flame there is pitiful yelling sound.

“I came too late!!!!” Chen Gong's hand is losing strength. The Chen

Residence had been in flame. Inside also had Lu Bu’s army fighting other people with swords in their hand, these are Chen clan's private soldiers. Although their numbers is a lot, they are unable to resist Lu Bu’s army’s attack. The Chen Residence which was originally very lively, currently has become hell.

“Sire, what now?!” Asked the driver while looking at the fire and waiting. Did he want to go in or not? Sounds of slaughtering are everywhere. This time night, if one did not careful, he can be mistakenly killed by a friendly attack, if that happened, then it could only be a tragedy.

“Let's go back!!! Go back to Administration Office!!!” Chen Gong gritted his teeth. He is angry. A moment ago, what did he say to him? He said to maintain etiquette and propriety and he said he will definitely listen to his counsel that is not to harm these noble clans. He did not know what has made Lu Bu kill the Chen clan, but it is never a good thing to mess with nobles. Lu Bu did not know that by doing this, he had made the entire Lu Bu army fall into a big disaster.

The carriage quickly change its direction to Wancheng city Administration Office.

The flames of Chen Residence, during this jet black night it is especially bright. These noble clan heads who are currently attending banquet in Administration Office can see that clearly.

Liu Kai's arm is shivering, he did not know if this is fear or anger or both of them.

Chen clan!!!! Once a rich and powerful noble clan of Jiangdong, wiped out in this Wancheng city in a matter of one evening.

“Reporting to Milord!!!! Chen Residence has been cleaned up, 175 people has all been cut off!!!!” A messenger of Lu Bu’s army reporting to Lu Bu, his body is full of blood.

This is clan extermination!!! A genocide of a clan. Young, old, women, children, all of them killed!!! The matter that other warlords do not dare to do, Lu Bu did it, the matter that other warlords thought as unthinkable things, Lu Bu has done it.

“The Banquet has ended!!! All of you can walk!!!” Lu Bu nodded toward his messenger and noble clan heads.

“Very well then, General Lu, me and others say our goodbye!!!” Liu Kai held his fist respectfully toward Lu Bu and is the first one to leave. The remaining noble clans also left one by one. Their loss today is too big, first they are forced to eat pig feed food, and then all of their grain storage and grain shop are all cleaned up. The only upside was seeing free fireworks from Chen Residence, though those fireworks are also mixed with blood.

"Clip clop clip clop!" Chen Gong's carriage also arrived, he got out of his carriage and walk toward the hall.

Lu Bu still remain in the hall, drinking wine.

“You want to drink a cup?!” With Chen Gong appearing in the hall, Lu

Bu reach the glass and inquired it toward Chen Gong.

Chen Gong ignored Lu Bu's words and quickly asked a question “Why did you do that?!”

"Do what?!"Lu Bu poured one cup.

“Fengxian, you promised me you would not harm those nobles!!!” Chen Gong went straight to the point, speaking to Lu Bu with sparks in his eyes.

"Oh, those killings!" Lu Bu said casually.

"You still drink?!" Chen Gong move forward toward the table and said “Do you know that you have provoked a big trouble?!”

“Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, killing Chen Yao is not terrible but the most terrible thing is we have offended the noble clans!!!! With you having exterminated Chen clan, what will this nation see you as? How will those noble clans treat you?!” Chen Gong's voice is low but with a feeling of roaring.

“I do not care how people of this nation sees me, I do not care on how those nobles will treat me. What I care is you, how you, Chen Gongtai, see me!!!” Lu Bu just calmly said it at Chen Gong.

“We respect you as our lord, we can sacrifice ourselves for you, but the people of this nation do not do that to you, they will...!” Chen Gong's speech was cut off by Lu Bu.

“That is enough!!!” Lu Bu's cut off Chen Gong's discourse “To kill them and not kill them, what is the difference? Gongtai, have you not noticed the manner in which these Wancheng city nobles treat us? The Chen clan, one of Wancheng city’s most powerful clans, he only provided me 200-shi of grain and provisions. Is not that the same as saying that all of us are beggars? Another instance is when you were rejected Gongtai. They only sent out a slave to the front door and you had to eat that shameful treatment, are you not uncomfortable with it, Gongtai?!”

Lu Bu's words reminded Chen Gong, when he himself went to each noble clans houses to borrow grain and provisions and their treatment to him at that time.

“But those treatment are not enough reason to exterminate Chen clan!!! I was shamed, yes, but it is not important. The key is our Lu Bu army!!!” Chen Gong said it in low voice.

“Gongtai, you are worrying too much about not offending the noble clans in the entire Wancheng city, but remember, haven’t we offended them a lot already? Even if we did not kill them, the Chen clan, Zhou clan, those are the main supporters of Sun Ce of Jiangdong, how can they change their heart toward us?! Might as well kill them all!!!”

“But what about this nation nobles?!” If you lose the support of nobles, it will be impossible to stabilize the situation.

“This nation nobles? I will say it again, I do not care at all about those nobles. I only care about those who are at my side!!! Those who shame us, is my, Lu Bu's enemies. Those people are all of Lu Bu's army’s enemies!

Chapter 114 – Sun Ce Retreat Alone To Avenge His Losses

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Back to Sun Ce's POV

Meanwhile at Xiakou, Jing Province's Army and Jiangdong's Army had been skirmishing naval battles for almost 50 times. Because of those skirmishes, almost all of Yangtze River are filled with corpse and blood.

"DAMMIT!!!!" Cursed Sun Ce while looking at the Jing Province naval camp. Originally, after conquering Xiakou, Jiangxia should not have been able to fight back Jiangdong army, but who would have expected that Liu Biao was able to muster a naval force numbering 70,000 troops in just a short time. Moreover, the one that made Sun Ce very helpless is not Huang Zu or a senior general, but a new lieutenant general called Wen Ping.

Although Wen Ping did not fight Sun Ce, he had dueled with Sun Ce's senior general Taishi Ci and was able to fight with him for 300 bouts evenly. Along with that, this person also excelled at naval battles and was in sync with Huang Zu. Those pair let Jiangdong's navy suffer a heavy loss. In several days, Jiangdong's Army has suffered more than 7,000 troops, while the opposite Jing Province Army also lost more than 10,000 troops.

With Jiangxia now being in a very difficult situation and the loss of Lujiang, mad Sun Ce truly agitated.

"Milord, Strategist Zhou Yu seeks an audience with you!" The main

camp guard inform Sun Ce.

“Audience denied!!!” Sun Ce replied it subconsciously due to his agitated state.

“Yes sir!!!” The bodyguard quickly retreated to inform Zhou Yu but suddenly stopped by Sun Ce's shout “Wait, let Gongjin come in!!!” Sun Ce knew that Zhou Yu must have some reason for coming to see him.

“Milord!!!!” Zhou Yu quickly entered the main camp while holding his fist toward Sun Ce. He knows that Sun Ce's mood is truly bad right now but these matters is too important to not inform him...

“Gongjin, why are you so hesitant? Quickly say the news! Speak frankly!!!” Sun Ce waved at Zhou Yu. He hated to be the person who hesitated to say one this piece of information.

Zhou Yu took a deep breath and organized his words. His opening he said “Milord, I have some bad news and good news!!!”

“A good news and bad news?!” Sun Ce stunned.

“First, I start with good news!!!” Zhou Yu decided it himself “The good news is Chen Duan's clansmen have been exterminated by Lu Bu!!!”

“The Chen clan was exterminated?!” Sun Ce stunned and quickly changed his expression into anger “Gongjin, why do you treat this genocide as good news, would you care to enlighten this brother of yours?! Oh, Uncle Zizheng, Sun Ce is truly sorry for harming you!!!” From

Sun Jian's time, Chen Duan and his clansmen are one of the retainers of the Sun clan. Later, when Sun Jian died, all of the Sun clan's retainers were scattered everywhere, leaving only small amount of retainers. This Chen Duan, stayed at Sun Ce's side ever since then, helping him to get through tough times and assisted him to pacify Jiangdong.

Now, when he heard the news of Chen Duan's clansmen's extermination, a wound appeared in Sun Ce's heart.

When Zhou Yu looked at Sun Ce's expression, he knew that Sun Ce has misunderstood him. He quickly said "Milord, the matter of Mr. Chen Duan's clansmen also saddened me a lot, but people will need to look at the future, if not those bones who died will be of no value if one kept brooding about the past. Milord, Mr. Chen Duan of Chen clan was Wancheng city's top nobles. Because Milord had conquered Wancheng city and put Chen Duan as top official, the Chen clan has become the representative of Wancheng city nobles. But now Lu Bu has extinguished the Chen clan. He did not just offend us, but offended all of noble families in the entire Wancheng city, even more all of Jiangdong's nobles have been offended by his act!"

The more Zhou Yu said the advantage, the more Sun Ce's eyes got brighter. Sun Ce also had offended nobles a lot. In the past, when he was still 20 years old, he had destroyed Lu clan of Wancheng city. Although Sun Ce did not personally kill them, he made the Lu clan die of starvation. Only Lu Xun, Lu Ji and Lu Xun's sister were spared.

The more territory Sun Ce got, the more he regretted his decision for killing the Lu clan. Why is that? Because the Lu clan represented one of the noble clans, and they represented one portion of power in this Han Dynasty.

Those nobles who have big connections with the Lu clan quickly alienated Sun Ce. Once in a while, they sent small amounts of soldiers to settle the score with Sun Ce and all of scholars from those noble families did not allow their clansmen to become Jiangdong's official putting Sun Ce in a big dilemma.

A domain needs people to govern it, with nobody wanting to become an official, it was truly disastrous!!! What would you do, if suddenly the grain prices rose up until commoners were unable to eat they starve to death? That will only invite troubles and chaos.

And if you force people to become officials, with grudges like that become your official, is not that like putting up Damocles sword over your head? Those nobles have many private soldiers and you have offended them to the extreme, naturally they will wait to exact revenge on you. They will not attack you directly but they will concoct plans with other warlords to seize your city or secretly destroy your resources.

TL: Damoclès Swords
http://idioms.thefreedictionary.com/a+sword+of+Damocles+hangs+over

In the past, this is how Chen clan of Guangling colluded with Old Cao to expel Lu Bu from Xu Province. They really thought that Lu Bu was not good for long terms prospects, but due to Chen Gui dyeing Xiapi, the Chen clan of Guangling was extinguished by Old Cao and Chen Deng himself is a vagabond with Lu Bu.

Nobles who did not support a warlord is bound to die in a very short time. For example Gongsun Zan. When Gongsun Zan killed Liu Yu, he lost

the entire You Province nobles support and in the end, he joined the rank of the dead.

Nevertheless, the death of the Chen clan of Wancheng city is a good news for Sun Ce.

Chen Duan is truly worthy of his status as Jiangdong's official. Even if he was dead, his death is also a worthy death, he contributed his final strength for his lord.

“Prepare a funeral for Chen Duan, an honorable funeral reserved as this Sun Ce's uncle!!!!” With this treatment, Sun Ce has recognized that this Chen Duan has been loyal and pure to him until the end even burying him with full honors as his uncle. With this, Sun Ce also needed to wear mourning clothes as a nephew. Chen Duan was truly an honored with the biggest courtesy.

“Is anyone still left from the Chen clan?!”

“Yes, there is one. Currently he is studying in Hueiji, therefore he can escape destruction!!!” Said Zhou Yu. The Chen clan has been destroyed completely, leaving one person, the last of his surname.

“After he completes his study, assign him to be at my side!!!” If one follows at Sun Ce’s side, that person can be said to have a great ability for example Lu Meng and Jiang Qin, who later become pillars of Wu.

“And the bad news?!” After saying the good news, naturally Zhou Yu needed to say the bad news.

“The bad news is.....” Zhou Yu hesitated, he contemplated whether or not this news needed to be said.

“C’mon, say it!!! When did you, Zhou Gongjin, learn to hesitate?!” Sun Ce said it casually. Bad news was probably just a little more than losing Wancheng city, probably an additional clan was destroyed. Currently he cannot conquer Xiakou, and that made Sun Ce really agitated, but the news of Chen Duan and his clansmen contribution made his mood better now.

Zhou Yu gritted his teeth and decide to say it. Such news it’s impossible to hide the truth from Sun Ce. Better hit him with pain earlier than later.

“Big bro!!!” Zhou Yu did not shout “Milord”, with Zhou Yu changing his addressing, it made Sun Ce’s heart feel bad.

“Big bro, please restrain your grief. Sister-in-law.... sister-in-law passed away!!!” Said Zhou Yu while half-knelt toward Sun Ce.

“WHAT? SAY IT AGAIN!!!!” Sun Ce suddenly grasped Zhou Yu’s shoulder. His strength comes out unconsciously. Sun Ce is the person who has broken through to super-class, although Zhou Yu’s power also has reached second-class general, but he cannot do anything when Sun Ce gripped his shoulder tightly.

Soon, there is a sound of his bone being dislocated. Zhou Yu endured the pain and repeat his sentence “Big bro, please restrain your grief!!! Sister-in-law, sister-in-law has already passed away!!!”

“YOU LIE, YOU LIED TO ME!!!!” Sun Ce start his denial “Did she not go to Jianye?! How can that be?!” The second day of Sun Ce and Da Qiao’s marriage, after Lu Bu went to Huangzhou city, Sun Ce was also ready to march in order to keep the pace with Lu Bu, so Sun Ce needed to leave Wancheng city. Before he left, he had ordered his servants to escort Da Qiao to Jianye. With Lu Bu having occupied Wancheng city, Da Qiao must have been in Jianye, not stay in Wancheng city.

“Sister-in-law has not left Wancheng city at that time!!!” Zhou Yu answered.

“How, how did she die?!” Sun Ce closed his eye and loosened both his hands. Sun Ce knows Zhou Yu would not hide the truth from him, would not deceive him

His gaze grew more profound toward Zhou Yu. He feared of Zhou Yu’s words and also feared that this shame will be spread throughout the nation, destroying his Sun clan and Qiao clan’s reputation.

“She was hanged to death!!!” This is the information that Zhou Yu got. After Lu Bu’s army broke Wancheng city, his sister-in-law was hung dead.

“Hang to death?!” Sun Ce lost his leg’s strength and just stared blankly toward Zhou Yu, as if Da Qiao’s figure materialized in front of him. Sun Ce is the Little Conqueror, a man of his stature must have had many women proposed to him. But at that time, he swallowed his pride and went toward the Qiao clan to propose marriage to Da Qiao. He said that he like the elder pretty ladies and so he married her and that girl is the only one that he has intercourse with.

“HAHAHAHAHA!!!! HANG TO DEATH!!!! DEATH BY HANGING!!!! DA QIAO, DA QIAO!!!!” Sun Ce’s words became incoherent and suddenly he started becoming crazy. His hair already untied and both of his eyes emitting killing intent.

“Big bro? Big bro!!!!” Zhou Yu wanted to go forward to comfort Sun Ce, but he really did not know what to say.

“ARMY FULL RETREAT!!!!” Sun Ce has spoken these words, his killing intent already maxed. “Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, I want blood for blood with you!!!!”

“WHAT?!!! FULL RETREAT?!!!” Zhou Yu began losing his calm. If this time, they did a full retreat, it is their end!!!! At Xiakou there are 70,000 troops of Jing Province lying in wait, eyeing them at all times. Once they found out that Jiangdong’s army has internal problems, they will quickly attack them. At that time, maybe Jiangdongs army will be completely annihilated.

“Big bro, please prioritize your great cause!!!” Zhou Yu quickly knelt down again. He lamented in his heart, if he knew that Sun Ce would become this crazy after hearing the bad news, he should never have spoken the truth, even if it kills him.

“Great cause eh, HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!!” Sun Ce laughed like a maniac while getting up “What good is a great cause if I cannot even protect my wife? What use is the great cause if I cannot share it with someone?!”

“But!!!’Zhou Yu wanted to say something, but his words were blocked

because Sun Ce has pulled him to stand. “Gongjin, in this life I, Sun Ce, did not ever have a true friend. Only you are my friend, my best and true friend. You were there when I just lost my father, you were there when I was at the lowest point of my life to give me confidence, and you are also here to provide me with strategies to pacify this Jiangdong!!! Today, let me beg you, do not prevent me, let me be selfish only this time, I beg you, Gongjin!!!” Sun Ce knelt fiercely.

“Big bro, please, you cannot do this!!! Get up, please get up!!!” Zhou Yu also flustered. Sun Ce is the one who knelt down to him. They are close like brothers but Sun Ce is the lord and Zhou Yu is his general.

Sun Ce just stayed silent, Zhou Yu’s response did not satisfy Sun Ce. In the end, Zhou Yu gritted his teeth and said “Very well, big bro. I promise that I will not prevent you to go back. You can retreat to HQ, but you can only bring 30,000 troops with you!!!”

“Gongjin, what about you?!” Sun Ce was stunned. When attacking Jiangxia, Sun Ce originally had 60,000 troops, but within a few days, those numbers were subtracted by 10,000 troops. If Sun Ce brought 30,000 troops again, then only 20,000 troops remained. And the opponent, Jing Province’s army had more than 70,000 troops.

“Big bro, relax, in this Sanjiangkou there is me. I will not let Jing Province Army disturb your vengeance!” Zhou Yu truly has his confidence. “Even though Yu is unable to help big bro capture Jiangxia and Jing Province, Yu will still accompany big bro in the path of hegemony!!!”

"Gongjin, thank you!"

“Go, Big bro. Just remember to bring back that Lu Fengxian’s head so we can watch him together!!!”

“Okay!!! Gongjin, you wait here calmly for my good news!!!” Sun Ce nodded. After he nodded, the conversation between brothers ceased and Sun Ce turned around to leave when he was stopped again by Zhou Yu.

“Wait, Big bro. You can bring Lu Su of Linhuaiguan as your strategist, that person’s ability is truly big!!!”

Chapter 115 – Liu Clan of Lujiang Takes Refuge with Lu Bu

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Our POV now goes back to Wancheng city, not back to Liu Mang or Lu Bu but to the Liu clan main house.

“Outrageous!!! He bullies us nobles too far, he has gone too far in his act!!!!” Inside Liu Residence backyard, there is a middle-aged man who is destroying everything, from bamboo chairs to jade ornaments. All of them destroyed completely.

All of the servants are trembling, for they fear they will also impacted by the anger of their lord, Liu Kai, Liu Bogui.

He has been like this since he got back from attending the banquet in the Administration Office. So the furniture has been changed a lot of times.

How can Liu Kai not be mad right now?! In his mind, that brat Lu Bu has deceived him and the other clan heads. That brat directly sent troops to clean up his grain storage and shop, he also killed Chen Yao personally and afterward he issued an order to exterminate the entire Chen clan up to the third generation. The heads of Chen clansmen were hung above Wancheng city gate. What the hell did this Lu Bu want to do? Does he want to make this Chen clan as an example for others not to mess with him? He tried to do “kill the chicken to scare the monkey”.

In the end, who is the chicken and who is the monkey?

“Is my Honorable Father still doing that thing?!” Outside the mansion, there is a young man asking a servant.

“Little lord, please, you have to calm down the lord! If he continues like this, his body will be ruined!!!” The servant said it with helpless tone. Usually the lord is calm like water, but since he got back from the banquet, he has been like a tsunami.

“Um, I know, do not worry!!!” The young man responded and quickly walked toward the room.

“I HAVE NOT SAID FOR ANYONE TO COME IN HERE, GO AWAY!!!!” Hearing footsteps, Liu Kai just risen his anger and said those words.

“Honorable Father, it is I, Liu Neng!” The young person shouted in soft voice.

“Neng, my son?! You already done studying in the courtyard?!” Liu Kai almost unleash his anger to the person who just came. That young man who came into the backyard is his youngest son Liu Neng, and also his favorite son.

“Is Honorable Father still angry for that late evening banquet?!” Liu Neng inquired with a respectful tone.

“Humph!!!” Liu Neng still cannot calm down Liu Kai's heart, he is still angry at the event in that banquet. “How can father not be angry? That slave of three surnames not only snatched our Liu clan's grain storage and grain shops, he also killed your Uncle Chen and his clansmen. Today

he killed the Chen clan, the next time it could possibly be our Liu clan's turn!"

"Oh, Honorable Father, why are you brooding on such things?!" Liu Neng gave a calm smile "Honorable Father, just let it be. Even if our grain and provisions is lost, as long as we, Liu clan, still exist, we can still get it again!"

"Are you out of your mind?! Neng, my son. You definitely know that these wealth, these grain shop and grain storage was accumulated by me, your grandfather and our ancestors. But only in one evening, Lu Bu snatched them all. That is half of our wealth!!!" Liu Kai now very anxious, and a majority of his anger is caused by his grain and provisions snatched by Lu Bu.

"Oh Father!!!" Liu Neng shook his head "It is a very good thing, that our grain and provisions were snatched by Lu Bu!!!"

"Good? GOOD??? Humph, I thought you are wise beyond your years, but it seems you also as muddleheaded as the rest of your brothers!!!" Liu Kai shouted while looking at Liu Neng.

"Honorable Father, in your opinion, what kind a person is Lu Bu Lu Fengxian?!" Liu Neng inquired it.

"What kind of person, huh?! That man is a despicable scumbag, a slave of three surnames!!!" Liu Kai now wishes that he could throw all of his insults directly at Lu Bu.

“Hahaha!!!” Liu Neng smiled while shaking his head. He knew that his father is currently in a very confused and muddleheaded state due to grain and provision encounter and said “Oh, Honorable Father, please listen to me. That despicable scumbag and slave of three surnames that you just mentioned, actually killed Dong Zhuo and almost extinguished Cao Cao in Puyang!!!”

“Isn't it Cao Cao who also expelled him from Xu Province?!” Liu Kai argued.

“Yes, he was expelled from Xu Province, but he also occupied Wancheng city!!!”

“Can he take hold on Wancheng city for a long time?! He has offended all of Jiangdong's nobles. Sooner or later, he will be driven out by Sun Ce!!!”

“Honorable Father, you did not grasp the whole picture! This Lu Bu, it is true that he has offended all of Jiangdong's nobles. But do not forget, he still has 40,000 elite troops! In these times of war, one who wields military power is the one who has the authority! Moreover, Honorable Father, did you really believe that Lu Bu will be driven out from Wancheng city?!” Liu Neng suddenly smiled with those words.

“What do you mean by that?!” Liu Kai knows that his youngest son is very smart, he can think a solution that others cannot.

“Honorable Father, have you forgotten, what is the identity of our Liu clan?!”

“We are Han Dynasty clansmen and relative to the emperor!” These Liu clan is the true descendant of Prince Jing of Zhongshan. It is not like Liu Bei who just screamed everywhere that he is descendant of Prince Jing of Zhongshan, and definitely not like Liu Mang who was given the seal Prince of Shu by Emperor Xian under Cao Cao's coercion.

“Our Han Dynasty has reigned for 400 years, and now our dynasty has lost its light! Now it is the era of warlords, there is no more Han Dynasty!”

“My son Neng, what are you babbling about?! Even now, His Majesty Emperor Xian still exists!” Liu Kai berated Liu Neng.

Liu Neng just quipped “Where is His Majesty now? Is he in Luoyang or Chang'an?!” Liu Kai is speechless. Liu Neng discourse is right, the Emperor only had value when he is seated in Luoyang or Chang'an.

Now, the Han Emperor is in Xu Du, who currently was welcomed by Cao Cao to his capital. No, no, no. The correct word is “protected” by Cao Cao who also “assisted” His Majesty in governance.

In reality, the Han Emperor is just a puppet who had no accomplishments.

“Now all of warlords rise up simultaneously, doing battle in all four directions, they want to establish their own kingdom and dynasty. Is it not to replace our Han Dynasty? Father, please do not forget. We are of Han Dynasty clansmen and relatives to royal family of Liu. If the Han Dynasty gone, no matter who is on the top, the first thing they will do is exterminating our Han Dynasty clansmen!” What Liu Neng said is not just to frighten people.

In the original history, Cao Cao has won the most power. At that time, can he keep his hands off the Liu clan? When Liu Biao's youngest son Liu Cong offered the entire Jing Province, what is Cao Cao's treatment of him? He ordered Yu Jin to kill him and his mother Lady Cai and also killed Cai Mao his uncle through Zhou Yu's plot. In the end, Cao Cao also exterminated the whole of Liu clan in Jing Province.

Also there was Liu Ye who worked extremely hard beside Cao Cao, pouring his invention skills to help Cao Cao create the Wei Kingdom. It can be said, he is truly loyal to Cao Cao's cause, however what is the final result? Cao Cao suspected him and did not give him any promotions even though he helped Cao Cao to win against Yuan Shao, also Cao Pi also suspected him for usurpation.

And finally, he was suspected as a usurper by Cao Rui or more known by his title Emperor Ming of Wei and died dishonorably. Why is that? Because his surname is Liu and he is regarded by Wei Kingdom as a thorn in their side.

“When the Sun clan, occupied Lujiang, what profit did our Liu clan gain?!” Liu Neng started his analyzation “Honorable Father, several years ago, do you remember what kind of person was Uncle Chen of Chen clan in your eyes?!”

Liu Kai began to recall, this Chen clan several years ago is just a refugee clan from Guangling. When Chen Duan helped Sun Ce pacify Jiangdong at the same time, Chen clan also gained fame and fortune. When Sun Ce came to Lujiang, Chen clan moved into Wancheng city, the Chen clan raised their status to the same as Liu clan, furthermore they also seized several of the Liu clan's business ventures.

“If Sun Ce expelled Lu Bu, Sun Ce will immediately raise the Li clan or

Wang clan in exchange of the extinguished Chen clan but never us. Why is that? This Sun Ce also does not trust us!!! And at that time, Sun Ce will definitely oppress us further until we are completely exterminated due to us being of the Han Dynasty clansmen!" exclaimed Liu Neng

"But can this Lu Bu trust us?! If at that time he conquered Lujiang and subsequently conquered this nation, we still be unable to escape the disaster!" Liu Kai Said. Lu Bu is not surnamed Liu, when he obtains this nation's river and mountain, how can he not also want to get rid of the Liu clan?

"Yes, Lu Bu is not surnamed Liu, but his son-in-law is surnamed Liu!" Liu Neng finally spoke the key point.

"Prince of Shu, Liu Mang?!" Liu Kai has seen this His Highness Prince of Shu at the war of words at Sun Ce's welcoming banquet. At that time, two of Sun Ce's top advisors was made angry to the point of almost spitting blood and made those two advisors unable to attend Sun Ce and Da Qiao's wedding.

"Are you saying that?!" Liu Kai is not a fool, if he is a fool, he will not be a head of Liu clan.

"Lu Bu only has one daughter. When he conquers this nation, to whom will his inheritance go to?!" Liu Neng said it while smiling "It is certainly at the hand of this His Highness Prince of Shu, since the Prince of Shu is one of the Han Dynasty clansmen. According to you, father, who in this nation will he entrust heavy responsibilities to?!"

A person who will they trust first is definitely their own relatives.

Their Liu clan and Liu Mang are of Han Dynasty clansmen. When that time comes, when Lu Bu rules this nation, it can be said, they can confer title of prince to their own descendants and restore their ancestry.

“But, what if this Lu Bu produces a son?!” Liu Kai said his worries. If Lu Bu is able to produce a son, then Liu Mang's inheritance might suddenly vanished, and at that time, their Liu clan faces the same fate of annihilation.

“Yes, but even if Lu Bu has a son now, it will take several years until that son grows up and can be entrusted with responsibilities. And if during that time His Highness Prince of Shu does not have any support from Lu Bu army’s internal generals and officers, we might as well leave to find a secluded place to live!”

If Lu Bu got a son now, it will take several years until that son grew up. And if during that time Liu Mang did not have Lu Bu’s army’s support, then it only can be explained that Liu Mang is a waste, not worth trusting, Liu Neng then continued “But father, do you really think that His Highness Prince of Shu is that type of garbage?!”

“He is definitely not!!!” If he is a garbage, how can he make two of Sun Ce's top advisors angry to the point almost spitting blood and become a laughing stock to the people of this nation.

“So, your plan is to offer ourselves to take refuge in Lu Bu’s army?!” Liu Kai guessed Liu Neng’s plan.

“Of course! That is why I said that those grain and provisions vanishing are a good thing!” If Liu Neng can catch Liu Mang, the big ship in Liu

Neng's eyes, it can be said their Liu clan will definitely be able to accomplish big things, they can even restore their honor of being Wancheng cities biggest noble family.

Even if could not accomplish, they can rely on Lu Bu's army and its 40,000 troops to establish a separatist regime and watch political movements. Moreover, Liu Neng is currently impatient to meet one of this nation greatest hero, Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian.

"But father has already offended Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian!" Liu Kai smiled bitterly. His grain and provisions were snatched by Lu Bu. But he was also interrogated by Lu Bu at the banquet to the point scolding him. So in his opinion, it is already too late for them to take refuge with Lu Bu.

"Hahaha, father oh father. Let us put aside those grain and provisions for now. At the present, there is a big merit for us to take in order for us to be taken in by Lu Bu!"

"Neng, my son, what solution do you have in mind?!"

"That is destroying the Zhou clan!"

Chapter 116 – Inventing Weapons and Gadgets for Battle to Come

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

POV back to Liu Mang.

Liu Mang did not attend the night of the banquet, because he is busy tending to his units. It now is comprised of the newly surrendered generals Huang Zhong, Gan Ning and Su Fei's with their units along with his Urban Army.

"Little lord, is this thing really useful?!" A middle-aged man forcing a smile while showing a confused face is currently asking Liu Mang while he himself is looking at the mess on top of the table

The one who addressed Liu Mang as little lord is Huang Zhong. Since Liu Mang rescued his Huang Xu, Huang Zhong has addressed Liu Mang as little lord.

Liu Mang did not know where this Huang Zhong learned to call him little lord from, he has already been corrected a few times by Liu Mang on how to address him.

When Liu Mang recalled his decision to rescue Huang Xu, his face was filled with bitterness, and tears would well up in his eyes. Because when he brought back the Qingmei tablet and antibiotics, Liu Mang once again violated the rule of time and space and was blocked not to return again to the present for an entire year.

Those two items, even though they were the main reasons for the

penalty, when Liu Mang went back to the present time, he also brought back many books about warfare up to Qing Dynasty age. Along with that he also brought back books containing maps and how to create various weaponry.

He also brought back the latest revision of Bencao Gangmu to create more medicine in this world to cure more people including Huang Xu, and he brought back some paddy seed and sweet potatoes seeds; all of them sealed inside vacuum plastic.

TL: Bencao Gangmu = Compendium of Chinese material medica compiled by Li Shizhen. The latest revision also covers on how to create antibiotics.

Liu Mang cannot advanced technology too much, otherwise if it is too advanced too quickly then these books will also be useless.

Liu Mang is currently polishing some crystals on the table. These crystal are not the imitation that was made in modern times, but it is a true crystal. Liu Mang made Lu Bu collect these crystals from half of Lujiang.

Even though these crystals only dozen in numbers, each of them are priced really high.

When Huang Zhong looked at Liu Mang discarding these crystals casually, Huang Zhong's heart almost broke.

If these crystals were changed into their weight in gold, it can be exchanged for grain and provisions for 10,000 soldier's consumption for

several months.

However those crystals were now just placed casually by Liu Mang. Some of them were cut, some of them were even grounded into powder. Even a defeated clan still did not treat their treasures like this.

“Relax! When has this boss ever done something unreasonable!!!?” Liu Mang just casually replied back.

Huang Zhong started to get familiar with Liu Mang’s speech. Sometimes he spoke in vocabulary that is difficult to understand.

If you're wondering what Liu Mang is making right now, he is building a very simple telescope based on Emperor Kangxi’s model, one of most important tools for war.

Liu Mang needed to be able to track Boss Lu when he rushed toward his enemy. In battle, Lu Bu moved too quickly, so he need to make sure of Lu Bu and his allies position in order to fight the correct enemy.

This tool can also be used to match Boss Lu’s eagle-like vision, so everyone can see from faraway. Now that Boss Lu had a domain, naturally Liu Mang will not waste this grace period. Originally he wanted to bring it from the present, but he cannot do it due to the time and space rule.

So, for lack of a better option, Liu Mang decided to build it by himself.

These crystals can be a substitute material for lens. The price of these crystals is extremely high, so Liu Mang is helpless. Although currently Liu

Mang has a method to create lens, currently they still do not have the necessary industrial works to do it, let alone craftsmen. So, he can only do with crystals as a lens substitute. What they needed now, is to boost Lu Bu's army's combat capability.

Because the threat from Jiangdong and Jing Province are too high war can breakout anytime.

This simple telescope, only comprised of one convex lens and one concave lens plus a long wooden tube to place both lenses. Liu Mang did not expect the output of a high-end telescope with only his crude technique.

Even with this simple method, Liu Mang is wasting a lot of precious crystals in order to make this one out.

"Hehehe, DONE!!!" Liu Mang was truly excited when the lens were put inside the tube and wanted to see the result immediately. "Eh?!" Liu Mang's brow wrinkled, because he cannot see anything, it is pitch-black! Is this broken?

Liu Mang wanted to see what is wrong and suddenly he discovered that Huang Zhong is standing in front of him. No wonder he could not see anything.

"Old Man Huang, out of the way!!!" Liu Mang said toward Huang Zhong while being very annoyed.

"Oh, okay!" Huang Zhong did not know why he was reprimanded but

he listened to Liu Mang's words and stood on Liu Mang's side.

Liu Mang then saw the Administration Office using the telescope. Liu Mang does not live in the Administration Office, Lu Bu gave him a big house and the distance is quite far from Administration Office. But currently Liu Mang can see almost everything inside the Administration Office.

He can see the branch of the tree up to its pores, watching servants busy tidying up and even Old Man Chen Gong who is currently supervising everything inside Administration Office. With this distance, this simple telescope actually have a magnification power of three times.

Looking at Huang Zhong's curiosity, Liu Mang handed over the telescope.

"WOW!!!!" Huang Zhong screamed in excitement, he was so excited that he almost dropped the telescope. Fortunately Huang Zhong is able to control his emotion perfectly, otherwise Liu Mang half-day effort would have been wasted.

"This, this thing….!!!!" Huang Zhong cannot get his composure back for a while. This thing can see something far away? If Liu Mang can only see pores of the tree in Administration Office with it, then Huang Zhong can see the leaf's vein within it.

Huang Zhong is a military commander therefore his mind is preoccupied with battle. If this thing is used in war, Huang Zhong cannot believe the effects that it will bring. Before enemies come, you have already prepared a big ambush and you can see enemy movements and

prepare more ambushes. This thing can predict everything like a prophet, so even though they made the first move, they can take control of the battle immediately and win a flawless victory.

Also if one is standing on a high vantage point, that person can see everything from formations to how much grain and provisions the enemy had. In that persons eyes, the enemy will have no more secrets in his sleeves.

"WUAHHH, THIS THING IS A MAGICAL ITEM, A MAGICAL ITEM!!!!" Huang Zhong's gaze toward Liu Mang changed. Before, when Liu Mang rescued his son, he is truly grateful for Liu Mang's medical skills, but now, he is completely in worship of him.

"Ha-ha-ha-ha!!!" Liu Mang laughed bitterly while feeling very apologetic. Being looked by an old man like this, raised goosebumps in his heart. So in order to not to be stared at profoundly like this any longer, Liu Mang quickly changed his topic

"Old Man Huang, what about Xingba?!" Gan Ning and Su Fei are training naval units. Naval strength is currently one of Lu Bu's army's weak spot. Although Gan Ning and Su Fei are valiant generals in naval battle, but they cannot resist when they are overwhelmed by sheer numbers. Furthermore, their opponent's right now is Jiangdong and Jing Province. Jing Province had Cai Mao, Zhang Yun, Wen Ping and Huang Zu as their naval veteran generals.

Cai Mao and Zhang Yun, although in the original history, both of them were killed by Old Cao, their ability is very high, especially in regards to training and commanding naval units, and that is enough to show them as senior generals.

Huang Zu is the person who manage to guard Jiangxia against Jiangdong's two generations, which is Sun Jian and Sun Ce before meeting his end at the hand of Gan Ning who was later employed by Sun Quan in the original history.

When Jing Province was captured by Cao, Wen Ping immediately surrendered to Cao Cao, later Cao Cao appointed Wen Ping as Jiangxia's Prefect and he defended that area for many years.

In Jiangdong, there is Sun Ce, Zhou Yu, Ling Tong, Huang Gai, Han Dang. These people are water dragons. Zhou Yu with Huang Gai's assistance was able to destroy Old Cao's 800,000 troops in the Battle of Chibi.

But now Lu Bu’s army only had more than 5,000 people. Even if they recruit 3000 or 10,000 more troops, their numbers still dwarfed compared to Jiangdong's and Jing Province's. If they bump into either of them, the current Lu Bu's naval units is no a match. Their only choices are to hide land or refuse to do battle.

If the naval units hide on the land, can they still be called naval units? Even if Lu Bu wanted to do that, Gan Ning and Su Fei definitely do not want to do that.

Therefore Liu Mang want to give them another method to overcome sheer numbers! Liu Mang has never experienced genuine water battle, but he knows from Gan Ning and Su Fei that naval battles begin with archer salves and if they survive the salvo then they got near each other to do close quarters combat.

The firing distance of arrows only covered a hundred steps max, and its distance is even lowered by the swaying of the boat, so all naval battles is basically close quarter combat.

Regarding close quarter combat, these 5000 naval units might be unrivalled against Jiangdong's and Jing Province's naval units. But what if they are spread out? What if they choose to do long range battle? It is right that the arrows distance is only 100 steps, but there is another weapon that can shoot more than 300 steps. It is called ballista.

The arrow that a ballista can shoot not only harms the crew but also the ship and if referring to the warships durability during this time it took only 3 ballista arrows to sink a large ship into the river's bottom.

Huang Zhong then said “Little lord, yesterday, Zhong went to the naval camp! Zhong reports that Xingba has assembled this giant crossbow apparatus, but it can only shoot one round and it is very hard to pull the bowstring, it needs at least ten people to pull it!!!” Huang Zhong shook his head. Liu Mang gave them blueprints. Although it is quite detailed but when the oxybeles was made, its result was truly a disappointment.

The great arrow can only shoot at max 200 steps. Although it can pierce human, it is unable to pierce the ships wood and after shooting one arrow, it needed at least tens of people to pull the bowstring in order to shoot again.

If it used in naval battles, an oxybeles which can only shoot one arrow, one must put at least ten devices on the hull. After one shot, it only become a big burden, because it did not give the naval soldiers much

space to maneuver and also its weight slowed down the warship.

“Only shoots one arrow?!” Liu Mang's brow wrinkled. If his oxybeles can only have this function, what is the difference from normal ballistae? It’s just another useless weapon!

“Cheng Yu!!!” Liu Mang called Cheng Yu. “Send this telescope to Honorable Father-in-law! Old Man Huang, we go to the naval unit’s main camp!!!” If this oxybele test goes well, Liu Mang is also prepared to let his Urban Army use it. If this thing was used, its power is very strong. Although he cannot use it in large amounts, he can frighten the enemy and that is what Liu Mang needs.

In ancient warfare, if elite troops suffered 30 – 40% casualties, then the entire army will be scattered. Their will to fight will be diminished suddenly and morale will plummet into the very bottom.

Therefore Liu Mang had his Urban Army practice showing battle spirit first and then went into training. Troops must have a huge morale, if one had battle spirit, he will definitely have the power to fight and also can be counted as a soldier.

And lastly, battle spirit is essential in order to lead those soldiers to victory despite a lot of setbacks. In this cold weapon era, the one who shows fear is the one who loses.

And the oxybeles that Liu Mang created is a scary weapon!

Chapter 117 – Each Sides Reaction to the Big Event in Lujiang (1)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

4 major cities in Jiangdong started their movement. Jianye, Hukou, Chaohu and Wuhu, all are noisy these days, they are busy loading grain and provisions, and weapons into the warship. Soldiers one by one boarding into the ship and quickly raising the war banner as if showing their superiority in the water.

The big warship can be considered a carrier class in modern times. Its body was several stories high. There are also smaller boats which can only hold several people called Meng Chong boats. That kind of boat is classified as a destroyer class in that age. This boat is small but it is the overlord in river battles.

Its speed is unmatched in naval battle. Once a large ship was rammed by this Meng Chong boats, it will tumble to one side. This type of boat was usually used by pirate, and was used to rob merchant ships by ramming into them and boarding that merchant ship. A common ship is not a match for Meng Chong boat's speed.

Moreover, it is small in size. Once the government troops attacked, they can just hide in marshes and disappear quickly.

Now, the entire Jiangdong made their move because Sun Ce is retreating its main force in preparation a for revenge battle.

How can Sun Ce let Lu Bu sleep soundly for offending him, not to mention that his own wife was murdered in Jiangdong by Lu Bu's army?

What Sun Ce had right now is 30,000 elite naval troops.

However, out of nowhere, Sun Ce amassed 100,000 troops to do battle with Lu Bu's army. Those 30,000 naval units were his elites and the other 70,000 troops were drafted from all of Jiangdong. A Majority of them were the nobles' private soldiers. The death of the Chen clan in Wancheng city touched the nerve of some noble clans. 50,000 troops was collected by Jiangdong nobles and the remaining 20,000 were Sun clan's personal soldiers. Thus one can see, the terror of nobles.

Offending nobles never had any good results. Historically, when Cao Pi made Cao Wei Kingdom and had the entire nation on its heels, they were only able to suppress the nobles to the point of opening the imperial examination system and Nine Grades Official Selection to the common people.

Cao Wei wanted to eliminate these nobles but they couldn't. Cao Wei's kingdom was also afraid of offending these nobles completely due to nobles also possessing the ability to create a separate power. And in the end, Cao Wei kingdom was seized by another noble, that person is Sima Zhao of the Sima clan who subsequently made the Jin Dynasty.

With Jiangdong making such big movements, naturally they cannot hide anything from the nation's warlords.

Now, we go to Xiaopei city in Xu Province. Cao Cao is the final victor of his battle against Liu Bei but unfortunately he is unable to capture Guan Yu in this timeline. In Cao Cao's hand there is an Intel from Jiangdong. Cao Cao's face is very complex when reading the Intel, sometimes frowning, sometimes smiling.

The intel reported that Sun Ce of Jiangdong who initially marched toward Jiangxia to capture entire it and swallow Jing Province, unexpectedly retreated to his main HQ to battle in Jiangdong. Unexpectedly, his opponent is Cao Cao's old acquaintance, Lu Bu.

A few weeks ago, when he got the rumor that Lu Bu and Sun Ce had made an alliance, Cao Cao was truly frightened. Lu Bu is a very formidable foe, Cao Cao himself only with great difficulty managed to expel Lu Bu and he needed more than 100,000 troops to do that.

This Sun Ce is also more frightening than Sun Jian. Sun Ce is known as Jiangdong's Little Conqueror, and that title is not only for show. Sun Ce is currently still in his twenties, but he can pacify Jiangdong with only 3,000 borrowed troops from Yuan Shu and a little amount of veteran generals, that is his true accomplishment.

In this nation, there are only two people that Cao Cao most feared, that is Lu Bu and Sun Ce.

Once they formed an alliance, the Jing Province that Liu Biao held will be impossible to defend and he will lose his inheritance. Liu Zhang of Yi Province is also the same as Liu Biao, only having interest in defending their own inheritance, so more or less, they will be defeated by Sun and Lu alliance in the same way.

If that happens, half of this nation will be in Sun Ce's hands. With Sichuan under his control, he will have unlimited supply of grain and provisions due to Sichuan being a very fertile land. And on his hand there is an elite squad called Danyang soldiers of Western Chu.

At that time, Cao Cao will just go personally to Sun Ce and Lu Bu throwing a towel in front of them and maybe ally with them in order to destroy Yuan Benchu who is currently eyeing him covetously.

But now, this news brought relief to Cao Cao. Sun Ce of Jiangdong not only he did not make an alliance with Lu Bu, but now they became enemies. Lu Bu is an old tiger, but he bumped into Sun Ce this new tiger, naturally it will be a fun entertainment.

“Fengxiao, Gongda, both of you, say your views!” These days Cao Cao truly happy, because he had two of his most reliable advisors around which are Guo Jia and Xun You. Every time he went to battle, he always brought Guo Jia and Xun You. He actually had another advisor who is extremely clever named Xun Yu, but Cao Cao did not brought this Xun Yu with him, because his ability is shine by managing army's rear.

“How can this change get so big? A few weeks ago, Lu Bu and Sun Ce were in amiable terms, they were so friendly that they formed an alliance and even broke through Jiangxia. This matter really confusing!” Xun You's brow wrinkled. Xun You truly did not understand what happened in Jiangdong. From Liu Mang's victory over the war of words to Sun Ce's marriage. That news was spread throughout the nation like wildfire. If Lu Bu and Sun Ce did not have a good relationship with each other, it is impossible for Sun Ce to invite Lu Bu to his wedding and forgive Lu Bu’s army after offending its two top advisors.

Moreover, Sun Ce’s army had overcome half of Jiangxia with Lu Bu’s army's help. This news made Liu Biao of Jing Province sleepless at nights, and not just Liu Biao, this news also made this whole nations warlords shaken to the core. The presence of these two warlords joining up

terrified everyone else to that point that all of the other warlords would possibly join up to repel these two.

Now the news has become, Sun Ce leaving Zhou Yu to return to Jiangdong's HQ to build up 100,000 troops to prepare its attack on Wancheng city in order to eliminate Lu Bu.

“What is strange about this? A mountain can only have one male tiger. If it is have two, it can only one male and one female!” Guo Jia's conclusion is much simpler. He already looked at the changing situation in Jiangdong.

Lu Bu is the god of war in this era, he is the mighty tiger who managed to pin down all the warlords in Hulao Gate, with that as his accomplishments, is this tiger satisfied working under other people?

If a tiger did not have its fierceness, can he still be called a tiger?! Ding Yuan and Dong Zhuo wanted to turn this mighty tiger into pet cat, and they have paid the ultimate price for that.

Yuan Shao also wanted to tame this tiger, provide shelter for him when he has just expelled from Luoyang by Li Jue and Guo Si but Lu Bu's arrogance made Yuan Shao disgusted with him and actually made Yuan Shao want to kill him, but he escaped adding further insult to Yuan Shao.

Even Cao Cao, before he attacked Xiapi also talked with Lu Bu, he wanted to give Lu Bu a commander position for his Yan Province army, making Lu Bu a spearhead in his expedition to pacify the nation while Cao Cao sits behind him guarding the rear area.

With both of them, they would definitely make this nation's warlords tremble in fear. Liu Bei also wanted Lu Bu to submit under him, but in the end, his Xu Province was snatched by Lu Bu and Liu Bei was forced to hide in a small city of Xiaopei

But these people are defeated in their own terms. Cao Cao using 100,000 troops was able to overtake Lu Bu's base Xu Province, he is still unable to take down this mighty tiger and was even hurt by Lu Bu by almost annihilating Cao's Ferocious Cavalry. In the end, Xu Province was also snatched back by Liu Bei, furthering Cao's wound.

Sun Ce of Jiangdong is also an arrogant and rebellious person much like Lu Bu. When Sun Jian is dead, properly speaking, the Sun clan's light should have been diminished, but this Sun Ce personally took up the Sun clan banner and quickly pacified Jiangdong further rising the Sun clan's fame.

If Sun Ce is a person who is only glad being an employee, logically he should have comply with Yuan Shu's request to marry Yuan Shu's daughter and after that he would become Yuan Shu's sword. But, he directly rejected it and even offered the Imperial Seal in exchange for 3,000 soldiers for himself.

That Imperial Seal that is the most valuable object in the whole nation. If one calculates the value, even 30,000 troops are not enough to cover its value. But Sun Ce just gritted his teeth and thanked Yuan Shu with only 3,000 soldiers, at that moment the child in Sun Ce changed into wolf. As a result, Sun Ce able to lay his foundation in Jiangdong.

Both Lu Bu and Sun Ce are arrogant characters, how can they possibly submit under other people. A mountain can only have one tiger, if it has

two, certainly that one is male and one is female and that is true even to this day.

What Guo Jia did not know is why these two people were so quickly to prepare for battle. If he is Sun Ce, first he must take Jiangxia first and then hold Chibi. After that he will definitely block the entire Jing Province army at Chibi. Only after doing that, can he retreat back to main his HQ to gather forces again to fully destroy Lu Bu.

But now, Sun Ce can had this irrational decision, it is certainly have a big matter that impacted Sun Ce's whole being.

"Da Qiao died!!!" Cao Cao said it in regretful tone. This Old Cao is a person who liked beautiful landscape and also beautiful women. A man liking beautiful women is a very normal matter, but Old Cao's obsession for possessing beautiful women goes even further than that and that is one of his big weaknesses.

When he was young, he was one of Luoyang's three big playboy, along with Yuan Shao and Xu You. Later when he had his own home base, he married Madame Bian. Afterwards he drooled for Diaochan. When Old Cao hit Xu Province, some people thought it was because he wanted to obtain Diaochan.

And also, when he was at Nanyang. At the battle of Wan Castle, he lost his son Cao Ang, his nephew Cao Anmin and his general Dian Wei because he drooled with Madame Zou who has just become a widow.

Da Qiao and Xiao Qiao. Cao Cao had known them much earlier than Sun Ce and Zhou Yu. They are Lord Qiao Xuan's daughter, they are also

known as the pearls of Huainan. Historically, later on, Cao Cao made a copper platform especially for these two women, but what a pity, he cannot overcome Jiangdong due to Zhou Yu's tactics.

Now, that the two Qiaos have lost one person, it can be described as a damaged jade. So Old Cao cannot help but lament this loss.

Guo Jia who listened to Cao Cao's words just shook his head because he understood what he meant. He lamented in his heart, because of how difficult it is to change Cao Cao's obsession for women.

“All of you, who are you going to bet as the winner? Lu Bu or Sun Ce?!” Cao Cao is very curious. These two people are the bane of his existence, possibly they can stop his plan for hegemony. But these two actually went battle now. Two tigers fighting are bound to have a large wound.

Is it the god-of-war Lu Bu or Jiangdong's Little Conqueror who will win this battle?

“Both of them, eh?!” Guo Jia wanted to say that Sun Ce is the one who will win, because Sun Ce has the entire Jiangdong at his beck and call. He had all the nobles of Jiangdong backing him. He also had Huang Gai and Han Dang and all the veteran generals. On the advisor side, he had Zhang Hong, Zhang Zhao, and co. Jiangdong also have the handsome Zhou Yu as a viceroy who was assisting Sun Ce in competing for hegemony.

However, Guo Jia just held his tongue from speaking further, because he is truly uncertain. Suddenly Guo Jia remembered Kaiyang, a young man who insulted Cao Cao until he almost vomited blood. Guo Jia is a sly

genius, and did not dare to boast that his plan is foolproof but he is very confident in his schemes, but after the battle of Kaiyang, he is unable to explain the event of this nation.

That young man ruined his calculations. Originally, he made a plan for Cao Cao to surround Xiapi, after that he proposed for Cao Cao to break the dam of Yi River and Si River so Xiapi would drowned, further lowering Lu Bu's army morale. Sooner or later Lu Bu will lose. But no one had thought that there was a wild card played in Lu Bu's army. That wild card helped Lu Bu step by step to escape Xiapi and also the one who held them off for a whole 10 hours were Wei Xu and Song Xian who originally betrayed Lu Bu, but they reformed at the last hours.

After that, at the battle of Kaiyang. Kaiyang was sieged by the Ferocious Cavalry and their soldiers, it was impossible for Lu Bu to escape. After the battle of Xiapi, Lu Bu quickly was besieged in another battle in Kaiyang!

However Guo Jia misjudged again. That wild card was set in play. The result was that Lu Bu escaped with his freshly restored Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Not only did Lu Bu escaped, but he also destroyed Cao's trump card, the Ferocious Cavalry and killed General Cao Chun and Major Li Dian.

And at the end, it also made Lu Bu and Guo Jia's showdown to a big draw

“This is an opportunity!!” Guo Jia just shook his head because he needed to say his opinion even though he does not understand anything anymore!

Chapter 118 – Each Sides Reaction to the Big Event in Lujiang (2)

Due to BloodFalcon succumbing to sickness, the extra chapter will be put out for this week!

“Yes, this is indeed an opportunity!” Xun You is also a top advisor. The reason Guo Jia was unable to see through this event is because Guo Jia is from a poor family. Since his childhood he can grasp the will of the people quickly and the reassure public, but he cannot see the big picture of the problem. But Xun You is from a noble clan, he had a good education from early age. So he can see the big picture of the whole situation but he lacked the ability to grasp the will of the people, so these two advisors complement with each other.

“No matter which side wins, Lu Bu or Sun Ce, this war is an opportunity for us!” Xun You answered. “Sun Ce occupies Jiangdong as well as half of Lujiang. If our army and Yuan Shao goes to battle, we will be preoccupied with the battle, and will have no time to care for our rear. At that time Sun Ce can just go north to Xu Du from Wancheng city, when that time comes, we are in a big trouble!!!

Now Lu Bu has seized Wancheng city, and Sun Ce has become his mortal enemy. With two tigers battling it out, no matter who loses and who wins, it will require time! Now what we lack is time. We need to destroy Liu Bei of Xu Province and then deploy our army to go to Guandu and fight a decisive battle with Yuan Benchu!”

Originally Cao Cao frightened that Sun Ce will go to north himself to support Yuan Shao to fight decisive a battle with Cao Cao. This Yuan Benchu, this childhood friend of Cao Cao has pacified the entire Hebei

and the four provinces is now in his hands, and it can be said that his army was well-trained and fully equipped.

Currently Cao Cao is unable to come out because he did not have confidence to defeat Yuan Shao. If Sun Ce attacked him again from behind. Cao Cao will truly die a dog's death.

But now since Sun Ce and Lu Bu are battling with each other. This event has bought Cao Cao time. Cao Cao truly needed this time, because no matter whether Lu Bu or Sun Ce wins, he must destroy Liu Bei and fight a decisive battle with Yuan Shao in Guandu.

If he lost, there is nothing left to discuss! If he won, he can rest and build up strength to pacify the entire Hebei. With Hebei in his hand, Jiangdong is nothing to fear.

“Excellent! Your words are extremely reasonable, Gongda! Beat the war drums! We march, in three days we must destroy Liu Bei!!!” Cao Cao's eyes are flashing dangerously. There is killing intent and also there is regret. At that time after expelling Lu Bu, he released Liu Bei from his employ. He was too carried away with his success in expelling Lu Bu. Guo Jia and co has already reminded him to kill Liu Bei many times but he did not pay heed to them, and as a result this Xu Province goes into chaos again.

His senior general Che Zhou was killed by Liu Bei and he himself had no choice but to attack Xu Province again.

This war is a very big dilemma for Cao Cao. There were only a little grain and provisions left for army. When Cao Cao fought the battle in Xu

Province, it injured the grain and provisions for his Cao Army badly and the grain and provisions that he had in Xiapi was cut off by Liu Bei. Now, he inevitably must fight a second battle in Xu Province.

If Cao Cao did not destroy Liu Bei, he is afraid that he would lose his qualifications to have a decisive battle with Yuan Shao.

Cao Cao's eyes are filled with determination. He thought “I had made a mistake in my calculations, but so be it! Now I am going to correct it!!!” It is impossible for him to lament, for that is not Cao Cao's style.

Lu Bu and Sun Ce's battle also involved Liu Bei in the end.

Our POV now goes to Nanyang, Wan Castle.

Inside Administration Office of Wan Castle, there is a middle-aged scholar who is playing Go with his men, but his mind is elsewhere.

“Sun Ce fights Lu Bu?!” The middle-aged scholar muttered those words. “It cannot be, it cannot happen!!!” His face is full of doubt and disbelief.

The middle-aged scholars’ appearance looked-like a mild person, but his eyes made people scared. Being stared by him is equal to being stared by a poisonous snake who at any time can bite your neck and killed you with its poison.

That man is the poisonous scholar Jia Xu, Jia Wenhe. He has seen Lu Bu

previously. In Chang'an, the reason that Lu Bu army was defeated and expelled from Chang'an lies on the body of Jia Xu. He is the one who urged Guo Si and Li Jue and the remnants of Dong Zhuo army to take command of Dong Zhuo remnant army to attack Chang'an. If he did not urged Guo Si and Li Jue, perhaps right now they won't ever taste richness in their lives or at the very worst, they may have died from a bandit's hands.

Jia Xu did not feel any remorse being in part to plan for Lu Bu's expulsion. This Jia Xu, Jia Wenhe although not an evil person, he is an extremely selfish person. He is a man who is willing to sacrifice any person just to save his skin, including his present lord Zhang Xiu.

Historically, Zhang Xiu has killed Cao Cao's son and nephew, Cao Ang and Cao Anmin and his favorite senior general Dian Wei. Even a fool also knows that Cao and Zhang Xiu are irreconcilable. But Jia Xu, for his family's safety, sold Zhang Xiu to Cao Cao, speaking good words and praise for Zhang Xiu to Cao Cao in order for Cao Cao receive a request to refuge Zhang Xiu.

Jia Xu said that “Lord Cao, you must know that there is no person who is as magnanimous as you, because you give refuge to your son's murderer and also the guy who almost murdered you!”

Therefore at year 200, Zhang Xiu surrendered to Cao Cao. At 207, Zhang Xiu died a violent death while on campaign to pacify the Wuhuan tribe. But our Mr. Jia Xu, lived well until 223. He Survived Zhang Xiu by more than 16 years.

In the eyes of Jia Xu, Lu Bu is not a pleasant to his eyes, he called him a foolhardy, obstinate, arrogant and opinionated person. Lu Bu is a rash

fellow that did not listen to good advice, arrogant and unbearable. This type of people in times of peace, can be comparable to Huo Qubing. But in times of war, the one who employed this kind of person, will certainly die a violent death, because Lu Bu is too crazy.

If this kind of person died quicker in times of war, it can guarantee peace for at least 30 years.

This Lu Bu in Jia Xu's eyes has already exhausted his life. But, now, he is truly surprised because Lu Bu is alive, but he also occupied Wancheng city, in preparation to do battle with Sun Ce.

“Is it Chen Gong?!” Jia Xu has little doubts but immediately shook his head. Although Chen Gong is a top advisor, it was also difficult for him to see the whole situation in Wancheng city.

Wancheng city is located in Lujiang Prefecture, in Huainan area. The threat in this area is threefold. On the north, there is Cao Cao's Yu Province, if he goes south there is Jiangdong who is currently eyeing on Lujiang, at the west there is also Jing Province. When they being attacked together, it can be said that this location is a truly dangerous place but also the place of opportunity.

If one goes attack north, he can wreak havoc to Hebei and Zhongyuan. If one attacks south, it can take down Jiangdong. Their main defense is Shucheng County, Jiashi County and Shiting County. Only with 10,000 troops, they are able to defend against 100,000 troops due to its area having so many mountains.

This is why Cao Cao historically after having conquered Jing Province,

chose to detour toward Chibi in order to attack Jiangdong, rather than attack toward Lujiang direction.

This Lujiang is also the place where iron mines are abundant. Having iron, we can make weapons, and if we have weapons, we can fight for hegemony. With this, Lujiang is also one of the most populous cities in this nation.

With this big advantage, one can actually make a home base in here and reach success and watch the changes quietly.

“Hahaha, suddenly this nation is become more amusing again!!!” Jia Xu smiled suddenly, a black Go piece in his hand was quickly placed on the board “Let me bear witness, to how far can you go, Lu Bu!!!”

With Jia Xu, putting his black piece, it interrupted his opponent to make a dragon character. A victory or defeat between Lu Bu and Sun Ce will soon be known!!!!

TL: A Poisonous gentleman is an advisor who only thinks about the result, never the process in order to create the best benefit for himself and his lord.

Chapter 119 – Sun Ce's Begin His Counterattack (1)

"Finally, Wancheng city!"

The man who spoke is the one who is standing on a magnificent large ship balcony. He has the bearings of a hero and his sight is eyeing the place far in front of him.

That man is Sun Ce and he is currently seeing Wancheng city's Navy main camp. On the Yangtze River, there are numerous ports such as Xiakou, Chibi, Hanyang County, Wulin and Wuhu. Therefore, their topography is very suitable to construct a big navy camp which can support 100,000 naval troops.

These big ports naturally were man-made. These river ports were so hard to make because the people did not understand the ways of water. Thus it is very difficult to expand the ports therefore river-ports cannot become a place to hold a lot of people.

The river-port that Sun Ce just saw is the port that was seized by Lu Bu, which connected Jiangdong to Wancheng city. That small port was actually enough to station all of Lu Bu's navy force.

"Milord, greetings to you!" While Sun Ce is still in a daydream, beside him suddenly a young scholar appeared, then he bowed and said his greetings toward Sun Ce.

"Oh, Zijing, greetings to you too!" Sun Ce looked at this young scholar. He is wearing a long gown made of silk and is wearing a hat with a tassel, his appearance cannot be compared with Zhou Yu who is natural and

had a free look, but he had an aura that emanated pure honesty.

That young scholar is Lu Su, he came from the Lu clan in Linhuaiguan. His appearance is big and tall; a frank and outspoken person. He loved to study the 6 basic arts of ancient learning, which was comprised of riding a war chariot, archery from horseback, rites, music, arithmetic and calligraphy.

This youth often come back to Linhuaiguan to become a teacher in his homeland. Zhou Yu recommended Lu Su due to his diligence and Sun Ce took note of Zhou Yu's recommendation and quickly recruited Lu Su while he is staying in Jianye.

“Zijing, are all of them ready?!” Sun Ce inquired. Sun Ce only brought 30,000 elite naval troops. The remaining 70,000 troops are Jiangdong's noble’s private soldiers. Although these private soldiers are numerous, they are at odds with each other, and have no coordination. So, these issue was handed to Lu Su to take care of.

This Lu Su really did not disappoint Sun Ce, under his arrangement, those noble private soldiers were already organized.

“Report to Milord, all of soldiers are already prepared, and ready to be deployed at any time to Wancheng city!” Lu Su nodded, both of his eyes are fixated toward his heroic young master. Lu Su, although very talented, his knowledge of civil and military affairs is not a match for his friend Zhou Yu, Zhou Gongjin. With Zhou Yu still lurking in Jiangdong, Lu Su will have a very hard time to showcase his talent.

This Lu Su is a very humble and honest person. His mind is straight and because of this trait, he had many broad-minded friends. He is also very friendly toward people and because of this, he discussed many things with Sun Ce’s younger brother Sun Quan in a very friendly manner. He

found out that Sun Quan actually had the same capability as Sun Ce but currently he was outshone by Sun Ce's brilliance.

When Sun Ce assigned Lu Su as his chief strategist against Lu Bu, Sun Quan was unwilling to release him, because he still wanted to learn more from Lu Su, but Lu Su actually accepted it without any hesitation.

Why is that? It is because he is finally being entrusted with heavy responsibilities. However, even though he was trusted with important duties, Lu Su did not put on airs and become arrogant. Instead he became much calmer.

Sun Ce or Sun Quan? When Lu Su bowed toward Sun Ce, his mind was preoccupied with Sun Ce and Sun Quan. Now that he has seen these two brothers, his mind is filled with trains of thoughts. Sun Quan is the one who hides a dagger behind his smile, his style is secretive is able to maintain composure under pressure and did not reveal anything on the surface. But Sun Ce, according to Lu Su, is a person who shows everything on the surface, his style is a fair person, and the person who cut down all of his adversaries by himself.

Can these two go hand by hand together? Lu Su truly doubtful, both of them are wise lords, but both of them are brothers. These two are bound to compete.

Lu Su has been thinking too much unconsciously and quickly shook his head to focus on the current matter.

"Milord, are you ordering to attack?!" Lu Su asked as if offering advice.

“Eh?!” Sun Ce was confused. Usually after the army recuperated, we attacked immediately to catch the enemy off guard. This is the basics of all basics for offense.

If the one who said it is Zhou Yu, Sun Ce will not feel very confused because Zhou Yu will immediately suggest to do a pre-emptive attack and reclaim control.

But the one who suggested it just now was Lu Su, making Sun Ce feel strange. Zhou Yu’s letter introducing Lu Su to Sun Ce was saying that Lu Su had big talents, and had a very calm demeanor, but insufficiently planned ahead.

What Lu Su’s excelled at was fortifying every step that his lord took, but he is unable to cut the path through.

“Now is not the time!” Sun Ce shook his head. Sun Ce suddenly found himself contradicting Lu Su’s proposal. The one who encouraged to attack was Lu Su, but Sun Ce himself wanted to slowdown and enjoy the attack.

Editor: For people who didn’t understand, because Zhou Yu introduced Lu Su as a passive and defensive person, Sun Ce was taken aback that he wanted to go on the offensive. This out of character advice made Sun Ce think that he was anxious and getting ahead of himself. So Sun Ce did the opposite.

“Not now?!” Lu Su wrinkled his brow. Sun Ce has misunderstood Lu Su. Although Lu Su is calm like water on the surface, that is only showing him that he did not have the ability to strike. Although an elephant only ate vegetables, he can still fight a tiger. What Lu Su has proposed to Sun Ce is seen as fortifying everything on every angle.

In front of them is Wancheng city is the naval HQ. It can hold more than 10,000 naval troops and it is quite good for naval battle. However, if this compared with Jiangdong, naturally Jiangdong's naval unit is the strongest. As for Lu Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Lu Su has studied them. In his assessment, Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is the king of land warfare, but in naval battle, Lu Su just looks down upon them because their naval experience is zero and does have potential to even bite back.

A naval soldier not only needs to swim, but he also must be familiar with the ship rocking tendency, when to load ship and when to unload the ship in order to maintain the balance. This is the basic lesson for every naval soldier.

A person needs 2 - 3 years in order to learn about the ship. Therefore a fisherman is an ideal naval soldier.

Now, with the morale of Jiangdong's soldiers at the max, they should be able to take down Wancheng city naval camp in one fell swoop. Jiangdong's naval force is confident of their invincibility and now the decision to be initiative in offense or retreat lies on Jiangdong army's decision. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is a sitting duck in front of naval forces, the Formation Breaker is a heavy infantry. If they fall into the water, they are unable to stay afloat.

"Yes, do not too worry about it Zijing! I must give Uncle Lu a big gift!!!" Sun Ce's eyes is flashing. Da Qiao's death has touched his nerve. Blood debts need to be repaid with blood. Sun Ce has decided that Uncle Lu's families must die in order to avenge Da Qiao's death.

==========

Meanwhile at Shucheng County, Zhou clan's mansion

"Milord got news!!!" Zhou Yi exclaimed. He is the head of Zhou clan in Shucheng, he is also Zhou Yu's cousin. Since Zhou Yu become Sun Ce's man, he did not have time to take care of his own clan, so he asks Zhou Yi to become the clan head.

If people asked who is Wancheng city's most influential nobles it is definitely the Lu clan and Liu clan. But in Shucheng County, Zhou clan is the boss from the very start. Zhou clan which Zhou Yu belongs to, has been generations being an official in this Shucheng County. Starting from his great-great grandfather Zhou Rong and when Zhou Rong died, his title passed to his son Zhou Xing and after Zhou Xing died, it goes to Zhou Jing.

Finally when Zhou Zhong become the officer of the Han Dynasty, his title is Grand Commandant (Tai Wei) for a while. So, even though Han Dynasty fell, Zhou clan still held the glory because Zhou Yu now can be said to be incomparable under the sky.

So, even the relative Han Dynasty in Lujiang the Liu clan must give Zhou clan face because of that accomplishment along with Chen clan.

"Milord has return to main HQ, and currently he is stationed at Hulin, we can deploy soldiers at any time!"

"Is that so? Then it is the best!!!" Zhou Yi nodded. "Any news from

Wancheng city?! Did those nobles comply with our request?!" What Zhou Yi concerns the most is this?

"Clan head, please be relieved. The person who I send to Wancheng city reported that when he arrived at Wancheng city, those nobles are following him like ducklings, rushing to be the first one to join crusade against Lu Bu. It seems Milord's prestige is still deep rooted in the heart of Wancheng city populace!" Said one of Zhou clan's juniors with smile.

"Is that right?!" Zhou Yi just replied casually. Milord's prestige deep rooted in the hearts of people? Heh, stupid sentence. Perhaps this saying is only true for common people, but to these nobles? Hahahaha!!!! Zhou clan is a noble clan. A noble clan's principle are, no friends forever only benefits forever. With Lu Bu pressuring those noble clans with fear and coupled with the news that Jiangdong army with 100,000 troops already above the river, those nobles would be crazy not to cooperate with them.

"Since everything is ready, then let's begin, this time I will make the Zhou clan shines brighter in front of Milord!!!" Zhou Yi stood up and exclaimed.

Nearby junior also exclaimed "Yes!!!!? After this battle, our Zhou clan will become as big as the Sun clan in Jiangdong!!!"

Night arrived gradually.

In Wancheng city Administration Office, Lu Bu sat inside the office hall discussing official business, nearby Chen Gong is reporting to Lu Bu regarding Sun Ce's army movement.

“Wow, 100,000 troops? And Sun Ce also took command personally?! Hahahaha!!!!” Lu Bu, who has just listened to Chen Gong's reports; the corner of his mouth rose “This worthy nephew really thinks highly of this uncle eh?!”

Lu Bu previously had obtained intel that stated Sun Ce and his Jiangdong's army and Jing Province naval force are doing battle in Xiakou. Both sides are battling severely and the casualties amounted to at least tens of thousands.

Although Jing Province's foundation is solid, Lu Bu does not think Liu Biao can be Sun Ce's match. Once Jiangxia was conquered, the next target should be his Lujiang. But who would have thought that this Sun Ce abandoned Jiangxia and quickly go back to his main HQ to face Lu Bu quickly.

“Let Gao Shun await orders in Wancheng city along with Hanyang and his newly formed unit! Evidently we must face this Jiangdong's Little Conqueror in a little moment!” Lu Bu cannot underestimate Sun Ce. While Sun Ce is young he is able to lay a foundation in Jiangdong while when Lu Bu at Sun Ce's age he was still a registrar in Bing Province under Ding Yuan.

Chen Gong nodded. Lu Bu’s army and Sun Ce’s army must fight. After all, this is related to Lu Bu’s army survival, can they have a base in Jiangdong or not.

If Lu Bu is defeated, then there is no way out. They have offended 4 warlords, Cao Cao, Sun Ce, Liu Biao, Yuan Shao, it can be said that they are surrounded by enemies now. Just as Chen Gong about to say goodbye to give orders to Gao Shun and Liu Mang, there is an

emergency report. It is written that Shucheng County is about to fall. Chen Deng's two familial generals died in battle and Chen Deng's current location is unknown.

Chapter 120 – Sun Ce's Begin His Counterattack (2)

Eh, this fast?! Chen Gong and Lu Bu looked at each other. They know Sun Ce’s army's capabilities with 100,000 troops. They are kings on Yangtze River, but they truly didn’t think that his speed is so fast. Shucheng County has fallen into enemy hands.

“How can this be?!” Chen Gong's complexion become a little pale. Shucheng County in Lujiang is a big city, its size is not smaller than Wancheng city. Moreover, according to geographical advantage, Shucheng County’s position is very special. It’s located between Jiangdong and Central Plains.

“Report!!!! Milord, emergency report!!!” An emergency report was handed into Lu Bu's hand “Ehhh, we also lost Jiashi County?!”

Lu Bu's army supply routes have been blocked completely. They come from Huangzhou city. Huangzhou has been occupied by Jiangdong's army. After Lu Bu conquered Huangzhou city, using Jing Province as a place to escape was no longer an option. We are in big trouble.

Now Shucheng County and Jiashi County have both been lost, the escape route from Lujiang was completely blocked.

“How is Chen Deng?!” Chen Gong pinched the emergency letter. Shucheng County, Jiashi County and Shiting County was entrusted by Lu Bu to manage. That is because Chen Gong knows that Chen Deng's talent is pretty high, let alone three counties, even if Lu Bu gave him a province to manage, he will be able to do it very well. But from three counties, two counties have fallen.

“Damned Zhou clan!!!!” Lu Bu read the third emergency letter with sullen expression. This time, the news no longer contained losing a county, but the emergency news stated that in a few weeks prior, Shiting County's defenders who had no activity previously suddenly discovered enemy outside of Shiting County, the banner that was flying above is the Zhou banner.

Zhou Yu is currently confronting Jiangxia and Jing Province's army, so now the one who besieged Shiting County is definitely the Zhou clan of Shucheng County.

Those despicable nobles pulled out 40,000 troops to take over Shucheng County and Jiashi County.

This event explained well why Chen Deng was able to lose those two counties so quickly and his two familial generals died in battle and his location currently unknown. The city was not broken through from the outside, but instead self-destructed from the inside.

Lu Bu originally planned to subdue the Zhou clan, who knew that this Zhou clan was one step ahead of Lu Bu and took down his two counties.

“These damn nobles!!!” Lu Bu's face become much colder. How can Lu Bu not get angry?! This is the second time he was betrayed by nobles. Previously when he was in Xu Province, he was sold out by Chen Deng and Chen Gui. This time Chen Deng was also played by the Zhou clan.

“We cannot afford to lose Shiting County!!!” If Shucheng and Jiashi is easily defensible, then Shiting can be defended like guarding a pass. It

was a very strategic place and its impregnability is just like Hulao Gate.

If Shiting County was lost, Lu Bu’s army will be cornered like a turtle. Casualties for breakthrough and retreat will be too big.

Lu Bu's complexion sunk even further and said “Pass my military command, order for Zhang Liao and Gao Shun to see me NOW!”

Shortly after that, Zhang Liao and Gao Shun arrived in Wancheng city office hall to discuss official business.

“Zhang Liao, you bring Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and rush toward Shiting County. Rescue Shiting at any cost!” From Wancheng city to Shiting is quite a distance, and the one who can arrived there quickly is the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

“Gao Shun, you bring your Formation Breaker to follow Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. I do not want to see the Zhou clan again appear in Shucheng County!!!” Lu Bu said it with an angry tone. Exterminating the Chen clan proved to be insufficient, so he must also exterminate the Zhou clan. So all of you can see how dangerous it is to let a seed of chaos bloom.

“Yes sir!!!” They receive their order and leave ASAP.

“Let Zang Ba put his Taishan army on standby, await orders. He is to go with me to Wuwei Village!” Wuwei Village is the fisherman village near Chaohu Lake, which is also where Wancheng city naval HQ located. If Sun Ce lead his unit to land there, the damage will be too great.

All of Wancheng city armies is on the move. Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is the first one to leave the city, following after them was the Formation Breaker. Taishan Army also moved to Wuwei. Under Zang Ba's leadership, suddenly those former Jiangxia soldiers who were initially very weak, got a sudden boost of strength.

Lu Bu army's movement naturally could not be hidden from the Wancheng city's nobles, either small or big nobles.

Zhou Yi's eldest son, Zhou Cheng is stationed in Wancheng city, he has frequently been paying attention to Lu Bu's army movement, frequently sending spy to get Intel on Lu Bu's army.

“Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is leaving the city along with the Formation Breaker. And Lu Bu also personally gone into action?!” Zhou Cheng is currently reading an Intel on Lu Bu’s army.

“Young master, is he coming toward us?!” One of Zhou clan's general inquired.

“Do not worry, it is not us!!!” Zhou Cheng shook his head. He is Zhou Yi's son, this year, his age is the same as Zhou Yu which is 24 years old. But from his infancy to adulthood, all that Zhou clan ever praised was only Zhou Yu, Zhou Gongjin. His grandfather and his father also said that Zhou Cheng had no achievement at all. So today, come an opportunity to make his name soar like Zhou Yu, how can he share it?

His goal is just like his father, making chaos from inside Wancheng city, so the governing power can be returned to Sun Ce and restoring its

status as the connector between Jiangdong and the Central Plains.

His father is already in Shiting County. The news of a siege has successfully attracted Lu Bu’s army’s attention. But in order to perform his scheme, he must wait until Lu Bu’s army flushes out of Wancheng city.

Zhou Cheng is very cautious. If Lu Bu is just doing a feint in his departures news, then all of his schemes will be ended.

A day passed by, two days passed by.

News come to the Zhou clan mansion in Wancheng city “Young master, young master, bad news come to us! Lu Bu army's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry successfully routed Lord Zhou Yi's army who had besieged Shiting County. Currently Lord Zhou Yi is retreating toward Shucheng, having been defeated!”

“What about Wuwei?!” Zhou Cheng brow wrinkled but he has no big reaction.

“Wuwei also destroyed. Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian, lead 3,000 Taishan army personally, and he has killed Zhou Kang!!!” Zhou Kang is one of Zhou clan's most famous familial general, he is loyal and devoted for the Zhou clan and possess elite troops that is swift like wind. He has been entrusted to attack Wuwei Village by Zhou Yi, now Zhou Kang also died in Wuwei and his soldiers retreated east to Xianxi County.

TL: Xianxi County is located in Xianxi, Yueqing Prefecture, of Zhejiang Province now.

“That is good!!!” Zhou Cheng stood up and shouted “good”! His face only showing excitement, no expression of anger and worry was visible on his face.

“Now, we enter the stage!” Zhou Cheng went out of his room.

It is currently summer, the temperature is getting higher and higher. Humans are unable to endure under hot sunlight, let alone these defenders who wore helmets and armor.

“Damn, so hot, who can bear this heat wearing this kind of armor?!” A defender sergeant of Lu Bu's army is complaining about his helmet and armor.

“Only a little heat, could not bear! You southerners are too spoiled!!!” Another old soldier said coldly answering the sergeant. That soldier is a local from Wancheng city and that old person who berated the sergeant is a veteran of Lu Bu’s army or at that time still called the Bing Province Army.

Those who originally followed Lu Bu from the very beginning, all of them either sick, wounded or already old, they are unable to follow the current demand for the army, for example the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker. They needed fresh blood in order to keep their elite status and those who cannot keep up with their standards obviously will be kicked out from the team. But in Lu Bu’s army, no one is wasted, they can still get promotion by being a defender of a city.

The veteran now, was once a Bing Province Heavy Cavalry soldier. In

Kaiyang, he lost his arm. Logically, he should be given pension by Lu Bu, but he said to Lu Bu “Milord, please do not throw me away, I am still useful!!!” and rejected his pension and asked Lu Bu to be assigned as a gate captain.

TL: This Old Man Wu, is the Old Man who lost his hand in Kaiyang and the one who encouraged Lu Bu in chapter 32

Because his age is old enough, everyone called him Old Man Wu.

“Back then!!!” Old Man Wu started his lengthy speech, he told of his past experiences. If one listened to his story once, twice, even three or four times, it is still fresh. But this senile old man, repeated it 7-8 times a day. If this continues for 365 days straight, a person who had the patience of a saint will also be tired from hearing same story over and over again from Old Man Wu.

“Yeah, yeah, yeah! Old Man Wu, your merit is the biggest of us all!” Another gate guard encouraged Old Wu to speak. He is one of Chen Deng's Guangling army's soldier. He was tasked to become a gate guard.

“Old Wu, I rest first, after that, change to you!” the guard called Han, wiped his sweat and said those words.

“Milord said our responsibility is to protect city wall, he did not set shifts for us, and how can you can just rest?!” Old Wu wants to dissuade him, but Han just waved his hand.

“Worried about what? Although Sun Ce’s army attacked us, there is

Milord's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker. With them we have nothing to fear! Old Wu, are you not confident that the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breakers are able to destroy the enemy outside?!"

Han boasted about the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker. They know that this is Old Wu's weakness. As long as you praised about Bing Province Army, Old Wu will become good to you.

"It is true, but!!!"

"Nothing will happen. I just want to find cool place and not under the walls, only a moment I will come back!" With that saying, Han left, with him also several soldiers following behind.

"Only a moment, okay?!" Old Wu shouting from behind.

"Yes, I know!" Aiyah, Old Wu can be very forceful, Han just shook his head helplessly.

"Aaaaahhhhhhhh... This is life!!!!" Finally he found a cool place hid him from the shine of the sun. In addition, at that place, he can also sit down on the ground. He did not need to stand for a long time, a really good feeling.

Being too comfortable, Han unknowingly dozed off to a deep sleep.

Chapter 121 – Sun Ce's Begin His Counterattack (3)

“Get away, do not disturb me!” Han is truly irritated, he just has found a cool place to rest, just falling asleep for a while, and suddenly his body was pressed by other people.

Han is truly tired. Standing under the sun for the whole day, his whole body has entered a state of full rest. Subconsciously his body is pushing those people with his hand.

This is truly comfortable, Han has entered deep slumber and started to dream.

Another body pressed him, a few minutes after he entered his dream. Dammit, can these guys not find other places to sleep? Why must they stick with me?

Although Han is a little angry, he did not want to open his eyes. If he is awake, maybe Old Wu will trade places with him, to be on guard under the stinging sun. So, for the best result, he just chose to close his eye. He has was sleeping for the rest shift, even if Old Wu came to look for himself, he definitely can argue with him.

And the third time comes again! Han really got angry, his patience is used up. This disturbance has to end. He needed to curl his leg upwards to become comfortable again. He really needed to look at the person who disturbed him and the one who dares stop this Grandpa Han's sleep.

Han opened his eyes fiercely, and rolled his sleeve to punch the guy who disturb his sleep.

After Han truly sobered up, he is truly stunned. Because the view is truly hellish!!!

In front of Han, there are at least 3 corpses, one of them bled to death, another was slashed on his neck and the one who just pressed him is headless.

“Little Liu? Big Dan? Lil Tiger?!” Han knows who those corpses are. They are his fellow villagers and also fellow subordinates of Old Wu. He grew up with them together, but currently he is unable to speak any words due to shock.

“SHAAA, SHAAA, SHAAAAAA!!!!!” There are shouts on the city wall. In front of Han, flame has ascended in the city wall and a lot of soldiers wearing black uniform brandishing sword are attacking his comrades. Blood everywhere.

Han finally understood. This is an enemy raid, and enemy want to occupy city wall. Outside there is no movement at all, only at city wall, these explained that these enemies come from inside the city. They climbed the city wall sneakily and attack when his comrades are resting and because of that, his brothers-in-arms died without knowing anything.

But Han's luck really good. He was pressed by his brothers-in-arms corpses and not discovered by the enemy.

“Oh, there is still those who are not dead yet!” A black-uniformed man noticed Han. He pulled out his long sword to kill Han. Han observed,

from taking his stance, these people are very skilled; an elite.

"Dead, I am dead now!!!" Han has been in battlefield once, but at that time, he was only sieging Xiapi when it was led by Che Zhou for revenge against Cao for killing Chen Gui and at that time Chen Deng's army is the superior one. But now, in the city wall, although there are signs of struggle everywhere, the one who were dead are those of Lu Bu's army. Moreover, with his fellow villagers corpses nearby him, made Han tremble with fear. The fear in his heart let that black-uniformed man notice him.

"Scared, eh?! A waste like you can become a gate guardian?! It seems Lu Bu's army only employs garbage!" The black-uniformed man gave a wicked smile toward Han and quickly he swing his sword to kill this garbage.

"AAAAHHHHH!!!!" Han also has discovered a long sword, but he discovered it too late. He can see that black-uniformed man already closing in until he can see his rare beard.

Han closed his eye quickly, he knows that this time he cannot avoid death. He will go down to netherworld with Little Liu and the others.

"Clang!!!!" Sounds of clear iron-made material collided with each other. Han did not feel that icy cold long sword stabbing his chest but instead he heard a scream after that iron collided with each other.

"HAN, WHY ARE YOU SCARED?! THIS IS BATTLEFIELD, THERE IS NO TIME FOR BEING SCARED!!"

“This voice?!” Han's face suddenly gave a happy expression. He has heard the owner of this voice for a while now, Han actually wishes he do not hear this voice again for his whole life.

But now, Han must thank the owner of this voice.

“Old Wu!!!” Han truly surprised, he quickly turned around and it is really one-armed Old Wu who saved him. Old Wu took the long sword earlier and single-handedly blocked the mortal blow of black-uniformed man.

“One-armed? The one who blocked me is an old and disabled person?!” The black-uniformed man attack was blocked. Originally he was startled, but when he saw the people who blocked his attack, his expression turned into disdain. The one who challenged him now is an old man with only one arm.

“Heh, all of Lu Bu’s army are cowards and old and disabled people!” The black-uniformed man insulted Han and Old Wu.

"Cowards?"

Han and Old Wu's complexion become really bad. Han had not picked up the long sword because he is frozen by fear and even after he was saved, he did not have any reaction at all. And Old Wu is truly frustrated, his missing an arm is his pain for a lifetime. If this arm was not missing, then presently he should ride a warhorse with General Zhang Liao galloping toward Shiting County.

But because he is missing an arm, he can only be a gate captain. But

when these black-uniformed man attacked, Old Wu was truly happy. Why is that? Because he finally had a chance to do battle again, and maybe he can die honorably in battle.

“Does Lu Bu’s army, truly have nobody worthy!” This black-uniformed man really did not respect these two. A garbage and a disabled man, can they make any difference? They will be killed just like that fearful garbage, but add one more disabled person.

“DO NOT INSULT OUR LU BU ARMY!!!!” Old Wu's complexion became truly cold. He had been in the Bing Province Army for so long. He had been there before those of Xu Province's and Guangling Army soldiers, as well as these Wancheng city's local soldiers join Lu Bu’s army.

These three newly formed division did not know the importance of being a part of Lu Bu’s army meant this Bing Province veteran.

Lu Bu is their heart, Lu Bu is the god-of-war, Lu Bu is their spirit, and their banners. These three characteristic is the one which made Lu Bu’s army.

During their stay in Bing Province. Lu Bu’s army is a nightmare for invaders. When those invaders knew Lu Bu army is nearing, those invaders fled at the sight of them and their appearance is considered as hope for the Han people

During their stay in Luoyang. Ding Yuan did not have Western Liang's cavalry like Dong Zhuo but Ding Yuan had Lu Bu’s army in his hand. With this he dares to deploy troops and declare war to Dong Zhuo.

In Hulao Gate. The coalition of all warlords who had heard of Lu Bu’s

army’s reputation become very fearful and passive. They are not Lu Bu's enemy.

Even if Liu, Guan and Zhang were the one who comes out, they can only tie with Lu Bu's strength. Lu Bu's Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is the god of death to these warlords.

Cao Cao feared him, Liu Bei saw him as a threat. In the end, they allied again in order to expel Lu Bu army from Xu Province.

They have followed Lu Bu in his conquest for so many years. Those brothers of Bing Province Army are already old, but those brothers of Bing Province Army carved those characteristics of Bing Province Army in their heart and they become Lu Bu’s army.

When they live they are Lu Bu’s army, when they die they are Lu Bu’s army's ghost. They held Lu Bu’s army in reverence. As a sacred organization.

But now, the enemy is spouting insult. Old Wu has truly gotten angry. This good natured one-armed old man, no person has provoked him to this extent.

Even in Chang'an when they were expelled by Li Jue and Guo Si.

Even when in Xu Province when expelled by Cao and Liu Bei.

Even when they are besieged and have no retreat, even when they are like a stray dog.

Old Wu has never been this mad.

Even when Old Wu lost his arm in Kaiyang, he is still calm.

"DAMN YOU!!!!" Old Wu changed. In Han's eyes, Old Wu has become truly terrifying. His whole body emitted killing intent and his eyes suddenly became red. This is not an eye of a human, these are the eyes of a hungry beast.

Old Wu has become a wolf. Han knows that Old Wu has become a lone wolf who had been out from the wolf pack. Although he has left the pack, he still have the characteristic of a wolf.

"HAH, WANT TO KILL ME?! A COWARD AND A DISABLED PERSON WANTs TO KILL ME?! DO NOT JOKE WITH ME!!!!" the black-uniformed man smiled contemptuously. He began to wonder, if Lu Bu's army is only at this level, why should his lord bother to send them out to capture city wall, not directly assault them in the city?

This half-day, the number of Lu Bu's army died in his hands were not more than ten people.

"I AM NOT A COWARD, I WILL BE YOUR OPPONENT, JUST A DISABLED PERSON IS ENOUGH TO KILL YOU!!!!" Old Wu coldly retorted "My name is Wu Zun. I am from Jinyang. I was once belonged to Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Now, I am gate captain!"

"What good comes from telling me this? Are you hoping that I will tell my younger generation about you?!" The black-uniformed man teased Old Wu.

“I tell you this, so you can tell King of Hell, who is the one who killed you, so you cannot become a restless ghost!” Although he is one armed, Han felt that this Old Wu is truly great. “Let this former Bing Province Heavy Cavalry kill you first!”

“I got no time to play with you! I should kill you now!” the black-uniformed man is feeling Old Wu's momentum. He did not know why this Old man made him tremble with fear. This is a shame for an elite of the Zhou clan, unexpectedly this old and disabled person made him feel fear. Because of his anger out of shame, suddenly the black-uniformed man became strong again.

Chapter 122 – Sun Ce's Begin His Counterattack (4)

“Cough, cough!” Old Wu's has been coughing blood. His body already scarred. The stump where his old arm should be was also bleeding profusely. But even with an injury like this, Old Wu still stood.

Earlier, Old Wu had a showdown with the black-uniformed man who called him a cripple. But now he is stunned because his hand was slashed by Old Wu's long sword. The hand that earlier was holding a long-sword now dropped on the ground.

“Heh, you are right, Lu Bu’s army only had old and disabled people. But this old and disabled wolf can still kill dogs like you!” The corner of Old Wu’s mouth rose.

He is a wolf. Wolves are social animal. As long as they stayed in groups, they can spread terror everywhere. But Old Wu is a lone wolf, being kicked out of his pack.

He was talking about his previous successes all day, but now he must show off his story. He misses the day when he first became a wolf, he misses his comrade-in-arms.

“AAAAHHHHHHHH, MY ARM, MY ARM!!!!” the black-uniform man cannot believe this event. His arm was chopped off by one disabled person. Not having an arm is equal not having a life at all. The Zhou clan will not tolerate a disabled garbage.

“I want you dead, DIE!!!” the black-uniformed man called Cheng Quan is screaming toward Old Wu. He has been trained by the Zhou clan since

his childhood. This time he wanted to get meritorious achievements but who knew his arm would be chopped off by this disabled person.

That shout for help made several black-uniformed men to rush their battle and quickly ran toward the brother who had just lost his arm in order to protect him. They are the subordinates of the man who just lost his arms.

“Big bro, are you okay?!” those subordinates said with a caring tone, but they are truly smiling and snickering in their hearts. Competition in the Zhou clan's private soldiers is very intense. Only the top ranking can gain recognition from the master. If they perform meritorious deeds can they be given freedom by the master, no longer a slave and become truly independent. When that time comes, he can truly bring honor to his ancestors.

Now when their leader is injured, their first response is not that of concern but of happiness. How can a crippled person still block their advancement?

“Kill them, kill them for me!” Cheng Quan is truly hysterical. He was destroyed by this old and disabled person.

“We naturally are going to kill him, but this is not by your order Chief Cheng!” A voice sneering toward the leader.

The leader looks at that person who sneering toward him. “Gu Jun!!!” This person is the vice leader. Usually he is very submissive, but now he actually dared to speak boldly to himself now.

“Gu Jun, you cannot be presumptuous to the team leader!” The nearby black-uniformed man scolded him.

“WHAT? You also want to teach me how I should speak?!” Gu Jun's eyes flashed a cold gaze toward the person who scolded him. The black-uniformed man quickly held his speech. Gu Jun is the number 2 man in this team, opposing him is never a good thing.

“Gu Jun, as long as you kill them I will give you this team leaders position!” Cheng bit his tooth and said it with heavy heart. He knows that this disabled wolf already ate this dog.

He was too proud, if not how can his hand be chopped? If he did not have his arm chopped, how can this Gu Jun be presumptuous like this? Regretting it now is too late. In his eyes showed only hatred toward the disabled and coward person who made him like this.

“Wah, so nice of you. If it’s like that, many thanks to you Chief Cheng. Gu Jun will certainly exact revenge for you!” Gu Jun shows a satisfied smile. He then looks at Han and Old Wu with a fierce gaze and smiled “You injured our team leader. According to logic, we must kill you immediately, but I, Gu Jun, will show you mercy. I will let you choose how you will die!

Either you hang yourself or I kill you!” Gu Jun thanked them very much. If not how can he obtain the opportunity as a team leader? This time he won in Wancheng city, as a team leader he definitely can be recognized by the lord. And if the master is happy, it will not be difficult for him, Gu Jun, to be promoted and become a general.

“If you want us dead!!! DO IT YOURSELF!!!!” A wolf's principle is to

stand until the very end never kneeling in battle. Old Wu has taken again the long-sword that has fallen to the ground.

His arm is trembling, but that is not fear; he is unable to hold his excitement from his battle.

He feared that he will be unable to grip the long sword, so he ripped open a piece of cloth and tied up his long-sword with his own hand. This way the long-sword will not be discarded, unless his hand is cut off too.

"Little boy Han, I will stop them here, get out of the city wall, run as fast as you can!" Old Wu said it in low voice.

"I do not go!" Han refused to go, because he had been saved one time by Old Wu if he ran away again now, then he truly can be considered a cattle!

Although Han is afraid he still had anger. His fellow villagers were already dead. If this time he ran away, then how he will answer their spirits?

"Go away! You will only slow me down!" Old Wu exclaimed angrily. "You know, if you remain here, you will only give trouble to me. Without you or your Guangling's Army here this old body can only hit ten times. With you here, you will only slow me down and even can be killed when I go on a frenzy!"

"Do not look down on us!" Han put on a resentful face, he is truly angered by shame "Our Guangling Army, although not good, our Guangling Army has also gone to the battlefield!"

"Hah, gone to battlefield? Only sieging Xiapi, you can boast? Do not joke with me!" Old Wu said with disdain.

At that time, when Xiapi was besieged by Chen Deng, how many Cao's army troops are stationed in Xiapi? Less than 10,000 troops and also they are old, weak, sick and disabled. With that as an advantage, Chen Deng dare to lead his Guangling Army to attack them directly.

"YOU!!!!" Han became angrier.

"Go away! I will not say it again!" Old Wu's complexion become really grim. Making Han tremble with fear.

"FINE, FINE, I WILL LEAVE!!!!" Han is truly angry, he threw down his long-sword and quickly left.

Looking at Han leaving, Old Wu became more relaxed.

"WOW!!!!" Gu Jun's lips showed happy expression "Very touching eh, very touching. Cursing him in order to let him escape!" After that, Gu Jun's complexion become cold "You really thought that he can escape, huh?! It is a joke! Since all of you do not want to commit suicide, I will first start by killing your companion!"

"YOU SHALL NOT PASS!!!! OVER MY DEAD BODY FIRST!" Old Wu suppressed his pain so that Gu Jun can close up to him, enough for Old Wu and Gu Jun to do mortal blow uninterrupted. As long as it hit, it can kill him. Even it did not kill him, it can mortally wound him also.

This is a wolf's final determination, it is this determination that was feared by invaders. Even if a wolf suffered a severe wound, even if it already lost its limbs, as long as he did not die, they can hold the enemy behind.

“Hahaha, waiting for me to strike to kill me?!” Gu Jun sneered. “You think I am like that idiot Cheng Quan?! Oh, first things first, I am sorry that previous team leader spoke slandering remarks toward you!” Gu Jun's mouth said sorry but his facial expression did not show anything at all.

“DAMN IT!” Cheng Quan pinched his hand until it bled, insulted by Gu Jun.

“FULL RUSH! GIVE ME A FULL RUSH!!!!” Gu Jun is not alone now, since he is a team leader, how can he fight the battle personally? He is the commander, he did not care how many of his men died as long as it can give him money and a promotion.

“Eh?!” Old Wu started sweating. He has lost too much blood. This new leader is quite good, he knows that Old Wu was going to do final strike on him. Now he sent out his subordinates. Old Wu can only take one of them at a time, but killing these subordinates is no use.

Old Wu clenched his teeth. Whether he took others with him to die or he died by himself, he had done his deed; to help Han escape. Little boy Han, sorry that this old bag of bones can only give you this much.

“Surround him, kill this old man!” Gu Jun waved his hand and black-uniformed men one by one surround Old Wu.

“Kill him with a full rush, the city wall has been taken, we also have other matters!” Gu Jun was already not interested in Old Wu. The city wall has been taken. As long as they wait for the private army of other nobles

who collaborated in this crusade, Wancheng city is as good as in the bag.

“Poof!!!” The Long-sword and Old Wu's flesh connected. Although Old Wu is a wolf and former elite of Bing Province Army, he is now old, he is missing an arm and is injured. If one gives him a good horse, one returned his youth, how can these black-uniformed man be a threat? Even if they came altogether, they will not be a match for him.

“RRRAAGGGGGHHHHH!!!!!” Old Wu's sword stabbed a black-uniformed man. With the long-sword stabbing him, blood splashed all over the place. Blocking the vision of his comrade and all of a sudden, his arm is already on the ground.

Old Wu also was not in good state. A black-uniformed man attacked his flank slashing his shoulder. Fortunately that shoulder that he slashed was where his missing arm is but it is still very painful.

With Old Wu already in this state where blood kept flowing and his ribs is showing, he has become a terror for these black-uniformed men.

Chapter 123 – Extinguishing Fire in Wancheng City

Old Wu held his breath and swung his sword downward, killing a black-uniformed man in the process.

“Damn, he is truly strong!” Gu Jun gulped down his saliva. He finally knows why Cheng Quan was defeated. This old and disabled man killed his subordinates at least five people and he is severely wounded to begin with.

Gu Jun cannot imagine how powerful is this person was when in his prime. Fortunately, he is already old now. If Old Wu was still young, maybe Gu Jun and Cheng Quan fighting together will still not be a match for him! No, they will be beheaded instantly.

However, being strong now, what good is it to him, he is already exhausted “I seriously underestimated you. But I will stop you here and now. You are alone and we are of many people!” Gu Jun has decided to fight this old man by overpowering him with sheer numbers. This old man has made Gu Jun truly restless.

“Who said that he is alone?! Han has arrived!” A familiar sound voiced his opinion.

“Why did you return here?!” Gu Jun looked to the owner of the voice.

Old Wu also looked at that direction. When he saw that man, he shouted “Why the hell did you return? Go, RUN FROM HERE!”

“Run? Where can he run? Wancheng city is now ours again!” From behind Han’s back there comes a team of people. Although they are wearing armor, but they are not Lu Bu’s army troops. From their attire, they look like servants or it can be said, they are noble’s private soldiers.

“Sorry, Old Wu, I could not escape!” Han smiled bitterly. He also wanted to run away, but where can he run? The entire Wancheng city was in chaos. A moment ago, he encountered another team another private soldiers. Han quickly decided that it is better to die with Old Wu and go to hell together rather than being killed by these troops.

“Oh, Wancheng city has fallen!” Old Wu’s words is full of despair. He is very thirsty but he have no water to drink. He quickly sucked his own blood to quench his thirst from his own wounded arm.

“Surrender, if you surrender, you can still survive!” That other troops team leaders had noticed Old Wu’s skill. A disabled person can take on a group of people and even kill 3 – 4 elite soldiers, this is truly amazing.

Even if he is disabled, but he can be assigned to teach fresh recruits. This is a very rare and talented person.

“So, Wancheng city was lost! Milord is defeated!” Old Wu talked to himself slowly. His mind flew away as he remembered Chang’an, he remembered Xu Province, and he remembered Kaiyang. He is remembering his whole life during Lu Bu’s quest for hegemony. Old Wu’s face had a trace of hopelessness but suddenly it disappeared .

“So what, if we are defeated?! As long as Milord still stands strong, our Lu Bu’s army has not been extinguished!” Lu Bu has suffered many difficulties and defeats, but still they were unable to kill him. When he

lost a territory then he snatched another territory in return.

"Hey, little boy Han. Do you fear death?!" Old Wu asked Han this question unexpectedly.

"I am not afraid!!!!" Even though he said he wasn't afraid he had told a big lie. But Han was not willing to admit defeat, because if he had to die now, he might as well die with honor.

"Since you did not fear, this old man asks for forgiveness to you and also asks you to die honorably with me and go to hell together!" The corner of Old Wu's mouth wanted raise and smile, but each time he tried smiling it further opened his wound making it really painful. Therefore his face is just like a person who is about to cry.

"Little boy Han, after we reincarnate I hope we are a true father and son, this old man will train you until you are very strong like Milord. Honestly, the current you is too weak!" At this time, Old Wu had the mood to joke.

"Stubborn people. We will bury you along with Lu Bu!" The leader of the other noble troops no longer had any patience. "Brothers from the Zhou clan, let's kill these two remnants of Lu Bu's army together!"

"Yes, this is the best solution!" Gu Jun and his black-uniformed soldiers and the other noble troops started a pincer attack toward Old Wu and Han.

Wancheng city, in the past was a very tranquil and calm city. But in

times of war, this Wancheng city had fallen into chaos for who knows how many times. The entire Wancheng city was already filled with the sounds of slaughter everywhere.

This Wancheng city, having experienced the Lu clan, Liu Xun, and Sun Ce's battles, was already destroyed by the flames of war!

"Reporting to little lord, the Yu clan has occupied the South Gate!" A young clansmen reported toward Zhou Cheng.

"Reporting to little lord, the He clan has seized the North Gate!"

"The West gate is also under our control!"

Wancheng city has four gates, three of them had already been seized by the enemies. The only remaining one is the east gate. The east gate is the biggest gates and is occupied by the Liu clan. Even the city gate that big, they should have reported at the same time. The Liu clan is Wancheng city's oldest nobles. Their strength is more formidable than this Yu clan, He clan and Wu clan combined but no news has arrived from the Liu clan yet!

"Fine then, we do not wait for them! Let's go into action!" Zhou Cheng walked into the hall. Inside the hall, there is one team of black-uniformed men and was led by two generals. Staying silent the entire time, they were very strict and disciplined. Looking from their standing posture; these men are truly elite troops.

Zhou Cheng is looking up and down at these people. These black-

uniformed men is not Zhou clan's private soldiers who Zhou Cheng sent to raid the city wall. These people were dispatched by Sun Ce personally to Wancheng city.

They are truly worthy as Jiangdong's Little Conqueror's private soldiers. These soldiers made Zhou Cheng green with envy, because their strength is truly refined. If these people were put into Zhou Cheng's soldiers, they can become team leaders, but now they are just a lowly soldiers.

"Transfer of command already completed!" Zhou Cheng received command of the black-uniformed men from Sun Ce.

Those two commander after hearing Zhou Cheng's words quickly nodded their head, without saying a word. "So, Young master Zhou, let us begin to march!" Those men just quickly said and left Zhou Cheng immediately.

Zhou Cheng looked at these elite troops back unconsciously wrinkling his brow.

Out of the four gates, Zhou Cheng has taken three of them, properly speaking, Wancheng city was already under his control. However, he does not know from where, but Zhou Cheng is truly restless, he did not know where this restlessness came from.

Beside the Liu clan, all of the clans who participated in the crusade already completed their tasks. Wancheng city is no longer under Lu Bu's possession, already returning to Jiangdong.

All of this too easy. Too easy? Yes, this is too easy. Everything went according to Zhou Cheng's plan.

And if Wancheng city was compared with Shiting County and Jiashi County, when Shiting County was attacked by Zhou Yi's private soldiers they collapsed at the first encounter, but how can the big Wancheng City fall like this as well?

Is it because Lu Bu has assigned all of his elite troops elsewhere? Now the current explanation for his restlessness is only this.

"Fine then!" Zhou Cheng shook his head. Wancheng city is already in his control like he wants it. He can be said able to complete the task flawlessly.

Actually, Zhou Cheng having a bad feeling is correct, something is very wrong with this event. The Whole of Wancheng city gate guardians only had one shift. The night shift guardian who was supposed to take over did not appear at all.

At Wancheng city east gate, there is a golden-armored general holding a telescope. That guy is Liu Mang and on his hand is a telescope that he recently produced.

The Liu clan was assigned by Zhou Cheng to attack east gate, and now Liu Kai and Liu Neng is sitting inside Liu Mang's mansion reporting everything to Liu Mang.

"How many clans are involved in this?!" Liu Mang asked those pair father and son.

Liu clan, Wancheng city's oldest noble families was once Lujiang's oldest nobles. When Lu Kang and Liu Xun was the one who controlled Wancheng city, the Liu clan was still the boss. Lu Kang did not have the thought for hegemony because he did not want to offend Han Dynasty

relatives.

Liu Xun is the same clan as the Liu clan, naturally they will do good things with the Liu clan of Lujiang. But after Sun Ce expelled Liu Xun, everything changed. First the Lu clan is suppressed until almost being annihilated and then came the Zhou clan of Shucheng County.

When the Zhou clan rose, the Liu clan did not feel too much bitterness because the Zhou clan is also a boss in Shucheng County. But that Chen clan also appeared!!!! That Chen Duan and his clan, rode along with the Sun clan barging into Lujiang.

Liu Kai saw both of the Chen clan's heads as arrogant pricks, forcing clansmen to be officials under Sun Ce.

Sun Ce a person who wanted to fight for hegemony, naturally was estranged by the Liu clan, the Han Dynasty royal relatives.

Now those two people suddenly found a big fortune in Liu Mang. They quickly dug out the Han Dynasty family tree and saw that there is a Liu Mang there along with Liu Kai and Liu Neng. They quickly acknowledged each other as relatives and Liu Kai also shamelessly call Liu Mang, Liu Kai's uncle.

Liu Kai's age if compared with Liu Mang, he could be his father. If such an old man called him uncle, then Liu Mang cannot stand it but Liu Kai was already out of face.

Therefore, Liu Mang was recognized by Liu Kai and Liu Neng as a noble too! For thousands of years, China has been like this. Nobles who occupy less than 10% of population, control 90% of wealth, power and influence.

Liu Mang originally did not understand these. But because of his house steward and retainer Yang Hong taught him daily, he finally understood about these matters.

So, Liu Mang and Liu Kai and also Liu Neng quickly got along with each other.

Regarding Wancheng city changes, Liu Mang learned from these Liu clan's father and son that Lu Bu's army going out is like luring a snake out of his hole, in order for these hostile nobles to take over of the city once again.

"Besides the Lu clan, Han clan and Xu clan, every clan is joining this rebellion!" Liu Neng quickly reported to his "uncle".

"All of them?!" Liu Mang's eyes was flashing with coldness. He is not a person who had just arrived in this Three Kingdoms period but he is a person who had already battled too much and was already emitting bloodthirst.

What Liu Neng said all the clans joining the rebellion is correct. The Lu clan and Sun Ce had a grudge, naturally the Zhou clan will not inform them of the information regarding Han and Xu. These small clans were truly petty.

Liu Mang then said "Brother Ziji, you see the flames in this Wancheng city? We must extinguish them quickly, otherwise it will burn out the entire city. If we used water it is too slow, so instead we use blood. The flames will go out more quickly and it is much more convenient!"

Liu Kai shivered from that statement, this boy whose age is similar to his son can actually emit a coldness that pierces his bones.

TL: Ziji is Liu Kai’s courtesy name.

Chapter 124 – All Must Be Eliminated; The Extermination of Private Soldiers

“SHAAA, HAAAA!!!!!!!” Wancheng city has been engulfed in a sea of flames. Wailing and weeping; sounds of horror can be heard everywhere.

Liu Mang, in order to draw out the noble families who participated in rebellion, stayed inside Wancheng city with only 1,000 people. However, the noble’s private soldiers numbered more than 20,000 troops. Properly speaking, the battle should already be finished, but the sound of battle is still going.

In their eyes, everyone is an enemy and everyone who does not belong to the nobles need to be purged. Everyone including commoners are merit to them.

For example, the Yu clan’s private soldiers had beheaded more than 2000 people. From these numbers, 10% of them are part of Lu Bu’s army the remaining 90% are Wancheng city’s commoners.

Wancheng city is Lujiang’s government body. It governs several thousand commoners. But now, these commoners became a target for merit by the noble’s private soldiers.

Battles often took place in Wancheng City, so the commoners quickly locked their houses and hid inside them. But they cannot fight back, when the noble’s private soldiers crashed their doors forcefully, the private soldiers who were already in a frenzy, robbed their things and raped their women.

“Honorable soldier, I beg you, please spare us, please spare us!” An old man is pleading to the “honorable” soldier. On the face of this helpless old man there is a horrified expression.

“Spare you? Can sparing you give this “Honorable” me merits? Can it make this “Honorable” soldier become really honorable?!” The private soldier kicked the old man aside. These private soldiers are not stupid enough to take this old man’s head as a trophy. So instead, those noble private soldiers target men who are still in their prime, strong and healthy for their military merit.

He quickly targeted the youth who has already been scared stiff. “Poof!” Blood is bursting from that youth and spurted toward that private soldier’s face. That soldier just licked the blood with his tongue.

“No, no, no, no. My grandson Gou, my grandson Gou!” The old man who had been lying on the ground after seeing his grandson dead in front of him was truly heartbroken. That young man is his favorite grandson but he was no more.

“Heh, old man. You did not have any valuable things in your house, so I killed your grandson in exchange for it. You should be thankful that I did not let him suffer!” These private soldiers are ecstatic. Because he had obtained five heads for his promotion. The next five head can get him 100 taels of gold and if he did not want a promotion, his promotion can be exchanged with 500 taels of gold.

“Oh, oh, oh, Gou my grandson. GOU!!!!” The old man’s heart died. His only grandson had not yet married, but now he died under this butchers

knife.

Seeing that old man crying profusely, the private soldier muttered “Bah, no luck in this house! To the next house!!!”

“Wait, you and I still have a score to settle. You kill my GOU, RETURN MY GOU TO ME!!!!” Looking at that butcher about to leave. The old man suddenly got a burst of strength from adrenaline, and grabbed that private soldier. That private soldier did not notice at all that old man grabbed him and was judo-thrown by that old man.

He quickly fell down to the ground. His mouth is eating the yellow soil and his helmet already dropped.

“You accompany my Gou, GIVE ME BACK MY GOU!!!!” The old man was hit with grief and anger, actually giving that soldier a good fight.

“OLD FART, YOU WANT TO DIE? I'LL SEND YOU TO HELL ALONG WITH YOUR GRANDSON!!!” That private soldier slowly responded. He was stunned a moment ago, but now he has responded wildly. And because he is in pain, he got angry and choked the old man as fierce as possible.

“OLD FART!!! YOU!!! YOU DARE TO HIT ME!!!! I'LL KILL YOU LIKE A DOG!!!!”

“RETURN MY GOU, RETURN MY GOU TO ME!!!!” An old man is no match for a healthy young person. His neck was choked so hard so he is unable to breathe, however the old man just stubbornly held the private soldier's hair.

“RELEASE ME, RELEASE ME, OLD BASTARD!!!” Ancient people take pride in their long hair, because they believe that the hair is a gift from ones parents. Cutting your hair means that you cut down your own parents. Therefore in ancient times, people had long hair. Right now the private soldier's hair was held by the old man, it is really painful. So painful that his tears almost come out.

“RETURN MY GOU TO ME, RETURN MY GOU TO ME!!!” The old man just repeating same sentence over and over.

“AAAAHHHHHH!!!” The private soldier exerted his strength again and said “OLD BASTARD, LET GO OF MY HAIR, LET GO!!!!” after saying that, he quickly overturned his body so the old man is on the ground and he is above the old man.

Although the soil is quite muddy, it cannot hold the impact force exerted by that private soldier and so after three hits, that old man's forehead become bloody.

“RETURN MY GOU, MY GOU!!!!” the old man vomited blood.

“LET ME GO, LET ME GO!!!!” And with those words, that private soldier continued slamming that old man’s forehead against the ground.

The result of that, that old man's face became truly disfigured and unrecognizable. Blood and bone was mixed into one. The old man finally died, with blood and spinal fluid joining together.

“HAAAH, HAAAH, HAAAH, HAAAAH!!!!” That private soldier is huffing and puffing on the ground. This old bastard had died but his arm is still grabbing his hair. That private soldier tried to pry open that corpses hand

but was unable to do it because before he died, that old man used all of his strength on that grip, so it will not loosen again.

“Damned old bastard!” the private soldier was truly angry. This old bastard did not die peacefully but kept tormenting his hair. So the private soldier can only chop off his arm and look for another soldier to trim his hair.

That old man's outburst made that private soldier truly furious and he proceeded to burn his entire house along with its residences. With this, he had destroy a whole family along with their surname.

Such scene is very common in every corner of Wancheng city. Mad laughter in the air, raging sounds, begging for mercy, and screams for help are mixed together. Such scene is very common in times of war.

Liu Mang deployed his Urban Army. His Urban Army added with Wancheng city night-shift defenders and Liu clan's private soldiers, totaled 8,000 troops. Although the enemy had 20,000 troops, it did not worry Liu Mang even a bit.

Those rabble soldiers are not a match for his elite soldiers. On the way to purge them, Liu Mang looks on the street. The street color is no longer that of blue stone but already blood red. Above the street, those who died were not Lu Bu’s army but commoners who were lying dead.

The street was so littered with commoners it seemed like they are trash at a dumpster. They are wearing rough cotton clothes, truly miserable. The old and weak are directly killed, women were raped before they died and children were strangled to death, the healthy and young were

beheaded in order to become merit.

This is living hell.

“So this is cannibalism!” Liu Mang stopped for a moment to remember what Lu Bu told him in the tiger's den outskirts of Shucheng County (read chapter 74).

This is times of war, this is the time where human life is lower than a dog. The mistake not lies with the people but lies with current way of the world.

“No, this can be changed! I must change this time!” Liu Mang shook his head fiercely.

Liu Mang had decided that he must change this times of war into a peaceful one. But if he wanted to do it, he must sweep clean any obstacle in front of him.

The one who made the Han so decadent are these ambitious warlords, these nobles. Yes, these nobles are the one who made this hell, they must be sent into hell along with their ambitions, and this is Liu Mang's final decision.

“SHAAAA!!!!!” Liu Mang originally meant to negotiate with these nobles but that thought completely vanished. These nobles are not human, with their existence, commoners will not be able to live peacefully.

“WHO ARE YOU?!” A group of drunken noble private soldiers are looking at team of troops who is currently nearing their position. One of them quickly unsheathed their sword trying to stand firm.

Looking at those private soldiers who are blocking their way. Huang Zhong bit his teeth and screamed “Damned beast, give me your life!” Huang Zhong quickly burst out, his strength has reached the same level as Lu Bu which is the pinnacle of a super-general. So, he burst out just like an arrow that he used to shoot.

On his hand is his golden curved dao, any private soldier who blocked his way, was sliced into two. Anyone Cut into two from middle section (waist) did not immediately die.

“AAAAARRRRRGGGGHHHHH!!!!!” The drunken private soldier finally sobered up. He cannot stand anymore, and had an enormous rush of pain and kept stuttering “How how can this be, how, HOW!!!” His intestines are flying everywhere. This private soldier was trying to crawl wanting to collect his intestines, but his body was already cut in half.

His vision blurred in his last moments as he bled to death as he saw ; he saw the scene of his killer walking away.

After endless screaming in pain, that private soldier finally breathed his last. His face when he died showed a very fierce expression; holding very much pain.

Huang Zhong did not have sympathy for these damned beast. He dismounted and picked the thing that he held beside his sword. Huang Zhong picked up a dead baby with his umbilical cord still intact.

This baby is a stillborn. It was not mature enough to be birthed by its mother. Even before it came to this world, it was killed, ripped out from its mother’s womb.

This is murder. In times of war maybe human life is not valuable. But one cannot act heinously to this extent. Huang Zhong who had experienced many battles could also not bear anymore.

“KILL THEM ALL, NO ONE IS TO BE LEFT STANDING!!!!” Huang Zhong and Liu Mang the gave same order.

The private soldiers of these nobles, even though this clearly violated military law, Huang Zhong had decided to kill them all. They are not human, they are even lower than any beast.

Chapter 125 – Zhou Cheng's Heavy Infantry Troops; The "Black Flag" Moves

“REPORT!!!! Reporting to little lord! There is a news from the city!”

The messenger who came to Zhou clan’s mansion is dirty and unable to walk properly. His face is showing a horrified expression; the upper half of his body is bloody.

“News from the city? How?!” Zhou Cheng’s brow wrinkles, he did not have good feeling about the news.

“LU, LU, LU BU’S ARMY!!!!”

The messenger had not yet finished his sentence when a nearby middle-aged man quickly interrupted.

“Lu Bu’s army was annihilated by my private soldiers. On South Gate, none of Lu Bu’s army survived!” The one who said that is Yu Zheng, head of Yu clan. His responsibility is to occupy the South Gate, therefore he is the one who is most proud by now.

His private soldiers destroyed “3,000” of Lu Bu’s, his merit was suddenly boosted up so high. “Regarding the other gates, I do not know!” Yu Zheng said those words while looking at the other clan head with his eyes.

“Heh, sneering toward my advance on the North Gate, eh?!” The one who spoke was the head of the He clan, He Shuo. His face only showing resentful. What the hell he is talking about? How can he not know about

the other gates?

This head of Yu clan really did not know his place. So He Shuo just counter-sneered toward Yu Zheng “OOOOWWWW, 3,000 troops of Lu Bu’s army eh?!” WOOOOOOOW, Yu Zheng, you are truly great, your skills are top notch! I, He Shuo, really admire you very much!”

Is it true 3,000 troops of Lu Bu’s army was decimated by the Yu clan private soldiers? That number is the entirety of Lu Bu’s army inside Wancheng city. And this Yu Zheng said he has killed all 3,000 troops. Who would believe him?

Yu Zheng’s face become red from embarrassment. His private soldiers only killed less than 300 troops of Lu Bu’s army, and the rest of the numbers came from killing commoners. Yu Zheng not only obtained the heads of commoners but he also obtained the land from those commoners who just died.

Those who are stay dead stay dead. No one can claim their land especially if they have no heir. They usually merged the lands of these dead people into one huge plot and sold them.

At the same time in the corner of the room, there is someone who was discontent with the way He Shuo’s sneered. He then said “He Shuo, Yu Zheng can say number 3,000, but what about the He clan’s number of kills?!”

The one who spoke is head of the Lin clan and he is responsible for subjugating the West Gate. These three nobles are the largest nobles in Wancheng city, beside the Zhou clan, Liu clan and Lu clan and also Chen

clan.

"Boss Lin, why do you cover for him? I know, you must be in cahoots with this Yu Zheng to belittle me!" He Shuo got very angry.

"Even though you are not in cahoots with Yu Zheng. But Boss Lin, why don't you tell us clearly what is your intention?!" Although these clans are now collaborating with each other to dispatch their own troops.

They know that when Wancheng city fall into Sun Ce's hand once again, the division of power and influence will shift very great. Those whose merit are biggest will get a bigger portion. So, even though they are now allied, but they must still be on guard against each other.

"ENOUGH!!!!" Zhou Cheng hit the table as hard as he can as he stood up. "Are you going to keep fighting? If you need to quarrel, get out of my sight!" Zhou Cheng's brow wrinkled intensely, he is angry now. This messenger had not spoken anything regarding the army's movement, but these three clan heads quarreled endlessly. If these three people were not clan heads, perhaps Zhou Cheng will draw his sword and cut them one by one.

Hearing Zhou Cheng's anger, these three people quickly shut their mouth. They know who the person responsible for Wancheng city's re-subjugation. This young person is Zhou clan's little lord, he is Zhou Yu's cousin. His clan is one of the powerhouse clans in Jiangdong. With his words, those clan's merits will perish immediately.

"You, continue your message!" After looking at those three people stopping their bickering, Zhou Cheng pointed to the messenger and said

those words.

"Yes, sir! Enemies are flushing from the East Gate. Whenever they see us, private soldiers, they kill us instantly. They are merciless, even if we beg for mercy or surrender, they still kill us. The brothers, all of them unable to resist!" Said this soldier, his heart is wrenching.

His merit by beheading commoners and his valuables that he gained by snatching was lost immediately. But if he did not leave his valuables, perhaps he will have died from Lu Bu's army by now.

"Eh, East Gate?!" Zhou Cheng finally got an answer to his restlessness. "Wasn't that place the Liu clan's responsibility?!"

"Darn it, Liu Kai is truly useless! Defeated by Lu Bu army!" Yu Zheng started to boast his own merit.

"USELESS CLAN. The Liu clan is bigger than us, but they unexpectedly were unable to take the East Gate. Where can we put our face as Wancheng city's nobles?!"

"Furthermore, they are one of Han Dynasty's royalty and a descendant of Prince Jing of Zhongshan. Bah, this is really unexpected of them!" These three clan heads finally unified and toasted a drink together. The Liu clan's size and influence is bigger than the three of them combined. They want to further gain influence but was blocked Liu clan. Therefore they must join up together, in order to match their influence with the Liu clan. And Liu clan unexpectedly was beaten, how can those three not be rejoicing now?

With the topic changed suddenly, Zhou Cheng's hand was trembling from holding his anger. He feared that he cannot hold his anger and cut down one of these three people. But he immediately calmed himself down, what he didn't expect was the next piece of information would hit his gut very hard.

"The Liu clan, the Liu clan is the one who leads Lu Bu's army!" The soldier have ended his weeping. Because when he thought about those who died because of their greed, he is truly relieved that he is still alive.

"IMPOSSIBLE, HOW CAN THAT BE!?" Zhou Cheng denied immediately. The Liu clan is Wancheng city's oldest noble family. When Lu Bu exterminated the Chen clan, the Liu clan certainly wanted to kill Lu Bu from their heart. They will definitely agree to ally with us.

Moreover, during that night banquet, when Lu Bu army robbed granary from various clans, the loss of the Liu clan was the biggest. Robbing people's wealth was equal to murdering their parents. Moreover, at that time, Liu Kai also participated in that acting that night, in order not to give Lu Bu grain and provisions.

He had offended Lu Bu's army completely. How is it possible that they surrendered to Lu Bu's army?

"No, it is the truth, it is the truth!" The messenger argued. "I am one of the Zhang clan's private soldier, I have seen him when my master attended the dinner in Liu clan's mansion. I have also seen him again in banquet that night in Administration Office, so I am certain Liu Kai is with Lu Bu's army. But I also see him riding beside a golden-armored general!"

“Golden-armored general?!” Zhou Cheng stood up. He had seen a golden-armored general before. This type of helmet and armor only existed in Lu Bu’s army. If he had not seen him personally perhaps whatever this soldier said, Zhou Cheng would not believe it.

“Golden-armored general!!!” Those clan heads nearby also panicked. They had gone to the Administration Office to attend the banquet. They have seen, beside Lu Bu, there was an armor hung beside him. Is that golden armor from that time?

This means…. LU BU HAS RETURNED TO WANCHENG CITY!!!! Lu Bu already stroke terror in these clan heads’ heart. He can kill people as easily as breathing. If Lu Bu kills them, who among Wancheng city can help them?

“DO NOT PANIC!!!!” Zhou Cheng knew that this big news is not good, but he calmed himself down and said “Gentlemen, this golden-armored general might be not Lu Bu!”

He can said that, because he saw Lu Bu leave Wancheng city with his own eyes and went to Wuwei Village. And also he has gotten news that said after Lu Bu cut down Zhou Kang, he stationed himself in Wuwei Village. The distance is quite far, so it is impossible for Lu Bu to return so quickly.

Zhou Cheng should have been angry but was actually relaxed. If he dies now it is better to die with honor. If he did not have the determination to die, how could he plot to take over Wancheng city again? Even if it is Lu Bu, Zhou Cheng did not mind to die by his hand.

A person with a halberd and a good horse can strike fear in all of people's heart. In Xiapi and Kaiyang, 100,000 troops of Cao Cao army was besieging them, but Lu Bu can still go out kill Cao Chun and Li Dian. Making Cao army return to their HQ disabled. If Cao's elite 100,000 troops cannot defeat Lu Bu, how can these rabble soldiers have a chance against him?

But Zhou Cheng also remembered regarding golden-armored general, beside Lu Bu, there is another person who wore golden armor. That is his son-in-law, Prince of Shu, Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang.

"It's may be his son-in-law!" Zhou Cheng then said.

"Eh, Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang?!" The three clan heads, Yu Zheng, He Shuo and Lin's clan head, froze a moment. "Isn't he the winner of the war of words at the opening banquet by Milord? The one who made Qin Song and Chen Duan vomit blood?!"

When Lu Bu arrived at Wancheng city at first time, Sun Ce held a banquet for him. At that time, those clan heads saw that this Prince of Shu is only a scholar level character. How can he become a military general?!

"Yes, it is him!" Zhou Cheng sneered heavily. Hearing the Prince of Shu's true name was just like hearing a thunder in all of Jiangdong noble clans. This is a person who humiliated Sun Ce's two top advisors and also the one who humiliated all of Jiangdong's student scholars to the extent, they are unable to show their face in the public.

To be honest, Zhou Cheng also did not care for those two advisors and those scholars, he even had a happy expression because finally all of

those people were given a lesson. The truth is, since it was times of peace time, he wanted to meet this Prince of Shu personally and drink liquor heartily with him.

However that longer feasible to meet him peacefully! He must retake Wancheng city and must sweep all the obstacles before him, no matter how good his impression is toward the Prince of Shu! He decided Lu Bu's son-in-law must die.

"He leads the Urban Army, eh?!" Zhou Cheng has obtained Intel regarding Urban Army. They emerged in Mt. Bagong battle. Their casualties is more than half and was almost annihilated. But they were able to hold Chen Lan and Lei Bo's assault.

"Heh, that division only formed several months before, and their numbers are only less than 3,000 troops and still he dares to fight against me?!"

Zhou Cheng's expression revealed a hint disdained. So, what if they defeated Chen Lan and Lei Bo? They were only a bandit mob, no an organized unit at all. Can they stand against my 3,000 elites?!

"FINE THEN, since you, Lu Bu, stretched out your palm. I will cut off your fingers!" Zhou Cheng said coldly. Wancheng city only had 20,000 troops. Private soldiers from various clans amounted to 15,000. 3,000 are elites of the Zhou clan. These 3,000 troop unit is called the Black Flag, because 3,000 of them were personally trained by the Zhou Clan from childhood. These people were cultivated by the Zhou and is one of Zhou clan's trump cards to survive these times of war.

They were given by Zhou Yi to Zhou Cheng. They have infiltrated

Wancheng city at the time Lu Bu's main army was still in there. They were dressed as merchants and commoners to enter Wancheng city and after that they were quickly gathered in the Zhou clan's mansion.

3 of 4 gates of Wancheng city were taken thanks to them. They were the black-uniformed men that surrounded Old Wu and Han.

"Lu Bu, oh Lu Bu, you better quickly rush back here to prepare for your son-in-law's funeral!" Zhou Cheng's face already emitting killing intent. "Pass my military order, the Black Flag is to follow me to annihilate Lu Bu's army!"

"YES, SIR!!!!" Everyone is standing after receiving the order. If normal people were to hear about war and battles they would naturally be frightened. However these elites had no place for fear. If they showed fear, it will only give the enemy a big advantage toward them.

When these elite troops heard the word "War", their blood thirst only rose. Even if their hand only held a wooden sword or hammer, they can dig out their enemies' flesh and blood.

These elites are just like the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Formation Breaker and the Ferocious Cavalry before they were destroyed by the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Now Black Flag was about to show their elite status!

Chapter 126 – The Urban Army vs The Black Flag

“General, spare me. General, have mercy!” Said a private soldier cowering in fear while urinating himself.

The Urban army only numbered 3,000 troops. Liu Mang separated those 3,000 troops into two squadrons. 1,500 led by Liu Mang himself, 1,500 was led by Huang Zhong. Another 1,500 was from the Liu clan’s private soldiers and was led by Liu Kai.

Together, Huang Zhong and Liu Kai simultaneously attacked the South Gate and North Gate. The 1,500 troops led by Liu Mang, attacked the West Gate.

How can these private soldiers be a match for the Urban Army? They were defeated at the first encounter. What they were expert in doing were killing commoners, burning, plundering and raping. Even if they had strength, they only had strength for orgies, not battle.

Liu Mang's Urban Army is truly invincible right now. Everywhere they went private soldiers died and were swept aside. That resulted, many troops are screaming “We surrender!!!” But unfortunately, Liu Mang's order was to kill them all.

The private soldiers who beg to surrender had truly bad luck. The Urban Army would initiate the battle with “If you surrender, we will not kill you!” Yet, once they threw down their weapons, the Urban Army proceeded to kill them.

Those who were beheaded can be considered lucky. A Majority of them were cut in the middle section or their stomachs were slit open. Those who were sliced like that, did not die immediately, but was tormented for at least 10 minutes before they died. Inside half of Wancheng city, screams of pain and endless torment were present.

The Urban Army became an extension of Liu Mang’s will. Having been influenced by Liu Mang's anger and they just acted quickly without mercy.

Because of their concentration and speed, they had reached the front of the West Gate. Liu Mang's speed is the quickest out of Huang Zhong and Liu Kai and because North Gate and South Gate had a lot of soldiers, both of them were delayed in their advance.

“NEIGGGHHHH!” Suddenly Liu Mang's warhorse is neighing. On the ground there is an intermittent vibration. The Urban Army currently instantly stopped moving under Liu Mang's order, but after they felt this vibration, they quickly gather again around Liu Mang.

This kind of vibration can only be made by elite troops in large-scale movement.

Liu Mang then took up the telescope in his hand and sure enough, there was a battalion of elite soldiers, moving toward West Gate toward the Urban Army's direction.

They were all wearing black heavy armor and heavy weaponry. They could be compared to the Formation Breakers of Lu Bu’s army.

“What are these guys?!” Liu Mang's brow wrinkled. This heavy infantry

soldiers is an elite unit. Nobles' private soldiers are all garbage, so those nobles are unable to have these kind of elites. Hell, even Sun Ce's army will not have these kind of heavy infantry, they are focusing their power on naval battles, and they definitely will not have heavy infantry.

Liu Mang's deduction is right. Sun Ce's army did not have this kind of heavy infantry. These heavy infantry came from the Zhou clan, from Shucheng County.

Presently they had 3,000 troops of the Black Flag! They are the Zhou clan's private property. Each Black Flag soldiers was trained from their childhood. Originally there were 5,000 orphans who were trained but in the end, they only 3,000 troops were left. The others died during training.

The Black Flag's body armor and weaponry was also built by the Zhou clan. Shucheng County's foremost natural resource is iron ore. The Zhou clan had been mining and refining lots of iron ore for a lot of years in order to make these 3,000 armors and weaponry.

These Black Flag originally was reserved by the Zhou clan to be used by Sun Ce to fight for hegemony and also in order to raise the Zhou clan's importance in Jiangdong. What a pity, right now they had not merged with Sun Ce's army and must be deployed in order to retake this Wancheng city.

"Damn, those are heavy infantries!!!" Liu Mang had seen a heavy infantry squad before. But that is only the Formation Breaker. The Formation Breaker originally, before they even met Liu Mang only numbered 800 troops but their strength equaled to 8000 troops.

During their trip to Kaiyang, remnants of Lu Bu’s army met with Chen Deng. At that time, Liu Mang truly knew the horror of Formation Breaker bring. With only 700 troops they dared to challenge 15,000 of Chen Deng's troops in order to lure the enemy. Perhaps if Formation Breaker were still freshly equipped, they would have gobbled up those 8,000 troops completely.

Although Liu Mang does not know their strength, looking at their discipline and organized march, he knew that this heavy infantry would be terrifying if directly confronted.

“REPORT!!! In front, we have discovered Lu Bu’s army!” Zhou Cheng did not have telescope like Liu Mang. He can only rely on his scouts’ notification.

“Oh, finally we meet them?!” Zhou Cheng's eyes are flashing dangerously. “How many of them?!” If we meet that Prince of Shu and his urban army, then it is very good. One blow and everything is done.

“They only have less than 1,500 troops!!!” the scout replied.

“1,500 troops?! Heh, did they divided their forces?!” Zhou Cheng really did not expect for Lu Bu's son-in-law to dare divide their forces. According to information that Zhou Cheng obtained about these enemy forces is, they only had at most 8,000 troops and that is including with Liu clan's private soldiers. Now the enemy in front only had 1,500 troops. They certainly divided their forces to attack North Gate and South Gate.

“Young master Zhou. We have to take the initiative now, we propose to split our forces to defend the other gates!” Hearing that the enemy in

front only had 1,500 troops, the three clan heads did not want to think anymore, because all that they thought of now was to split their forces to defend the gates.

The South Gate and North Gate was already in the hands of He clan and Yu clan. If they were overtaken again by the Urban Army, then it is over. Their private soldiers were already at their limits. If they lost these private soldiers, even if Wancheng city was retaken again by Jiangdong, they will lose a big portion of power and influence.

“Heh, do not worry, just go and save your gate!” Head of Lin clan, Lin Feng, retorted coldly. Lin clan is responsible for West Gate. Now the West Gate is on Lin clan's hand, because there are these 3,000 heavy infantries.

Looking at those heavy infantries, Lin Feng just swallowed his saliva. With them as West Gate gates guardian, it can be said, it is truly impregnable.

Now Lin Feng was truly looking forward for He Shuo and Yu Zheng to lose. With the Liu clan rebelling and the Yu clan and He clan losing, his Lin clan will rise to become Wancheng city’s oldest nobles and of course he will have the most territory and a lot of influence after that.

“HUMPH!!!” He Shuo and Yu Zheng just snorted coldly. Zhou Cheng could also only wave his hand, so those three people can go away from his sight ASAP.

“Very well, good luck to all of you!” After Zhou Cheng said that, those three clan heads sped away on their horses toward their respective city gates.

“Heh, you deploy heavy infantry to attack me, eh?! HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!” Liu Mang sneered.

“Seriously, you really think highly of this Liu Mang!” Liu Mang then thought “If these heavy infantry appeared on a big battlefield, naturally the Formation Breakers and the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will be deployed to take care of them. Now all of you suddenly appeared in Wancheng city, then let me, Liu Mang, send you all to hell now”

“Formation now!” Cheng Yu has been with Liu Mang a long time, naturally he knows what Liu Mang meant and quickly arranged 1,000 Urban Army to form the Macedonian Phalanx.

“Very good, they are truly discipline!” Zhou Cheng looking at those Urban Army, quickly replied

“We should also show that we are also elites, we cannot let them to be disappointed! Formation now!”

“OH, OH, OH, OH!!!!” Screamed the Black Flag while forming its formation. Their motion really made Liu Mang startled. Their speed is really good.

The Urban Army can form the phalanx formation so quickly because of their practice and their armor and weaponry are not as heavy like those in front of him. Those Black Flag, each of them is carrying heavy armor and weapon.

The armor and weaponry were about 50 kg, with upper body having 25 kg, and lower body also having 25 kg also. Their defensive power is very strong but they placed so much burden on the soldier. But their speed is really fast when forming its formation. They are in another class of their

own.

But as formidable as they are, if the Urban Army now feared them then it is over! So Liu Mang hit his horse to get in front of phalanx formation. “My brothers, comrades. I tell you now, our opponent now are heavy infantries. Their numbers are threefold that of what we have. We cannot even penetrate their helmet and armor, now tell me, are you afraid?!”

“WE ARE NOT AFRAID!!!” The Urban Army shouted loudly with one voice.

“HEH, Not afraid?!” Liu Mang sneered. “How can you not afraid?! Look at your palms, it is already wet with cold sweat. Wipe your foreheads, it is also covered with cold sweat! And you still say you are not afraid?! Even I am afraid of facing them, how can all of you say you are not afraid?!”

When Liu Mang said that, several soldiers revealed embarrassed faces. From those 3,000 people, the ones that can be considered veterans are only about several hundreds of people, but right now Liu Mang only half of those 3,000 troops further lowering the number of veterans.

“We are afraid, of course we are afraid! However, do we have a choice?!” Liu Mang shouted

“All of you still remember Battle of Mt. Bagong?! First, we had the Yu Province Cavalry as our opponent and then Chen Lan and Lei Bo. At that time, we had no other place to go. We know during that battle, most of you were protected by the other brothers who have passed away.

At that time you were the cowards, fear got into your hearts and in the end, your bothers were slaughtered one by one. The enemy pursued you

and even many of you died by my, Liu Mang's hand."

(Read chapter 56 – 62 for Urban Army first battle).

The more Liu Mang talked about the Battle of Mt Bagong, the more these soldiers' faces looked down. The Urban Army now, was no longer those 1,000 troops battle hardened, healthy and vigorous troops. Currently they are comprised of those who survived from Mt. Bagong's battle, the supply troops and the remnants of the Urban Army's original members.

Supply troops basically form the second line in the army. If you have skill, you will be chosen to become one of the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker. So, the remaining supply troop members are usually those who are old, weak, sick and disabled.

The real reason for Liu Mang to incorporate those supply troops into Urban Army is because those who are sick, elderly and weak have already been injured and exhausted or killed. From 8,000 supply troops only 3,000 managed to survive and Liu Mang himself killed 1,000 of them.

The rest of them they were slaughtered by the Yu Province Cavalry or ran away. Those who survived that battle, are those who helped to defend the road with the Urban Army or those who ganged up to beat down Chen Lan. This explained that they had battle experience and will to survive in battle.

And this is what Liu Mang needs in his Urban Army. The will to live and fight even against insurmountable odds.

“All of you who survived that battle, I congratulate you! However, do not forget that today all of you are alive because 432 brothers died in your stead. Today, a similar situation is happening. Your opponent are 3,000 heavy infantry. If you are afraid, then leave this place now. I will not blame you for desertion. Because if you are here, you are only an easy prey and will only become the enemies’ merit!

If you are not afraid just like you said, even though I, Liu Mang, cannot guarantee all of you victory, I can guarantee that I will not stand behind and abandon you. Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!!!”

“Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!!”

The Urban Army suddenly emitted strong killing intent. This kind of killing intent can only be seen from the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

"Inspiring morale? I will tell you in the face of absolute strength, all are futile!" Zhou Cheng coldly humphed and lifted his hand.

“All UNITS ATTACK!!!” Two voices, two forces, two beliefs clashing with each other.

Chapter 127 - The Urban Army Retreats

The Black Flag made their move first. They are heavy infantries, and their method of attack is crushing their enemies with sheer strength. Although they are slow, every step they took would strike fear in their opponent's hearts. The imposing look of their heavy armor would make anyone cower.

"Good, maintain this momentum. CRUSH THEM NOW!!!!" Zhou Cheng is intoxicated with this feeling. This heavy infantry is truly awesome in Zhou Cheng's eyes. These heavy infantry is the result the Zhou clan's many years of training. They will become the Zhou clan's barrier in this times of war and will become a bridge for the Zhou clans rise to fame and fortune.

This Wancheng city will be the Zhou clan's tribute for Sun Ce.

"These heavy infantry is as good as Formation Breaker!" Liu Mang muttered to himself, it was truly comparable with the Formation Breaker. When at the road to Kaiyang, Liu Mang had been fighting alongside Formation Breaker, at that time, the Formation Breaker formed a tortoise shell formation and when enemy came, the formation swallowed 2,000 troops in one blow.

And the Black Flag in front of him, is similar to the Formation Breaker of that time. If this is a battle in open-field, these the Black Flag would not be so good, because they simply did not have enough speed to do attack and any enemy can avoid them, but currently the Urban Army was trapped inside the city, unable to maneuver freely. So they can only meet

them head-on.

“Raise bows!!! SHOOT!!!” For the Black Flag to reach them, they required quite a lot of time. Liu Mang needed to cut down their numbers first by volleying. The opponents are wearing heavy armor, but with a volley and with gravity added, they should able to pierce their armor. With Liu Mang implementing three waves of firing, they are able to volley-fire without stopping.

If ordinary foot soldiers were the one who is charging right now, their numbers will be reduced greatly after this attack. Even the elite soldiers like the Danyang soldiers can only bite their teeth and retreat when faced with this kind of volley-fire. And now that volley-fire is falling toward the Black Flag like acid-rain.

However, that volley-fire proved to be futile by the Black Flag's armor. The volley-fire simply cannot penetrate their heavy armor and they occasionally deflected the arrows using their own weapons. Even 1 or 2 people just snorted coldly toward Liu Mang to show that his efforts were futile.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA!!! Useless, useless!! Your volley-fire is useless to my elites!!!!” Zhou Cheng's face become more fierce and said “Increase speed, grind them to the ground!!!”

“HMPH?!” Liu Mang's brow wrinkled. Is the heavy infantry this strong?! If the enemies were heavy cavalry, Liu Mang's arrows can at least bring injury to their warhorse. But his volley-fire only tickle the Black Flag.

“General, should we rush them?!” Cheng Yu proposed his method.

When heavy infantry meet with each other, there will be a duel naturally.

In Liu Mang's hand now there is only 1,000 troops and they are forming a formation of 300 great shields at the front, 300 spearmen, 300 archers and 100 cavalry soldiers that act as phalanx bodyguard. Those 300 great shield soldiers is the one who wore the heavy armor.

Looking at the Black Flag getting nearer and nearer Liu Mang said his order “Urban Army, first row lift your shield!”

Cheng Yu was really excited. He is a general, so naturally he longs for contributing merit to his military service, and is also eager to defeat the enemy on battlefield. The spearmen were already prepared and pointed their spears toward them.

Cheng Yu also lift his hand. When Liu Mang issued his order, he will bring his cavalry soldiers to do the initial assault, tearing open these heavy infantries stubborn defense with the cavalry's momentum.

However Liu Mang’s next words surprised everyone on the field, making even Cheng Yu vomit blood.

“RETREAT!!!!"

“WHAT?! RETREAT??” Cheng Yu really cannot believe his order. Where can we retreat?! Right now they cannot advance or retreat, we are sitting ducks.

The last result is, they will be suffocated by the opposition and will be

annihilated inside the city.

Although Cheng Yu did not want to believe the order, Liu Mang's order was law, so the only thing Cheng Yu can do is prepare his cavalry unit to retreat.

"Heh, want to run away?! A moment ago, you were truly spirited and now you want to run?! TOO LATE FOR ALL OF THAT!!! I WANT TO GO WHERE YOU WANT TO GO!!! ALL ARMY FULL RUSH!!!!" Zhou Cheng truly become crazy. As long as he killed this Lu Bu's son-in-law, he would bring the biggest gift to Sun Ce. Lu Bu's army has killed Sun Ce's wife Da Qiao, and for that reason, now Sun Ce is storming Wancheng city.

So, killing Lu Bu's beloved son-in-law and giving his head to Sun Ce, it is certainly the best gift.

"WANT TO KILL ME? THEN COME AND GET ME!!!" Liu Mang is really annoyed with these Black Flag because they did not want to release him at all.

"QUICK, FULL RETREAT, THROW THE GREAT SHIELD!!!" The front row of Urban Army is holding the great shield. Those great shields that Liu Mang brought was incorporated into Formation Breaker after Battle of Mt. Bagong.

The Urban Army now is also using the great shields because of its good defenses but it is very heavy and will hinder their retreat speed as well, so Liu Mang ordered them to discard the great shield and they all complied with Liu Mang's order.

As a reaction the Black Flag also increased their speed. Their appearance was like a tiger closing in on its prey, once they reached their

prey, they will surely die.

"General, we have discarded our shields! What is next!!!?" Cheng Yu was anxious. What kind of army retreated before even battling? He even ordered for their weaponry to be discarded? If this continues, what else will be discarded? Did Liu Mang want them to fight barehanded and naked!?

"ALL TROOPS, DISCARD YOUR HELMETS AND ARMOR!!!" Liu Mang did not pay attention to Cheng Yu but issues order directly. Eh, after discarding the shield, they now discarded their helmets and armor?

With this, the Urban Army could be described as armor less. What good it can bring with this fucked-up strategy?

If anyone saw this, they would say that Urban Army is truly routed. The only thing left is their banner. If they threw down their banner, then this Urban Army can be considered defeated, even if all of their troops are intact.

"After they thrown down their shield, now they also threw down their helmet?!" Zhou Cheng become really confused.

Normal soldiers only wear lightweight iron armor, their armor is so thin that it like a padded aluminum foil. When they are faced with a volley-fire, they will be dead immediately.

Helmets and arm guards are usually made of stronger material in order to protect their arms and head. They were built like that so the enemies'

attack can avoid their vitals as well as countering their enemies attack.

The best armor and helmet is usually reserved for General and Commander-in-chief, their helmet and armor provided very strong defense and was also custom-made in order for them to be comfortable while wearing it.

But now those enemies just discarded their helmet and armor and great shield. They are completely exposed, vitals and all. Are they feigning? Is this a ploy?

Zhou Cheng hesitated, he wanted to make his army stop their advance, but the following event truly made him to discard his hesitation and proceed on an all-out attack.

“Discard the banner, NOW!!!” Liu Mang’s shouting is very clear and his troops proceeded to throw down their black banner with the “Liu” character on it.

A banner represent who is the current division commander and it was a signal for all the troops that their commander is still fighting with them. Since Liu Mang ordered them to throw down their banner, is the general requesting for a surrender?

If a banner has been thrown down, usually that means the commander-in-chief had died, or escaped or requested for surrender and will destroy the morale of that particular division.

Therefore, the banner is like the manifestation of the unit’s morale

visible beside the commander-in-chief. Without a banner, it means the unit has no morale and it means that they admit defeat.

"HOHOHO!!! Are you requesting for a surrender?! I WILL NOT ALLOW YOU TO SURRENDER!!!!"Zhou Cheng has decided to take Liu Mang's head for big merit. How can he let Liu Mang live?

"ALL ARMY HEAR MY COMMAND!!!! PURSUE LU BU'S ARMY!!! DESTROY THEM!!! ANNIHILATE THEM!!! ANYONE WHO KILLS A SOLDIER GETS 1,000 TAELS OF GOLD!!! KILL FIVE SOLDIERS, I WILL GRANT YOU YOUR FREEDOM AND I WILL MAKE YOU A FIRST-GRADE OFFICIAL!!! KILL THAT GOLDEN-ARMORED GENERAL, AND YOU WILL BE ADOPTED INTO MY ZHOU CLAN, YOU WILL BRING HONOR TO YOUR ANCESTORS!!!"

Zhou Cheng shouted all of the possible rewards. Hearing Zhou Cheng's command, suddenly those Black Flag soldiers who were already exhausted from pursuing the Urban Army was re-motivated again to kill the enemy soldiers.

The Black Flag is the Zhou clan's private soldier but they are actually all Zhou clan slaves. So as long as they can kill these Lu Bu's soldiers, they will have big merit waiting for them.

With 1,000 taels of gold, they can buy their freedom.

Becoming a first-grade official means their path is opened to become a general in Zhou clan.

Being adopted into the Zhou clan means their descendants will

become nobles and they will enjoy all benefits of a noble, they are no longer slaves.

"SHA, SHA, SHAAAAA!!!!" Those Black Flag soldiers who were originally exhausted suddenly restored their stamina and sped up toward the Urban Army. Their killing intent rose up again and their swords were thirsting for blood.

"AAAAHHHHHHH!!!!" Some of the Urban Army's rear lines who suffered from foot cramps was killed by the Black Flag. They had already thrown away their helmets, armor and great shield, they were only equipped with a long sword or spear. Naturally they were not a match for the Black Flag and was swallowed instantly by their attack.

Even as the rear lines were gobbled up, it did not hinder the Black Flag's advance.

Cheng Yu yelled toward Liu Mang "GENERAL, IF WE KEEP THIS UP, WE WILL BE ANNIHILATED, CHENG YU REQUESTS TO ATTACK!!!"

Those comrades died without even putting up a fight. Earlier, they have not done anything and only sent volley-fire and immediately after that, they withdrew. Cheng Yu's heart was truly uncomfortable.

Liu Mang's mood is also very uncomfortable. When he heard the scream of those soldiers dying, his heart was rending. Although he is truly grieving but he cannot stop for he had not completed his ploy, if he stopped now, then it is the end.

“If I let you fight now, you will die like a dog!” Although Cheng Yu’s squadron was heavy cavalry, their numbers were too little. 100 people daring to charge into 3,000 heavy infantries? This is just like when he fought Chen Lan and Lei Bo. It will definitely annihilate Cheng Yu’s troops. Cheng Yu’s idea is stupid and Liu Mang will never agree with him.

But Cheng Yu pleaded “Please General, allow us cavalry squadron to charge them! We would rather die trying, than die….!!!” Cheng Yu had not said his entire sentence he was shushed by Liu Mang.

Liu Mang knows what he wanted to say. Cheng Yu also knows that 100 cavalry troops fighting 3,000 heavy infantry troops will result in complete annihilation. But he must request to fight, to appease these comrades who died and also he did not want to be regarded as useless.

Another reason was to cover General Liu Mang’s retreat. If the general lives, then the Urban Army can make their comeback. Cheng Yu was muddleheaded now, to understand Liu Mang’s ploy.

So Cheng Yu was determined to let these 100 cavalry troops become a sacrifice to cover Liu Mang’s retreat! At least they can hold these 3,000 heavy infantries for quite a long time. Cheng Yu has seen the Black Flag’s prowess, even if the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry was the one who is here, their casualties will be very big.

Looking at Cheng Yu’s determined expression, Liu Mang can only bit his teeth and ordered him to attack, and also because Black Flag has slowed down their advance meant, cavalry can show their momentum.

“Fine! Cheng Yu, I will give you an opportunity to attack. You can charge

the enemies but only one time. Attack them from their flank and return to me IMMEDIATELY!

I need you!

The Urban Army needs you!

Without Cheng Yu and your cavalry squadron, the Urban Army is no longer the Urban Army!”

Liu Mang truly cared for his cavalry squadron. Because Liu Mang had once led a charge against Chen Lan and Lei Bo, and none of them survived including Xu Cheng. All of them died protecting Liu Mang. With his previous squadron annihilated, Liu Mang did not want to lose a second time.

However, their opponents are different. At that time, Liu Mang met with 3,000 light-armored troops led by Chen Lan and Lei Bo. In contrast, Cheng Yu’s opponents right now are 3,000 heavy infantries.

Defeat is certain.

Chapter 128 - The Last Stand

"HAHAHAHAHAHA, you want to charge my heavy infantries with that cavalry? Perhaps if your heavy cavalry numbers equaled my heavy infantry, I will be scared. But you actually dispatched only 100 cavalry soldiers to fight my 3,000 heavy infantries. Oh, Your Highness Prince of Shu, this Zhou Cheng really overestimated your abilities!"

Zhou Cheng dispelled all of the bad feelings in his heart. He thought there will be ambush after this. If not, how can those people so easily be routed? Both armies had not yet clashed but Zhou Cheng decided that he has seen the depths of the Prince of Shu's abilities.

He decided that this Prince of Shu is garbage. If not, how can his soldiers be routed so easily?

Regarding the great shield and armor that was discarded by Urban Army, Zhou Cheng had seen them and even picked up a few.

Zhou Cheng did not know how much ore was used to use to make that shield, but that is definitely not inferior to the shields his heavy infantries used and was in fact lighter.

The shield, helmet and armor were made by Liu Mang by utilizing a small blast furnace during the calm period after Lu Bu got Wancheng city. However, those were made in a hurry and was definitely not a good quality like those that he brought back from the future.

In ancient times, defensive power was proportional to weight. The more heavy an armor, the better its defensive properties. These heavy armor that the Black Flag used is weighed about 50 kg with for the upper body armor and lower body. In addition there was the heavy sword and shield. The burden placed on one person is actually totaled 70 kg. Such armor can drain people’s physical stamina.

Over 150lbs

The Zhou clan secretly picked up 5,000 orphans to train to become the Black Flag. But from those 5,000 orphans, left only 3,000. These 3,000 troops were all elites and their height is more than 180 cm, so they definitely can put on heavy armor.

A little over 5 11’

But these heavy armor are spoils of war, its weight was only half of the refined armor from Black Flag. With kind this armor, Zhou the clan can make two battalions of the Black Flag. Zhou Cheng has decided, if he catches up to the Prince of Shu, he will interrogate him on how to build these armor and shields before he kills him. This kind of armor and shield can boost his Black Flag's combat capability by several folds.

Thinking of these armor mixed with his Black Flag’s combat capability, made Zhou Cheng's eyes painted with greed.

Cheng Yu who is with cavalry squadron charging towards the Black Flag's flank under Liu Mang's order exclaimed

“BASTARDS, YOU ATTACK MY CITY FROM INSIDE, KILLED MY COMRADES. IT IS PAYBACK TIME FOR YOUR SINS!!!!”

These cavalry soldiers are the Urban Army's elites. They are comprised of the Urban Army's original members who survived Battle of Mt. Bagong and those who survived Kaiyang's siege.

If Cheng Yu had 300 cavalry soldiers, he had confidence that he can charge into 5,000 regular foot soldiers. He truly had confidence in his Urban Army brothers’ prowess. But currently he only had these 100 brothers and his opponents were 3,000 heavy infantries. Cheng Yu gulped down his saliva and took a deep breath to calm down his nerves and raised his spear.

TL: Cavalry vs Heavy Infantries. It would be like 5 Tanks VS 200 Navy Seals armed with Grenades and C-4

“URBAN ARMY, TOGETHER WE LIVE OR DIE; TOGETHER,WE SHARE RICHES AND HONOR!!!”

"TOGETHER WE LIVE OR DIE; TOGETHER WE SHARE RICHES AND HONOR!!!!" These words left a deep impression to the Urban Army veterans.

Liu Mang let them eat delicacies that was only reserved for their lord Lu Bu. He also shared his reward from Battle of Mt. Bagong. Remembering the Battle of Mt. Bagong, the Urban Army was faced with 2,000 troops of Yu Province Cavalry and was besieged from the flank by 3,000 troops of foot soldiers from Chen Lan and Lei Bo.

At that time, Liu Mang unexpectedly led 100 of his cavalry troops to counter-charge Chen Lan and Lei Bo. Even though they were not elites but they able to annihilate Liu Mang's cavalry squadron and Liu Mang himself almost perished.

With this kind of general that treat his own men like his own brothers, it will be unfair if they did not go all out, even if they already lost their helmet and armor. As long as their heart still beating, they will continue to fight for this general.

Zhou Cheng also humphed coldly and said “OVERCONFIDENT, ALL OF YOU LIKE ANTS TRYING TO SHAKE A TREE!” Zhou Cheng really did not care for those cavalry. Jiangdong’s area is not suitable for raising horses and so what?

Instead cavalry, we can use heavy infantries as substitute. If ordinary cavalry soldiers met with this heavy infantries, the cavalry soldiers would be decimated.But if they meet with heavy cavalry, then Zhou Cheng might become perplexed because both of them will definitely have a huge casualties.

However, the one who charged only was these 100 heavy cavalries, what can they do to his heavy infantries?

Zhou Cheng's vision quickly changed from those cavalry soldiers who attacked their flank to the currently escaping Urban Army. Those Urban Army ran faster because currently their cavalry squadron is slowing down the Black Flag.

“I WILL NOT LET THEM ESCAPE!!!” Zhou Cheng's target has not changed

from the very start, he wanted Liu Mang's head and he wanted Liu Mang's technology to build these armor and shields in order to fortify Wancheng city. Decimating that cavalry squadron will not bring either of those merits.

"CHANGE FORMATION!!!" Cheng Yu issued his order. The entire squadron quickly changed into wedge formation. This formation is used in order to "bleed the enemy's nose" and confuse enemies, therefore opening for further damage.

"CHARRGGGEEEEE!" These 100 cavalry troops led by Cheng Yu are showing the momentum of 1,000 cavalry troops. This is what Zhang Liao taught the Urban Army's cavalry squadron.

He taught that the cavalry squadron must have the momentum to kill in one charge. That way, it will strike fear in the enemy's heart and bring great confusion. And if that happens, the cavalry squad would have won half of the battle.

When Zhang Liao led the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, during their initial charge, they usually spread out first in order to gain momentum and strike fear into the enemy's heart by trembling the earth and raising dust. They can do that, with a minimum of 1,000 cavalry troops in order to reach the momentum of 10,000 cavalry troops.

Before they approach the enemy, their formation changed into wedge formation that pierced the enemy's heart.

With the Urban Army's distance getting farther, Zhou Cheng changed his target and exclaimed "SINCE THOSE CAVALRIES ARE SEEKING DEATH,

KILL THEM FOR ME!!! CHANGE DIRECTION, CHARRGGGEEEEE!!!” Those 3,000 Black Flag quickly change direction and Black Flag's mighty wave is about to meet the cavalry squadron's charge.

“BANG!!!!” The sound of metal clashing reverberated. Both of them did not use any skills or strategies. Only pure strength was involved. The Heavy infantries’ method of fighting is overwhelming the enemy with sheer numbers and with their heavy armor protecting them, they will certainly not receive too much damage from metal clashing.

While the opposite, Cheng Yu is relying on horsepower momentum. That short charge that his cavalry squadron initiated unexpectedly can match with these heavy infantries momentum.

“BANG!!!” Heavy armor that the heavy infantries used is definitely very strong. However a few of them was suddenly rammed by the cavalry's momentum and some of them were rammed twice in the air after the initial charge by the cavalry.

Although the heavy armor's defensive power can block swords or spears, their weakness is blunt weapons. The impact from the charging force of the cavalry's warhorse made them bled internally.

Those heavy infantries who were rammed, quickly vomited black blood from their internal organ and those who were still alive would suffer before death. Truly bad luck.

The cavalry squadron also had bad luck. Those heavy infantries who dodged the cavalry charge quickly retaliated. Heavy infantries know that attacking the riders will be futile because they kept moving even after their charge was finished.

So they targeted the cavalry warhorse. Warhorses for a cavalry soldier is their second surname and any injury caused to them is like slicing the rider's heart. With warhorse injured, the rider will fall down from their horse and the rider will quickly be eaten by Black Flag's “whirlpool”.

“Withdraw, back to Urban Army Main Army!” Cheng Yu knew that his duty had been accomplished. They had attacked the Black Flag's flank and had slowed down the Black Flag's advance considerably. The cavalry squadron quickly retreated after charging.

From 100 cavalry troops, those who survived was not more than 80 troops. 20 comrades lost their lives during this charge.

“DAMN!!!” Zhou Cheng gave an angry stare at those cavalry who sped away. They are heavy infantries, their defense and offense is truly good but they did not have mobility. Although heavy infantries killed 20 of the cavalry squadron, but their injuries were also bad.

Zhou Cheng now is in denial. Why is that? Because only 100 cavalry troops able to give at least 100 casualties to his heavy infantry. Most of them severely wounded and those whose luck is better, died instantly.

“Leave those who are dead and severely wounded. Pursue the enemy me!” Zhou Cheng ordered the injured and dead to be left behind.

Zhou Cheng did not consider those Black Flag as his men, he only considered them as tools to accomplish his goals. He is the user and Black Flag is his weapon. They are only the Zhou clan's tool for promotion.

Those who are severely wounded and dead, naturally can be considered as damaged goods. No longer valuable.

And with that, 100 soldiers was discarded like trash. Their comrades also did not bother to rescue them.

“YOU WILL NOT ESCAPE, PRINCE OF SHU!!!” Zhou Cheng said it coldly.

His Black Flag's soldier’s stamina is pretty high. They were trained by the Zhou clan from childhood until now. They are children of commoners that were picked personally by Zhou clan. Those Black Flag's soldier can eat until full from their childhood and their fate is much better than those of other commoners who joined to become soldiers.

They are unlike the Urban Army who half of them were former farmers like Cheng Yu before he joined Lu Bu’s army few years before. They are professional soldiers from childhood whose battle experience are very rich.

It needed more than ten years to develop their stamina and skills until they become like this.

Perhaps Liu Mang has miscalculated this time or perhaps the Black Flag's stamina is really good. Earlier, they were delayed by cavalry squadron but now they caught up again with Liu Mang's Urban Army.

Finally all of them reached the East Gate and now the East Gate was shut tight with nowhere to run. This Gate was closed under Liu Mang's order, so those noble's private soldiers will not be able to run away along with their masters.

And now, it seems become Liu Mang and Urban Army were at a dead-end.

“HAHAHAHAHAHAHAHAHAHA!!!! TRY TO ESCAPE AGAIN!!! I WANT TO KNOW WHERE YOU CAN RUN NOW!!!” Zhou Cheng laughed loudly he was very happy now. His Highness Prince of Shu has become cornered again. Big merit finally arrived in his hands along with Wancheng city!!! But before he killed this Lu Bu's son-in-law, he will extract from him information on how to manufacture this heavy armor.

Zhou Cheng's eyes lit with desire. Although Zhou Yu is his cousin, but Zhou Cheng could not have been satisfied. With this merit, he intended to compete with his cousin, become one of Jiangdong's pillar.

“HOOOOOOOH, RUN AWAY?!” Liu Mang emerged from the Urban Army. “Since we cannot escape, we will fight with you now!”

Liu Mang sneered and then said “It should be clear, that victory is ours! FORMATION NOW”

The Urban Army quickly formed the Phalanx Formation with Liu Mang's order.

“VERY GOOD, A LAST STAND, EH?!” In Zhou Cheng eyes, they are only remnants of the unit. Without a banner, helmet and armor already, they can only fight to their last breath.

Liu Mang and Zhou Cheng simultaneously raised up their arms; Signaling the attack.

They must deal the final blow.

Chapter 129 - The Black Flag is Defeated

“GO ON, PUT UP YOUR LAST STAND! AT LEAST NOW YOU CAN SAY YOU FOUGHT BACK BEFORE I SEND YOU AND YOUR URBAN ARMY TO HELL!!!”

Zhou Cheng is truly confident, he believed that victory is already on at hand. He is now smiling full of himself. He is already impatient, wanting to see His Highness, Prince of Shu kneeling on the ground; begging for his life.

“PUTTING UP A LAST STAND?! HAHAHAHA, IS THAT RIGHT?!” Liu Mang respond back.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA, All of your garbage soldiers already threw down your banner, your helmet and your armor. WITH WHAT YOU ARE GOING TO BEAT ME DOWN?!!” Zhou Cheng laughing. These so-called Lu Bu’s army were already missing their banner, helmet and armor! With only long sword on hand, how can they break his Black Flag's defense?

“Of course, they will be the one to defeat you!” Liu Mang did not want to waste time speaking nonsense with this Zhou Cheng. He had laid a big net in order to destroy these elites.

Otherwise these 3,000 heavy infantries will sooner or later be big trouble. If they were allowed to gain experience and grow, in the future one division would trade their life in order to destroy them.

With what division will they trade their life with? Is it the Formation Breaker, or the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry or the Urban Army? They are Lu Bu's army elites, they cannot afford to lose even one division. If one of them is destroyed, Lu Bu's army will lose a big portion of its strength!!!

So Liu Mang decided that he would be the one to defeat them now.

Zhou Cheng now became fierce and exclaimed "ALL ARMY, KILL THEM FOR ME!!!"

In his eyes, Liu Mang is truly seeking death. He dared to fight himself with only armor less soldiers. If this is not looking down on him, then what is?

What Zhou Cheng now regretted is that these Urban Army was only one small part of Lu Bu's army. Even though they can annihilate the Urban Army now, Lu Bu's army is still lurking in North Gate and South Gate and will need double the forces to exterminate them all.

Along with that, when Zhou Cheng thought about the Liu clan who rebelled against his orders, he began emitting killing intent and swore to exterminate the Liu clan.

"You want to kill us right? With who are you going to kill us with?! Are you, yourself going to kill us all?!" Liu Mang teased with a smile.

"HUMPH, you can still smile eh? Of course, with the Black Flag, I will...!"

Zhou Cheng was unable to speak, because the Black Flag encountered

a terrible problem.

"Oh, your heavy infantry? The Black Flag, huh?! Well, as of today, Black Flag will fade from this world!"

Liu Mang finally learned the name of this heavy infantry unit but that is not important now, as Liu Mang has determined to crush them from the face of the earth.

"WHATTT!!!!"

Zhou Cheng is shocked, immediately in denial. His elite army had already collapsed to the ground. Having lost all their stamina, their condition was similar to a dead dog.

"Brothers of the Urban Army! Since they did not answer our challenge, then we attack now! URBAN ARMY PREPARE TO ATTACK!!!!" Liu Mang just stated his order coldly while his gaze is fixated on Zhou Cheng.

Earlier, Liu Mang had deduced that these heavy infantries had strong a strong offense and defense. Currently his Urban Army's potential is only 1/4 that of the Black Flag and he can only form a very small Phalanx Formation with these soldiers which comprised of 300 great shield soldiers along with 300 spearmen and 300 archers.

Liu Mang is not a stupid person, if he attacks them heads-on, then his Urban Army will definitely perished. Even if he somehow won, the Urban Army would be left with only 10% of its original roster and will be unable to form the Urban Army again. Liu Mang cannot afford this loss.

Therefore, he implemented a feign retreat. These heavy infantries' offense and defense are very good, but there is one fatal flaw to these heavy infantries. The burden on their armor is around 50 kg. Late Han Dynasty did not have a method to refine iron ore in order to make better and lighter armor, so they can only output a crude and heavy armor.

The fatal flaw of these heavy infantries lies on the stamina of their soldiers. They can attack and defend, but they cannot fight an endurance battle because of the weight of their armor.

An ordinary soldier can run quite far before losing their stamina, an elite soldier can run even further. But when an elite soldiers puts on 50 kg of armor and helmet, can their stamina match with those of an ordinary soldier who has discarded their armor and helmet? Those elites can only endure at least 15-li and that is it.

These elites has been chasing the Urban Army across Wancheng city, from the West Gate to East Gate. The Black Flag's stamina had already been drained from the cat and mouse chase.

From the start were burdened with 50 kg of helmet and armor. Adding Cheng Yu’s earlier attack, further straining their bodies; the result can be seen now.

But Liu Mang's Urban Army is different. Only their great shield soldiers in frontline were heavy infantries. His cavalry squadron, although they are also heavy cavalry, they had horses and can move quickly.

At that time, Liu Mang made the great shield soldiers discard their

great shields, helmet and armor in order to pick up the pace with the retreat. Therefore this 15-li distance was only regarded as warm-up to them and none of them are in condition like those of Black Flag.

Liu Mang looks at the opposite elites. Those Black Flags elites now one by one either fainted or their mouth started to foam. All of them were basically sitting down on the ground and doing nothing. Those who still had a little bit of stamina left, are leaning on their long sword, huffing and puffing.

It's like running 5 miles with 150lb weights, then surviving the impact of falling from a one and a half story building. Instead of jogging 5 miles wearing sweats.

They may have been elites previously but so what? Now they are now defenseless! Perhaps if the Urban Army swung their sword, they would just resign to their fate.

"URBAN ARMY! NOW IS OUR CHANCE, DESTROY THEM ALL!!!" Liu Mang's Urban Army had been suppressing their anger in their bellies. They had been escaping and retreating all this time and even their rear was slashed by these Black Flag. Now, with Black Flag already almost motionless, it is their turn to destroy them. And true enough, those Urban Army soldiers were very excited screaming a few sentences.

"GIVE ME YOUR LIFE!!!"

"DIE FOR MY COMRADES!!!"

“SHAAAA!!!! DESTROY THESE ENEMIES!!!” All of the Urban Army were venting their anger towards the Black Flag.

“ALL OF YOU, GET UP, GET UP!!!!! FACE THE ENEMY, FACE THE ENEMY!!!!” Zhou Cheng is now panicking. The Black Flag that Zhou Cheng is most proud of, is now lying on the ground almost motionless. How can Zhou Cheng win this time? Maybe even just surviving will be a very good thing. Looking at those Urban Army who had turned into wolves, Zhou Cheng was very frightened.

“HAAAHHHH, HAAAHHHHH, HAAHHHH!!!” The Black Flag troops are huffing completely winded. They knew that they had to respond back. Even though the Urban Army in front is no match for Black Flag, they now however, lost their offensive power and can only defend themselves.

They needed to wait for a while until they can restore their stamina. So those who can fight just bought time until the Black Flag restored their stamina, as long as they had 300 or 500 who were able to restore their strength, this Urban Army will perish.

But these elites could not wait until that time, because their commander-in-chief had been scared witless. He was already incoherent and unable to think clearly.

Zhou Cheng is the Zhou clan's little lord. Since his childhood he had been involved in military matters, unlike Liu Mang who just was recently involved in the military. But Zhou Cheng is a person who only exceled in theory not in actual practice.

Originally he had a big ambition and wanted to show himself, but all of

those sentiments disappeared; changing into fear in the battlefield.

"WILL I DIE HERE?! NO, NO, I CANNOT DIE HERE!!!" Zhou Cheng quickly covered his fear with anger.

"DOES HE DARE TO KILL ME? HE REALLY DOESN"T KNOW THAT KILLING ME, THE LITTLE LORD OF THE ZHOU CLAN WILL MAKE THE ENTIRE CLAN HIS ENEMY? I DARE HIM TO KILL ME!!!"

Zhou Cheng thought. He still thinks that his Zhou clan was in a neutral relationship with Lu Bu's army, but the fact is, the Zhou clan is the one who clawed Lu Bu face!

Zhou Cheng looked again at those Urban Army wolves, he knows that when they reached him, it is the end.

Zhou Cheng now reacted on impulse, Zhou Cheng lifted his horsewhip toward a nearby Black Flag soldier. Although heavy infantries covered their whole body with armor, their helmet still exposed a good amount of their face. Zhou Cheng's whip hit the Black Flag soldier on his face instantly making it bloody.

"GET UP, GET UP FOR ME!!!! ATTACK THE ENEMY, ATTACK THE ENEMY!!!!"

Whip after whip was unleashed at those Black Flag troops. This whip was only used on warhorses, even warhorses will feel extreme pain when whipped with this, let alone humans. The soldier's faces were already full of blood, but they still did not respond because they needed to regain their stamina. Along with that, the one who lashes out the whip is their little lord, so they cannot rebel against him.

“AAAAHHHHH!” One of the Black Flag soldier is screaming. Zhou Cheng's whip hit one of his eyes. When he pulled out, that soldier's eye also fell out. His eyeball is falling out from his eye socket but fortunately, he is quickly killed by his comrades in order to prevent more suffering.

These Black Flag soldiers are usually scheming with each other, after all they are competitors. Even at that time, when their numbers still were 5,000 troops, they killed each other without mercy. But looking at the state of their freshly killed comrade, all of them gave Zhou Cheng an angry stare. All of them were already fed up with Zhou Cheng's attitude, so even those Black Flag troops whose stamina were already restored, they did not go to slaughter the Urban Army but instead just knelt down and dropped their weapons.

“DAMN ALL OF YOU, TRASH, GARBAGE!!!” Zhou Cheng insulted his subordinates who surrendered and quickly redirected his horse to escape. He cannot be captured, if he is captured, he will be unable to survive or show his face again in front of public.

A Warhorse is much quicker than a human. Coupled with those Black Flags securing Zhou Cheng's path of retreat, the Urban Army's speed suddenly slowed down.

“LIU MANG, WAIT FOR ME, WHEN I JOIN UP WITH MILORD SUN CE'S ARMY, I WILL CERTAINLY KILL YOU!!!”

Zhou Cheng spouted out his words fiercely. But unfortunately, right after his words came out, in front of him was the sounds of horses hissing

“Zhou Cheng, where do you want to run? Since you just came, do not leave immediately! Leave something behind in the meantime!” A young man with a cavalry squadron stopped Zhou Cheng. The cavalry squadron is the Urban Army's, but the young man is not part of Urban Army.

“Liu Neng?!!!” Zhou Cheng finally saw clearly the person who stopped him. Isn’t that the son of the Liu Clans patriarch? If Liu Neng did not inform Liu Mang earlier then this Wancheng city might be lost. Those 3,000 heavy infantries are big threat to the Urban Army.

“DAMNED REBELLIOUS TRAITOR!!!” Zhou Cheng's eyes are bulging from fury. If it were not for this Liu clan, how would he have been defeated like this? Without their interference, he would have already retaken Wancheng city.

“Rebellious traitor?! Hahaha. We, the Liu clan are Han Dynasty royalty and relatives. We are His Highness Prince of Shu’s relatives. Naturally we will help His Highness rather than help you right Mr. Zhou Cheng?!” Liu Neng quipped against Zhou Cheng.

“DAMN YOU!!!! I DON'T BELIEVE THAT YOU DID NOT KNOW HOW LU BU TREATED US NOBLES!!! AND YOU SEEK REFUGE WITH LU BU ARMY??? THAT’S THE SAME AS ALLYING YOURSELF WITH A HUNGRY TIGER?!” Zhou Cheng retorted fiercely.

“ALLYING OURSELVES WITH A HUNGRY TIGER? Is not that the same with all of you?!

My Liu clan are Han Dynasty royalties and relatives, we are Wancheng city's oldest nobles!!! But since Sun Ce came, the Zhou clan, Yu clan, He clan and even the Chen clan started leeching from our Liu clan

continuously!!!

I ADVISE FOR YOU, MR. ZHOU CHENG TO SHUT YOUR MOUTH NOW!!”

What Zhou Cheng said, fortunately made Liu Neng vent out his anger. That anger had been bottled up since the other clans began their silent invasion against the Liu clan's influence.

Chapter 130 - Drastic Changes; Wancheng City's Administration Office is in Danger

Listening to Liu Neng's words, Zhou Cheng was very silent. What Sun Ce did is indeed too much. During Lu Kang's reign in Wancheng city, the Lu clan was very respectful toward the Liu clan. They even married Lu Kang's daughter to Liu Kai.

After that, Yuan Shu occupied Wancheng city. Yuan Shu is the third brother of the Yuan Family's fourth generation, naturally they knew about the Liu clan's influence, so he left them alone.

When Yuan Shu was defeated, Liu Xun came to Wancheng city. Liu Xun is one of the Han Dynasty clansmen and relative, so he naturally treated the Liu clan well. Only when it was Sun Ce's time did the situation changed.

Even though the Liu clan was once one of emperor’s royal courtier, the Liu clan was already prepared for their decadence in noble status and even wanted to hand over their status as Wancheng city's oldest noble. But the Chen clan, He clan and Yu clan were truly impatient, they wanted for Liu clan to drop their status.

All of them, performed many things to embarrass the Liu clan when Liu clan invited their guests. From boorish table manners, to bad-mouthing the Liu clan, making the Liu clan truly embarrassed. The He clan and Yu clan were originally Wancheng city's local nobles but the Chen clan, were immigrants from Guangling.

Originally they are just a small clan from Guangling but when Chen

Duan tied their knot to Sun Ce's war chariot as their advisors, their status suddenly rose up and they began leeching from the Liu clan's power and influence until they became one of Wancheng city's main nobles.

Because of the He clan, Yu clan and Chen clan’s treatment of them, the Liu clan had truly become fed up and disheartened. They had already prepared themselves to become low level nobles. At worst, they will also give up their status as nobles and become commoners. As long as they can preserve their surname, it is enough for them. But when Lu Bu’s army took over Wancheng city, suddenly there a ray of hope for them. Lu Bu’s army came with a Liu clansman. That is the Prince of Shu, and this Prince of Shu truly gave the Liu clan big hopes.

Liu Mang is Lu Bu's son-in-law, in other words, he is Lu Bu’s army's little lord and his future successor, along with that the Prince of Shu is one of the Han Dynasty clansmen. He definitely will not treat us bad, because the Liu clan and His Highness Prince of Shu share one ancestor which is Liu Bang.

The Liu clan also determined to make the Zhou clan as a tribute to the Prince of Shu in order for him to accept them. So this Zhou Cheng, is one of the first tributes to him.

“Ha-ha-ha!!!” Zhou Cheng's legs lost his strength and froze up on his warhorse, his eyes lost its initial luster. Zhou Cheng has acknowledged that he had lost. His Black Flag had surrendered and his escape route had been cut off, the last path for him is death.

“Tie up our Mr. Zhou Cheng!!!” Liu Neng actually did not need to say, because two of the Urban Army soldiers already pulled down Zhou Cheng from his warhorse and tied his hands.

“Zhou Cheng, is he Zhou Yi's son?!” Liu Mang had also caught up. The Black Flag has surrendered themselves. Their heavy armor had been removed and their weapons confiscated.

They are waiting for Liu Mang to punish them. Liu Mang hit his warhorse to get closer. After that, he got down from warhorse for closer observation. This young man is really resembled Zhou Yi of Shucheng County, the one who prepared hot food for them when they just arrived in Lujiang.

This Zhou clan is Shucheng County's oldest noble and can be compared with the Liu clan as Wancheng city’s oldest noble.

Shucheng County dispatched these three thousand troops in addition to the Zhou clan's private soldiers in order to capture Jiashi County, as well intimidating Shiting County and Wuwei Village.

The Zhou clan had this much power and influence truly showing that their status is not small. No wonder in the history books, there is a footnote denoting that the Han Dynasty’s decadence was caused by these nobles are gathering their powers by themselves. If one of them revolted, nobody can hold their tide.

“HUMPH!!! ARE YOU REALLY SATISFIED BY CAPTURING ME?! EVEN IF WANCHENG CITY FEL INTO YOUR HANDs AGAIN, MY ZHOU CLAN HAS NOT YET BEEN EXTINGUISHED! My father has reoccupied Shucheng County and Jiashi County and now is fighting with Lu Bu in Shiting County and Wuwei Village. As long as we can persevere, when General Sun Ce arrives with his 100,000 troops. Your Lu Bu army will perish!!!”

Zhou Cheng roared.

“Still fighting?!” Liu Mang shook his head. “That information you have is not up-to-date!!!”

“Let me tell you the most updated information. My Honorable Father-in-law has already destroyed the Zhou clan's army in Wuwei. Shiting County has also returned in our hands. As for Jiashi County, your Zhou clan cannot do anything, because they were decimated by the Liu clan!!!”

Jiashi County. Although the place is very strategic, that place is only a small county. Inside the city, there are two noble clans who had very good relationship with the Liu clan. Liu Kai, in order to build trust with Liu Mang, contacted those nobles to destroy the Zhou clan army and now in Jiashi County, the Zhou clan's city banner was changed into the black banner of Lu Bu’s army

“So, your father should be cornered in Shucheng County now!” Liu Mang sneered toward Zhou Cheng.

“WHAT, THAT IS IMPOSSIBLE!!! IMPOSSIBLE!!!!” Zhou Cheng was denial again. “YOU LIE TO ME, YOU LIE TO ME!!!! MY FATHER'S SCHEME IS PERFECT, HOW CAN HE POSSIBLY BE BESIEGED IN SHUCHENG COUNTY?! YOU DEFINITELY DECEIVE ME!!!”

“Heh, perfect?! Does perfect also means that you are defeated and have turned into a captive in Wancheng city?!”

Thinking about the Zhou clan's scheme, Liu Mang also shivered with

fear because if the Liu clan did not help Lu Bu’s army, perhaps Wancheng city, Shucheng County and Jiashi County will lose because of the Zhou clan's assault.

With the Zhou clan deploying troops in Wuwei Village, they needed only to persevere until Sun Ce landed on Wancheng city. With an attack from all sides, Lu Bu’s army will be besieged from all direction and this Lujiang will be the second Xiapi.

Even without Sun Ce’s army besieging them, as long as Wancheng city was overtaken by Zhou clan, Lu Bu’s army will just need to wait until they starved to death, because Lu Bu’s army supply, grain and provisions are stored in Wancheng city.

That hypothetical scenario was now suffered by the Zhou clan. Their plan is crumbling like a house of cards. With their victory, it is impossible for Lu Bu to let the Zhou clan go.

Currently he is looking for every single Zhou clan member cutting them down, one by one. Zhou Yi's grain and provisions were already depleted. With Liu clan allying with Lu Bu’s army, it can be said that Lu Bu’s army got the justification in massacring these nobles.

The Liu clan is Wancheng city's oldest noble. They can be the representative for all the nobles. The Liu clan will just tell the truth behind the massacre. Lu Bu only wanted to kill those nobles who were against him and he definitely did not want to be an enemy for those who stood beside him.

“MY FATHER IS DEFEATED, MY FATHER IS DEFEATED!!!” Zhou Cheng

looked bleak. His father was now besieged in Shucheng County. Although Sun Ce's army has 100,000 troops, currently they had not yet arrived to support Shucheng County and so Zhou Yi right now, was stuck in Shucheng County. Once Shucheng County was broken, their Zhou clan will perish and Zhou Cheng would have fought for a lost cause.

"Please, you cannot do this, you cannot!!!" Zhou Cheng is now panicking and quickly kowtow toward Liu Mang. "Your Highness Prince of Shu, I beg you to spare my father, spare my Zhou clan. I BEG YOU!!!"

"SPARE THEM?!" Liu Mang looked at Zhou Cheng who is kowtowing toward him. This Zhou Cheng is Zhou Yu's cousin. Zhou Yu is basically Sun Ce's number 2 man. Lu Bu's army plans to exterminate the Zhou clan in order for Lu Bu and Sun Ce to not fight endlessly. Sparing the Zhou clan, means inviting more disaster in the future.

In addition to the Zhou clan, those who participated in this rebellion all must perish. They made Lujiang fell into chaos. If, he spared the Zhou clan, then what were these soldiers fighting for?!

Wancheng city's gate defenders died in battle, along with more than 1,000 troops. Can Liu Mang spare them while those troops are screaming to avenge their deaths from hell? Those innocent commoners as well.

As always, the commoner's casualties are very high. Wancheng city fell into flames, weeping and wailing, sounds of begging for mercy are everywhere, because these private soldiers showed not an ounce of mercy. With these sins, how can Liu Mang spare those nobles?

"The Zhou clan must perish!" Liu Mang gave Zhou Cheng a firm reply.

“YOU!!! LIU MANG, CURSE YOU!!! YOU WILL NOT HAVE A GOOD DEATH!!! YOU JUST WAIT FOR THE REPERCUSSION FOR KILLING THE ZHOU CLAN!!! SOONER OR LATER, GENERAL SUN CE WILL TAKE HIS REVENGE FOR US!!!” Zhou Cheng yelled, because his mind is falling to pieces.

“Yes, there will be a day for that and I am looking forward to it. But what a pity, you will not live to see that day!” Liu Mang just shook his head. Zhou Cheng was no longer a noble's son, but a lost cause. He was just screaming endlessly like a child throwing a tantrum

“Hehehe, who said I cannot see that day!!! YOU KILL ME NOW!!! KILL ME!!! I WILL HAVE YOUR FIANCEE, LU BU'S FAMILY AS A COMPANION TO HELL!!!” Zhou Cheng become crazy.

“Hmm...?!” Liu Mang's brow wrinkle. What is the meaning of Zhou Cheng's words?

“Hahahahahaha, I SEE IT NOW, YOU ALSO HAD NOT YET UPDATED YOUR INFORMATION!!! I BELIEVE NOW, IT SHOULD BEGIN!!! LU BU'S ADMINISTRATION OFFICE NOW SHOULD BE BLOODY!!!” Zhou Cheng is showing his last mocking smile.

“HMPH, MEANINGLESS WORDS!!!!” Liu Mang said it coldly. “I already sent out 100 soldiers to protect my Honorable Father-in-law's family as well as my fiancée!!!” Liu Mang had sent out 100 Urban Army soldiers to protect the Administration Office to maintain his Honorable Mother-in-laws' safety. When he finished cleaning up, he will return to Administration Office again.

“ONLY 100 SOLDIERS HUH?!” Zhou Cheng quipped back. “Oh that is good, you will find your fiancé dead body in a few moment!! HAHAHAHAHAHAA!!!!”

Zhou Cheng then confessed the truth, when the Zhou clan was still planning to recapture Wancheng city, Sun Ce had send troops into the Zhou clan's mansion. Zhou Cheng was responsible for recapturing Wancheng city.

If Wancheng city cannot be recaptured, at least Sun Ce will gain something. So Zhou Cheng made a big enough noise for Lu Bu’s army to move. The leader that Sun Ce sent this time, was a person whose strength had reached superclass but still did not have enough experience to become a leader, so that is why he was still low class general.

Sun Ce will not assign noble's soldiers for they are not elite and only rabble soldiers. The leader was sent by Sun Ce personally to kill Lu Bu's family in Wancheng city.

Lu Bu’s army has captured Wancheng city, killed Sun Ce's wife Da Qiao. So Sun Ce wanted blood for blood.

“DAMN, THAT IS A FIRST-CLASS GENERAL!” Liu Mang's complexion changed. A superclass general was sent only to kill Lu Bu's family. A person like can be considered a first-class general and can command tens of thousands troops, just like Guan Yu, Zhang Fei and Zhao Yun.

According to Zhou Cheng's words, this general is a low class general. That news is enough to make Liu Mang startled. If his Honorable Mother-

in-laws run into these people, there will be at least wounds. If that happens, how can Liu Mang have face to meet Lu Bu again?

"Cheng Yu, you clean up the West Gate. Brother Ziji, you take these Black Flags into prison. Let the cavalry squadron come with me!" Liu Mang has redirected his horse toward the Administration Office.

"HAHAHAHAHA!!!! TOO LATE!!! TOO LATE!!!! THOSE WAITING FOR YOU ARE ONLY CORPSES. YOUR HIGHNESS PRINCE OF SHU LIU MANG. YOUR FIANCEE AND LU BU'S WIVES WILL FOLLOW ME FIRST TO HELL, I WILL BE WAITING FOR YOU AFTER THIS!!!"

Zhou Cheng was spouting threatening words. He knew if he was captured by Liu Mang it would not be a good ending. Maybe, he will also be taken away to threaten his father in Shucheng County for him surrender to Lu Bu's army.

He suddenly broke away from his binds, shoved aside a soldier who was with him and quickly wanted to take a warhorse. But that warhorse was frightened, so it raised its hind leg to kick Zhou Cheng's chest as hard as it can.

Zhou Cheng falls down to the ground. He held down his chest, blood flows from his mouth.

His ribs were broken and pierced his lungs, he will not survive any longer.

Standing in front of death's door, Zhou Cheng repeated his last sentence

“Ha-ha-ha-ha, I...will...be...waiting...for...you...down...below!!!!”

With those words, Zhou Cheng died, closing his eye forever, but on his face there was mocking smile toward Liu Mang.

Chapter 131 - The Bloody Administration Office

"HURRY, QUICK!!!" The buttocks of his warhorse WAS already red; showing traces of blood on it. For cavalry units, their warhorse is their other half. So cavalry soldiers are very reluctant to use whips on them unless it's for charging. But the little lord right is whipping his warhorse endlessly in order to increase its speed to save his lord's family.

Currently Wancheng city has been cleaned up, therefore squadron can travel in full speed.

"I WILL NOT LET ANYTHING HAPPEN TO THEM, I WILL NOT LET ANYTHING HAPPEN TO THEM!!!"

Liu Mang talks to himself slowly while whipping his horse. If even a single strand of hair was harmed on any of Lu Bu's family, Liu Mang will not forgive himself and possibly commit suicide. Moreover, at Administration Office he also had three of his beloved fiancé. Lu Lingqi, Miss Yuan and He Yu.

TL Notes :

Speaking of Miss Yuan. A few weeks ago, when they are still in Huangzhou city after capturing it, Lu Bu asked Liu Mang to get acquainted with her as he has approved her to receive Yuan Shu's legacy (Imperial Seal) formally and in order to walk the path of the Emperor.

Her complete name is Yuan Fang and she is the youngest daughter of Yuan Shu. In Liu Mang's opinion, although her body is smaller and her bosom is smaller than Lu Lingqi and He Yu, she is very gentle, sweet and a little bit of a quiet girl.

She is definitely a good-educated girl, also she is very intelligent and wise beyond her years just like He Yu, and also well versed in diplomatic matters which Yang Hong taught her. All in all, Liu Mang really got three irreplaceable treasures. Since the Administration Office has been breached, how can Liu Mang not worry now?

TL: Miss Yuan will now be known as Yuan Fang

This Paragraph was made by BF and was not present in the original RAWS

"FASTER, FASTER!!!" Liu Mang urged.

"General, this is the limit of our warhorse!" Said cavalry soldier nearby. Cavalry troops naturally familiar with their horse's limit and these cavalry troops are also familiar with Liu Mang who made them eat delicacies and wine. So, they also understand his anxiousness.

Liu Mang's warhorse is glistening with sweat; its fur already very wet. With this, cavalry soldiers knew that the warhorse has reached its limit. If it accelerated again, his warhorse may fall down because of exhaustion.

"I DON'T CARE. IT MUST ACCELERATE AGAIN FOR ME!!!"

Liu Mang exclaimed very loudy. How can he not know that his warhorse already exhausted. But it is very urgent and if Liu Mang is late for even one second, there will be dead bodies waiting for him.

Damn you Sun Ce, you are really ruthless. Dispatching a superclass strength general just to kill women who cannot fight back. In Lu Bu's army, there are only 4 general that can at least fight with superclass strength. That is Lu Bu, Huang Zhong, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba. Lu Bu and Huang Zhong are in their own class, which is pinnacle of superclass. Zhang Liao and Zang Ba have also reached the status of superclass generals.

However, now they are all dispatched to their respective mission, leaving only Liu Mang to fight against these monsters. Liu Mang is pondering, who the hell did Sun Ce send? Is it Sun Ce himself or Taishi Ci? Liu Mang really cannot think of anyone else beside them because in the original history, Sun Ce's army can be said only have 2 powerful generals, which are Sun Ce and Taishi Ci.

Huang Gai, Han Dang and co, they are now old and what made him still valuable to the army is their rich experience.

Sun Ce really overdid himself this time. Did he not know that once a superclass strength general is surrounded, he will be useless? Is it worth it to trade a life of your mighty general to a settle blood debt? Normal people would not do something this rash, but Sun Ce did. He really did the unthinkable.

Sun Ce and Lu Bu, thinking of these two people, Liu Mang smiled bitterly. These two people are too similar. Their biggest advantage and weakness is their attachment to one thing. Lu Bu is attached to Diao

Chan. For Diao Chan, Lu Bu is willing to kill Dong Zhuo and become public enemy number one in this nation. Sun Ce also like that. Sun Ce is attached to exact revenge for his father and to strive for hegemony in order to fulfill his father's ambition.

Regarding Lu Bu, historically when Xiapi was surrounded. If only he listened to Chen Gong's advice, he would have been able to win against Cao Cao, perhaps also eliminate him. But Lu Bu did not pay heed to Chen Gong's advice, but he listened to his wife Madame Yan and Diao Chan's words to stay beside them to maintain a stubborn defense in Xiapi.

After that, Guo Jia drowned Xiapi by breaking Si River and Yi River's dams. Lu Bu himself died in the White Gate Tower. This time also, he was almost dead in the White Gate Tower but was averted due to the intervention of a wild card called Liu Mang.

TL: Madame Yan and Diao Chan historically quite smart, because when Chen Gong told his scheme, they can see through him immediately. At that time, Chen Gong wanted to betray Lu Bu and sold him to Cao Cao. But the novel, made them clingy women, really degenerating their roles.

Sun Ce is also like that historically. He is too attached to his father's will, he did not see anything at his back. At that time, he kept going to hunt despite Zhou Yu's warning. He was assassinated by three of Xu Gong's retainers. But when he died, his final will is to make Sun Quan succeed him. So Sun Quan can fight for his and their father's will.

But by doing that, he had closed the path for his wife and son to rise even further and possibly lose good treatment toward them, because Sun Quan is also a person with big ambition and will not let anyone block him in his path for hegemony once he got the power in Jiangdong.

TL: Xu Gong is one of the warlords during pacification of Jiangdong, He and his family was massacred by Sun Ce due to his never-surrender attitude. Xu Gong's “ghost” kept living inside his retainers and managed to kill Sun Ce.

But Sun Ce had done that. Actually another option that Sun Ce could have done was let Zhou Yu take over power as regent of Jiangdong and when his son grew up, Zhou Yu can transfer back the power. Zhou Yu is not a person who clings to power, he is like Zhuge Liang; a man of character and integrity.

Maybe at his last moment he thought, Sun Ce realized he had sacrificed so much to follow in his father’s footsteps. He decided he did not want to pass his will to his son, sparing him from the pain that he felt! He also thought to at least honor his mother’s request to appoint Sun Quan as the ruler of Jiangdong as the last filial act toward her.

Two people who had big sentiments towards their family went all out now. Lu Bu’s army has “executed” Da Qiao so Sun Ce was outraged. If Sun Ce’s army managed to harm Lu Bu’s family, then these two tigers will fight to the death.

With that thought “WH-TCH” Liu Mang again whipped his horse’s buttocks.

“General, please don’t, please don’t do that!!!” One of cavalry soldier was startled. How can their general order to slash their horse’s buttocks? These cavalry soldiers are truly unwilling because they are slashing their partners. Even if they themselves were slashed, they were still not willing

to slash their horses.

“THEN TELL ME, DO YOU HAVE ANOTHER WAYS TO SPEED UP?!” Liu Mang’s eyes which were already red, full of rage, stared at that soldier who made that speech, and exclaimed toward him

"I!"

“SLASH THE HORSE BUTTOCKS!!!” Liu Mang said again.

“YES SIR!” All of the cavalry troops executed Liu Mang’s order. They quickly slashed their horse’s buttocks, their fur which has been wet by sweat, was now smeared with blood as well.

The warhorse that was slashed suddenly boost their speed again, but every time they ran, blood flowed endlessly. Whatever place that cavalry squadron passed, a trail of blood was present.

“RUSH, RUSH!!!!” The Cavalry squadron’s mood was really bad. Their horses shed too much blood. Judging from their condition, this will be their last ride. Those cavalry squadron cannot lash their rage toward Liu Mang, so they are suppressing it until they meet with those rebel assholes who made their horses like this.

“CHING, CHING!!!!” The sound of battle from the Administration Office grew louder. Liu Mang was really anxious now, not because of the battle sounds, but because of fire that already rose high up.

“NEIGGGHHHH!” The Warhorses were already at their limits, and they started to fall down one by one, almost making Liu Mang fall down as

well. Liu Mang however did not have time to mourn his warhorse, he quickly shouted “DISMOUNT!!!!”

The Cavalry troops quickly dismounted as Liu Mang ordered. Right now they are stroking their warhorses, they can no longer do anything for them, so they can only stroked them gently in order to say goodbye to them.

The warhorses as if understanding the feelings of its rider just stayed silent and eased their breathing to accept death.

“BREAK THE DOOR!!!” Screamed Liu Mang

The Administration Office’s front door was closed breaking the line of sight of whatsoever was happening inside, however it could not block out the screaming.

“BANG!!!”

Finally the front door was broken. Inside the Administration Office, blood and corpse were everywhere. Servant’s bodies, Urban Army troops, Black Flag troops are joined in one location. The number of Black Flag troops numbered only 7 – 8 bodies, but the rest of them are innumerable.

Wancheng city Administration Office had never been ruined like this. Not at Lu Kang’s hand, not at Liu Xun’s hand, and not at Sun Ce’s hand. Only in Lu Bu’s hand was Administration Office now in a desolate state.

“NOT GOOD!!!!” Liu Mang just walked aimlessly inside the

Administration Office along with his dismounted cavalry squadron. Administration Office is too big, so Liu Mang can only follow the sounds.

The Blood stench became heavier. It came from the Urban Army's corpses.

"Er Gou, Er Gou!!!" A cavalry soldier picked up a "corpse". This Er Gou is his fellow villagers. Hearing some people shouting at him, the Urban Army soldier opened his eye slowly. His body is already bleeding profusely and his hand almost chopped off.

Er Gou was one of great shield heavy infantry soldier. Those who were sent by Liu Mang to guard Administration Office are those who survived from Battle of Mt. Bagong. Liu Mang begged Gao Shun to keep their armor and great shield from that time.

Er Gou was wearing the aluminum armor and great shield that Liu Mang brought from the future. That same great shield was now broken into two. The person who did this must have the strength of a superclass general.

Liu Mang had Lu Bu test the defensive power of these heavy armor, only he, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba can break these heavy armor. Lu Bu able was cleave this armor into two, but Zhang Liao and Zang Ba can only pierce it through.

"Are you still alive?!" Liu Mang hurriedly held Er Gou.

"Cough… General Liu!!!" Er Gou opens his eyes to see clearly the man

who held him. “Er Gou, Er Gou is incompetent, Er Gou failed to protect Milord’s wives and General’s fiancée’s!!!”

“WHAT!!!!” Failed to protect? What does that mean? Were they killed? Liu Mang exerted too much strength because of his agitation.

“COUGH, COUGH!!!” Er Gou’s hand bleed more and on his face showed a painful look, but he needed to say his last words! “General, QUICK. Go to the West Wing. Milord’s wives and yours fiancée’s, they are in troub….!!!!” Er Gou had not yet finished his words, when Liu Mang saw the light fade from his eyes.

“WEST WING? WEST WING?!” Liu Mang said it in blank tone.

Wasn’t that the place where He Yu lives in? “They are now with her!!!”

Chapter 132 - Liu Mang and Co. vs Superclass General

Liu Mang cannot attend to his Urban Army brothers who are currently severely wounded for he has much more important things to do.

“PLEASE, WAIT FOR ME ALL OF YOU, MOTHER-IN-LAWS AND MY WIVES-TO-BE!!!!”

"AAAAHHHHHHH"

“SHA, SHAAA!!!!” Pitiful voices of being people slaughtered were getting louder and louder. The smell of blood was very heavy.

Liu Mang quickly rushed towards the West Wing. When he arrived, all of his ladies were still alive. He Yu, Yuan Fang and Lu Lingqi are all alive. Liu Mang’s mother-in-laws are also present and accounted for; Madame Yan, Madame Cao and Madame Ren (Diao Chan).

Near Yuan Fang, there is a middle-aged man protecting her, that person is Yang Hong who was currently winded breathing very heavily while holding bloodied long sword.

They are living!

Liu Mang thought, as he breathed a sigh of relief. If any of them were harmed, Liu Mang would never be able to forgive himself.

In the West Wing, there were two groups of people opposing each other.

One side had Black Flag with its imposing leader. These guys are elites of elites.

One the other side, there contained his Urban Army who was currently protecting his families.

Liu Mang saw from the 100 troops that he sent, less than 50 people survived. These are veterans who had sworn brotherhood with Liu Mang by saying “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!!”

Liu Mang was very sad if even one of them died. At the conclusion of Battle of Mt. Bagong, Liu Mang kept kneeling before the 432 Urban Army corpses for a long period of time. He did not eat, he did not drink, and he was in such a daze that he needed Lu Bu to snap him out of it.

Now from the 100 elites, left less than 50 troops were now present. How can that not make Liu Mang really sad? Most of them died under The Black Flag’s attack. The Urban Army’s skill is lower than that of Black Flag, so they can only defend themselves.

The only reason they were able survive so long was because there is a replica of Lu Bu wearing Lu Bu’s original armor and was now swinging her halberd similar to a Valkyrie, killing those Black Flags. That Valkyrie was Lu Lingqi.

Liu Mang never questioned Lu Lingqi’s strength. From Xiapi, Lu Lingqi had rescued Liu Mang’s life from Song Xian. Then on the way to Langye, she dislocated both of Liu Mang’s arms effortlessly. Afterward, when Liu Mang was determined to learn martial arts, Lu Bu appointed Lu Lingqi as

her mentor.

During his training, Liu Mang could not see the depth of Lu Lingqi's real strength, but now he completely understood. This woman was truly beautiful. The girl who used to quarrel with Liu Mang daily, was the embodiment of a Valkyrie.

If the Urban Army was able to block the Black Flag, then The Black Flag would die from Lu Lingqi's several moves.

At her side there was a thin young man, in his hand there was a two-edged sword already full of blood. Although his complexion is pale, but his skill was not weak. In one blow, he had killed three Black Flag soldiers at once.

That young man is Huang Xu, Huang Zhong's son. His pneumonia was cured completely, but Liu Mang feared that that pneumonia would be a chronic disease. Therefore Liu Mang assigned Huang Xu in Administration Office to train and guard Lu Bu's family.

Unexpectedly, by stationing Huang Xu in Administration Office, Huang Xu was able to save Lu Bu's entire family.

Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu fought against that imposing man to a standstill. Although it is two versus one, the man's strength was superclass general.

Although his strength is much lower than Lu Bu or Huang Zhong, this man was valiant general. Liu Mang had witnessed this before when Lu Bu

was fighting Li Dian, Xu Chu and Xu Huang to a standstill.

The strength of this imposing man was higher than Li Dian and Xu Huang. One can say, he is at the same level with Xu Chu.

Xu Chu was considered as Cao Cao's number two valiant general. The number one spot going to the late Dian Wei. Such a valiant general, Sun Ce assigned him on an assassination. He is truly reckless beyond belief.

"THIS ZHOU TAI TRULY UNDERESTIMATEED BOTH OF YOU!!!" That imposing man retorted coldly toward Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu. In the man's hand, he held a serpent spear with the same design as Cheng Pu's spear.

This kind of spear when piercing into a human body will make you die on the spot. Seeing other people come toward their fight, he suddenly feinted a thrust toward Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu to make them open an escape path.

TL: Cheng Pu is one of Sun clan's general. He is known for his expertise with serpent spear.

His gaze then focused again toward the people who came. After seeing that their outfit was the same clothes as Lu Bu army, he deduced that those people are enemies.

"Eh, Zhou Tai?!" Sun Ce sent Zhou Tai as an assassin?! Zhou Tai, his courtesy name is Youping. He is a native of Xiacai County of Jiujiang Commandery. Although his fame is little compared to Liu, Guan and Zhang, his strength is higher than them.

Historically, during the Battle of Hefei. Cao Cao's appointed Commander-in-Chief Zhang Liao routed Wu Army. At that battle, Sun Quan was surrounded with no hope of retreat. However, due to the valiant efforts of Zhou Tai, he unexpectedly pierced through the enemy's formation with all of his might to rescue Sun Quan personally. After Sun Quan was secured, he marched again toward the enemy to rescue the surrounded Xu Sheng.

In Cao Cao's army, although he had only a few, valiant generals were not lacking. He had Xiahou Dun, Xiahou Yuan, Cao Ren, Cao Hong, *etc*.

Although their strength did not reach superclass, they were first-class commanders who can lead effectively. They are like Zhou Tai who was able to break through enemy lines in order to rescue their intended target.

So he was like Zhao Yun, Zhao Zilong who was able to pierce the enemy line just in order to rescue Liu Shan (Liu Bei's son), at that time called A Dou, in Chang Ban.

The soldiers that are protecting Lu Bu's family to the death is one part of his Phalanx Formation. They did not have warhorses, but it did not hinder their combat capabilities. Seeing Liu Mang return, suddenly they formed the phalanx formation again.

The Urban army is lacking in terms of elite, but they are able to work as one. Once the Urban Army regrouped, its strength can even fight heavy cavalry. Even if they are defeated, it is impossible for the opposing army to not pay a heavy price.

“Oh, you came back!” Lu Lingqi said lightly. She was in love with the man she hated.

She Love him because he was really amazing. He can conjure up food out of thin air, he even brought back warhorses and sets armor set out of nowhere. Because of those feats, he piqued Lu Lingqi’s interest. In addition, he had saved his father, saved their entire Lu family and army. Therefore Lu Lingqi held extreme gratitude for Liu Mang.

This gratuitous feeling and interest, as well as Lu Bu’s engagement with him gave Lu Lingqi very good impression of him as her future husband.

However, those positive points mentioned above did not hinder her hate toward Liu Mang. This lecher has touched her bosom without her permission once, now he also took Yuan Fang as his sister wife. Regarding Yuan Fang, her mother already explained that this is for a great cause, so her father can receive the Imperial Seal formally, so she reluctantly accepted. But regarding He Yu, she was unable to accept it.

She will not accept any explanation from that lecher. Also she is also angry, because the Urban Army needed to separate their forces in order to protect that lecher’s concubine.

Lu Lingqi thought “He had not yet married, but he already had a concubine!! I will pinch his dick on our first night!!!” That thought was further reinforced due to fact that He Yu was as beautiful as she is.

“Hanyang, Hanyang, do you know about my husband?!” Madame Yan quickly opened their conversation. They are tired of fleeing. They had

finally begun to settle down, when their residence was disturbed once more. This battle at the Administration Office made them worry that they would become wanderers again.

"Honorable Mother-in-law Yan, please do not worry. Honorable Father-in-law is eliminating the enemy in battle. When they took over Shucheng County, they will immediately return!" Liu Mang told Madame Yan to ease her worry.

"Little lord, cough, cough. Greetings to you!" Huang Xu coughed two times. Liu Mang knew that his chronic disease is hitting him again. When he fought Zhou Tai, he exerted many moves, so many that he injured himself.

"Huang Xu, your martial arts has already reach what degree?!" Liu Mang asked Huang Xu who is currently holing two-edged sword with jealous tone.

"Little lord, since I was little boy, my physique was weak. Therefore I am one step behind from my father, currently my strength has not yet reached superclass!!" Huang Xu said while coughing.

He is truly grateful to Liu Mang. Because Liu Mang helped cure him, he was able to taste the battlefield. Usually he can only take a wooden knife to practice wushu, but now, he can put his practice into actual combat, and able to kill several enemies.

Only one step behind with his father, yet his strength right now was not yet superclass? But Huang Xu is already so strong. He was on par with Zhou Tai. Does this mean one of Huang Xu's skill is already of superclass

status?

That is correct, this is what Huang Xu meant. Although his current strength has not yet reached superclass general, his archery skill however is already at superclass.

“Oh, Shucheng County was defeated?!” Zhou Tai talked to himself slowly. “The Zhou clan was also defeated?!” When he moved to Zhou Cheng’s mansion, it had already been quite some time. Now Wancheng city and Shucheng County are lost. If that is so, then the only solution is to kill these people ASAP, otherwise if Lu Bu’s army gathered again here, Zhou Tai will not be able to escape.

“Playtime is over!!!” Zhou Tai removed his armor, boots and armguard.

“What the hell did he want to do?!” Liu Mang was stunned. In war, how can you fight barefooted? Before long, Liu Mang understood, on Zhou Tai’s arm and legs there were rings of black weights that served as his limiter.

Liu Mang was stunned, Zhou Tai was going to release the limiters on his body.

“Clang, clang, clang!!!” Zhou Tai destroyed his limiters one by one. One of those black rings weighed at least 50 kg. During battle with Huang Xu and Lu Lingqi, Zhou Tai did not remove his limiter.

“HAHAHAHA!!!”Zhou Tai laughed, and pointed at Liu Mang “You are that Prince of Shu right? You will die here along with all of your family

today!!!”

Chapter 133 - Beast-like Man

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“RAAAAWWH!!!!”

Screamed Zhou Tai, now without limiters; his speed suddenly increasing twofold.

His stance changed from those of a human warrior, into that of quadruped with his serpent spear still tightly gripped on his hand.

Liu Mang looked at his new stance giving him a fright. Zhou Tai now is no longer a human, but a beast-man who wanted his prey.

Zhou Tai started his leap. His speed was like wind and his imposing body did not bother his strength.

Two of the Urban Army soldiers became victims of his first strike. Their heavy armors which was invincible when faced with sharp weapons, was cracked open by his strike.

“RETREAT!!!” Lu Lingqi's shouted coldly. If there are at least 500 elite soldiers, maybe Lu Lingqi

will not scream this order, but now there were only 100 soldiers who were a part of the Phalanx Formation and not elites. Their enemy was a superclass strength general and the Black Flag. It was impossible to mount an attack, so they only can retreat in order to reduce the

casualties.

“Huang Xu, I am counting on you!!!” At the same time, Lu Lingqi said her order toward Huang Xu.

“Little madam, do not worry!!!” Huang Xu nodded.

After saying her order, Lu Lingqi quickly advanced again toward Zhou Tai.

“COME ON, COME ON!!!” Zhou Tai began excited again. The serpent spear in his hand collided with the halberd.

“ARGH!!!” Lu Lingqi’s strike was deflected by Zhou Tai. Her hand that was holding the halberd was now flying to the other direction, almost losing her grip on the halberd.

A Women’s natural strength has always been less than that of a man. Zhou Tai’s strike, after throwing away his limiter contained the force of a thousand-jin. And that thousand-jin was now redirected at Lu Lingqi’s throat like a poisonous snake.

About 1,000lbs of force.

If that attack connects, that living jade would be lost forever.

“WATCH OUT!!!!” Liu Mang exclaimed loudly. He wanted to shield her from the attack, but Huang Xu had already tugged his hand preventing

further movement and said “Little lord, you are no match for Zhou Tai!”

Liu Mang who currently possess third-class general prowess was no match for Zhou Tai. If Liu Mang persisted to help, he will only be a hindrance toward Lu Lingqi. If that happened, Lu Lingqi’s concentration will break into two, one for fighting Zhou Tai and second to protect Liu Mang just the same like Liu, Guan, Zhang fought Lu Bu in Hulao Gate.

If Guan Yu and Zhang Fei fought him one-on-one, they were not a match. So they can only gang up on him and after Lu Bu gets a little tired fighting Guan Yu and Zhang Fei, Liu Bei joined in on the fray. Such is the legend of the Three Heroes vs Lu Bu.

“Then you help her!!!” Liu Mang really anxious now. A moment ago, when Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu were fighting together, they only tied up with Zhou Tai. Huang Xu now was assigned to protect other people, how can Lu Lingqi hope to match Zhou Tai now?

Huang Xu quickly shook his head. Huang Xu was also in the same position as Liu Mang now. His strength had not yet reached superclass, so he will be just a hindrance, moreover he was also was tasked by Lu Lingqi to protect the other people.

“Tiiiiich!!!” Lu Lingqi’s armor was ripped by Zhou Tai’s strike. Although Lu Lingqi’s strength is the same as Zhou Tai, the woman’s body was more flexible than a man’s body. She can avoid Zhou Tai’s strike but due to the serpent spear’s design, it is now ripping her armor and injuring her.

“LING’ER!!!” Madame Yan is really anxious. That girl is her treasure, she and Lu Bu dotes on her very much. Lu Lingqi who was treasured by them

so much has been injured, how cannot she worry now?

TL: Commentator, please give me your comments. Which one is better for Lu Lingqi affectionate call “Ling’er” or “Qi’er”? For this chapter, I will use Ling’er. (If TL Note is green, it means that TL is asking for mass opinion)

“Madame, please do not worry, little madam is all right!!!” Huang Xu assured Madame Yan. This kind of injury is very bad for average person, but in battle, it is considered as a very minor injury.

“NICE!!!” Zhou Tai grinned again, he thought that strike would be the killing blow but this lady unexpectedly avoided it.

He then quickly said “The next move will surely kill you!!!” Zhou Tai need to end the battle soon, he had already wasted too much time.

Zhou Tai’s serpent spear danced more quickly than before. Earlier Lu Lingqi still can fight blow to blow, now she can only go on the defensive. In a short while, her hand got a lot of small bloody spots.

“HMPH?!” Zhou Tai brow wrinkled. At the surface, Zhou Tai is on winning side, in the next dozen moves, the lady will die. But that needs time which is what Zhou Tai was lacking.

He is not as stupid, in just a few moments, he will be in a very bad predicament, even Xu Chu and Dian Wei who are not intelligent, if they were presented with current predicament, they will certainly retreat first. But Zhou Tai has his mission.

Zhou Tai then pressed his serpent spear toward Lu Lingqi and exclaimed “Lu Bu’s Army is garbage, depending on a woman to survive!!! COWARDS, ALL OF YOU!!! Lu Bu is a woman disguised as a man!!!”

TL: In ancient time, a man called a woman is a great insult and usually will be continued to fight to the death!!!

“GRRR, Hides behind a woman?! Depends on a woman to survive?!” The Urban Army soldiers who cannot endure being insulted suddenly charged toward Zhou Tai.

“HAAAAA!!!!” Zhou Tai serpent spear quickly pierced those Urban Army

Their stomachs were pierced. Although they are un-savable, they did not die immediately.

“DAMN!!!!” Liu Mang burning with anger. Those brothers died like trash. He wanted to retreat, but he cannot retreat, for he needed to protect other people.

“HAHAHAHAHAHAHA, COME AGAIN, COME AGAIN, YOU COWARDS!!!! ALL THAT LU BU TEACHES YOU IS TO HIDE BEHIND A WOMAN, RIGHT?!!!! NO WONDER HE IS CALLED SLAVE OF THREE SURNAMES!!! KILL THE ADOPTIVE FATHER FOR A WOMAN, NOW HIDES BEHIND A WOMAN!!!!! I GUESS, EVEN IN DEATH ALL OF YOU ALSO HIDE BEHIND A WOMAN!!!! HAHAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!”

Zhou Tai is laughing maniacally. All of his Black Flags are also spouting sentences while laughing.

“SLAVE OF THREE SURNAMES IS A TRAITOR, UNLOYAL AND A COWARD!!!! ONLY HIDES BEHIND WOMAN!!!!”

“YOU WILL NOT INSULT MILORD, EVEN IN DEATH WE DO NOT HIDE BEHIND WOMAN!!!” Those Urban Army soldiers who cannot bear the insult, charged toward Zhou Tai.

Zhou Tai’s eyes are flashing again. But when he start stabbing them, Lu Lingqi blocked his strike.

“YOU…!” Lu Lingqi talked to herself in low voice. “ZHOU TAI!!! I DO NOT CARE WHAT YOU ARE, I DO NOT IF YOUR STRENGTH HAS REACHED SUPERCLASS, I, LU LINGQI, WILL NOT ALLOW YOU TO INSULT MY HONORABLE FATHER!!!!” Lu Lingqi showed killing intent.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!! I WILL SAY IT AGAIN AND AGAIN, SLAVE OF THREE SURNAMES’ LU BU ARMY IS COMPRISED ONLY A PERSON WHO WILL HIDE BEHIND A WOMAN!!!! AN ARMY OF GARBAGE!!!” Zhou Tai exclaimed loudly while preparing his stance again.

“AAAAHHHHHH!!!!!” Lu Lingqi roared her tigress roar. Bloodstain on her hips has made her anger increase even more. She is angry because he had damaged her womanly body. Although she liked martial arts more than putting on makeup, this does not mean that she liked having scars.

A scar on the hips, although it will not show daily when she is alone that scar really will make her brokenhearted.

She thought "Will Hanyang hate me for having this scar?!” Soon, they will be husband and wife, will he hate a scarred lady?

Unconsciously, Lu Lingqi had put Liu Mang in his mind all the time.

"THEN BEAR WITNESS TO THIS BY YOURSELF!!!" Lu Lingqi has made her stance.

"Hnn?!" Zhou Tai brow wrinkled, because the lady in front of him showed an imposing manner and aura that belongs to a superclass strength general. A lady who is less than 20 years is old able to have this aura? How can this be? Able to reach superclass strength before 20 years old, she is really scary.

In Zhou Tai's heart, the one in Sun Ce's army who had reached superclass strength is only him, his lord Sun Ce and general Taishi Ci. Even Taishi Ci just recently broke through into superclass strength at 25-26 years old. The famous Liu, Guan, Zhang needed more years than that.

"BAH, SUPERCLASS STRENGTH? SO WHAT, IF YOU REACH SUPERCLASS STRENGTH? I WILL SHOW YOU THE DIFFERENCE BETWEEN US NOW!!!!" Zhou Tai charged toward Lu Lingqi with his four appendages, similar to a predator.

"I ALREADY SAID STOP INSULTING MY HONORABLE FATHER, BUT SINCE YOU DID NOT DO THAT, YOU DIE HERE!!!!" Lu Lingqi also shouted her anger. She is the daughter of a mighty tiger not a pet cat. Lu Lingqi since her childhood followed in Lu Bu's steps. What Lu Bu wanted was a son, but he only had a daughter, therefore Lu Bu is disappointed in his heart.

Lu Lingqi is a very sensitive girl, therefore she can sense her father's disappointment. Therefore from her childhood to adulthood, in order to make her proud of her, she had been trying so hard.

Other families' daughters teach them how sew and discuss about marriage, Lu Lingqi had been training martial arts.

When other families daughters take care of their skin, Lu Lingqi's hand and body had been wounded many times because of her determination to please her tiger father. Because of her efforts, she is able to have superclass strength at her young age, not an ounce less inferior than her father's.

If she was a man, then history would have been rewritten by her hand!

When the Serpent spear and halberd clashed again, in the midair spark flew. Both people who reached superclass strength are fighting each other, one is to fulfill a mission and the other to defend her father's honor.

Two warriors showdown, the West Wing's open space had been completely occupied by their battle. Nobody can get near during their battle, if one got near them, they will be killed if not careful.

Before long, they have been fighting for more than 50 bouts, Zhou Tai's body was also bleeding by the halberd's blow.

"A WOUND?! I AM WOUNDED!!! IT HURRRRTTTTSSSSS!!!!" Zhou Tai has been stunned. He looks at his chest, that wound is so deep that one can see his bone now. When he touched the wound, he become really excited and crazy despite saying "IT HURTS!!!"

TL: This is just like Mr. Heart of Hokuto no Ken's fame

He licked the blood from his finger.

"BLOOD!!! BLOOD!!!! AAAARRGH!!!!" Zhou Tai's eyes turned red; sated he must kill human to sated his bloodlust. His presence was imposing, even the bystanders who saw him became uncomfortable, let alone Lu Lingqi.

"HE IS NOT HUMAN!!!" Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu simultaneously voiced their opinion.

"Not human?!" Liu Mang stunned. Then what is Zhou Tai? God? Monster?

Looking at Liu Mang's doubtful expression, Huang Xu answered "This Zhou Tai was not raised by humans or it can be said he did not grew up together with human! He was raised by a predator!!!"

"Predator?!"

"That is correct! A Predator raised him!!!" Huang Xu confirmed it once more.

His father Huang Zhong, in order to find a cure for his illness, traveled around the nation. Now in times of war, many families were broken. Even the government cannot help them because they are busy taking care of their own. So, some children were swapped to be cooked and some of them were thrown away to die like wild animal.

Some of them were eaten by wild animals but some of them were actually adopted as well. These children grew up from infancy with wild

animals. They ate raw meat ravenously. They are sensitive to blood, especially predators.

Predators were not like humans who are scared by the look of blood, instead it will make them crazier filled with frenzy. Being wounded will only let unlock their bestial side. These kind of people are called beast men.

Huang Zhong had once killed a beast man before. Because at that time, there was report surrounding Nanyang that a beast-like man had destroyed 100 government troops by himself.

Lu Lingqi just focused on Zhou Tai and did not bother with Huang Xu's explanation. Lu Lingqi actually knew one other person who was like Zhou Tai.

That person was her father, Lu Bu.

Lu Bu not only had a Mighty Tiger as his title but also an Alpha Wolf. This title was not given to him by others. It was only known to one person, which is Ding Yuan.

At that time, before Lu Bu met Ding Yuan, Lu Bu was the leader of a pack of huge wolves. He was like a feral beast because of famine year after year. Famine that took his father and mother's lives. So, he can only approach the wolves in order to survive and he had become the Alpha Wolf with many wolves following him.

So, invaders when hearing Lu Bu's name, they are very panic stricken

and screamed the “White Wolf God” has come.

“Poof!!!” Lu Lingqi suddenly was thrown away by Zhou Tai and was now floating above the ground. “How can that be?!” Lu Lingqi truly surprised because Zhou Tai’s movement so sporadic. Only by one move, Lu Lingqi whose strength had reached superclass was thrown into the air.

“BLOOD!!!! BLOOD!!!!” Zhou Tai was rampaging causing friendly fire everywhere.

He now targeted those Black Flag soldiers. One of them was bitten in the neck similar to predator killing its prey. Now Zhou Tai is drinking his blood.

“The leader went crazy!!!!” The Black Flag quickly ran away from Zhou Tai.

Chapter 134 - Together We Live or Die

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

"ALL OF YOU!!! RUN NOW!!!!" Lu Lingqi shouted toward Liu Mang and co. She must block Zhou Tai, she must absolutely not let him pass even if that feat costs her life.

This man has increased his strength by at least twofold by going berserk. Even Lu Bu or Huang Zhong will have big difficulties in killing him, let alone Lu Lingqi. Now she can only stall him, until the main unit arrives.

A First-class general is basically having the strength of one thousand people (superclass strength). Those whose strength have reached pinnacle of first-class are Zhang Fei, Guan Yu, Zhao Yun, Dian Wei and Xu Chu. Their strength are more than 1,000 troops and even saying their strength equivalent to 10,000 men may not be an exaggeration. They are so strong that 3,000 troops will not be able to stop them.

Those who are following Liu Mang are only 20 great shield troops and less than 100 dismounted cavalry troops, how can they win against this beast?

And due to those big disadvantage, Lu Lingqi ordered them to run.

Liu Mang thought "Eh, run?! Leaving you Lu Lingqi alone? NEVER!!!!"

Once she goes all out to stall Zhou Tai, the last moment is to see her die. Liu Mang's slogan is “Together, we live or die; together, we share riches and honor!!!” He has sworn never to leave behind his soldiers, how can he leave his wife behind?

“All of you, protect little madam!!!” As weak as Liu Mang is now, he cannot watch Lu Lingqi die here.

“YES SIR!!!” The Urban Army's first training was to obey orders without question, even at the front of mortal danger, once the leader has ordered them to rush, they must rush.

“Huang Xu, lead the Honorable Mother-in-laws, Miss Yuan Fang and Miss He Yu to a secure place. After that return to me!!!” Liu Mang exclaimed loudly while holding a great shield. Liu Mang started to think back on his reason to study martial arts. It is to protect those who are important to him and those who believe in him. Liu Mang really did not want the same tragedy of Mt. Bagong to happen again.

“YOU GO, RUN FROM HERE!!!” How can Liu Mang not know about Zhou Tai's terror? Lu Lingqi knows that Liu Mang is afraid of Zhou Tai. This is the same fear that all of Lu Bu's opponent felt before Lu Bu.

He can kill you as easy as breathing and you can only tremble at his presence. With these kind of feelings, even a thousand people is not enough to stop Zhou Tai.

“I WILL NOT GO!!!” Liu Mang went forward and carried Lu Lingqi like a bride, hugging her tightly. Liu Mang discovered, that when he touched Lu Lingqi's hips, she was bleeding due to Zhou Tai's attack.

Her white cloth had turned red from the blood. In the battlefield, Liu Mang has seen many soldiers disemboweled and suffered severe injury, but a beautiful woman injured like this, really broke Liu Mang's heart. This silly woman really fought too much.

“PUT ME DOWN, YOU ARE NOT A MATCH FOR HIM!!!” Lu Lingqi was truly anxious, if Liu Mang stayed too long here, he will die. “Oh, Hanyang, I beg you. Hurry, you rescued all our mothers, wait for the main unit to rescue me!!!” Lu Lingqi is struggling to be put down.

“DON'T STRUGGLE!!!!” Liu Mang tightly hugged Lu Lingqi. He hugged her with all of his feelings pouring towards her. Lu Lingqi whose strength had reached superclass should be able to break out from Liu Mang's hug easily. She did not know however, whether it was because her wound or other things, but she ceased her struggle.

“Before, you always hated me, we were always bickering, and always quarreling. I could tolerate all of that. But this!? This I cannot!! What this Zhou Tai said is right, how can a man hide behind a woman!!!” Liu Mang had not spoken with Lu Lingqi for a long time.

Previously before they arrived in Shucheng County, they stopped talking to each other because Liu Mang kept training disregarding her scolding to stop. He had planned to go apologize again in Wancheng city, but there was He Yu and Yuan Fang. Making Liu Mang and Lu Lingqi's relationship in a rut permanently, but now he is pouring everything for her, his full body and soul.

Liu Mang then said with a very gentle tone “Forgive me for aggrieving

you all the time, I swear, I will make it up to you forever!!!”

Originally Liu Mang thought that he did not care whatever feelings were between them, because their marriage is set. But now, he must ask her for forgiveness, because their fate is uncertain due to the battle with Zhou Tai.

Suddenly on Lu Lingqi's face a red blush appeared.

“ALL SOLDIERS LISTEN UP!!!” Liu Mang shouted “Zhou Tai said that we are garbage and cowards, we only can hide behind woman, TELL ME, IS THAT WHO WE ARE?!”

“THAT IS NOT US, THAT IS NOT US!!!” The Urban Army also screamed. Zhou Tai had already killed many of their brothers. They are also proud men. Being insulted as cowards and garbage really angered them

“GOOD, TODAY WE WILL SHOW ZHOU TAI, WE WILL SHOW HIM, THAT THE URBAN ARMY ARE NOT COWARDS. WE ARE MEN FULL OF VIGOR, WE ARE MEN WHO CAN BEND STEEL FRAMES!!! WE WOULD RATHER DIE STANDING, THAN LIVE RUNNING!!!” Liu Mang then issued his order

“RAISE THE SHIELDS!!!”

Twenty great shield soldiers immediately raised their shield and formed a wall.

“IN THIS FIGHT WHERE THERE IS NO RETREAT, WE MAY ALL DIE. ZHOU TAI EXPECTS US TO RUN AND HIDE LIKE COWARDS. HOWEVER MY

BROTHERS, IN FRONT OF THIS GREAT PERIL LET US SHOW HIM THE STRENGTH OF OUR BONDS!!!! URBAN ARMY...!!!”

“TOGETHER, WE LIVE OR DIE!!! TOGETHER, WE LIVE OR DIE!!!”

“Put me down!!!” Lu Lingqi said toward Liu Mang who quickly complied with her order.

Lu Lingqi then exclaimed “SINCE ALL OF YOU CHOOSE TO STAND TOGETHER IN LIFE AND DEATH, ADD ME ALONG INTO THE FRAY!!! I, LU LINGQI, LU FENGXIAN’S DAUGHTER ARE ALSO WITH ALL OF YOU. TOGETHER, WE LIVE OR DIE; TOGETHER, WE SHARE RICH AND HONORS!!!” Lu Lingqi knows the Urban Army's slogan, because it is her future husband's division. So she also helped to maintain this division wholeheartedly.

Those Urban Army soldiers who heard their little madam’s exclamation became much more determined.

“Little lord!!!” When Liu Mang wanted to face Zhou Tai, suddenly a thin young man come from behind. This person’s presence made Liu Mang's brow wrinkled. “Huang Xu, did not I tell you to protect the Honorable Mother-in-laws!! Why did you come back here?!”

“Little lord, I am sorry, we cannot leave!!!” Huang Xu shook his head. The enemy is not only Zhou Tai. There are also Black Flag soldiers who are with Zhou Tai. Protecting those 5 pretty ladies, will be a very tough task for Huang Xu. Huang Xu had decided to destroy Zhou Tai first, only then can he assure everyone's safety.

“Little lord, give me time, give me enough time!!! As long as I have enough time, I will be able to handle Zhou Tai!!!” Huang Xu said while looking at Zhou Tai who is already in crazy.

“Handle Zhou Tai? Really?!” Liu Mang original plan was to fight Zhou Tai to the death, buying time for the main army to return. Now Huang Xu has a method to handle Zhou Tai, how can he not be excited?

“UM!!!” Huang Xu nodded firmly and said “What I need now is time!!!” Liu Mang noticed at Huang Xu's hand there was longbow.

“Are you trying to?!” Liu Mang had seen Huang Zhong's godly archery. Only an arrow can make Lu Bu uneasy.

“Um!!! Regarding wushu, I only learned 30% of my father's skill, but regarding archery, I already learned 80% of his skill!!!” Huang Xu's face revealed a confident look.

“80%?!” Huang Zhong with at pinnacle of superclass generals in archery able to make Lu Bu throw down his weapon and helmet. 80% of Huang Zhong's archery skill should be enough to handle Zhou Tai.

“Okay!!! I will buy time for you. As long as the Urban Army and this Liu Mang still exist, nobody can disturb you!!!” Huang Xu now has become Liu Mang's final chance to survive.

“CHARGEEEE!!!” Liu Mang already did not treat Zhou Tai as a man, but like a battalion with 3,000 troops. Now in Liu Mang's hand he only had less than 200 troops. Whatever the outcome, Liu Mang must battle with

this person whose strength is equal 3,000 troops with his 200 troops.

“SHA, SHA, SHA!!!!” The Urban Army was charging toward Zhou Tai who had become crazy in an orderly manner.

“HAAAHH, BLOOD!!! BLOOD!!!” Zhou Tai had just finished killing another Black Flag soldier, when suddenly seeing the Urban Army closing on him, Zhou Tai became excited again.

“BLOOD!!! BLOOD!!! BLOOD!!!” Zhou Tai jumped into the air, the serpent spear on his hand is firmly gripped. But when he used the spear, he just swung it like a club. A Thousand-jin strength hit the Urban Army soldiers.

“BANG!!!” The serpent spear swept the great shields.

“CRRRACCCKKKK!!!!””ARGH!!!” The Urban Army's body was hit with serpent spear. That strike made their leg bone fracture.

Normal people will scream with this injure, but the Urban Army shield unit just endured it in order for them not to release their great shields.

“Front row, change into second row!” Liu Mang quickly ordered so that the front row was replaced with healthy soldiers.

“HAAAA!!!!” Lu Lingqi also started to strike him. If a moment ago, Zhou Tai made her feel fear. Lu Lingqi’s morale had been restored. He is only one man and Zhou Tai was definitely outnumbered now.

“RAAAWWH!!!” Zhou Tai roared again toward the sky, his serpent spear became faster.

“BANG, BANG, BANG!!!!” In just half an hour, the Urban Army has changed rows 10 times. Liu Mang himself also was hit by Zhou Tai's “club” and spurt blood from internal damage.

His Aries gold-cloth did not fear sharp weapons, but the force of being it with a thousand pounds; Liu Mang felt that his organs has shifted into many places.

“Huang Xu, quick, quick!!!” Liu Mang is screaming in his heart. If Huang Xu did not make his move, then all of them will die here.

And as if, Liu Mang's scream had been heard.

“WOOOSH” An arrow passed in front of Liu Mang's eyes and zipped through toward Zhou Tai.

Although Zhou Tai was currently in berserk mode, he still had the instinct of wild animal. An animal's instinct regarding danger is higher. Feeling danger looming, Zhou Tai stopped in his path and looked around.

Finally he found the arrow that wanted to claim his life.

Zhou Tai wanted to avoid it, but the arrow was too quick. His eyes can see the arrow but his body could not react in time. It was not fast enough to avoid it, so he can only brace for impact while avoiding vital spots according to his instinct.

“Pssssh!!!” That arrow jabbed into Zhou Tai's body. Its strength was enough to make Zhou Tai stagger.

“Nice opportunity!!!” Lu Lingqi was excited and quickly directed her halberd toward Zhou Tai's vital spots.

If this was hit, even if Zhou Tai did not die, he would be severely wounded and with that, danger would have been averted.

“LEADER!!!” A Black Flag soldier jumped in front of the halberd's path, in order to protect Zhou Tai.

The long halberd quickly pierced the Black Flag soldier’s body; blood is splashing toward Lu Lingqi.

Chapter 135 - Huang Xu Unleashes the Rapid Point-Shot

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

[tl: Changing rapid-concentrated-shot to rapid point-shot]

“RAAAAWWWHH!!!” Blood flowed from Zhou Tai like a waterfall. The wound did not hinder Zhou Tai's movement at all, instead it made Zhou Tai become crazier.

“Blood, more blood!!!” The Black Flag soldier who rescued him was preyed upon by Zhou Tai.

“AAARRRRGGGHHHH, Leader, Please stop!!!” His intestines were scattered by Zhou Tai. Watching the person he just saved cut him open; his whole face was distorted.

“BLOOD!!! More blood!!!” Zhou Tai quickly bit another Black Flag soldier on his neck. He quickly tore the artery with his teeth. That kind of appearance is truly sickening making the Urban Army soldiers vomit.

The Black Flag soldiers' face was really twisted, one can see the horror on his face. After Zhou Tai drank his blood, he threw his body like trash, but on his face there was a relieved expression

After Zhou Tai drank the soldier’s blood, Huang Xu’s second arrow came. The arrow is very quick and was directed toward Zhou Tai's forehead, but before it made an impact, Zhou Tai deflected it with the spear.

“CLANG!!!” That arrow’s impact made Zhou Tai stagger. Zhou Tai was extremely angered and he pounded his spear on the ground, destroying the blue stone flooring.

“GRRRR!!!!!” Zhou Tai directed his vision toward the arrow's direction, finally he had discovered a man hiding in the shadow. Huang Xu knows that Zhou Tai is staring at him, his brow wrinkled. He felt like a prey being hunted by a predator.

“ROARRR!!!!” Zhou Tai quickly leaped toward Huang Xu.

“NOT GOOD!!! EVERYONE, PROTECT HUANG XU!!!!” Liu Mang had counted on Huang Xu to destroy Zhou Tai. If now Huang Xu was killed by Zhou Tai, then it was over.

Actually, the Urban Army already started moving when they noticed that Zhou Tai was changing his direction to Huang Xu. They wanted to prevent him, but Zhou Tai was quicker. Those who are using great shields were already unable to follow.

“DISCARD THE SHIELDS!!!! DISCARD THE SHIELDS!!!!”

Even with great shields this Zhou Tai dangerous, but now they were ordered to discard their great shields; they were completely vulnerable. Slashed by Zhou Tai's spear they will be die instantly. Hearing Liu Mang's order, the great shield troops just bit their teeth and quickly went after him.

“ROAR!!!!” Zhou Tai raised his spear and slammed one of the Urban Army soldiers to the ground; the blue stone tile breaking from the impact. The soldier quickly vomited blood. The pressure from the blow was too much, his internal organs were damaged, and in a few moment he will be dead.

“CHARRGEEE!!!” Huang Xu was their only hope, Liu Mang will not let Zhou Tai harm Huang Xu.

The Urban Army’s sacrifice proved to be quite effective to block Zhou Tai's advance.

Liu Mang also advanced in order to kill Zhou Tai. His blow land on Zhou Tai's hand which simultaneously blocked his strike as well. The long sword broke into several pieces.

Blood spurted and many of iron fragments were stuck in Zhou Tai's arm, but Zhou Tai kept ignoring Liu Mang. His only target is the archer who is able to shoot a fatal shot.

During that charge, no less than 80% of the Urban Army troops died, most of them died in Zhou Tai's hands, the others from internal bleeding.

DAMMIT, is this the strength of a first-class general? His strength feels like there are 10,000 troops inside him.

Huang Xu currently is aiming at Zhou Tai. Earlier he tried to find a secluded place in order to focus his concentration, turning his body into a bow and arrow.

Even now he is still in that full concentration mode and determined not to break that heightened concentration state, so even though Huang Xu knows that Zhou Tai is moving toward his direction, he will still not move, as even the slightest movement will break his trance.

“I WILL NOT LET YOU PASS!!!!” Just as Zhou Tai started to speed up to kill Huang Xu, suddenly there was a bloodied man who is holding his leg stubbornly.

“I WILL NOT LET YOU PASS!!!” Another man is currently holding Zhou Tai's arm. That man is the man that Zhou Tai slammed into blue stone earlier, but he stubbornly held Zhou Tai arm now.

“I WILL NOT LET YOU GO FURTHER!!!!” The Urban Army soldiers who are currently holding onto Zhou Tai's appendages are at border of death and were severely wounded. Death was coming for them, so they might as well stop Zhou Tai in his path.

“EVERYONE, STOP HIM AT ALL COSTS!!!” Liu Mang exclaimed. From 120 comrades, only 50 troops were left standing, the others were either dead or severely wounded.

Liu Mang has never fought such a hopeless battle like this. When at Mt. Bagong, his 432 troops died in battle repelling the enemy!!! But now, Liu Mang really did not have confidence to win this battle.

Lu Lingqi also hurled her halberd in order to kill Zhou Tai while his motion is restricted.

“RRRAAAAAAGGGHHHHH!!!!” Zhou Tai is struggling to get out from the grip of the Urban Army soldiers who were clinging to him. This struggle caused the arms of those soldiers to be twisted and distorted.

Those whose arms were twisting started to fracture; their bones popping out of their flesh bones. Their arms are done for but they did not care at all, for they were determined to fulfill their last mission.

“QUICK, HELP THE LEADER, KILL THE ARCHER!!!” When Zhou Tai became immobile due to the Urban Army clinging on him, the remaining 20 Black Flag soldiers quickly responded to their leader's predicament. With Zhou Tai being berserk, they did not dare to approach him now, but they still can help him destroy Huang Xu.

“DAMN!!!!” Liu Mang cursed. Zhou Tai by himself already truly dangerous, and now adding the Black Flag, there is nobody who will defend Huang Xu now.

“I WILL GO THERE!!!” Lu Lingqi quickly redirected her halberd to go to Huang Xu's direction. In a few minutes those twenty Black Flags perished in Lu Lingqi's hand.

“ROAAARRRRRR!!!!” Zhou Tai became even angrier and started moving like an animal. He began fiercely shaking his body left and right, throwing two of Urban Army soldiers who are currently clinging on him into his serpent spear. “Splush!!!” Those two people immediately died.

Zhou Tai then quickly picked up those bodies and ripped their corpses into two.

“ROARRRR!!!!” Blood spraying everywhere, making him excited again.

“DAMN, HE IS NOW FREE!!!” With both hands free, the berserked Zhou Tai swung his serpent spear like a scythe. With one swing, it claimed many lives; nobody could stop him.

“Again, total annihilation again!!!” Liu Mang smiled bitterly. The two times he went to battle, both resulted in a tragedy for him. It was always his comrades protecting others or protecting him. Those who are under him is truly did not survive very long. However, he realized that it was not the opponent who is too strong, but himself who was too weak.

“WHIZ, WHIZ, WHIZ!!!” A series of arrows sped toward Zhou Tai!!! It was Huang Zhong’s Rapid Point-Shot. Huang Xu was able to do a Rapid Point-Shot?

Explaining it once more, the ability was multiple arrows following each other hitting the same spot. Those arrows following from behind like a slipstream increases speed and impact in order to penetrate armor. No armor is too strong for that kind of shot.

Huang Xu said that he was able to learn 80% of Huang Zhong’s archery skill. Liu Mang started to remember the battle between Lu Bu and Huang Zhong. At that time, if Lu Bu didn’t charge towards those arrows, Lu Bu might have died at that time.

“WHIZ, WHIZ, WHIZ!!!” Zhou Tai also felt like those arrows were going to claim his life. He however, was not Lu Bu who had confidence to strike the Rapid Point-Shot directly. He can only defend against it; concentrating all of his vigor to fortify his skin.

His instinct told him that he is in a big danger. This sense of crisis also made Zhou Tai's humanity return and now he is able to see the path of the arrows clearly.

Huang Xu was breathing very heavily, that skill was his limit. He currently just recovered from his illness, so he was still weak.

Huang Zhong was very much like Lu Bu in regards for a successor. Lu Bu only had a daughter, so he cannot find a successor to pass his skills, but eventually his daughter cought up with his wishes.

Historically, Huang Zhong had a son, so he hoped to pass his skills down to him. But Huang Xu was forced to train martial arts in a wrong way, so he came down with sickness that was un-curable at the time. When Huang Xu died Huang Zhong was filled with regret until his death because he harmed his son, his successor-to-be.

Now, even though Huang Xu can only learn 30% of Huang Zhong's wushu skills, but regarding archery, he is no less inferior to Huang Zhong.

After his pneumonia was treated, Huang Xu who only studied his father's archery skills in theory, suddenly was able to put those theories into practice.

The Rapid Point-Shot that Huang Zhong had demonstrated in front of him only once was copied by him to perfection. However, his limit was only one usage, because the current Huang Xu already lost his stamina.

“THIS SHOT WILL DEFINITELY KILL YOU!!!!” Huang Xu exclaimed. He is truly confident that the shot will kill or severely wound Zhou Tai.

Chapter 136 - Damned People Should Just Die! Huang Zhong Enters the Fray

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Poof, poof!!!” Huang Xu's arrows were able to penetrate Zhou Tai's armor. They were now stabbing Zhou Tai’s left chest and in addition, those follow-up arrows which did not pierce Zhou Tai's chest, are now falling down piercing other parts of his body. Zhou Tai looked like a human hedgehog

“SUCCESS!!!” Those arrows had pierced Zhou Tai's chest thoroughly. This can be considered as a sure kill strike.

Zhou Tai who should have drop dead instead lifted his head, his eyes did not become beast-like again, but instead showed a shred of humanity.

“Is it his last stand?!” Liu Mang knows when a person's heart has been pierced, he will not die at the scene. Not until blood stopped flowing would the victim then die. Some strong-minded person can last maybe around 7 minutes, but with that severe wound Zhou Tai should die soon.

But looking at Zhou Tai's appearance, it seems that Zhou Tai's wound is not too severe.

“Good, very good!!!” Zhou Tai smiled. He knew that he had gone berserk before. Now with that arrow lodged in his left chest, he returned to sanity but his strength unexpectedly did not recede a bit.

Zhou Tai removed all of the arrows violently and that caused all of his wounds to start bleeding profusely, but Zhou Tai did not care at all.

"How can that be?!" The shot went through his heart will definitely bleed profusely when pulling the arrow out but this is not the result that Huang Xu wanted. "This is impossible, impossible!!!" Huang Xu shook his head and started shooting again.

"Psh, psh!!!" Those arrows again entered the left chest cavity, but Zhou Tai did not respond at all, he just pulled out the arrows casually.

"Do all of you want to know why I am not dead yet?!" Zhou Tai sneered. He looks at all the people present. During his berserk moment, all of the annoying insects had been killed. Good, the only remaining people are only a few. Zhou Tai thought

"Let me tell you clearly then!!!" Zhou Tai then removed his armor, revealing healthy muscles, but when people saw his skin, they held their breaths and trembled.

This man was the devil incarnate. On his body there were many scars, so many that there was not a single inch where a scar was not visible. Old scars mixed with the new scars caused by Lu Lingqi, the Urban Army and Huang Xu.

These kind of scars are even too many for people who often went to battle.

Even Lu Bu did not have this many scars.

Since childhood, when Zhou Tai was thrown away by his parents, he was raised by giant a cheetah. He was in nature's territory then. Survival of the fittest was the only law.

The strong is fed and the weak became food. At that time, Zhou Tai not only needed to seize food with other cheetahs, but he also needed to fight humans and was scarred from many narrow escapes.

TL: Acinonyx pardinensis or Chinese Panther, big like lion

Because Zhou Tai always went around near human villages, he gradually understood human language. At 15 years old he went out of the forest to return to the human world. At that time Jiangdong was in big chaos.

There was the Yellow Turban Rebellion remnants fighting, there was also war between tribes at the mountain and also nobles who squeezed commoners. Zhou Tai was really confused, he just got out from the forest, yet the fierceness was just the same.

Then Zhou Tai become an outlaw. During his outlaw days, he met Jiang Qin. Jiang Qin treated him like a person, like a brother, so Zhou Tai was always together with Jiang Qin and even became pirates together.

Although Zhou Tai is strong, he did not have skills in wushu, so he could only use his overwhelming strength to gain victory. But when he met an expert, Zhou Tai realized that brute strength was not enough to overwhelm a person, so he always wanted to learn wushu.

When Zhou Tai and Jiang Qin joined Yuan Shu's army, Sun Ce took a liking to Zhou Tai. When Sun Ce traded his Imperial Seal with 3,000 troops, he asked Zhou Tai to follow him to glory. Zhou Tai complied without hesitation.

So Zhou Tai had been dishing out merit since that day until today when Jiangdong was pacified under Sun Ce. He had become a famous general since the very start of his career. Although his wushu skills were still lacking, Zhou Tai can just use his berserk state to bring glory. So even though he was punctured by at least 10 arrows, he still can stand strong and fight. He had fought at least 10,000 battles, resulting in the Zhou Tai now.

Zhou Tai who had experience from 10,000 battles has developed his own skill in wushu, while also giving him scars. If Lu Bu is the god-of-war then Zhou Tai is an evil spirit. The more pain he is in, the stronger he gets, that is the way of an evil spirit.

He will be able to make enemies terrified just by doing that. Even if he is slashed, shot, or hurt, he will not flinch at all.

Although Lu Bu during his servitude toward Ding Yuan was no more than a beast man, because Lu Bu was very strong, he is also very arrogant. It was very hard for human society to accommodate him, only in the presence of beasts can his behavior be accepted.

Moreover when he became the White Wolf God, he had a very small concern for human life. He cut them down like weed. This is how an expert was born from wilderness.

Zhou Tai then said to Huang Xu “I have two hearts. If I had only one, I would have drop dead immediately. But unfortunately, I still have one more. Although I am now severely wounded, I will take you with me!!!” Zhou Tai then insulted Huang Xu

“Did your master did not tell you how to identify man with two hearts? Clearly the one who taught you is garbage like you!!!”

Eh, two hearts? This can explain why Huang Xu's arrow can only severely wound Zhou Tai, but unable to kill him instantly.

Garbage? Since childhood, Huang Xu's physique is weak, he had been bullied countless times. He was even called garbage by his peers, but Huang Xu did not care but he cannot tolerate people insulting his father.

Huang Zhong truly loved Huang Xu. For Huang Xu he was willing to kneel toward Huang She and give up his military authority. He was told by Liu Mang during his recuperation in Lu Bu's main camp during Battle of Huangzhou city, so regarding Huang Zhong, Huang Xu truly founded new respects for his father and will not let anyone insult him.

“So what, if you have two hearts? I can destroy your other heart and kill you again!!!” Huang Xu eyes flared full of rage, his pale complexion become red with anger.

“Huang Xu, you already at your limit, STOP!!!” Lu Lingqi said in low voice. Huang Xu's condition is not very good, especially after he projected his Rapid Point-Shot. Currently he is already out of stamina.

“Little madam, please do not stop me. He has insulted my father, as he had insulted your father before, he must die now!!!”

Huang Xu ignored Lu Lingqi's warning and pulled his longbow again. He focused to shoot another Rapid Point-shot. That frail body started emitting dangerous a feeling again.

Zhou Tai who felt danger, hurled his insults again. “OOOOHHHH, YOUR FATHER IS THE ONE WHO TAUGHT YOU ARCHERY EH? NO WONDER, YOU ARE GARBAGE!!! GARBAGE CAN ONLY GIVE BIRTH TO A GARBAGE!!!!”

This is Zhou Tai’s last scheme, if he is able to disrupt Huang Xu’s concentration, then good, if he cannot, then he is dead anyway so he can only insult him as he is currently in a distressful situation, one of his hearts was already shot.

And it proved to be effective, because Huang Xu’s shot turned into burst shot, no longer a Rapid Point-shot, he was only able to deal a small amount of damage to Zhou Tai

“HAH!!! So, your arrows can only deal this amount of damage? Not enough to kill me!!! COME AGAIN!!!” Zhou Tai continues to provoke him in order to do a mortal blow to Huang Xu. This is the only person who can kill him, the others cannot.

“DAMN!!!!” Huang Xu already did not have energy to shoot again. On the opposite, Zhou Tai was also relieved, because all of Huang Xu’s shots hit his body. Even though he became a hedgehog again, all the arrows missed his vital points.

“HAAAHHHHH, HAAAHHHHHH, HAAAAHHHHHH!!!!” Huang Xu’s mouth is huffing. He is at his limit, he regretted that he cannot mortally wounded Zhou Tai. He wanted to draw again but his quiver was already emptied.

“HAHAHAHA!!!” With the biggest threat disappearing, Zhou Tai laughed “Heh, let me tell you, a moment ago, my insult was only a scheme. You are very strong, your arrow was the biggest threat for me!!!”

“However, you will die here!!!” Zhou Tai pulled out all of arrows from his body.

Zhou Tai started moving again toward Huang Xu, he is a beast of war, he did not care whether he survived this battle or not. All that he knows is that he must complete his mission and kill his opponents.

“WATCH OUT!!!” Liu Mang moved forward to block Zhou Tai.

“I WILL DEAL WITH YOU LATER, FUCK OFF!!!!” Zhou Tai deflected the shield with his fist. Liu Mang and his great shield was sent flying because of the momentum. When he hit the ground, he vomited blood.

Seeing Liu Mang injured, three ladies simultaneously screamed “HUSBAND!!!” After calling that, the three of them saw each other with hostile intention.

The first scream belonged to Lu Lingqi. She is truly worried. Even though she was shy, she has accepted Liu Mang wholly because of Liu

Mang's bridal carry earlier. When she heard the two ladies also calling him HUSBAND, anger welled in her heart.

The second scream belonged to Yuan Fang. That is acceptable, because she also had been betrothed to Liu Mang as a sister wife.

But that third scream, was He Yu's voice, what is the connection between her and him? Lu Lingqi and Yuan Fang had both been betrothed to Liu Mang, so naturally they can call him husband, but He Yu did not have any connection at all, why did she scream like that?

Little did Lu Lingqi and Yuan Fang know, she was secretly ahead of them when it came to the battle of love! Liu Mang had rescued her from a tiger and also deflowered her in Wancheng City. Those particular events had blossomed seeds of love inside their hearts.

"Nice of you to be loved, eh Prince of Shu. What a pity, you are doomed to die here. At least you can go to hell together with your wives!!!" Zhou Tai said to Liu Mang while preparing to choke slam Huang Xu.

Huang Xu no longer had any strength to resist Zhou Tai so he just coughed blood repeatedly. His pneumonia is acting up again.

"Such a young age, but already a master archer. If I let you alive, you will be a bane to our Sun Ce's banner. Let me send you to hell now!!!" Zhou Tai said while raising Huang Xu higher to slam him. If the choke slam connected, Huang Xu will be dead in only one slam.

"THE ONE WHO WILL BE IN HELL TODAY IS YOU!!!" Suddenly a voice full

of anger bellowed from the West Wing gate.

That man was wearing yellow armor with a longbow. In his voice, there was anger, pain and murderous killing intent. The murderous aura in the West Wing which had calmed down, suddenly rose again.

Chapter 137 - Wounded Cheetah VS Lion King

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Father, you’ve returned!!!” Huang Xu who is already pale from being choked by Zhou Tai, suddenly showed signs of hope.

Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng, had entered the building with his gold curved dao and long bow at his back.

Huang Zhong's order was to assault the South Gate. The Urban Army under Huang Zhong's leadership was invincible. The opposite did not have any teeth to bite back, all of them were dead, even Yu Zheng from the Yu clan who just boasted about his achievements was beheaded instantly by Huang Zhong.

After they finished assaulting the South Gate, originally Huang Zhong was prepared to join up with Liu Mang to fight the Zhou clan's Black Flag. But when he arrived at the appointed place, he only found Liu Kai and Liu Neng with their private soldiers along with the disarmed Black Flag soldiers.

The Black Flag was the Zhou clan's private soldiers. If Liu Mang alone were to subjugate them, it will take very big effort as he is not a noble. The same thing cannot be said with the Liu clan however. As they are also nobles, then subjugating Black Flag is the same as changing masters, from Zhou to Liu.

Looking at these elite heavy infantries who had just surrendered made Huang Zhong truly stunned. Every single one of those Black Flag soldiers were truly strong because they were able to lift heavy armor with very little difficulties. Huang Zhong could not believe that his little lord is truly this strong.

The Urban Army's casualties only amounted to 100 troops and he was able to make these 3,000 elite troops surrender. But now Huang Zhong was unable to find Liu Mang anywhere at their appointed place

Liu Neng quickly told Huang Zhong that Liu Mang went to Administration Office, because Sun Ce had sent assassins to kill his lord Lu Bu's family. Liu Kai and Liu Neng stayed here because of Liu Mang's order to put these newly surrendered Black Flag to prison, so they stayed here now. With the request from Liu Neng to assist Liu Mang, Huang Zhong quickly galloped toward the Administration Office.

Even without Liu Neng's request, Huang Zhong would have also quickly went to the Administration Office. Liu Mang had stationed his beloved son to guard Lu Bu's family. Huang Zhong was now really worried, so worried that he kept whipping his already tired warhorse.

When he arrived at Administration Office, Huang Zhong trembled a little, because of the casualties at the lobby. Huang Zhong asked an Urban Army who managed to survive the initial attack, Liu Mang's location. After that, Huang Zhong quickly moved to the West Wing. When he arrived there, his eyes almost fell out of its socket because of shock.

Urban Army's corpses were littered everywhere. Some of them were torn in half, some of them had bones protruding from their bodies, a great shield split into two and the blue stone for flooring was destroyed.

His little lord was lying on the ground held by his three wives-to-be, his son was choking and can be killed at any time by an armor less young man.

“Father?!” Zhou Tai’s heart was startled. The father of young archer came, this is dangerous. Zhou Tai then thought “It is no use. I don’t care if your father is here, you will die today!!!” Zhou Tai tightening his grip and want to choke slam Huang Xu.

“DIE!!!!” Zhou Tai went crazy again. First he needed to kill this young man and then seize the opportunity to kill the ladies and Liu Mang, ignoring Huang Zhong.

“YOU DIE NOW!!!” Huang Zhong exclaimed loudly. Huang Zhong no longer careded about wealth, no longer cared military authority, no longer cared about his dignity. The only thing that he cared about was his son Huang Xu. Threatening Huang Xu was like inviting Huang Zhong’s wrath. Now there is a man who threatened Huang Xu’s life, Huang Zhong wanted to rip that man open.

However, if he rushed Zhou Tai now, then it will be too late. So Huang Zhong drew his trusty longbow and quickly locked-on Zhou Tai.

In the Three Kingdoms period, the best archer Huang Zhong. Lu Bu’s skill in archery if compared with Huang Zhong’s is slightly inferior.

To explain that, we need to go further to the past, when Lu Bu was still in Xu Province. Two instances show Lu Bu’s archery prowess.

Originally in the Formation Breaker, Gao Shun had a major named Cao Xing who was able to shoot Xiahou Dun's left eye back in Xiapi from a distance of 150 steps. His archery was taught to him by Lu Bu. After Xiahou Dun ate his eyeball, he quickly charged with all of his might and was able to kill Cao Xing before losing consciousness. Cao Xing's skill in wushu was actually only a third-class general, even lower when compared to Cheng Yu, but he was able to almost kill a first-class general because of his archery skill.

The second instance is when Lu Bu shot his Sky Piercer in order to force Liu Bei and Ji Ling into a truce. At that time the distance between his Sky Piercer and him was 150 steps, but Lu Bu was still able to shoot his arrow flew toward the tip of his halberd and managed to hit it, thus we can agree that Lu Bu's archery is also excellent.

But during Lu Bu and Huang Zhong's duel, he did not use his archery skill because he knows that he is at his strongest when he is using halberd, same also with Huang Zhong with his archery skill. So they can only have showdown with their strongest point.

Now, Huang Zhong had never been so angry in his life, he quickly shifted powered up state, emitting the super-class general aura, similar to when Huang Xu wanted to shoot the Rapid Point-Shot, making people who felt his aura tremble in fear.

"NOT GOOD!!!" Zhou Tai's instinct as general and beast alerted him. He knows that at the time when this young boy dies, he will also die. Although Zhou Tai came with the determination to die, he had not yet finished his mission. He had indeed killed a lot of Lu Bu's army but those that he had killed were only soldiers, his mission is to kill Lu Bu's family in

order for his lord Sun Ce's blood debt to be paid.

So, Zhou Tai has no other choice but put Huang Xu in front of him. If, Huang Zhong shot him, he will kill his son first before he kills him.

"HUMPH!!!" Looking at Zhou Tai put his son as a cover, Huang Zhong became angrier. "This whippersnapper really thinks I do not have any other techniques up my sleeve!!!"

Huang Zhong quickly shot two arrows but not toward Zhou Tai but at a metal shield that the Urban Army soldiers had dropped.

When those arrows made contact with great shield, it suddenly turned its direction toward Zhou Tai's back shoulder. It was the exact same location where he was shot by Huang Xu's Rapid Point-Shot earlier and at the shoulder where he is holding Huang Xu.

"Ricochet?!" Liu Mang finally knew what is called master in archery and now in disbelief because he had never ever in his life expected to see a ricochet shot done using a bow and arrow.

TL: Huang Zhong just become Revolver Ocelot.

Zhou Tai only realized it at the last moment and was already too late to avoid those arrows.

"AAARRRRGGGHHHHH!!!!" Zhou Tai screamed in pain. His wounds are truly hurting now. Those arrows which were shot by Huang Zhong buried deep inside his left heart and his right shoulder where he choke Huang

Xu. Blood flowers splashing from his body causing much pain.

Because of that, Zhou Tai lost his arm strength and dropped Huang Xu. Just as Huang Xu was dropped, Lu Lingqi offered her halberd grip for Huang Xu to hold in order to escape.

Huang Xu had been saved, Zhou Tai's only threating enemy is Huang Zhong. So Zhou Tai ordered the rest of his Black Flag to attack Huang Zhong "STOP HIM!!!"

Zhou Tai's instinct has painted with fear from this veteran. The young archer almost cost him his life, now the old one comes with a skill much higher. He fears that he will die before completing his mission.

"Oh, not dead yet?!" Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled.

The second arrow has hit this young man's left chest. It should pierce his heart and he is on the way to bleeding to death. But he is still standing. Although this man's wounds are a lot, all of them are not fatal. A person whose strength has reached super-class can control their muscles in order to stop excessive blood loss.

"Still have one heart, eh?!" Huang Zhong sneered already understanding the situation.

Huang Zhong is not Huang Xu. He is experienced. Even though Zhou Tai already had a bleeding wound, he was still standing up; meaning he has two hearts. Huang Zhong quickly raised his bow again. He must kill this general soon but his brow wrinkled when he saw how many Black Flag

soldiers are charging toward him.

He quickly released his shot, and two Black Flag soldiers died instantly.

”SHAAAA!!!!” The death of their comrades cannot slow down the remaining Black Flags. They need to kill or hold down Huang Zhong so their commander can restore his strength and make a final charge. So, they revealed killing intent and shoved their long swords toward Huang Zhong.

Huang Zhong just countered the Black Flag soldiers who initiated an attack with his bare hands. He punched him and grabbed the long sword and quickly stabbed him.

Two Black Flags approaching, one of them tried to strike his chest, the other aimed for his belly.

Huang Zhong just used his longbow as shield, and then slashed them with his gold curved dao. In just a moment, both of them are lost their heads.

With The Black Flag buying time for him, Zhou Tai quickly gathered his strength again by hitting his own pressure points. He bit his wrist in order to become beast once again and also to connect certain blood vessel for his last offense. If he cannot become enraged, he has no hope of completing his mission.

Every time he bit his arm, he shivered, because the wound on his arm almost reached his bone. But whatever the cost, it is enough for him to

reconnect his blood vessel in order to become beast once again.

Zhou Tai is a predator. In order to make his last stand, he must at least opened his blood flow and reconnect vital blood vessels in order for him to fight again, so he had no choice but to do surgery on himself in order to reconnect his chi.

Huang Zhong, having destroyed the remaining Black Flag soldiers, he also had prepared his long bow.

“ROAAAAWWWH” Zhou Tai screamed.

He leaped toward Huang Zhong fiercely. Doing a long distance battle will only bring him a loss. That veteran’s longbow’s threat is too big. As long as he can fight in close combat, he can had an opportunity to win. So he brandished his serpent spear for one last battle.

“Oh, you want to do close combat? Good, let me witness how powerful you are!!!” Huang Zhong sneered while looking at Zhou Tai who is currently speeding toward him. He put down his long bow and pulled out his gold curved dao. Huang Zhong was not only good at archery, he was also good in close combat.

Yes, Huang Zhong’s top ability is his archery skill. But his strength is in the pinnacle of super-class. Even when Lu Bu fought Huang Zhong, he only able to keep up with him to a draw for 100 bouts before he pulled out his longbow.

Even historically when Guan Yu fight against Huang Zhong in Changsha

commandery. At that time, Guan Yu was still in his prime and Huang Zhong was already old, but when they fought, Guan Yu was unable to defeat Huang Zhong in a fair duel. Only after feinting escape, can he defeat Huang Zhong.

At that time, Huang Zhong was already past of his prime, his entire physical quality had already dropped; showing Huang Zhong's skill in dao.

Zhou Tai wanted fight in close combat in order to kill Huang Zhong and Huang Zhong also want to make Zhou Tai die painfully, an arrow shot is too good for him.

If Zhou Tai is a cheetah trying to pounce on a prey, then Huang Zhong now is a lion waiting for enemy to be exhausted in order to strike.

And final battle against a severely wounded Zhou Tai and Huang Zhong begun.

Huang Zhong just leisurely let Zhou Tai attack him, he wanted to know the depth of Zhou Tai's skills.

Zhou Tai is leaping again toward Huang Zhong in order to pounce him, Huang Zhong purposely on the defensive; he was even taking a few blows from Zhou Tai.

Zhou Tai was swinging his hand like a mad man, no longer a human.

But each of his strike was deflected easily. Huang Zhong sneered

toward Zhou Tai

“Heh, whippersnapper. If this is the extent of your ability, it is no wonder Sun Ce sent you as an assassin. Surely he did not think high of you!!!”

Zhou Tai roared again, angry from Huang Zhong’s insult. But this time, Huang Zhong repelled his attack with all his might making Zhou Tai stumble. As he lost balance, Huang Zhong slashed both of Zhou Tai’s hands and Achilles tendon.

Soon enough, Zhou Tai fell down on his back, unable to stand up anymore.

His arms fell at his side. As he turned his face, in front of him laid two hands gripping a split trident.

Chapter 138 - Massacre of the Rebellious Nobles

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“I lost!!! I lost!!!!” Zhou Tai now collapsed to the ground in denial. His serpent spear is split into two, his hands are missing and his Achilles tendon was severed by Huang Zhong. A moment ago, he could still fight with his hands and serpent spear, but now, Zhou Tai's four appendages are no longer useful.

“Who, who the hell are you!!!! At least tell me your name!!!!” Zhou Tai yelled still in disbelief.

In Sun Ce army, only Taishi Ci and Sun Ce can be compared with Zhou Tai. Once Zhou Tai has gone berserk, Taishi Ci and Sun Ce are not a match for him

Now, that same person was easily defeated by a veteran. Although when fighting Lu Lingqi and Huang Xu, Zhou Tai had already been exhausted; a loss is still loss. When fighting in the forest, nobody will give you any opportunity to even take a breath. Once you show your weakness, you are done for.

“My name is Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng!!!” Huang Zhou said while putting aside his longbow and his gold curved dao, continuing to dress his wound.

It seems that his earlier decision was quite wrong, letting Zhou Tai get a

clean blow him, he thought “Hmm, maybe I should not have been too confident earlier, his blows really are painful and are able to make me wounded like this!”.

“Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng? Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng?!” Zhou Tai just repeated Huang Zhong's name.

“Cough, cough!!!” Liu Mang's body had many dislocations, he is suffering from a big ache.

“Little lord!!!” Huang Zhong did not attended his son, but instead hurriedly went to help Liu Mang. Huang Zhong saw that although Huang Xu is injured, it was not a serious injury. Presently, the Urban Army's casualties is more than 200 men including those 100 troops who were sent earlier to the Administration Office. Those who survived are only less than 30 people and these 30 people also lost their battle prowess.

Luckily Huang Zhong arrived on time, if not Liu Mang may be among Urban Army's corpses.

“Old man Huang, thank you very much!!!” Liu Mang was struggling to sit, his face was pale. He was considered very lucky this time. His other brothers-in-arms either died or were severely wounded. Although his bone is also injured, it was not severe at all.

“Old man Huang. Speak now, say that I am not cursed!!!” Suddenly Liu Mang asked this strange question while looking at his comrade’s corpses.

“Eh? Little lord, what do you mean?!” Huang Zhong really did not

understand why Liu Mang asked that question.

"You see, this morning they were all still standing; still living. They called me general, they call me little lord. But now, now!!!" Liu Mang's eyes cannot hold his tears. His comrades, brothers-in-arms, all 200 troops died like trash. Even those 30 troops who managed to survive, are severely wounded and will not live through the day.

"After Battle of Mt. Bagong, I thought after I practiced martial arts and become strong, I can change their fate, but now? Nothing has changed, nothing!!!! I AM A GARBAGE BEYOND ANY RECOGNITION!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed loudly while sobbing. He no longer care about his dislocated bones his wounds.

"General, we would never blame you!!!" An Urban Army soldier opened his mouth. His chest already broken; his intestines spreading on the floor. His complexion is pale holding down a lot of pain. He knew that he would never see another morning.

"General, let me tell you this! You brought dignity to us, only you recognized us as humans!!! It is you who made us understand that being a soldier is not just to fill ones belly!!! You created many brothers for me, you created many family members for me. You made each one of us valuable in your division!!! That alone makes us very happy!!!!" Said that man while suppressing his pain.

That man is an ex-supply troop from Battle of Mt. Bagong. Afterwards he was drafted into Urban Army. In the supply troops, he only knows that being a soldier is to fill ones belly with warm food in order to survive. But after being in the Urban Army, he realized that there is more being a soldier than just filling one's belly.

In the cold weapons era, casualties to an elite unit was divided into three parts. After suffering 30% casualties the elite unit must fight to the death. After suffering 40% - 50% casualties it can be considered a defeat. After suffering 60% casualties and beyond, it can be considered as the unit being annihilated. Those are the three classifications of elite casualties in the cold weapon era.

Regarding Liu Mang's Urban Army, the current Urban Army really cannot be compared against other elite units in regards to battle efficiency. They definitely cannot be compared with Danyang soldiers, the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, the Formation Breaker, of the Ferocious Cavalry.

Even The Urban Army cannot be compared with the noble's private soldiers if they fought one-on-one. Every single troops of those elite squad are very strong in wushu and was also led by a general who was very strong in wushu too, therefore their battle efficiencies are very strong. The Urban Army currently are only able to fight together, no one-on-one bouts.

However, regarding morale. The Urban Army is unmatched by any of these elites. Although in the battlefield, the commander was always ordering them to protect each other, but usually soldiers just goes in their own pace. Ignoring comrades who had been mortally wounded and only wanted to watch out for their brothers, fathers and sons.

But in the Urban Army, Liu Mang always emphasized the importance of being a team, they are family. A team are people who work together as one, back-to-back with their fellow brothers. So, when one member is in distressful situation, they will quickly move to help them. That is how a

family should be, there is trust in the team; they were truly brothers-in-arms.

They would complete their task no matter what. They were even satisfied on laying down their life for their General and elder brother, Liu Mang; they became his weapons and his shields.

These 200 troops, even if they are dying, they will stay strong for Liu Mang. Earlier they had resolved to die in order to stop Zhou Tai. Even if their body was destroyed in the process, even if their body was split into two, they will endure the pain in order to help Liu Mang. This is the embodiment of their motto, “Together we live or die; Together we share riches and honor” that Liu Mang taught them, the spirit of his division.

“General, I am sorry that I cannot be with you again! I will go to netherworld with my other brothers!!!” His face already pale and his body convulsing painfully, but on his dying face there was a smile of satisfaction.

“General, what he said is right. We would never blame you! Please go on living, for us!!!” Another Urban Army solder responded to Liu Mang’s question.

His hand is holding a sword to his neck. He is unable to bear the pain, so he might as well kill himself to ease the pain. With that, another brother disappeared from this world.

Seeing his brothers following to commit suicide, Liu Mang exclaimed out loud

“YOU!!!! WHAT ARE ALL OF YOU DOING? I FORBID YOU TO DIE!!!! YOU HEAR ME!!! THAT’S AN ORDER!!!!”

But they will not comply with Liu Mang’s order. They knew that they will not be able to live any longer. They just choose death in order to alleviate the pain, but all of them are smiling towards Liu Mang without any resentment, similar to Xu Cheng.

“General, farewell to you!!!” With those words of parting, all of them slashed their necks.

“NO, NO!!!!” Liu Mang struggled to stand up to stop them. But he cannot move because of his bones being dislocated, so after standing he just sat back down again.

“Old man Huang, go, stop them, stop them!!!”

“Little lord, let them go!!!”Huang Zhong refused to obey Liu Mang’s order. He also saw that these soldiers’ wounds are untreatable, so it is much better, for them to pass away quietly.

“AAAAAHHHHHHHH!!!!!” Liu Mang held his head and screamed “MY TRAINING ONLY AMOUNTED TO NOTHING, NOTHING HAS CHANGED, NOTHING!!!!”

From 200 Urban Army troops who were dispatched to Administration Office only 3 were left! Those 27 troops chose to commit suicide. Before, they were still screaming the Urban Army’s slogan in order to protect their eldest brother, Liu Mang!!!

Now with enemy being defeated, their adrenaline also loosened their heightened concentration. After that they discovered that they are already un-savable, so they might as well bid their goodbyes to their general and to the remaining brothers who managed to survive this battle.

After that, more and more Urban Army soldiers that were split in order to quell the rebellion started gathering in Administration Office's West Wing. They had pacified the rebellion in Wancheng city. The remaining prisoners were given to Liu Kai and Liu Neng to handle. No one beside them are the most appropriate to handle this matter.

When the rest of Urban Army entered West Wing, the vision was truly tragic, that some of Urban Army troops unable were unable to hold their tears. 200 brother-in-arms, only left 3 people!!! 3 PEOPLE FROM 200 TROOPS!!!

"AAAAHHHHHH!!!!" Several Urban Army soldiers were screaming in rage and wanted to strangle the mastermind of this massacre, Zhou Tai. But they were prevented by other people. Although they are angry and sad, without Liu Mang's order, nobody dared to make a move on Zhou Tai.

"Huang Zhong? Huang Hansheng? Huang Zhong? Huang Hansheng!" Zhou Tai had been repeating this name for a while and suddenly he chuckled "Ha-ha, Milord Sun Ce, this general failed to complete the mission! Please forgive me!" Blood dropped from Zhou Tai's mouth. Zhou Tai's eyes started to lose its light, he bite his tongue to commit suicide.

"You want to die peacefully huh? I WILL NOT ALLOW YOU DIE

PEACEFULLY!!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed.

He then yelled "SOMEONE, BEHEAD ZHOU TAI NOW!!!! COOK HIS BODY INTO MEATLOAF AND SEND IT TO SUN CE!!!" Liu Mang's eyes are red, his body was emitting a thick aura of killing intent.

He thought "Ooohhh, Sun Ce, your blood debt is now no longer just my Honorable Father-In-Laws!!!! I will be your opponent now!!! I WANT EVERY DROP OF YOUR BLOOD SPILLED FOR MY BROTHERS WHO DIED HERE!!!!"

"Reporting to the general, Wancheng city's rebellion has been quelled!!! 32 nobles who participated in this rebellion was surrounded in their own mansion with their private soldiers!!! Liu Neng is awaiting for yours instruction on how to deal with them. In addition, the head of the He clan and the head of the Lin clan are outside of the Administration Office" Cheng Yu reported to Liu Mang.

Cheng Yu did not know how to comfort Liu Mang, so he can only report the current situation and hoped that it will easy his emotions.

Deal with them? They will need to wait for Lu Bu to come back to deal with them. That is his right as lord. Other people cannot make this decision for themselves, because it will be a breach on his authority and at the same time, it is questioning Lu Bu's authority as lord.

However Liu Mang had decided to make the decision himself and glared at Cheng Yu "DO I NEED TO TELL YOU HOW TO HANDLE THEM, CHENG YU?!" Liu Mang's eyes are bloodshot, Cheng Yu noticed the killing intent he was emitting making him really afraid. If Cheng Yu was not on

the same side, perhaps he would have been swallowed alive by Liu Mang.

Liu Mang exclaimed his order “KILL THEM ALL!!! SPARE NO ONE!!!!”

“SPARE NO ONE?!” Although their heads and private soldiers are involved but their families are not involved in this rebellion. Even some branch families did not know that main family was plotting rebellion let alone those servants in noble’s mansion. Their connection at most was just serving the nobles!

“ARE YOU DEAF? DO YOU WANT ME TO SAY IT AGAIN?!” Liu Mang said coldly.

“What about those servants in nobles’ mansion!!!” Cheng Yu asked

“KILL THEM ALL, SPARE NO ONE, I WANT THEIR SURNAME TO BE LOST IN THIS WORLD!!! KILL THEM ALL, INCLUDING THE SERVANTS AND PRIVATE SOLDIERS!!!!” Liu Mang said with determination and anger.

There is no good in sparing those nobles. He truly discovered that by sparing them, he only invited more trouble for himself. If it were not for these nobles, would the rebellion have occurred until Wancheng city become ruined like this? Would the Administration Office become a place of massacre?

If he had taken a few steps of precaution before!!! But now, since they dared to rebel, they must suffer the consequences.

“Hanyang, most of them are innocent!!!”Lu Lingqi who just heard Liu Mang’s order suddenly protested. The crime committed by the clan heads cannot be burdened with their wives and daughters. If only exterminating the noble’s clan heads, Lu Lingqi will not object to Liu Mang’s order. But now Liu Mang’s order was to slay them all of them including the private soldiers and servants! They probably didn’t even know that their own family members was a part of Wancheng city’s rebellion.

“Huh, innocent? Do you want to argue with me about innocence Ling’er? The gate defenders and those 200 Urban Army troops protecting you, they were innocent people caught in this war! Have you see Wancheng city clearly? Those commoners who got swept in this chaos, they are also innocent!!! You still wanted to argue with me about innocence? Those who take up the knife, must know the consequences when they die!!! Those Urban Army soldiers died, those gate defenders died, those commoners died. Yes, they died, but their family suffers because of their death!!!! Now, those nobles are the ones who took their lives, KILL THEM ALL, SPARE NO ONE!!!!”

“Little lord, it is prudent to wait for Milord to come back!!!” Huang Zhong also warned Liu Mang. Although Liu Mang is Lu Bu’s son-in-law and Lu Bu’s army little lord, he is not Lu Bu’s son. Overstepping the lord’s authority is one of the heaviest sins in this day and age as they are still maintaining a feudal caste and can be considered as murdering the lord in order to get authority.

Usually in a warlord’s family, if the youngest child wanted to grasp authority then he must kill his father and brothers to obtain it. That is why in royalty, there is no brotherhood.

“I WILL BEAR ALL OF THE CONSEQUENCES!!!” Liu Mang also knew that

rule, but he cannot make these soldiers and those commoners die in vain. He definitely cannot make them scream for revenge beneath hell.

"YES SIR!!!!" The entire Wancheng city that had just calmed down, was again plunged into terror, but this time, it was in the noble's mansions.

After Liu Mang dispensed his orders and asked Cheng Yu to put his mother-in-laws and his wives-to-be in his mansion, he got out from Administration Office.

Liu Kai, Liu Neng and with prisoners He Shuo and Lin Feng, were all there. Liu Kai and Liu Neng were really frightened by the way Liu Mang looked, so they kept their mouths shut and asked him for orders later.

He Shuo and Lin Feng who were tied up, suddenly kowtowed toward Liu Mang and said "Please Your Highness Prince of Shu, spare us and our family. We swore to leave this Wancheng city and never to return again!!!"

Liu Mang retorted coldly "Oh, leaving Wancheng city, so you can provoke others like Cao Cao to attack me, huh? Keep dreaming!!!"

He Shuo burst out "Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang, you are not afraid of sins? Are you not afraid that all of the nobles will turn against you and your father-in-law?!"

Liu Mang took a glance at Liu Kai and Liu Neng and they nodded in turn. "Afraid? Did you really think that this nation only has the He clan and Lin clan as the noble's spokesperson? I have the Liu clan who will tell the truth about this Wancheng city rebellion!!! They will serve as me and

my Honorable father-in-law's main supporters after all of you die!!!"

Lin Feng screamed because he did not see any other means to persuade the Prince of Shu to spare them "LIU MANG, LIU HANYANG. THINK ABOUT THE REPERCUSSIONS YOU WILL HAVE WHEN MILORD SUN CE ARRIVES IN WANCHING CITY!!! REMEMBER... PSSHT!!!!" Lin Feng had not yet finished his sentence when was stabbed by Liu Mang who said coldly "Your words mean nothing to me!!!!" and spat towards Lin Feng's face in disbelief.

Soon enough, He Shuo joined Lin Feng in the underworld, he was beheaded by Liu Neng.

In Wancheng city, screams of helplessness still were heard inside the noble's mansions. "Help!!!", "SPARE US!!!", "HAVE MERCY!!!!" However, no Urban Army soldiers paid heed to their plea, for they, themselves considered these nobles, servants, and these noble private soldiers as a punching bag and sacrifice to their banners.

Blood flowed endlessly on the city streets, blood flowed until the moat looked like the crimson sea.

Chapter 139 - Reactions to the Noble Massacre in Wancheng City (1)

Cao Cao's POV

There are many events happening almost the same time in this nation, Wancheng city has been cleaned up of its internal rebellion, the Zhou clan is cornered in Shucheng County and on its last leg. The biggest news came from Jing Province, it said that when Liu Biao of Jing Province learned of Sun Ce's retreat to his main HQ, he quickly increased their troops in order to quickly expel Zhou Yu out of Jiangxia, and now they are in a stalemate due to Zhou Yu's deft strategies in spite of being outnumbered.

The second event was that Big-eared Liu was expelled from Xu Province for the second time after expelled he was expelled by Lu Bu quite some time ago.

This time due under pressure of his grain and provisions depleting, Old Cao did not pull any punches fighting Liu Bei. He sent out all of his elites, including the newly-reformed Ferocious Cavalry. Liu Bei could not defend nor counter-attack due to severe lack of personnel who were willing to fight for him.

Although he had several tens thousands soldiers under him, all of them were remnants of the Yellow Turban Rebellion that was reformed and called then renamed the Qing Province soldiers which was forcefully taken from Cao Cao. They did not have sense of belonging toward Liu Bei, so naturally they were fighting half-heartedly and that was the cause of Liu Bei's defeat.

Liu Bei who was expelled out of Xu Province, quickly asked the commoners of Pengcheng County and Xiapi to leave Cao Cao. In their eyes, Liu Bei was a benevolent ruler, so they quickly followed him to escape like at Changban. At the surface it is showed his benevolence toward the world, but the truth is those commoners became his meat shield in order to slow down the enemy advance, further demonizing Cao Cao.

TL: Battle of Changban, Dynasty Warriors players should be familiar, when Zhao Yun rescued Liu Shan and when Zhang Fei bellowed his challenge

When Liu Bei saw Old Cao withdraw his offense, he quickly ordered those commoners to disperse and return to their own home. Meanwhile, Liu Bei also seized this opportunity to bring several thousand elites with the Qing Province soldiers to look shelter in Yu Province's capital Runan, taking shelter under Liu Pi.

Yuan Shao also became more aggressive toward Old Cao. He demanded Old Cao to give the Han Emperor to him, demanding Old Cao to resign from being regent, and finally demanded that he surrender along with his civil and military officials.

The massacre in Wancheng city naturally gathered huge attention in this nation, unable to hide the truth.

32 nobles clan that participated in the rebellion was cut down by Liu Mang, including servants and private soldiers. 32 surnames perished from the world.

Wancheng city currently had 30,000 families with population of 150,000 people. During rebellion, 5000 families were decimated by noble's private soldiers. During massacre, Liu Mang had killed more than 10,000 families including the noble’s main family and branch families with the elderly, infants and women.

Wancheng city's moat was filled with blood.

“Eh, all the nobles killed was by His Highness Prince of Shu?!” Cao Cao who had returned to his main HQ in Xu Du, after pacifying Xu Province, was now really stunned in disbelief when he read this Intel.

Cao Cao then recalled the events regarding Liu Mang the “Prince of Shu is Liu Mang right? Is not he just a weakly scholar like Fengxiao (Guo Jia)? Alright, I admit, he had a very poisonous tongue, he almost made me vomit blood in Kaiyang! But that person was a very frail young man. He was definitely unable to commit this!!! Was it a miscalculation for me, to seal him as the Prince of Shu?” Originally, he sealed Liu Mang as the Prince of Shu in order for Lu Bu to kill him. Now that plan had failed and the incoming Intel stated that the Prince of Shu killed 32 noble clans including their branch clans. More than 10,000 families, with a population of more than 40,000 people, was killed in this weak scholar's hand.

Cao Cao really did not think that this Prince of Shu dared to kill people.

The reason why Cao Cao was regarded as a mass-murderer is because when Cao Song was murdered in Xu Province, Cao Cao led his army to destroy 3 counties in Xu Province to serve only as a warning to Tao Qian. Those three counties are only small counties, and only held at least 1000 families each; none of them being major nobles.

Even still, such an act rewarded him the title of mass-murderer; the black-hearted monster. Now, Liu Mang murdered 32 noble clans which comprised of 10,000 families, what title would he get?

Truly the biggest event now is in Lujiang Prefecture, the entirety of Lujiang now only had 6 noble clans. Wancheng city only had Liu clan, Lu clan, Han clan and Xu clan and the four of them was led by Liu clan. Jiashi County only had 2 clans. The other, was decimated completely.

“Really, this is really out of my expectation, this Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang!!!” Guo Jia replied to Cao Cao. This is the third time that Cao Cao mentioned this person.

During Xiapi, he managed to scheme Lu Bu's escape to the point of managing to destroy the four armies Wei, Song, Yu and Xiahou by his words alone. In the end, Wei Xu and Song Xian returned to Lu Bu's side to hold Cao army off. That act alone truly made Guo Jia surprised to no end.

During Kaiyang, he managed to anger Cao Cao until he was unable to think of any strategies. At that time, Guo Jia had concluded that this Prince of Shu is a character that is deft in strategies and a person who is very good in argument. Now he was really surprised that this Prince of Shu is a decisive character that is able to kill.

“Hmm, Hmm!!!” Guo Jia is humming as if truly commending this His Highness Prince of Shu. This Prince of Shu is decisive, once he says to kill, he did not back out on words at all. The heads that he just killed amounted to several stories high.

Sometime ago, when Lu Bu killed the Chen clan, he had expected that there would be a change in Wancheng city's noble status, but he never thought the change would be like this! And the one who made this big change is His Highness Prince of Shu, eradicating those who had rebelled.

This Prince of Shu is either courageous or cruel-hearted, offending Jiangdong's nobles. But looking at the bigger perspective, this must be one of the Prince of Shu's bigger plans for the future.

In any case, Jiangdongs nobles and Lu Bu’s army will never be in harmony. They are always guarded against each other. So, might as well eradicate all of them. The most surprising one is that Liu Mang did not kill those who did not participate in rebellion.

The Liu clan, Han clan, Lu clan and Xu clan still existed and all helping to clean up the rebellion. This kind of publicity stunt can also become an advertisement for Lu Bu’s army.

The message stated “Stay beside me, and you will gain riches and prosper. Stand against me, and you will all perish!!!”

This can make, those nobles who supported Sun Ce army and oppose Lu Bu’s army scared until they are unable to make any decisions to or provide or support Sun Ce, for fear they will be eliminated like those of Wancheng city.

“This is also one of strategies against Jiangdong's Little Conqueror, so he is preoccupied with Lujiang!!!” Guo Jia concluded. Guo Jia's assessment is that Old Cao's threats are Big-eared Liu and Jiangdong's

Little Conqueror with Sun Ce as the bigger threat than Liu Bei now.

Liu Bei is a truly restless lord. After winning Cao Cao's trust, he quickly rebelled and snatched Xu Province. If he was patient and waited for 10 years, building his forces and then betray Cao Cao his betrayal would have had a better outcome. But he did not, and now he suffered the consequences, being kicked out of Xu Province.

This second enemy was Sun Ce. When he was stationed at Lujiang, he just remained motionless, waiting for Cao Cao to do battle at Guandu. When Guo Jia saw his moves, he realized that his ambition is not small and prudent in his actions and can be one of Cao Cao's greatest enemy. Even Guo Jia had offered many strategies to battle Sun Ce, but now, those plans were useless, because Sun Ce had been halted by Lu Bu.

If one wants to halt a tiger, you can only use a tiger to fight another tiger. This time the one who halted Sun Ce is the mighty tiger Lu Bu. One can just wait until they are finished fighting and collect the spoils for themselves.

==========

Liu Biao's POV

In Jing Province's capital Xiangyang

“Hahahaha, nice, nice!!!” Cai Mao and Zhang Yun who were looking at the Intel are laughing loudly, speaking to the middle-aged man who was seated at the seat of honor while holding their fists “Milord, be happy,

this is a very good news for us!!!”

“HUMPH!!!! What good news?!!!” the nearby middle-aged general had a lot of contempt for Lu Bu after losing at Huangzhou city. “Both of them are our enemies, including Sun Ce. Don't forget we took Sun Jian's life and my son at the hands of Lu Bu. No matter who wins, we will not have good results to our Jing Province. That is for certain!!!”

“General Huang, do not lose your temper. Lend your ear to Mao's explanation!!!” That middle-aged general is Huang Zu, he was recalled back to Jing Province because he had failed to defend his Jiangxia and was replaced by Wen Ping. He truly angry, because he just made two mortal enemies. One mortal enemy was the Sun clan who had already given him big troubles, now adding Lu Bu who currently had possession of his captured son. Huang Zu will not have good impressions on both of them.

Cai Mao really did not care whether Jiangxia lost or not, because that is not his domain. That is Huang clan's domain. His domain in Xiangyang and his clan is the oldest noble. He can also see Liu Biao is not a wise lord, but he is the master of Jing Province. What Cai Mao and others were doing now, was waiting for any side who can offer the better price in order for Cai clan to rise further.

However now, Sun Ce had now become much more aggressive and has overcome half of Jiangxia. If he managed to reach Xiangyang, the Cai clan will also die because Cai Mao was also involved in killing Sun Jian. Currently the Huang clan of Jiangxia was in a dire state for they are the last defense against Jiangdong's Little Conqueror.

“General Huang Zu, open your mind and hear my explanation carefully.

Now that Lu Bu’s army has killed the majority of the nobles in Wancheng city, it can be said he has lost favor with Jiangdong's nobles! Without the support of the local nobles, one can be said to be rootless in that particular land. Moreover, Lu Bu has offended Sun Ce was impossible to be harmonious again. So, the enemy of our enemy is our friend!!!” Cai Mao explained.

“HUMPH!!! Is not Lu Bu also an enemy?!” Huang Zu is muddle-headed, because according to Cai Mao's speech, they must form an alliance with Lu Bu.

“GENERAL HUANG ZU, PATIENCE, I AM NOT FINISHED MY SPEECH!!!” Although the Huang clan has lost its prestige because of Huang Zu's loss, Cai Mao was still giving Huang Zu face.

“Offending Jiangdong's nobles is not as bad as offending this nation's nobles! If Jiangdong's nobles spread the news that Lu Bu is a mass-murderer and the nobles enemies, what do you think the effect will have on Lu Bu’s army?!”

What kind of effect will it have...? Huang Zu quickly understood.

If Jiangdong's nobles screamed the news, nobody will want to help Lu Bu’s army. Counselors and strategists usually come from noble families. Along with that, teachers who raise the future generation would not want to associate themselves with them. Lu Bu’s army being pinned as mass murderers and demons, they will not help them as they will be an accomplice to disasters and murders.

With a reputation like that, even commoners will not join such an army.

When Lu Bu’s army comes, commoners will see that as a god of death and will recognized them as an enemy and definitely will defend their city or counties to the death, because of fear.

With Lu Bu army not being able to obtain new soldiers and officials, they will perish quickly.

“Are you thinking of?!” Huang Zu thought of something.

“That is correct! We of Jing Province’s major nobles need to beautify Lu Bu’s army and help justify their name. We should spread the news that the 32 nobles were cut down because they rebelled against Lu Bu’s army. Those nobles defied their superiors so Lu Bu’s army had no other choice but to counter-attack!!!” This was Cai Mao's idea.

“Will this give us an advantage?!” Liu Biao opened his mouth. He is the master of Jing Province and he is also a Han Dynasty clansmen and definitely one of the largest nobles. If he opened his mouth to restore Lu Bu’s army's reputation, then all of nobles will comply with his decision.

“Milord! With this, we will be on good terms with Lu Bu army?!” Cai Mao explained again.

“Good terms with Lu Bu army?!” Do you want to form an alliance with them? You are out of your mind, he is the enemy. He just conquered my Huangzhou city and captured Huang She!” Huang Zu rejected that idea.

“General Huang, I did not say anything about making alliance with Lu Bu army!” Cai Mao said it while smiling “We only need to beautify and

restore their reputation, no more than that. And with that, Lu Bu’s army will definitely thank us profusely for it!”

“What use is your scheme this time, brother Degui? Will it wash our hands off the battlefield?!” Huang Zu questioned.

TL: Degui is Cai Mao's courtesy name

“Oh, the use is very big. Washing our hand off the battlefield is not possible, but at least we have secured Huang She’s safety. Moreover, Lu Bu’s army is stronger than Sun Ce and can pin down Sun Ce for quite a long time. We can also make Zhang Xiu of Wan Castle to help restore this Marquis of Wen's reputation. With this, we can have a guard dog on our north gate and east gate!”

Lu Bu is more powerful than Sun Ce. With Sun Ce being pinned down, Jiangxia will be able to return to our hands and our Jing Province can become the overlord of south China.

Chapter 140 - Reactions to the Noble Massacre in Wancheng City (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“DAMMIT, DAMMIT!!!!”

Outside of Shucheng County in Lu Bu's main camp, he is throwing down the Intel he just received to the ground out of anger. Lu Bu was so furious he wanted to kill people.

Hanyang eradicated almost all of Lujiang's nobles? What did he want to do? Lu Bu thought to himself.

“Milord, please restrain your anger!” Chen Gong also read the Intel. He now felt a little regret because he should have stayed in Wancheng city in order to restrain Hanyang’s recklessness.

“Milord, Hanyang truly did not have intend to overstep your authority. You know him inside out! If not for this circumstances, he would not dare to do it!” Chen Gong is trying to appease Lu Bu. He will not have Lu Bu be suspicious of Liu Mang. Once he is suspicious, it is the end of them. No people should overstep the authority of their lord, not even their own biological son, let alone son-in-law.

“What did he not dare?!” Lu Bu steaming “He thinks that I do not know that Sun Ce's wife Da Qiao did not die. He said he hanged herself personally, but that is for changing her identity to He Yu. I had once seen Da Qiao in the Administration Office, and that lady is the same girl that I rescued from the tiger. After lying to me, now he kills those nobles, this is too much already!”

Chen Gong also agreed that Liu Mang really overdid it this time.

“Gongtai, do not persuade me anymore. We return to that boy now! I must see, who gave him courage to do these kinds of things!” Lu Bu had firmly decided that he must re-educate Liu Mang, but Chen Gong did not have these kind of vibes coming out from Lu Bu, only killing intent is emanating from him.

“No need to go back, arrest him now! Someone, return at once to Wancheng city to pass my military orders. Arrest Liu Mang Liu Hanyang for questioning now! QUICK!!!” Lu Bu exclaimed loudly because he is really angry now.

“Milord, please!!!” Chen Gong quickly knelt “Milord, please do not do that!!!” Chen Gong held his fist toward Lu Bu “Milord, Hanyang is a loyal person. I, Chen Gong, am willing to give my life to vouch for that. If Liu Mang is not loyal, I, Chen Gong, will be the one to cut him down! Therefore, I asked for Milord to withdraw the order!” Chen Gong is also afraid that Lu Bu would become suspicious toward Liu Mang. Truly royalty did not know brotherhood.

“Unloyal?!” Lu Bu stunned “Gongtai, what are you saying?!”

“Milord, Hanyang's heart is for our Lu Bu army. Please Milord think, without Hanyang, we should have died in Xiapi, in Kaiyang. Without Hanyang, how can we restore the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry in order for us to escape Kaiyang and how can we restore Formation Breaker without his help. If Hanyang is not loyal, he would have just separated from us... to support himself...!”

After seeing that Lu Bu started listening to his plea Cheng Gong continued.

“Milord, if Hanyang used his Prince of Shu title, he can just boast about his righteous cause like Liu Bei. Please think of the effects that would bring, he would have been able to create a separate force to oppose us. With this, Gong pleads to Milord to think thrice about your order!” Chen Gong pleaded with all his might.

In times of war, there are three types of things that can be used to battle for hegemony.

The first is a righteous cause, the second is food and the third is military. Although a righteous cause cannot be eaten, it can give a meaning to what are you fighting for. Cao Cao, Liu Bei, Yuan Shao, and Sun Ce had this particular thing and that separated them from the rest of warlords. Cao Cao is the greatest of them all, because he had “welcomed” Han Emperor Liu Xie and quickly appointed himself as Regent. Liu Bei also had title of Imperial Uncle and with that, he can fight under the name restoring the Han Dynasty adding his weeping skills, it made his cause more legitimate.

Yuan Shao had the grand general title. And Sun Ce, after he conquered Wancheng city, he quickly presented tribute toward Han Emperor in Xu Du in order to get a title for himself.

Liu Mang also had the title of Prince of Shu and General of Southern Expedition whose territory are the four provinces which are Jing, Yu, Yang and Yi Provinces. Much bigger than Lu Bu's Governor of Xu Province

which had been rendered useless due to him being expelled from Xu Province.

Second is food and supply line. Chen Gong still had a profound memory. He recalled that Liu Mang brought food, warhorse, and armor sets using a very mysterious method. If he separated from Lu Bu, he will certainly not be lacking in supplies as he was able to provide it himself and that supply line is unbreakable.

Third is military. Who is the one not afraid of hearing the name of Prince of Shu in these days? Chen Gong had also seen Liu Mang's method of training. Although the Urban Army was just formed shortly, its battle efficiency was not weak at all. It can be counted as elites among the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. During Battle of Mt. Bagong they blocked 2000 Yu Province cavalry and was able to destroy Chen Lan and Lei Bo at the same time.

With these three things on his hand, Liu Mang would have been okay to separate from Lu Bu, but he did not until now for his loyalty to his family.

“Gongtai, what are you doing?!” Lu Bu hurried to help Chen Gong up. His brow wrinkled “Speak now, why are you groveling on the floor?”

“Milord, are you not going to arrest and kill Hanyang?!” Chen Gong was also confused, looking at Lu Bu's appearance, Chen Gong knew that he already calmed down a lot, but he is still worried by his angered expression from before.

Hanyang not loyal? Arrest and kill Hanyang? Lu Bu quickly understood that Chen Gong had misunderstood his intention. When he looked at

Chen Gong, he did not know whether to laugh or cry!!!

“Gongtai, in your eyes, is Lu Bu, Lu Fengxian still a beast-like person, a person with no virtues?!” Lu Bu asked him solemnly.

“That is exactly the point, a long time ago, Lu Bu was a man of no virtue!” Chen Gong said it in his heart. Chen Gong knows at that time, Lu Bu will resort to all means in order to consolidate his authority. That can be seen from his former subordinates. When Hou Cheng wanted to offer wine to celebrate his success with Lu Bu, Lu Bu who had set up rules for wine prohibition, suddenly wanted to cut down Hou Cheng who knew nothing of that rule and because of that, Wei Xu, Song Xian and Hou Cheng rebelled against him.

However, now Lu Bu already became tamer and a much better person than during Xiapi. From a selfish wolf to a sentiment man.

Looking at Chen Gong's uncertain look, Lu Bu just shook his head “Gongtai. Bu was a selfish wolf before, but that WAS THEN. Now, Bu is not a selfish wolf anymore!” Lu Bu got out of his main camp and look at the skies. He thought in order to achieve fame and fortune, he had sacrificed too much of his brothers and his adoptive fathers. Even almost throwing out his daughter's happiness by marrying her to Yuan Yao. Even after all of that, what did he get? Nothing!!!

Ten years ago, he had nothing when he fought for his adoptive fathers in Luoyang and now ten years later, he also had nothing after being expelled from Xu Province.

Ten years is enough even for Lu Bu to understand his faults.

“Gongtai, do you know why I am angry? Why I wanted to arrest that boy Hanyang? That is because we are spoiling him too much! I am angry because he lied to me, he took that He Yu as his concubine without noticing me! Look, at this Intel. It said that “little lord's wives Madame Lu, Madame Yuan and Madame He Yu are all unharmed”. He is not honest with me, his father-in-law!” Lu Bu was very fatherly nowadays.

“But, he murdered those nobles without informing you, he overstepped his authority!” Said Chen Gong testing him. He needed to see, in the end if it was lie or the truth in Lu Bu's words.

“Kill them, so what? I already wanted to kill those nobles. Do they think it is good bullying this Lu Bu? Devouring the flesh and blood of commoners, taking advantage that they are nobles. Even if Hanyang did not kill them, sooner or later I personally would have killed them all!!! Regarding overstepping my authority as lord, I think the circumstances demanded it, so I will not make a fuss over it!!!” Lu Bu's eyes revealed killing intent and anger.

Lu Bu truly hated these nobles from the very start. When he was in Bing Province, the nobles were better than those of Wancheng city at the surface, but they were as bad as them. They sold swords to invaders in the black market in order to trade warhorses for their safekeeping and also to make gold. Selling at black market, the profit is truly big even much more than selling to their fellow Han.

But by selling their iron products to those invaders, they are inviting the destruction of their fellow Han and also themselves. Those nobles really did not think of long time benefits and only thinking short term, but even with those repercussion, they still sold to the invaders.

Those nobles in Wancheng city were also like them. Were those paddies inside their granaries really theirs? Many of them were snatched forcefully and even killed those who refused to hand their paddies.

But this time, they rebelled against Lu Bu, giving Lu Bu an excused to eradicate all of them.

Lu Bu's anger was not because Liu Mang overstepped his authority or held suspicion toward Liu Mang, he is angry because of Liu Mang direct involvement in killing those nobles. He did not know the consequences of killing. Once killing has been done, it will never stop, it might damage his psyche.

Lu Bu is also angry, because Liu Mang dared to tarnish his reputation by killing those nobles. With this, Liu Mang's righteous cause would be done for.

Lu Bu can bear the title of mass-murderer, because Lu Bu's reputation himself was already damaged. His reputation was already tarnished, so why not add mud and coal? But Liu Mang? Liu Mang is the Prince of Shu, he should be a virtuous lord, a wise lord, not a mass-murderer. Maybe, at this point of time, Liu Mang would already be known as a mass-murderer in this whole nation.

“Milord, I am sorry to misunderstand you!” Chen Gong quickly bowed down to Lu Bu to apologize. Lu Bu just waved his hand casually to dismiss him.

==========

Other's POV

In Xiangyang city, there are several youngsters who are sitting at the western hill. They are sitting near two people playing Go. The one who is playing the white piece is a young man, on his hand there is a feather fan, his clothes are very grand; as if he just descended from heaven. On the other side, the one who is playing black piece is a short young man with black complexion, similar to Cao Cao.

There are also four people who are sitting nearby them. Although the four of them did not have unique characteristics like those two, each of them are talents of this age.

Those four people can be described as shy man, a calm and honest man, a stern man and carefree man.

Those two who are playing Go, is very fast and before long, they are already checked each other.

“Kongming, it looks like your skill in chess have dropped considerably!” The black man now in big advantage. The black man showed happy face because his black dragon in the Go board was almost completed, devouring the white pieces.

“Yeah, yeah” the feathered-fan youngsters who was called Kongming did not care at all and continue to fight back “Shiyuan, sometimes what you see on the surface is not always the fact, is not that right?!”

“HAHAHAHA, Kongming, just admit it you have lost!” The short black man is laughing. That black man did not pay attention to the board due to his confidence but the other four are actually observing the board closely. All of theirs brow are wrinkled, searching the point of that feathered-fan youngster to counter-attack the black man’s offense. The stern man and shy man are unable to find it, but the calm man and the carefree man were able to find that point and they nodded toward the feathered-fan youngster in their heart. This feathered-fan young man is truly good.

“Am I really going to lose, eh Shiyuan?!” Teased the feathered-fan young man.

“Yes, Kongming. This game is mine!!!” The short black man’s dragon only need one more piece to complete its form. Now he is just waiting for feathered-fan youngster to put his piece, then would already win the whole game

“Shiyuan, you are too impatient and not observant!! See, this game is mine!” The feathered-fan youngster put his white piece at the dragon’s critical place, effectively preventing the short-black man to form his victory dragon and also with white piece surrounding it, the black dragon did not have any place to escape. This is his victory.

“Kongming, that wise lord, you always talking about. Always screaming his “Flourish, people suffer; Perish, people suffer”, is nothing more than a devil king. Now, I want to know, how you see him!!!” Said the short-black man while raising his brow.

“Eh?!” Those four people who are sitting nearby wrinkled their brow. In Go game, they can attacked each other relentlessly, but in reality, they

cannot fight like that. Now, that short-black man unexpectedly was on the offense against feathered-fan youngster.

The feathered-fan youngster just casually replied “Shiyuan! I believe, I have already said it to you repeatedly! Sometimes what you see on the surface is not the real one, you need to look much deeper beyond the surface, and there you can find the truth!!!”

“You want the truth?!” The short-black man sneered “The moat of Wancheng city is full of corpses and its river was crimson red, is that truth enough for you?!”

“Hahahaha!!!” The feathered-fan youngster did not argue, instead he just give a calm smile. This topic needed further research in order to get answer. If this discussion continued without additional information, it will only damage themselves. Being silent did not make the short-black man to shut up, he needed to be stopped by the carefree man.

“Shiyuan, you are too attached to one person! This nation has many heroes, you need to overturn all leaves and look carefully!!!”

“Oh, then Zhouping, tell me, who in your opinion is the wise lord!” After hearing that the short-black man quickly face the carefree man in order to start conversation.

TL: Carefree man is Cui Jun, Cui Zhouping. One of Zhuge Liang’s best friends

“Wise lord?!” the carefree man was really surprised on Shiyuan’s

question, he thought maybe Shiyuan will not speak this topic with him, so he just shook his head “Jun does not understand regarding wise lords, so Jun does not have the rights to speak about a wise lord!”

The short-black man is unsatisfied with the carefree man’s answer and quickly asked the remaining three men “Guangyuan, Gongwei, Yuanzhi. Same question to all of you!”

“According to Jian, lord Cao of Xu Du is a wise lord!” The stern man opened his mouth first.

TL: Stern man is Meng Jian, Meng Gongwei, also one of Zhuge Liang’s best friends

The shy man also replied “Yes, lord Cao is a wise lord!”

TL: Shy man is Shi Tao, Shi Guangyuan, one of Zhuge Liang’s old buddies.

“Wise lord?!” The calm and honest man just shook his head “Shu still cannot see clearly. Shu need time to assess all of lords carefully!” The calm man quickly glanced toward feathered-fan youngster and the short-black man. They had chosen their own wise lord, but their choices are not his, so he need time to further assess them.

TL: Calm and honest man is Xu Shu, Xu Yuanzhi. One of Liu Bei’s earliest strategist historically and best buddies with Zhuge Liang.

“Let me tell you, this nation wise lord is Liu Bei, Liu Xuande!!!” The

short-black man looking at the feathered-fan youngster provocatively. “This man aims to uphold and restore the Han Dynasty. Definitely a man of high stature. He is also a Han Dynasty clansmen and a benevolent ruler. He is the only one fit to be a wise lord and receive our service!”

The Short-black man’s words made the four’s brow wrinkled. If you said it to yourself, that Liu Bei is a wise lord, it is your right, we will not stop you. But your words “He is the only one fit to be a wise lord and receive our service!” Is not that just demeaning our judgement? Is it only yours eyes that are clear?

In order not to prolong this bad feeling, the stern man quickly stood up and said “Kongming, Shiyuan. Jian is not healthy today, so Jian would like to go home to rest!”

Seeing the stern man gesture, the shy man also quickly stand up “Tao needs to accompany Gongwei until his place. Goodbye!”

“Um!” The carefree man also stood up “Jun also would like to excuse himself!”

“Shu also needs to go back home, to take care Shu’s old mother. So, goodbye!” The calm man also left.

In the field, remained only short-black man and feathered-fan youngster.

“Kongming, looks like only you and me left. Do you dare to bet with me?!” Short-black man is a very competitive person and the one who he

dislikes to lose is this feathered-fan youngster.

“Shiyuan, what bet do you want?!” The feathered-fan youngster replied.

“You and I each follow each master. In ten years, we meet again. We will see whether The Sleeping Dragon’s or The Fledgling Phoenix’s judgement is better!” the short man stated.

“What is the stake?!” The feathered youngster asked.

“The loser works as a servant for ten years!” The short man replied.

After contemplating for a few moments the feathers youngster then said "Ok!"

A smile rose from the short-black mans face as he said "Let’s seal our bet with our palms now!”

Chapter 141 - Sun Ce Makes His Move; The Manifesto

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

Sun Ce's POV

Inside Sun Ce's main camp, the only thing that filled the air was Sun Ce screaming "ZHOU TAI DEAD? THE FUCK IS THIS NEWS?"

Sun Ce could not believe what had happened, but once he saw Zhou Tai's and Zhou Cheng 's head hanging outside of Wancheng city, he had no choice but to believe this news.

Although the death of his generals was very surprising, the most surprising detail was that that the Prince of Shu Liu Mang sent a meatloaf dish unexpectedly!

The messenger said that this was dog meat. (delicacy?!) Sun Ce vomited after he realized whose meat he just ate. "I ATE ZHOU TAI'S MEAT!!! UPH, UARRRGGGHHHH!!!!! "

After he finished vomiting, he exclaimed loudly while turning over his table "DAMN YOU, LU BU, LIU MANG!!!! YOU MADE ME EAT ZHOU TAI'S MEAT!!! YOU"VE GONE TOO FAR!!! I WANT ONE OF YOUR NAVY GENERAL'S BLOOD NOW, IN EXCHANGE FOR ZHOU TAI!!!!"

With Zhou Tai dying, this is a big loss for Sun Ce! He was one of his generals that managed to breakthrough into superclass strength and can be counted as peers among Sun Ce and Taishi Ci.

But now he is dead in Wancheng city, and a piece of him was just eaten by Sun Ce. Zhou Tai's death was not only piece of bad news that Sun Ce got. The Zhou clan was now on their last legs in Shucheng County, severely lacking grain and provisions, Shucheng County would be broken at any time.

The Zhou clan already lost a prominent member Zhou Cheng. Sun Ce will not let the extermination of the Zhou clan to happen, because Zhou clan is Gongjin's clansmen.

Sun Ce then exclaimed "BEAT THE DRUM, ALL OFFICERS TO ATTEND FOR BRIEFING!!!"

Shortly, all of the generals and civil officials gathered in Sun Ce's main camp.

"Hear my order, we will make our move tonight! All of you, prepare for an ambush toward Wancheng city Navy HQ. I WANT TO SIEGE WANCHENG CITY ASAP!!!" Sun Ce screamed.

"YES, SIR!!!" The generals made a happy expression. They had been itching to go to war in order to gain merit, while the civil officials wrinkled their brow, because they needed to allocate their own grain and provisions for military purposes.

With Sun Ce on the move, all of Jiangdong's nobles lead by the Sun clan on crusade again against Lu Bu, wrote a comprehensive "Sin Manifesto". This was the document they would read in front of Lu Bu when he has been captured. They sent it to every corner of the nation so all of the

nobles can read it and agree with their justice.

That manifesto Read:

"Rebels do not die natural deaths! A new rebel of this nation has arisen. His name is Lu Bu. He is a calamity and a monster. We request for all nobles to join hands in order to destroy this rebel. This particular monster is as vicious and licentious like King Jie of the Xia Dynasty and King Zhou of the Shang Dynasty. This Lu Bu does not have any sense of honor. He is destroying livelihood, disrupting justice, and stomping on humanity. Our hatred for this man is unbearable, he is a disaster for Jiangdong, a disaster of Lujiang, a disaster of all China, and a disaster of Four Seas. We are now enforcing justice on behalf of Heaven, eliminating this abomination.

Lu Bu is a wolf from the north, he lived in the border of the Great Wall. His ferocity knows no bounds! He murdered his adoptive fathers in cold blood therefore, obtaining the title of the slave of three surnames. Now he has entered Lujiang Prefecture and his slaughter continues. 10,000 families were slaughtered, their bodies amounted to tens of thousands. This is a mass-murder; a genocide.

During the Three sovereigns and Five Emperors period when they ruled this country, from the creation of the Xia Dynasty Yu the Great conqueror of the flood, to Cheng Tang founder of Shang Dynasty, by destroying King Jie the last ruler of the Xia Dynasty under the name of humanity, to the destruction of the Shang Dynasty by King Wen (Jichang), founder of Zhou Dynasty, all of these were under the name of justice. These series of purifications led to Duke Zhou writing a moral code for us to follow today.

This Lu Bu has angered the people, stomping at that moral code, humanity and justice. If our sage teachers Confucius, Mencius and all of

our pre-Qin teachers are still alive right now, they would weep until their tears turned to blood. They would speak “Alas, humanity and justice were not upheld anymore! This Lu Bu is an uneducated brute, vulgar, and inhumane. In the name of justice and humanity, all of nobles, please join us destroying this rebel!”

Lu Bu, a traitor, thief, stray dog, a usurper and a slave of three surnames. He is barking wildly before us nobles. With dirty tricks, vulgar plans, poisonous planning and his ruthlessness as a wolf, we are in a grave danger. The Morale code is on verge of collapsing, loyalty and filial piety has been abandoned, and justice and humanity is almost no more.

We hope that our scream will reached ninth heavens. We ask for the gods and goddesses who cares for all living beings to help us in our crusade to smite down this beastly brute. If we let this abomination run amok, there will be no more of us.

This kind of person is just a leech, a parasite hated by everyone. He is hated by the gods and people and should be eliminated.

With all of that sins weighing on him, we announce his crimes:

First crime: Lu Bu only concerned about profit, disregarding righteousness and justice

Second crime: Causing chaos and disrupting balance in this nation

Third crime: Lu Bu is a ruthless character, hiding a dagger behind his smile

Fourth crime: Lu Bu did not uphold his ancestors, disrespecting all of sage's teachings

Fifth crime: Vulgar speech, rude towards everyone and disloyal in his words

Sixth crime: Lying to the public, distorting facts

Seventh crime: Being a man of violence with destructive behavior.

With seven crimes like this, even amnesty will not help him. This man should be cut down.

Lu Bu is a usurper and wicked man, who will face retribution as a criminal. All those who are are involved with him are considered as insects, all of them brings the plague; calamity like locusts. They are the kinds of people that will turn deer into a horse.

With this manifesto, we asked for all of the nobles to rise to destroy these villains. Put aside our difference and ambitions now and join our hands, help us eliminate this rebel in the name of heaven.

Just like when King of Yue country destroyed Wu country until King of Wu country committed suicide, we must execute this traitor by dismemberment.

TL: Turn deer into a horse. See, second emperor of Qin Dynasty in Wikipedia.

This person is a usurper, a wicked villain, inviting anger from all people! If this kind of person is not evil, then what else is!? We will go through fire and water in order to kill this heinous monster and rid evil from this earth just like Dong Zhuo.

In addition: Beside Lu Bu there is Chen Gong, Zhang Liao, Gao Shun, Chen Deng, all of them are also monsters. Chen Gong and Zhang Liao are villainous duo, accomplices to that usurper! Gao Shun, his heart only beats for Lu Bu and has become an extension of his evil will! Chen Deng, is a sly person, not straight, originally wanted to kill Lu Bu, now is helping Lu Bu, is also a villain. These people are five poisons of our country! Their army only seeks gain, they are parasites, they are cowards, and they are group of villains. There is no need to fear them!

We have received divinations from the gods. The gods are on our side in this battle! Do not fear this Lu Bu, we are all standing beside you. This manifesto is the call for a crusade; a coalition. We must destroy this rebel completely. We are calling for heroes from all directions, from all the nine provinces to be come together in this great task.

We are enforcing justice on behalf of Heaven. Gods will bless us with an invincible force. When we destroyed him, we will destroy his ancestors up to three generations, wiped out his clan.

We shall enforce ancient execution by pulling their bodies with wagons, death by a thousand cuts.

We shall take their skulls as trophies for this crusade and we shall tell all of this nation: This is the way a rebel and wicked man dies. We swore our oath not to stop at any cost in this crusade.

Alerting once more: To those soldiers and generals who have fallen in this crusade! All of your sacrifice is worthy, all of your blood has become our reasons to do this crusade. We all nobles thankful for all of your sacrifices!!!" That is the Sin Manifesto that is created by nobles.

TL: HELL MANIFESTO. ANCIENT FUCKING LANGUAGE, STUCK FOR GODDAMNED 4 DAYS JUST TO TRANSLATE THAT PARAGRAPH!!! (Sorry everyone, I need to blow off some steam)

This manifesto truly surprised the entire nation. Since the beginning of times of war in this Eastern Han Dynasty to its final moments, there has never among warlords that the nobles resented so much that they issued a Sin Manifesto in order to smite that particular person.

This Jiangdong's nobles' manifesto although Lu Bu was insulted everywhere, not a single sentence mentioned Liu Mang. That is because Liu Mang is the Prince of Shu, his influence is as big as Liu Biao, Liu Bei and Liu Zhang, who share the same ancestors that harked from Hanzhong (Liu Bang). So, even if they committed crime, they cannot eliminate or bad-mouth the Han Dynasty's clansmen. Even though the Han Dynasty's prestige is already weak, everybody obeys this unspoken rule.

But Lu Bu is not one of Han Dynasty clansmen, so they are free to insult Lu Bu as much as they can. Those insults are, Lu Bu is slave of three surnames, Lu Bu is a mass-murderer. He is a bane from Bing Province, wicked, uneducated, uncultured person and a beast.

==========

POV, Wancheng city's Naval HQ

100,000 troops of Sun Ce’s army are heading toward Wancheng city's navy HQ. Their ships are so many that it formed a bridge from one side of the river to another.

With Sun Ce massive army moving, Lu Bu's navy quickly obtained the news. Su Fei now at the guard outpost while looking at those 100,000 troops. Su Fei just held his breath, looking that many troops and ships.

“Has General Gan already left the port?!” Su Fei now truly believes that he cannot win this naval battle, but even with that disadvantage, Su Fei still wants to fight in order to give courage and morale. Su Fei used to do battle with Jiangdong’s naval unit when he was still in Jiangxia. But at that time, Sun Ce only dispatched 10,000 troops to fight with him and although at that time he only have 5,000 naval troops, he can still cope with him. Now Sun Ce is truly crazy, determined to revenge for his loss so he dispatched 100,000 troops against him.

100,000 troops is so much that if they spat on this 2,000 troops, they will drown.

“Yes, General Su. General Gan has already left the port as per little lord's order!” The nearby naval major replied. After Liu Mang made Zhou Tai into meatloaf, he quickly instructed Gan Ning to install all battleship with oxybeles and leave the ports ASAP. Installing oxybeles will need a lot of time, and if they still stayed at Wancheng city naval HQ, the enemy might discover this secret weapon. So they might as well avoid the battle first. When 20 large ships already had the oxybeles installed, Sun Ce’s navy will be dead.

“Good then! Everyone prepare themselves! At the worst case, we may have to burn this naval base and retreat toward Wancheng city!” Su Fei's heart had already gotten cold. Because the naval base can be built again, but these naval soldiers are irreplaceable. If they suffered big casualties, it will be impossible for them to form naval troops again for a long time.

“Yes sir!” The major quickly went after receiving order.

Sun Ce’s army made their first offense. The one who lead the attack is a strong young man, under his leadership many of the large ships brandished their flags quickly heading toward Wancheng city.

With the river being filled with Sun Ce naval units, this Su Fei truly anxious. He only had 2,000 troops under him to fight Sun Ce's navy.

“General Su, I request for us to retreat!” The major who already looked at the situation, quickly requested Su Fei, how can 2,000 troops fight against 100,000 troops?

“No, for whatever reasons, we cannot retreat!” Su Fei is the navy commander, for whatever the reason, he cannot leave his position as a gate commander to Wancheng city. Regarding Gan Ning, he is the second commander so, it is feasible for him to leave the port to avoid the battle, so with Gan Ning already left the port, Su Fei is the only one who stands between them, if they avoid battle again, then Sun Ce army will reach Wancheng city very quickly therefore their new weapon will not be able to be installed due to being sieged.

Avoiding battle is definitely not Su Fei's habit.

Moreover, Su Fei, Gan Ning and Huang Zhong just joined Lu Bu army, if they avoid battle again, they will be stuck at the lower level in Lu Bu army.

As those Sun Ce navy got nearer and nearer, its pressure became bigger and bigger. Su Fei took a deep breath in order to calm himself. Su Fei is the spirit of their forces. If the general is already in fear, how can those soldiers fight for him?

“Raise the bow!” Su Fei ordered those 2,000 naval soldiers to raise the bow. Archery is one of the skills that naval soldiers should have beside familiarity with water. However Su Fei's current naval soldiers is very weak in terms of archery but they are really good in inducing fire attack with arrows and very good in close-quarters battle, so this is also a practice for them.

“COME ON!!!! Let me be the first one to see, how much progress that you, Jiangdong Navy had made!”

Jiangdong’s navy are getting much closer. From 1,000 steps until 100 steps. From 100 steps, a soldier with good vision can already see enemies’ faces. Lu Bu’s navy now facing five large ships of Jiangdong’s navy.

“Pew, pew, pew!!!!” Jiangdong navy made the initiative attack from five large ships. Although Wancheng city naval base only as a transit harbor, Sun Ce has widened its width so they can at least fit five large ships.

On those five large ships, all soldiers are equipped with bows except those whose role is a helmsman. So the arrows from those five large ships are so many that it blotted out the sky.

“AAHHHHH!!!” On the naval base, some people are wounded due from first wave of exchange.

Getting nearer and nearer, the second wave of arrows rain immediately, this time, they started to suffer casualties.

“General, let us shoot!!!” Said the major anxiously. Lu Bu’s naval units currently only have 2,000 troops, the maximum number of casualties that they can afford only amounted to 100 troops and by the second wave of arrow, they already lost at least 80 troops.

But Su Fei just kept silent and muttered in low voice "80 steps! 70 steps!”

And then came enemy’s third wave causing very pitiful sound of anguish “AAAAHHHHHHH!!!!”

With that, Su Fei’s soldiers’ fear and anxiety disappeared. Their comrades’ casualties have filled their belly with anger and wanted to shoot those Jiangdong navy’s soldier, but without Su Fei’s order, they are just on standby.

“60 steps! 50 steps!!!” Su Fei’s eyes is flashing dangerously now. With they are nearing, the fourth arrow wave also fell, but this time, because the distance was very near, it did not have the power like three waves before.

“40 steps!!! SHOOT NOW!!!” Su Fei roared his orders. Those naval soldiers had suffered casualties more than 200 troops. Now with only 1800 troops, they all expressing their anger “Whiz!!! Whiz!!! Whiz!!!”

“AAAARRRRGGGGHHHHH!!!!” Now Jiangdong navy also screaming pitiful yells.

An arrows maximum distance can reach 100 steps, but it needed strong people to pull the bow and arrow in order for 100 steps to be effective for killing, regular soldier cannot have that ability. So, therefore when at 100 steps, when those arrows blotted out the sky, it is only for scaring Su Fei’s army, the lethality is low.

When it reach 80 steps and 70 steps, arrows of veterans can finally reach them. But because of the initial attack, Su Fe army was already not afraid of that, even more, when they had casualties, their anger just peaked.

All of them started resembled monsters that you did not want meet in battle. It is just like when someone punches you the first time, you will still feel scared, but when second and third punches connect, you will start to counterattack due to anger. This is the effect that Su Fei wanted to have on his men, he planted anger so deep that they want to counterattack.

And why 40 steps? This is the best firing distance for regular people. It guarantees that each of those arrows will hit and injured Sun Ce’s army.

Although Su Fei’s unit is only a few but the width of the river is narrow. With those as advantages, 1,800 troops can perform an arrow rain that also blots out the sky, added with anger, Sun Ce’s army truly bad luck.

Also, pulling a bowstring in order to shoot, requires big strength. After shooting three times, you will be fatigued and your accuracy will drop

considerably, so the enemy is tired and now it is my turn to shoot back.

Above the large ship, some people already become human hedgehogs and fell down into water.

Those five large ships seeing many casualties, quickly removed the plank and quickly retreated.

“What does Jiangdong navy want to do?!” Su Fei was truly doubtful now. During his battle with Jiangdong army as Jiangxia naval general, he already concluded that Jiangdong navy is a water dragon! Even with only one person left, they dare to charge. How could they possibly retreat with only one wave of attack?

Moreover, the one who attacked first is Sun Ce’s army. Now, only because of a counterattack by Su Fei army, they quickly retreated!

So Su Fei can only concluded that “Is this a feint?!”

Chapter 142 - Sun Ce Makes His Move (2)

Translated by Bloodfalcon, Edited by Krayto

“Eh, five large ships repelled with just one attack? 2,000 troops repelled 100,000 troops? What kind of joke is this?!”

Sun Ce's brow wrinkled and anger welled in his heart. They were just doing an attack in order to show their superiority but unexpectedly from only ONE WAVE of counterattack, they quickly retreated. Sun Ce screamed “Who the hell led vanguard?!”

Sun Ce’s glare made everyone in the briefing room lower their heads and tremble, they know that Sun Ce is angry. Sun Ce, who had pacified Jiangdong at young age, will absolutely not permit cowardice in his army.

Sun Ce shouted “So, nobody responds huh?! ALL OF YOU WANT MERIT, I GIVE YOU A CHANCE TO GET MERIT!!!! NOW, ALL OF YOU WERE REPELLED, AND YOU STILL WANT TO SPEAK MERIT WITH ME?!” 100,000 troops vs 2,000 troops, even fools know that this is an easy battle and can obtain merit in war in big portions.

Being vanguard, they will be the one who obtained the biggest merit, so everyone wanted to be the vanguard! But now, those vanguard were repelled by 2,000 troops. How can this not be a disgrace to Jiangdong nobles’ army?

“Lu Su, Lu Zijing. Who was the vanguard?! SPEAK NOW!!!” Sun Ce threw his anger on Lu Su.

“Milord!!! The vanguard was the Wu clan!!!” Lu Su said awkwardly. Sun

Ce's face has been very grim because he knew that the vanguard is these nobles' army.

If those nobles were only small fry nobles, Lu Su will immediately call for military law and cut them down without hesitation, but the vanguard is Wu clan.

The Wu clan is one of the oldest clan in Jiangdong, comparable to the Sun clan and one of Jiangdong masters. So Lu Su also cannot do anything, even if they committed offence in front of military law.

"Wu clan!!! DAMMIT!!!" Sun Ce's brow tightened. If the Wu clan was the one who committed the first offense, then he cannot do anything.

This Wu clan is a relative of Sun Ce. His mother's maiden surname is Wu. His uncle is also Wu, which is Wu Jing who currently is a minister in Jiangdong.

Therefore, when Sun Ce obtained Jiangdong, Wu become one of its founders with the Sun clan.

Sun Ce let the Wu clan be vanguard in order for them to obtain more merits, but who ever thought that during the first skirmish, their courage suddenly plummeted.

"HUMPH!!! For the time being, put aside this matter!" Sun Cee humphed loudly while suppressing his killing intent. Sun Ce was uneasy, because a general who committed this mistake could usually be cut down, but this Wu clan… is really frustrating.

“Jiang Qin, you are the next vanguard!!! I give you only half the day to set our foot back in Lujiang!!!” Sun Ce dispensed his order toward the kneeling general.

“Yes, Milord!!!” Jiang Qin quickly responded. Jiang Qin’s hatred toward Lu Bu;s army is the second biggest after Sun Ce. Jiang Qin was the sworn brother of Zhou Tai, Zhou Tai’s death made his heart rend. Yesterday, he wept for Zhou Tai until his tears dried up. So Jiang Qin had solidified his resolve to bury all of Lu Bu’s army as a tribute for Zhou Tai.

“Boom! Boom! Boom!!!” Jiang Qin’s flagship started moving toward Wancheng city naval base with the sound of drums march.

Those Wu clan’s large ships are finally docking back to Sun Ce’s HQ and back in one piece. Those private soldiers are mixed up between elite and garbage, with elite only 20% and commoners 80%. Those commoners were conscripted in order to raise the numbers. So when those elites died under Su Fei’s division volley, they quickly turned back due to fear.

Those Wu clan’s large ships quickly vacated and changed into Jiang Qin’s soldiers. Large ships, meng chong ships are now rising the red banner of “Jiang”. This is Jiang Qin’s squad.

Jiang Qin did not use 5 large ships for his offense. He understood that if 5 large ships was deployed, he will be unable to advance and will meet with a volley from the enemies. So instead, he used 2 large ships and 20 meng chong shops. The large ships are used in order to suppress fire against the enemies and meng chong ships are used to land and disembark quickly.

“Jiang Qin is the one who comes out now?!” Su Fei immediately know who his opponent was now. This Jiang Qin is an old rival, during his tenure as Jiangxia’s naval general, Jiang Qin was always present at all of Jiangdong’s skirmishes against Jiangxia.

Regarding Jiangdong's navy valiant generals, Su Fei has a quite intimate understanding of them all. First they have Zhou Yu, Zhou Gongjin. This person has a gods' given talents in civil and military. Although he is young, he has the ability to predict the outcome of the battle and turn the tide to Jiangdong's favor. So it is okay to say that he is the brain and strategist of Jiangdong’s navy.

Next, there is Huang Gai. This Huang Gai is a veteran in Jiangdong’s army and one of the first generals with Han Dang to join the Sun clan's army and had the most experience in battle. Huang Gai and Han Dang had a huge strength even in their old age and certainly were able to think of strategy due to vast experiences in battle. Zero shortcomings coming from both of them.

Third there is Taishi Ci. This person is an excellent general as well as brave warrior. During Su Fei's tenure in Jiangxia, only Gan Ning was able to duel toe-on-toe with Taishi Ci, other soldiers and other generals, the moment they saw Taishi Ci, they quickly dispersed. With a double halberd in his hand, they will die in five bouts or at least ten bouts. He is Sun Ce's favorite general.

And then there is Zhou Tai and Jiang Qin. Zhou Tai was killed by Old General Huang Zhong in Wancheng city, so only there remained Jiang Qin. When Zhou Tai and Jiang Qin were together, they are the vanguard of Jiangdong's navy. They are well known for their ability to rip open their enemies’ defense and open a path for Jiangdong's navy to continue pierce their enemies. With both of them together, even Gan Ning had big

headache fighting them.

Even with no Zhou Tai, Jiang Qin is still a threat and definitely not an opponent for Su Fei to underestimate.

Su Fei's principle is to never underestimate the enemy no matter how weak they are.

“WHIZ, WHIZ, WHIZ!!!!” The speed of the meng chong ships are really fast, dozens of meng chong already arrived under Wancheng’s naval HQ.

“Attacking with meng chong ships?!” Su Fei is truly doubtful. Although with meng chong, they can reach the naval HQ quickly but due to the structure of Naval HQ, it can be regarded as soldiers sieging a fortress. Do they want to siege with meng chongs?!

“General look, those soldiers in meng chong ships are tying up something!” The major said while pointing those approaching meng chong ships

“Tying up something?!” Su Fei quickly sees the direction where the major is pointing. They are indeed tying up something. Su Fei saw a very critical information after further observation. The first is these meng chong ships were not a full-crew, only 3 – 4 personnel were on the meng chong ships and the second is they are tying up straws and pouring oil on it.

“He wants to burn the Naval HQ!” Su Fei quickly deduced what Jiang Qin wants to do.

“SHOOT!!!! ALL OF YOU SHOOT THESE JIANGDONG NAVY!!!” The major who also realized Jiang Qin’s scheme quickly also roared his voice.

“It is too late!!!” Su Fei said it in low voice. The soldiers on the HQ wall shot fiercely, but the distance between meng chong ships is already very close and their arrows shooting already reached a dead angle. Those on meng chong ships can just hide until the arrow rain ended and light the straw.

Before long, the navy HQ was engulfed in flames.

“Oh, Jiang Qin, Jiang Qin. You are really desperate if you are using this tactics!” Su Fei threw disdainful remarks toward Jiang Qin.

And now, as if they also responded to Su Fei’s idea earlier when fighting Wu clan. Those three large ships did not open fire until they reached 40 steps like Su Fei’s earlier. When they reached 40 steps, Jiang Qin’s division and Su Fei’s division started showdown with archers while those three large ships were getting closer and closer to navy HQ.

“BANG!!!” Those three large ships rammed naval HQ front door. Su Fei who kept on those meng chong ships suddenly staggered.

“The front door is already unable to be defend!!!” Su Fei muttered to himself. When those three large ships rammed the front door, it opened immediately. Those three large ships quickly prepared landing the board and numerous people from Sun Ce’s army came flushing out from it and their numbers amounted to at least 50,000 troops.

Su Fei's only had 1,800 troops at hand, they definitely could not defend anymore.

Su Fei really did not think that Jiang Qin would be so desperate to use this move, even sacrificing their own ships in order to destroy naval the HQ. With this situation, Su Fei can only retreat and take a decisive action now.

"Burn the navy HQ!!!" Su Fei closes his eye and waved toward the major.

"Affirmative, general!" The major quickly nodded. He also understand Su Fei's intention. With only 1,800 troops, it is impossible to win against 50,000 Jiang Qin's elite troops. So, they can only burn their base now.

This battle is a lost cause. The difference between numbers is too big. Even if Lu Bu was here, he will not be able to win this battle.

1,800 troops quickly retreated, but before they retreat, they poured oil on the entire HQ and burned it to the ground.

"RETREAT!!! BACK TO WANCHENG CITY!!!" Su Fei quickly ordered his men, all that he wanted to do now is to tell Liu Mang that naval base was destroyed and asked him to prepare for defense. Once these 100,000 troops landed, Wancheng city will be in dire state.

"RETREAT?! SU FEI, YOU WILL NOT RETREAT FROM THIS BATTLE!!!" Jiang Qin retorted with cold voice. He then led a team of his most elite troops to pursue Su Fei.

His blade already red with blood, many of Su Fei's soldiers died by his hand.

"Not good, it is Jiang Qin!!!" Su Fei looked at Jiang Qin. It is very apparent to him that Jiang Qin wanted to avenge his brother Zhou Tai.

Chapter 143 - Sun Ce Makes His Move (3)

“SU FEI, SINCE YOU ARE ALREADY HERE, LEAVE YOUR HEAD WITH ME!!!” Jiang Qin exclaimed then he licked his bloody long sword, his killing intent rising exponentially.

“GENERAL, QUICK, YOU NEED TO GET OUT OF HERE!!! I WILL STALL HIM!!!” The major quickly assembled his most elite troops in front of Su Fei. Sun Ce's army already occupied most of the naval HQ and if Jiang Qin halted him now, then Su Fei won't be able to escape.

Su Fei wasn’t a fresh general, so he quickly climbed up a warhorse to leave the battlefield.

“SHAAA!!!!” The major bellowed and quickly moved toward Jiang Qin. Their task is to stall Jiang Qin.

Jiang Qin did not look at this major, but locked his sight toward Su Fei and screamed “SU FEI, LEAVE YOUR HEAD HERE!!!!” Jiang Qin was already in pursuit, but was stalled by the major.

“Get out of my face!!!” Jiang Qin then slashed the major's head.

When Gan Ning was still Su Fei's lieutenant general, Jiang Qin was unable to take on Gan Ning alone. Only with the help of Zhou Tai were both of them able cope with Gan Ning. Now Gan Ning was no longer Su Fei's subordinate due to Liu Mang's recommendation, so they both commanded their own division.

Right now his major is just a nameless general and definitely not Jiang Qin's match. Although Jiang Qin's strength is not as strong as Zhou Tai, he is quite strong by his own rights. Recently he is able to duel with Zhang Liao during the defense of Shucheng County when he was dispatched there, but was able to escape before Zhang Liao dealt the final blow. He recently was recalled due to Wu clan's military offense and due to Zhou Tai's death.

"DANG!!!!" Two long sword met in the air. The major's strength is only second-class and now is struggling to withstand Jiang Qin's assault, his arm's bone was almost dislocated but he still continued his assault.

"DIE NOW!!!!" Jiang Qin screamed. Jiang Qin become angrier because Su Fei was already farther and farther away. But he truly did not realize that his long sword was already grabbed by the major.

This gesture is not inviting death, but the major is holding Jiang Qin's long sword in order to do mortal blow against Jiang Qin, so now he is returning a slash toward Jiang Qin.

"Pushi!!!" Blood is splashing, but it was only a superficial blow. The major did not succeed in delivering a mortal blow to Jiang Qin as Jiang Qin immediately released the grip of his long sword in order to choke the major.

"Ack, no, this is impossible!!!" The major really cannot believe that his larynx bone was being crushed by bare-hands. From swordfight to bare-hands, this kind of move, only an expert can do.

"ACKKKK!!!!" The major died with disbelief on face. Su Fei's other

soldiers were cut down one by one by Jiang Qin's own soldiers. Although Jiang Qin managed to kill the major, he managed to stall Jiang Qin as Su Fei's distance was now at least 100 steps.

"SU FEI, YOU SHALL NOT LEAVE!!!" Jiang Qin quickly brandished his long bow and locked on Su Fei. Jiang Qin's archery is only middle class, but he still had his brute strength. Adding the anger caused by Zhou Tai's death, this made his strength quadruple.

"Whiz!!!" An arrow full of revenge was flying toward Su Fei.

"Neigh!!!" The arrow did not hit Su Fei but it hit the leg of his warhorse. The warhorse which was already speeding away was suddenly stumbled by this arrow and now started falling down.

Su Fei quickly jumped to one side in order not to be thrown away by the warhorse.

This time Jiang Qin truly goes all out. When Su Fei sees his fallen warhorse with a bloodied leg, he forces a smile and lamented thought "This time, I will really die here!!!"

His major died, his warhorse had already fallen and his soldiers are finished, only Su Fei remained.

Su Fei quickly shook his head and stood up. He unsheathed his long sword and said with full determination "Since I am going to die here, might as well take some of Jiang Qin's troops to accompany me!!!" Su Fei was very relaxed because he already accepted death. This battle was

already too hard from the start. Although he managed to defend for a while, in the end he lost and now he is in a bad situation with no hope to escape, so might as well fight to the end.

“SHA, SHA, SHA!!!” Jiang Qin's troops already reached Su Fei's location. 2-3 Jiang Qin's own elites started their assault toward Su Fei, they must kill this enemy for their general. As long as they can kill this enemy, they will get promotion and merit. Moreover, they knew this Su Fei, when fighting with Jiangxia’s navy had concluded that this person is only a scholar who is able to command and not to fight. He would definitely not be strong in wushu.

With a merit this easy, they ran much more quickly. If others saw that they had obtained Su Fei's head, all of Jiang Qin's troops will be green with envy.

Although Su Fei is a scholar-type general, but he had learned the six-arts in Confucian tradition and was also well adept in them. Although his skill is unable to reach Gan Ning and the others in Lu Bu’s army, his skill is still able to kill small fries.

“Whiz, whiz!!!” The sword in Su Fei's hand is dancing, slashing those three elites. He is so fast that their expression had not yet changed from that of joy to pain.

“Poof!!!” With that skill, three blood flowers were splashing in the air, welled from the throat of its victims and they are now gasping for air because their lungs were filled with blood due to their throat being slashed. The more they breathed, the more blood came into their lungs, suffocating them to death. And with that, three elites died instantly.

In Three Kingdoms period, the two-edged sword that every scholar-type person wore on their waist was not an ornament, it can be used to kill. A gentleman in this era must at least learn six skill which are rites, music, archery, equestrianism, calligraphy and math. So, even though they did not practice martial arts, they had skills in equestrianism and archery.

In addition to equestrianism and archery usually people added swordsmanship into the lessons resulting many sword masters in this nation. Such as, Wang Yue, who is Han Dynasty's first swordsmanship teacher, Xu Shu also one of those sword masters. Before he went to Jing Province, he had killed a person who was a robber in his hometown and now he was forced into hiding and living under pseudonym of “Shan Fu”. Chen Deng and Zhou Yu were also scholar-type generals like Su Fei, however their skills in wushu were not weaker than any generals.

Regarding Zhou Yu's skill, it should be very good, because he often wore armor to be in front of the battlefield. Chen Deng was also very good, because as Lu Bu's subordinate, he has been involved in many battle. For example, outside of Huangzhou city, he dared to bet with Zhang Liao and Zang Ba, further proving that he had confidence in his wushu skill.

During his tenure in Jiangxia, Su Fei did not have to fight because there was Gan Ning at his side. Now with Gan Ning commanding his own division, if Su Fei did not have a hands-on approach, then he will be only a hindrance.

When Su Fei cut down those three elites, Jiang Qin's elites quickly surround him. Now Su Fei is truly in a plight with no retreat.

“SU FEI, YOU WILL NOT LEAVE HERE ALIVE!!!” Jiang Qin also had arrived after being delayed by that major.

“I WILL NOT LEAVE HERE ALIVE, SO NEITHER WILL YOU!!!” Su Fei said with a resolute face.

“Your lord Lu Bu has killed my elder brother!!! Today, I will hold a memorial for him with all of Su Fei's division and with your head!!!” Zhou Tai's death made Jiang Qin hate Lu Bu’s army to the bone, that arrow that he launched served as a testament of his anger.

“So, you want to kill me, eh? Then kill me yourself!!!” Su Fei quickly put a stance with his sword.

“GIVE ME YOUR LIFE, SU FEI!!!!” Jiang Qin screamed his words. At the same time, his long sword also emitted killing intent and Jiang Qin started to wave his long sword with great strength.

Looking at that sword speeding toward him, Su Fei also knows that this is a sure-kill strike that can only be defended, but being passive is not in Su Fei's character.

Su Fei drew his two-edged sword and quickly made stance to parry that slash.

“Want to match strength with me?!” Jiang Qin is laughing in his heart. Jiang Qin's strength now can be comparable to Zhou Tai because of his anger, definitely not Su Fei's match. Although Su Fei's skill in wushu is

better than Jiang Qin, right now he want to match strength with Jiang Qin, definitely inviting his own death.

“Humph!!!” Su Fei snorted coldly. Although Jiang Qin's long sword is quick Su Fei's two-edged sword is quicker and both of them are nearing their respective targets.

Su Fei noticed that this Jiang Qin did not avoid his strike and showed a big opening.

Actually if one looked carefully, Jiang Qin was now using an out ordinary soldiers skill to slash Su Fei's chest. Jiang Qin was so distracted he was not paying attention to the battle.

“GO TO HELL!!!!” Jiang Qin exclaimed fiercely. This sword must land in Su Fei's chest and kill Su Fei. Jiang Qin must hold a memorial for his elder brother along with Su Fei's head as an offering for him. He also must make his body into meatloaf to send to back Lu Bu. While Jiang Qin was thinking of that, his instinct suddenly kicked in and telling him he is in danger.

“CLANG!!!!” Subconsciously Jiang Qin parried Su Fei's stabbing move and quickly recovered his stance in order to cover his neck, leaving only cold trail that almost stabbed him.

That strike was really quick. If Jiang Qin a moment ago followed through with his movement to kill Su Fei, he might have been the one who died.

“DAMN, DAMN, SO CLOSE!!!” Su Fei shook his head while looking at Jiang Qin's fearful expression. If Jiang Qin kept his strike a moment ago, Su Fei would have been able to stab Jiang Qin's throat before Jiang Qin's strike reached him. A two-edged sword is designed for a fast kill and counter-attack. If not, it will be very difficult to defend now.

Because Jiang Qin managed to survive that strike, he will now pay attention to the sword movement and it will make very difficult to launch stealth strike.

Chapter 144 - General VS General

“Where is your general Jiang?!” Sun Ce was asking his soldiers after his soldiers through the naval HQ. This naval HQ was constructed by him, so saying that he broke Wancheng city naval HQ is a bit of an irony. Breaking into your own naval HQ.

From his flagship, Sun Ce can see Wancheng city, the place that once belonged to him.

Jiang Qin really did not disappoint Sun Ce, in less than half day, the entire naval HQ was broken through although at the cost of several of meng chong ships.

“General Jiang is pursuing the enemy's general!” The nearby Jiang Qin's elites replied to Sun Ce.

“In pursuit?!” Sun Ce's brow wrinkled. This is truly violating military standard operation. The standard practice after one broke through a base is that general who managed to breakthrough needed to do sweeping to clean up the entire base and prepare food for the entire army, only after doing that one can do pursue, but Jiang Qin unexpectedly was in pursuit after breaking through the naval HQ. What if he ran into an ambush?

Seeing that his lord's complexion was not good, those soldiers quickly added “General Jiang was pursuing the enemy's senior general!”

“Enemy senior general?!” Sun Ce quickly understood the matter. For this offense, Sun Ce also did not blame Jiang Qin. After all Jiang Qin is Zhou Tai's younger brother. Zhou Tai's death really made Jiang Qin's heart broken and he had been suppressing the anger all this time and also it is Sun Ce's fault for signing Zhou Tai's death warrant, so naturally he will treat Jiang Qin very kindly and will also make Jiang Qin a vanguard this time.

“Take me to the location!” Sun Ce is also curious to see who in the end this naval veteran is, as he has vowed to take one of Lu Bu’s army naval general.

POV back to Su Fei and Jiang Qin

“Haaahhhh, haahhhh, haaahhhhh!!!!” Su Fei's two-edged sword had blood dripping from the tip, the entire sword’s surface was crimson red. Su Fei had no more time to clean his sword and was already huffing. Jiang Qin, in order to see through Su Fei's skills, allowed his own men to be killed by Su Fei. On the side of Su Fei, many elites had already fallen, Su Fei himself also did not feel much better. His back and his arm was already slashed by those elite’s swords and his bone was showing.

“Already saw through my secret, eh, Jiang Qin?!” Su Fei sneered toward Jiang Qin. His swordsmanship that he kept a secret until now was reveled in front of Jiang Qin. Those soldiers that Jiang Qin's sacrificed truly was worth it for revealing the flaw in his swordsmanship.

“SU FEI, YOU DIE NOW!!!!” Jiang Qin screamed. The casualties of his own elites also pained his heart, because he trained them himself, but they died in Su Fei's hand, but Jiang Qin's also relieved because he is not the one who died.

“SHAAAA!!!!” Jiang Qin roared and sped away toward Su Fei, he must bury his long sword inside Su Fei's body for the first step of his revenge.

“COME ON!!!” Su Fei finally saw Jiang Qin in action again. Su Fei was actually afraid that he will die under Jiang Qin's elite, Su Fei will not allow his pride to die under a nameless soldier.

Su Fei quickly brandished his two-edged sword again and started thrusting toward Jiang Qin. A Two-edged sword's speed is quicker than long sword, so Su Fei made the initiative to thrust Jiang Qin's heart.

“General, be careful!!!” One of Jiang Qin's elite shouted. That elite that had seen this move over and over again, Su Fei managed to kill many of his comrades with it.

“YOUR MOVES ARE USELESS NOW!!!” Jiang Qin laughed, he already did not need any warnings. He already discovered Su Fei's thrust path. This move made a straight line to the heart, it is a sure-kill move with frightening precision. Those without good speed, will not be able to respond against this move.

Although Jiang Qin's speed cannot be compared with Su Fei's, as long as one found the path naturally, they will not fear as he will be able to defend or avoid against it.

“Clang!!!” The two-edged sword and long sword handle are clashing with each other and sending many sparks.

“HUMPH!!!” Su Fei just humphed coldly and change his move and continue to aim for Jiang Qin's neck.

“I ALREADY SAID, YOUR MOVES ARE USELESS AGAINST ME NOW!!!” Jiang Qin suddenly turn back a step to dodge the fatal move. The two-edged sword is hitting nothing but air.

Su Fei's sword then changed its direction and angle, even trying to attack Jiang Qin's other non-vital spots but every single one of his strike was parried by him.

“MY TURN!!!” Jiang Qin said full of confidence. A two-edged sword can only be used for self-defense. If you want to kill people in battlefield, one should use long sword, spear or guan dao for maximum result.

Jiang Qin quickly pressured Su Fei with his long sword, his strike is so hard that its sound was reverberating in the sky.

Su Fei now can only defend. Jiang Qin's strike made Su Fei's hand almost break. At this time he is unable to find any openings to strike back and can only retreat backwards.

“HAAAHHH, HAAAHHH, HAAAAHHHHH!!!!” Su Fei's hand was bleeding profusely and he is almost unable to hold his sword again. If he is hit with that strike again, then it is the end of him.

“What's wrong huh?! Already lost courage huh?!” Jiang Qin approached Su Fei step by step. Su Fei in reaction also move back step by step, he wanted to rest a bit, otherwise it is impossible to defend against the next

attack.

“Oh, Su Fei, I will tell you what I am going to do now!!! I WILL KILL YOU SLOWLY, I WILL CUT YOUR MEAT AND COOK IT INTO A DISH ALONG WITH YOUR MEN, AND I MUST RECIPROCATE YOUR LORD LU BU'S “GOOD PRESENT”!!! I WANT THIS TO BE A MESSAGE THAT THIS JIANG QIN IS EAGER TO BURY HIM ALONG WITH ALL OF HIS SOLDIERS FOR MY BROTHER!!!” Jiang Qin exclaimed loudly.

Jiang Qin's face is full of hatred. Zhou Tai's death made him lose half of himself. If Zhou Tai only died in battle honorably, perhaps Jiang Qin will not be this angry, but Liu Mang cooked him into meatloaf and sent it to his lord Sun Ce, this is the last straw on Jiang Qin's patience and sanity.

“Your elder brother?!” Su Fei understood immediately. Zhou Tai who had killed a lot of the Urban Army soldiers in Wancheng city is Jiang Qin's older brother. His little lord, Liu Mang, in order to relieve his rage angrily ordered that Zhou Tai is to be beheaded and hung above Wancheng city and also he ordered that Zhou Tai's body to be cooked into meatloaf and sent to Sun Ce.

That kind of matter that Liu Mang did made Su Fei a punching bag now. Su Fei smiled bitterly. If Zhou Tai was not treated this way, then this Jiang Qin will probably let him go now.

“Oh, you mean that meatloaf, eh? Hahaha, the taste is really good. Have you tasted it?!” Su Fei is a scholar, so it would be impossible for him to be suppressed by Jiang Qin's words.

“TASTE....GOOD?!” Su Fei's word “really good” made Jiang Qin's face

very grim. That meatloaf dish is his elder brother and this bastard actually said it “taste good”. DAMMIT.

Su Fei then continued his insult “OH, why did you not eat it?! Oh right, that meatloaf was for your lord, so you are unable to taste it! Let me tell you, you need to eat that meatloaf. Eating that meatloaf will surely grant you the strength of its owner!!! I GUARANTEE IT!!!”

“SU FEI, I WILL KILL YOU!!!” Jiang Qin's eyes are bloodshot. His brother died by Lu Bu's army. Not only did Zhou Tai not leave any bones to bury, but his body was also made into meatloaf and this bastard actually kept encouraging him to eat that dish. Jiang Qin's anger hit its max and was steaming wanting slash Su Fei again.

“AAAAARRRRGGGGGHHHHHH!!!!!” Jiang Qin's slash becoming heavier. The elite troops nearby pondered “Is this enemy general already asking for death? He is already lost, but he unexpectedly enraged our general! This general will die with a lot of pain!!!”

Su Fei started to receive a wound every time he tried to parry Jiang Qin's slash and soon enough, both of his hands started to bleed profusely.

“Poof!!!” Su Fei's right shoulder was slashed by Jiang Qin. A lump of flesh that was once located at his shoulder, now fell down at his side.

“ARGH!!!” Su Fei screamed painfully. That wound almost reached his bone. One now can see his blood vessels bone which started to become red because of the blood profusely flowing from the severed blood vessel.

“YES, IT IS LIKE THIS!!! I WANT TO SLOWLY CUT TO PIECES!!!!” When Jiang Qin saw that Su Fei was already severely injured, Jiang Qin became crazier with each of his slashes leaving no opening at all. Su Fei was now only left to ponder on why Jiang Qin was able to see through all of his movements, but he himself was unable to do same thing toward Jiang Qin.

Then Su Fei understood one simple truth, this Jiang Qin is much more skillful than himself.

“SLICE, SLICE!!!” Two of Su Fei's calf tendon was sliced off. Jiang Qin actually can kill him quickly but his long sword only kept cutting on Su Fei's tendons to torture him before death.

“Clang, clang, clang!!!” Su Fei is getting more and more wounds. In addition, all of his bodies ligaments are being severed here and there and the dizziness due to blood loss made Su Fei very light-headed.

“CLANG!!!” With that strike, Su Fei lost his two-edged sword and was now truly defenseless.

“SU FEI, NOW YOUR SLOW CUTTING BEGINS!!” Jiang Qin laughed happily. Su Fei was already weaponless and at any time will kick the bucket, this is Jiang Qin's victory now.

“DIE!!!” Jiang Qin now brandished his long sword again. This time, he must slowly cut Su Fei, he must cut down all of his organs one by one. He dared to eat his elder brother's meat, so he must pay the price.

“STOP!!!” In the distance, there is a person's voice bellowed through the air.

“Milord?!” Jiang Qin saw his lord is the one who shouted “stop”, but he was already resolved to not stop. He knows that his lord loved talented people and may spare Su Fei, but Jiang Qin will not allow this. He wanted Su Fei dead, so Jiang Qin quickened his long sword's slash.

“Whiz!!!” A piercing sound coming from Jiang Qin's back. A spear was thrown by Sun Ce from afar.

“Milord!!! You must not prevent me!!! I MUST AVENGE MY BROTHER!!!” Jiang Qin became crazier, he must kill Su Fei now.

“POOF!!!” A blood splash flowered in front of him.

“WHAT?!” Jiang Qin cannot believe his eyes.

“Clang!!!” Su Fei dropped his last weapon. That lance was not preventing Jiang Qin but preventing Su Fei's last strike. Jiang Qin quickly looked at Su Fei, he knows that Su Fei is weaponless but there is a dagger on his hand. He was already resolved to kill Jiang Qin with this dagger, but was prevented by Sun Ce and with that, all of his schemes ended. If only Sun Ce shouted again in response, then Jiang Qin will have died.

“HAHAHAHA!!!”

As Su Fei laid on his back, he can only laugh bitterly in order to suppress his pain.

Chapter 145 - The Execution

Deceptive swordsmanship. In Su Fei's sword there is also a hidden dagger on its hilt. When Jiang Qin made Su Fei dropped his sword, Su Fei was able to pull out that final weapon from the hilt and kept it hidden until the last moment when Jiang Qin is closing in to deal the final blow on him. If Sun Ce had not thrown that spear, the one who would lie on the ground will be Jiang Qin.

“NOW YOU DIE!!!” Jiang Qin who was stunned earlier due to Su Fei's last attempt with a dagger, now his sanity already restored and goes mad again.

Su Fei's idea is pretty simple actually. If he cannot kill Jiang Qin earlier, then now it is simply impossible. So he is just relaxing his body, waiting for death to claim him.

“GONGYI, WITHDRAW!!!” Sun Ce sounded his order. Sun Ce's order is not to be defied again. Jiang Qin already defied his order for first time in order to avenge his older brother, if he violates it again, then Sun Ce can call for military law and execute Jiang Qin under the law.

“Milord, why?!” Jiang Qin shows a very puzzled look at Sun Ce. Su Fei has enraged Jiang Qin. He not only has “eaten” his elder brother's meat, but also almost killed him again and again, how can his lord Sun Ce make Jiang Qin hold his anger down?

“Hm?!” When Jiang Qin looked at that stern expression on Sun Ce's face,

he can only withdraw, but his long sword kept trained at Su Fei.

"Hehehe, Sun Ce, Sun Bofu. How nice to meet you again!!!" Su Fei sneered at his old rival. They have been a rival since Jiangxia. Sun Ce have been battling with Su Fei numerous times. Jiangdong and Jiangxia battle mainly naval battle and they already met with each other only God knows how many times but never this close before.

"Heh, Su Fei, nice to meet you too!" Sun Ce also sneered back toward this old rival. This person is the one who can make Jiangdong's navy not advance beyond Jiangxia. Although Jiangxia's navy was defeated a few times, that is because Jiangxia's lord Huang Zu, did not have any heart to progress further. If Jiangxia changed their lord, Jing Province can easily swallow Jiangdong.

"Surrender!!! I will make you a commander of naval units. When I retake Wancheng city, I will appoint you as Wancheng city's general!" Said Sun Ce while looking at this Su Fei. Sun Ce's army is not Lu Bu's army. Sun Ce's army's primary force is naval units. From Wancheng city, one can attack Jing Province. With Zhou Yu attacking from Jiangxia and Su Fei attacking from Wancheng city, Jing Province will fall in no time and Su Fei's merit will be very big and his status can be number 3 in Jiangdong, beside Sun Ce and Zhou Yu.

"Hahaha, surrender?!" Su Fei also had that idea. If he is debtless, it is possible for Su Fei to surrender. "Sun Ce, Sun Bofu. If I can surrender, I would have already surrendered a long time ago. Now, it is impossible!!!" Su Fei already had been offered to defect to Jiangdong many times before but was rejected by Su Fei each times. It is because Su Fei owed Huang Zu a big favor for employing Gan Ning. The reason that Su Fei is willing to surrender to Lu Bu's army it is because of Huang She's treatment to them!

“So, in the end, you only want death, huh?!” Sun Ce threatened Su Fei. “You already know that Jiang Qin is very unhappy to Lu Bu’s army due to Zhou Tai being killed and treating his body disrespectfully. If I hand you to him, do you know what end you will get?”

“What end?!” Su Fei just shook his head “Death by slow cuts? Impaled by many swords? Boiled with cooking oil? Or cooked to make me a meatloaf dish? Do those things to me!!!” Su Fei sneered toward Sun Ce.

Sun Ce then said “Su Fei, I truly do not understand why you still do not want to surrender to me! I understand when you still followed Huang Zu, you owed him a favor. But now, you have been separated from him, why don't you become one of this Sun Ce's familial general? Am I lower than your current lord, that slave of three surnames? You know that I let your lord pass Lujiang and threw a banquet for him and see how he repaid me? He occupied my Wancheng city, to kill my wife! Let me ask you once more, are you truly willing to follow such villain? Also nobles in Wancheng city, most of them were massacred by his son-in-law. Those men are mass-murderers!!! And you still follow them? Where does your logic lie?”

“Hahaha, threw a banquet. That is Zhou Yu's scheme right? In order to use Milord as a borrowed knife for Jiangdong? You yourself also shamelessly announce that you are allied in order to take Jiangxia? As for occupying your Wancheng city, if Chen Duan was polite and not aggressive, will Milord abandon Huangzhou city and sieged Wancheng city?! Oh, Sun Ce, Sun Bofu, do you really think I am a child who is unable to see all sides of problems?” Su Fei just rebuked all of Sun Ce's claim one by one.

Su Fei continued “As for killing your wife? She hung herself. Your wife maintained her chastity for you, for someone who is not worthy to receive such virtuous woman. As for those nobles in Wancheng city? They rebelled against Milord!!! Your eyes only see the slaughter of nobles, but what about those commoners in Wancheng city? You did not pay any attention to them. Families broken by your military orders. Those commoners become undeserved merits for private soldiers of those nobles. They burned your “so-called city” and plundered your “city”, but you turn blind eyes to them right?”

“So I said, to hell with your offer!!! Just kill me, end this stupid conversation!!!” Su Fei said it directly.

“Is that your final answer?!” Sun Ce really do not want to kill Su Fei. This person is a titan in naval matters and has the ability to command. If he managed to surrender him, Sun Ce will gain another arm and will definitely recommend him to Gongjin. Maybe Sun Ce will leave the subjugation of Jiangxia for Su Fei.

“....” Su Fei just maintained his silence. His silence represented all of his decisions. If he is only one person with no debt, then he might surrender to Sun Ce. But he is still in debt with Huang Zu and Lu Bu. If he surrendered to Sun Ce, he definitely will make him fight his former lords in the battlefield.

“Jiang Qin, I give you Su Fei!!!” Sun Ce said in very bitter voice. Since he cannot obtain him, then only destroy him and then he said to his other generals “Let's go, we return to main HQ!!!” Sun Ce still had a lot to do. He must reorganized his army for the next major battle to settle his blood debt with Lu Bu.

“Yes, sir!!!” Jiang Qin is truly happy now. Initially he was afraid that his lord may spare Su Fei and even appointed him as Wancheng city general. This is higher than Jiang Qin's position and definitely will make Jiang Qin explode in anger if he had to kneel and receive orders from Su Fei. But, unexpectedly, Su Fei rejected Sun Ce's offer and gave him to Jiang Qin.

“HAHAHAHAHA!!!!” Jiang Qin should kneel down and thank Sun Ce, but Sun Ce did not give him this opportunity and quickly returned to his HQ. “Su Fei, Su Fei, since you asked for death, do not blame me! I also feared that you would truly surrender and make this Jiang Qin not able kill you for revenge!!! But now, you truly become an upstanding man in front of my eyes!!!” Jiang Qin did not know whether his sentence meant to sneer or praise Su Fei. If Su Fei surrendered, Jiang Qin will hold his grudge for life, due to him being unable to take revenge for Zhou Tai. But when Su Fei did not surrender, Jiang Qin can just ridicule Su Fei due to his grudge from Jiangxia’s battles and Zhou Tai.

“Say, if I told you that I did not eat the meatloaf dish, would I be spared from the slow death?!” Su Fei spoke casually toward Jiang Qin.

“Oh, I don't care if you ate or not. I will kill you slowly and cook you into meatloaf to give to your lord!” Jiang Qin said also casually. Jiang Qin only thought of revenge, to send Lu Bu a message that Jiang Qin is here for revenge.

“Aiyah!!!” Su Fei just shook his head. Suddenly he bite his tongue. His mouth is bursting with blood and Su Fei spat out a piece of flesh. This is suicide by biting his tongue.

“Oh, no no no no. You will not die so easily!!!” Jiang Qin quickly held Su Fei's lower jaw in order to dislocate his lower jaw, so Su Fei was unable to

close his mouth again “Someone, give him hemostatic medicine!!!”

Su Fei just smiled bitterly, he truly planned to bite his tongue to commit suicide. Who knew that Jiang Qin was able to quickly prevent him by breaking his lower jaw?

“Hey, I have said that I must kill you slowly. If you died quickly like that, then I will not be satisfied, got it?” After Jiang Qin said that, his men already brought the hemostatic powder and quickly sprinkled it Su Fei's mouth by Jiang Qin.

“AAHHH!!!” Su Fei's tongue was already destroyed, so he could not scream only whine. In addition, his body is already very weak, so he cannot prevent whatever Jiang Qin would do to him

“Hahaha, come on, tell me where I should start?!” Jiang Qin licked his lips. “Oh, I will start with your hand!!!” Jiang Qin started cutting down Su Fei's hand. This is the pair of hands that almost claimed his life. So Jiang Qin quickly sliced him and sprinkled hemostatic medicine on the wounds and because Su Fei still in pain, it can only make Jiang Qin more and more angry.

“These arms also disgusting!! They need to be removed!!!” Jiang Qin quickly slashed Su Fei's arm. His long sword was now logged into Su Fei's arms.

“PUSHI!!!” Blood splashed on Jiang Qin's face. Jiang Qin became even fiercer. Su Fei's body was already shivering from pain, but he cannot move at all, only his eyes are fixated on Jiang Qin.

“Right!!! See me, watch me and remember me!!! This is your grandpa Jiang Qin who cut your arms and hands!!!” Jiang Qin then started to move that long sword which has been logged on Su Fei's arms. That long sword that Jiang Qin used is intentionally a blunt sword in order to torture Su Fei more and more.

“Oh, it is blunt, boo hoo hoo!!!” Jiang Qin mocking Su Fei. Jiang Qin now cutting his arm in manner of moving saw in order to make Su Fei more and more painful. The pain cannot be withstood by any human.

Su Fei's forehead started to profuse cold sweats. This is because of the intense pain. This kind of wound is considered as non-fatal for military and can even be ignored, but Su Fei's eyes are showing very unbearable pain.

“Yeehaw, he finally broke!!” Both of Su Fei's arms finally fell down from its original position then was stomped by Jiang Qin until it become patty.

“Ooohhh, this legs, are also an eyesores!!! They need to be removed also!!!” Jiang Qin used that blunt long sword again. Su Fei already could not bear the pain. Although he lost half of his tongue, he still can whine.

“Come on, whine more like the pig you are!!!” And with that, Su Fei's legs are gone and Jiang Qin screamed “Someone, sprinkle hemostatic medicine on him, no need to be gentle!!!” Jiang Qin will not let Su Fei die easily, he must suffer more and more.

“HAHAHAHHA, now you look much better without your four appendages!!!” Jiang Qin laughed. Su Fei could no longer shiver. He already fainted because of blood loss and pain.

“Oh no no no, you must not faint. You will not rob me of my pleasure of doing vengeance!! Someone, flush him with water!!!” Someone dumped cold water toward Su Fei. The water is very clear from the head, but when it reach midway, it turn red because of blood. Su Fei was in terrible condition.

Su Fei awoke after being flushed by water. Without arms and legs, he is only able to stare at Jiang Qin angrily. If stares could kill, Jiang Qin would have died twice over.

“Hah, what you can do by staring me?! That pair of eyes are also an eyesore!!! They need to be stabbed” Jiang Qin then took Su Fei's dagger and stabbed both of Su Fei's eyes.

“MMM!!!! MMM!!!!!” Su Fei is struggling because Jiang Qin stabbed his eyes. Su Fei's entire world became very dark, unable to see even a spec of light.

“HAHAHAHAHAHAAH!!!!!” Jiang Qin become crazier and said “That nose, ear and those lips are all eyesores, they need to be removed!”

With that, the once handsome scholar Su Fei disappeared from the earth and was sintead replaced with a beastly visage of a person.

Both of his eyes were bleeding out, his ears were cut, his nose was sliced and his lips were gone. Su Fei thought that death was ready to claim him, but Jiang Qin then boiled ginseng soup in order to prolong his life.

The ginseng that Jiang Qin's use is one-thousand-years-old ginseng, it is a very rare and very excellent medicine to prolong life.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!! Someone, load Su Fei into a jar. Send him to Wancheng city as a present for the Marquis of Wen!!!” Jiang Qin was very satisfied with his masterpiece.

Chapter 146 - Su Fei's Burial

“General Su Fei....!!!” Liu Mang is in a state of disbelief. The human called Su Fei was turned into a “human swine” with his four limbs severed, eyes stabbed, nose and ears sliced off and finally put in a jar.

“Sun Ce!!! Jiang Qin!!!” Liu Mang's said in low voice. Liu Mang started apologizing in his heart “General Su Fei, this is Mang's fault. This is my mistake for being so angry in the first place!”

“Little lord....” The mood was very grim for all the people present. They cannot believe that a person they knew was made into a “human swine” like Concubine Qi, one of Liu Bang's wives. Empress Lu Zhi (Liu Bang's legal wife) was very jealous that Concubine Qi is very loved by Liu Bang, so after Liu Bang died, she tortured Concubine Qi. The process was similar: She began by gouging out her eyes, amputating her arms and legs, shaving her head, deafening her using molten copper, skinning her alive and forcing her to drink acid that destroyed her vocal chords. The mute and limbless concubine was then tossed into a cesspit in the palace with the swine.

Although this type of torture was invented by Empress Lu Zhi, no one ever use it again until Jiang Qin.

Although Jiang Qin did not put Su Fei inside a piss pot or deafening him with molten copper or gouging his eyes out his method was still very cruel. Su Fei's tongue is half-missing, his eyes were stabbed, his nose and ear are missing, and his four limbs are also gone. He was wrapped in cloth and put into a jar. There are also traces of hemostatic powder and in

Su Fei's mouth, there is a thousand-years-old ginseng. This is used to prolong Su Fei's life.

"Ai!!! Su Fei!!!" Huang Zhong also sighed. He and Su Fei had worked together, although for a very short time. Huang Zhong really respected this young man. This Su Fei really understood when to advance and when to retreat. When Su Fei was his vice commander, he always called Huang Zhong "Old General Huang". He also did not put on airs being Huang Zu's trusted general but continued to seek Huang Zhong's counsel.

Normally Huang Zu will dispatch Su Fei as the commander-in-arms. But when Su Fei was recommended by Huang Zhong, it can be said Su Fei's talent has been recognized by Huang Zhong's.

"NICE!!! NICELY DONE BOTH OF YOU!!!" Liu Mang's whole body is trembling, holding his anger. Liu Mang thought "When I made Zhou Tai into a meatloaf, I beheaded him first, making sure he did not suffer and hang his head above Wancheng city, after that did I turn his body into meatloaf. But both of you had done this while Su Fei was still alive, make him into a "human swine". FUCK YOU ALL!!! I'LL BOIL BOTH OF YOU ALIVE!!!"

"Little lord, we excuse ourselves!!!" Liu Kai and Liu Neng did not dare to look at Su Fei inside that jar. Both of them are nobles, they are treated their servants like tools. And when those "tools" made mistakes, they will punish them by flogging or hanging them. They thought they are already cruel, but this... This is a work of a monster, making a person a "human swine". Liu Mang understood what they meant and quickly waved to dismiss both of them.

"So, Sun Ce, you have also sent me a declaration of war, then I accept

it!!! Liu Mang banged his fist as hard as he can on the table until his hand started to bloody and the table broke.

"Is Xingba there?!" Huang Zhong thought about Su Fei and Gan Ning. Su Fei is the body and Gan Ning is the brain. One of the reason that Su Fei surrendered to Lu Bu is because Gan Ning already do not have anything to do with Huang Zu beside Huang She was captured. So it is very apparent to who the body and who the brain is.

Liu Mang responded "No, I have ordered Xingba to install the weapon! So I ask him to avoid any battle and prepare the weapon properly!!!" Huang Zhong then nodded.

So, Su Fei, in order to keep off enemies from getting information about Gan Ning. He, with only 2,000 naval troops, dared to challenge 100,000 troops. He will not let Gan Ning be branded as a coward. Who knew that this parting will become his last?

"Everyone, we should keep this matter a secret first, nobody tell Xingba!!!" Liu Mang ordered. Liu Mang feared that if Gan Ning knew the matter, he will be unable to bear the sadness and will challenge Sun Ce for a fight to the death and destroying all of his schemes.

Huang Zhong sees that the jar is moving in agreement with Liu Mang's order and inquired "Su Fei, you agree?!"

"General Su Fei, thank you!!!" Liu Mang quickly removed his cloak and started to bend his knee.

“Little lord, what are you doing?!” Those all present are shocked. Because in their eyes, this little lord can be considered having half of lord's authority but this little lord is bending his knee to kneel now.

With their lord knelt, all of them also knelt down inside the briefing room.

“General Su Fei, this is Liu Mang's mistake. If Liu Mang do not recruit General Su, you will still be under General Huang Zu and will not have this fate!!!” Yes, if Liu Mang did not make Su Fei and Gan Ning surrender. Su Fei right now should be in Jiangxia and fighting Zhou Yu.

“If Liu Mang did not issue the order for Xingba to refuse the battle, there will be no fate like this for you!!!”

“This is Mang's mistake!!! Please blame Mang for this!!!” Liu Mang started to cry. He thought that it is easy being a lord in this times of war. But once he made a mistake, the consequences is very big. He now understands that sacrifices must be made in order for one to achieve success in these times of war.

His Urban Army and Su Fei are the living proof of these sacrifices.

“Little lord, this is not your mistake! The mistake lies in the body of Jiang Qin and Sun Ce’s army!!!” Liu Neng is trying to comfort Liu Mang. However, mentioning those people names was like taboo, as Liu Mang’s eyes is emitted killing intent, scaring Liu Neng big time.

“DAMN YOU SUN CE!!!! DAMN YOU JIANG QIN!!!! General Su Fei, I am

sorry, Mang cannot save you but your wife and children will be treated as Mang's elder sister and Mang's son and Mang will prepare your son to receive your inheritance in good way. Regarding your anger, Mang will take revenge for you. Jiang Qin and Sun Ce's head will be offered to your grave. With the sky and earth as my witness, this is my oath to you!!!" Liu Mang said fiercely.

"With the sky and earth as our witness, we will assist little lord to kill Sun Ce and Jiang Qin!!!" Other generals also screamed their oath.

"General Su Fei, please rest in peace!!!" Liu Mang unsheathe his sword and put it on Su Fei's throat. Su Fei can no longer be saved. Even if he is able to be saved his four limbs are missing and he is mute. This is too cruel a fate for any combat general. So, killing him is the best act for now. Only in death is there freedom; freedom from all the pain and suffering.

Liu Mang then moved his sword to behead Su Fei. When he behead Su Fei, even though blood was splashing, Su Fei's face there held no resentment at all. In fact he had a relieved expression visible on his face. He is free now, free from any suffering.

After he beheaded Su Fei suddenly there was a messenger screaming while kneeling toward Liu Mang "REPORT!!! General, report. Outside the city, the enemies are in massive numbers!!!"

The messenger thought that Liu Mang will be anxious. Surprisingly instead he was very relaxed and said "Oh, already here?"Liu Mang stood up "Someone, please give General Su Fei a proper burial and make sure his wife and son attend the funeral. For the memorial service, we will need to wait until Milord returns!!! The others come with me, we shall make annihilate Sun Ce's army to the last man!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed.

Never before had his killing intent been so intense, not even when killing Chen Lan, or when he ordered for Zhou Tai to be killed and definitely not even when he killed those nobles who destroyed the commoners.

Sun Ce and Jiang Qin has just made Liu Mang's blacklist.

Chapter 147 - An Eye for an Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth (1)

Surrounded by so many soldiers; Liu Mang had seen this scene twice before. First time, when he was surrounded by Cao Cao in Kaiyang and this is the second time. However, at that time, the commander-in-chief was Lu Bu, so he was free to do whatever he can and even express his emotion. But right now, he is the commander-in-chief, his every action and movement will affect the morale of Wancheng city and his decision will be what determines the fate of these 8,000 troops.

The enemy is big in numbers and in Wancheng city, adding the Urban Army and the Liu clan private soldiers, their forces only numbered 8,000 troops. The Lu clan, Xu clan and Han clan also provided their private soldiers but their number is so small it only equaled only 500. So, Liu Mang now only had 8,500 troops in his hand. This is the first disadvantage that Liu Mang had.

The second one is the size and condition of this Wancheng city. This city is really big and worthy of its title as the capital of Lujiang. However, due to its size it will be very difficult to send reinforcements if one of the gates is attacked.

For the third disadvantage, the wall are in a bad state due to the battle with the nobles. So Liu Mang had no choice to assign the Lu, Xu and Han clan’s private soldiers to repair the walls returning the number of troops from 8,500 to 8,000 again.

If Liu Mang had 20,000 troops, he can repel them and even open the gates for a direct assault. Regarding grain and provisions, there are still a lot left inside the now ruined Administration Office’s granary that was

“hand-picked” by Lu Bu. It still can feed 100,000 people with normal meal rations for at least 6 months.

Liu Mang with only 8,000 troops had to withstand an assault of 100,000 troops. Winning the battle with this kind of number is not an impossible feat, but he would need a very grand strategy. Liu Mang now is focusing on defense instead of attacking. Nobody can handle the pressure that Liu Mang felt right now.

The only other thing that he needed was reinforcements. Even defending the city to the last man will not stop Wancheng city will be broken. Once broken, Lu Bu’s army’s grain and provisions will be gone and will be routed in a matter of days, so Liu Mang sent a messenger to Shucheng County to request for reinforcements to turn back the condition right now to favor Lu Bu’s army.

Those Cao troops who specialized in ground warfare are not Lu Bu army’s match, let alone this Jiangdong army whose army strong point focuses on naval units.

“LIU MANG THE BUTCHER, SHOW YOUR FACE!!!” A scholar from Sun Ce’s army started to provoke Liu Mang in order to do battle, and then he said “Liu Mang the butcher. You are one of Han Dynasty clansmen and a prince. You should work for the benefit of people, govern the people with benevolence, but you colluded with the slave of three surnames and frontier hungry wolf Lu Bu, occupied our city, killed our subjects and committed a great sin. Surrender now and I will make sure that Milord spares you!!! If you wait until our army breaks the city, your blood will be spilled in this city!!!” That scholar spoke those words in a confident tone, even without scripts.

“Hahaha, surrender and we will be spared?! Is this scholar out of his mind?!” Liu Mang thought in his heart. Lu Bu’sarmy and Sun Ce army already a mortal enemies and this scholar is actually asking for him to surrender? Lu Bu’s army will not be able to live if they surrender, not a single one, including Liu Mang.

Moreover, at Wancheng city, there are Zhou Tai and Zhou Cheng’s heads hanging which already started to decompose. Zhou Tai was one of Sun Ce’s beloved general and Zhou Cheng is Zhou Yu’s relative and both of them were killed by Liu Mang. So, one can see the enmity between Liu Mang and Sun Ce and adding by Da Qiao’s “death”, this young scholar should know that they already past the point of reconcile.

“What is your name?!” Liu Mang asked this confident scholar his name. This man’s tongue is really good, able to speak every one of his “sins” in one breath, is able to speak about how Liu Mang should behaved and also able to say things that can be deciphered as “alas, reality is a cruel bitch to you, Liu Mang!!!” for staying with Lu Bu.

“My name is Lu Su, Lu Zijing. Your Highness Prince of Shu, this Lu Su suggest for you to surrender!!! You already lost in numbers. Milord has 100,000 troops and you only have a meager 8,000 troops, you will spill meaningless blood. This Lu Su again advises you to surrender and offer Wancheng city now. I will make sure that Milord Sun Ce guarantees your safety and delivers you to Xu Du, so you can govern together along with His Majesty!!!”

“Lu Su?!” Liu Mang stunned. He is a celebrity in Three Kingdoms history. Lu Su, Lu Zijing hailed from Dongcheng County in Linhuaiguan. He is a very outstanding strategist and diplomat. He was born in a good noble family. Not long after he was born, he has lost his father and was raised by his grandmother. His appearance is big and tall, he is known for his

straightforward comments and honesty. He loves to study and an expert equestrian.

When he came into age at the years of the Yellow Turban Rebellion and Dong Zhuo, he saw that government officials were corrupt and chaos was everywhere, so he bore a big ambition in his heart to restore order. He is also often went home to Linhuaiguan in order to train youngsters in martial arts.

One can see, that this Lu Su is a very respectable statesman. His emergence is when Zhou Yu occupied Juchao County. At that time, Zhou Yu was very lacking in grain and provisions, Lu Su took this initiative to donate and send 3,000-shi of grain and provisions to him. From that moment, Zhou Yu and Lu Su became fast friends and often discussed important matters.

That honest man is intimidating Liu Mang now, forcing Liu Mang to a dead-end. Lu Su is truly worthy as an honest and straightforward person. But all that Lu Su said was a way of no return. If Liu Mang surrendered now, will Sun Ce possibly not injure Liu Mang? Also regarding going to Xu Du, Cao Cao of Xu Du and Sun Ce of Jiangdong, both of them harbor big hatred toward Liu Mang's existence.

No, without Liu Mang Cao Cao have already gotten Diaochan and possibly already killed Lu Bu. Because of Liu Mang's existence, he Cao Cao was almost killed by Lu Bu in Xiapi. Without Liu Mang, no one would have insulted him in Kaiyang. Without Liu Mang, it would have been impossible for his Ferocious Cavalry to be annihilated and his senior general Cao Chun and major Li Dian to die. One can see Cao Cao's hatred for Liu Mang is also very big.

So, in other words. To surrender is die, to not surrender is also die. This Lu Su truly has a ways to smooth his words.

Liu Mang can only show off his title and rank again and responded to Lu Su “Lu Zijing, I want to ask you. Whose subjects are you?!”

Liu Mang does not want to bully the honest and straightforward person but there is no choice. The Liu clan’s private soldiers has been shaken by Lu Su’s words. If we surrender, then they won’t have to go to battle. Going to battle will claim their lives. Moreover the number of enemies is too many, this kind of view will make any person fluster.

“Um?! What does this Prince of Shu want to say?” Lu Su’s brow wrinkled. Although Lu Su is unable to discern his motive, he said “I am a subject of the Han Dynasty!!!” Although these are the times of war the real power lies on the warlords and although the Han Emperor is only a figurehead, they are still subjects of Han Dynasty.

The 400 years of prestige of the Han Dynasty is not to be underestimated. It is still upheld by all of the warlords and they are openly saying that they are the Han Dynasty subjects. Only Yuan Shu, Yuan Gonglu was the one who violated this rule by proclaiming himself as emperor, having received the Imperial Seal from Sun Ce. As a result, everyone joined up to attack him together and Yuan Shu can only suffer defeat after defeat after defeat and finally becoming stranded in Shouchun.

“Oh, then I asked again, is your Wancheng city the capital of Lujiang Prefecture? Is this Lujiang Prefecture a part of Yang Province?!” Liu Mang asked again.

“Yes!!!” Wancheng city from Lu Kang's time has been always Lujiang Prefecture's capital and Lujiang Prefecture is one part of Yang Province.

“Well said!!! Lu Su Lu Zijing, in case you have forgotten, this prince was given by His Majesty not only as Prince of Shu, but also General of the Southern Expedition!!! This prince's territory consists of Yang, Yu, Yi and Jing Provinces and you dare come to me to speak that this Wancheng city as your lord's territory? Also regarding murdering the people, are not those nobles also my men? They dared to be ruthless in my domain, so it is right for me as the ruler to punish those evildoers by annihilation. I am the Prince of Shu and this Wancheng city is under my jurisdiction. Your lord is only a mere Kuaiji governor but when he saw this prince, not only did not kneel down but he also had intentions to kill this prince. It is very apparent that Han Dynasty to your eyes, is already a big pile of trash!!!”

With those words, the war between Lu Su and Liu Mang reached a stalemate! Lu Su is pressing Liu Mang with the principle of righteousness in order for Liu Mang to surrender, but Liu Mang is accusing Lu Su and Jiangdong’s army of treason for not being loyal Han subjects and he, Lu Su, is disrespecting the Han Dynasty. Liu Mang also accused that Lu Su kept saying that this Wancheng city is theirs, it is questioning the Han Emperor of his decision to seal Liu Mang with title of General of the Southern Expedition. And with Lu Su's lord dispatching troops to kill him, it can be said that they are rebelling against Han Dynasty.

Honestly, in this times of war, all of the warlords are doing offenses toward the Han Dynasty and busy expanding their own territory. So nobody paid attention whether the Han Emperor is still in charge or not. If Liu Xie is a stern, authoritative and powerful emperor, then Cao Cao did not need to dispatch troops to do battle and pacify one region. The Han Emperor could just write an imperial decree in order for them to not get

out of the line.

This is the unspoken rule in order for all to respect the Han Dynasty at the front. Liu Mang is now playing this in order for all to see that he is a loyal and upright subject of the Han Dynasty and all of Lu Su's words are meaningless toward him.

Now, with those words, one can see that this General of Southern Expedition who commands four provinces is an earnest, just, loyal and upright character.

“YOU!!!!” Lu Su is not a good debater naturally he is not able to counter Liu Mang's argument. He is only able to debate base on facts, when encountering people who are good in debate like Zhuge Liang, he is speechless. Regarding scheming, Lu Su did not have any shortcomings at all and was able to cover all angles. This trait made Zhou Yu choose Lu Su as his successor and become a viceroy in Wu country after he died historically. Although his schemes are small in regards with Zhou Yu, they were still very good.

Suddenly from behind Lu Su's, there was a familiar voice is speaking loudly “When the Prince of Shu does a mistake, naturally we will need an official that is directly under the Emperor to rectify the mistake!!! Is not that right, Your Highness Prince of Shu?!”

“SUN CE!!!” Liu Mang narrowed his eyes. From behind Lu Su's came a man who was wearing purple armor in the same design with Lu Bu's original flowery patterned armor.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, How is Su Fei?!” Sun Ce asked while

looking at Liu Mang at the city gate tower with mocking smile.

"Su Fei!!!" Liu Mang's heart rend when he heard Su Fei's name. That valiant naval general was destroyed by Sun Ce. Turning him into a "human swine"!!! A GODDAMNED "HUMAN SWINE"!!! THIS IS UNFORGIVABLE.

"Oh, General Sun Ce, thank you for showing your concern. But, first let me ask you one thing. How did that meatloaf taste? Really good right?!" Liu Mang replied back. Liu Mang knew that this is not a time to be sad. "This time is the time to take revenge for Su Fei and these 100,000 troops will become food for my anger" Liu Mang's thought in his head.

"HUMPH!!!! Your Highness Prince of Shu, do you remember that Your Honorable Father-in-law, when he wanted cross my Lujiang Prefecture, offered a cart full of jewellery and 3,000 taels of gold for toll fee. But this Sun Ce refused his toll fee and gave him a free passage to Jiangxia. Not only that, I had also ordered for every cities and counties in my domain to provide you with hot food for your army.

I also did not do anything when you insulted both of my advisors. Furthermore, I also invited you both, a complete stranger, to my wedding and celebrate together. But, with what, how did your Bing Province Army pay this Sun Ce back? You seized my Wancheng city, killed my wife and senior general and finally you destroyed many lives of my subjects in Wancheng city. A Total 10,000 families buried in just one night. Oh, Your Highness Prince of Shu, why did you get rid of those people, while they are also subjects of the Han Dynasty?!"

Sun Ce's words were full of righteousness. In his words, Lu Bu and Liu Mang were ungrateful villains that after been showered by kindness,

stabbed people in the back. They took other people's territories and killed the owner's wife and senior general.

If people do not know the whole details of the problems, they may side with Sun Ce.

"Oh, Sun Bofu, when did you become a hypocrite?!" Liu Mang showed his disdainful look and said "When have you let us pass your Lujiang freely?! You just merely changed the currency to Huangzhou city in order for you to advance to Jiangxia. Using hot food and grain and provisions for Jiangxia, is not that right Sun Bofu? As for killing your senior general, are you referring to this thing?!"

Liu Mang quickly unsheathe his long sword and cut down Zhou Tai's head. The city wall had at least a height of thirty feet, so Zhou Tai head was quickly crushed when it reached the ground. Liu Mang then said "You sent a powerful general who can command an army as an assassin!!! This is very apparent that you do not appreciate talent at all!!! Sending a valuable person for an assassination on weak women, that was really thoughtful of you, General Sun Ce!!! Clap, clap, clap!!!" Said Liu Mang while clapping his hands mockingly.

Sun Ce's face paled. Sun Ce indeed regretted sending a first-class general for a mere mission of assassination. A first-class general can lead a division and was able to strike fear in the enemies' heart, but Sun Ce treated him like an expendable person.

Gongsun Zan is also like this Sun Ce. His Penetrating White Horsemen with Zhao Yun as the leader was able to destroy any opposition. After that, Zhao Yun was transferred by Gongsun Zan to Qing Province in order to help Tian Kai. With Zhao Yun's departure, the Penetrating White

Horsemen lost an able leader and when they were fighting with Yuan Shao's Great Halberd Soldiers of the Ji Province and Skirmishers of the Ji Province, they were quickly beaten and never recovered again; resulting in Gongsun Zan's death.

While Sun Ce is expressing sadness and regret, the other person beside him showed big rage toward Liu Mang.

"DAMNED BRAT LIU MANG!!! COME DOWN AND FIGHT WITH THIS JIANG QIN FOR 300 BOUTS. YOUR HEAD WILL BE MINE FOR BROTHER YOUPING'S TRIBUTE!!!" Jiang Qin comes out from the line and pointing his broadsword toward Liu Mang while insulting him. This broadsword is Jiang Qin's primary weapon.

"JIANG QIN'S OUT ALREADY!!! GOOD THEN!!! THIS BASTARD COMES OUT FINALLY!!!" Said Liu Mang in a low voice. Even if Jiang Qin stay in the army and not insulted Liu Mang, Liu Mang would have searched for him relentlessly. Liu Mang said "Jiang Qin, I will hold memorial service for General Su Fei with your Jiangdong army's blood today!!!"

Liu Mang called out one of his men while staring at that insulting person "Is Huang Zhong present?!"

"This general is in!!!" Huang Zhong steps out, and responded while helding his fist on the other hand.

Liu Mang said his order "Old General Huang. Under the city there is the bastard who killed Su Fei. I want you to lead 2,000 troops of Urban Army to do the first skirmish. TAKE THAT ASSHOLE'S HEAD!!!"

“This general complies with the order!!!” Huang Zhong accepted the order. Huang Zhong also is in very good terms with Su Fei so he also wanted to kill this Jiang Qin who harmed Su Fei in a very cruel way.

“BUMP, BUMP, BUMP!!!” The battle drum was struck. The main gate of Wancheng city had been opened. One by one the Urban Army soldiers flushed out from the city and formed a phalanx formation that was taught by Liu Mang, leaving only dozens of cavalry soldiers to guard Liu Mang.

“Preparing for a skirmish?!” Sun Ce looked at Wancheng cities direction. “So, you want to die quickly, eh? I will grant you that wish!!!” Sun Ce has gotten information from his scouts. The information is that the entirety of Wancheng city only had less than 10,000 troops. Even defending the entire city is a big problem and now he ordered a fifth of his troops in order to do battle? Heh, this Prince of Shu Liu Mang is truly a death seeker.

What Liu Mang did just now was the same as Huang Zhong in Huangzhou city. Doing battle in order to increase morale and courage of his troops. Huang Zhong was currently Liu Mang’s trump card, his strength is the pinnacle of super-class generals and only Lu Bu is his match. Ten years ago, when all 18 warlords joined in a coalition and fought Dong Zhuo in Hulao Gate, Dong Zhuo had nothing to fear because he had Lu Bu.

During the first skirmish, Lu Bu challenged champions from each faction and cut them down one by one, even charging toward them alone. This particular action painted fear inside those 18 warlords and demoralized them. So, even if Dong Zhuo’s military strength was half of the coalitions’, they did not dare to go on the offensive due to fear of Lu Bu.

Now Liu Mang needed the victory of the first battle. It can destroy enemy's morale as well raise one's morale. These 6000 private soldiers needed their morale roused in order to do battle, their morale had been dropped due to the enemy numbers. If morale fell again, then there is no point on doing battle. What Liu Mang needed now, was to rouse their morale to make it as good as his Urban Army.

"Jiang Qin, Jiang Gongyi is here!!! Enemy general, you will receive a quick death!!!" Jiang Qin hits his warhorse to go in front of the moat, provoking the enemy general.

From their formation, there is a valiant general wearing dark yellow armor with golden curved dao on his back.

When he saw the general, Jiang Qin smiled disdainfully "Hahahahaha, looks like Lu Bu's army only has nobodies!!! They even resorted to sending out this toothless veteran!!!"

Chapter 148 - An Eye for an Eye, a Tooth for a Tooth (2)

“Gongyi, be careful!!!” Sun Ce is not a person who always underestimates an opponent like Jiang Qin. This is a veteran that challenged Jiang Qin. Sun Ce had enough veterans in his Jiangdong army to recognize one.

Even though they are all old like this general, their prowess and skills in the battlefield never diminished even a bit, so underestimating them will be a fatal mistake.

TL Note: Jiang Qin’s courtesy name is Gongyi

“Oh, Milord. Do not worry about me. I will kill this old fart, along with those 2,000 disgusting troops of that brat Liu Mang!!!” Jiang Qin replied toward Sun Ce and grabbed his broadsword. What he wanted the most was to enter Wancheng city and kill that Prince of Shu immediately.

“.....” Sun Ce just kept silent and thought “Maybe this veteran is a nobody in Lu Bu’s army, after all Lu Bu’s main force in Shucheng County, and not here.”

Huang Zhong also hits his horse to approach Jiang Qin. His attire right now is truly awe-inspiring. He is wearing dark-yellow armor and on his horseback, there is a longbow and on his back there is a gold curved dao. When he got closer, he asked “Are you Jiang Qin?”

“Correct, that is this grandpa's name!!! Old fart, remember this grandpa's face as I send you to hell. Remember this grandpa's name

Jiang Qin, Jiang Gongyi!!!" Jiang Qin said while sneering toward Huang Zhong. He thought "Heh, two generals in Lu Bu's army. Easy win!!!"

"Oh, it is you!!!" Huang Zhong's face became colder and colder. Indeed he is old, but his actual age is only 38 years old. His old appearance is because he was always worried with Huang Xu, and this whippersnapper insulted him as an "old fart" making Huang Zhong angry. Adding the fact about the death of Su Fei, Huang Zhong's heart started emitting killing intent towards him.

"I have been assigned by little lord to kill you!!! GIVE ME YOUR LIFE!!!" Huang Zhong squeezed his warhorse and started to charge toward Jiang Qin like an arrow.

"OH, OLD FART!!! YOU WANT TO DIE, I WILL BE HAPPY TO ACCOMODATE YOU!!!!" Exclaimed Jiang Qin while squeezing his warhorse to charge toward Huang Zhong.

"Clang!!!" A golden curved dao and a broadsword clashed in the air. But after clashing, experts know that one needed to quickly pull out the weapon in order to make another swing, but this time Jiang Qin felt something after he did that first clash, there was another golden shadow slashing his arm.

"Slash!!!" Jiang Qin's left arm start oozing red blood. He was slashed quickly after that first clash.

"WHAT THE HELL?!" Jiang Qin exclaimed while their warhorses passed through each other. He thought "How was I injured by this old fart?!" With the pain from his arm, Jiang Qin got angrier and exclaimed toward

Huang Zhong “OLD FART, I WILL KILL YOU SLOWLY!!! I WILL MAKE YOU IN TO A “HUMAN SWINE” JUST LIKE SU FEI!!!” After exclaiming that, Jiang Qin quickly turned his warhorse and charged again toward Huang Zhong.

“TURN ME INTO A “HUMAN SWINE”?!” Huang Zhong's eyes narrowed burning with killing intent. Su Fei's final appearance is a memory that Huang Zhong wanted to disappear forever from his mind but he still remembered that this bastard is the one who turn him into “human swine”.

“Let's begin then, FIRST SKILL!!!!” Huang Zhong exclaimed toward Jiang Qin while preparing to clash again.

Two warhorses began approaching. Jiang Qin thought at that time, he had been careless and this time he will tell this old fart that he is not worthy to be in the battlefield. He is only fit to be in a nursery home, therefore proving this grandpa Jiang Qin is the most superior.

“Clang!!!” the golden curved dao and broadsword are clashed once more creating sparks. This time Jiang Qin must pressure Huang Zhong in order not to create any more gaps like earlier and also making this old fart tire with his strikes.

“GO DIE, DIE QUICKLY!!!!” Jiang Qin exclaimed loudly while adding more strength to his strikes.

“HUMPH!!!!” Huang Zhong humphed coldly. When Huang Zhong saw that Jiang Qin has increased his strength, he just deflected it easily to the side. Huang Zhong is using the principles of aikido, to use one’s strength against him.

“Beng!!!” Jiang Qin’s broadsword was thrown down by Huang Zhong’s deflection and lost his grip. Due to Jiang Qin’s strength being used against him, his broadsword continued its momentum stabbing the ground until its hilt was no longer seen.

“AAAHHHH!!!!” Jiang Qin screamed because after his broadsword had gone from his hand, that golden shadow appeared again and cutting Jiang Qin’s meat. That cut was so deep right that a lump of his arms flesh was sliced off.

“Hm?!” Sun Ce’s brow wrinkled. Deflecting such a strong attack by using curved dao? This kind of skill is actually very simple and was usually used by generals who are using spears and two-edged swords. But using a curved dao to counter like that? This veteran general is truly frightening.

A curved dao is a weapon that specializes in drawing the strength of its wielder. The wielder of this particular weapon usually relies on brute strength rather than technique. But that veteran just now, used a technique skill with a curved dao. If that is not frightening, then I do not know what is.

It’s like sniping with an automatic.

So, the conclusion is either this veteran only recently used a curved dao, or this veteran’s strength has received a certain level.

“How can this be?! This is impossible!!!” Sun Ce voiced his thought while shaking his head. He really thought that earlier Jiang Qin had been careless. Jiang Qin has the strength that almost broke through to super-class generals, but that general can use a technique skill and even lift his

golden curved dao with ease!!! Even Sun Ce himself is unable to do it. This degree, in Sun Ce's eyes, only Lu Bu is able to achieve this veteran's strength.

Sun Ce is a prideful guy because his strength is really strong. In Jiangdong's army, only Taishi Ci is his match. Even Zhou Tai must go into a berserk state in order to fight Sun Ce at the same level. Now in front of him, that white-haired nameless veteran is stronger than him, will Sun Ce be able to accept that?

"Gongyi cannot drag this battle any longer, he needs to do a decisive bout" Sun Ce thought. Sun Ce has become a little anxious. He also had the idea to kill the enemy's general in order to hit their morale, but because Jiang Qin is "toying" with this general, Jiang Qin received injury from two attacks.

Sun Ce then screamed his order "GONGYI, TAKE UP YOUR WEAPON AND KILL HIM NOW, FINISH THIS BATTLE IMMEDIATELY!!!"

"Yes, Milord!!!" Jiang Qin said that while pulling out his broadsword from ground. He is also very confused, this old fart, at a glance he is only a weak and feeble old man but Jiang Qin never expected that this veteran will be very strong.

Jiang Qin shook his head then thought "Hmm, maybe I have not yet recovered from Su Fei's attack yesterday and that maybe my reason for being so weak today!" But regardless, his lord already ordered, so he must end this battle quickly!!! Jiang Qin then exclaimed while showing killing intent "OLD FART, THIS JIANG QIN WILL SPARE YOU FROM A SLOW DEATH!!! I WILL TAKE YOUR HEAD NOW!!!!"

But Huang Zhong did not pay any attention to Jiang Qin's words and exclaimed "SECOND SKILL!!!!"

"What? Second skill?!" Jiang Qin was stunned after hearing Huang Zhong's words but quickly dismissed it. He said toward Huang Zhong "Hahaha, second skill? Is the second skill jerking yourself, old fart? Wahahahahahaha, give me your head, old fart. This grandpa Jiang Qin is in a good mood, so I will not cut you into a "human swine"!!!"

"SHAAAA!!!!" Jiang Qin squeezed his horse again. This time Jiang Qin must quickly destroy him. Although Jiang Qin is a naval general, he is also not bad in ground warfare. Jiang Qin then raised his broadsword, his broadsword shining under sunlight sent out a cold aura.

Huang Zhong just kept silent and saw Jiang rushing towards him and just sneered. Strangely, he just kept motionless as if waiting for Jiang Qin's arrival, even his warhorse was just calmly eating grass.

"Hooo, old fart. So you know, you are dying, so you just stay silent there.

HAHAHAHAHAHAHA!!!" Jiang Qin laughed loudly as if he already saw this old fart as a dead man. He quickly brandished his broadsword and aimed it toward Huang Zhong's neck. "This old fart is going to die with this slash and these 2,000 troops will die by my divisions. Accompany my brother in hell, he is very lonely there!!!" thought Jiang Qin.

Jiang Qin getting near and nearer brandishing his broadsword, made a lot people scared of the outcome.

The most scared one is Liu Kai and quickly said to Liu Mang "This General Huang, why does he not move?!" He had not seen Huang

Zhong's prowess. When they were clearing the North and South gate, he had not seen this Old General Huang in action at all, only ordering the Urban Army and Liu Neng with his private soldiers to clean up those two places. "Why send such a feeble old man to battle?! Even if no general in Lu Bu's army is available, no one will send a bearded old man to battle!!!" Liu Kai lamented in his heart.

"This His Highness Prince of Shu is truly insane, sending a feeble old man to battle. These 2,000 troops and this city will accompany him to hell together!!!" Liu Kai lamented even. If he had joined with the Zhou clan, he will be beside Jiangdong's army now fighting Lu Bu army. Now, the Liu clan is in cahoots for killing Zhou Cheng and Zhou Tai, when Sun Ce reclaims Wancheng city, it will be Liu clan's turn to be exterminated.

Liu Mang just kept silent hearing Liu Kai inquiry. Huang Xu also remained silent. How can a pinnacle super-general fear a regular general? Even if Huang Zhong was faced with entire army by himself, he would not feel fear.

"Father, please calm yourself. There will be no harm to that Old General Huang!!!" Liu Neng comforted Liu Kai. Liu Kai kept thinking about the prosperity and how to prevent his Liu clan's decadence but Liu Neng just kept thinking on how to follow Liu Mang and on how to become a trusted man in Liu Mang's division. Liu Neng has placed his whole being in Liu Mang's body and Lu Bu's army. So with that, he can commit slaughter of other nobles easily because he had confided in them.

And plus, when Liu Neng observed Liu Mang and Huang Xu, they only displayed absolute confidence. But back again, if they did not display confidence in their expressions, the last thing that will await them is defeat and death, as all of the soldiers will be panic stricken.

“DIE!!!!” Jiang Qin finally arrived in front of Huang Zhong. Jiang Qin then exclaimed “Oh, old fart. I see you have feared this grandpa Jiang Qin. If you begged for mercy earlier, maybe this grandpa will spare your life. However now it is too late!”

“THIRD SKILL!!!” Huang Zhong exclaimed in deep voice again.

“THE HELL?!” Jiang Qin was stunned because that golden shadow was aiming towards him again. Jiang Qin who is late in responding to it suddenly felt his chest hurts and found out that his armor was rend into two and he even he fall down from his warhorse.

“I'LL KILL YOU, I'LL KILL YOU!!!!” Jiang Qin cursed Huang Zhong and continued to slash his broadsword. Jiang Qin truly felt a strange feeling from this old general who is able to quickly slash him so fast that his slash's movement only showed a golden shadow.

“FOURTH SKILL, FIFTH SKILL!!!!” With Huang Zhong exclamation, two golden shadow sliced Jiang Qin's body, dropping lumps of flesh each time a cut was made.

“AAHHHHHH!!!” Jiang Qin also tried to counter that skill, but during each countering, never in his imagination did he think that his body will be damaged. His warhorse also feared Huang Zhong, but was able to be controlled Jiang Qin by pressing the warhorse into a half-knelt state. With that, Jiang Qin's slash was also dampened by a lot.

“SIXTH SKILL, SEVENTH SKILL!!!!” 2 golden shadows came again from Huang Zhong

“It hurts, my body hurts so bad!!!” whimpered Jiang Qin. Jiang Qin was already unable to fight back anymore. His thigh, chest, arm were sliced was off one by one just like a chef cutting meat masterfully. There were many chances for this general to cut off his head, but he did not take it as if to say he was toying with him. Jiang Qin's heart was painted with fear from this veteran.

“DIE, DIE, DIE!!!!” Jiang Qin started swinging his broadsword in all directions, but none of those slashes came even an inch of Huang Zhong.

“Jiang Qin, RETURN!!!!” Sun Ce also saw the yellow-armored general skills. This Jiang Qin has been swinging his broadsword like madman due to fear and desperation, but every time he swung his broadsword, his blood splashed through the sky. Sun Ce's bad feeling finally came true, this general is even mightier than Sun Ce.

“WHO THE HELL IS HE, WHO?!” Sun Ce shook his head in disbelief. Sun Ce had seen Lu Bu’s subordinates, but only one person and that is Zang Ba. Sun Ce deduced that this Zang Ba has reached the super-class general but at the most, he is at Zhou Tai’s level. Even if he is the one who challenged Jiang Qin, it would be impossible for Jiang Qin to lose like this.

But now, Jiang Qin was toyed with by this general. Played like a prey before it is eaten.

This veteran is out of Jiang Qin's league.

Jiang Qin heard Sun Ce's shout, he also wanted to escape but was unable to leave. Every time he wanted to escape, that golden shadow always stopped him and sliced off a part of him.

“AAAAHHHHHH!!!!!” Jiang Qin's insanity and fear reach its maxed. He cannot hit this old fart, but this old fart can sliced off his body parts. Jiang Qin's arm, thigh, chest was sliced off. When Huang Zhong screamed “SEVENTH SKILL!!!” Jiang Qin's face was slashed along with his nose and lips, revealing a fallen nose and his tooth and gum.

Sun Ce and Liu Mang’s army finally realized Huang Zhong's intention. It is to cut Jiang Qin to pieces just like Su Fei.

Su Fei's death made Huang Zhong extremely angry. If he was killed in battle honorably, he will not act like this. But Su Fei was made into “human swine”, suffered so much that only death can free him. With that Huang Zhong's rage reached the high heavens and with Jiang Qin finally as his opponent, Huang Zhong will definitely make this Jiang Qin into a “human swine” and make him beg for death in front of him.

Chapter 149 - Three Heroes VS Huang Zhong (1)

“JIANG QIN, RETREAT!!!!” Sun Ce shouted his order for who knows many times from the main army.

Jiang Qin was not deaf and heard his lord's shouting, as he also wanted to retreat, but was unable to leave. Before he insulted this veteran, but now his heart is painted with deep fear and wondered if his elder brother had also met him when he died?

“Who are you?!” Jiang Qin no longer able to attack but stay in passive defense. But even in defense, his flesh is getting cut off every couple of minutes. Su Fei's punishment was delivered to him by this veteran.

“I will not tell my name to someone who is about to die!!!” Huang Zhong exclaimed in low voice and begin slashing again.

“Jiang Qin do not worry! Here comes Taishi Ci!!!” A white-armored general using twin halberds was speeding towards Jiang Qin from main army.

Is that Taishi Ci?! Liu Mang looked at that white-armored general who is currently speeding away toward Huang Zhong. This man is a rare talent, a strong general whose leadership skill is comparable to Zhao Yun and his wushu skill and strength is more or less like Sun Ce.

When he was in Kong Rong's employ, region Beihai was under sieged by 100,000 Yellow Turban forces which was led by Guan Hai. He alone dared to charge those 100,000 troops alone by himself and managed

strike fear into the enemy's heart before he returned back to the city.

This person treasured friendship very much and quickly accepted Liu Yao's request to serve him just because he was his childhood friend. Even if he was not trusted with heavy responsibilities and even when he was pushed aside, this Taishi Ci never ever held any resentment toward his buddies and also if Liu Yao paid heed to Taishi Ci's warning and used him effectively, perhaps the master of Jiangdong now would be Liu Yao.

Moreover, the mother of Taishi Ci is very wise. At the end of Han Dynasty, there were quite a lot of wise mothers like Taishi Ci's mom.

For example like Xu Shu's mother and Sun Ce's mother. Xu Shu's mother refused to persuade Xu Shu to defect to Cao Cao, because she believed that Liu Bei is the better person than Cao Cao and Xu Shu only defected to Cao Cao after Cheng Yu (Cao Cao's advisor) faked Xu Shu's mother handwriting and telling him that she has been taken hostage by Cao Cao. But sadly, after Xu Shu go to Xu Du, her mother reprimanded him heavily and the next day, she hung herself out of shame that her child was supporting a villain.

Same also with Madame Wu. After Sun Jian died, she put all of her being to teach Sun Ce courage and persistence and it resulted in today's Sun Ce who is able to pacify Jiangdong at a very young age.

And Taishi Ci's mother taught Taishi Ci the principle of righteousness, loyalty and gratitude to one person.

With those lessons embedded in Taishi Ci's body, it can be said that if Zhao Yun did not exist, maybe the symbol for righteousness, loyalty and

gratitude in this Three Kingdoms era will be Taishi Ci

“Ziyi, here?!” Sun Ce was also stunned. “Wasn’t Taishi Ci assigned by me personally to be beside Zhou Yu in Jiangxia? How can he appear here?” Sun Ce thought.

“Milord, Gongjin ordered Ziyi to catch up with us!” Lu Su quickly explained Sun Ce's confusion. Zhou Yu knows that sooner or later, he will duel with Lu Bu. That guy is the god-of-war and his prowess in Hulao Gate was spread everywhere. Although he is now old, the same age as Sun Jian if Sun Jian managed to live to this day, but his prowess is still the same, if not how can he manage to breakthrough Xiapi and Kaiyang, those hopeless battles. And Zhou Yu's lord Sun Ce is a brash person. If Sun Ce's hot blood challenged Lu Bu by himself, the result will be Sun Ce’s death. So Zhou Yu quickly ordered Taishi Ci to assist Sun Ce with hopes that they will be able to match Lu Bu's strength.

With Jiang Qin in grave danger and Taishi Ci wanting to try that veteran's skill, Taishi Ci squeezed his horse and rushed toward them.

“Ziyi, you are here!!!” Jiang Qin's face although already destroyed emitted a happy expression. He knows that Taishi Ci's prowess is a bit higher than his elder brother, with Taishi Ci’s help to rescue him, he will have chance to retreat.

“Clang!!!” Twin halberds are crossing with Huang Zhong's golden shadow. His slash being halted made Huang Zhong really stunned. Only then did Huang Zhong know that another general has interrupted his slash and saw Jiang Qin is already moving away from Huang Zhong and the one who intercepted his slash is the white-armored general.

“What is your name, kid?!” Huang Zhong asked.

“I am Taishi Ci from Donglai!” Taishi Ci replied to Huang Zhong while trying to pressure Huang Zhong with his twin halberds. This Taishi Ci is using two ji-halberds with the same design as Lu Bu's original Sky Piercer with the crescent-shaped blade on the middle of the blade and with roughly the same weight around 40 catties and the wielder of this kind of weapon is a person whose strength at least super-class general who is able to breakthrough enemy lines easily.

TL: 1 catty = 0.6 kg

TL: Taishi Ci is using twin mace in Dynasty Warriors.

Using a ji-halberd will require a certain skill in wushu as ji-halberd's characteristic is to be used by people with overwhelming power.

And the most famous person with overwhelming power currently is only Lu Bu who wield the Sky Piercer and currently was changed into the Poseidon Halberd. And because at that time only Lu Bu is the one who wielded the halberd PROPERLY, so Cao Cao immediately recognized the Sky Piercer when it was thrown down by Song Xian.

In Lu Bu’s army, there is also another person who is adept in using ji-halberd and that is Lu Lingqi.

Now, those twin halberds and Huang Zhong’s gold curved dao met with each other and after clashing with each other they just silent as if

stuck together by glue, each side pushing trying to pressure the other with arm strength alone. A pinnacle of super-class general and a youngster whose strength is in super-class is now fighting with each other.

During clashing and deflecting, they reached a stalemate. But Taishi Ci has two weapons, one on each hand, so his right hand is swinging toward Huang Zhong's face while his left hand is holding Huang Zhong's strike.

“Hrm?!” Huang Zhong's instinct felt danger so subconsciously he dodged that slash.

“Hng!!!” That right halberd managed to wound Huang Zhong's left cheek. The mighty Huang Zhong has been injured.

“HAAAHHHHH!!!!” Huang Zhong quickly made a down-slash movement in order to take down Taishi Ci. He truly has underestimated this young man and that expression can be seen from Huang Zhong's face now.

"Taishi grasps the crossed spears in a dignified way. Taishi Ci also made a frowned face because this veteran's slash is really hurt, he really ran into an enemy who is much more powerful than him. When he crossed slash once again, Taishi Ci asked “Are you Lu Bu?!”

Huang Zhong replied “That is Milord's name!”

“WHAT?!” Taishi Ci stunned. The reason that Taishi Ci was ordered back by Zhou Yu is because he was assigned to fight Lu Bu and ordered Taishi

Ci to forbid Sun Ce from fighting Lu Bu.

Taishi Ci already saw that Jiang Qin is not this veteran's match. He hoped that this veteran is Lu Bu but who would have expected that this veteran is Lu Bu's subordinate. Taishi Ci ponders why a great general like this is willing to be under other people? Taishi Ci himself is one of the living proof as one of great general. Taishi Ci only submitted under Liu Yao's rule because Taishi Ci's mother owed Liu Yao a big favor. And when Taishi Ci dueled Sun Ce, he also still did not want to surrender under him. Only after Taishi Ci recognized that Sun Ce is more superior to him was he willing to surrender and work under him.

Taishi Ci then screamed “Gongyi, return to our HQ, QUICK!!!! LEAVE HIM TO ME!!!” Taishi Ci saw that Jiang Qin already in a very bad state similar to Su Fei, being cut to little pieces by Huang Zhong.

“Yes, Ziyi, be careful!!!” Jiang Qin knows that he is not a match for this veteran. If he remains here, there is only death waiting for him.

“Oh, want to escape, huh? THERE IS NO ESCAPE FOR YOU!!!” Huang Zhong exclaimed angrily. He will not allow Jiang Qin to leave alive. Even without Su Fei’s suffering, his little lord has ordered his death. In any case, Jiang Qin will not be able to leave here alive.

Huang Zhong squeezed his warhorse, but at the same moment, Taishi Ci thrusted his twin halberds toward him. “FUCK OFF!!!” Huang Zhong shouted angrily. This young man is not his match, but every second he is stalled by him, Jiang Qin will manage to escape.

“You will not pass even a single step from here!!!” Taishi Ci who has just

thrusted his twin halberds was deflected by Huang Zhong and made both of his hands shiver, but he still able to block Huang Zhong.

"Dammit!!!" Huang Zhong also knows that Taishi Ci will halt Huang Zhong to stop himself from pursuing Jiang Qin, even at the cost of his life.

Suddenly in Huang Zhong's angry mind, he remembered one thing. Earlier Jiang Qin insulted his little lord when he cut down Zhou Tai's head and because of the big reaction that Jiang Qin had, that Zhou Tai must be his elder brother. Then Huang Zhong roared loudly "Jiang Qin!!! I am the one who kill your older brother Zhou Tai!!!" Huang Zhong now gambling, hoping that Jiang Qin will turn his steed toward him again.

"The hell?!" Zhou Tai dead? When?" Taishi Ci is pondering in his mind and that revelation made him lose his strength a little. Taishi Ci, Zhou Tai and Sun Ce are the only trio in Jiangdong Army who have super-class strength. Although Jiang Qin himself has now managed to breakthrough to super-class strength, it is only at the preliminary level and can be beheaded by Taishi Ci easily.

Zhou Tai is different than all of them. Although his strength is lower than Sun Ce and Taishi Ci, once hes gone berserk, Sun Ce and Taishi Ci will definitely avoid him. But this veteran said, he is dead.

Then again, when he looked at Jiang Qin's wounds, Taishi Ci is forced to believe that Zhou Tai really died. Those small wounds by cutting, although not fatal but it is still Jiang Qin's flesh that was cut down little by little, making his appearance right now looked like a demon from hell. And what makes Taishi Ci even more confused and surprised, is that Huang Zhong used that golden curved dao, to cleanly slice Jiang Qin.

The thought was really terrifying.

He knows that this Jiang Qin is a package of merit. Besides he can take revenge for Su Fei, Jiang Qin's death can be used to rouse their own morale and demoralized the opponent. But, who had ever expected that this Taishi Ci quickly rushed from the line and blocked his merit for revenge. Now, he can only kill this Taishi Ci first.

But there is a merit to Huang Zhong's roar just now as Jiang Qin suddenly stop his horse and said "WHAT DID YOU SAY?!" Huang Zhong who has prepared to kill Taishi Ci, suddenly got a big surprise.

"Not good!!!" Taishi Ci's heart become uneasy. Because of Huang Zhong's provocation, Jiang Qin quickly redirected his horse toward Huang Zhong.

"HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!!! IT IS I THAT KILLED YOUR BROTHER ZHOU TAI!!! IT IS I, WHO DESTROYED HIS ARMS AND LEGS!!!! IT IS I, WHO HUNG HIS HEAD ON WANCHENG CITY TOWER!!! IT... IS... I, WHO CHOPPED YOUR BROTHERS BODY INTO A MEATLOAF!!! WASN"T THAT GOOD OF ME, EH?!" Huang Zhong provoked Jiang Qin as much as possible. So, he will not have the thought to escape.

"I'LL KILL YOU!!!!" Jiang Qin's eyes is bloodshot full of killing intent. He must take Huang Zhong's head, it didn't matter that his bleeding had not stopped, nor did it matter that he is not Huang Zhong's match.

"GONGYI, RETURN!!!!" Sun Ce shouted again, but Jiang Qin did not hear it and even accelerate his warhorse. In front of him, Zhou Tais figure started to manifest. They had been together since their days as pirates

even when they joined Yuan Shu's army and finally with their current lord. If not for Zhou Tai who had always helped him, Jiang Qin may already have died many times. 10% of Zhou Tai's scars were because he tried to save Jiang Qin. Right now, Jiang Qin is dashing toward Huang Zhong with tears in his eyes and exclaimed "Big bro, I found him!!! I found your murderer and now I am going to kill him!!!"

"DAMMIT, GONGYI!!!" Sun Ce hit his warhorse. He knows Jiang Qin has become jaded, numb to all logic and pain. So in order to save Jiang Qin, Sun Ce must quickly act.

"MILORD, DON'T!!!!" Lu Su yelled. Sun Ce is the boss of Jiangdong's army, not a general. He should not let himself to go, instead he should ask the army to rescue Jiang Qin. But Lu Su is also afraid to let the army attack, because they may injure his lord.

"ALL ARMY STANDBY!!!" Sun Ce roared his order. He will not let Jiang Qin die in front of him, but he is also eager to meet this veteran called Huang Zhong.

Lu Su finally understood Chen Gong's feeling. Sometimes, a mighty lord is not a good one to follow.

Chapter 150 - Three Heroes VS Huang Zhong (2)

“HUANG ZHONG, GIVE YOUR LIFE TO MY BROTHER!!!!” Jiang Qin screamed. Jiang Qin’s looked as if he was a ghost from hell. Every part of his body had parts chopped off by Huang Zhong.

Jiang Qin suddenly jumped off from his warhorse in order slash down toward Huang Zhong. Jiang Qin’s heart is oozing killing intent and anger, now he needed to be released at the body of this old fart.

“I will send you to your brother!!!” Huang Zhong said coldly while grinning and gestured to prepare to jump also. A jumping down-slash indeed will help to increase your attack due to gravity, but if your slash is countered by a master, you will not be able to change the direction of your fall. That kind of flaw will definitely be taken advantage of by a master and Huang Zhong is that kind of master.

“GONGYI!!!! WATCH OUT!!!” Taishi Ci quickly jumped to block Huang Zhong. If not, Jiang Qin will be cut into two by Huang Zhong.

But when Taishi Ci jumped, he kind of regretted for acting too rashly, because Huang Zhong did not jump at all. With this eyesore jumping, then the hindrance is gone to cut down Jiang Qin.

Jiang Qin who had jumped into the air will fall down anytime. Since Jiang Qin jumped first, Huang Zhong just sat down on his warhorse, waiting to for the trap to spring and kill him.

“SHAAAA!!!!” Jiang Qin’s eyes are bloodshot full of killing intent and

hatred surrounding his body. In his eyes, there is only Huang Zhong, even if Huang Zhong disappeared, he will go to the ends of the earth to find him.

“GO DIE!!!” Huang Zhong moved his golden curved dao for kill. This time Taishi Ci is unable to hold Huang Zhong’s assault anymore and quickly closed his eyes in order not to see Jiang Qin killed. Although their sentiment is not as big as Jiang Qin with Zhou Tai, they are comrades who served under one lord.

“SHAAAA!!!!!” Jiang Qin also knows that he will die under Huang Zhong’s strike this time, but he cannot retreat. He must get revenge for Zhou Tai, even if his own broadsword only brought slight injury to Huang Zhong’s finger.

“Damn it!!!” Huang Zhong’s instinct suddenly felt big danger from his flank, so subconsciously Huang Zhong's curved dao changed the angle of his strike

"Poof! “Whiz!!!”

Two sounds were simultaneously heard. The “Poof” is the sound of blood splashing. Although Huang Zhong quickly changed the angle, that slash got Jiang Qin’s left hand. His slash is so clean that the severed blood vessel did not spurt out blood immediately.

And the “Whiz” sound is from a long spear that coming from his flank. Its speed is extremely fast and was directed toward Huang Zhong’s chest. A moment ago, if Huang Zhong did not change his angle and keep his focus toward Jiang Qin, at that time, Jiang Qin will die and Huang Zhong

would have received a mortal wound.

"AAARRRRGGGGHHHHH!!!!!" The extreme pain made Jiang Qin's sanity return. He truly discovered that just now, he had one foot already stepping in hell and he quickly jumped to the side of that spear owner. That spear owner quickly withdrew his spear and started to attack Huang Zhong again with intensity.

That guy is Sun Ce, Sun Bofu! Jiangdong's army's boss. This guy's age and Huang Zhong's little lord's age is similar but he already had domain in Jiangdong.

Some historians said if Sun Ce managed to live, there will be no Three Kingdoms. If Sun Ce is alive, when Cao Cao battled Yuan Shao in Guandu, he would have lost his Yu Province. When he got the news of that, he will quickly retreated to Xu Du and after that, he would have died by a pincer attack initiated by Yuan Shao and Sun Ce.

Big-eared Liu Bei will lose his footing altogether in Yu Province and disappear from history. And with that there will never be an event when he borrowed Jing Province from Liu Qi and also there will never be an event where he conquered Yi Province and proclaimed himself as Shu-Han Emperor.

That is because Jing Province and Yi Province will not be able to withstand The Little Conqueror's assault. With Jing Province, Yi Province, Yu Province and whole of Yang Province under his control, Sun Ce will be able to force Old Cao to submit under his rule.

Why that will happen? Because Sun Ce, the Jiangdong's Little

Conqueror is too powerful in all aspects. Not only does he have strength similar to Lu Bu, he also he is much younger than Lu Bu and much smarter than Lu Bu. Those factors alone made Sun Ce a promising lord.

During the battle of Chibi. When Cao Cao led his army to Jiangdong, most of Sun Quan's subordinates urged Sun Quan to surrender, because they feared Cao Cao's rumored 830,000 troops. Similarly, Cao Cao also feared a living Sun Ce but Guo Jia's assessment was that Sun Ce was only half qualified to be called as Cao Cao's enemy, along with Liu Bei.

When Sun Ce died, Cao Cao was very relieved. Only after that did Cao Cao quickly prepare to do battle in Guandu.

And that promising lord actually brandished his own weapon to attack Huang Zhong. Regarding the weapon that Sun Ce used, it was spear. It is very good and elegant, just like the two-edged sword.

In the Three Kingdoms age, there are many people who are proficient with spears. Those people who have reached the pinnacle in spear skills are Zhang Ren, Zhang Xiu and Zhao Yun and all three of them studied under tutelage of great spear master Tong Yuan. Also regarding strength, Zhang Ren and Zhang Xiu both only reached first-class generals and Zhao Yun himself is the pinnacle of first-class. With that all three of them unleashed their spear skill in order to assist in pacifying this times of war.

The next one is Chen Dao. This guy's good point is overshadowed by Zhao Yun and was eve cut out from Romance of the Three Kingdoms novel by Luo Guanzhong.

Chen Dao's strength is actually more or less the same as Zhao Yun. If he

was a waste, he would not be have been appointed by Liu Bei as the leader of White-Feathered soldiers and at that point, the counterpart of Chen Dao in Lu Bu’s army would be Gao Shun.

Gao Shun’s strength is only a second-class general but he is able to train his soldiers. With his regiment, the Formation Breaker did not fear any opponent.

With that kind of skill, one also needed special weapon. Zhao Yun’s spear is the Dragon Spear while Sun Ce’s spear is called The Spear of The Conqueror. One of the reason that Sun Ce was called Jiangdong’s Little Conqueror is because of him using The Spear of The Conqueror.

The Spear of the Conqueror full name is The Spear of the Conqueror of Western Chu. This spear was once belonged to Western Chu’s Conqueror Xiang Yu and was lost when he committed suicide after losing to Liu Bang. Somehow, the Sun clan’s ancestor found it again and made it the heirloom of the Sun clan and was now used by Sun Ce.

This entire spear length is about 4 meters and was very heavy. Its weight is about 90 jin and the entire body was made of pure iron and the spear head was made of pure steel.

Taishi Ci has tasted Sun Ce's skill with this spear, now it is Huang Zhong's turn.

The Gold curved dao currently is deflecting The Conqueror's Spear. Huang Zhong's hand felt almost destroyed. His gold curved dao's weight is 72 jin and also it is much shorter than the spear, only having the length of long sword.

“I must close the distance!!!” Huang Zhong quickly decided that. He currently cannot win fighting Sun Ce from a distance, so he can only do close quarters combat with him. Only with close quarter, can Huang Zhong show his superiority in combat over Sun Ce.

Huang Zhong quickly squeezed his warhorse and quickly dashed toward Sun Ce. This horse also responded to Huang Zhong's gesture and complied with his rider.

Sun Ce also knows Huang Zhong's idea and he increased the velocity of his thrust. If he got near him, then it is his loss.

“Clang!!!” Within few seconds, The Conqueror's Spear and golden curved dao had been clashing more than ten times with Huang Zhong quickly getting closer and closer toward Sun Ce. Now Sun Ce is unable to show off the full potential of his spear but Huang Zhong is able to attack Sun Ce with his full potential.

“HAAAA!!!!” Huang Zhong quickly slashed toward Sun Ce. Due to his slash speed being very fast, it left a trail of gold like dragon's shadow. This is the “inner soul” of the golden curved dao. This golden curved dao's full name is Curved Dao of Gold Dragon which is Huang's family heirloom and the mark of the gold dragon can only appear after Huang Zhong managed to build up his strength to the pinnacle of super-class generals.

“Damn, he is very fast!!!” Sun Ce is stunned. This veteran is truly strong. No wonder Jiang Qin lost one of his arms and even Taishi Ci unable to fight with him.

But Sun Ce's skill with this spear has reached the top level. Indeed a spear is best used at a distance but if you think you can best Sun Ce in close quarters, then it is completely wrong. During Taishi Ci's battle with Sun Ce, he also had the same idea as Huang Zhong, but he lost and almost lost his life. During that time also, Sun Ce offered his hand of friendship to Taishi Ci and became his trusted friend.

“HMPH!!!” Sun Ce humphed coldly and started to swing his spear as if it is short-range club and screamed “HAAAAAHHHH!!!!”

His speed is extremely fast and can be compared to Huang Zhong's strikes and also the momentum is really good, if one hit managed to hit any part of the body, it will destroy your bones and if it hit a vital part, you will die instantly.

“Damn, this is really bad!!!” Huang Zhong's heart felt very bad. Because when Huang Zhong did close quarters with Sun Ce, Taishi Ci also joined into fray. Both of their strength at least reached super-class and even though Huang Zhong has reached the pinnacle of super-class generals, it is really hard fighting them at the same time, as both of them are targeting his vital points and if one of them managed to get a clean hit on Huang Zhong, the result is a mortal wound.

Jiang Qin, looking at Huang Zhong being cornered quickly brandished his broadsword and attack him together with Sun Ce and Taishi Ci.

They had determined that this Huang Zhong is too terrible and must die today.

Chapter 151 - Oxybeles Prototype Launched!!!!

“Old General Huang!!!” Liu Mang screamed while his eyes almost fall off of its socket. Huang Zhong was attacked by three people simultaneously and attacking him like merry-go-round. Two of them are superclass generals and the other, although he already lost an arm, cannot be underestimated.

Right now, Liu Mang did not have any other reinforcements. Liu Kai and Liu Neng, both of them are scholars, they definitely will not count on them. Cheng Yu was dispatched by Liu Mang to request for reinforcements. The only one that can fight is Lu Lingqi. If he dispatched Lu Lingqi, he will be a laughing stock of this nation which Liu Mang will prevent at all costs. Also during Zhou Tai, her hips was slashed by Zhou Tai, it was enough to almost count as a deep wound. With that, Liu Mang would rather die than to make his beloved Ling'er take action again.

As for Huang Xu, he also wanted to save his father but currently the distance is too far and his long bow will not be able to cover that much distance.

“URGH!!!!” Huang Zhong's brow was pressed to its maximum. He has nowhere to go, one side has Jiang Qin. Jiang Qin truly hates Huang Zhong to the bone. Huang Zhong did not only kill his brother, but also destroyed his appendages and even COOKED his brother's body. So, now Jiang Qin will gladly give his life for Huang Zhong to die.

The other side has Taishi Ci, his twin halberds is just like a two-headed snake which can bite Huang Zhong at any time.

The other side has Sun Ce with The Conqueror Spear. This guy is too dangerous, with one swing of that spear, his waist can be destroyed.

Huang Zhong gnashed his teeth. He was overconfident, he oversaw the other secret of The Conqueror Spear. If only Sun Ce was his only opponent, Huang Zhong did not fear anything and can claim victory. But now, he is besieged by three people. A minor mistake will paid with his life.

“FINE THEN, I'LL TAKE ONE OF YOU DOWN WITH ME!!!” Huang Zhong gotten angry. These three youngsters are not a match for him in a one on one battle. Huang Zhong has become really determined to kill Sun Ce and thought “Oh, Sun Ce!!! Today this old man will die, but you will accompany me to hell together!!!” He also thought “At least this is my final contribution and my final offering to the little lord for rescuing my son Xu also this Sun Ce army will become headless and an easy prey for my little lord!!!”

Sun Ce also felt that killing intent and made his fine hair standing but he calmed down immediately. He is the successor of the Western Chu Conqueror Xiang Yu. Xiang Yu is a prideful man that will not give up until the last breath. In the past, Xiang Yu was cornered to a location near Wu River by Liu Bang. So, all of Jiangdong's people now are Chu's descendants.

At that time, when Xiang Yu was cornered by Liu Bang, he screamed to the sky “None can kill this Conqueror from Chu, but myself” and slit his throat. Xiang Yu has lost hope for retaliating Liu Bang back and he did not have face to return to his hometown again.

“SHAAA!!!!” Sun Ce also quickly retaliated and he thought “Oh, want this Sun Ce dead? Sun Ce will kill you first!!!”

“COME ON THEN!!!” Huang Zhong invite his death but before that he bellowed “Little lord, This Huang Zhong leaves Xu to you!!!” Huang Zhong's most worried matter is Huang Xu. Huang Xu is Huang Zhong's everything. As long as Huang Xu is alive, Huang Zhong can become anyone's dog, can become Liu Pan's and Huang Zu's and even Huang She's dog and was willing to work himself to death in order to find a good doctor and material for Huang Xu's medicine.

Now that burden is relieved from Huang Zhong's shoulder. Liu Mang brought medicine for Huang Xu. Also during that unsuccessful escape from Huangzhou city, Huang Xu told Huang Zhong that it is very good to follow Liu Mang and he is cured thanks to Liu Mang's medicine therefore Huang Zhong proclaimed that Liu Mang is his little lord and Lu Bu is his lord.

“Old Man Huang, I WILL NOT ALLOW YOU TO DIE!!! I LEAVE HUANG XU TO YOU AND ONLY YOU!!!!” Liu Mang responded to Huang Zhong's bellow.

“Honorable Father, YOU STILL NEED TO LIVE, YOU HAVE YET TAUGHT THIS XU, YOUR WUSHU SKILLS!!!” Huang Xu also bellowed.

Liu Mang quickly remembered the secret weapon he built and ordered “Huang Xu, target Sun Ce or Taishi Ci, just aim and pull the trigger!!!” Huang Xu responded “Yes, little lord!!!”

“WENG!!!” That sound was made when Huang Xu pulled the trigger. That sound was not the sound of an arrow being shot but instead was a thundering sound.

“What the hell is that?!” Sun Ce pondered. A jet-black arrow-like shadow was shot from city wall. Its speed is truly fast and was now closing into the duel location.

“What the hell is that?!” Taishi Ci stopped his assault toward Huang Zhong. If he continued to assault Huang Zhong, he knows he will not be able to live and with that jet-black arrow flying toward them, it is certain death waiting for Taishi Ci. Sun Ce also stopped his assault and changed into passive defense.

Only Jiang Qin who did not care about the impending crisis. As long as he can kill this old brute, it is worth it.

“Good, a chance!!!” Huang Zhong who has just realized that he is able to survive this battle, quickly swing his curved dao toward Jiang Qin's broadsword.

“Clang!!!” Jiang Qin's broadsword was split into two. Although Jiang Qin is very angry, he is unable to do anything toward Huang Zhong. Right now, Jiang Qin understood profoundly the feeling of powerlessness that Liu Mang felt from all of his battles.

“WENG!!!!” That jet-black form was getting nearer and nearer. Taishi Ci and Sun Ce quickly redirected their horse in order to escape, only Jiang Qin is still not responding to that crisis.

“GONGYI, BE CAREFUL!!!!” Taishi Ci quickly threw one of his halberd toward that shadow. That did not stop the shadow but merely change the angle. But that angle changing rescued Jiang Qin's life. That shadow now avoid penetrating his right chest but killed his warhorse.

His warhorse who have been frightened by that black shadow suddenly rise its leg and the jet-black shadow pierce his head and had the effect of a watermelon being shot by a shotgun, but that did not stop the penetrating power of this jet-black shadow.

Although it pierced a different thing, the shadow’s speed did not recede even a bit, but finally it allowed Sun Ce see this thing. That thing is a log that was used as arrow. Although currently, there is no tip, it did not reduce its strength at all. Once this thing has a tip, no one can stop this thing once launched and now still flying toward Sun Ce.

“Huh, ballista?!” Sun Ce murmured to himself. Sun Ce had heard a story about ballista’s from Sun Jian when they had a conference in order to repel invaders. This type of thing will only appear in the frontier region in Bing Province or You Province. This is used to destroy enemies' morale rather than doing mass killings. This things range is 1,000 steps. One shot can kill multiple men, made great shield and heavy armor like paper and can kill mighty generals in an instant.

This thing was called “Satan” by invaders. Invaders' troops mainly consists of cavalries and this thing can made them look like a shish kabob along with 20 of their comrades and horses. With that, you will not die immediately, but instead make you cry loudly while waiting for death.

Therefore with ballista in the city, invaders did not dare to attack rashly.

However, ballista's had a big drawback, that it is reloading time. The ballista also was called 8-cows bow, it means it need at least 8 cows to pull the strings and at least 100 people to pull the strings and can only fire one arrow at a time and did not have any accuracy at all.

This thing can only use to frighten but cannot be used in actual combat. Therefore in the southern area of Yellow River, there is no such thing as ballistae.

Now, on Wancheng city, there is a ballista installed and was shot on them. How can that not make Sun Ce afraid and stunned?

Sun Ce will not use his prized Conqueror Spear, because it is not this arrow's opponent. Now to evade this arrow Sun Ce must jumped off his warhorse but he is not willing to throw this warhorse away and the next scene is very gory.

"Poof!!!" The great arrow penetrated his warhorse. This horse is a wild horse that he tamed by himself and has the characteristics like the Red Hare. This horse is so wild that when he was initially captured, in order to silence his wild side, he was put in a stable filled with 20 other tamed good horses. But who ever expected that this wild horse kicked and killed 15 of the horses and the remaining 5 horses were so traumatized by that event that they become docile.

When Sun Ce saw this wild horse, he took immediate liking to him and quickly tried to tame him. When it managed to break through the stable, Sun Ce quickly chased after it until it was exhausted. Sun Ce thought it was already tired and want to give up but the horse quickly retaliated

with his kick until Sun Ce brandished his Conqueror Spear. Not until after that horse saw Sun Ce with the Conqueror Spear did it suddenly become docile and kneel in front of Sun Ce.

After that, when he went to pacify Jiangdong, he always used this horse with him and gave him the name “Oolong”.

This Oolong understood that his master will be in grave danger if he stayed on his back, suddenly he raised his front legs and shook his body so Sun Ce will fall down, therefore sparing him his fate.

Sun Ce also refused to dismount, disregarding his and Gongjin's agreement, disregarding that he still had to fulfill his late father's will, disregarding that he still had mother and sister to support.

Finally Sun Ce had fallen down from his horse but Oolong still stayed on its posture, unmoved, ready to accept the fate.

“Poof!!!” The arrow stabbed Oolong's abdomen with no effort at all, but still unable to slow down the arrows velocity and even carried Oolong's internal organs.

“Oolong!!!” Sun Ce's eyes are tearful and quickly brandished his Conqueror Spear to retaliate back this arrow who just killed his partner.

But his effort proved to be fruitless, as the Conqueror Spear was unable to hold the momentum of this arrow and was split into two; his right side being scarred by this arrow.

Chapter 152 - The Siege Begins

“Clang!!!” Finally the great arrow stopped and raised dust.

“Milord!!!” When the arrow missed Jiang Qin due to Taishi Ci's intervention, that arrow changed its direction toward Sun Ce. That great arrow's momentum is too great and no man can prevent that.

Sun Ce has fallen down, both of his feet are on the ground and bleeding from his right side and both of his arms each on its side still attached to Sun Ce, but his Conqueror Spear was split into two.

“Milord!!!” Taishi Ci truly stunned. Sun Ce just maintained that posture while bleeding, this appearance really too gory.

“Cough, cough!!!” When Sun Ce coughed, Taishi Ci's heart is eased a little but suddenly “POOF!!!” Sun Ce spit out blood from his mouth. He is heavily injured.

“ALL ARMY ATTACK, RESCUE MILORD!!!” Lu Su also became afraid and flustered and quickly signaled all army to charge. Where he stood, the view is very clear and he is able to see when that ballista launch the great arrow. That huge momentum made Lu Su tremble very much, if that arrow comes one more round, his lord will die.

Another shot? Liu Mang also wanted to shoot one more round and kill Sun Ce directly and bring Jiangdong into a standstill, but alas, the bowstring is broken. This is the prototype of the oxybeles, it can only

shoot one arrow. To launch again, they must install the bowstring and asked 100 people to pull the bowstring.

Moreover the ballista also did not have good accuracy but Liu Mang's crossbow was able to shoot with this much precision because the person who shot it is Huang Xu. Only a person with good archery skill can shoot all target with ballista.

100,000 troops finally moved and Liu Mang also quickly responded. Front door of Wancheng city quickly opened to give retreat to 2,000 of Urban Army along with Huang Zhong. Actually Huang Zhong did not want to leave Jiang Qin and Sun Ce but those 100,000 troops have moved and one super-general cannot make a difference at all against sheer numbers.

Liu Mang bellowed “All forces return to the city!!!” All 2,000 troops one by one entered the city and after every single one already entered, they raised Wancheng city's drawbridge and closed the gate.

“SHA, SHA, SHA, SHA, SHA!!!!!” 100,000 troops came one after another, they are all advancing with no interruption. Wancheng city's moat cannot even kept them off. In Sun Ce army's hand there are some cloth sack, inside them is sand in order to absorb the water, some of them set the ladder and put a plank in the moat.

The moat's depth is about 7-8 meters but is unable to prevent these soldiers from attacking the city by scale the ladder. The most brutal siege warfare is about to start.

“STEADY, STEADY!!!!” Liu Mang ordered. He is the current master of

Wancheng city, his every movement and action decided the future of this Wancheng city, decided the safety of the Liu private soldiers and it decided the Liu clan's fate as their soldiers are not elites unlike the Zhou.

Regarding that issue, actually it happened during the reign of Emperor Ling of Han. When he was the emperor, he started to limit the influence of his own clan, starting with the Liu clan of Wancheng city.

They were prohibited to form their own elites, including the two Imperial Uncles Liu Biao and Liu Zhang. They can only maintain their own existence but fortunately all of them secretly gathered their own private soldiers although not elites.

Right now, the number of Sun Ce's army who crossed the moat had already reached 3,000 troops.

"RAISE THE BOWS!!!" Liu Mang shouted loudly. The arms of these Liu private soldiers are shivering, they have not experienced this kind of battle before. So Liu Mang needed to raise their morale by shouting loudly, otherwise they would be just waiting for death. As long as they can survive this siege warfare, they will mature as a soldiers, all fear will be stripped and all that will be left are bloodthirsty healthy veterans.

"SHOOT!!!!" Liu Mang ordered all of his subordinates to do volley. This tactic is used because the number of the enemies is a lot, one did not need to aim.

"AAAAHHHHHHH!!!!" On the ladder and on the moat, pitiful sounds of death were screamed. But that did not stopped Sun Ce's army's attack. They scaled the ladder one by one, when one died another one replaced

him.

“Whiz, Whiz, Whiz!!!” Sun Ce’s army also started to counterattack. Under the city, there is a neat formation consisting of archers. Although Lu Bu’s army had the advantage of terrain, they are small in number while the enemy was the complete opposite.

“AAAHHHHHH!!!!” Lu Bu army's soldier started to fall one by one but only those who are too close to the city wall.

With blood flowing inside Wancheng city, those Liu clan's private soldiers knew that it is dead end. Fighting will cause death, surrendering will also cause death, therefore they roused their fighting spirit and kept shooting at those who are climbing the wall.

“Brothers, hold your shield and sword. RUSH WITH ME!!!” Liu Mang quickly grabbed his great shield and axe. He is the commander so he must go up to the front, he must set an example, and otherwise these soldiers will be afraid and will retreat. When Liu Mang got up, all of the soldiers also followed him to rush with him.

“We absolutely cannot let them occupy the tower!!!” Liu Mang ordered. Once Sun Ce’s army managed to occupy the tower, all of their defensive organization will crumble and the inner city will be in danger and the defense of inner city is inferior compared to outer city.

“SHAAAA!!!!!” The bloody struggle started. Lu Bu’s army troops was killing those of Sun Ce’s army who managed to climb up to city wall and Sun Ce’s army were killing those of Lu Bu’s army by dragging them after they were stabbed.

Both sides are killing each other in order to survive. Blood and flesh were dancing in the air.

Chapter 153 - The Danyang Soldiers Unleashed!!! (1)

“Milord!!!” Taishi Ci wanted to raise Sun Ce's body but was prevented by him. Sun Ce was heavily injured, the right side of his body was still bleeding so he stayed at that posture. Perhaps a part of Conqueror Spear was lodged into him and currently was unable to be removed.

“Ziyi, go bring Jiang Qin to the army medic!!!” Sun Ce just casually said.

“But!!!” Taishi Ci also wanted to carry Sun Ce to the medic camp to be treated but was prevented by Sun Ce again. Taishi Ci was truly frozen when looking at Sun Ce's condition, he was bleeding profusely at his right side, and his face is pale with the signs of anemia; truly a sight of horror.

“Bring Gongyi first to the medic camp!!!” Sun Ce had voiced his order.

“General Ziyi, please go back first, leave Milord to me!” Lu Su also hit his horse to get near Sun Ce. The army has attacked the city. When the army attacked a city, naturally it will need commander to lead. Lu Su do not care about those casualties, because they consists of noble soldiers that previously had violated the military law during the attack the on naval HQ, so Lu Su pushed them to fight in order to pay for the previous violation. And now they are fighting for merit. As long as they can overcome Wancheng city, the merit will be very big and maybe they will get a big portion of Lujiang Prefecture.

However, the tax for war are dead people and Lu Bu’s army is not greenhorns as they also want merit for themselves! Lu Bu’s army currently consists of saplings and veterans and when the veteran dies, the sapling will mature and replace that veteran.

“Yes!” Taishi Ci can only hold his fist and go to the medic. Sun Ce also straddled slowly toward Oolong. The corpse is already icy cold. Sun Ce's hand is gently stroking Oolong's fur.

Oolong was Sun Ce's favorite warhorse. Lu Su knows that intimately. This Oolong was fed and had his stable clean from dungs everyday by Sun Ce. Sun Ce is the boss of Jiangdong, cleaning after a horse like a servant daily, no one knew why, but when Sun Ce did that his heart was at ease and was able to think clearly. Only when this old buddy of his is happy, can Sun Ce return to his place.

But now Sun Ce is stroking Oolong like Oolong had not yet taken bath, evidently he is in denial.

“Milord!!! Milord!!!” Lu Su is calling Sun Ce, but Sun Ce did not pay any attention to his calling and kept inside his “private paradise”.

“Milord!!! Oolong has died!!!” Lu Su quickly said that in order to return Sun Ce to cruel reality.

“DIED?!” Sun Ce stunned and started to talk himself slowly “Dead? Hahaha!!! Dead? How can Oolong die?!” Sun Ce who is still in his “private paradise” kept in denial while covered in Oolong's blood.

“Sun Ce, Sun Bofu. If Oolong did not die, then whose blood is in your hand?! If Oolong did not died, how can you still be alive?!” Lu Su really did not think that this lord is very depressed. This is not Sun Ce and not Jiangdong's Little Conqueror.

“HAHAHAHAHAHA, DEAD, DEAD?!” Sun Ce stood up shakily and bellowed “OOLONG DIED!!! DA QIAO DIED!!! ZHOU TAI DIED!!!! JIANG QIN LOST AN ARM!!!! LUJIANG IS LOST!!!!! LU BU'S ARMY, YOUR FAULT IS UNFORGIVABLE!!!”

“LU BU, LU FENGXIAN!!! THIS SUN CE AND YOU ARE MORTAL ENEMIES FROM NOW ON!!!” His Conqueror Spear is broken. The original four meters was cut down by ballista into two meters. Oolong died, but the battle now changed into siege warfare, therefore there is no need for a warhorse.

“Milord, don't!!!” Lu Su not yet finished his words but Sun Ce is now running toward Wancheng city.

“AIYAH!!!” Lu Su stomps his foot. He is a scholar, although he has done the 6 arts, his strength is not adequate to help Sun Ce. If he also rushes at that time, one will not know that if it is Sun Ce protecting him or him protecting Sun Ce.

“Messenger, go to the main camp. Order General Chen Wu and General Dong Xi to accompany Milord to attack the city, prioritize on Milord's safety!” Lu Su's plan is crumbling like a house of cards. His plan to make Lu Bu’s army as borrowed knife to kill those private soldiers had failed and now he can only dispatch elites.

“Yes!!!” The messenger quickly went to relay the order. Although those soldiers had more than 100,000 troops they are not elites at all. Their height and weight was not a standard for soldiers at that time. They only wore light armor with more leather than iron. No discipline at all and

there are people who are talking to each other care freely as if they are in a teahouse.

But regarding elites, in Jiangdong's army there is another elite infantry that has the face and aura the same as Sun Ce, just like tiger wanting to eat people.

They are the Danyang soldiers! Jiangdong's own Danyang soldiers. Danyang region was a very rich region and these people have sworn to defend that region to death. They are rebellious and very combative people who can only talk with their fist. Danyang soldiers during peace were always a pain in the ass for officials. They were also very social people within their tribe. If you attack one Danyang person, the next day, you will be visited by 100 of his brothers related or not.

Sometimes, that fight escalated into thousand people fighting and when that happens, the government troops did not dare to break the fight and can only close up each county hoping that it did not escalate to them sieging the nearby county.

These Danyang natives and soldiers are rebellious by nature. They are the ones who walks through the path of martial arts just like Ip-Man and Wong Fei-Hung of Foshan. Even now, the martial arts from Danyang region is still preserved to this day.

Tao Qian's hometown is Danyang. Don't underestimate this old Tao Qian. Although Old Tao urged Liu Bei in order to protect his inheritance in Xu Province, he had been hit by Old Cao twice and neither those assaults manage to take him down. During his begging to Old Cao in Pengcheng county, it is because his descendants were all useless people and unable to receive his inheritance. During his youth, Tao Qian was a

strong man and helped to quell Beigong Boyu and the Han Sui Rebellion. He also fought at the crusade against Dong Zhuo.

Afterwards, when he was sealed as the Governor of Xu Province, Xu Province was still engulfed in war by the Yellow Turban Rebellion. Tao Qian quickly took 3,000 troops from his Danyang. They had not yet undergone training for battle, but we're able to quell the Yellow Turbans by themselves alone.

After quelling the Yellow Turban, Old Tao quickly took root in Xu Province and assigned his Danyang soldiers to guard Xu Province. 30,000 troops were assigned to guarantee Xu Province's safety and finally Cao Cao hit Xu Province after Cao Song's death. At that time, if both sides did an all-out battle, they would have perished together and Old Cao will spurt out blood due to the damage done.

However, Tao Qian was unable to achieve that, because at his side there was very incompetent senior general called Cao Bao and also Tao Qian's two sons. Tao Qian is similar to Huang Zu, tiger for a father, pig for a son and is the one who ruined his family's name. Yuan Shao is also the same, his sons are not in harmony with each other and always tried to take each other down. However as incompetent as Tao Qian's sons are, they were much better than Yuan Shao's.

Old Tao can repel Cao Cao, but after that? Old Tao died of old age while Cao Cao kept advancing for his conquest. After Tao Qian died, the Tao clan would definitely be exterminated by Cao Cao as tribute to Cao Song.

So, Old Tao, in order to create an insurance so that his Tao clan can be preserved, asked Liu Bei to take ownership of Xu Province and made these three tigers, Liu Bei, Lu Bu and Cao Cao fight together to the death.

During that chaos, the Tao clan quickly withdrew from Xu Province and disappeared from history's footnote and Cao Cao also had forgotten the Tao clan as if his father was never murdered in Xu Province.

And these Danyang soldiers were the same Danyang soldiers from back then, but under Sun Ce’s army's employ.

These 10,000 Danyang soldiers were divided into two, Chen Wu and Dong Xi each lead 5,000 troops. Both of them were water dragons in naval battles and mighty tigers in land battle. They can be considered as the first Marine Corps.

Those Danyang soldiers' armor were made of rattan and was able to float on water. On land warfare, these rattan armor can also soften any blow from sharp weapons.

Therefore these 10,000 Danyang soldiers was Sun Ce's trump card and definitely as good as Lu Bu's Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

“ALL ARMY ATTACK!!!” Chen Wu and Dong Xi had not yet relayed the orders, but the Danyang soldiers already made their move.

“SHA, SHA!!! Heh, Er Gou Zi, I will be the one who will take the merit first!!!” A young Danyang soldier speaking to another soldier.

“Dream on, Lin Danda, this grandpa will be the first one!!!” Er Gou Zi quickly quip toward Lin Danda.

“Hey, this grandpa's name is Chu Zhongtian. Do not call me Lin Danda!!!” Chu Zhongtian got angry.

“Tsk, whatever!!!!” Er Gou Zi did not respond toward Chu Zhongtian and responded “Bratty Lin Danda, don't be shameless here!!!”

“Ha, if being shameless can bring me glory, so what? Do not forget, if you lose, you owe me 100 taels of gold!!!” Chu Zhongtian was not really angry, but he just wanted to shift Er Gou Zi's attention. He is the one who nicknamed him Lin Danda, so he wanted to irritate this Er Gou Zi.

With 100 taels, Chu Zhongtian can return to Hueiji and court a woman to start a family. How can they afford to lose?

“Damned Lin Danda, eat my palm!!!” Er Gou Zi quickly fling his palm to smack Chu Zhongtian's head.

“Er Gou Zi, damn you!!!”

“Come on, come on. Hit me!!!”

“Er Gou Zi, let this grandpa cut your balls off!!!” They started bashing each other. They had not yet arrived at the appointed place, but their faces were already black and blue.

“Aiyah!!!” Chen Wu just smiled bitterly. These Danyang soldiers, wore the appearance of a soldiers, but in reality, they were gangsters, bums

and ruffians. If it was any other army, Chen Wu would have already called for military law, but these were Danyang soldiers. If you killed one, the others will defend that person to the death and if your treatment is not to their satisfaction, they will rebel against you.

But that did not affect the battle efficiency of these Danyang soldiers. When the Danyang soldiers reached the moat, they quickly leaped into the water and swam. When they reached the ladder, they quickly climbed up and even slashed one of the enemies and quickly started to battle.

“Grandpa has arrived!!! It is time for this grandpa to fight the battle!!!” Dong Xi exclaimed. He was also a ruffian from the start so it is okay for him to say what he wanted, but behind them, there was also a warhorse speeding rapidly toward Wancheng city.

Chapter 154 - The Danyang Soldiers Unleashed!!! (2)

“General, what should we do?!” Chen Wu's soldiers were stunned by these Danyang soldiers. They are afraid because these Danyang soldiers are really scary during a frenzy.

“What should we do!? Rush! If we are late, there is no more merit for us!!!” Chen Wu has also been affected with the situation, he quickly dashed toward Wancheng city.

“SHA, SHA, SHA!!!!” Liu Mang right now in a very difficult position. Earlier, he had the advantage of Wancheng city walls and was able to withstand Sun Ce’s army's attack, but now it is different. Because with the appearance of the rattan-armored soldiers, although they have no discipline and are unmethodical, they are able to stall Liu Mang's soldiers so more and more of Sun Ce’s army flushing inside the city.

“Hey, Er Gou Zi, see there, that guy is a high official!!!” Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi who has just killed a Lu Bu soldier quickly pointed toward Liu Mang.

“Hey, your eyes are pretty good, Lin Danda. How much money can I get by selling that golden armor? I bet it can buy several carts of meat buns!!!” Said Er Gou Zi while drooling. “Agh!!!” Er Gou Zi's head was hit by Chu Zhongtian. He quickly angry and said “Damn you, Lin Danda. Enemies everywhere, but you still want to fight with me? Let's fight then!!!”

“Er Gou Zi, you are pig-brained and truly stupid. That is golden armor. G-O-L-D!!!! It can at least buy barbecued muttons! Several carts of

them!!!" Chu Zhongtian response also made Er Gou Zi become stunned.

"Yes, Yes, Yes!!! It can buy barbecued muttons several carts!" Er Gou Zi started to remember the taste of barbecued mutton. The taste is really good and that was one year ago, when they started to follow their master Sun Ce when he took hold of Wancheng city.

Both of their vision are glimmering with meat buns and barbecued mutton. This His Highness Prince of Shu and his Aries gold-cloth has turned into several carts of barbecued muttons in these two eyes.

"HEAAHHHH!!!" They nodded and quickly rushed. They wanted to eat a lot of meat buns and a lot of barbecued muttons, therefore this high official must die.

"Um?!" Liu Mang also realized that he has been leered. Suddenly from that side, there are two men wearing rattan-armor, looking at Liu Mang with glittering eyes and even licked their lips.

"GAYS?!" Liu Mang shuddered when being stared at by them so passionately. They quickly slashed their broadswords, so Liu Mang raised his shield to defend.

"Clang, clang!!!" Two broadsword marks appeared on the great shield. After that first slash, they quickly slashed again in order to behead Liu Mang.

Liu Mang then deflected their broadsword by performing a spinning movement of his body in order to increase the momentum, but it did not

stop them from striking Liu Mang.

"High official!"

"Golden armor!" Liu Mang does not know both which division these soldiers came, but their skills were not too high, moreover their coordination is very bad. And judging from the way they slashed their broadsword, both of them are using slashing movements like you would a street fight and do not have the methods to kill.

Liu Mang's golden armored was too attractive and it was not strange for a lot of Sun Ce's army to rush him. But when they reached Liu Mang, they are all busy discussing with each other, regarding who will take his helmet and who wanted to take his armor. Completely disregarding Liu Mang.

"Noisy!!!" Liu Mang burst out and killed those soldiers, but the Danyang soldiers were able to parry his strikes. His skill in wushu is still extremely bad and is still inferior if compared to a third-class general, but not so weak that he cannot kill those noble private soldiers.

"SHAAAA!!!!" Liu Mang's hand started swing his great shield. Although Liu Mang's arm did not have a force of a thousand catties, but he is able to swing his great shield effortlessly.

Also since all of them also had no skill, then Liu Mang can act as crazy as he wanted. His body had the Aries gold-cloth, normal swords and spears will not be able to injure him. Only blunt weapons may injure him, but right now, at the presence of these ruffians, he may be able to win against them as they only used dao's and their strength is not big.

“WHAT?!” Those ruffians and those nobles' private soldiers who had not paid any attention to Liu Mang were all startled by Liu Mang's actions, because suddenly Liu Mang waved his shield like a fly swatter, hitting all of them and dealing high impact damage.

Liu Mang's wushu skill is much lower than those of nobles' and rattan-armored soldier so Liu Mang can only fight with street fighting methods, randomly switching his weapons and even fighting barehanded.

Liu Mang also has become really crazy and threw his great shield Captain America style and those ruffians really had a bad luck bumping into this rash man. This rash man's body armor is very powerful and their weapons had no use against such a rash guy. They thought that this official would be one that will be afraid for his life and would not fight back.

“AAAAHHHHH!!!!” Three Danyang soldiers who were swatted like flies started to fall down. Two of them fell down into inner city and one of them fall down to the outer wall; all of them died instantly.

“Come on, come on!!!” Liu Mang exclaimed loudly toward those ruffians. Wherever he moves, those Danyang soldiers are retreating.

“Dammit, were losing to this coward’s armor!!!” One of the ruffian tried to insult Liu Mang while escaping. He is unable to do damage at all to this golden-armored guy.

“Oh? What kind of soldier are you bitches to lose your weapons, huh?!” Liu Mang who is already tired of eloquently insulting in big words with

scholars, now can scream his insults freely without rhyme or reason.

“Hey, little boys, study from me, 'kay?” Liu Mang continued his insult.

“WITHDRAW!!! WITHDRAW!!!” Those ruffians also very sensible. They know that this Liu Mang is bad luck and this golden-armored guy is the guy who can fight back.

They had determined to give up on Liu Mang. They had given up on Liu Mang and found other people for their merits, but Liu Mang needed to drive them all out. Otherwise, they will be a big obstacle to the current Lu Bu army.

So Liu Mang insulted again “Hey boys, are your dicks so small that you did not dare to fight me again?!” Those Danyang soldiers are also fed up with Liu Mang’s insults and got angry and exclaimed “Brothers, we dog-pile this turtle boy and throw him out of city wall. I don’t believe that this turtle boy is so invincible that he will not die from the fall!!!”

It is Liu Mang’s bad luck now. Although they are completely worthless as a proper soldiers, they are quick thinkers in battle and quickly decided that Liu Mang must be thrown from this height so his good armor will crush him from the inside.

“Do not come near me!!!” Liu Mang will not let they come near him. His great shield is missing and now he is surrounded by Danyang soldiers that want to dog-pile him. On top of the city wall, half of them were Danyang soldiers and the other half were the Liu clan’s private soldiers who were not a match for them, but fortunately at this place, there was no one of general rank from Sun Ce’s army. However, it does not mean it is

safe for Liu Mang, as other gates had Sun Ce's army's generals; it made very hard to for anyone to rescue Liu Mang.

First, Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi started by holding Liu Mang's foot by. Liu Mang tried to struggle by kicking them repeatedly but they just stubbornly held Liu Mang's leg and said "Oh, no, no, no, turtle bastard, you will die with this grandpa. Die for us!!!"

Liu Mang's body strength is big and he is able to shove off 3 – 4 people that were holding him, but he is unable to move as 13 people are now dog-piling him and started to carry him in order to throw him down the city wall.

Right now, all of the Urban Army is battling on the city wall. Liu clan's private soldiers are really useless so, the rest of Urban Army needed to fight the enemy and that is only the first wave of attack.

Liu Mang truly knows that 8,000 troops are unable to fight against 100,000 troops. So he put out the Liu clan's private soldiers to fight first and his Urban Army on standby as reserves. But right now, they are in a dire state, Liu Mang cannot ask Liu Kai and Liu Neng to request reinforcements from Huang Zhong, as Huang Zhong himself now personally led 1,000 Urban Army troops to fight at the other gates.

Huang Zhong also sees that Liu Mang was currently being carried by ruffians in order to be thrown down from the city wall. Huang Zhong already aimed, but put down his long bow out of fear his shooting will harm Liu Mang as he is already very near to the ledge.

"Son of a bitch! RELEASE ME!!!!" Liu Mang struggled very much, but all

of his efforts are futile. Thrown down from the wall, one will not have a very good death, and if do not instantly died, he will suffer a lot from broken bones and finally suffocate to death.

“DIE, TURTLE BASTARD!!! GIVE ME CARTS OF BARBECUED MUTTON!!!” Er Gou Zi licked his lip, as long as he throws down this big turtle bastard, then they can have several carts of barbecued mutton and can eat until full. Unfortunately, to them, that is the only worth of Liu Mang’s life now.

Chapter 155 - The Third Master of the Danyang Soldiers Appears!

“Hey uncle, shout 1, 2, 3 okay? And we throw down this bastard!!!” said one of Chu Zhongtian’s subordinate.

“I knew that, nephew!!!” Chu Zhongtian also responded back

“Well said, let’s throw him down together!!!” Chu Zhongtian acted as the leader in throwing down Liu Mang.

“LITTLE LORD!!!” Huang Zhong already tried to cut a path but there was not enough time as Liu Mang already had one foot in hell.

“No, this is the end!!!” Liu Kai and Liu Neng also showed despaired face. If Liu Mang dies, they will also die as Sun Ce and Jiangdong’s army also had grudge against them for the death of Zhou Tai and Zhou Cheng.

If Liu Mang died, this Wancheng city will be lost. Lu Bu’s army will be starved all the time because there will be no more grain and provisions. Fighting a war with an empty stomach; loss is a certainty.

With Lu Bu’s army is finished, those nobles who had invested in Lu Bu’s army will also die. This is a big contrast from previous days when they believed that following Lu Bu is a very good thing.

“Okay then, 1, 2, 3!!!” Those Danyang soldiers who lifted up Liu Mang quickly wanted to throw him to the outer city wall. Soon, Liu Mang will become meat paste in this Wancheng city.

“Hey, Lin Danda!!!” There is a commanding voice coming from behind, making Chu Zhongtian excrete cold sweat and subconsciously held Liu Mang’s body still, sparing him from his fate.

“Lin Danda, STOP!!!” That commanding voice came from the Urban Army. It was a young-looking soldier whose age was only in the teens. This guy was a veteran in Liu Mang’s army and one of the remaining 300 troops that he once led at Xiapi.

“Lin Danda, throw this bastard quick. Barbecued mutton is waiting for us!!!” Er Gou Zi reminded Chu Zhongtian.

“Er Gou Zi, I also want to throw down him, but!!!” Chu Zhongtian’s hand was suddenly held by Liu Mang. Liu Mang does not want to die now, even if he must die, he wanted to die painlessly and not like this.

“Brothers, come with me, save the general!!!” The Urban Army lieutenant who had seen Liu Mang was unable to calm down ordering his brothers to slaughter the Danyang soldiers.

“Wait!!!” Huang Zhong halted the Urban Army. Because if they rushed together, it will make the Danyang soldiers stunned and maybe the Urban Army will be able to win, but at the last moment, they at least will take hostage of Liu Mang and possibly will even die with him. That result was not desirable for anyone.

“Damned barbecued mutton, die, die, die!!!” Er Gou Zi shook Liu Mang’s hand whose is stubbornly holding on Chu Zhongtian, he must chop off his hand in order to kill him.

“Do it, if you dare!!!” That angry sound came again “Er Gou Zi. It’s been a few years since this Grandpa has seen you come back home and now you dare defy my order?!”

Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi who had just seen that person clearly, became drenched in cold sweat; want to leave the place immediately.

“Oooohhhh, your courage is really big, eh? Put down this grandpa’s general right now!!!” That young man got angry again. The fierce Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi suddenly complied with this young man’s order.

“Chu Jie?!” Liu Mang quickly see his savior. This guy is one of his veterans, a veteran from Xiapi, Kaiyang and Mt. Bagong battle. Liu Mang’s first impression of this guy was that he was a quiet man. When Liu Mang was reassessing his men, Liu Mang assign this Chu Jie as a company commander and assign 100 men under him, because he is a veteran and was able to lead as well as fight properly. But his age is only in the teens and his entire company was also comprised of men with the same age.

Liu Mang never thought that today, this boy would be the one who rescued him and started pondering about his true identity.

“Hey uncle, why do you still not throw that boy? Hurry up, or they will come for us!!!” The group of Danyang soldiers that followed Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi became flustered and questioned why they had not moved. This high official is an easy merit and after that, they must prepare to withstand Urban Army’s assault.

“NOBODY MOVES WITHOUT MY ORDER!!!” Er Gou Zi bellowed loudly. The person that they did not want to see right now is not the enemy, not the death of their comrades but only this person’s appearance.

“Uncle, what is wrong with you?!” Those who were just rebuked by Er Gou Zi felt strange.

“Splash, splash!!!” Er Gou Zi and Chu Zhongtian quickly knelt.

“Uncle, both of you want to surrender?!” Looking at their appearance in the battlefield, from a quick glance, one can see they wanted to surrender.

“Surrender your ass!!!” Chu Zhongtian exclaimed angrily and slapped one of his men. After that he and Er Gou Zi quickly held his fist toward Chu Jie respectfully and said “Third, Third Master Chu, greetings to you!”

“WHAT?!” All people on the scene are all speechless. Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi called this young Chu Jie, Third Master? That rank is even higher than their rank as “uncle”

“Uncle, are you insane? Why call this youngster as “Third Master Chu”, while your title is “Uncle”?” They really cannot believe their ears. How can this young boy, whose age is less than 20, be a “Third Master Chu”? One must know that Danyang soldiers are all from one town. The entire town are family and relatives and were based on ranks. Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi, both of their ranks were high enough to be the leader of these Danyang soldiers. But again, if this Chu Jie is the third master of Chu and the boss of Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi, then this Chu Jie is the boss of all Danyang soldiers of Chu Town of Danyang region.

And that is the real fact. Chu Jie is the third master of Chu and subsequently the master of Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi. In ancient times, ranks were held in high regard. They were honored and respected, therefore no one dared to overstep their boundaries

Chu Jie spent the rest of his childhood in Chu Town in Danyang region. However, because Tao Qian requested for the Danyang soldiers to be his official soldiers, Chu Jie followed his father to Xu Province. Later, Chu Jie's father was killed during a skirmish with Cao Cao and Chu Jie was appointed as Third Master Chu because of his experience fighting a hundred battles. After Tao Qian surrendered Xu Province to Liu Bei, he followed Liu Bei half-heartedly. Only when Lu Bu seized Xu Province from Liu Bei, did he decide to follow this invincible master wholeheartedly, even discarding his identity as Third Master Chu of Danyang soldiers along with Cao Bao.

During the siege of Xiapi, Lu Bu was almost finished and the Danyang soldiers almost ended. Chu Jie thought that it was time to meet their end, but Liu Mang appeared on the white gate tower and managed to rescue all of Lu Bu's army remnants along with the rest of the Danyang soldiers.

"ALL OF YOU!!! KNEEL DOWN!!! THIS IS OUR THIRD MASTER CHU!!!" Chu Zhongtian screamed angrily. Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi truly feared this Third Master Chu. Both of them frequently committed offense, so many that this Third Master Chu often stood in between them in order for them not to be exiled, also during their time in Chu Town, he is the one who gave their nickname, Er Gou Zi (Two Puppies) and Lin Danda (Big Forest Bastard). Er Gou Zi's real name was Chu Zhongquan but no one remembers that name, only their nicknames that were given by Chu Jie.

“Third, Third Master, greetings to you!” All of Danyang soldiers that was led by Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi, quickly knelt down before Chu Jie, an officer of Lu Bu’s army, and it made everyone who saw this view think that they surrendered to Lu Bu’s army.

“Um?!” The person who thought that was the leader of the other division of the Danyang soldiers. His name was Zuo Renjie and was the lord of Zuo Town. The town of Zuo and Chu were a bitter rivals and always fought with each other. They had big history of grudges between each other. Right now they are in luck as Zuo worked under Dong Xi and Chu worked under Chen Wu and by seeing this, Zuo Renjie decided that they decided to revolt.

Zuo Renjie smiled maliciously and thought “Hehehe, so, Chu wanted to rebel eh? Since we the Danyang soldiers of Zuo and Chu joined Sun Ce, he forbade us to fight with them. But all of them are now rebels. So, I can kill them and avenge our grudges!!!”

“Put down my general!!!” Chu Jie exclaimed. Liu Mang was quickly put down by Chu Zhongtian. A moment ago he almost fell, but he was now held by Chu Zhongtian firmly so. He did not fall otherwise, Liu Mang will be meat patty by now.

“General, are you all right?!” “Little lord, are you okay?!” Chu Jie and Huang Zhong quickly went toward Liu Mang and said their concern.

“I am okay, I am okay!” Liu Mang did not have any flesh wound besides his frightened mental.

“Old General Huang. QUICK, lead the remaining Urban Army to help

the other walls to repel Sun Ce's army. Otherwise, the consequences will dreadful!" Sun Ce's army has 100,000 troops. He can consume Liu Mang completely and Liu Mang will only able to repel them.

"Yes sir!!!" Huang Zhong nodded and led the rest of the Urban Army to repel Sun Ce's army and put out the fire.

"General, what about them?!" Chu Jie asked Liu Mang. As long as Chu Jie did not speak his order, these Danyang Chu division did not dare to move.

"Let them return unharmed!" Liu Mang waved his hand. Each warlord corporates local people to conscript. In Lu Bu's army, not only are there Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, Formation Breaker. There are also Xu Province soldier, Guangling soldiers, and the Danyang soldiers also have Jiangxia naval soldiers in Gan Ning's hand, as well Lujiang soldiers who were recruited from Wancheng city.

The biggest advantage from local conscription is they will not dare to rebel against the ruling lord because their families can also become hostage, in order for them not rebel against the ruler. No one would want their clan to be exterminated.

These Danyang soldiers, can join Lu Bu army under Chu Jie's order but what next? Their clan will be exterminated by Sun Ce and these Chu Danyang soldiers will fight half-heartedly and will rebel after receiving that news and that is not what Liu Mang wanted, he will never let happen.

"Yes sir!!!" Chu Jia nodded. "Do you hear that, Lin Danda, Er Gou Zi? Go

back where you came from or the one waiting for you is death!!!”

“Yes, yes, third Master!” Chu Zhongtian and Er Gou Zi nodded profusely. Their subordinates were also relieved. They feared that this Third Master Chu will make them join the battle against Sun Ce and will make their families enter a fatal predicament.

“Third Master, please excuse us. This time we follow the Sun. In battlefield, we definitely will meet again unavoidably. We beg your mercy not to kill us. In battlefield, we will feign death and will not fight with you. We hope that Lu Bu’s army will spare us!” Chu Zhongtian begged Chu Jie and Liu Mang. They do not want to fight the army which their Third Master belonged to and they do not want to fight against military order, so they only can have an agreement with Lu Bu’s army rep.

“Very well!!! When you go to battlefield, wear white cloth on your left shoulder. Like this we know that all of you are Danyang soldiers from Chu. I will also relay my order to keep their hands off all of you!” Liu Mang nodded. With this, the Danyang soldiers of Chu became neutral parties in battle and will not harm Lu Bu’s army and Sun Ce army's Danyang soldiers battle prowess was reduced by half.

“Good! Then we all go!” Chu Zhongtian is not silly. They have killed Lu Bu’s army on this city wall so they quickly climbed down the ladder and started to leave.

“The Chu division is defeated?!” Lu Su twitched his brow when he is looking at the city wall. “Those Chu divisions were supposed to be undefeatable!!!” Lu Su knows about the battle efficiency of the Danyang soldiers and they are the trump card of Sun Ce’s army, even if they lose, they can still take down most of Wancheng city's defenders.

Lu Su truly had big doubts because the one who made those Chu division surrender is that golden-armored general, the Prince of Shu, Liu Mang. Lu Su has discerned that Lu Bu's son-in-law's skill in wushu is even lower than himself but quickly his attention changed toward Sun Ce.

Sun Ce had reached the ladder was already prepared to scale the ladder, but he cannot cut down his soldiers unlike the Danyang soldiers who cut down everything that impeded their paths for they are his people and the one who till his soil.

So Sun Ce just used half of his Conqueror Spear to use as a climbing tool for him to jump toward the city wall. Just one jump, he managed to scale one-third of the city wall, after that he quickly climb the wall.

In siege warfare, the most dangerous moment is when one is scaling the ladder. Once the ladder has been pushed or rocks thrown down or boiling oil poured out, you will be unable to avoid any damage. At the very least, one of your organs will be broken and the worst one will be death.

Sun Ce do not want experience that kind of thing, so he quickly climb the city wall in an alarming speed.

Chapter 156 - Sun Ce Joins the Fray

“Push the spiked pillar down!!!” On Wancheng city outer walls, all you can hear are sounds of killing. Casualties on each side is very high. So, Liu Mang had no other choice than to push the spiked pillar in order to help cut down the casualties as an arrow volley is not useful.

“Bang!!!” One by one the spiked pillars were thrown down by Lu Bu’s army soldiers. Some of those spike pillars were cut down from trees, some of them were donated by carpenters, and some of them were “given” by nobles who were previously massacred. Liu Mang ordered for his troops to tear down their pillars to be converted into spike pillars.

With those spike pillars rolling, one by one Sun Ce’s army and their ladders started collapsing like ants falling from the sky.

“Rumble, rumble!!!” above Sun Ce's head spike pillars are rolling down, Sun Ce himself had to flatten himself to the wall in order to avoid the spiked pillars. Its length was about 10 meters, and its diameter is about 100 cm. When a human hit by this rolling death machine, they would not be able to survive.

“Damn, I cannot advance anymore than this!!!” Sun Ce gnashed his teeth. He is unable to advance or retreat. He came for revenge not stand around like a turtle and die like this.

“READY….!!!!” On the walls, they began preparing spike pillars again. “Relea…. ARGH!!!!” The Lieutenant had not yet finished his command,

suddenly in his neck, there was a piece of iron piercing his throat from below the wall. That iron was a piece of black steel with simple design but that piece of iron is radiating coldness like never before, that thing is a part of Sun Ce's Conqueror Spear.

"LIEUTENANT DOWN!!! KEEP RELEASING THOSE SPIKED PILLARS!!!" Their lieutenant's death did not make Lu Bu's army panic. Those from the Liu clan's private soldiers had already experienced the hell of arrow volley and the Danyang soldiers assault, so their mentality had transformed into that of an elite soldier.

"GODDAMMIT!!!" Sun Ce returned to flattening himself again on the city wall. His scheme to lessen the morale by killing the lieutenant backfired on him and even made those spike pillars roll even faster.

"Milord, careful!!!" Lu Su is truly anxious now, because the amount of deaths accruing due to siege warfare has reached a massive amount. The city wall has become a collage of death, painted with blood and flesh.

Similar events also happened to the metropolis like Luoyang, Chang'an and Shouchun. They had been sieged who knows how many times and if one dug on the ground below their old city walls, you can find many ancient bones buried underneath it.

"AAAAHHHHH!!!!" 10 of Sun Ce's army's soldier were swooped down by the spike pillars. Their bodies had already become meat paste due to momentum and weight of the spike pillars.

"Damn!!!" Sun Ce's brow wrinkled. During the time he was able to scale the city wall, it was such a good opportunity, because at that time, there

were still no spiked pillars rolling down, only projectiles like arrow volley and rocks.

But they were now hurling their other defensive weapons which was the spiked pillars which usually were not used in siege warfare. Sun Ce pondered, either his opponent is stupid or desperate. Liu Mang actually had no other choice but to use many apparatuses as the Liu clan's private soldiers were complete trash compared to veterans of Sun Ce's army. Right now Sun Ce is in a very bad predicament due to spike pillars rolling to no end.

"Dammit, I cannot continue like this!!!" Another spike pillars is rolling and closing in on Sun Ce. If this managed to hit him, the damage will be severe.

"HAAAAAHHH!!!!" Sun Ce tried to counterattack against the rolling spiked pillars. His Conqueror Spear was hurled toward the spiked pillars, hoping to destroy the spiked pillars. "CRACK!!!" His Conqueror Spear had stabbed the spiked pillars and managed to pierce it but it was unable to destroy it completely.

The spiked pillars was getting closer and closer to Sun Ce until he exclaimed "Dammit, too late!!!" having no other viable option than than receive the spiked pillars with his body, it lodged on his purple armor, but due to his strength, he can hold the spiked pillars with his body.

"QUICK, PUSH THE LADDER!!! PUSH THE LADDER!!!" With the spiked pillars falling down, there should be no other people on the ladder, so the Liu clan private soldiers can just push down the ladders so that Sun Ce's army not to scale the ladder again.

The one who is in charge of pushing the ladder down quickly moved after they received their orders.

“Hey, do not dawdle around!!! Hurry push the ladder down, or the enemy will jump up again!!!” Shouted the leader of the wall defenders. “Yes, I know, but this ladder won't budge no matter how hard I push this!!!” The soldier shouted back.

These people were really anxious, because they are the Liu clan's private soldiers and their families' life and welfare are at a stake right now. Once Wancheng city is broken, their families will be doomed. “Okay, let me help you!!!” Another soldier came up to help him, but wad still unable to move the spiked pillars, another one also came to help them but again were unable to push down the ladder because there someone of massive strength holding it down.

“What is the matter?!” Suddenly a cold voice answered their questions. “Of course you cannot move this, because I am here!!!” “The hell? There is a person here?!” All of them are surprised. When the spiked pillars finally rolled down, it revealed a man in purple armor. All of them cannot believe that this man was able to withstand the momentum of rolling spike pillars which would have made any regular man die instantly.

That man in purple armor quickly jumped off the ladder and to solid ground on the city wall. His right side is bloodied and on his chest, there was a newly formed blood spot. The right side came from the oxybeles wound and the chest is because of him holding the spiked pillars.

When he was hit by spike pillars earlier, he managed to stab his

Conqueror Spear on that spiked pillars. But due to the impact, his body also felt the damage and that is the cause of fresh blood spot on his chest, but he managed to shove aside that spike pillar and get away from certain death.

"SHAAAA!!!!" Since Sun Ce did not die immediately by spike pillars, several Liu clan private soldiers quickly rose their swords and advanced toward Sun Ce. They underestimated the fact that wounded Sun Ce was just like a wounded tiger and wounded a tiger wad very dangerous to approach.

"BAH, INSECTS!!!" Sun Ce had been holding anger in his belly and now it was the time to vent it. His grudges from Jiang Qin losing an arm, the death of Oolong, and nearly dieing from the spike pillar. These enemy soldiers just became Sun Ce's target dummies.

"DIE!!!" Sun Ce's hand is grasping firmly on his Conqueror Spear. His veins bulged and we're exposed; the tip of his Conqueror Spear's stabbing the throat of two enemy soldiers. "Poof" Two red streams of liquid gushed in the air; two soldiers died instantly.

"SHAAAA!!!!" Three pikemen of Lu Bu's army soldiers rushed up. They wanted to gang up on Sun Ce, but Sun Ce just wielded his Conqueror Spear like clubs and shoved away those three people while taking their pikes.

"HAAAA!!!!" Sun Ce quickly stabbed those pikes to Lu Bu's army's soldiers. Those former pikemen were stabbed by their own weapons.

"AAARRRGGHHHH!!!" Pitiful screams came from those pikemen. But

one of them managed grab his longsword and tried to slash Sun Ce, but Sun Ce just dodged it and quickly grabbed the hilt of the pike and stabbed that poor soldier's heart again using the previously thrown pike.

"AAAARRRGGHHHH!!!!" Another soldier was stabbed by the Conqueror Spear. That guy is the brother of the pikemen who managed to counterattack Sun Ce, he wanted to take revenge for his brother, but was unable to take revenge and finally died under Sun Ce's strike. Another soldier was also coming to attack Sun Ce, but was stabbed in the forehead by Sun Ce. "Poof!!!" his head was split open like a watermelon.

After that assault, all of Lu Bu's soldiers (Liu clan private soldiers) finally screamed "AAAHHHH!!! YOU AIN'T A HUMAN!!! AIN'T HUMAN!!!" All of them were scared stiff because Sun Ce acted like a beast. 6 soldiers were taken down by him with very little effort. They started to question him finally "Who, who the hell are you?!" and Sun Ce just said in very cold tone "I am Jiangdong's army's boss. The name is Sun Ce, Sun Bofu!!!"

Chapter 157 – Battle Between Superclass Generals (1)

“HAHAHAHA, EASY, EASY!!!” Dong Xi exclaimed. Sun Ce army's generals had scaled the walls. Those generals were Chen Wu and Dong Xi. The Danyang soldiers were indeed one of the elite units in the Three Kingdoms, in just a matter of hours, they gathered enough battle experience to learn the way and style the enemy fought until no one was a match for them one-on-one.

1 Danyang soldier can fight 2 Urban Army soldiers. 3 Danyang soldiers can fight 5 Urban Army soldiers. Urban Army's way of battle emphasized on teamwork, Danyang soldiers emphasized on a one-man battle army. Those 3,000 Urban Army soldiers were able to crush only 5,000 Danyang soldiers but were unable to take on the remaining 5,000 Danyang soldiers,

Regarding leadership, the Danyang soldiers were led by experienced and veteran generals, Urban Army were only led by Cheng Yu and Liu Mang. Cheng Yu only passes as a second-class general and Liu Mang didn't even passes as a third-class general, maybe only as a super soldier and that is it. The one who is able to fight properly in this Wancheng city is only Huang Zhong, but even Huang Zhong is unable to take care of all the walls of Wancheng city as the distance between them is too big.

“HAHAHAHAHA!!!! Oh my little friend!!! Let this Grandpa Dong Xi let you drink blood!!! Chu...” Dong Xi kisses his hammers. Dong Xi's favorite weapon is a pair of metal hammers added with hooks, its weight is around 200 pounds on each hammers, but he is able to lift it up with ease due to his large physique. When Dong Xi managed to hit an enemy, the enemy was not just crushed, but his flesh was also hooked up when Dong Xi retracted his hammers. With this weapon of his, no one dared to

fight him as no one wanted to die in a cruel way.

With generals like that, his bodyguards also acted the same way. All of Dong Xi's bodyguards were all warriors that liked killing people. Their weapons of choice was a mace covered with barb wires and if one hit a person's body, one's internal body will be destroyed from the impact, while their flesh is extracted.

Chen Wu's weapon is much more normal. Chen Wu is using twin metal rods. At the tip of the rod is made with much more thicker iron to enhance his offensive capabilities. One hit, a regular person will die. Regarding his wushu skills, his skill is a little lower than Zhou Tai, Jiang Qin and the others but he is still regarded as one of the valiant generals in Jiangdong.

Chen Wu and Dong Xi, both of them were to fight solo, can only be considered as second-class generals. But once they are together, they are able to tag-team their prey, leaving no gaps for defenses.

That is why Sun Ce divided 10,000 Danyang soldiers into two big divisions for that reason. The second reason is that Chen Wu is the restraint chain for Dong Xi, as long as the two of them fought together, they were an unstoppable fighting machine.

"FUCKING HELL!!!" Liu Mang cursed. In Liu Mang's hand there were no valiant generals at all. Currently Zang Ba, Gao Shun, and Zhang Liao all of them went to Shucheng County with Lu Bu and will be too late to wait for any reinforcements from them. If Su Fei was still alive, maybe the situation will not be as dire as it was right now. But Su Fei died and Gan Ning is nowhere to be found, following Liu Mang's instruction to install that tool in every warships that they can find. If they cannot install it

properly and it failed to function during battle, they will become Jiangdong's army's fodder.

“Little lord, I will fight against Sun Ce, please stay here and persevere, I will come back immediately after slaying him!” Huang Zhong's plan is to kill Sun Ce to behead Sun Ce's army. Along with that he is the most dangerous entity in the enemy's army. If he is allowed to live, he will be able to deal the most damage to them. To top it off behind Sun Ce charge, more and more of his soldiers are swarming the city wall.

“Sun Ce!!! Huang Zhong Huang Hansheng is here!!! Come and fight me if you dare!!!” Huang Zhong roared his challenge. Huang Zhong was besieged by three valiant generals earlier. If they fought Huang Zhong one-on-one, Jiang Qin would have die and even Taishi Ci would die fighting Huang Zhong, leaving Sun Ce to grief by himself. Now, Sun Ce is alone and will definitely die under Huang Zhong's blade.

“HAHAHA, Huang Zhong, I have been waiting for you!!!” Sun Ce is really happy, because Huang Zhong is the one who challenged him back. “Is Sun Ce seeking death?!” Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled. He admitted Sun Ce he was very strong but not his opponent. When they were dueling earlier, based on the strength that Sun Ce showed, he summarized that Sun Ce will die in just tenths bout. Huang Zhong then thought “To die under my curved dao, is still very a good honor for you!!!”

When closing in to Sun Ce, Huang Zhong killed 10 of Sun Ce’s soldiers; his golden curved dao already stained red with blood, but when Sun Ce clashed with Huang Zhong, he managed to withstand Huang Zhong's swing as a sign that he managed to breakthrough to the first stage in the pinnacle of super-generals.

The first sign when one's strength has broken through into the pinnacle of super-class generals is that one would be able to lift 100 kg weight as if lifting a feather. His hand has the force at least 10,000 catches, but that is only the first stage. Huang Zhong has refined his strength further, until his hand has the force of 30,000 catties like Lu Bu and if one used a weapon, even a super-class general will die in one strike and usually those who managed to breakthrough into the pinnacle of super-class will wield a weapon whose weight is several hundred pounds. But even with a light-weight weapon, Huang Zhong can break the enemy's weapon and kill them with ease.

"HAHAHAHA, I MANAGED TO BREAKTHROUGH AGAIN!!!" Sun Ce laughed "I also would like to thank you!!! If you did not fight with me and your ballista arrow did not damage me, I would not have been able to reach the first stage in the pinnacle of super-class general!!! You and the Prince of Shu are the ones who let me taste this level of strength and understand the depth of this Conqueror Spear!!!"

Sun Ce's eyes are flashing killing intent again. If one wanted to reach the pinnacle of super-class generals, first one must be cornered into a life-and-death state in order to push ones potential to the limit. Huang Zhong had done that and as a result, Huang Zhong was too strong to be a match even for Sun Ce, Taishi Ci and Jiang Qin fighting together. But due to the damage from the ballista arrow earlier, Sun Ce managed to push himself to a corner.

The second step is one needed to understand either two extremes, one is extreme anger and the other is extreme sorrow. Huang Zhong had also have walked this path, Huang Xu's illness made Huang Zhong sad all the time, so sad that he understood sadness and by understanding sadness, he reached the second prerequisite for reaching another stage in pinnacle of super-class general and for Sun Ce, the death of Da Qiao and

Oolong, made him understand sadness.

TL: THE FUCK?! ONE NEED TO REACH MUSOU TENSEI IN ORDER TO REACH PINNACLE OF SUPER CLASS GENERAL? HOKUTO NO KEN FTW BABY.

Finally, the weapon that the general used must be a weapon that is most comfortable to its users. Lu Bu uses Sky Piercer which then changed to Poseidon Halberd, Huang Zhong uses golden curved dao and Sun Ce uses his Conqueror Spear. This Conqueror Spear carries the will and aspiration and strength of Xiang Yu. At the time when Xiang Yu wielded this Conqueror Spear, his strength had reached pinnacle of super-class general. That 4-meters long spear became his main weapon, but he also unable to master it, until he broke it into two and he wielded it as a club on one hand and a spear on the other hand, only with that was he able to use the Conqueror Spear perfectly.

When Xiang Yu committed suicide, he quickly joined the Conqueror Spear before he slit his throat in order to keep the secret of it and bring it to his grave but also thanks to Liu Mang's ballista shot, he managed to break the Conqueror Spear into to two and finally able to use the Conqueror Spear to its true potential.

“Hahaha, if you want to thank me, then die for me!!!” Huang Zhong sneered. Pinnacle of super-class also has advanced class and entree class. Also regarding class, Huang Zhong is outclassed one point by Lu Bu. One could see that during the duel Lu Bu vs Huang Zhong.

Now a young man just managed to breakthrough, how can he become Huang Zhong's opponent?

“Come on then!!!” Sun Ce smiled confidently. He climbed to Wancheng city wall, not just to take revenge, he wanted to duel with Huang Zhong because he is one of the rarest super generals. How can Sun Ce waste this opportunity?

“HUMPH!!!” Huang Zhong's humphed coldly. His eyes are also flashing with killing intent. Huang Zhong also felt a threatening aura from this young man, but Huang Zhong also wanted to do duel with him, to prove either his curved dao or Sun Ce's split spear is superior.

“HAHAHA!!!! SHAAA, SHAAA!!!!!” Dong Xi and Chen Wu were still on a rampage. Liu Mang does not dare to attack them as he knows the weakness of his armor. If an enemy were using sharp weapons, Liu Mang will not fear them as they will be unable to penetrate his defense, but these two are using blunt weapons and were now killing Lu Bu's soldiers like they are mincemeat. Blunt weapons are the bane of heavy armor users. They are able to destroy internal organs without destroying the shells. Many of the shield soldiers fell down to Chen Wu and Dong Xi's assault.

Then again, if Liu Mang did not fight then these two people might occupy Wancheng city.

“No, I will not let that happen!!! NEVER!!!” Liu Mang shook his head to dispel his fear. If Wancheng city was lost, Lu Bu's army will have truly lost, and letting his troops getting killed is not Liu Mang's style.

“Huang Xu!!!” Liu Mang's head is looking back toward Huang Xu and said “I am counting on you!!!” After saying his order, Liu Mang lifted his

shield and charged toward the front.

“Little lord, don't!!!” Huang Xu wanted to stop Liu Mang but it is too late. Liu Mang currently is the soul of the army. As long as Liu Mang was able to show his prowess, the others will follow his example and show greater combat effectiveness.

However, due to Huang Xu's injury because of Zhou Tai's assault, he cannot support Liu Mang directly and only using indirect assaults. Huang Xu then put his hand on his longbow and screamed “Do not worry, little lord!!! As long as Xu is still here, no harm will befall you!!!” Regarding archery, Huang Xu has extreme confidence and this is the only skill he's managed to be on par with his father's skill.

“SHAAA!!!” Liu Mang rushes toward those two generals wielding great shield.

“Ooohhh, golden armor!!! Is that guy a senior general of Lu Bu army!!!?” Dong Xi sneered toward Liu Mang who led Urban Army to do assault.

Chen Wu said “Wait, Dong Xi. Golden-armored man.... I KNOW THAT GUY!!!! THAT GUY IS PRINCE OF SHU!!!! His attire is just like Milord's description!!”

“SHAAAA!!!!” Dong Xi already in rampage, he did not care about anything anymore and only wanted to rampage regardless if his enemy is worth a high price, regardless of what his Lord ordered.

“Capture him alive!!!” Chen Wu said to Dong Xi. A dead Prince of Shu

can only be considered a merit but a captured Prince of Shu, it is a big thing.

"Chen Wu, why do you always make things difficult for me?" Dong Xi frowned. He likes to kill, only by killing can feel that he is alive and powerful. Although Dong Xi is stupid, he still listened to Chen Wu. Chen Wu is the wise one and listening to Chen Wu was never a mistake.

"Urban Army!!! Together; We live or die!!!" Liu Mang roused the morale of his troops first.

"Urban Army!!! Together; We live or die!!!" A sergeant of Urban Army also followed the suit.

"SHA, SHA, SHA!!!" The Danyang soldiers from the Zuo army under Dong Xi was very hungry for battle and headed toward Liu Mang's division. The Danyang soldiers are great for one-on-one battle but when they are faced with an organized unit, they will fall apart.

"First row, raise your shield!!!"The Urban Army did their usual formation, giant shields on the front in order to stop Danyang soldier's first wave of attack.

"Clang, clang, clang!!!" Broadswords, swords, spears and pikes are clashing up on the large shields but unable to penetrate the great shields, and even if some of them managed to slip through, the great shield soldier also wear heavy armor, so not much damage can be done.

"Shield soldiers withdraw, spears soldiers, kill them!!!" Liu Mang quickly

transmitted his order and the Urban Army transformed into the formation like he wanted. Liu Mang needed to kill a lot of Danyang soldiers who did not come from Chu town, as more and more soldiers are scaling the wall. Liu Mang needed to kill them quickly while they are still scaling the wall.

The Urban Army great shield soldiers retreated and the Danyang soldiers quickly returned attack, thinking that they have no more defense, but they discovered how wrong they are.

Danyang soldiers were stabbed one by one until they become shish-kabob with one spear stabbing at least 3 people.

“Spear soldiers, change with great shield and push them!!!” Liu Mang ordered “AAAHHHH!!!!” Scream from Danyang Zuo soldiers are heard over and over again when they are pushed from the wall.

“Spear soldiers, once again kill the Danyang soldiers!!!” Liu Mang with only a hundred people managed to clear the wall with that strategy and that strategy also made the Danyang soldiers afraid to do battle severely demoralizing them.

“Interesting!!!” Dong Xi licked his lips. He thought that this Prince of Shu was only a coward, but unexpectedly, he is able to use his head to formulate strategy. Dong Xi had seen this Prince of Shu only had the strength of less than his own bodyguards, but due to that strategy, he interest was piqued by this Prince of Shu; which made him his next target.

Chapter 158 – Battle Between Superclass Generals (2)

“Dammit, destroy them all, QUICK!!!” Chen Wu's brow wrinkled. In just a brief moment the Danyang soldiers' casualties amounted to 100 people while Urban Army's only totaled with 8 injuries. Even fighting heavy infantries did not amount to these losses.

Dong Xi did not care about his Danyang soldiers but Chen Wu cared. Sun Ce assigns those Danyang soldiers because they were trusted by Sun Ce in order to discipline them. All of Sun Ce's army juniors like Lu Meng and Ling Tong are drooling over these Danyang soldiers. They may be young right now but they bring big threats to Chen Wu and Dong Xi's positions and value in Sun Ce’s army. They are quick-learners and quick-thinkers, also they are able to think of strategies unlike Chen Wu and Dong Xi.

They are also Sun Ce's childhood friends. After they completed their studies, they will certainly be entrusted with heavy responsibility and be under Zhou Yu. Also in Sun Ce’s army, there are many veterans that have many experience in battle, further lessening their chances to gain merit. That is why when 10,000 Danyang soldiers were assigned to both Chen Wu and Dong Xi, both of them were ecstatic. Chen Wu has hoped to rise in Sun Ce’s army with these Danyang soldiers but if the casualties too big, his chance is also gone.

“I know!!!” Dong Xi waved his hand, then he squatted his body with one leg on the back, preparing to dash.

“Hrm?!” Liu Mang who has been paying attention toward Dong Xi, quickly looked at Dong Xi's location. Liu Mang really cannot comprehend

what is Dong Xi is doing, because in his eyes, Dong Xi looked as if he was surrendering.

But instantaneously, Dong Xi burst out into a sprint with a speed like the 100m runners that does their start squatting, his speed is so fast it came as a huge surprise for a man of his built.

"Bumps. Bumps!""Bumps" "bump!" his speed was getting faster and faster, Dong Xi's physique was originally stout and muscular, but actually that did not affect his speed. “Bump!! Bump!! Bump!! Bump!!” Dong Xi's footsteps made big tremors on the city wall shaking everything. Liu Mang was still confused as to what Dong Xi wanted to do, but when his giant iron hammers were placed in front of him then Liu Mang realized “Dammit, he wants to charge at us!!!” As Dong Xi was getting nearer and nearer, Liu Mang quickly bellowed his command “Great shield soldiers, raise your shield with me, perform a wall!!! I would like to see, how much power you have, Dong Xi!!!”

“Bang!!!” Liu Mang's mouth spurted blood. This kind of strength when Dong Xi rammed him. The momentum made Liu Mang feel all of his organs shift places and Liu Mang was not the only victim here, as several great shield soldiers were also flying and falling one by one like flies, some of them were perished by Dong Xi's hammer swings.

“Spearmen, raise your spear!!!” Liu Mang's is gritting his tooth trying to endure the pain. His eyes emitting anger. At Dong Xi's hammers, there are two people who are still dangling and alive and screaming and was treated as a weapon against the Urban Army.

“But general, there are still...” Some of Urban Army's spearmen is questioning Liu Mang's orders as those Urban Army soldiers were their

comrades.

“DO IT NOW!!!” Liu Mang's eyes were fiery. He already knew that those two people are doomed. So right now, he needed to kill them to at least to alleviate their pain.

"Yes, sir!" All of Urban Army is agreeing

“RAISE THE SPEARS!!!” One by one spearmen raised their spears and became a spear wall.

“Hahahaha, interesting, interesting!!!” Dong Xi pounded his hammer toward Urban Army's spear wall stabbing both of them.

“POOF. POOF!!!” Both of Urban Army soldiers were punctured and their body like hedgehog now. Although they screamed but when their gaze met Liu Mang's, they just smiled and died peacefully.

“Damn!!!” Liu Mang exclaimed his anger while his tears is flowing.

“SHAAA!!!” The Urban Army also responded. They must take revenge for their fallen comrades.

“SHIV, SHIV!!!” The enemies were forming a spear wall, so even though Dong Xi swung his iron hammer, at the very least his arm will be wounded. Evidently when he swung his hammer downward to kill the Urban Army soldiers, there was already at least 2 holes from his left arm due to the spears.

“Damn, it hurts!!!” Dong Xi's eyes are expressing the pain. He had stopped his movement and his shoulder is bleeding along with his left arm, but Dong Xi just ignored just picked up his lump of flesh that had fallen on the floor and ate it.

“Nice, very nice!!!” Dong Xi's killing intent rose again.

“Dong Xi get a hold of yourself!!! You need to capture the Prince of Shu alive!!!” Chen Wu shouted loudly toward Dong Xi. Dong Xi is considered as a second-class general, although his strength is the same as Jiang Qin. Mainly because once he sees blood he gets over excited and starts killing his own soldiers on with the enemy.

In Jiangdong, there are two monsters that like to eat people. One is Zhou Tai who died in Huang Zhong's hand. The other is Dong Xi. Dong Xi liked to eat people and that is the fundamental difference between Zhou Tai and Dong Xi. And even now, Dong Xi still likes to eat people. Sometimes, at night, Dong Xi will stalk people and kill them in order to cook them and that was already with restraint by Sun Ce.

“I want to eat you!!!” Dong Xi's exclaimed, at Liu Mang while licking his lips. His expression changed into a hungry man who had not eaten in several months.

“Oh, want to eat me? Come on then, let me see how big your appetite is!!!” Liu Mang retorted back. “FORWARD!!!” Liu Mang bellowed his orders. The two people who just died were division leaders and yet their position have already been filled.

One of the division leaders were Chu Jie and the other is a young man whose age is almost as old as Liu Mang.

“Hey, I like this!!! A person who has no fear!!! Fear makes your meat sour, not tasty!!!” Dong Xi said while resolving to eat all of the Urban Army's personnel.

Liu Mang frowned when he looked at Dong Xi already bearing his fangs. He knows that this Dong Xi did not lie when he said he wanted to eat them all, it is due to his teeth being bit dark because of the acid that is produced when human meat is cooked.

“Fine then, come to me!!!” Liu Mang sighed calmly. With the Urban Army dying together, Liu Mang will not be lonely in hell.

At the other side, Huang Zhong and Sun Ce were a doing fierce battle. During the battle Three Heroes vs Huang Zhong, Huang Zhong only needed to show 60% of his strength in order to match them, but right now Huang Zhong is putting out 80% of his strength versus Sun Ce alone.

But that is that!!! Because right now Huang Zhong is forcing Sun Ce with his golden curved dao! “No more show of strength, now you die!!!” Said Huang Zhong, the battle between Huang Zhong and Sun Ce was a private duel, all of people nearby who saw this battle, quickly moved away and did their own jobs.

Sun Ce then said “You are very strong, but if you able to survive my ultimate move, you can boast that you have survived my assault!!” Sun Ce is not the opponent of Huang Zhong. Although he has reached pinnacle of super-class it is only the preliminary class, but he got the ultimate skill

using the Conqueror Spear.

“Come then!!! Let this Zhong taste your ultimate move!!!” Huang Zhong also wanted to see Sun Ce's ultimate skill. He had tasted the power of the Conqueror Spear. That Western Chu Conqueror Xiang Yu really left a good legacy. A recently broken-through pinnacle of super-class managed to force a veteran to use 80% of his strength.

“Oh, thanks for being a patron for this Sun Ce, now let this Sun Ce send you to hell with this move!!!” Sun Ce's hand is gripped tightly on Conqueror Spear, his aura changes.

“Um?!” Huang Zhong frowned. This Sun Ce did not just give a threatening feeling, but also dangerous one. One man with a spear is reminded Huang Zhong of Lu Bu a few weeks ago when he did battle with him.

“Come on then, let this Zhong also show his ultimate skill!!!” Huang Zhong's heart also got excited. When he managed to breakthrough to the pinnacle of super-class, he was at the same age as Sun Ce and Huang Xu just 4 years older and he also had big aspirations for himself. When he reached that level, he never thought that this nation will give birth to those whose class is like him.

During Huang Zhong vs Lu Bu, Huang Zhong knows that his skill is inferior to Lu Bu, but at that time he was a commander therefore he will not admit defeat. But now Huang Zhong has become a subordinate of Lu Bu, so his ranks is lower than Sun Ce now, but Huang Zhong will never let himself be lower than Sun Ce in terms of prowess.

“HAAAHHH!!!” Huang Zhong also gripped his golden curved dao. He thought “this move was left out during the fight with Milord, but now I will show this skill here and now!!”

Their auras were increasing more and more and clashing with each other. The emotion on their body is uncertain, either anger or calmness mixed together, but one thing is a certain, if anyone approached them, they will meet their end.

“Country Destroyer!!!” Sun Ce made the first move. His Conqueror Spear had become one of his body. When Sun Ce screamed that move's name, the Conqueror Spear made a thundering noise. Sun Ce tried to stab Huang Zhong with that move but Huang Zhong retaliated and screamed “Dragon Slayer” in a slashing move to take down Sun Ce. Sun Ce was hit by that move and was thrown away several meters and before he was hit, he managed to stab Huang Zhong's armor but no apparent damage happened to Huang Zhong.

Chapter 159 – Rampage (1)

“COUGH, COUGH!!!” Sun Ce half-knelt on the ground. His Conqueror Spears are located on his hand, trying to support his body. The blue stone under his foot is already crushed, his arm is shivering and Sun Ce’s face is pale due to blood loss. His armor is broken and his right-side also bleeding profusely along with his right shoulder. Just a little more, his right arm will be lost forever like Jiang Qin with his left-hand.

Changing pinnacle of super-class to hyper class. So 3rd class, 2nd class, 1st class, super-class, hyper-class generals.

He lost this battle!!! He who had reached the hyper-class lost because his opponent was too strong.

“HAHAHAHA!!!”Sun Ce laughed wholeheartedly. That laugh was not a forced chuckle or sneer, but a genuine happy laughter because he met someone who is more powerful than him. A military commander has two things that can make him most happy in battlefield. First one is flawless victory, second one is to find a worthy adversary.

So, even in defeat, Sun Ce found huge excitement.

“Prepare to die, Sun Ce!!!”Huang Zhong exclaimed. He is also very tired, when he fought Jiang Qin earlier, even though he tore up Jiang Qin, that still required extreme concentration and it wore him down a lot. After that due to his carelessness, he was besieged by three generals, facing the same predicament like Lu Bu in Hulao Gate. Even after doing a very grueling battle like that, he still needed to battle in order to pacify each gates.

On Huang Zhong's curved dao, there is a clean hole on the center, also on his chest his armor was destroyed by Sun Ce's ultimate move, "Country Destroyer".

"Country Destroyer" is the ultimate move of Western Chu Conqueror Xiang Yu, he is first do this move when he was invading Qin Dynasty's capital in Xianyang and helped to crumble the dynasty. But it is a pity that the "Country Destroyer" move was lost when Xiang Yu commit suicide in Wu River but due to sheer genius of Sun Ce, he was able to recall back that move and execute it on Huang Zhong.

Huang Zhong's eyes are locked-on Sun Ce. This person is truly a genius among genius and will be a big threat in the future. He is able to breakthrough to become a hyper-class general just by being severely wounded in battle and even used Huang Zhong in order to temper his strength. Huang Zhong himself needed to build up and refine his strength slowly in order to reach this level. If this boy did not die now, the next time he did sortie, he will be very hard to kill.

"Die?" Sun Ce sneered "Yes, I lost, but I refuse to die here!!!" He quickly moved his hand in order to support his body with Conqueror Spear.

But today Sun Ce saw genuine Tu Long Shu unexpectedly. Huang Zhong's earlier technique was called "Dragon Slayer". "Is that really the Dragon Slayer technique?" Sun Ce pondered in his heart while looking at that hollow hole of golden curved dao. Sun Jian, The Tiger of Jiangdong and also Sun Ce's father was an expert in using curved dao and have told Sun Ce that there is another skill that can only be used by someone whose skill in curved dao is already reached pinnacle of curved dao skill, that skill is called "Dragon Slayer". His father said, when he managed to

get the skill “Dragon Slayer”, he will pronounce himself to the land that he had already evolved to the Dragon of Jiangdong, when Sun Ce heard Sun Jian’s proclamation, he just smiled and treated it as a joke.

TL: Dragon Killer, just like the wuxia novel Heaven Sword and Dragon Sabre. Indonesian readers might remember it as Golok Pembunuh Naga dan Pedang Langit Tandingannya” The famed To Liong To with Thio Bukie as the protagonist

The terms of “Dragon Slayer” harked from Zhuangzi and Lie Yukou anecdote. The anecdote told that one man from Zhu country wanted to study the “Dragon Slayer” technique. He sold all of his properties, closed his stores and gave all of his money to the people, then went to a mountain where he met a hermit who could teach him “Dragon Slayer”.

After three years, he learned the “Dragon Slayer” technique and went down from the mountain but due to peace times, he was unable to find work and can only work as a coolie in a rice shop. When Zhuangzi and Lie Yukou wrote that anecdote, they also provided another information that the person from Zhu truly managed to learn “Dragon Slayer” technique and that his skill in wushu is unmatchable but due to peace times and “Dragon Slayer” technique was no longer used, so it disappeared from history, but today Sun Ce truly saw the “Dragon Slayer” technique with his own eyes.

TL: Zhuangzi and Lie Yukou: both of them are pre-Qin Taoist Scholars

Looking at Sun Ce wanting to stand up, Huang Zhong exclaimed “Oh, you want to do a last stand, eh?!” Huang Zhong is very shocked due to his “Dragon Slayer” being unable to kill Sun Ce, but Sun Ce is already severely wounded and will die in two bouts with Huang Zhong. As long

as Sun Ce dies, the battle is decided.

"Last stand? Hahaha, you could not afford to kill me!!!" Sun Ce knows that he is not Huang Zhong's match but the situation has rendered himself to be un-killable.

"Are you saying that I am unable to kill you, huh?! Earlier it is because our skills the Dragon Slayer and Country Destroyer are matched up in damage, but now you die!!!" Huang Zhong's eyes quickly flashed dangerously and gripped his golden curved dao to kill Sun Ce.

In Huang Zhong the hand the gold knife brandished again got up to overrun toward Sun Ce.

Sun Ce quickly made a stance to avoid it, although he himself already evolved from strong to mighty, his life is at bigger risk compared to Huang Zhong's.

But, Huang Zhong's golden curved dao is unavoidable and Sun Ce can only defend, but when he tried to parry Huang Zhong's slash, he was unable to withstand the momentum and vomited black blood and said "So, it is not a lie, when you said you are able to kill me in two bouts!!!"

Huang Zhong then exclaimed "Oh, since you know you cannot fight back, then give me your life!!! I will make sure your last moment is painless!!!" Huang Zhong also really admired Sun Ce. At this age, he is already a warlord commanding 100,000 troops and able to become a hyper-class general. Although Huang Zhong himself is already a hyper-class general, his achievement is miniscule compared to Sun Ce's.

Huang Zhong was really envious of this Sun Ce. Sun Jian really had a good son. If Sun Jian was still alive, then the Sun's danger will be threefold and perhaps his lord Lu Bu must withdraw and attack Jing Province.

Fortunately he died under Huang Zu and Cai Mao's arrows, at this very moment, Huang Zhong felt thankful to Huang Zu.

“Cough, cough!!!” Sun Ce coughed out a lot of blood. He is truly tired. This battle really took the toll for him as well giving him lots of experiences and insights. This loss actually is not so bad, as Sun Ce able to gain a lot experience from battling Huang Zhong. But all in all, this is battle where people kill each other, so Huang Zhong right now wanted to kill Sun Ce and make him the same like those of ordinary soldiers who died here.

“I know that I will die in two bouts, but before that, I will have some people to accompany me!!!” Said Sun Ce while smiling, Huang Zhong really admired that Sun Ce can smile in his dying moments.

“Oh, want to take me with you, huh?!” An executor is usually anxious when wanted to execute a hapless man, but this did not happen to Huang Zhong. He is already old, and being old brings calmness to one heart.

“Oh, not you!!! It is your little lord who will come with me!!! Our respected His Highness Prince of Shu!!!” Sun Ce pointed his Conqueror Spear toward Liu Mang's direction.

“Um?!” Huang Zhong's brow wrinkled. He quickly turn his head and

panicked. His little lord Prince of Shu was besieged by two generals Chen Wu and Dong Xi and more and more of the Danyang soldiers are climbing the city wall. Now the amount of Danyang soldier's personnel already matched with the Urban Army.

Although in two bouts, Huang Zhong can kill Sun Ce but the time will take too long. Those two commanders will tear apart Urban Army. Huang Zhong will never let any harm happen to Liu Mang out of life debt to Liu Mang for healing his son and Liu Mang is his little lord.

"Humph!!!" Huang Zhong humphed coldly and he prepared to leave Sun Ce's location and goes to Liu Mang.

"Stop him!!!" Sun Ce said it while coughing. His order is very decisive and no hesitation at all.

"Yes, sir!!" Danyang soldiers of Zuo quickly attacked Huang Zhong. They could not disobey Sun Ce's orders and their brothers also have been killed by Huang Zhong.

"Sun Ce, do not force my hand even further!!!" Huang Zhong's eyes is flashing killing intent. This Danyang soldiers of Zuo will perish shortly by Huang Zhong.

"Hahaha, I really do not care anymore!!! All I need to do is to halt you here!!!" Sun Ce knows that Huang Zhong wants to rush toward Liu Mang and will ignore him. Sun Ce really took fancy on this Huang Zhong, but unfortunately he will not be able on his side forever. "That Lu Bu Lu Fengxian and Liu Mang Liu Hanyang, what good do they have for having a loyalty of such a valiant general? That Goddamned Slave of Three

Surnames and Fake Prince of Shu, damn you both!!!" Though Sun Ce.

Danyang soldiers are gathering up one by one. Danyang soldiers feared death, but once you killed one of their people, more and more hatred gathered up turning into a craze. As we have said before, Danyang soldiers come from one town where the town only had one surname, so every single of the Danyang soldiers killed is a brother, an uncle or a father is killed.

So, Sun Ce's strategy now is to halt Huang Zhong until he managed to breakthrough Wancheng city. After that, Huang Zhong only had two options which are to surrender or continue to fight. If he surrendered then good, he will certainly hold a very high position in Jiangdong's army and may possibly lead 100,000 soldiers under him.

However Sun Ce had misjudged the situation because all of a sudden Huang Zhong said "Oh, why should I go there? As long as I have you as a hostage, it is the same as helping my little lord!!!" Huang Zhong quickly redirect his feet toward Sun Ce.

"The hell?!" Sun Ce also stunned. He really did not think that this Huang Zhong is charging toward him again now. Huang Zhong only need two bouts in order to get him as a hostage and these Danyang soldiers will not be able to stop him.

Although Danyang soldiers are strong, they only serve as elite soldiers and they are not commanders, naturally cannot know the terror of a general.

Exchanging Sun Ce with Prince of Shu? Truly this Huang Zhong is very

courageous and quick thinker.

Sun Ce was already unable to fight anymore and can only support his body. Sun Ce actually did not want to lose these Danyang soldiers, but they already emitted big killing intent and Huang Zhong has killed at least 10 Danyang soldiers, so they will not miss this chance to kill him.

Also, this can be a big gamble to hold off Huang Zhong for Chen Wu and Dong Xi to grab Prince of Shu Liu Mang and let Wancheng city collapsed by itself.

Lu Bu, with Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and Formation Breaker, is the king of land warfare. Sun Ce, although he is also pretty confident himself, knows that fighting these two elites will be a very narrow win with unrecoverable damage from each sides. From 100,000 troops he maybe only left with 10,000 troops and maybe they will not win the fight. So, now, they need to conquer Wancheng city again. After Wancheng city returned to their hand, Sun Ce's army can cut Lu Bu army's supply lines and be on defense all the time along with their natural defenses that Lu Kang and Liu Xun has built.

This Wancheng city had been besieged by Sun Ce two years ago when he was under Yuan Shu's rule. He besieged Lu Kang for a whole two years without any result rather than just cutting off Lu Kang's communication and supply routes to outside world and let them starve themselves to death.

Two years of meaningless battle. Sun Ce thought "In just two years, I can destroy Jiangxia. In just two years Yuan Shao and Cao Cao start to duke it out in Guandu!!! But I am stuck on that meaningless battle with a prolonged blockade just because the city has a natural defensive

advantage!!! No more will I suffer like that!!!”

So Sun Ce roared “Fight to the death!!!” All of Danyang soldiers also bellowed “Fight to the death!!!” They must kill Huang Zhong for 10 of their uncles and relatives who died earlier.

Sun Ce and Liu Mang is fighting a bitter battle to the death.

“One general equals to a thousand men” Liu Mang finally knows what this idiom means. One of the reasons of the demise of Shu Country besides Liu Shan's stupidity is the lack of mighty generals because at the end of Three Kingdoms period, only Wei Yan is capable enough to fight and he is killed due to treason. Regarding Wei, the reason that Cao Cao unable to unify China is also because the lack of mighty general, like Lu Bu. He had Cao Ren, Xiahou Dun as his valiant generals and advisors like Guo Jia, Xun Yu and Xun You, Jia Xu and Cheng Yu, he also had the Ferocious Cavalry but he was still unable to take Wu Country and Shu Country.

As an example, historically when Zhang Fei is the only one who guarded Chang Ban Bridge. He bellowed his challenge and even killed Xiahou Jie because he is too afraid to face Zhang Fei. Zhang Fei at this timeline is still first-class general, but when they reached Chang Ban Bridge, it can be said, at that time, he already become a hyper-class general and can stand toe-to-toe with the current Lu Bu and Huang Zhong.

With such a person bellowing a challenge and with an aura to oppress people who is able to kill anyone who tried to get close to them, even Xiahou Yuan and Xiahou Dun will not approach him. Inside Cao army's massive numbers, there was only two generals who are able to fight toe-

on-toe with them, and those people are Dian Wei and Xu Chu. And with Dian Wei gone, Cao Cao got more paranoid and made Xu Chu his personal bodyguard, unable to leave Cao Cao's side even for a second..

At the hand of Liu Bei, not only did they have Zhang Fei but he also had Guan Yu, Zhao Yun and Chen Dao as Zhang Fei's peers.

Zhao Yun was most famous when he alone charge 7 times while carrying baby Liu Shan in Changban. Even though he was confronted with many generals and soldiers, he still managed to get out of there alive.

Currently Liu Mang does not have those kind of generals in his hand, if only Cheng Yu or Gan Ning were here, he might stand a better chance.

“Bump!!!” Another Urban Army soldier is flying, struck by Dong Xi.

“Whiz, whiz, whiz!!!” Huang Xu is also shooting those soldiers without even stopping for a breath. All of his shots managed to kill the enemies, but every time he killed one enemy, 10 will come and replace him. The 2,000 reserve squad of the Urban Army also joined the battle. Sun Ce’s army is really all out in this battle as if they are on their last legs. They really think that they can take Wancheng city this day.

Dusk is approaching but Sun Ce’s army shows no sign of retreating at all, instead they kept piling up and charging toward them.

Reinforcements, if only they have reinforcements.

Liu Mang right now can only defend. The Danyang soldiers that Chen Wu and Dong Xi led, one by one was cut down by Urban Army, but the Urban Army also got a very big casualties now. Basically they have the same amount of loss.

Danyang soldiers actually can still afford to take losses, but the Urban Army already unable afford anymore. From 3,000, the Urban Army were spread to four gates. In Liu Mang's hand there are only 300 troops, but the Danyang soldiers got at least 2 divisions here.

The Liu clan's private soldiers were cut down from 5,000 to 2,000. From those 2,000, the numbers were cut down to more than a half of it, to separate the severely wounded, but alive with the one who is still alive and able to fight which was less than 1,000 troops.

The Urban Army who are fighting in the city wall from started 3,000 troops now had only less than 2,000 troops.

Chen Wu then exclaimed “Your Highness Prince of Shu, SURRENDER!!!” Right after saying that Chen Wu pounded the Liu clan private soldiers, killing him, and it made a sickening sound. Chen Wu really did not care about anything anymore as this is the battlefield which one must slaughter the others in order to survive.

“Surrender?! Hahaha, are you still spouting nonsense until now?” Liu Mang retorted back while glaring at Chen Wu and Dong Xi. Both of them are the ones who killed most of his Urban Army now. The Danyang soldiers are still fighting fiercely against the Urban Army, the Danyang soldiers are currently no match with coordinated attacks from the Urban Army.

“No surrender, then die!!!” Chen Wu's said it with regret. Capturing alive is better than killing, but if one does not surrender, then why bother?

“Wu, do not bother persuading him. I want to eat his body!!!” Dong Xi licked his lips.

“No, whatever you do, you can only kill him, not eat him!!!” Chen Wu disagreed. This Liu Mang is the Prince of Shu and one of the Han royalties. Although the Han Dynasty is already crumbling, but people still revere the Han. He can be killed but cannot be eaten, because it meant you ate your sovereign. Eating him will also give Cao Cao a righteous cause to destroy you.

They discussed it as if Liu Mang had already become a fish on the chopping block.

They know that Lu Bu's army had no reinforcements, even if they came, these two already know that Wancheng city will become their lord's possessions once again.

“Want this Liu Mang or this Wancheng city, go fuck yourself and die!!!” Liu Mang gritted his teeth. He is very tired. Liu Mang has been battling Sun Ce’s army from noon until now for almost 6 hours but for whatever reason, Wancheng city had not fallen.

“In that case, die for me!!!” Chen Wu also got crazy, he already wasted too much time and exclaimed “Dong Xi, attack together!!”

“Hahaha, Chen Wu, finally you go crazy too!!!” Dong Xi smiled, because Chen Wu finally had gotten enraged. Chen Wu then exclaimed “In half an hour, this Wancheng city will fall to us!!!”

Chen Wu and Dong Xi are second-class generals. Although Dong Xi had great strength, he is an untrained brute, if he met with a master like Jiang Qin, he will not win. But Jiang Qin will not easily provoke Dong Xi, as he likes to eat people and when doing battle, Chen Wu will quickly aid Dong Xi, forming tag team. Both of them are so coordinated that when battling them, it is just like fighting Taishi Ci.

“SHAAAA!!!!” Dong Xi began to charge. Dong Xi's body is huge and he is able to sweep the enemy in front easily but if he is alone, he will be very careful as in front of him there was a spear forest that Urban Army formed, but this is where Chen Wu comes in. Chen Wu with his pair of iron rod can deflect the spear wall while Dong Xi charges toward them.

The defensive formation was crumbling in front of these two’s tag-team attack!!! Each time their step made the earth tremble, they threw the balance of all Urban Army

“Easy, easy, hahahaha!!!” Dong Xi laughed. The Urban Army who managed to hit Dong Xi were not able to bring any damage to him and only brought damage to themselves, several of them were already vomiting blood, but due to great shield that they wore, it is only considered minor damage. But the same thing, cannot be said to Liu clan's private soldiers as they are currently stuck on Dong Xi's hammer like candy. Their armor is thin like paper and unable to withstand that kind of assault. Dong Xi quickly drunk their blood and exclaimed “Delicious, delicious!!!”

Chapter 160 – Rampage (2)

"Bump, bump, bump!!!" A powerful heavy cavalry wad running across Lujiang Prefecture. They started last night and it is already almost night again, they have worked their warhorses nonstop. They are in such a hurry that all of their biological needs were done on top of their warhorse.

But, even in this hurry, the cavalry soldiers' faces were strong and determined, only by closer examination can tell how tired these soldiers were.

"Milord, Yu requests for a short break!" Cheng Yu is riding with this division and is currently shouting to the commander who was wearing a golden armor.

"No, we cannot afford to have a short break!!!" Lu Bu shook his head. When Cheng Yu and his 100 heavy cavalry bodyguards arrived in Shucheng County, Lu Bu already knew that the news is pretty bad. Lu Bu also prepared to return to the main HQ after finishing Shucheng County and fight Sun Ce again. But who would have expected that Sun Ce attacked Wancheng city directly out of desperation.

Wancheng city's defenders amounted to only 8,000 troops and Sun Ce had 100,000 troops. Even an idiot can claim that the battle is a lost cause. How can they take a break, when Wancheng city will be broken through in any minutes? In Wancheng city, it did not only have Lu Bu's army's grain and provisions, but it also housed Lu Bu's family.

If it was only grain and provisions, it would not be too big of a problem,

because Lu Bu can just order a massacre on Shucheng County to grab grain and provisions. But the big matter is, if Wancheng city was broken through, Sun Ce will massacre all of Lu Bu's family in exchange for Da Qiao's death.

Therefore when Lu Bu obtained this urgent report, he quickly transferred command to Gao Shun, Zhang Liao and Zang Ba to continue the siege and he himself rode with the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry along with Cheng Yu and Urban Army's cavalries posthaste.

"But, but they...!"Cheng Yu is pointing toward Urban Army's cavalries and Bing Province Heavy Cavalries. They have done a lot of battle before, in Shucheng County and Jiashi County and now they are forced to return to Wancheng city, so they just gritted their teeth and rode their warhorses, especially when they heard that their little lord is in danger.

"Also tired?! Ask them, if they are tired or not?!" Lu Bu said it while sneering.

"Not tired!!! Not tired!!!" Those wolf boys are screaming loudly even though their stamina already exhausted due to prolonged ride.

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry are group of wolves. Wolves can hold their hunger in order to fight a prolonged battle, and they are also very resilient to sleep, and even if they are tired, they just needed to sit on the warhorse and fall into deep sleep immediately.

"If you are not tired, then increase your speed now!!!" Lu Bu shouted to all of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry and started speeding up again.

“DIE!!! DIE!!!” Lu Bu’s army and Sun Ce’s army are clashing fiercely with each other. Huang Zhong and his Urban Army division is cutting down Danyang soldiers one by one while on the other side, Liu Mang was pounded severely by Chen Wu and Dong Xi causing serious casualties.

Urban Army under Liu Mang’s lead just kept bring pushed back until they were already at a corner where further retreating will bring damage to the inner city. The Liu clan private soldiers were all garbage, they were unable to fight, if not, how can they be pushed this far? Moreover, if they retreat into inner city, they can forget about winning this battle, as civilian casualties will be high.

Liu Mang then order his division to stop and exclaimed “Brothers, our backs are against the wall. If we retreat any more, we might as give them the key this Wancheng city! If you follow me, you will only find death!!!”

Liu Mang’s Urban Army are all tired. They are all hoping to retreat to Wancheng city or hoping to leave Wancheng city, never to return again, but they are blocked by the fact that there were 100,000 troops down there and several Danyang soldiers elites waiting to slaughter them.

Liu Mang continues his speech “You can pick one of these two choices. First is to surrender. This Liu Mang will not hold you back! Throw down your weapon and go down the city wall. Do not worry, your pride will still be there, for this Liu Mang has acknowledged your heroism. Second choice is to fight to the end. Even though this Liu Mang is not promising you all survival, I can promise to stand by all of you till the end!!!” Liu Mang knew in his heart, that Wancheng city is unable to be defended

anymore. From 8,000 soldiers who are defending Wancheng city, only less than 3,000 troops who are professional and trained soldiers. 5,000 troops were from the Liu clan's private soldiers and were recruited from local farmers. They were all part-time soldiers. One can say in spring, they needed to plant rice, in summer, they needed to pick up swords to fight. One can simply see how big their battle potential is.

Even if all of them were professional soldiers, he only had 8,000 troops. Impossible to fight 100,000 troops. Liu Mang felt very bitter, he knew that staying in the city will only count as fighting to one's last breath, but he has promised Lu Bu that he, Liu Mang, will not lose this Wancheng city. Also he has promised to Su Fei that he will give payback to Sun Ce's army. Liu Kai and Liu Neng were ordered by Liu Mang to go to his mansion, preparing them to leave Wancheng city along with Lu Bu's family.

"General, we do not surrender!!!" Chu Jie speaks up. Chu Jie is young but he is a veteran and already fearless of death. Moreover, he needed to make an example of all of Danyang soldiers Chu division as he is their third master.

"General, are you going to abandon us?!" The nearby Urban Army lieutenant is inquiring Liu Mang's words.

"General, I want to surrender, but I can no longer leave!!!" Another Urban Army soldier is speaking to Liu Mang while showing his leg wound, he is now standing supported by other soldiers.

"General, we did not die in Xiapi, we did not die in Kaiyang, even in Mt. Bagong. If our fate is to die, we have already died many times. What is the different this time?!" Chu Jie inquired again.

“No, this is different. In Xiapi, we had the darkness of night as our disguise. In Kaiyang, I brought you equipment’s and warhorses. And in Mt. Bagong, there were supply troops that can fight back as reinforcements. But now?! We have nothing, we've exhausted our miracles!!! Only death awaits us!!!” Liu Mang explained to all of them, but no one faltered in Liu Mang's speech. In fact, they become much more resolute.

“Little lord, this Xu's life was extended by you. Now Xu will repay his debt to you!!!” Huang Xu also opened his mouth. Liu Mang ordered Huang Xu to leave with Liu Kai and Liu Neng, but he persisted to fight for Liu Mang to the end.

“Since all of you want to die with me!!! Then we die together here!!!” Liu Mang opened his mouth finally then he licked the corner of his mouth as if he wanted to slaughter many people and screamed “Urban Army!!! Together; we share life and death!!!”

“Urban Army!!! Together, we share life and death!!!” All of the Urban Army and Huang Xu exclaimed the same words. They had become crazy once more and screamed “SHA, SHA, SHA!!!” killing innumerable Danyang soldiers. The once cornered Urban Army were now fighting back.

“Hooo, a last stand!!!” Dong Xi who just finished the last of Liu clan's private soldier finally focused his attention toward Urban Army.

“Oh, they have a death wish, so let's help them die!!!” Chen Wu was getting angry because he was already unable to make Liu Mang

surrender.

“HAAA!!!” Both of them are leaping toward the Urban Army like tigers.

“Bang!!!” Dong Xi's great hammer is pounding fiercely. The great shield soldier is pressed under the great shield splitting fresh blood. The other spearmen were also unable to stab Dong Xi because Chen Wu quickly intervened “Do not worry about your flank, I am here!!!” Chen Wu quickly blocked their spears and killed the owner. Dong Xi also saw that those insects actually did not need to do close range battle, he can just throw their spears like javelins and they died quickly by that strike.

Their comrade’s death aggravated Urban Army to keep pressing forward.

“DIE, DIE!!!” Dong Xi and Chen Wu had become monsters.

Dong Xi quickly sprinted himself toward Liu Mang while drooling “DIE AND BECOME MY MEAL!!!” Dong Xi did not want to use his hammer as it will destroy his meat's quality, so he used his leg to trounce him.

Liu Mang quickly grasped his great shield and broadsword, so he can chop off Dong Xi's leg.

“I won't let you do that!!!” “Clang, argh!!!” Chen Wu quickly react to Liu Mang's action and managed to make him drop his broadsword and put it away. Now in Liu Mang's hand only a great shield was left.

“Capture him alive!!!” Chen Wu exclaimed. A weaponless Liu Mang was

a fish on the chopping block in Chen Wu's eyes. He definitely was not anyone's match anymore.

“HAHAHAHA, YOU ARE MINE!!!” Dong Xi laughed as he stretched out his hand to reach Liu Mang.

“HUMPH!!!” Liu Mang brandished his great shield and charged toward Dong Xi.

“Are you hoping to injure me with a broken shield?!” Dong Xi asked lightly.

“Who said a shield is unable to damage people?!” All of great shield soldiers' shields have been polished on the edge and is very sharp. Due to Dong Xi's negligent attitude, he just kept his hand stretched out and when Liu Mang's shield made contact with his hand, it cleanly sliced two of his fingers. Blood is spurting like water fountains.

“AAAHHHH, MY HAND, MY HAND!!!” Dong Xi and Chen Wu both were negligent. He should have protected Dong Xi. But again, earlier, he also had the same idea which is “Shields were a defensive weapon, not an offensive weapon!!!” But he never thought that a shield can also be used to attack.

The fierce ache made Dong Xi berserk. “I want to kill you!!!” Dong Xi had already forgotten Chen Wu's advice to capture him alive and already. He quickly brandished his hammers and start pounding toward Liu Mang.

“AAAHHHH!!!!” Liu Mang screamed. He managed to avoid the first strike, but he was unable to avoid the second one. The giant hammer hit him on the shield and directly hit Liu Mang on the chest.

“Bang!!!” The golden armored general flew to the other side. Liu Mang finally realized the feeling of being hit by a meteorite.

“Little lord!!!” Huang Xu is screaming. He is currently blocked by the Danyang soldiers and did not have enough time to rescue Liu Mang.

“General!!!” The Urban Army soldiers were also getting crazy and they quickly gathered toward Liu Mang.

“None can stop me!!! I MUST KILL HIM!!! I MUST KILL HIM!!!” Dong Xi's hand is bleeding, but it cannot prevent his bloodlust from killing Liu Mang.

Chapter 161 – Chen Wu Has Fallen

“Cough, cough!!!” Liu Mang struggled to stand. That Dong Xi, only one injury made him berserk. Chen Wu can only focus on Dong Xi, hoping Dong Xi did not kill or eat Liu Mang; bringing him huge repercussions.

“DIE FOR ME!!!” Dong Xi dropped his great hammer toward Liu Mang. Liu Mang rolled to the side while suppressing his pain to evade his strike. The great hammer made a hole at the ground of city wall.

As he rolled Liu Mang's grabbed a spear with his hand, and plopped himself up to a stand.

“Die, die, die, die!!!” Dong Xi's huge body moved up again. His focus is completely on Liu Mang.

“WHIZ, WHIZ!!!” Two arrows were shot flying. Dong Xi did not hear nor notice those arrows, but Chen Wu however did and managed to deflect the arrows.

“SHAAA!!!” Two Urban Army soldiers charged toward Dong Xi, but Dong Xi also did not care, as his eyes are fixated solely on Liu Mang.

“HUMPH!!!” Chen Wu right now is very alert, so he quickly killed those two soldiers. He cannot let Dong Xi receive more damage, for he is responsible for defending Dong Xi.

When one person is attacked, he kept in mind when to do defend or

attack. Those are the fundamentals of a fight, even if that person is a hyper-class general.

Dong Xi and Chen Wu realized that problem and became aware that they will not be able to reach the hyper-class status. So they focused on becoming a master in one aspect. One person did the offense and the other did the defense, with that combination, Chen Wu and Dong Xi are unstoppable.

“Darned insect!! DIE!!!” Dong Xi started pounding his double hammers again. If this hit connects, Liu Mang would instantly become a meat patty. It didn't help that he was currently cornered and had no chance to escape as his gold cloth was susceptible to blunt weapon attacks.

“Hoho, nice chance!!!” When Liu Mang saw Dong Xi approaching, he stayed calm and even smiled. The spear in his hand was already firmed toward Dong Xi's heart and if Liu Mang put all his strength on the spear trust, he could kill him in one clean blow.

A spear's thrusting speed is very fast. If it was only Dong Xi by himself, he would be pierced without enough time to react. However...

“Oh no you don't, you won't harm Dong Xi again!!!” Chen Wu sneered. He will not make the same mistake twice. Dong Xi already lost two fingers due to his negligence on defending him.

Chen Wu's iron rod quickly moved to defend Dong Xi's entire body.

“Hehehe, got you!!!” Liu Mang laughed happily. Suddenly both of his

hand were twisting to change the direction, but strangely his bone was also making sounds.

"THE HELL?!" Chen Wu was stunned. What the hell is this Liu Mang going to do? Breaking his arm as a trump card? Is he forfeiting the battle? If one looked at the situation calmly, Liu Mang did not forfeit the battle, he was merely preparing himself to strike.

Liu Mang then exclaimed his move "Conqueror Destroy Cauldron!!!" This move is one of Lu Bu's skill with his ji halberd. The many cases when Lu Bu pulled out this move, a general always died. Dong Zhuo also died b, y this move, it destroyed his heart completely, like being shot by an anti-tank sniper rifle.

This move centralized all of the strength into the spear and that strength is used on a thrusting move while spinning as if it was a drill. If Liu Mang's strength had reached at least first-class, then it will not harm Liu Mang at all. But Liu Mang only had third-class general strength, so the recoil from this move cost him a dislocated arm and his muscles ripping from the force of the move.

"DIE!!!" Liu Mang showed a fierce expression. The pain of having one's muscles being torn was a pain not any mortal can endure. However, Liu Mang had to do this in order to survive.

"THIS KIND OF SPEED, IMPOSSIBLE!!!" Chen Wu quickly pulled out his iron rod, but it was already too late. Liu Mang's speed was too fast. It far surpassed the speed a third-class general should have.

During the battle with Dong Xi, Chen Wu also observed Liu Mang and

decided that this Prince of Shu Liu Mang's skill in wushu had only reached third-class general. Only a third-class general was appointed as a commander-in-chief, where was the logic? If Chen Deng or Su Fei were the ones who were appointed, it is still logical, as their strength is about second-class generals, save for Su Fei.

So when they engaged in battle earlier with Dong Xi, he concluded that this was an easy battle to win. Even with those Urban Army defending him, it still should have been an easy feat.

However, Chen Wu was truly stunned because Liu Mang managed to force himself to reach first-class. In battle, a soldier needed to have skill and high amount of experience. Good skill can improve the chance to survive in battle and can kill more enemies. However, even if your skill is good, if you meet with a general, that is also useless.

An elite soldier managed to fight 10 enemies. Add more, then that elite soldier will die. But Liu Mang is using a skill of 1000 people.

“Cough!!!” Liu Mang vomited blood. His head also emitting cold sweat but it did not affect the movement on his hand. Liu Mang has indeed leveled up. He had been in how many life and death situations? Each battle served as his experience to level up and his skill in wushu did not deteriorate even a bit. During the battle with Zhou Tai, Liu Mang impossible not to level up, but he just not used to with his new level.

Both Chen Wu and Dong Xi also give Liu Mang much more experience and to familiarize with Liu Mang's own toughness in order to understand his body better and better.

The Conqueror Strike Cauldron is Lu Bu's battle skills and was taught by Lu Lingqi to Liu Mang. Lu Bu always said to Lu Lingqi that this skill is only for male but she is able to learn it and pass it to Liu Mang.

Liu Mang's primary weapon was a shield, but it does not hinder him to use other weapons. His great shield was lost, but he found a spear and it is a very good opportunity to display his skill in spear now.

In Liu Mang's eyes, Chen Wu is a cauldron waiting to be destroyed. Liu Mang will not choose Dong Xi as a target. He knows if he stabs him, he will also be slain by the hammer. But luckily there's Chen Wu. Chen Wu's task is to defend and will definitely put all of his focus to protecting Dong Xi, so therefore when he tried to protect Dong Xi, his own defense will be opened and easy to be killed.

Originally Liu Mang also afraid because of his twin rod, but right now he just do a full thrust in order to kill him. A do-or-die feat.

“HUMPH, so what if you force yourself? In the end, you must die!!!” Chen Wu also getting crazy as if Liu Mang's strike can be deflected. He is also regretted a lot. He has been full of himself twice in this battle and this will cost him big price. He is also regretted that he already do not have enough time to react. Chen Wu's face is completely fierce and tried to receive the spear in order to do counter. He calculates it will be a small damage or at the worst one severely wounded. As long as can counter attack Liu Mang, it is worth his sacrifice.

Dong Xi had also discovered Liu Mang intention wants to help Chen Wu, the great hammer in hand try to help Chen Wu, but a person of his main attack can have the major function. Dong Xi also realized Liu Mang's intention and started to attack at Liu Mang's strike, it managed to

destroy the tip but it did not hinder anything and right now it is aiming at Chen Wu's chest.

"GO DIE!!!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed. "IMPOSSIBLE!!!" Chen Wu could not believe it at all, as the strike is almost reached him.

"WHO SAID BROKEN SPEAR CANNOT KILL PEOPLE!!!!" Liu Mang just casually said the words, however due to his arm in pain, he is speaking as if shouting right now.

"POOF!!!" Chen Wu spurt out blood from his mouth and his body is thrown away from his initial position while spinning his body due to the momentum of that strike, his blood also mixed with black fragment from his internal organs. Liu Mang managed to pull off "Conqueror Destroy Cauldron" move perfectly. Usually due to armor, a general is not that easy for his heart to be stabbed or hit. But Conqueror Destroy Cauldron move when done without the tip of the spear is similar a pole hitting his heart. So, the aftereffect is Chen Wu do not have damage on his outer body, but his heart is destroyed from inside due to his heart being stabbed by his lungs bone.

"Go to hell!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed. Liu Mang really had no more stamina left as that move had drained him completely. If Chen Wu did not die, then Liu Mang's skill is wasted.

"HAHAHAHA!!! THIS IS UNEXPECTABLE OUTCOME!!! REALLY UNEXPECTED!!!" Chen Wu is bleeding internally but he managed to laugh. His heart is already destroyed but what made Chen Wu able to laugh is only his indomitable will.

Earlier Chen Wu still very confident that he can kill or capture Liu Mang, but never he expected that his fate is to die by this third-class general. He is not willing to admit any defeat or death, for his mission is to retake Wancheng city, not die. So Chen Wu just let out an ironic laugh but every time he laughed, he coughed out blood profusely.

“If I am to die here, then you also die here!!!” Chen Wu spouted his last threat. From able to fight changed into dying, this contrast is too great, no one can bear this kind of humiliation especially for a general.

“Dong Xi, kill him for me!!! Dong Xi, kill him for me!!!”

“CHEN WU!!!” Dong Xi also startled because Chen Wu's appearance is truly scary because Chen Wu is spurting blood nonstop and blood also oozing out from all of his orifices. Liu Mang really managed to kill Chen Wu.

“He killed me, Dong Xi!!! Kill...him....for.....me!!!!” Chen Wu's last sentence is very incoherent as he kept spurting out blood nonstop and finally after that last sentence, he breathes his last. He died with a feeling of disbelief. Disbelief that he would die on the hand of a third-class general, died on the hands of an unknown general.

“CHEN WU, CHEN WU!!!!” Dong Xi screamed Chen Wu's name as he is holding his body. Chen Wu is always together with Dong Xi, acting as Dong Xi's shield. Now that shield is destroyed to pieces, how can Dong Xi be protected from harm while he is doing assault? How can a body survive without a brain?

“YOU!!!!! YOU KILLED CHEN WU!!!! YOU DIEEEEEE!!!!!” Dong Xi

screamed while doing final charge toward Liu Mang.

"HAHAHA!!!!" Liu Mang just laughed weakly while looking at Dong Xi and thought "Want me to die, eh? Come and claim my life now, at least your Chen Wu also follow me to death!!!"

"Bump, bump, bump!!!" Suddenly there is a sound of drum beating signaling to retreat from Sun Ce army.

"Kill him? Retreat? Kill him? Retreat?" Those words were muttered by Dong Xi while he is uncertain of what to do, and Liu Mang himself just stay silent and closed his eye, waiting for certain death.

"General, drum already signaled retreat!!! Quick, we run!!!" The remaining of Danyang Zuo soldiers said to Dong Xi to lead them to retreat.

"Yes, run, yes, drum the signal to retreat!!!" Dong Xi nodding profusely while being absent-minded. He quickly holds Chen Wu's corpse and quickly scaled down the ladder, following him is the Danyang soldiers.

"What the hell happened?!" Right now Liu Mang is unable to comprehend anything because of fatigue. How the hell did they retreat after winning this kind of difficult battle?

Afterwards, Chu Jie told Liu Mang the information that he obtained from Lin Danda and Er Gou Zi. They are saying that Chen Wu and Dong Xi are like conjoined twins. One is the brain and one is the body. Liu Mang realized that he did not make the wrong decision when he killed Chen

Wu as killing Dong Xi will only enrage Chen Wu but Chen Wu is the one who died, so Dong Xi is confused and do not know what to do.

Also Liu Mang really have been saved by retreat drums and Danyang soldiers. Dong Xi who was once started to berserk, when hearing retreat drums sound quickly reminded by the surrounding Danyang soldiers to retreat. So as of now, Liu Mang's life have been twice saved by Danyang soldiers.

Chapter 162 – Plan To Recruit Black Flag

The retreat of Sun Ce's army was due to Huang Zhong's merit. Originally Sun Ce wanted to keep persisting in occupying Wancheng city, but his Danyang soldiers were all cut down by Huang Zhong, leaving him in a very distressed state. No one was able to withstand Huang Zhong's strike, not even the elite Danyang soldiers.

During two bouts of battle with Sun Ce, Sun Ce already could not withstand Huang Zhong's strike. So Sun Ce can only give up and retreat. Otherwise, when Liu Mang is killed, he will also be killed. The weather also started to get cloudy, making visibility a-lot worst. In ancient times, there was no light bulb that was powered by electricity. Only the moonlight can be used as a means to illuminate the night. If there was no moon, then at night time one cannot see anything. This is the bad luck of Sun Ce, as his Danyang soldiers started cutting down each other due to zero visibility. So in the end, Sun Ce decided to return to his HQ for a spell.

When all of Sun Ce's army retreated, all that previously fought on the city walls were very relieved, but that relief was short lived, because tomorrow those 100,000 troops will be swarming again like flies.

This day's casualty took a huge toll. 8,000 troops were cut down severely. The Urban Army was only left with 1,000 troops. The Liu clan's private soldier were all decimated.

"Everyone, speak your mind. What should we do tomorrow?!" Liu Mang spoke in a very bitter tone. He knew that siege warfare in the cold weapon era was very brutal, but this? This a battle of annihilation. His

8,000 troops left were dwindled down to 1,000. The Danyang soldiers and Sun Ce army also suffered major losses. Dismissing the Chu division which already left the battlefield, their casualties amounted to more than 10,000 troops and they also lost one of their commanders.

Corpses are everywhere, the city wall was dyed red by blood.

“Little lord, we must abandon the city!!!” Huang Zhong is the one who replied first. Huang Zhong based his decision with his experience being besieged by Lu Bu in Huangzhou city and his vast experience as a general, while Liu Mang is just beginning his career as a general. Wancheng city was already impossible to defend. The personnel they had amounted to 1,000 troops and all of them were already wounded.

“Abandon the city?!” Liu Mang muttered. Liu Mang unconsciously waved his arm and groaned due to the pain and making him profuse in cold sweat. That move Conqueror Destroy Cauldron is truly an inhuman skill.

“No, we must not abandon the city” Liu Mang thought. Only with great difficulty, Lu Bu’s army finally had a good domain and a home to come to. If this city is lost again, then Lu Bu’s army will return to the time where they are wandering in all four directions. If it was just Liu Mang or Lu Bu themselves that were expelled it would still be okay, but they are responsible for their soldiers, Lu Bu’s family, and Lu Bu’s soldiers family as they are0 Liu Mang family’s too. However, not abandoning Wancheng city, meant to die tomorrow.

“Father, we already cannot abandon Wancheng city, there is no other way to escape!!!” Huang Xu opened his mouth. Wancheng city’s four gates already had the enemy’s camps and they have put alarms on each

gate. If one escapes, the alarm will sound and all of Sun Ce's army will swarm on that gate, rendering the escape useless.

Moreover, Wancheng city is already devoid of warhorses and if escaping, one can only depend on one's two feet to run, but that cannot get you very far and they also had the family with them, it is impossible to have casualties when one is walking that slow. Staying in Wancheng city can prolong one's life for one day, if they escaped now, the end will come to them sooner.

"So, we already cannot leave!!!" Liu Mang muttered. If Liu Mang could go back to the future, the issue of warhorses can be solved easily but the CD did not give the slightest response.

"Then we die!!!" Liu Mang gritted his tooth. With him saying that words, he had resolved to fight to the end!!! More than 8,000 comrades died for him, even in death, he will not be lonely.

"Aiyah, if we have at least another 1,000 troops, we can fight again!!!" Huang Zhong also sighed. He himself can escape by brute force alone, but not his troops. If no more incidents happened, the Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will reach here in two days. As long as they have at least 1,000 troops, they still can persevere and defend Wancheng city.

Today the battle took too many lives. That is because Sun Ce use his Danyang soldiers. The Zuo division of Danyang soldiers was decimated today and Sun Ce only left with Chu division. Sun Ce will not hesitate to use them tomorrow, even if they are tired, even if they do not want to fight Lu Bu army. So, as long there were 1,000 people, the battle can be prolonged more.

“1,000 troops reinforcements?!” Liu Neng quickly opened his mouth “Little lord, don’t you remember, we still have another set of private soldiers?!”

“Hrm?!” Liu Mang’s brow wrinkled. What does Liu Neng mean? Does the Liu clan still have hidden soldiers? This damned boy, we are at a big dire strait, but he still do not want to go all out? What the hell does this mean?

Seeing that Liu Mang’s brow wrinkled in anger, Liu Neng quickly knew that Liu Mang had misunderstood his words and said “Little lord, our Liu clan’s private soldiers are already extinguished!!! All of them died in battle including our butlers and gardeners!!!” Their soldiers truly only amounted to those 8,000 troops which possessed the potential of 500 troops.

Logically speaking, the Liu clan, one of the Han Dynasty clansmen, had been deep rooted in Lujiang for more than 100 years, starting with Prince Zhongshan of Jing. A number of their private soldiers should be tenfold than those of Zhou clan who only had two generations who managed to become one of Three Ducal Ministers and one of 9 Ministers. But during Emperor Huan of Han’s rule, he issued an edict that said, all of Han Dynasty clansmen are forbidden to raise their own forces and when Emperor Huan died and Emperor Ling became the emperor, he further enforced this rule. Only Liu Zhang and Liu Biao who controlled 1 fertile province each, managed to build their own army secretly. Liu clan of Lujiang was not so lucky as those two, as every action they took was monitored by Emperor Ling and those two who are posing as “Emperor Ling’s securities” in order to get rid of their weakest enemies. Therefore, the Liu clan of Lujiang can only weep in the shadows and desperately raised their own soldiers from their own servants and butlers in secret,

but due to them lacking good trainers and generals, they were unable to create elites and only able to create part-time soldiers. So, 8,000 troops that the Liu clan was able to raise secretly was already very good for a noble who was constantly under surveillance, but that force is gone now in Wancheng city.

"Little lord, yes, there are 3,000 troops in the prison. They can serve as our reinforcements!!!" Answered Liu Neng.

When Liu Mang listened to Liu Neng, his brows quickly raised!!! Yes, there are 3,000 troops. Those BLACK FLAG!!!! Thought Liu Mang. When Zhou Cheng died, Liu Mang instructed Liu Neng and Liu Kai to put those 3,000 heavy infantry troops of Black Flag into prison. And right now, it is time to subjugate them and integrate them into Lu Bu's army.

Huang Zhong wanted to object but Liu Mang quickly held his tongue. He is truly worried when he heard Liu Neng's words. His words definitely meant to encourage Liu Mang to subjugate those 3,000 troops of Black Flag who were imprisoned by the Liu clans. No one in their correct mind will dare to use captured enemies as their own soldiers. Hey, even Cao's Army will make them surrender first and only after surrendering, will he use them.

Moreover, the situation for Lu Bu's army in Wancheng city was very distressful. They only remained at least 1,000 troops and also once they released these Zhou clan's elite army, they can be considered as half of Sun Ce's army. At that time, those 3,000 Black Flag will quickly clean kill the remnants of Lu Bu's army in Wancheng city.

Huang Zhong again wanted to object but was prevented by Liu Mang and then Liu Mang said "Old General Huang, this Liu Mang wants to

try!!! Help me to stand up!!!" Liu Mang asked Huang Zhong to help him stand up. Both of his arms were already fractured and re set by Huang Zhong when he applied medicinal wine on it, so it is still very painful state.

Liu Kai quickly voiced his disagreement, saying "Little lord, that is too dangerous, please think thrice!!!" While he also reprimanded his son "Neng, my son, why do you spout that nonsense!!!" Liu Kai has seen those 3,000 Black Flag troops. Each one of them is a strong person and according to him, they are able to bend a steel pole by themselves alone. 2 days ago, if Liu Mang did not pull off his strategies and just attacked Zhou Cheng directly, the Urban Army would have been destroyed in an instant.

Before the Urban Army existed as the world's first professional soldiers, all of the warlord's soldiers came from farmers and peddlers, but the Zhou clan quickly recognized the needs for a professional soldier for the fight for hegemony so they raised these Black Flag in secret. They personally picked each of these personnel when they were still children and cultivated them into the elite unit now. But what a pity, Zhou Cheng did not use them wisely and in the end these elite units are unable to show any potential at all.

If Zhou Yu, who is currently besieged in Shucheng County, was the one who used the Black Flag, perhaps Lu Bu's army will not be so quick to regain Jiashi C1ounty and Shiting County and definitely will not be so fast to press on Shucheng County.

"Brother Bogui, I am sorry for being rude, but do you have any alternative or better way?!" Liu Mang said loudly toward Liu Kai. Liu Mang knows in his heart that this is a big gamble. But right now, there are no other options. If he maintainS this state, then tomorrow morning,

Lu Bu's army will be lost from this world and fade into history.

Liu Neng also reprimands his father "Oh, honorable father!!! The success or failure of our Liu clan now depends on this particular gamble!!!" Then Liu Neng kept a long gaze toward his old father. Liu Neng has never seen his old father, the current head of Lujiang's Liu clan, this close before. He noticed his father's hair has started to gray. Liu Kai's burden as the head of Liu clan of Lujiang is the heaviest. Liu Kai tried so hard in order to maintain their existence even though he was monitored by Emperor Huan, Emperor Ling, Liu Biao, and Liu Zhang. One clan was monitored by almost ten thousand people, how can people not be stressed? But Liu Kai managed to maintain his existence by putting himself below them and maintain a good relationship with the court, Liu Biao, and Liu Zhang.

After that, during Yellow Turban Rebellion, the prestige of the house of Han was devastated by that rebellion. However during that time, when Lu clan is still in power, they were still able to live a happy life. After Lu Kang died, besieged by Sun Ce, Liu Yao held power over Lujiang but because he was very afraid of Yuan Shu, he quickly bowed to Yuan Shu and become one of his vassals. But, as Liu Yao is also one of the Han Dynasty clansmen, he treated Liu Kai and his clan with full respect. The same thing also can be said to Liu Xun, whom Yuan Shu ordered to manage Lujiang, but although he treated Liu Kai and his clansmen with full respect, he still kept surveillance on them as Yuan Shu warned them that they will be a threat to him and Yuan Shu.

Finally, when Sun Ce came to rule, Chen Duan and his clan came along and contended with the Liu clan as one of the biggest clans in Lujiang. Increasing their influence one by one by taking over their business ventures and diminishing their influence little by little. Sun Ce actually want to exterminate the Liu clan but he could not do that blatantly as it

will cause an uproar in the nation so Sun Ce hoped with Chen Duan, the Liu clan will move out from Lujiang or at least be reduced to a minor noble clan.

However, Liu Kai told his clansmen that he will bear all of the burdens by himself. Liu Kai and his clansmen endured all the humiliation and licked their ass in order to survive. Whatever Sun Ce's army required, the Liu clan will provide. Even if Sun Ce's army forced them to eat shit, the Liu clan will still obey in order to maintain their survival. So Liu Kai endured all of his anger and despair and wait for the opportune time to rebel against this giant of Jiangdong.

But this time, Liu clan rebelled against Sun Ce and supported Lu Bu. If they lost this gamble, they will be exterminated by Sun Ce. So, Liu Neng urged Liu Kai to take another gamble for their survival once again.

"Dammit, gambling again. No choice then, if we want to be truly free from Sun Ce's oppression!!!" Liu Kai said it while gritting his teeth, as he already unable to endure bullying from Sun Ce again.

"So, little lord. Us, the Liu clan representative, agrees to help you to go to prison and subjugate Black Flag!!!" Liu Neng said with a smile toward Liu Mang.

"Yep, I also agree with this plan!!!" Huang Zhong is in line with Liu Mang's thought. In his mind actually, he only thought that he needed to keep his little lord safe. Even if the Black Flag rebelled, Huang Zhong will give his life in order to let Liu Mang and Huang Xu escape. Huang Zhong had been in debt with Liu Mang since he saved his Huang Xu, a debt that cannot be repaid unless he sacrificed his life for his little lord to cheat death, but with Liu Mang's words to subjugate Black Flag, he also agreed

as it meant it will prolong the fight until his lord managed to rescue everyone.

Liu Mang then placed his hand in the middle, asking for all of them here to work as a team and said “Everyone, let’s work together!!! Dead or alive, together!!!”

“Hrm?!” Huang Zhong and Liu Kai had a feeling strange, as a vocabulary to work as a team and this gesture is not yet invented at this time, but Huang Xu and Liu Neng actually smiled and quickly placed their hand atop Liu Mang’s hand.

“Father, follow my lead!!!” Huang Xu and Liu Neng said toward their fathers.

Huang Zhong and Liu Kai also followed the gesture. When their hand pressed on atop of their son’s hand, they felt the surge of fire coursing through their blood. The hot blood of these young men who dared to strive for success and those who dared to fight bravely re-emerge inside their old body and also screamed the same words with Liu Mang’s lead “Together we share life and death; Together we share riches and honor!!!”

Chapter 163 – Emergence the of Black Flag Leader, Xu Sheng of Langye

“Kata-kata, kata-kata!!!” That is the sound of five people running toward the prison in Wancheng city. Though 3,000 troops are not much to be counted for but Liu Mang must either subjugate them or destroy them completely. However, he did not bring his Urban Army with him because they are wounded and exhausted. So, in order for those 3,000 troops not to suspect anything at all, Liu Mang just bring himself, Huang Zhong, Huang Xu, Liu Kai and Liu Neng.

Finally, they arrived at the prison. Liu Mang is in awe when looking at this prison. In Wancheng city, this prison is not only used as a prison but also as a warehouse and it served as the main point of offensive and defensive operations. A few years ago, when Sun Ce managed to break down Wancheng city’s main gate, the entire Lu clan was besieged here. Lu Kang himself did not admit defeat even after his provisions and food already run out and almost decimated Lu clan because of his stubbornness.

Looking again this prison. The construction is truly reliable. It uses blue stone as the base. Its pillar also was built with 1,000 years old solid and strong teak wood. Actually, this prison in Wancheng city is used for armory and definitely not the place to detain a criminal. And because he obtained 3,000 POW, therefore, Liu Neng quickly moved out all of weapons and armors and put all those Black Flags inside the prison.

Liu Mang is actually a little scared entering this prison, because this is prison is very dark and have no lights at all, in addition to that, no guards at all. That is because all of the prison guards were all deployed in order to defend Wancheng city and now all of them are extinguished.

“Hey, there are people come here!!!” Liu Mang and co did not yet reach the internal prison but the entire prison already seething with excitement, but how disappointed they are for the one who comes is the one who defeated them.

“So, all of you are Black Flag!!!” Liu Mang opened with his words with curious tone. Although Liu Mang had fought Black Flag before, but their armor, helmet and face mask is covering large part of face same like ninjas. Therefore Liu Mang does not recognize them, but looking at those soldiers body made Liu Mang a bit surprised. Their bodies is showing signs of healthy toned body and color. They definitely do not have the yellowish pale face that Liu Mang saw on Cheng Yu’s and Chu Jie’s bodies during Xiapi siege. One must know that being a soldier in this time and age is to eat until full and seeing these Black Flag troops stay healthy and robust, showing that Zhou clan really cherished them as their elites.

“You know who I am, right?!” Liu Mang asked.

“We know, you are the one who defeated us and killed our lord!!!” Answered 8 Black Flag troops to Liu Mang’s inquiry. This golden-armored general was able to kill their lord and was able to defeat the Black Flag with very minimal casualties; though Zhou Cheng is the one to blame for their defeat. Regarding loyalties, these Black Flags have never thought to rebel against Jiangdong's army, so right now it is up to Liu Mang’s scheme to subjugate them.

“Oh, since you know who I am, then you must know why I am here?!” Liu Mang continued his inquiry, but this time without letting any Black Flag answer, he said: “I am here to kill all of you!!!”

“Huh?!” Those Black Flag troops were suddenly confused. They thought

Liu Mang wanted to subjugate them, who ever thought that Liu Mang came to their prison to kill them.

"Little lord, what are you?!" Huang Zhong, Huang Xu, and Liu Kai are all confused looking at Liu Mang's performance because Liu Mang is not asking them to fight for them, but to kill them. Liu Neng was the only one who kept smiling, looking at Liu Mang's performance.

Liu Mang waved his hands to stop Huang Zhong and co's inquiries.

"Che, kill us?! HAHAHAHA!!!! You already are unable to defend this castle by yourself, why bother to killing us now?! HAHAHAHAHAHA!!!" Suddenly there came a mocking sound coming from the Black Flag. The one who made that voice was the leader of Black Flag and was now staring down at Liu Mang with a fiery rage in his eyes.

"Oh, so you know the situation too?!" Liu Mang returned his glare to this leader while sneering. Liu Mang knew that the one who responded back to him was the de facto leader and his grades are much higher than Cheng Quan or Gu Jun who managed to kill Han and Old Man Wu. So, as long as he can break this leader and make him surrender, all of the Black Flag will certainly obey him.

"Oh, I know the exact situation!!! I also know that you are defenseless now and want to ask for our hand to help!!!" The leader sneered and continued his speech "Jiangdong's army's attack has already reached the outer city. Tomorrow, when Jiangdong Army does their last assault, it is the end of all of you!!!"

"Soooo, where do you know the news from?!" Liu Mang looked at the

leader and said with teasing tone.

The leader then said “Hmph, it is should be very obvious. There are no more guards to guard us, from 400 troops down to none today. So even an idiot person should know that the situation is very bad outside!!!”

Liu Mang then teased back “Hoooo, then it is very strange indeed!!! Even without guards. 3,000 POW should have been able to breakthrough this prison by themselves. Why, the mighty tigers of Zhou clan reduced to a mere cats in this cage?! Hmmm…?” Actually when the leader came out, Liu Mang wanted to tell his side of the story from when Sun Ce attacked Wancheng city naval base to the siege of Wancheng city and asked then ask them to fortify the defense, but seeing that haughty attitude, Liu Mang just teased him more.

The leader then said “Yes, it is a shame though!!! This prison is very sturdy and very powerful and unbreakable even with our strength. Assigning 100 people to guard us is more than adequate. But you assigned 400 people to guard us, in order to create an illusion that you had a lot of soldier’s right?! But right now, all of them are missing. And now you are asking for these 3,000 tigers in this cage for help, isn't it to help reinforce you?!” The leader said while staring angrily at Liu Mang.

He continued again “So, in my analysis, your defending army is almost exhausted, by now because you are outnumbered by a big margin!!! Let’s get to the facts shall we? You only have 3,000 Urban Army troops and the Liu clan of Wancheng city has about 5,000 troops and that makes 8,000 troops. With 8,000 troops in this Wancheng city and adding all of the strategic positioning and advantages, you can repel 30,000 troops with ease and you can at least persevere the battle up to 6 months, waiting for Lu Bu’s main army to reinforce you. But right now, all of prison guards who were supposed to guard us are dwindling one by one and now,

there is no one to guard us. So, in conclusion, may I ask you, how many enemies you are facing, hmm? Is it 40,000 or 50,000? No, the number should be at least 100,000 troops that can make all of them dwindling like this!!!" Said the leader while shaking his head and returning his glare toward Liu Mang.

"HAHAHAHAHA!!!! Nice, you are correct!!!" Liu Mang replied heartily while laughing lightly. This person in front of him is really good, he can analyze the condition and was able to deduce a number of enemy units numbered 100,000 troops.

The leader then said again while shaking his head "Our little lord, Zhou Cheng was unable to compete with Sun Ce, let alone with Zhou Yu!!! That Sun Ce is truly a wise lord!!!" When the leader said that, his eyes sparkled as if worshipping an idol.

Then the leader sneered toward Liu Mang "With only 8,000 defenders, are you hoping to defend against 100,000 troops?! The result is very apparent today with all of the prison guards missing, and the lord who led the defense also came here. So, in conclusion, Sun Ce's army has dealt a sharp blow to you and you already cannot persevere right? I calculate, tomorrow at the fastest, noon and at the latest evening, this Wancheng city will changed ownership!!! You are already unable to defend yourself!!! I would like to know, with what will you kill us with?!"

Liu Mang then took a deep breath, he asked the leader "You, what is your name?!"

"This grandpa name is Xu Sheng, Xu Wenxiang of Langye!!!" The leader sneered while holding his head proudly toward Liu Mang.

“Xu Sheng?!” Liu Mang’s brow is rising while hiding his surprise and said: “Are you Xu Sheng of Langye, and hailed from a village in Ju County?!”

Xu Sheng quickly surprised and said, “How did you know that detail?!” Xu Sheng only said that he is a person from Langye and he did not go into the detail, but the person was able to say his origin with such detail. Who is this guy? Xu Sheng thought

“I will answer your question later!!!” Liu Mang answered back while getting truly surprised. Liu Mang had found a 1000-li horse in this prison. Here is a little trivia about Xu Sheng. Xu Sheng is a native from a small village in Ju County and historically is one of Wu country's great generals. He took refuge in Jiangdong due to chaos of war broke during Yellow Turban Rebellion. Later when Sun Quan created “Inn of Talent” in order to recruit able and talented men to serve him, Xu Sheng came to be the most outstanding of them all and was recruited to serve Sun Quan. Xu Sheng had been in so many campaigns and contributed many merits for Wu. During the battle with Huang Zu in Chaisang, Xu Sheng with less than 200 men faced with Huang She with a few thousand troops. Xu Sheng with deft strategies, managed to utilize arrow volley and terrain advantage to destroy Huang She’s troops, killing more than 1,000 troops while he himself loss only 20 men. After that battle, he was promoted to General of Household by Sun Quan. During Battle of Xiaoting, where Liu Bei attacked Wu in order to avenge Zhang Fei and Guan Yu, Xu Sheng participated with Lu Xun and managed to occupy many of Sichuan Army camps and finally successfully repelled Liu Bei with the help of fire attacks by Lu Xun.

Also when Cao Xiu attacked Wu during the Battle of Dongkou, although Xu Sheng was in a disadvantageous situation, as there was a storm at

that time and many of his ships and men were lost, but Xu Sheng still managed to form a defense line and kept fighting to a stalemate. During Cao Pi's assault, Xu Sheng's quick-thinking managed to save the day again. He proposed to Sun Quan, to create an illusion of a wall and boats, which worked as Cao Pi was forced to retreat while lamenting "Wei has thousands of armed cavalry units but they cannot be deployed here" And finally during Sun Quan's later reign, Xu Sheng died of illness.

TL: a 1000-li horse is an idiom to call a very talented person. The idiom actually comes from Red Hare's title

So, one can see this Xu Sheng is a very talented person and is comparable to historical Lu Meng, Taishi Ci, Zhou Tai and Gan Ning as one of Jiangdong stars.

Liu Mang then points his finger toward Xu Sheng and said "You sir, you said that because I am unable to defend myself, right? That I am here to ask for your help!!! Then you are completely wrong!!!"

"Oh, wrong?! Point my mistake now!!! Did not you come to ask us to join your Lu Bu army to defend this hopeless city?!" Xu Sheng said with a disdainful tone and continued "I know Lu Bu and the Bing Province Cavalry already departed from Shucheng County as of now. But according to my analysis, their distance to here should be at least 100 li and the fastest they can arrive is the day after tomorrow, but when they arrive, they will only find your corpses!!! So, I ask again. What else is a reason for a person with a sane mind, the Lord of the castle to boot, to come visit the prisoners of war camp but to recruit them?! "

"Hahaha!!! You really never thought that I will not kill you, sir?!" Liu Mang said it while narrowing his eyes.

“STILL WANT TO KILL US, HUH?! COME ON THEN!!! I WELCOME DEATH FROM YOU!!!! I ALSO WANT TO SEE, HOW MUCH TIME YOU Will SPEND TO KILL US ALL!!! WE HAVE 3,000 COMRADES. EVEN IF WE ALL OFFER OUR NECK, IT WILL BE DAWN WHEN YOU ARE FINISHED WITH US AND AFTER THAT, YOU ARE FINISHED!!!” Xu Sheng said proudly. Xu Sheng is a very perceptive person and he can tell the emotion and state of a person, just by looking at them.

Xu Sheng can see this golden-armored general is badly injured, because every time he spoke, he faintly showed a wince with a painful expression on his face. Although it cannot be seen by the rest of them, Xu Sheng can see it and deduce that this golden-armored general is their commander-in-chief. Even a commander-in-chief has been injured like this, one can see how bad the situation is.

Regarding the veteran general, Xu Sheng judged that he is a little anxious but that anxiousness was not directed toward the Black Flag but toward Liu Mang. He already dismissed them all as if they were insects. That kind of gesture made Xu Sheng understand that this veteran’s skill is very high.

Xu Sheng then deducted, the one who is emitting killing aura similar to the veteran is his son and the other two bloodied scholars are Liu Kai and Liu Neng.

“Yes, you are right!!! Indeed, if all of you are offered your head, even at dawn, I will perish!!! “ Liu Mang said that while nodded approving Xu Shengs words but the last sentence, made everyone startled “BUT THAT IS IF, I USE A SWORD TO KILL YOU!!!”

“What do you mean?!” Xu Sheng's brow wrinkled. He felt threatened from Liu Mang’s last sentence.

“You see this prison? You should know that this prison is constructed by the Prefect Lu Kang!!!” Lu Kang is the one who made the entire layout of Wancheng city and all of the moat projects. He is a truly big character person and a peace lover. Under his leadership, Lujiang can evade the chaos that was caused by the Yellow Turban Rebellion, also Lujiang’s people enjoyed a good and prosperous life. Even when Lujiang was attacked by Sun Ce on behalf of Yuan Shu, Lu Kang managed to put up a strong defense and managed to persevere Sun Ce’s attack by storing grain and provisions up to full two years. That feat can be accomplished by Lu Kang because Lu Kang is very good in civil and military matters.

During that time, the commoners of Wancheng city also followed to fight for Prefect Lu Kang, because in their eyes Lu Kang is one of the benevolent lords.

“Yes, I know who was the one who made this prison, but what is the point?!” Although Xu Sheng knew the one who made this prison, but he kept inquiring Liu Mang to know his true intention.

Liu Mang then said coldly “Then you should know, what is the final fate of the Prefect Lu and most of his clansmen!!!”

“The entire Lu clan perished. One-third of them died in battle, the rest of them died from starvation!!!” Xu Sheng said with a low and deep voice.

“CORRECT!!! Two-third of them starved to death!!! And they died in this very prison!!!” Liu Mang finally said the matter that Xu Sheng most

feared and said coldly “Finally!!! I am able to see how Prefect Lu died in this prison, but this time, it is the Black Flag who will die!!!” Liu Mang then said this in a very threatening tone “Tell me something will you, have you eaten in these past two days?!”

Xu Sheng then saw Liu Mang again and said these words “Are you going to bury us alive with you?!”

Chapter 164 – Subjugation Of Black Flag, Black Flag Agrees As Reinforcement

Xu Sheng finally realized what Liu Mang has been talking about so far. With this prison, which was made from the highest quality materials, Liu Mang can just kill those 3,000 Black Flag by starving them alone. The material for creating this prison was the same material used for the main gate, city wall and also for the mausoleum.

Once you are locked within, even a hyper-class generals cannot open it. What Xu Sheng did not expect was that this Wancheng city prison was also made with the same material from main gate's materials. And that meant, once this prison is locked, one can forget to escape from here as the main entrance will be completely blocked. 3,000 Black Flag troops will starve themselves to death and no one will hear their screams at all. Provided they have not yet eaten in two days.

"You did not fear heavy sin?!" Xu Sheng asked while his gaze is fixated toward Liu Mang.

"HAHAHAHA!!!! Afraid of heavy sin, huh?! I am a general. I have killed more soldiers under my orders and I have so many soldiers under my command die!! I have sinned more than any of you here!!! What is the difference between ordering my men to die and killing enemies and starving and burying you right here and now!!!" Liu Mang just sneered coldly toward Xu Sheng.

"No, this is different!!!" Xu Sheng argued with Liu Mang. On the battlefield, you are forced to be ruthless because if you don't, your life will be lost. But now Liu Mang is going to bury them alive. This is a

similar situation when General Bai Qi of the State of Qin during Warring States period. At that time, after the Battle of Changping, Bai Qi ordered 400,000 soldiers of the Zhao state who surrendered and Shangdang commoners to be buried alive under the false pretext that they are going to revolt.

Now Liu Mang will bury them alive these 3,000 Black Flag with no reason at all in order to threaten them

“THIS IS NO DIFFERENT AT ALL!!! These are the times of war, not the times of peace!!! Killing 1 person is an act of killing, killing 100 people is also an act of killing, killing 10,000 people is also an act of killing. XU SHENG, I WILL NOW TEACH YOU INTIMATELY, WHAT IS THE MEANING OF THE WORD “TO SIN” AND WHAT IS THE DIFFERENCE OF THE SIN BETWEEN KILLING ONE MAN, TEN THOUSAND MEN, ONE MILLION MEN!!!” Said Liu Mang while revealing extreme killing intent.

Xu Sheng who kept his sight at Liu Mang started to tremble. Liu Mang will really bury them without any hesitation these Zhou clan elite private soldiers whose capabilities is not lower than the Formation Breaker and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry.

If Liu Mang can win them, then good. If he leaves them behind, they will definitely be rescued by Sun Ce’s army and at that time, Lu Bu’s army will suffer innumerable casualties.

Seeing this hopeless situation, he might as well bury the enemy alive with them. Will I get an infamous reputation for doing this and be called a butcher in all the historical archives? I no longer care about reputation, fuck them. All I need now is victory and to survive for the next day. thought Liu Mang.

But then again, maybe Liu Mang will become deified by the Tao religion due to his reputation after a millennium has passed, much like Guan Yu

"TO KILL ONE PERSON IS A SIN, TO KILL 10,000 PEOPLE IS ALSO A SIN, TO KILL 1,000,000 PEOPLE IS ALSO A SIN!!!" All people on the scene are trying to understand the words. Liu Mang is right, killing a person is a crime. There are many heroes in Three Kingdoms history who started as a criminal. Such people were Xu Shu, Dian Wei, and Guan Yu. All of them were criminals because they once killed a person and was forced into hiding and in order to avoid government troops, Xu Shu even concealed his name into Shan Fu. When Xu Shu worked for Liu Bei, he thwarted Cao Ren's assault and killed 3,000 troops of his. When Cao Cao heard this and heard of his criminal record, he was not angry but instead he schemed with Cheng Yu to bring Xu Shu to his side and even invited Xu Shu's mother to Xu Chang. When Xu Shu arrived at Xu Chang, he did not say a word at all, but because of Cao Cao's respect of him, his name was written among history books of Cao Wei Kingdom. Guan Yu also historically, he beheaded 6 generals and walked through 5 passes in order to rejoin Liu Bei who was just expelled by Yuan Shao. At that time, Cao Cao still did not put a bit if hatred toward him, in fact, he even praised him for his loyalty.

After Guan Yu was executed by Sun Quan, he buried him with the honor of a warlord, even more extravagant than Yuan Shao's and also honored him as Guan Gong or Duke Guan. Dian Wei also got the same treatment like Guan Yu. Although he died early, killed by Hu Che'er. Before he died, he killed so many people in order to create an escape path for Cao Cao. When Cao Cao heard of his demise, he wept bitterly and screamed that he is his E'Lai.

For Huang Zhong and Huang Xu, their interpretation of Liu Mang's

words was that Liu Mang had a lofty ambition and was not afraid to kill people in order to fulfill his ambition.

For Liu Kai and Liu Neng, Liu Mang's words meant that this Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang is a person who is in complete control of his own destiny and knows where his path will lead. They really thought that when this Liu Mang is on top, with just a breath of his anger, he will be able to kill people from thousand miles distance.

But those words made Xu Sheng afraid to the extreme!!! This person who is standing in front of him, is spouting words like "Killing 10,000 people is a sin, Killing 1,000,000 people is also a sin" with a straight face as if he did not care about death at all. Perhaps in his eyes, these Black Flag troops are only a number in his eyes.

"In the end, what do you want to do with us?!" Xu Sheng finally admitted his defeat and said those words in softly as he hung his head, his heart is screaming that he do not want to die. He is still young and still wanted to live and show his aspirations. These 3,000 Black Flag also wanted the same thing, they should be dispatched to quell this times of war not to be killed in this place like rats.

"Heh, what else, huh? I want to kill all of you and that is the final decision!!! Wancheng city will fall by tomorrow, I have not much longer to live. Heh, perhaps this Liu Mang's head will be the one hanging alongside Zhou Cheng by tomorrow!!! But I am not afraid!!! I have 3,000 Black Flag soldiers to go to hell with me!!! Oh, that's right, how about I burn you all to death? Just like King Zhou of Shang Dynasty did with his palace and treasure!!! HAHAHAHA!!!!" Laughed Liu Mang coldly while his gaze still fixated at Xu Sheng.

The more Liu Mang laughed, Xu Sheng become much more afraid, because when Xu Sheng saw his eyes, he concluded that this person will kill them decisively without blinking an eye.

Then Liu Neng poured fuel on the fire and said “Little lord, the number is a mistake!!! Not 3,000 people but 60,000 people!!!”

“Oh, 60,000 people?! That many, huh?!” Liu Mang pretended to be surprised.

“Yes, that number is correct, little lord!!!” Liu Neng nodded. Liu Neng really found out one of Liu Mang’s true character to be completely different from what he imagined. He had an image of Liu Mang that was a person always hiding behind Lu Bu. All of the Han Dynasty Clansmen were just like that, also, he had been sealed as Prince of Shu by the government.

With all of those titles, it should have meant that he will stay behind Lu Bu even more and avoid battle altogether. Also if it were not him taking a liking to Lu Bu’s daughter, how can a royal person marry a peasant’s daughter? Also according to Liu Neng, he is an undecisive person as he is also easily swayed by emotion, much like his father-in-law.

However, that image is shattered now. Where the hell did that undecisive person in Liu Neng’s mind go ti? It changed into a vindictive and murderous person in front of him. This person is the one who decisively annihilated all of the noble clans and commoners who participated in rebellion except for Lu, Han, Liu and Xu clan with a total casualty count of 60,000 people. And now these 3,000 troops will also be killed in one breath.

Even Cao Cao who was most famous for being an oversuspicious person only killed less than 10 people by himself! Also, when Cao Cao's father Cao Song died in Xu Province, Cao Cao only massacred three counties and even then it only 3,000 people that were killed and that managed to scare Tao Qian.

But this little lord of his had the blood of 60,000 people and if you added those enemies who died on the battlefield, the number amounted to 100,000 people.

Hearing Liu Neng's words, Xu Sheng final mental defense finally crumbled and started to tremble while holding the prison bars and started to speak incoherently "General!!!! No, Your Highness Prince of Shu. You will not die. Wancheng city will not fall. IT WILL NOT!!!!"

"Oh, now you say this Wancheng city will not fall, eh? Xu Sheng didn't you just say to me that in my hand, I only have 1,000 troops and majority of them are wounded. You also said that I will not last tomorrow afternoon right? Let me confess to you, it is the truth. Tomorrow, this Urban Army will perish from Han history!!!" Said Liu Mang while smiling bitterly. If tomorrow no reinforcements come, then the Urban Army will fulfill their oath and will share death and honor along with their general.

"No,no,no. Not only 1,000 troops!!! You, you have us!!! We are willing to help you defend this Wancheng city!!! WE ARE WILLING!!!" Xu Sheng said those words while shaking the prison bar violently. Xu Sheng right now was like a person who is grasping his last straw. As long as they agree and are willing to defend Wancheng city, they will not be buried alive by Liu Mang and Urban Army will not lose.

“HAHAHA!!!” Liu Mang laughed along with Liu Neng. Both of them had been waiting for those words all this time. When they arrived at this Wancheng prison earlier, they m agreed that they had to threaten these Black Flags. No matter how long or short the duration, if one has been imprisoned, their psyche will have turned into that of an angry man and with Black Flags already hungry for two days, their anger is at its peak now. If Liu Mang used a standard method to subjugate them such as telling their predicament straight away, they will falsely agree and when they were released from their prison, they will rampage this Wancheng city and will also open the main gate to welcome Sun Ce’s army. Placing destiny in another's hands is definitely not Liu Mang's style.

“Well, you can be their representative!!!” Liu Mang said that while calmly looking at Xu Sheng.

Xu Sheng really feared Liu Mang. The more calm Liu Mang was, the more afraid Xu Sheng is. Xu Sheng realized that from 8,000 defending troops there were only 1,000 troops left, and perhaps, even these 3,000 troops will not last until daytime tomorrow, but what choice did Xu Sheng have other than saying “Very well!!!” while gritting his teeth. Xu Sheng has now become the Black Flag’s supreme commander after Zhou Cheng died.

Actually, when they surrendered to Liu Mang after one of their comrades’ eyes was destroyed, Xu Sheng wanted to kill Zhou Cheng personally due to his inhuman treatment to them, but seeing his comrades are not moving, Xu Sheng opted not to move as well as he is also unable to endure inhuman treatment from Zhou clan.

Liu Mang then nodded toward Liu Kai and said: “Give them the key!!!”

“Little lord!!! Please think thrice!!!” Said Liu Kai. Liu Kai is also an overtly suspicious person because he needs to preserve his clan existence.

Liu Mang then said Lu Bu’s principle while taking the key from Liu Kai’s hand “Listen to me all of you. My father-in-law’s principle is to never suspect those who you use!!! The same principle will be used by me from now and forever!!!” And then threw the key inside the jail and said “Xu Sheng!!! In one stick of an incense time, I want to see all Black Flag fully equipped and gathered outside of Wancheng city prison!!!”

“Yes!!!” Xu Sheng took the key from the floor. After he responded, his gaze kept at Liu Mang and wondering what kind of a person he is.

In less than one stick of incense time, all of 3,000 Black Flag troops were fully equipped and standing in amazing a formation outside Wancheng city prison. They are truly worthy to be called professional elite soldiers whose training began since childhood. Liu Man was really satisfied with these 3,000 people.

Huang Zhong and Huang Xu also nodded and agreed that this unit is truly elite.

“Reporting to Your Highness Prince of Shu, all 3,000 Black Flag troops are present and accounted for. We wait for Your Highness Prince of Shu’s instruction!!!” Xu Sheng reported to Liu Mang and now finally having a clear view of Liu Mang’s face.

“All of you can call me little lord like all of them or can call me general just like my Urban Army division!!!” Said Liu Mang casually toward Black Flag. Liu Mang was still not comfortable being called Your Highness

Prince of Shu.

All of Black Flag did not respond but continued looking at Liu Mang especially Xu Sheng. They are sparking their anger toward Liu Mang for killing their lord and defeating them also for trying to kill them all.

"Little lord, it is dangerous!!!" Huang Zhong quickly stood between Liu Mang and Black Flag but Liu Mang just stayed calm and gently shoved Huang Zhong's body.

"Old General Huang, it is okay, return to the line!!!" Said Liu Mang while continuing his shoving.

"But!!!" Huang Zhong wanted to argue but was halted by Liu Mang.

"I said it is OK, no need to worry!!!" Said Liu Mang calmly. 3,000 strong people now stood in front of them, yet they are but five people. Even with Huang Zhong's presence, it is impossible to fight 3,000 strong men, let alone Xu Sheng leading them.

"You really are not afraid that I will go back on my words and tie you up now?!" Xu Sheng barked his threat while looking at Liu Mang.

"Hmph, if you wanted to do that, you would have done it earlier else you would not be barking threats now!!!" Liu Mang already concluded that Xu Sheng is barking empty threats as he only saw fear in his eyes, but then he continued his speech "You are Xu Sheng, the native of a small village in Ju Commandery in Langye. Since childhood, you had been poor. In your family, there is only your old father Xu Lang. Your mother has long

passed away due to famine. You are the sole heir of Xu family, you have no brothers or sisters. During the Yellow Turban Rebellion, you emigrated from Langye to Wuxian, Jiangdong with your father Xu Lang….!”

The more Liu Mang said about him, the more Xu Sheng’s face got paler and paler, because what Liu Mang said is correct. He even knew of his dead father’s name Xu Lang. A person who knows this matter in this world should not exist, but there is one now who poured out these precise facts about him.

“So, you still want to tie me up?” Liu Mang smiled toward Xu Sheng.

“How, how, you do you know all of this?!” Xu Sheng asked in confusion.

“HAHAHA, just guess where I got the information!!!” Said Liu Mang while facing toward the sky and asked again “Actually, the only thing I want to know is, how from Wuxian, you appeared inside the Zhou clan’s private army?

This private army should only consist of troops who were cultivated by the Zhou clan since childhood, not recruiting adults who were cultivated outside of the clan!!!”

Xu Sheng told Liu Mang “my father contracted a serious illness. I needed medicine, but I had no money. I sold myself to buy medicine!!! But, when I got money, my father already died!!! So I bought a nice coffin and buried my father with the money I got, then left with him as a slave!!! The man who bought me was the from Zhou clan!”

That person who bought Xu Sheng had seen his skills in wushu and when he saw that Xu Sheng was a filial son, he concluded that Xu Sheng had a big future as a valiant general

Liu Mang was really not afraid that Xu Sheng would back off on their promise. They are the Black Flag of the Zhou clan. They are supposed to fight to the death for Zhou Cheng, but because of their surrender, Zhou Cheng's head was hanging on Wancheng city. Even if they surrendered to Sun Ce, they will not escape punishment from Zhou Yu.

Moreover, Xu Sheng is a person of his words, he certainly will not break their own oath to Liu Mang.

Liu Mang then walked past Xu Sheng and started his speech in front of 3,000 Black Flag "Brothers of Black Flag!!! I know that you know me as an enemy and I know that I am the one who defeated you!!! However, that is already in the past!!! We are now comrades, brothers-in-arms!!!"

"My name is Liu Mang, Liu Hanyang. Han Dynasty's Prince of Shu and this Lu Bu's army's little lord!!! Right now, Wancheng city is almost broken through. I am unable to give you much, not even nobility. But I can give you one thing for certain and that is the dignity of being a human!!!" All of Black Flags were stunned by Liu Mang's speech.

On the outside, people say that they were the Zhou clan's private soldiers but in reality, they were the Zhou clan's slaves and that can be seen from Zhou Cheng's final treatment to them. Whipping them like bulls in order to make them fight again.

"Human dignity?!" All of Black Flag kept muttering those words.

Liu Mang continued his speech “You can see the division under me!!! My Urban Army!!!” When Liu Mang said the Urban Army, he cannot help but raised his voice and become more spirited in his speech and said “I have given my commitment to them to live and die together!!! Those same words, I will also give them to you!!! From now on, you are not slaves but comrades, brothers-in-arms. You are this Liu Mang’s brothers, this Liu Mang’s comrades. This Liu Mang will not let all of you go hungry. This Liu Mang will share his food with you and his bed with you!!! Together we share life and death; Together we share rich and honor!!!”

“Together we share life and death; Together we share rich and honor!!!” Xu Sheng first shouted and was followed by all of the Black Flag troops and their shouts roared throughout this Wancheng city.

Huang Zhong, Huang Xu, Liu Kai and Liu Neng all looked at each other and nodded. This battle took a really interesting turn.

Chapter 165 – Sun Ce Vows To Kill Liu Mang

Sun Ce's camp POV

Time: At the same time, when Liu Mang is confronting Xu Sheng in Wancheng city's prison

"ARRRGGGHHHH!!!!" Sun Ce is screaming blood curdling scream while smashing porcelain here and there. All of his attendants are cowering in fear because Sun Ce's appearance is truly terrifying. His armor is losing a half of it and his body is stained with his blood all over except for his helmet and what made Sun Ce more terrifying is everytime he moved, his wound got wet again and oozing blood, making him just like a general from hell..

Sun Ce thought "Dammit, that Huang Zhong, Huang Hansheng is truly strong. That golden broadsword of his is just like a dragon, aiming for my neck to kill me. I, who have reached hyper-class is still no match for him, also he killed at least 400 of my Zuo Danyang soldiers. If not for retreat drum earlier and his little lord in trouble and also his mercy, this Sun Ce might be the one who perish from this world earlier!!!"

"DAMMIT ALL TO HELL TO THIS BATTLE!!!" Sun Ce thought that while gritting his tooth. Never had Sun Ce been forced to retreat with big loss like this before.

"REPORT!!!" A messenger run inside the main tent. The medic who is currently stitching Sun Ce's wound hesitated and stop his movement while looking at Sun Ce.

“Give me your report!!!” Said Sun Ce while frowned looking at the messenger, he have a bad feeling about the news.

“Reporting to Milord. The leader of Danyang soldiers of Chu, General Chen Wu died in battle!!!” The messenger said it with clear voice while kneeling and helding his fist respectfully.

“WHATTT!!!!” Exclaimed Sun Ce while standing up in surprise. The force of his body is so great that made the medic officer staggered and fall down, while his wound reopen again due to the suture is not complete, making him wince in pain.

Coupled with bad news and the pain from his wound made Sun Ce’s face really hideous and then he said “Chen Wu… CHEN WU DIED!!!! THEN DONG XI, WHAT ABOUT HIM?!” Sun Ce truly have big loss this time. First day of siege, already 1 general died and a portion of 5 elites destroyed. In Sun Ce’s hands there are 5 division of elites. First is the Changsha army which currently commanded by Zhou Yu. Changsha army is Sun Jian’s inheritance to Sun Ce and expert in water warfare. Commanders for this division are Cheng Pu, Huang Gai, Han Dang and some of veterans during Sun Jian’s tenure as Governor of Changsha. But right now, they are only able to fight by ordering the others to fight as their strength already depleted by age.

The second elite division is Yu Province Infantry who were led by Zhou Tai and Jiang Qin. This Yu Province Infantry is originally belonged to Yuan Shu which was given to Sun Ce after he presented Imperial Seal to him. These 3,000 elites are also served as “mourning money” in order for Sun Ce not discovered that one of the perpetrators that killed Sun Jian is him. With only this Yu Province Infantry, Sun Ce managed to pacify Jiangdong and gained the trust of Changsha army, therefore laying foundation of Jiangdong army. This second unit have lost one commander which is

Zhou Tai. Jiang Qin himself is already rendered useless in battle. It is just a matter of time, for this elite unit to be dissolved and scattered among other four elites.

The third elite right now still named as defender of Kuaiji. Their amount is not much as they only consists of Sun clan's private soldiers and was led by Sun Quan. In this army, there are lots of good seedlings like Lu Meng and Ling Tong and lots of nobles who are adept in providing counsel and advice. Those nobles are representatives of all of noble clans in whole Jiangdong and because they are all gathered in Kuaiji, Sun Quan built a good rep with all of them and finally they become his main supporters. That is one of the very reasons that Sun Quan able to get all of support he needed to become the master of Jiangdong after Sun Ce's passing historically.

The fourth elite is Yu Province Heavy Cavalry. They were led by Zhang Kai of Chen Lan and Lei Bo's bandit brigades. After they evaded capture by Lu Bu army in Mt. Bagong, Zhang Kai led his cavalries to surrender to Sun Ce.

The fifth elite is the Danyang soldiers. Danyang soldiers are well known throughout Han Dynasty. Danyang people are all battle lovers and because of that trait, they make good soldiers. Sun Ce able to procure 10,000 Danyang soldiers of Chu and Zuo due to sheer luck. From 10,000 troops, 5,000 of Chu soldiers were given to Chen Wu and another 5,000 Zuo soldiers were given to Dong Xi. Sun Ce really think that this arrangements is very good as Chen Wu and Dong Xi are both generals and act like a Siamese twin. Chen Wu acting as the brain and Dong Xi as the brawn, this combination can fully utilize Danyang soldiers to the max.

And now, with Chen Wu dead meant Danyang soldiers prowess was severely compromised as Dong Xi do not know what to do. Today's

casualties for Danyang soldiers is really big, but Sun Ce did not really care as Danyang County still have many town to recruit, but a general as casualty? This event is really disheartening Sun Ce.

The messenger then replied “General Dong Xi, from returning to the camp, he just hold general Chen Wu’s body silently and make no movement at all!!!”

Losing Chen Wu meant for Dong Xi to lose his brain. His whole body become sluggish and unresponsive. Even this time, he just kept holding Chen Wu’s body in a complete still.

“Milord, this Lu Su greets you!!!” Lu Su also come into the tent, his face is very complicated and said to reported to Sun Ce “Milord, today’s casualties is very high but we almost take over Wancheng. This Lu Su came here to report the damage for today’s siege!” All those words were said while Lu Su seeing Sun Ce’s battered body. He knew that today Sun Ce almost breakthrough Wancheng, but was halted by Huang Zhong.

“Okay, said your report now!!!” Sun Ce said it while showing sullen look. He already obtained a bad news regarding Chen Wu’s death might as well goes down to abyss with damage report. Lu Su then begin his report “Casualties of Danyang soldiers. Zuo division is completely annihilated saved for their leader Zuo Renjie. From 10,000 troops diminished to 5,000 of Chu soldiers. Danyang Chu soldiers also suffered damage, the specification are 800 seriously injured, 200 minor injuries. This Lu Su suggest that we withdraw Danyang soldiers from tomorrow battle!”

“What about the other clan’s damage?!” Sun Ce’s tone is very very down as his own elite already half-crushed.

“Zuo clan, Bian clan, Wang clan also suffered estimated to be more than 10,000 troops from 100,000 troops!!!” Lu Su have no love for those nobles as he already considered them to be fodder during initial siege and also with their casualties, meaning more supplies for elites.

“What about Wancheng?!” Sun Ce said it while standing up, regardless his wounds have finished suturing or not.

“Wancheng defenders from 10,000 troops, we managed to kill 8,000 troops!!!” Lu Su responded. When Lu Su and Liu Mang traded words, he carefully assess the entire Wancheng. He assessed that inside Wancheng should have at least 10,000 troops although he did not know the exact number. So today, although Sun Ce army suffered big casualties but they also managed to decrease Wancheng defenders’ numbers until it remained only 2,000 troops so to speak.

With this, even with 5,000 Danyang soldiers of Chu, they are able to annihilate Wancheng city defenders to the last men. Actually Lu Su already know that Wancheng city’s defenders only remained less than 1,000 troops, but he just raise the number a bit as it would not make too much difference.

“OH, HO HO HO HO!!!! I REALLY UNDERESTIMATED YOU, LIU MANG” Sun Ce sneer up while laughing in a very menacing tone and his fist is clenched strongly. His anger is already peaked at the top. He was defeated by a rookie commander whose soldiers only consists of 3,000 elite troops and since the first day of the siege, his damage already unbearable. First Zhou Tai died, and then Jiang Qin lost one arm, then Chen Wu and Dong Xi. Even though Dong Xi did not die, but he is impossible to command Danyang soldiers again, also his Danyang Zuo soldiers decimated.

Sun Ce then stop his thought for a moment and said “Assign Dong Xi to be my personal bodyguard, he is not to leave me all the time!!!” A Dong Xi without Chen Wu, is a berserk Dong Xi. Dong Xi will attack friendly even without someone to guide him. Being Sun Ce bodyguards meaning Sun Ce can monitor all of his actions and he will definitely become much tamer and will not kill friendly.

“Yes sir!!!” Lu Su agreed with Sun Ce. Lu Su also felt this decision is correct. He had seen Dong Xi previously. Dong Xi stature is big and towering, if one standing in front of him, one can feel his bloodlust from his frequent cannibalism. An uncontrollable cannibal is truly fearful.

But Lu Su also have other concern in his mind. With Chen Wu died and Dong Xi reassigned, who would lead those 5,000 Danyang Chu soldiers? But he held his tongue, as this topic is very sensitive and may lead for his lord suspect him for insubordination and usurpation.

But Sun Ce is not a person who is afraid insubordination or usurpation but even then, there must be a line that a subordinate must not cross. Finally Sun Ce decides “Zijing, assign Danyang Chu soldiers to Ziyi, let him lead them!!!” This decision was made because there is no more excellent leader under his command. Chen Wu has died, Jiang Qin is badly wounded, Dong Xi is useless. Only Taishi Ci is the one can lead them as of now as Sun Ce will not let those nobles to touch his precious elites.

Lu Su also nodded in agreement with Sun Ce. Those ruffians need someone with strong discipline to keep them in line. If Taishi Ci can make them organized, they will be unstoppable by anyone.

Sun Ce then muttered “Damn you, Liu Mang. You destroy four of my generals!!! Zhou Tai, Chen Wu, Dong Xi, Jiang Qin!!! When I break the city tomorrow, I will skin you alive with my bare hand” When Sun Ce said those names, his eyes is very deep and emitting max killing intent. His hatred is even more than when he was laying siege to Lu Kang. In the end, his mercy got better of him and allow him to commit suicide. But Liu clan and Liu Mang, he will really skin them alive.

Originally Sun Ce’s plan for Liu clan is just to let them broke until they are all living under his welfare! Also regarding Liu Mang, Sun Ce only want to use him to threaten Lu Bu, nothing more nothing less. Liu Mang also have greater use than only that. Sun Ce can use his title Prince of Shu and General of Southern Expedition whose territory consists of four provinces as a legitimate reason in order to destroy Liu Biao and capture Jing Province. Killing Huang Zu alone will never bring that result and legitimacy.

In ancient time, when people go to war, you need legitimacy. King Cheng Tang, founder of Shang Dynasty, need to speak up his “Pledge of Cheng Tang” first in order to do battle with King Jie of Xia Dynasty. Doing battle without any legitimacy will make people question you and even rebel against you. Even those who become your enemies will actually question what is the meaning of this battle. This is one of the precise reason those nobles who sided with Sun Ce created Sin Manifesto, insulting Lu Bu as butcher, *etc*. That kind of stunt actually could get support from all local officials.

But now Sun Ce want to kill Liu Mang, and already do not care about legitimate cause. All inside his head right now is that he wanted to avenge his four generals. Remembering them, Sun Ce’s heart is very heavy. Especially when remembering Zhou Tai. Zhou Tai is the one person of whom Sun Ce placed a big hope. Zhou Tai’s prowess is actually pretty good even without his blood berserk. If he survived until now, perhaps he also will understand how to be a hyper-class general due to his strength

alone.

But all is lost now, Zhou Tai is dead and cooked into meat patty. Sun Ce really gritted his teeth this time, Lu Bu really got an excellent son-in-law who can fight as excellent as him. Then Sun Ce screamed to the top of his lungs “LIU MANG!!!! EVERY SINGLE PERSON THAT I WILL SAID NOW, THEIR BLOOD IS ON YOU!!! CHEN DUAN, DA QIAO, ZHOU TAI, CHEN WU, DONG XI, JIANG QIN!!!! YOU SHALL BE AVENGED THREEFOLD!!! CLEAN YOUR NECK FOR TOMORROW!!!! YOU WILL BE OUR PREY TOMORROW!!!!”

Chapter 166 – Sun Ce Become Shameless Once More - Use Liu Mang As Borrowed Knife To Kill Nobles

With those events that transpired, soon the dark of the night become light of dawn. And with the sound of cock coocooing, it is just like death's footsteps and he has already knocking the door, asking for Wancheng city's defenders lives.

So Liu Mang and co know right now in a very dire strait. But even then, he still need to rouse their morale and so he yelled his speech "TODAY, WE WILL DECIDE WHO ARE THE ONE GOING TO DIE, THOSE WHO ARE OUTSIDE OF WANCHENG CITY OR US!!!! ALL OF YOU, DO NOT WORRY ABOUT A THING, IF WE MANAGED TO SURVIVE THIS BATTLE, THIS LIU MANG WILL RECOGNIZE YOUR CONTRIBUTION IN THIS BATTLE AND WILL NAME YOU A HERO, AND WILL DEFINITELY TAKE CARE OF YOUR FAMILIES AS MY FAMILY!!! IF WE DIE, THIS LIU MANG WILL ALSO ACCOMPANY YOU TO HELL AND I WILL BEAR ALL OF YOUR SIN WITH ME!!!! TOGETHER, WE SHARE LIFE AND DEATH!!! TOGETHER, WE SHARE RICHES AND HONOR!!!!" With Liu Mang words, all of remaining Urban Army, Black Flag, Huang Zhong and Huang Xu roared the Urban Army slogan together.

After that speech, a messenger from Lu Bu main army revealed himself and give Liu Mang, a letter from Chen Gong. Realizing that this must be a stratagem or some kind from the military advisor, he called Liu Kai, Liu Neng, Huang Xu, Huang Zhong, Xu Sheng and Chu Jie. But when Liu Mang opened the message, it only contained notification that Lu Bu and Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will arrive in two more days and cryptic message that written like this "Ruin the body, ruin the head but never cut off the head!!!" Huang Zhong quickly understood what Chen Gong meant and said to Liu Mang "Little lord, Military Advisor Chen's letter meant, we can go on rampage and destroy Sun Ce's army, kill his generals, and even

beat down Sun Ce but we must not kill Sun Ce, or the repercussion will be great!!!" Liu Mang then nodded and said "So, do you all understand this letter?" to his division leaders and they all nodded the same time. After reading the letter, Liu Mang really felt relieved that the ballista arrow yesterday did not manage to kill Sun Ce or else Zhou Yu and his mind will be his next opponent today and Liu Mang really felt assured that Chen Gong wrote that letter as he only need to persevere for two days and Lu Bu will arrive to pound back Sun Ce army.

After that event, inside Lu Bu defender army, there is not much even happening other than preparing to go to battle. But inside Sun Ce army, beside army preparation, all of nobles are bickering in front of Lu Su.

"Strategist Lu. Regarding the assault this time, let this Zhao clan fight! We, of Zhao clan, have been following General Sun Ce from the very start but we yet to contribute to General Sun Ce. For our honor, please let we, of Zhao clan, to take the vanguard for today!!!" Said a middle-aged man who is wearing an extravagant cloth toward Lu Su.

Another noble is also bickering in front of Lu Su while pointing finger toward the head of Zhao clan "HEY, our Li clan also not yet contributed to General Sun Ce. We, Li clan, have more bigger debts to General Sun Ce. If not for the tip provided by the late General Zhou Tai. We already perish under that misbegotten scoundrel Liu Mang. So, if not now, then when will our Li clan can repay General Sun Ce's kindness?!"

Another noble also rushes in front of Lu Su "We want to be vanguard too!!! We, of Bao clan, also have a big debt to General Sun Ce!!!" Those nobles bickering made Lu Su's brow tighten, because one by one started bickering like little children for the one who will be the vanguard.

Watching each one of Jiangdong nobles are bickering like that, Lu Su heart is burning with anger. In Lu Su's eyes, all of them are violating two of military laws and should be executed for their offences. First violation according to Lu Su is bickering in front of strategist. Strategist rank in the army is only a rank below to commanding officer and those nobles bickering in front of the strategist as if they are the one who are commanding this battle, as if Sun Ce and Lu Su are nothing in front of them. The second violation is they are dressed like they are celebrating victory. All of them are wearing gold accessories and noble clothes, none of them are wearing battle suit at all. This is really disrespecting the soldiers and generals who are fighting the battle. Even Liu Mang who came from the future did not dare to violate this unwritten absolute rule.

Lu Su's anger is not just based on those two violations. He is also angry because all of them are withholding their soldiers during yesterday's siege. If all of them go all out, Wancheng city will be able to be overtaken in just one day, but they instead withhelding their forces saying that they are still traumatized because of Wu clan's defeat due to the failure of recapturing Wancheng city naval base and due to that, Sun Ce's core army suffered big casualties, they even lost half of their Danyang soldiers.

So, it can be concluded that these nobles only want the spoil of the war. With Wancheng city defenders has been destroyed until only lasting 2,000 troops (as per Lu Su's manipulated intel) meaning that they are unable to maintain defense any longer and will be crushed in one fell swoop, so they want to grab as much merit as they can. Provided that almost all of Wancheng city's nobles already extinguished, so all of them see Wancheng city, the capital of Lujiang Prefecture as a big piece of cake and whoever is the vanguard will be able to get a big portion of it.

Who in their right mind would reject if given such a fertile prefecture? When they captured Wancheng city, they can quickly create a branch of

their own clan's business in this place. So right now, they are drooling in their imagination.

"HUMPH!!!!" Lu Su can only responded with cold humph to their bickering because no matter how much anger and grievances has accumulated in his heart, he still must respect them as he is also one of nobles and right now, he cannot afford to make anyone his enemies especially not of Jiangdong nobles.

Lu Su then responded after taking deep breath "I am unable to decide this matter as assigning who will be the vanguard. Su will need to consult this matter with Milord as the supreme commander of this battle!!!" Lu Su stressed on the words "Supreme Commander of this battle" in hopes for them to know their place again. Lu Su will not give his promise to these ungrateful bastards, these opportunists who disregarded Jiangdong's armies sacrifices yesterday in order to reach this state of almost victory.

Those nobles then said it heartily "If that is what Strategist Lu want, then it is the best!!!!" Those words sting Lu Su's ears and he entered main tent with disgust in his heart.

When Lu Su enters the main tent, he really surprised because Sun Ce is wearing his purple armor and prepare for battle. Lu Su then said his concerns "Milord, your wounds have not healed at all, why must you persist joining the battle?!" When Sun Ce heard his word, he smiled and said "Zijing, do not worry, I am just dressing up, I will stay on the main camp as per your suggestion. I only want to watch personally the moment when Wancheng city fall!!!"

This Wancheng city view is all too familiar scenery to him. First he

preyed upon Lu Kang and now Liu Mang will be his latest prey.

Sun Ce then inquired “Hey, Zijing. What’s with all the ruckus outside?! I heard the words vanguard and bickering but I cannot make out what they are talking about.” Since Sun Ce reached hyper-class, his five senses sensitivity have quadrupled. His senses right now are heightened so much he is able to hear water dripping into a leaf from 10 meters away if he concentrates. Then Sun Ce said “Are those noises made by those nobles?!”

Lu Su just nodded sternly when Sun Ce asked that question.

“HUMPH!!!” Sun Ce just humphed coldly then said a virtually same sentence with Lu Su “Those blasted fools. Yesterday because they did not deploy their troops, I suffered big losses, lost half of my Danyang soldiers, lost Chen Wu. And today, they are so energetic trying to be vanguard. Is not that cheating? Fighting to get the most merits after I done the hardwork!!!” Lu Su just smiled dryly when hearing his lord's words.

Sun Ce has been long desiring to kill and uproot all nobles. They are goddamned pompous, arrogant and haughty to the point where their presence is just like a cancer. All these times, since his father's times and now his times, always bickering about territories, bickering about who is going to be the best subordinates for their lord. Additionally, they did not have to pay taxes, as they did not register themselves as people of Jiangdong and definitely did not report their wealth to Jiangdong's treasury, and finally, they are raising their own soldiers secretly which can be seen as a slap to the ruling warlord.

And right now, they are dispatching their own private soldiers to do their own “crusade” because they fear their own existence. Lu Bu

slaughtered 95% of nobles in Lujiang although only Chen clan was exterminated by Lu Bu personally and the other was done by Liu Mang, but according to the principle of propriety, they must not insult Liu Mang for he is one of the ruling clan so they can only blame Lu Bu as the instigator. They all goes to battle because they are afraid if Lu Bu managed to conquer this Jiangdong land, they will all be exterminated just like them, so in order to counter that, they amassed their troops and betting everything on this battle. Their amount is really massive, covering 70,000 troops while Sun Ce himself only have 30,000 troops and that included 10,000 troops of Danyang soldiers and that made Sun Ce's heart oozing with killing intention.

The true terror of these nobles is really shown that they are able to gather 70,000 troops in just a short while. If they are concocting rebellion, Sun Ce's Jiangdong will perish in just a whim. These assholes are just thinking on how to preserve themselves, which Liu Mang had experienced firsthand by speaking with Liu Kai. Historically, when Cao Cao had overcame Jing Province with his 800,000 troops ready, all of Jiangdong's nobles and scholars are afraid to the death. Their words quickly changed from Traitor Cao to Prime Minister Cao and they even asked for Zhang Zhao and Zhang Hong to persuade Sun Quan to surrender. At that time, the representative to surrender as headed by Qin Song and the late Chen Duan.

Fortunately Sun Quan received second opinion from Lu Su. Lu Su said “Milord, Those nobles are only thinking for themselves and they will get the most benefit by surrendering to Cao Cao. They definitely will be treated by Cao Cao with government post, noble ranks and monetary prize, but your Sun clan will definitely be decimated by Cao Cao as your clan is the ruling body of these Jiangdong. You will be put into a golden cage like Liu Cong of Jing Province and will be burned or shamed to death!!!” And fortunately, Sun Quan take heed of Lu Su's words and prepare for Battle of Chi Bi.

So, in summary, these nobles and scholars are complete asses, they are unable to make their own decision and used their numbers to threaten people.

At this time, Sun Ce really envy Lu Bu, because Lu Bu did not fear nobles and did not care to tarnish his reputation that is already been smeared by killing Ding Yuan and killing Dong Zhuo and his one clan and already bearing the title of mass murderer and butcher. With one breath, he exterminates Chen clan and the others.

Why Lu Bu can do that as easy as breathing? It is simple, because Lu Bu have nothing to lose. And because of that very reason, Sun Ce is not willing to offend Lu Bu, as there is no profit to be gained. Even if Lu Bu obtain Lujiang Prefecture, also there is no point as Lujiang Prefecture is already wasted by those nobles who squeezed commoners by taking their lands and applied maximum tax on them until they are unable to live, let alone to rebel.

“Goddammit!!!” Sun Ce stood up quickly with very ugly expression. He is really not willing to let those nobles steal his glory as his Lujiang Prefecture will be taken in big portion by those SOBs.

When Lu Su saw his lord's ugly expression, he quickly said “Milord, should I reject them to be vanguard?!” In his eyes, he knows that Sun Ce already decided that these nobles are not good things to dealt with, but he also cannot get rid of them. Without these nobles support, Jiangdong Army will probably be disbanded due to no financial support.

So in Lu Su's mind, the only option is to reject their offers and coerce them with military law to join with the main force and do final siege today.

However Sun Ce's response really surprised Lu Su. He said “No need to reject, Zijing. Since they already determined to be vanguard, why not let them wreak havoc?!”He said those words, while showing malicious smile.

Lu Su then said “Milord, you are really giving them greenlight to go? Then what about those Danyang soldiers?! If they found out, that Milord is giving those nobles to rob their merit, those Danyang soldiers will definitely rebel!!! Please think thrice”

“Heh, it is okay!!! All of those nobles surely already gathered enough courage to do battle right? So why don't give them chance?!” Sun Ce said those words in very cold tone and with full killing intent. “If they survive, then I will give them reward. If dead, then no reward. But at the very least I will put up a show to beg the Emperor at Xu Du to give them posthumous name!!!” Sun Ce thought.

“Hrm?!” Lu Su also felt agitated when Sun Ce said those words. Lu Su's original plan is to fight with the main army along with his own Lu clan's soldiers in order to obtain merit, but when seeing Sun Ce's expression, Lu Su tremble a little.

Sun Ce then said “Zijing, tell them my exact words. 'Dear gentlemen, because all of you so eager to fight, I am unable to choose anyone of you as I will be favoring one side. Then I will create a competition, all of you are competing to break Wancheng city. I will reward who managed to breakthrough Wancheng city first!!!' ” Lu Su become more afraid as those words that he need to convey coming out from Sun Ce as Sun Ce meant to kill them using Liu Mang's knife.

Attacking Wancheng city is not difficult for those nobles, but the problem lies in Sun Ce's condition. Does those nobles want who wear

Han's clothing and wear jewellery want to climb city wall in order to get merit?! Let alone city wall, those pompous nobles will not enter the battlefield even if their soldiers already wiped out. Also, even though Wancheng city's defender already dwindling, but they can be considered as cornered beast and will retaliate with full force. At that time, it maybe those nobles badluck.

"Milord, this is too obvious!!!" Lu Su clenched his teeth. When he conveys Sun Ce's words to those nobles, they will not comply with his condition and even will rebel against Sun clan's rule in Jiangdong.

Sun Ce then responded "Aiyah, Zijing, although it is really obvious but what can they do? They will not dare to incur my wrath. Also they are the one who want to snatch our merit. But the one who will kill them all, is Lu Bu army not our Sun Ce army right? This can be our publicity stunt telling them all, that following Lu Bu is no good and my Sun Ce army accommodate noble and treat them well!!!"

Sun Ce's scheme is very beneficial to Sun clan's. By giving a competition, those nobles will definitely do siege on the city wall. And since the one who kill nobles' soldiers will be Lu Bu army, then Sun Ce army will get a very big war spoils in the end as they will be more dependent on Sun Ce army. Sun Ce have been angered with nobles for a long time for they had done many, many extreme offenses while he is ruling Jiangdong.

One instance of their offenses is when Sun Ce asked for grain from Wuhu County. At that time, the noble who was governing Wuhu County said that he is only able to covet 5,000-shi of grain and provisions. That number made Sun Ce angry to no end as Wuhu County is a very fertile and bountiful place. At that time, Sun Ce sent Zhang Hong to investigate with instructions to arrest the offender on the spot. From Zhang Hong's report, he found out that those nobles not only involved in corruption but they also manipulated their salary in order to put a show to Sun Ce that

even they are nobles, they are poor. The real number for grain and provisions that year is 500,000-shi of grain and provisions. When being questioned by Zhang Hong, they only said that this year really have poor harvest and they said they are sorry that they can only provide them with this number. They are really becoming a cancer in Sun Ce's side.

So, in order not Sun Ce's hand to be dirty and sully his reputation and rule over Jiangdong, just let His Highness Prince of Shu of Lu Bu army kill them as his hand is already have blood of 10,000 families, surely it is not a problem right to kill a few more thousand again?

Lu Su finally understood that being a warlord one must be shrewd, devious and always hanging in the balance of moral and immoral. Lu Su thought himself to be very talented and confident and he confident he can govern a place without much problem and can manage military but he himself is not confident to be a warlord.

Chapter 167 – Sun Ce Become Shameless Once More - Use Liu Mang As Borrowed Knife To Kill Nobles (2)

Sun Ce's prediction was dead-on this time. As soon as Lu Su conveyed Sun Ce's message verbatim, all of nobles who were bickering earlier now overjoyed. Some of them knew that they are sent to die by Sun Ce, some of them not but the reaction from them is all the same as Sun Ce's words meant that one of them will gain a big portion of Wancheng city if they become one of the first one who broke the city.

Right now what they are doing is just looking at each other, sparking hostilities toward each other. With Sun Ce's order, all of them have become rivals and enemies, as they all want big portion of cake and big spoil of wars. Those are done in order to expand their influence and maybe plan for toppling the current dynasty and rise themselves as the founder of new dynasty.

An olden merchant law states that if a proposal predicted to have 10% profit then everyone will put their money on that proposal, if a proposal predicted to have 20% profit, they will put their whole being on that proposal, if a proposal predicted to have 50% profit, they even will kill themselves and their family in order to obtain that profit.

And Wancheng city in front of them, have more than 50% profit. A profit that is really worthy of their own sacrifices. These nobles have longed to plant their roots in Wancheng city as Lujiang Prefecture is a very fertile which can feed hundreds and thousands people and rich with minerals and natural resources such as salt and iron. With Wancheng city already devoid of nobles, it can be said, the land become virgin once more, therefore they are eyeing each of their rivals with greed in their heart. All of them become aware that they must thank Liu Mang for exterminating

Chen clan and other 32 clans. If not for those events, they will not have legitimacy to fight battle to recapture Wancheng city and their Sin Manifesto will become trash.

Right now all of nobles are preparing their own respective soldiers for siege battle. They do not care even if their soldiers only amounted to 500 troops and even some of them go all out deploying all of their 5,000 troops for there is a massive cake and whoever managed to break Wancheng city first, will obtain the most portion of the cake.

Being rewarded based on merit, will make their own clan soar to the skies even further.

Then suddenly there are some of noble heads saying “Hey, we are not generals. Even our six skills maybe lower than our soldiers. What if you die, who would take care of your family and ancestral temples?!” They are saying it with concerning tone and hope for other people’s responses.

Lu Su just sneered in his heart “Heh, provoking with fear of death huh?! Are you hoping for all of them to scare them stiff from their intent to do battle?! Keep trying!!!” Actually those words spoken just now, it is to scare them witless in order for those nobles who decide to attack Wancheng city to obtain more merit as Wancheng city defenders already dwindling to less than 1,000 troops. Perhaps in just half a day, the city will fall.

Another noble heads also tried his best to pour fuel to fire “Yes, Wancheng city is very dangerous. You all see by yourself right. General Chen Wu and General Dong Xi with their respective Danyang soldiers fought together on the city wall and the result? General Chen Wu died and General Dong Xi lost his division. I advise all of you, not to go in this

assault!!!”

Another young man from Bao clan then also argues “Oh, uncles. Zhong knows that all of you are already old and have big families. Let younger generation fight this battle!!!” That man who just spoke is Bao Zhong, Bao clan’s little lord and one of Bao Shuya’s descendant. His father is already of old age and unable to do battle, so he want Bao Zhong to fight in order to assess his worth as his successor.

“HUMPH!!!! Your uncles are already old and sooner or later we will be expired!!! Leave this dangerous matter to us. You youngsters should fight another day!!!” That man who spoke is Zhang clan’s representative, Zhang De. His age is already not small, already early 30 years. In ancient time, a person who has reached 30 years old is already considered old man as at that time, because they will already have a lot of teenagers child and will soon be a grandfather after they married their children. Bao Zhong’s calling of Zhang De, uncle, it is because he is more senior than him. Usually Bao Zhong call him brother but now he call him uncle in order to let him step down from battle.

“Hahaha!!!” Another elder head clan laughed at their bickering. If according those youngsters logic, then it is true that they must let go of their merit if they are not able to walk. Then he responded “Ah it is true that we are already old and must let youngsters do their work! But, Zhang brother, since you call me uncle, then do not forget to tell your cousin older brother that I will be giving him a gift for our first meeting!!! HAHAHAHAHAHA” This old noble and Zhang clan has been friends from many generations. And by saying he will give a gift to his brother, it is demeaning his cousin older brother as a junior of noble clans. Zhang De’s cousin older brother is Zhang Zhao who is currently one of Sun Ce army top advisors and held real power over Jiangdong nobles as one of top clans. If that elder clan head actually bring a first-meeting gift to Zhang

Zhao, then he will slap Zhang De silly and Zhang Zhao's pride as top clan of Jiangdong will be slapped as well and it is possible that Zhang De will be executed by Zhang Zhao because Zhang Zhao observed propriety the most of all 8 virtues.

"YOU!!!!" Screamed Zhang De while pointing toward that elder clan head. His complexion become red from furiousness. He originally just want to tease that elder clan head but the clan head just become shameless and tell Zhang De indirectly that Zhang Zhao has just become his juniors and therefore he will treat him just like junior by giving him first-meeting gift.

Looking Zhang De retreated from the line, the elder clan head who was just victorious earlier just continued "All of you youngsters! You all said that we are old, right? I say, yes we are old!!! But that is the main point!!! We, old people, have not much longer to live!!! Let us claim glory for one last time and pave the road for you to tread!!!" That word said with intent for younger clansmen to not fight the easy battle and in order to scare them so Wancheng city will be controlled by them.

Both old and young nobles are counter-attacking in hope one of them will back down. The young nobles attacking by exploiting old nobles age and old nobles are countering by accepting their age and ridiculed their current clan heads as their juniors and also kept shouting of the danger attacking Wancheng city. The scene in Lu Su's front is filled with this drama and he already burned anger in his heart.

Lu Su then bellowed his anger "SILENCE!!!!!" Finally this honest and good-natured person snapped and said his words "If you persist to quarrel in front of me again, do not blame me for invoking Seven Prohibitions and Fifty Four Capital Penalties to all of you!!!!"

TL: Seven Prohibitions and Fifty Four Capital Penalties is military law of Jiangdong. Rooted from Sun Tzu's military law code and was expanded

by Qin Song

All of nobles who heard Lu Su's words become silence. Although Lu Su is a clansman from Lu clan much like all of them who are clan rep, but Lu Su is the strategist of Jiangdong army. One word from him, these nobles may be penalized with death sentence under military law. Such consequence is not desireable from any of the noble clan reps now.

Lu Su has been coping with these nobles from yesterday. If Lu Su was really ruthless, then yesterday he ought to force them under military law, letting them to do battle at Wancheng city walls instead of unleashing Danyang soldiers on that battle. Yesterday only Zuo clan and Bian clan who complies with Lu Su's order and only half day, all of their private soldiers were decimated by Lu Bu army, leaving only Danyang soldiers and Sun clan's private soldiers to fight. Zuo clan rep and Bian clan rep are really saddened by that loss, so sad that they are just staying in their tents and silent when all of clan heads bickering just now. But looking at the bigger perspective, they are helping Sun Ce to win Lujiang Prefecture back, so it is proper for them to unleash their own private soldiers.

After all of nobles shut up, Lu Su then just bluntly talk to them "Hey, do all of you want to attack Wancheng city and get merit or just want to spend all day in this place bickering, huh?!" Lu Su will not put anymore words toward them otherwise they will stay talked again and again until Lu Bu comes back and slaughter them all together with Wancheng city's defenders.

"We want to attack!!!! Please give us your instructions, Strategist Lu!!!!" Some of nobles start speaking out toward Lu Su but the elder clan heads, they are just staring toward Lu Su profoundly, hoping they will be chosen.

Then an elder clan head comes out from the line and said to Lu Su "Strategist Lu, please choose Wu clan as vanguard. We of Wu clan will certainly bring victory today!!!" That elder clan head is Wu clan rep. This Wu clan rep is one of Sun Ce's mother clansmen, therefore Lu Su and Sun Ce did not dare to directly reject their request so Lu Su and Sun Ce have been avoiding them to speak regarding the battle.

But right now, Lu Su has no more respect toward them!!! If Lu Su agreed for Wu clan to be vanguard, Lu Su will offend the entire Jiangdong nobles. All of these nobles present have witnessed how big a coward Wu clan is when they are defeated when fighting against Su Fei during Battle of Wancheng city's Naval Base. They are defeated by one wave of attack by Su Fei and after that their morale plummeted to the bottom. Now, conquering Wancheng city is obviously much harder than Wancheng city's naval base and if they do that thing again, then all nobles will persecute Sun Ce for nepotism.

Lu Su just rejected Wu clan by saying "Master Wu, do not ask Su. Milord's order stated whoever break the city first will get the most merit. So, please compete with the other!!!" This time Lu Su's rejection has a justification as he is ordered to relay Sun Ce's orders verbatim.

"HUMPH!!!!" The Wu clan rep who was just rejected just humphed coldly and thought "This Lu Su, does he really not know that Jiangdong's masters are Sun clan and Wu clan?! Only a Lu clansman dare to reject my request?! Pah, spineless dog of Wu and Sun clan!!! I will need to report this transgression to the head clan!!!"

After Wu clan retreated to the line, a clan head comes out and asked "Strategist Lu. This Wancheng city although the size is big, but it cannot accommodate all of our armies at once. Please your instructions!"

Lu Su then advises “For fairness in competition, each one of you dispatches 1,000 troops. I believe it will be suffice to break Wancheng city!!!” In this place got 12 nobles, so 12,000 troops is more than enough to break Wancheng city.

“Hmm, 1,000 troops!!! Sounds reasonable!!!” Some of nobles saying that words with sparkling eyes. They could just dispatched their elites. This is more than suffice for them to survive this battle. Easy merit and easy battle waiting for them when the sun rises. Right now they cannot wait to return to their own respective camps and prepare for tomorrow’s battle. They want to prepare as soon as possible to beat down Wancheng city defenders and gain merit.

“Very well, Strategist Lu. Please excuse us for preparation!!!” They quickly excused themselves and prepare for battle. This siege battle will be one of the most violent battle as they are not only need to attack the enemy, they also need to beat down their allies in order to get most merit.

“Phew!!!” When Lu Su saw those nobles quickly return to their respective camps, he sighed with relief. He is really tired physically and mentally by dealing with these nobles. They are both old fox and young fox, they are master schemers. You can kill enemies with swords, but these nobles? You also need to scheme toward them in order to reduce their influence.

Right now, it is almost dawn. Lu Su must make big preparation in order to counter Lu Bu and his soldier.

Chapter 168 – Nobles Siege (1)

Night has passed and right now the sun is already quite high (around 7:00 AM), Sun Ce quickly screamed his order from midst of Sun Ce army "ALL ARMY, BESIEGE THE CITY!!!!"

"SHAAAAAAA!!!!!!!" Screamed all of soldiers and they start running toward Wancheng city at the same time. All of them are wearing the same color of banner and same armor like Sun Ce army, but there are some differences in their equipment from scaling ladder to the weapons they wield.

"Hrm?!" Liu Mang's brow wrinkled when he looked toward the banner of Sun Ce army who is approaching. Each banners are followed with a battalion and the most surprising one, they are all flying different characters on them.

All of the banners written Zhang, Li, Bao, Wu, Ling, Qian, Wang and none of them are bearing Sun. "Sun Ce have this much generals?" Liu Mang thought. If Sun Ce have this much generals, then this Wancheng city will fall in just one assault. An officer who can lift up their own banner is at least a second-class general and have leadership prowess. Cheng Yu in Urban Army should have fly his own colors as his strength and ability already reached second-class general but since he is placed as lieutenant general, he is unable to do that, but strangely, he did not bear any resentment at all toward his placement.

"Sun Ce really goes all out this day" Thought Liu Mang in his heart. In his heart, Liu Mang is really restless but on the outside, he must force himself to be calm if not, all of Wancheng city defenders will just drop their weapons and surrender.

Liu Mang took a deep breath and thought “Come on, come on, I don’t care how many elites, how many generals you have. I will cut your treasures one by one, Sun Ce!!!!”

“Report, Little lord. The enemy has crossed the moat!!!” Xu Sheng quickly reported to Liu Mang. Huang Zhong has been assigned by Liu Mang on the north wall to help reinforce the defense.

“Hmm, moat, eh?!” Liu Mang just closed his eyes and just keep thinking of strategy.

“Little lord, please, your order!!!” Xu Sheng is really worried as in his eyes, Liu Mang already scared stiff. Even though this is Xu Sheng’s first time working with Liu Mang, he still knew that moat is essential to deal huge damage the enemy and halted their advance by showering them with volley. Halting Sun Ce army’s advance is Lu Bu’s army primary duty, but Liu Mang just kept silent.

Xu Sheng just see Sun Ce army crossing moat one after another without any difficulties at all, soon they will be putting their ladder and climb the wall.

“Wait!!! Advance slower, this maybe a trap!!!” Several of old Jiangdong nobles slow down their pace. Compared to those hot blooded young nobles, they are much calmer and able to more cautious on their move. Their movements toward Wancheng city is too smooth with no resistance at all, their movements is so fast, it is as seems that the moat is only a piece of flat land. They are all thinking, is this a ploy to kill them all? They have been working so hard to become one of nobles by suspecting the others, of course they will be suspecting this ploy too.

Seeing the older nobles and their soldiers stopped their movement, the younger nobles smiled happily and ordered to rush more quickly. In their mind, the merit is already theirs for the taking.

Xu Sheng just continued his timely report “Little lord, they are 100 steps before reaching city wall!!!” Liu Mang heard his report but just kept silent.

Xu Sheng screamed “50 steps!!!” Finally Liu Mang opened his eye but still did not give command.

“40, 30, 20 steps again!!!” Xu Sheng become more desperate in his tone. Finally Liu Mang start his order, but his order made Xu Sheng puzzled “Urban Army, unleash volley!!! Black Flag to standby. No orders or signal from me, Black Flag must not move!!!!!”

“YES SIR!!!!” Urban Army quickly execute Liu Mang’s order. Less than 1,000 troops quickly pull out their longbow and start raining arrow toward them.

“Little lord, what are you doing?!” Xu Sheng got little angry. “Does this little lord want to looks down upon us, Black Flag?!” Xu Sheng thought. Xu Sheng has full confidence that Urban Army and Black Flag will be able to withstand the attack this time. He also had observed that the enemies are all rabble soldiers. He also understands Liu Mang’s intention for the enemies to get closer in order to maximize the damage, but what he cannot understand is why Liu Mang only order for Urban Army to move and leavin Black Flag to standby only. Feeling discontent, Xu Sheng raised his hand to order Black Flag to join the fray.

“Xu Sheng, do you want to disobey order?I have told you, you can

question me, you can display discontent to me, but once I issue order!!! Like it or not, you must obey it completely!!!!" Liu Mang said his words while kept his gaze toward Xu Sheng. He knows that Xu Sheng's skill in wushu is very strong and is a very dependable person. But if he unleashes his other trump card now, then he will be committing the same mistakes like Zhou Cheng. Black Flag will not be able to show their full potential once again, this result is unwanted by Liu Mang.

Seeing Liu Mang's deep gaze, Xu Sheng just nodded toward Liu Mang. Xu Sheng just hoped in his heart that Liu Mang will not make a mistake like Zhou Cheng this time and be defeated. Further smearing Xu Sheng's and Black Flag's record.

"HAAAAAHHHHHH!!!!" Urban Army released all of their anger now, they have been shooting endlessly and done so without aiming because at the 20 steps distance, every arrow they shot will hit the enemy.

Soon enough, pitiful scream was heard beyond he city wall. Liu Mang then continues his order "Urban Army, release the logs and stones NOW!!!!" Shouted Liu Mang. "Yes sir!!!" All of remaining Urban Army worked themselves like a machine to fulfill Liu Mang's order and Black Flag? They just become a spectator in this battle.

All of Black Flag is pondering, what the hell this little lord of them wanted to do? This little lord of his really did not understand on how to repel the enemy. 1,000 Urban Army can bring big damage to Sun Ce army but only at the initial attack and the enemy is still swarming toward them like ants and all of blood in front of them is just like blood in slaughterhouse.

"Hahahaha!!!"Zhang De just laughed. He has stopped his advance

toward Wancheng city and stayed on moat side. He ordered his own familial general to go advance first and right now the general and his troops is annihilated. Zhang De laughed because based on the degree of assault with arrow rain and stone rain and spiked logs, he judged that Wancheng city defenders number is really around 1,000 troops and will be unable to fight back.

During briefing, Zhang De already got intel from their own scouts that Wancheng city defenders really only 1,000 troops. Hearing that numbers, Zhang De took a prudent action and allied with Bao clan and Ling clan and promised to share their war spoils evenly among three clans. If they are each attacking alone, then casualties will be very big and unbearable as 1,000 troops will be swallowed in an instant and that result is unbearable.

"NOW, ATTACK THE CITY!!!!" Zhang De's troops which has been increased to 3,000 troops quickly join the fray. Their enemies is just a tired elites and they definitely will be able to take Wancheng city today.

"COME ON, WE RUSH WITH ALL WE GOT!!!" Screamed all of the older nobles. They also finished observing and came into same conclusion with Zhang De. This battle is really an easy merit. Other than breaking the city, they also have the opportunity to gain further merit by killing senior generals and also killing His Highness Prince of Shu.

"SHA, SHA, SHAAAA!!!!" All of soldiers are rushing toward the city wall and started climbing scaling ladders and all of them have excited face. All of them are happy because enemy is very little and they also will gain merit along with their masters.

Some of the noble clans reps when seeing their own private soldiers are

advancing very slow, gritted their teeth and said “The first one who made to the city wall, will be given 10-mu of farming land!!!” When hearing their masters give generous offer, suddenly they speed up and quickly reached scaling ladder.

TL: 10 mu = 0.67 hectares

Prize 10-mu farmland is very precious for these soldiers. With 10-mu farmland, they can marry and if they have children, they will have inheritance to give. They also can help to pay taxes. Although it is heavy, but they still can have saving of 1 or 2-shi of food left after tax and that is enough for those soldiers as long as they are not in hunger.

Since these soldiers not yet married. 10-mu of farmland can be their helping tools to propose a good girl and create a family and Lu Bu army in front of them is already fish on chopping block.

In Sun Ce commanding platform, Lu Su is smiling toward Sun Ce and said “Milord, you see that? Wancheng city will be re-taken today!!!” Sun Ce himself also shows his rare smile. Both of them have been watching the assault from the platform. Indeed the arrow volley, logs, stones rolling are really scary but in the end, they really proved that the nobles are better in the end.

But Sun Ce also anxious, he is pondering when the battle will end, is it in 2 hours or 4 hours? Sun Ce can only afford max 6 hours as Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will arrive at tomorrow evening as they are already in the distance of 100-li from Shucheng County.

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry is king in the prairie battle. Even Sun Ce whose numbers is more big than Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will suffer a big loss if they try to attack them. Possibly 100,000 troops will be destroyed by Bing Province Heavy Cavalry at that time

Sun Ce really did not have confident to withstand the assault of Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. Sun Ce only brings 30,000 troops. 10,000 troops were left in Wancheng city naval base so in his hand only left 20,000. Yesterday they unleashed Danyang soldiers and Zuo division is vanished, so his troops only left with 15,000 troops. Noble's private soldiers, although they numbered 70,000 troops, all of them are rabble soldiers who even Sun Ce is confident to eliminate all of them with his 15,000 troops. And the biggest point is, they have never fought a cavalry before thus is useless if fighting cavalry.

Jiangdong has many waterways and their forte is naval battle. Their ground force is only a few. Also when besieging a city, sometimes they deploy cavalry soldiers to supplement the losses. And since those nobles are in good terms with Sun Ce, they have never seen a terror of cavalry, let alone heavy cavalry.

But on Sun Ce's face, the worry vanished immediately. In his judgment, with this speed, at noon they will be able to break Wancheng city. With Wancheng city back at their hand, even the mighty Bing Province Heavy Cavalry will fall in an instant.

"Hey, let me on first!!!" A Wang private soldier already reached city wall, but there is no more scaling ladder to be used. So, he said to the other private soldiers rudely to get the hell out of his way.

"Oh no, you don't! Me first!!!" This Li private soldier will not give up the generous prize of 10-mu farmland.

"Gimme the ladder!!!" The Wang private soldier begin tug-of-war battle

with Li private soldier.

"HEY, I AM WANG PRIVATE SOLDIER, GIVE IT TO ME!!!!" This Wang private soldier is truly rude because he come from Five Valley region and one of Shamoke's tribesmen. This guy was recruited because Wang clan is selling salt illegally to Shamoke and his tribesmen. At that time, this people steal from Wang clan's caravan for his family but managed to be arrested. Because of selling salt is illegal to Five Valley, Wang clan might be exterminated at that time if this person and his clan blab their mouth due to discontent between them, so in order to be considered as a gesture of goodwill, Wang clan "recruited" this guy to become his private soldier.

TL: Five Valley = Nanman region. Dynasty Warriors player should know about Meng Huo and Zhu Rong that harked from this region. Shamoke = one of the king in Five Valley, managed to kill Gan Ning in the Battle of Xiaoting and Shiting

"I AM LI PRIVATE SOLDIER, WHY DO I NEED TO GIVE YOU LADDER, HUH?!" A normal soldier may afraid of their masters for they will harm their own livelihood but with another noble soldier, that is a different story.

Looking that it is pointless to argue, the Wang private soldier kick him and grab his ladder and said "Since you don't want to give me, then fuck off!!!" The Li private soldier lost his balance and fall down into the mud quickly.

"YOU!!!! YOU DARE TO HIT ME!!!! YOU DIE!!!!" The Li private soldier quickly got up angry and draw his sword.

“YOU DIE FIRST!!!!” Wang private soldier also quickly pull out his sword and began fierce fight.

Watching that, Sun Ce just said this word disdainly “Pah, useless people!!!!” Those people really dare to attack friendly and dare to act mutiny toward their own allies. If there is such soldiers in Sun Ce’s core army, he will quickly destroy them in order to prevent further damage.

Was good maintains because of the there two heads of household the restraint has prevented the situation further development, even two still formed an alliance under the city. But the situation was defused quickly as two clan reps, Wang and Li, quickly arrived and remonstrate them. Also in order to prevent further damage, both of them formed an alliance in that instant.

“QUICK!!! CLIMB QUICK!!!!” Both Wang and Li clan reps already flustered because some of the noble clan soldiers already managed to climb up the city gate.

Chapter 169 – Nobles Siege (2)

Some of those soldiers who managed to climb up began laughing heartily “HAHAHAHA, FINALLY, 10-MU OF FARMLAND IS MINE!!!!” A greedy person is very dangerous and can make a person exponentially more powerful. If it is just normal circumstances, they will never be this fast. But with a reward prepared for them, they will be much more willing to die for that reward. So, after they reached the city wall, they quickly brandished their sword and began charging toward Urban Army.

Right now, on the city wall, only Urban Army is here. Black Flag is missing.

Liu Mang also stand on the city wall. When he look at that Sun Ce army sergeant, he only said “KILL HIM!!!!” Although that sergeant is considered elite in noble’s private army but under Urban Army’s assault, he is nothing.

In just 3 bouts, an Urban Army soldiers kill this sergeant.

Gradually, more and more Sun Ce’s noble army swarming to the city wall and one by one Urban Army fell to their assault.

Looking their own soldiers are swarming on the city wall, the head of Liu clan is really excited and said proudly “Those people are my soldiers!!! MY MIGHTY SOLDIERS!!!”. Other people send their own reps but this Liu clan is sending himself to monitor this battle. This man name is Liu Shang. His Liu clan is not one of Han Dynasty clansmen and not written in the annals unlike Liu Kai, Liu Neng, Liu Ye and even Liu Mang. A few hundred years ago, maybe his clan is one of the nobles but now, he is not. This man is a noble that harked from Songjiang district and worked

hard in order to become one of the nobles in Jiangdong.

TL: Songjiang district = one of Shanghai's district.

"PAH!!! ARE YOU REALLY SATISFIED BY JUST HAVING YOUR SOLDIERS GOT ON CITY WALL?!" The other clan reps is saying those words disdainfully and continued "I hope your memory is good, Liu Shang. Don't forget that Strategist Lu wants us to overcome the Wancheng city and only after that, we can calculate the merit!!!"

"YES!!! ANY SOLDIERS CAN CLIMB THE CITY WALL. DO NOT NEED SKILL TO DO THAT!!!" Other clan reps also taunting Liu Shang.

Liu Shang just kept his gaze toward Wancheng city and said "Just wait, be patient!!!" without seeing those clan reps. He just want to clean up Wancheng city's defenders and kill the other noble clan's soldiers to monopolize his merit. He has long waited for Sun Ce to appoint him with heavy responsibility.

Sun Ce just laughed when he saw noble's private soldiers one after another climb the city wall. In his mind, he just thought "Nice, wall already been climbed. It is a matter of time before the city fall!!! Hehehe, those dogs are really worthy of their values. I just baited them with the promise of merit and all of them are eating my shit!!! In the end, I will be the one who get the most spoils from breaking Wancheng city!!!!"

"SHA, SHA, SHAAAAAAA!!!!!!" Urban Army started to get big casualties because their numbers is unable to be compared with Sun Ce's army from several hundres to 4,000 in just a few minutes. Although Urban Army is powerful but enemies number is almost endless and kept swarming toward them, draining all of their stamina. Also this time Sun

Ce army is smart enough to protect the ladder in order to send a steady supply of soldiers.

Liu Mang also is engaging all troops with his shield and axe. He just finished ripping Sun Ce army soldiers with his shield and but his movement as if he is searching someone.

Liu Mang is looking generals in order to be cut down and destroy enemy's morale. Liu Mang has enough experience facing generals. One person can be said to have the strength of 1,000 troops inside him. If not dispatched quickly, there is no way they can survive this assault. He felt really strange as on the city wall, there are already 5,000 troops but no generals at all only sergeant and at most, lieutenant.

Since Liu Mang could not find any generals, then he can only order Huang Zhong "Old General Huang, I am counting on you to find generals!!!" in order to find generals to kill.

Huang Zhong is a one man army, who can kill thousand people by himself alone.

"YES SIR!!!" Huang Zhong nodded and grasped his golden curved dao. Everywhere he goes, he bring big terror toward every soldiers. His prowess is so strong that 5 soldiers were cut down in a single blow by him.

However, no matter how strong Huang Zhong is, he cannot turnabout this situation as the enemy is almost limitless. Urban Army also really hapless now and Liu Mang himself is fighting bloody battle.

“DAMMIT!!!! ALREADY 8,000 TROOPS!!!” Liu Mang curses while huffing and puffing. As for wounds, Liu Mang is harmless, but his stamina is already reached his max and now gritting his teeth at more and more enemies coming. These 1,000 Urban Army will really die and the city will fall today.

Liu Mang truly has never seen so much of Sun Ce army besieging him like this before.

Huang Zhong himself is also very limited in terms of stamina so, he is also saving up his own.

“HAHAHAHA!!!! YOU SEE THAT? I KEPT MY WORDS TO ALL OF YOU!!!!” Liu Shang said it with big excitement. The merit for breaking this city already succeeded, his banner also has been put on top, it is just a matter of time for General Sun Ce to see.

This Wancheng city is exponentially better than his Songjiang district. Even though this is just a prefecture, Liu Shang can expand his influence and even make Wancheng city as his base and make name for himself.

“Now where is that His Highness Prince of Shu?!” Liu Shang who has climbed to the wall then searches for a golden-armored general in all direction. Although Liu Shang never met Liu Mang but he knows that he wore golden armor just like Lu Bu so it will be very easy to recognize him.

Finally Liu Mang comes into Liu Shang's vision “Hmm, there you are!!! God really bless me with fortune!!!” Liu Shang is really felt blessed by God in this battle, he not only got the first merit breaking Wancheng city, he also able to capture Prince of Shu!!! With this big merit, Liu Shang's

clan will not only got Wancheng city as base, but Sun Ce will definitely place him as one of the oldest nobles and he quickly command his men "All soldiers, capture that golden-armored general harmless!!! He must survive!!!"

Bao clan and Zhang clan alliance who are on the city wall also managed to spot Liu Mang and said "Finally, come to us, big merit!!!" They all been lamenting because the first merit is gone, taken by Liu Shang so Zhang De and Bao Zhong have been seeking Liu Mang here and there. Now they found him, they will not let him go at all.

Zhang De who also becomes crazy due to loss several hundreds people and first merit, quickly ordered "ALL TROOPS!!! KILL THAT GOLDEN ARMORED GENERAL!!!! THOSE WHO KILL HIM WILL BE GRANTED 1,000 TAELS OF GOLD AND ADOPTED TO MY FAMILY!!!!" and thought maliciously "DAMN YOU, LIU SHANG!!! I WILL NOT LET YOU GET FURTHER MERIT!!!! I WILL KILL PRINCE OF SHU TO ROB YOUR MERIT NOW!!!!"

Liu Shang's soldier is screaming "Capture the gold-armored general!!!"

The other noble clans who also have the same idea with Zhang De quickly ordered their soldiers "KILL HIM!!!! THE ONE WHO KILL HIM WILL BE GRANTED 1,000 TAELS OF GOLD AND NOBILITY!!!!" They will not let the merit for killing Liu Mang lost again otherwise, they will have fought for nothing in recapturing Wancheng city.

"HUMPH!!! YOU WANT TO CATCH ME HUH?! LET ME BEAR WITNESS TO YOUR SKILL THEN!!!" Thought Liu Mang. Liu Mang heard all of their orders and right now he rouses his Urban Army morale "URBAN ARMY!!!! TOGETHER WE SHARE LIFE AND DEATH; TOGETHER WE SHARE RICHES AND HONOR!!!! KILL ALL OF THEM!!!!!"

“TOGETHER WE SHARE LIFE AND DEATH; TOGETHER WE SHARE RICHES AND HONOR!!!! SHAAAAA!!!!!” Urban Army is finally on rampage mode, their casualties is too high since yesterday. Two days ago, their roster is still complete, they are still drinking heartily and still swear brotherhood to all of them and even have discussion on how to start family but now, most of them are dead and leaving only hatred to the survivors.

Liu Mang just keep silent and even shed tears toward his Urban Army. He thought “That is it, my brothers. Vent your anger, avenge your brothers!!! This Liu Mang really sorry that I could not give you riches and honor. At least I will take your revenge for you and die together with all of you!!!!”

Liu Mang quickly Liu Mang then brandished his sword and kill one of the soldiers. His great shield whose has been taking hit for him started to lose its shape, but it did not prevent Liu Mang from slaughtering.

“SHAAAA!!!!!” Liu Mang eyes is bloodshot and already become a beast. Sun Ce has made him lost his 2,000 brothers-in-arms, took Su Fei away from him. All of these hatred now become the beast that Liu Mang is now.

“RETREAT, RETREAT!!!!” All of noble’s soldiers has been scared stiff. Currently Liu Mang still have no strength like Lu Bu or Huang Zhong and not even has a strategic mind like Chen Gong, Jia Xu and Guo Jia who also has learned six skills but he got the advantage of being still young and hot-blooded. So he use those advantage to avenge his brothers.

In just a few minutes, Liu Mang, under the influence of berserk, has killed 50 people. In his eyes, everywhere is his prey and killed them as if they are livestocks. Private soldiers has considered Liu Mang as an

invincible golden devil. No sword is able to destroy him and he can kill them with ease.

Liu Mang's body has been bathed by his enemies' blood. So much that, if his hair is squeezed, it will drip a lot of blood. Also it made his sword swing much more precise and made his slaughtering almost unstoppable.

"Hrm?!" Suddenly Liu Mang stopped in his tracks. He felt a sudden rush of overwhelming feeling of danger surrounding him. This feeling of danger is his body's own reflexive response and called intuition in modern terms. This is the sixth sense that Liu Mang developed during his hammering bone phase. This sixth sense is very common in animal and it helps them to avoid immediate danger. Human also have this sixth sense, but untrained and finally it just become dormant for all the times as the five senses become much more dominant. This intuition is really valued for a military commander or general because it can help them to avoid dangers.

Liu Mang then tilt his head to the right to avoid the incoming danger but "Puff!!!" An arrow grazed his right cheek. If he did not react earlier, he will die from a direct headshot.

Liu Mang started to sweat coldly and see his attacker. The attacker is a young general who right now shaking his head out of regret that his shot did not kill Liu Mang.

That man is Bao Zhong, Bao clan's rep and Bao clan's little lord. One of Bao Shuya's descendants.

A little trivia about Bao Shuya as previous two chapters did not include

it. Bao Shuya is a native of Yingshang County and one of Duke Huan of Qi Country during Spring and Autumn Period. He is known with Guan Zhong as the unsurpassable Bao and Guan. He is most known for recommending Guan Zhong and Guan helped Duke Huan to unite all of warlords and achieved hegemony for his Qi Country.

Bao Shuya is also a very able administrator and advisor. If he is not intelligent, how can he can be friends with those of Guan Zhong whose abilities is also very good. His relationship with Guan Zhong is more or less is the same like Pang Tong and Zhuge Liang and also with his friends like Cui Jun, Meng Jian, Shi Tao and Xu Shu.

However because of Guan Zhong's ability is too big, it overshadows Bao Shuya's talent.

As for Bao Zhong, although his ability to administrate is dismal compared to his ancestor but Bao Zhong proud of his archery skill. He is able to shoot any target with great precision. Earlier shot shows as a testament of his skill.

A moment ago, Bao Zhong intended to kill Liu Mang and his Urban Army bodyguard. But when he unleashed his arrow, Liu Mang actually dodged it and his Urban Army bodyguard also followed his reflex, saving them from their fate. If Liu Mang did not reflexively dodged it, maybe he will be dead by now. But Bao Zhong will not let Liu Mang counter him so, he quickly pulled his longbow again.

"WHIZ!!! WHIZ!!! WHIZ!!!" Bao Zhong launched 3 salvo arrows and aiming for Liu Mang's top, middle and groin area. Bao Zhong must kill Liu Mang as soon as possible. Bao Zhong has long for his clan to be acknowledged in this nation since Bao Shuya's death and this Prince of

Shu's corpse will give him merits and praises ten-thousand fold.

Liu Mang tried to reach for his shield. But Bao Zhong knows Liu Mang's idea so he quickly shot another two arrows to push it away.

"DAMMIT!!!" Liu Mang gritted his teeth. If he take his great shield now, although first arrow will be deflected but the second one will go through the joint of his armor and will injure him seriously.

And right now, one of the 3 arrows arrived at the target and it is the one aiming at Liu Mang's groin. "WHIZ!!!" Liu Mang sidestepped in order to avoid first arrow.

"HUMPH!!!" Bao Zhong just humphed disdainfully. He had hoped to kill Liu Mang with the first shot to prove his excellent archery but unfortunately it missed. But Bao Zhong already calculated that Liu Mang will avoid it, so right now he is waiting the result from second and third arrow.

The second arrow immediately arrived and aimed at Liu Mang's midsection. Liu Mang jump to avoid it.

"DAMMIT!!!" Bao Zhong curses again. But now he is smiling for the third arrow is now is aiming for Liu Mang's head and thought "Hehe, this shot will kill you!!!".

Liu Mang just catch the third arrow with his own hand, but strangely this arrow just keep revolving and even have its own strength and right now it wants to pierce Liu Mang's head.

“Nice catch. But now you die!!!” Bao Zhong just smiled, he thought that Liu Mang will use his skills to avoid the third arrow, but now he catch it, he will die now as the velocity and the method of shooting it, is not the same as previous arrows. If this pierce Liu Mang’s head, then his head will explode just like a watermelon shoot by a Desert Eagle.

Chapter 170 – Black Flag Re-emerges!!! Calamity Has Come To Nobles

"GODDAMMIT!!!!" Liu Mang kept holding the third arrow. Liu Mang's reaction time is too late after he jumped to avoid second arrow and now it is want to claim his life.

"GO, GO, GO!!!!" Bao Zhong encouraged his arrow to pierce Liu Mang. Finally Liu Mang just turn his head to the left and let arrow struck his cheek that is covered with armor. "BANG!!!!" The impact it made is so strong that it made Liu Mang fall down to the ground and lost consciousness

"Splash!!!" Liu Mang just fall down with face first and not moved in 2 minutes.

Seeing that Liu Mang did not move, Bao Zhong then ordered "Soldiers, please cut down His Highness Prince of Shu's head!!!" Bao Zhong is really satisfied. With this merit, Bao clan can be promoted to become Jiangdong's oldest noble and when Bao Zhong thinking what his father's expression will be made him more happy.

"YES SIR!!!" Bao clan's private soldier quickly go toward Liu Mang position to cut Liu Mang's head.

"HAHAHAHA!!!!" This soldier want to offer his ancestors, Liu Mang's head. And this gold armor will help him to buy several-mu farmland.

With that thought, he brandished his sword toward Liu Mang's "corpse".

Suddenly "PUFF!!!" that soldier head is flying and his smile is not yet

receded. Liu Mang then stood back up slowly.

"WHAT?!!!!" Bao Zhong really surprised that golden-armored Prince of Shu had not yet died!!! How can that be?

But Liu Mang almost died under that arrow a moment ago! Liu Mang quickly firmed his stand. That arrow almost claim his life. That arrow is really too dangerous and more deadly than the oxybeles he created. Liu Mang now really feared arrow subconsciously because that kind of arrow is really unpredictable and almost soundless.

"Lucky Bastard!!!" Bao Zhong curses and his complexion become cold. Bao Zhong realized that his arrow hit his cheek which covered by helmet and was knocked out by its impact. It is evident by Liu Mang's right cheek is dented.

Also Liu Mang's luck is really good because before that arrow reached his face, his face turned to left. And because that arrow is spinning like drill, its power also decreased, furthering his luck now.

Bao Zhong then saw his arrow lying beside Liu Mang's feet. With this chance, Liu Mang prepare to go forward to kill Bao Zhong but Bao Zhong who has been vigilant all the time, he ordered his soldiers to halt Liu Mang's advance and to buy him some time to salvo again.

"HUMPH!!! So what if you managed to survive earlier? I will kill you right now!!!" Bao Zhong humphed coldly. He is confident that right now, he will be able to kill Liu Mang now and make his name really famous.

But Bao Zhong's idea is completely destroyed as soon as Bao Zhong shot his salvo arrows again, the nearby also got whiz, whiz, whiz sound,

targeting his arrows.

"Clang, clang, clang!!!" As soon as Bao Zhong released his salvo. On the right side, there is also got a person who takes down his arrows.

"WHO?!" Bao Zhong screamed. Bao Zhong felt there is a master archer who is able to intercept his arrows and he felt that his skill is much higher than him and the one on his sight is a young archer. Shooting arrow off the sky is a very difficult task as the arrow have very high velocity and unable to be seen with normal naked eye due to small and thin size. Bao Zhong concluded that this person must have excellent eyesight and master archery skill.

And then as if replying to Bao Zhong's inquiry, that young archer releases three arrows flying toward Bao Zhong. This is the same three arrows that Bao Zhong unleashes toward Liu Mang but blocked completely by him.

"SHIT, MY SKILL IS COPIED!!!!" Bao Zhong curses again. Bao Zhong's skill is archery is very high, even Sun Ce praises his skill to be first class and now Bao Zhong finally knows that his opponent skill is higher than he is. That three arrows is his own unique skills but was copied to perfection by that young archer with only one look.

"Hrm?!" While Bao Zhong has doubts, Liu Mang really excited. Because this archer is saving him from his fate. In Lu Bu Army, there are only 3 people with this skill, first is Huang Zhong, second is Huang Xu and third is Lu Bu. Right now Huang Zhong is on the other gate doing slaughter and the one who saved him now is none other than Huang Xu.

And soon Huang Xu pulls out his arrow again and put up stance as if he is saying “Your opponent is me!!!”

“FINE, LET’S HAVE A BATTLE!!!” Bao Zhong’s heart is excited. Bao Zhong skill in wushu is middle class but he is really proud with his archery skill. Until now, he declared himself that he is peerless among the heavens in archery but right now, appeared a very strong enemy, how can it not made Bao Zhong want to test his skill against him?

Liu Mang then nodded toward Huang Xu. Huang Xu has rescued him many times, but Huang Xu himself feels that his debt is much bigger toward Liu Mang. Really the ancient truly appreciates favors.

Seeing himself already safe, suddenly there is a sound from Liu Mang “Cough, cough, cough!!!” Liu Mang coughed blood but mixed with 2 piece of white bone-like thing. 2 of his wisdom teeth fall down because of the impact by Bao Zhong’s arrow.

Seeing Liu Mang coughed blood. Several noble clans reps and private soldiers become really excited. Earlier they are disappointed because they all thought that Liu Mang will die by Bao Zhong’s arrow, therefore destroying their merits and come home empty handed. But now, it is really good because Bao Zhong has been stuck by an archer and Bao Zhong managed to damage Liu Mang severely in their opinion.

“HAHAHA!!!! A severely wounded general and with very less men!!! This is easy!!! Charge everyone!!! SHAAAAAA!!!!!!” All of noble clans reps started charging toward Liu Mang along with their soldiers.

“Injured?!” Liu Mang tried using his tongue. “Heh, my wisdom teeth are

missing eh?!" Liu Mang just opted not to speak as it is still painful and will bleed more and more.

"PUFF!!!" Liu Mang slashed four soldiers. After fighting yesterday's annihilation battle and killing Chen Wu, Liu Mang leveled up to second-class general whose steps right now is refining strength.

Li clan rep, Li Ren, has big doubts when observing Liu Mang "How can this be called injured?!" Liu Mang has been bloodied in every place of his body but he is still vigorous and killing their own men, striking fear to their own soldiers and themselves.

"EVERYONE ATTACK HIM TOGETHER!!!! EVEN IF HE IS GOD OF WAR, HE WILL DIE THIS TIME!!!" Some people voiced their ideas and quickly attack him together, even older noble clans reps also joining the fray to attack Liu Mang.

The result of their attack is Liu Mang really injured. His arm already losing its strength and now he is just forcing himself again and again. His injury is so much that it made some cracking sound on his bone. Right now he is just huffing and puffing due to tiredness.

"HE IS OUT!!!! HE IS OUT OF STAMINA!!!" The nearby people screamed. Liu Mang already out of gas and his strength is already depleted. But no soldiers or nobles dared to get near him. One soldier tried to attack him and was stabbed by him.

"Your Highness Prince of Shu gives yourself up!!! We will not defile your corpse and bury you with full honor as you are one of Han Dynasty clansmen!!!" A noble clan rep speaking to Liu Mang from a distance.

Zhang De also continued “SEE AT YOUR SOLDIERS!!! THEY ALREADY SCATTERED AND DEFEATED!!! WHY MUST YOU PERSIST TO DO A LAST STAND? JUST GIVE US YOUR HEAD AND BE OVER WITH IT!!!” Zhang De is a military commander and his word actually has weight right now.

Liu Mang also see that his Urban Army is already exhausted but some of Urban Army still live and still fighting for him.

“DAMMIT!!! I REALLY CANNOT PERSEVERE EH?!” Liu Mang said to himself slowly. His duty of avenging his brothers is complete. If Urban Army did not vent their anger, perhaps they will become bloodthirsty and become a beast. If other division soldier, becoming a beast is very good as it will only increase their ferocity in battle, but for Liu Mang? It is the same as becoming a beast themselves.

What Liu Mang needed is a group of brave warriors, not animals. Animals cannot be organized and will result in complete destruction for both sides and when this times of war ended, they must be eliminated with extreme prejudice. Too pitiful their fate, those who born in this times of war at the end of Han Dynasty. In the end, they must do fratricide in order to maintain their survival.

“Okay then, just commit suicide!!! After that, we will weep for you and bury your corpse honorably!!!” Zhang De said it with full confidence. Liu Mang then thought “Pah, bury my corpse honorably? Not defile my corpse? You are delusional. Dong Xi will definitely eat me for killing Chen Wu and Jiang Qin will definitely make my body a “human swine” for killing Zhou Tai!!! You just speaking bad things with good words.”

“So, you really want me to decide, eh?!” Liu Mang just said it casually. He has thrown down his sword and put his great shield on his front.

“Oh, even if you do not decide, the fact is that you are unable to win!!! And because of your sins for killing nobles, you must be killed by slow cutting, but this Zhang De will give you option to die peacefully!!!” Zhang De said it proudly. Earlier, he made alliance with Bao Zhong to break Wancheng city and share 50% merit, but since breaking Wancheng city is impossible to be obtain again, he is very looking forward to get merit by killing Liu Mang.

“Oh” Liu Mang just calm down and put down his great shield.

Looking at Liu Mang’s surrender gesture, Zhang De smiled happily. He really do not want Liu Mang to put up last stand. Although he can kill Liu Mang, his loss will not be small. Maybe each of Zhang clan’s private soldiers right now will be killed by Liu Mang. Zhang De cannot afford to have that loss.

“Surrender?! Really, you thought that, huh?!” Liu Mang just teased Zhang De.

“Your Highness Prince of Shu, are you really looking to be dismembered?!” Zhang De really confused. He really do not understand, because in his eyes, Prince of Shu already in surrender mode. Why must he persist to tease me?!

“HAHAHAHA!!! I will also give the same words to you, General Zhang!!!” Liu Mang laughed. Liu Mang did not know Zhang De’s name, but he saw the banner Zhang lifted by his flag-bearer, so he just called him General Zhang.

“It is futile to do last stand, as you are unable to win this battle!!! Death by dismemberment is very painful, better for you to commit suicide!!!” Liu Mang said those words back to Zhang De. After he said that, he whistled.

“Fine then, since you ask for dismemberment, then die!!!” Zhang De’s face become very bad. Since Liu Mang did not give face to his offer, then die by dismemberment. Zhang De did not want his corpse, he only want merit for recapturing Wancheng city. Zhang De then opened his big offer “KILL HIM, CUT HIM TO PIECES. WHOEVER CUT HIS HEAD WILL GET 1,000 TAELS OF GOLD. WHOEVER CUT HIS BODYPARTS WILL BE GIVEN 50-MU FARMLAND!!!”

“SHAAAAA!!!!” Those soldiers who feared Liu Mang suddenly began excited again. Liu Mang has been injured and no longer wield any weapon so there is nothing to fear. They began charging toward Liu Mang.

But suddenly “Thump, thump, thump!!!” the city wall’s ground vibrate violently.

“What is this sound?!” Zhang De also felt the city wall is vibrating. Is there any earthquake?

“Thump, thump, thump!!!” The sound getting more nearer and nearer and vibration become more violent.

Liu Mang looks to one of Zhang private soldier and said “Surrender now, maybe I will spare you!!!”

“SURRENDER?! JUST GO DIE!!!!” The soldier really fierce and unwilling

to do Liu Mang's request. In his eyes, Liu Mang's head is 1,000 taels of gold. In his head there is only future plan to buy farmland and become a landlord with 1,000 taels of gold.

"How pitiful ignorant people is!!!" Liu Mang just shook his head.

"DIE QUICKLY!!!" The sword already approaching Liu Mang's head. As long as it connects, Liu Mang head will fall and merit will be his.

"WHIZ, WHIZ, WHIZ!!!" One after another arrows coming from Liu Mang's behind. Killing his executioner and soldiers surrounding him. In just one salvo, 10 people died.

"WHATTT???!!" Zhang De's uneasiness finally revealed. A flock of black beast is coming toward them like a monster and the arrow from Liu Mang's back, come from those black beast.

"Heh, finally here!!!" Liu Mang's entire body is painful, he is too tired and do not want to move anymore. When he saw the Black Heavy Infantry leader, he smiled.

"BLACK FLAG!!! DESTROY ALL ENEMIES, SHAAAAA!!!!!" Xu Sheng screamed. That familiar voice is now voicing his anger.

Zhang De rubbed his eyes many times because it is really unbelievable. Black Flag who should be fighting side by side with them as Zhou clan's private soldiers actually attacking them right now.

These 3,000 Black Flag are all Heavy Infantry and the king of land battle. All of them are wearing 100-jin equipment and each of them wielded

long dao. Everywhere they battle, disaster follows.

Liu Mang did not dispatch them earlier because he knows their stamina is limited. If he unleashes them earlier, they will not have stamina to fight prolonged battle much like heavy cavalry but the burden on their body is heavier because heavy infantry is using their own body to carry 100-jin equipment. Therefore the correct analogy for them is like a ballista. Once shot, one must pull again the bowstring and it took very long time for them to reload ballista. Liu Mang also will not use them to open front door and directly attack Sun Ce, so he can only use them on city wall. Fortunately Wancheng city's wall is not only big and robust, but it is very broad, enough for 4 carriages to walk side by side.

Liu Mang's plan is like this. Liu Mang are luring all of today's battle forces which are nobles. He also made Urban Army to fight first in order to vent their anger and also in order to confuse Sun Ce army, made them think that they only have 1,000 Urban Army and have no more defenses. The plan worked and it made Sun Ce army dropped their guard. Liu Mang also observed that when 12,000 troops has reached the city wall, suddenly there is no more soldiers climbing up. So, the time is ripe to unleash Black Flag. With Black Flag as enemy even though their noble private soldiers numbers are greater, one should know the result of this battle. A one-sided slaughterfest.

Black Flag is really riding the wind this time. Those noble private soldiers did not stand a chance. One by one was thrown from the city wall like just being hit by a C4 explosion.

"SHAAAA!!!!" Black Flag really inspired terror inside their heart. 12,000 noble private soldiers unable to escape and the only escape route is by scaling ladder. They are all really afraid and started killing their own friendlies in order to reach scaling ladder.

“AAAAHHHHHHH!!!!!” Screamed some of soldiers. Another problem then happened when those soldiers climbed down scaling ladders. The ladder which could not hold the accumulated weight quickly break down and those people who were still on scaling ladder were splattered and become meat patty.

Those who have good courage shouted “Brothers, fight to the death!!!” They all thinking, since they are going to die, might as well die fighting. 100 troops then ran toward Black Flag and the result?! They become meat patty immediately.

On the city wall, there are many internal organs, intestines, blood and bones flying everywhere, changing the entire color of the wall. Those who are saying that Wancheng city is easy to take back, now they are finding themselves in hell!!! Liu Mang shown them hell and made those soldiers scared stiff.

Chapter 171 – Sun Ce Is Exterminating Wu Clan

"NO, NO, NO!!! THIS IS MASSACRE!!!" Responded Lu Su toward the event that he saw at city wall. At the city wall, noble private soldiers are quickly running toward scaling ladder but one by one was broken by their weight and fall down to Wancheng city wall. Sun Ce's eyes only sees fear in their eyes. Earlier the situation still good. All of the noble's soldiers are climbing up with vigor, but right now they are the one pushed back.

But even they are pushed back, they should not be scattered and destroyed like this. Some of Sun Ce's sergeants are helping to kill those noble private soldiers to alleviate their suffering.

Sun Ce punched the nearby wooden pillar into pieces and gritted his tooth while saying "DAMNED HEAVY INFANTRY!!!! WHERE THE HELL THAT HEAVY INFANTRY COMES FROM?" Sun Ce really miscalculated Liu Mang. He thought "If that person have heavy infantry, why did not he use it yesterday?!" If yesterday he dispatched heavy infantry, then it is impossible for them to almost recapture Wancheng city.

Sun Ce once again misunderstood Liu Mang. Yesterday, Liu Mang not yet had Black Flag. At that time, Black Flag and Liu Mang still enemies and Sun Ce army was the ally of Black Flag. And right now, the former ally is killing Sun Ce's noble private soldiers.

Sun Ce indeed want Liu Mang to kill those nobles, but he really did not want for Liu Mang to destroy them all completely because he still have use for those soldiers. Looking again, 12,000 troops is finished. Every last one of them.

“DAMNATION!!!!” Bao Zhong curses once again. Earlier he already have Prince of Shu in the bag and almost break Wancheng city. But right now, the situation is reversed quickly.

Bao Zhong ponders who are these Black heavy infantry is. Bao Zhong then test to shoot an arrow, the result is they can be injured but their pain tolerance is so high that they did not care at all, and just keep charging. Moreover, Bao Zhong also still felt the threat from Huang Xu who still want to claim his life.

Huang Xu then shoot ricochet arrow using Urban Army great shield that is lying beside Bao Zhong. Because the arrow is not shooting toward him right now, Bao Zhong just stayed on the spot. But when the arrow is doing it ricochet, Bao Zhong did not have enough time to react and it quickly buried into his left shoulder. "AAAARRRRGGGGGHHHHHH!!!!!!" Screamed Bao Zhong and quickly dropped his bow. Huang Xu then move forward to tie up Bao Zhong and proceeded to throw him into prison.

“Get out of my way, get out of my way!!!!” Zhang De also panicked. He must escape therefore he has been pushing his own soldiers to their own death. He also regretted that he was so arrogant toward Liu Mang. If he was more respectful at that time, maybe he will be granted reprieve and become a prisoner. But now, only death is waiting for him therefore his fear is maxed.

While Zhang De was fleeing suddenly his leg was grabbed by Liu Shang. “Oh, brother Zhang De!!! Please save me, please save me!!!” Liu clan and Zhang clan has been friends for many generations. Zhang De also called Liu Shang as elder brother. Right now Liu Shang already cannot run away as his right leg already bleeding, got shot by an arrow that was shot by Black Flag to cover Liu Mang. If Sun Ce’s noble army is winning this battle, he can just find secluded place to recuperate but

right now, all of Sun Ce's noble army is fleeing and all enemies' wanted him dead, how can he do not want to escape.

"FUCK OFF!!! FUCK OFF!!!!" Zhang De screamed and prepared to kick Liu Shang and said "Hey brother Liu, your leg is already injured right? So, please die for me. I will pray for you at home. Otherwise, none of us will survive!!!!"

Zhang De finally knows how much terrifying Liu Mang is. He is the one who killed all of Wancheng city nobles without batting an eye. He is much more terrifying than Lu Bu. Even Lu Bu who exterminated Chen clan got a butcher title on him. Now what title will Liu Mang get now?

"Brother Zhang De, please, you cannot leave me, cannot!!! Please help me, please…!!!" Liu Shang not yet finished his sentence but was kicked in the face by Zhang De, his face is full tears and blood. Liu Shang is already 40 years old but Zhang De is still 30 years old, so his strength is bigger than him, but he still cannot cut him loose.

"Brother Zhang De, brother Zhang De" Liu Shang's kept helding to Zhang De's leg. He will not let him go, for he also want to escape, even now he is stomped by Zhang De, he still will not let him go. Liu Shang then make final offer "Oh, brother Zhang De. Please save me. I will reciprocate your debt after you save me. I will give you 10,000 taels of gold. I will give you my He Shi Bi jade at my home. Please save me, save me!!!"

Last year, when Zhang De visited Liu Shang's house, he saw a piece of He Shi Bi jade at Liu Shang's house. This piece was taken by force by Liu Shang from a descendant of Meng Yi who was killed by Emperor Qin Er Shi of Qin Dynasty. At that time, Zhang De offered half of his estate to get

Liu Shang's He Shi Bi jade but Liu Shang rejected as that treasure is too valuable. But right now, when his life in danger, even he is offered Imperial Seal, Zhang De will not accept it. He just thought "Sorry, I, myself unable to save my own skin. Let alone yours!!!"

Looking Liu Shang will not let go his hand, Zhang De raised his sword and screamed "Old fart, you forced me to do this!!!" and proceeded to cut his hand.

"Poof!!!" His sword cut Liu Shang's shoulder, blood bursting like a faucet turned full open. "AAAHHHHH!!!!!" Liu Shang screamed. With Liu Shang's right hand loose, Zhang De truly must escape in order to survive another day but Liu Shang's left hand quickly hold Zhang De's left leg and kept saying "Please save me, please, please……!!!!"

"LET ME GO!!!" Zhang De screamed. The enemy who is similar to hell's gate guardian getting nearer and nearer. Zhang De quickly stabbed Liu Shang's forehead in order to escape. Flesh, blood and bone all flew upwards. Zhang De just killed an ally of his family for generations because the circumstances in order to survive compels him to do so.

With Liu Shang already released his grip, Zhang De kicked Liu Shang's corpse and quickly go to scaling ladder but it is already full with soldiers.

Because he already bloodied with Liu Shang's blood, Zhang De also become crazier and crazier. He directly shoved off his own soldiers and even slashed some of them, but because of that treatment of him, some of his soldiers actually rebelled and tied him up.

Seeing Zhang De already tied up, Black Flag did not attack them

anymore. Even Xu Sheng comes out of the line and put Zhang De in a secluded place as a prisoner but after that, he also ordered his Black Flag to kill those remaining soldiers.

But in all scaling ladders, rampage between noble clan reps and their own private soldiers still raging.

"This massacre is terrible!!!" Said Huang Zhong who just arrived after cleaning another city wall. He also felt very uncomfortable seeing this. Huang Zhong who just killed around 1,000 troops did not have this kind of bloody scenery. Everywhere is red crimson, wall is dyed with blood, stone cavity were filled with organs and blood. People skin, people fat, people bones, are spreading as if they are trash.

Liu Mang himself just sit without showing any emotion. He is too tired, he did not have mood to watch the slaughterfest like this, what he knows that he had won this battle. He had completed his mission, he managed to make their Urban Army to vent their anger, he managed to save most of them. So right now, Liu Mang just want to rest, to save strength for next battle with Sun Ce core army.

But in Xu Sheng's eyes, Liu Mang's calm state actually scare him a lot. Xu Sheng being the leader of Black Flag, has been slaughtering here and there. Bones, blood, head, intestine are flying through the air. Those things made Xu Sheng's body crimson red and have very ungodly odor. Earlier, Xu Sheng has been really angry because of his unit was restrained by Liu Mang. So Xu Sheng want to use this ungodly odor and scenery to scare Liu Mang and to let Liu Mang know that this Xu Sheng is not good to offend but now he is disappointed, because Liu Mang did not have any reactions at all.

Liu Mang just kept calm in front of bloodied scenery as if he is as calm as Taishan mountain. As if Liu Mang understood Sun Tzu's Feng, Lin, Huo, Shan (Furinkazan). This place is a real hell, everything is slaughterfest. It

can make average man to vomit immediately. Even experienced general will also felt uncomfortable with this scenery.

And Liu Mang has no response, as if he is empty inside as if there is no event happening now. Xu Sheng pondered “What kind of man is this? Is he really a man of heaven?!” Xu Sheng then remembered that Urban Army said their general is a man from heaven. Earlier, Xu Sheng just smiled disdainfully and thought “Pah, what man from heaven?! He still bleeds red blood!!! Maybe it is just a propaganda in order to get more soldiers” but seeing Liu Mang right now, Xu Sheng truly believed it but he believe that this man is not man from heaven, but god of hell incarnate.

“SHA, SHA, SHAAAA!!!!” Black Flag just slaughter and throw their discontent toward noble private soldiers. Since childhood they have been training and now, they are able to show the fruit of their labor. As a result, noble private soldiers numbers are getting thinner and thinner as more and more of them escapes through scaling ladder.

“Aiyah, nobles private soldiers are all finished!!!” Lu Su said it while shaking his head. From his vision, there is no more paths for those noble private soldiers to escape and already backed into a corner. The only option left for them is to die or surrender. Also there is no way, they can be reused as soldiers, they can only face total annihilation.

“GRRRR, LIU MANG, LIU MANG, LIU MANG!!!!” Sun Ce call Liu Mang’s name three times. There is no one, NO ONE that has ever made Sun Ce lost again and again. Only this Liu Mang managed to do it. Not only able to defeat him, but he made Sun Ce’s soldiers annihilated.

His casualties now: 5,000 Danyang Zuo soldiers,, Bian clan and Zuo

clans private soldiers which numbered 10,000 troops, added 12,000 troops of noble private soldiers. In just two days, Sun Ce army lost 30,000 troops from 100,000 troops, he also lost 4 generals: Zhou Tai, Jiang Qin, Chen Wu and Dong Xi. If this trend kept going, how long can 100,000 troops can persist fighting him. The opposite Liu Mang is different, although Liu Mang lost 90% of his original roster, but it is only around 10,000 troops and he only lost Su Fei. Such big is Sun Ce's loss now.

Sun Ce has never been defeated in a battle where his numbers are superior. The reason that Sun Ce bring 100,000 troops to do battle is because he want to fight Lu Bu, but his opponent right now is not even Lu Bu and can make his loss big like this.

Sun Ce finally start to recognize this Liu Mang as a person and as Prince of Shu. Sun Ce really not expected this development. He thought that he is just Lu Bu's subordinates, just Lu Bu's puppet. Who ever thought that his prowess and ability is very big.

Lu Su and Sun Ce thinking the same thought "That man managed to save Lu Bu from Xiapi, at Kaiyang he insult Cao Cao so great that he is unable to think any stratagem. In Shouchun, he insult Yuan Shu directly to his face. In Bagongshan battle, he destroyed Yu Province Cavalry along with Chen Lan and Lei Bo with only infantries. At Wancheng city banquet, he insulted two of Jiangdong top advisors elegantly." Lu Su really thought that even his lord, Jiangdong's Little Conqueror and even his lord's brother, Sun Quan, are unable to be compared to Prince of Shu. He is really adept in civil and military matters and have Lu Bu's deep trust. In Lu Su's mind, there is nobody in Jiangdong and even in this nation that can compare with Prince of Shu. Not even his friend Zhou Yu Zhou Gongjin.

Sun Ce then said to Lu Su "Zijing, tell Ziyi to prepare himself!!! I must

attack the city personally!!!" Sun Ce already could not bear such big losses, he must retaliate immediately and that is in line with Sun Ce's character.

"Milord, don't. Your wound is still not yet healed!!!" Lu Su remonstrated Sun Ce.

"Zijing, we don't have much time left!!!" Sun Ce shook his head. He really thinks that at least noon can enter Wancheng city but now, all is lost. Sun Ce then said "Zijing, I believe you know that Lu Bu Lu Fengxian is already on the road. I calculate the day after tomorrow, he will arrive and smite us all. If tomorrow we cannot recapture Wancheng city, then we can only retreat our troops!!!"

Bing Province Heavy Cavalry, which represent Lu Bu's main unit, is already not far from here. 5,000 wolves are about to arrive here to smite them. Sun Ce had seen them, because when he welcomed Lu Bu with Zhou Yu, he also rode inside Bing Province Heavy Cavalry. All of them are expert equestrians and also expert mounted archer. All of them are veteran of hundred battles, also all of them are riding the same type of horses just like Lu Bu's Red Hare and his Oolong. They are really infantry killer.

Even though heavy infantry can be used to fight against heavy cavalry soldiers, but they lack mobility and it is causing lack of battle efficiency when fighting heavy cavalry. Those heavy cavalry can just spinning those heavy infantry like wolves and will take down them one by one like hungry wolves. Right now Sun Ce army is just like those people who are seeking shelter in Wancheng city, in order for wolves not to eat them. So, today Wancheng city must be recaptured at any costs.

Lu Su then said his concern “Milord, what about those nobles?!” He needs to ask, what to do if Lu Bu army had taken hostage of those nobles. They represent nobles who also provide troops in all Jiangdong, if Sun Ce did not process their bail out, then Sun Ce will not be able to take a single step further from Jiangdong.

“Oh, those nobles? Did not they all die in battle?!” Sun Ce just said it with very cold tone.

“All died?!” Lu Su surprised at Sun Ce's respond. “What does Milord think? Lu Bu army is not so crazy to kill all nobles!!! They will definitely capture some of them! But Milord's words just now, does he meant to kill all nobles in Jiangdong?!” Thought Lu Su.

“Zijing. Spread the word to all noble's remaining army. 'Your masters have been annihilated by Lu Bu army. Join me to avenge your masters!!!'” Sun Ce stressed his order word by word while kept his gaze toward Lu Su.

Lu Su is really speechless. Obviously those noble clan reps are just arrested. Is Milord want to absorb their soldiers?

Lu Su's guess is bullseye. Sun Ce really wanted to absorb their soldiers. Their threat to Sun Ce's rule in Jiangdong is too big. So no matter, whether this Wancheng city can be overcome today or not, Sun Ce will not give them back. Those nobles only willing to help of their own interest. Now, they are helping Sun Ce, the next day, they maybe helping Lu Bu or Cao Cao or even Liu Biao to destroy Sun Ce. So Sun Ce will definitely not let that happen.

“What about those nobles assistants or butlers?!” Lu Su asked again.

Those noble clan reps all accompanied by their own assistants and butlers. All of them are only obeying the clan reps, all of them definitely will not believe the “news” if they did not see any corpse.

“Is there?! Just treat them the same as their masters!!!” Sun Ce just said that lightly but Lu Su's heart sank when hearing those words. He wants to kill them all, cleaning all potential rebellion seeds.

“Ah, Milord. What about Wu clan?!” Lu Su added the information. Wu clan has been sprinting like a wuss when Black Flag was unleashed, so right now their roster is almost complete but tired and terrified.

“Wu clan!!!” Sun Ce muttered that name in low voice. This Wu is his mother's clan and has continuously supported his Sun but Sun Ce's eyes is flashing dangerously. Since Sun Ce has said to Lu Su to spread the news that all noble's clan reps died in battle, he will not let Wu escape their fate, provided they have twice offend military law.

“Kill all of them!!!” Sun Ce said it decisively.

Lu Su really surprised. Sun Ce dare to kill his family clan, the Wu clan. The Wu clan has given everything to support Sun clan but right now, Sun Ce is willing to kill his mother's clan. This is really ruthless but decisive and effective.

Sun Ce then said “Spare no one. Cut them down now in order to prevent future trouble!!!”

Lu Su lowered his head and said “Yes sir!!!” and did not dare to look at

Sun Ce. His impression toward Sun Ce had changed. Suddenly Sun Ce can become this decisive? This killing intent is not a lie. Lu Su really confused because Sun Ce's character from being tolerant quickly changed into iron-fisted. In Lu Su's heart appeared Liu Mang's form. Sun Ce has grown to resemble him a lot although they are opposition now. Lu Su now pondered which people who shall be his wise lord and receive his service, is it Sun Ce, Sun Quan or Liu Mang?

Chapter 172 – Vanquishing Private Soldiers

Liu Mang finally regained his consciousness and he is really surprised with the amount of casualties in front of him and said “What the hell is this scenery?!”. He is really unable to believe that this is the result when heavy infantry clashes with light infantry and because the battle took place at a “confined” space, right now those noble private soldiers are cornered like rats. Even when at Bagongshan battle, when Yu Province Cavalry trampled upon supply troops, the scenery is not as pitiful as this. But even then, that battle took place in an open space where people can still escape and scattered in all directions so at that battle, all remaining 3,000 supply troops are able to escape.

Those noble private soldiers who are cornered right now, only have two choices. First is to commit suicide by jumping from city wall, second is to be executed by Liu Mang’s soldiers. Liu Mang’s decision this time is a bit too harsh.

Liu Mang unleashed what we called a barrage of mortar bombs in our modern time terms toward those noble private soldiers. Such is The Black Flag comparison during massacre just now. Infantries did not stand a chance from mortar barrage and after the assault stopped, what was left is only a scene from hell.

When Liu Mang awakes Huang Zhong quickly got to Liu Mang’s side and said “Little lord, please order them to stop!!!” Huang Zhong already seen that these Sun Ce army already lost courage and already wanted to surrender. These remaining 5,000 troops are all still human not pigs. If they still have courage to fight, Huang Zhong will not spare them, but all of them already throw down their swords and screaming for surrender.

Some of those private soldiers who heard Liu Mang and Huang Zhong’s

word started to speak up “Yes, general. I am willing to surrender. I am willing!!!” They all know that Liu Mang is Lu Bu army’s leader also Black Flag who have heard Huang Zhong’s words also stop their advance in order to hear Liu Mang’s words.

Surrender?! Even if you surrender, all of you already useless. Fear has gripped their heart tightly, they will not be able to fight against Sun Ce army. All of them already feared these Black Flag as their nightmares. They are monsters. One strike from them, casualties amounted to 6,000 troops. So only these 5,000 troops are left and right now they are surrendering and looking at Liu Mang for hope of mercy.

Liu Mang closed his eyes and tighten his brow. He knows that these Sun Ce’s noble private soldiers are all commoners and are all Han Dynasty’s subjects. Liu Mang really did not want to kill his fellow Han but they are forced to battle against him by Sun Ce who wants to avenge Da Qiao and Zhou Tai’s death. Liu Mang also forced his own soldiers to do battle in order to avenge Su Fei’s death and to avenge his brothers-in-arms who were killed by Zhou Tai. Hearing their pleas, Liu Mang’s heart began to soften. His thought began to stream. He thought maybe they are the only son in the family whose mother now is sewing his cloth and waiting for him to comeback, or they maybe a sole pillar of support for their own family. No one is willing to go to war, only those greedy nobles who want this war.

Looking Liu Mang closed his eyes, Huang Zhong think that Liu Mang will spare them. Once Liu Mang said his order, he will relay it to all Black Flag. But Liu Mang next words made every people stunned.

Liu Mang opened his eyes and said these words in cold tone “SPARE NO ONE!!!!” But his face expression is one of struggling expression. Liu Mang’s deepest wish is to spare them, but considering their mentality,

they will be unusable again for the next battle, also Liu Mang can no longer reserve his soldiers to guard them, for all of Wancheng city's noble private soldiers from the one that did not participate in noble's rebellion are all exhausted. Lu, Xu, Han and Liu, all has been decimated by Danyang soldiers. Regarding Black Flag, because Xu Sheng already subjugated by Liu Mang, all Black Flag is obedient toward him. But these noble private soldiers? They are not disciplined, they are afraid and only able to do orgy. Liu Mang will not use them. Furthermore, if they rebelled again, Wancheng city will not hold on assaults from inside and outside. Might as well kill them all.

"WHAT?!" Xu Sheng and Huang Zhong all shocked, disbelief to their little lord's words.

"DO I NEED TO REPEAT MYSELF? SPARE NO ONE!!!!" Said Liu Mang coldly. His eyes shows more struggle, but now, he must be merciless toward enemies. Finally he knows how heavy is a responsibility to be general. A general need to sacrifice in order to achieve victory, since Liu Mang's own men cannot be sacrificed, then surrendered enemy who shall be the sacrifice.

"YES SIR!!!" Xu Sheng said it with respectful tone. Xu Sheng concluded that his little lord is a very ruthless person. Xu Sheng himself is ruthless in battle, and if the one who subjugate them is less ruthless than they are, maybe they will rebel.

Yesterday, Liu Mang decisively threatened Black Flag with starvation. And now Liu Mang ordered death for these 5,000 lives in one breath. This made Xu Sheng realize that Liu Mang is a very decisive person and the one needed to quell the flames of war. Xu Sheng himself find that he is liking Liu Mang more and more. Xu Sheng is a restless person, he cannot wait to show this nation the prowess of his Black Flag and help his little lord win the hegemony competition.

“GENERAL, WE SURRENDER, WE SURRENDER!!!!” The noble private soldiers start to break down. They already threw down their swords and spears to the ground, already kneel down toward Liu Mang to spare them, but unexpectedly, Liu Mang their death altogether. Black Flag quickly execute his order as if they are Liu Mang’s arms and legs.

When Liu Mang see and hear their pleas, he can only said “Forgive me!!!!” in his heart. If Wancheng city has enough defenders, Liu Mang will accept them but now, Liu Mang can only ask all of you to die. Liu Mang thought “I am sorry, I will give you all some paper money offering after the battle is finished, so you can rest peacefully!!!”

“SPARE NO ONE!!!! KILL ALL OF THEM!!!!” With Liu Mang roared his order again, no one hesitate anymore. If some people question his order again, it might be like Xiapi where he killed 3 soldiers for insubordination.

“SPARE ME, SPARE ME!!!!!” “GENERAL WE SURRENDER, DON’T KILL US!!!!” “I DON’T WANT TO DIE!!!! I HAVE MY FAMILY!!!! PLEASE SPARE ME!!!!” Such words and pitiful sound are now very common among noble private soldiers.

“MOTHER, I CANNOT RETURN HOME, I CANNOT HAMMER NAIL IN YOUR COFFIN!!!!”

“MURDERER, BUTCHER!!!! WE HAVE SURRENDERED BUT YOU STILL KILL US!!!!”

“LIU MANG, YOU WILL DIE LIKE A DOG!!!! WE SHALL WAIT FOR YOU DOWN BELOW!!!! GENERAL SUN CE WILL TAKE REVENGE FOR US!!!”

Liu Mang clenched his fist unconsciously. Haha, murderer? Butcher?

Since when Liu Mang's name is associated with those words?! 5 months ago, he has never killed a chicken. But right now, there is blood of 100,000 people in his hands.

"BUTCHER HUH?!" Liu Mang's eyes began bloodshot and said "If it is for my brothers-in-arms, I will be more than willing to become a butcher to ensure their safety and prosperity. You dare to kill them, then I will kill you all mercilessly!!!" Liu Mang then slashed several soldiers, several heads flying up.

Liu Mang then strangely chanting some curse in his mouth "Karma for killing a person is suffered forever!!!" Liu Mang's hand began quicker and killing those soldiers, because of blood spurting here and there, his Aries gold-cloth now dyed red without any gold color.

Then Liu Mang continues again his chanting "In the past there is a heroic man, he swore brotherhood. He killed people in extreme anger state, with his skills he destroy people with ease like flying. With his sword and spear, he galloped to strike this nation" His chanting is as if summoning the spirit of past heroes to join him in this battle. Now Liu Mang really become a demon from hell.

"Want me die, huh?! I'll kill you first!!!" Every soldiers under the pressure of fear can show their dormant abilities and become more efficient in battle. Right now, that soldier has the speed of third-class general.

He is quick but Liu Mang is quicker. Liu Mang stabbed him and continued his chanting "This kind of desire, is as if fishing for moon from moon shadow. Leader fall, scholars disappear, warrior die. Benevolence and justice imprisoned, China is in chaos. Central Plains is in turmoil, people grieving." Liu Mang's hand become more quicker than ever,

Huang Zhong himself also noticed that Liu Mang's skill has grown more than ever.

"Karma for killing a person is suffered forever!!!" Huang Zhong tried to chew that words. He thought "Little lord, can your ambition grow bigger and bigger? Zhong swear to follow you to greatness"

Liu Mang's chanting kept continuing, filling up his bloodlust "Ancient love to study, respect heroic spirit, ridicule those with smelly reputation. With iron sword in hand, angry prople kill enemy. Brave people cut thigh for snack and drink heartily, his laughter and discussion made gods and devils cringe. Travel 1,000-li to kill foe, hang wish on 10 stars. Meeting bosom friends, tying knots with deep feelings. At dawn goes to west gate, evening bring enemy head with victory scream. At night, people sleep tight, suddenly blows war trumpet. At west gate, mother bid farewell, at west gate, mother grief for losing child. Youth last like a breeze, become old in blink of eye. Murder happened across the land, making everything in desperation. With three steps, murder is done, stopping all movements of all organs, blood flows until 10,000-li. Corpses piling like a mountain, heroes are stopped on their expedition. Enemy's corpse become pillow, in dream still killing people. With smile, people marry their daughter, only to find out that she fear this murderous person."

"Father, Little lord!!!" Huang Xu who are just finished putting Bao Zhong to the prison suddenly become very worried. Right now Liu Mang is the one taking the upper hand, killing all those private soldiers, even Black Flag stopped their rampage and let Liu Mang fight.

"REVENGE!!! BLOOD, BLOOD, BLOOD!!!!" Liu Mang exclaimed loudly. His sword's blade is already broken, it cannot withstand Liu Mang's assault. Liu Mang then pick up great shield and spear and started his slaughter again and again.

Liu Mang continued his chanting “Since ancient times, those who screamed benevolence and righteousness always hurt people. None of the scholars ever wield morality, justice in their soul. There is only tiger and lion who are fighting for their victory!!!” While Liu Mang is chanting, his shield and spear become Death’s scythe, causing casualties here and there.

“What is this?!” Xu Sheng who just stopped his assault also pondering. Liu Mang is impossible to wield the shield and spear as if it weighed nothing. That spear and shield is at least weighed around 2-3 person weighed together.

Huang Zhong also pondering “Did he managed to break through his strength or this is something else?!” Unknowingly, Huang Zhong compared himself to Liu Mang. At the age of Liu Mang now, he managed to breakthrough to superclass, but something feels off of Liu Mang.

Huang Zhong then closed his eyes to assess Liu Mang more. “Little lord’s killing intent is very heavy right now.” Huang Zhong then realized something that made him felt threatened.

“No, no, no!!! Is little lord going to break into hyperclass?! Impossible, definitely impossible!!! There is no single person who can breakthrough from third-class general to first-class general, let alone a hyperclass general!!!!” But Huang Zhong cannot deny the feeling that he felt, it really felt like breaking through to hyperclass.

Liu Mang asked noble private soldiers “Kill one person is a sin, kill 10,000 people is also a sin, killing 1,000,000 people is also a sin. All of you

tell me, in this world, what hero has never kill people?!" With those words, Liu Mang's momentum maxed and kept massacring those private soldiers.

Black Flag have long stopped their movements, they cannot catch up with Liu Mang. Liu Mang has killed innumerable soldiers, so much that his own golden armor is already crimson colored, covered by organs and blood.

"DEVIL!!!! HE IS DEVIL KING, DEVIL!!!!" With that words, noble private soldiers quickly jump over the wall and be flattened rather than be killed by golden devil.

"Cough cough!!!" Finally Liu Mang's eyes has been restored to normal again, he is now coughing loudly and arm is shivering. He quickly dropped his weapon and sit down. Liu Mang really surprised that he had created a mountain of corpses.

"Kill one person is a sin, kill 10,000 people is also a sin, killing 1,000,000 people is also a sin!" Huang Zhong finally calmed down. It is not breaking through hyperclass!!! If hyperclass is so easy to breakthrough, then this land will be full of those generals. But even though Liu Mang failed to breakthrough, what he has done really an act of terror.

"Is little lord, using the murderous rampage?!" Huang Zhong who currently holding Liu Mang's body pondered. Liu Mang just fall down, due to exhaustion. One of the prerequisite to at least murder 100,000 people by himself, or raised by animals. Liu Mang fulfilled one of the prerequisite by killing the rebelling noble clans. Lu Bu also had reached murderous rampage stage early in his life. After his father died, he lived with wolves, raised by wolves, hunt with wolves. During first battle of

Jiuyuan County, Lu Bu along with 123 troops were surrounded by 30,000 troops of Wuwan tribe armies. They crushed and grinded their troops until it left only 3 person, including Lu Bu, but during that battle, Wuwan tribe also suffered casualties of 7,000 troops. At that time, Lu Bu's psyche become that murderous rampage. Without any horse, without any weapons, Lu Bu tear everything apart just like tearing open papers. 7,000 troops fall down before him. Lu Bu gave up this technique because after you use it, you will become unconscious for a few days. Another reason Lu Bu did not pursue further is during murderous rampage mode, you cannot distinguish which one is friend and which one is foe much like Zhou Tai during bloodthirsty mode. Liu Mang can become like that, the credit should be given to Lu Lingqi.

TL: Wuwan tribes: their location is now called Liaodong, capital of You Province

During the time of their practice, Lu Bu said that this method could increase Liu Mang's strength dramatically. Who knows after that, Liu Mang inquired Lu Lingqi. Lu Lingqi said that it required you to kill as many people, the more, the better. With that, your killing intent will rise tenfold and finally your consciousness will sharpen and you will go into berserk mode.

Under the influence of murderous rampage, Liu Mang has killed 1,000 troops by himself. Noble private soldiers who become fearful, quickly jump toward the wall, they would rather become a meat patty than face Liu Mang.

Now with nobody left to kill, suddenly Liu Mang's killing intent receded and exhaustion invades him, luckily Huang Zhong is there to grab him. Liu Mang just huffing and puffing all this time right after he fell down. That technique is too scary, it made him to lose control of himself.

Even Black Flag felt fear when Liu Mang berserked just now, they all felt, if they are in opposition of him, he will be able to cut clean all of them.

Huang Zhong then reported “Little lord, just rest, it is okay already. 12,000 of Sun Ce’s noble private soldiers has been annihilated. The rest of them are climbing down the wall and become meat patty. None was left!!! Black Flag completed the mission, the only ones left are noble clan’s reps and they are already captured and arrested as per your order."

